

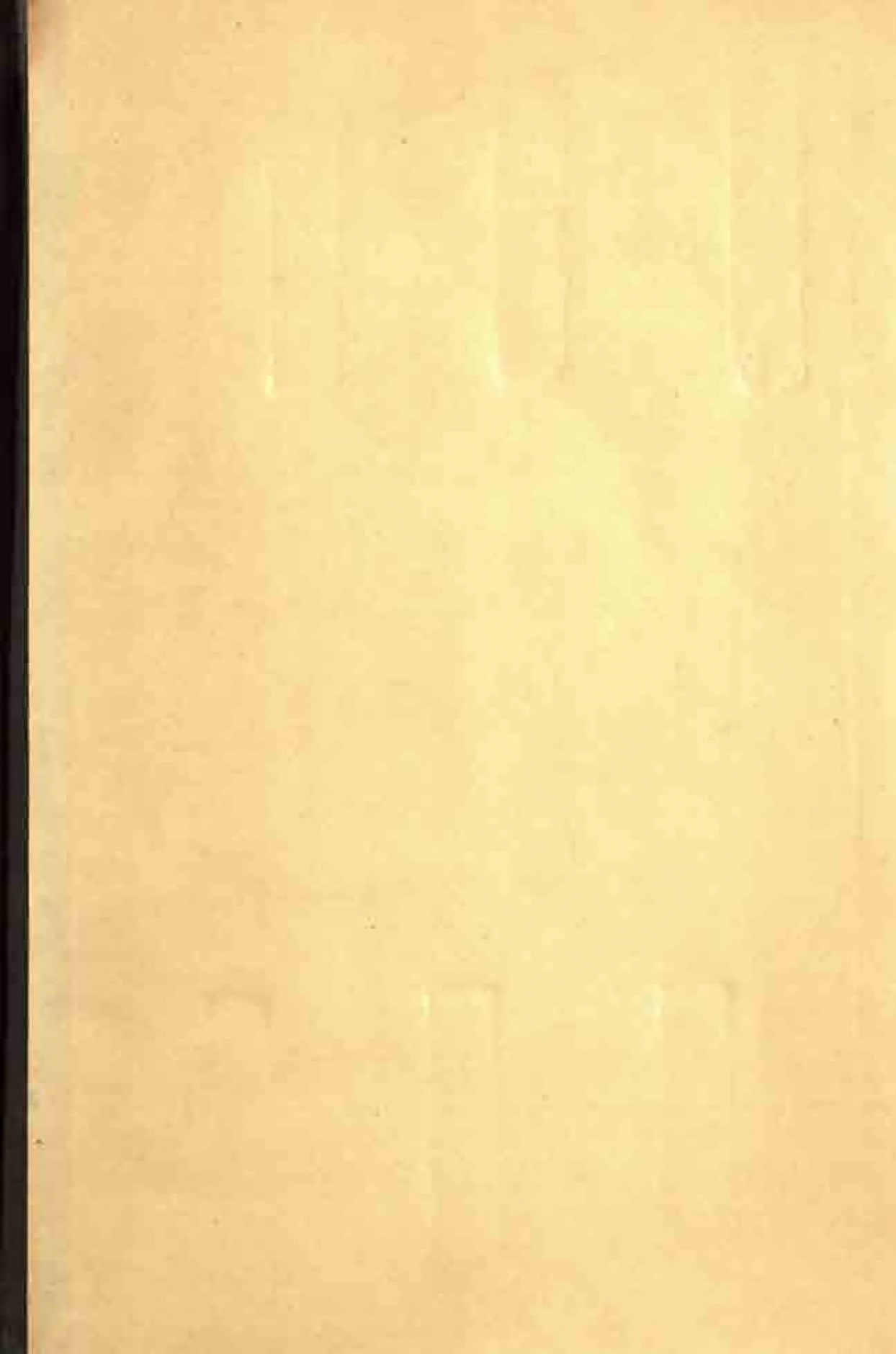
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
ARCHÆOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA

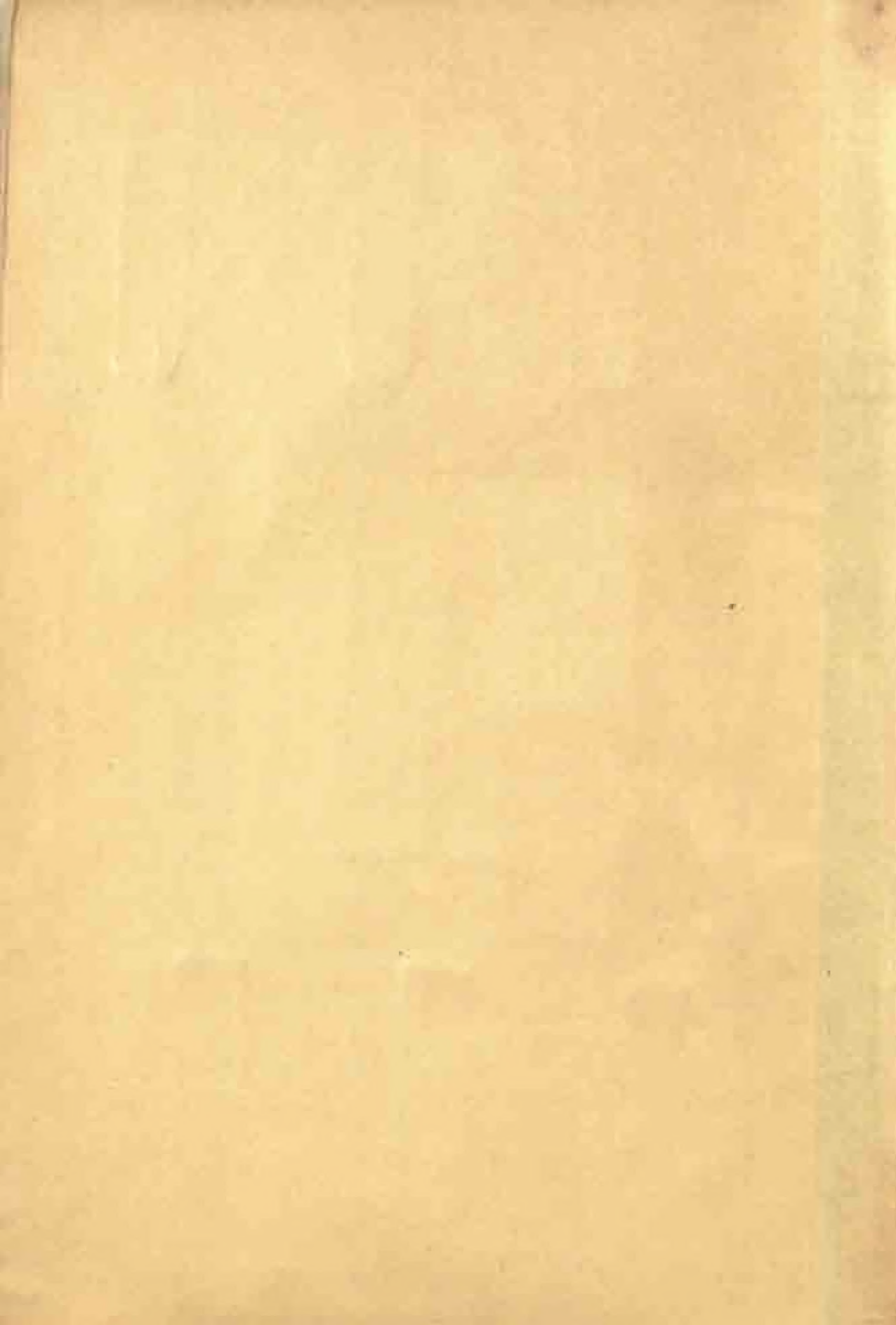
CENTRAL
ARCHÆOLOGICAL
LIBRARY

ACCESSION NO. 28602

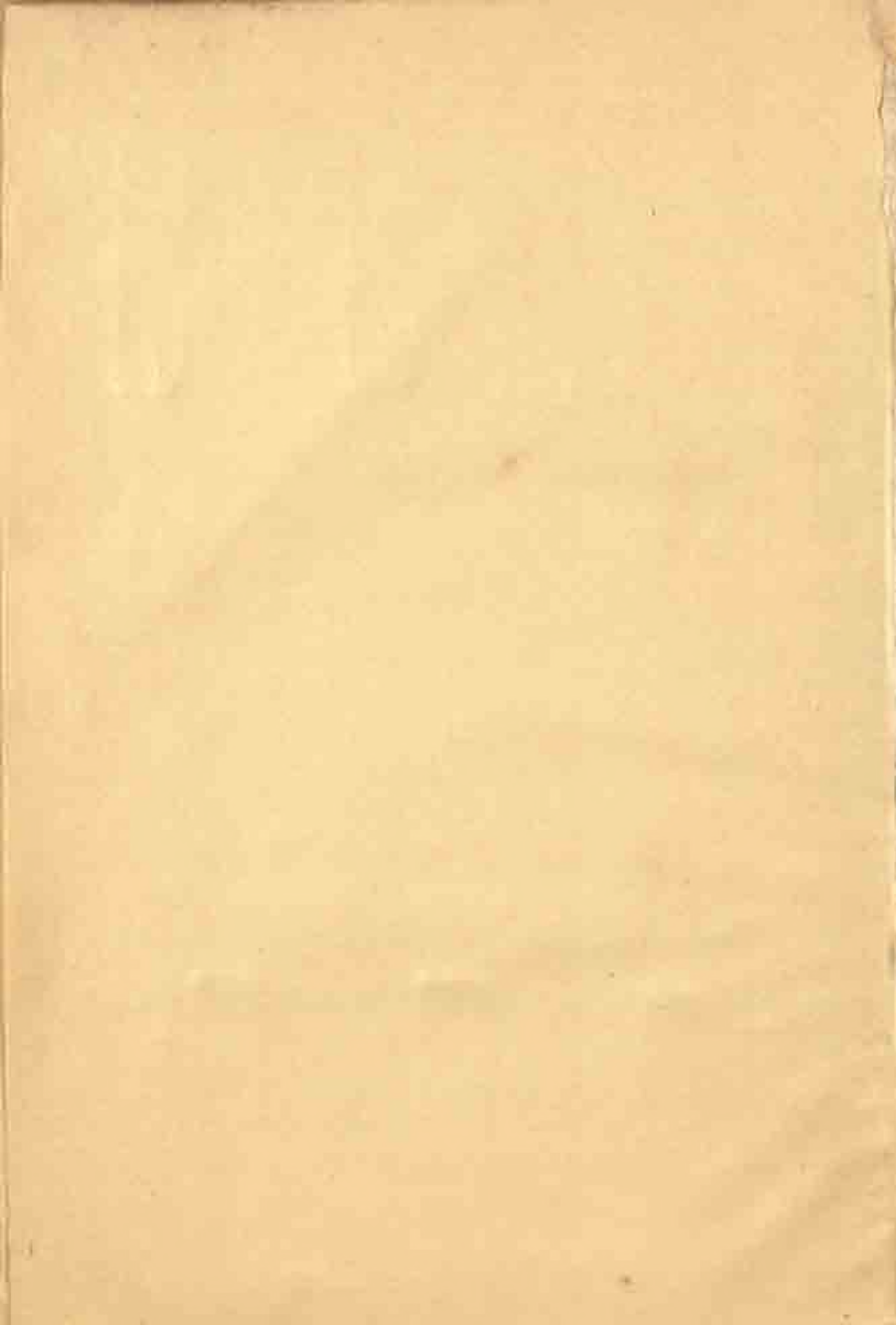
CALL No. 895.1/1eg

D.G.A. 79









363
8

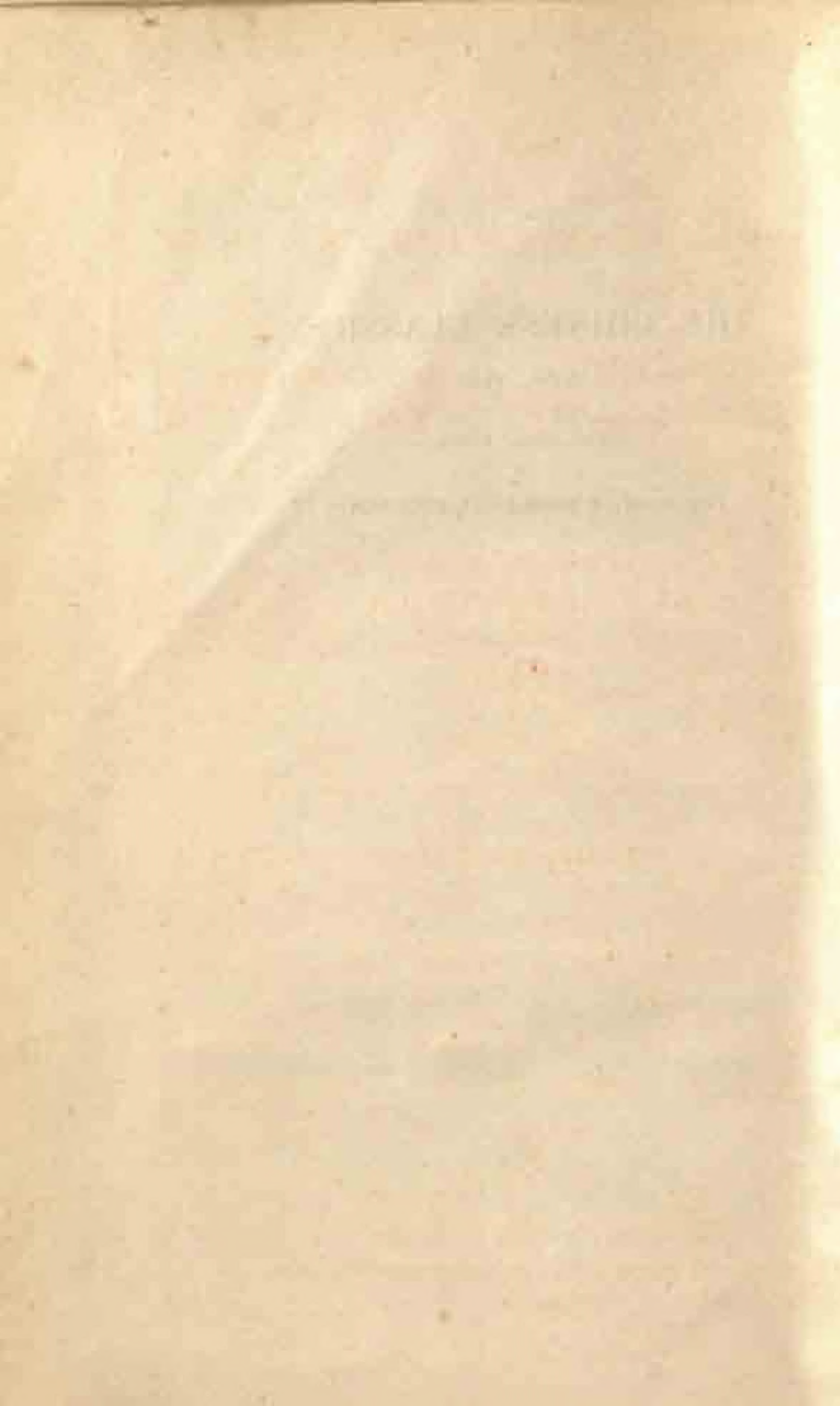
THE CHINESE CLASSICS.

VOL. III.

THE SHOO KING,

OR

THE BOOK OF HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS



NOT TO BE ISSUED

THE

CHINESE CLASSICS:

363
8

WITH

A TRANSLATION, CRITICAL AND EXEGETICAL NOTES,
PROLEGOMENA, AND COPIOUS INDEXES,

BY

JAMES LEGGE, D.D.,

OF THE LONDON MISSIONARY SOCIETY.

28602

IN SEVEN VOLUMES.

VOL. III.—PART II.

CONTAINING

THE FIFTH PART OF THE SHOO KING,
OR THE BOOKS OF CHOW; AND THE INDEXES.

895.1
Leg

HONGKONG: AT THE AUTHOR'S.

LONDON: TRÜBNER & Co., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

1865.



**CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.**

Acc. No. 2862
Date 6/7/60
Call No. 895.11/ Leg.

HONGKONG

PRINTED AT THE LONDON MISSIONARY SOCIETY'S

PRINTING OFFICE.

中華民國二十八年影印

REPRINTED IN CHINA

1939

THE SHOO KING.

PART V. THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK I. THE GREAT DECLARATION. PART I.

周書
泰誓上
惟十有三
年春大會
于孟津。○
王曰嗟我
友邦冢君
越我御事
庶士明聽

In the spring of the thirteenth year, there was a great assembly at Mäng-tsin. The king said, "Ah! ye hereditary rulers of my friendly States, and all ye my officers, managers of my affairs, listen clearly to my declaration.

NAME OF THE PART.—周書, 'The Books of Chow.' Chow is the dynastic designation under which Woo and his descendants possessed the empire from B.C. 1121—255, a period of 867 years. They traced their lineage up to K'uei (棄), the minister of Agriculture (后稷) under Shun. K'uei is said to have been a son of the emperor K'uei (s.c. 2432). The marvels of his birth and infancy are pleasantly described in the second Part of the Shu King, and are duly chronicled by Sze-ma T'suen (周本紀). He was invested with the principality of T'ao (邰), the pres. dis. of Foo-fung (扶風), dep. of Fung-ts'ang (鳳翔), in Shen-so. In the time of K'uei, s.c. 1796, the fortunes of the family, which had for some time been waning, revived under Kung-iow (公劉), who established himself in P'ia (豳), the

pres. small department of 邠. There his descendants remained till s.c. 1226, when Tan-foo, afterwards styled king T'ao in the sacrificial ritual of the dynasty, removed to the foot of mount K'uei in the pres. dis. of K'uei-san (岐山), dep. of Fung-ts'ang;—see Men., I, Pt. II., xiv., and xv. The State which he established there was called Chow. King T'ao was succeeded by his son Ke-ieli, or king Ke, and he again by his son Ch'ang, or king Wan, who transmitted his hereditary dominions, greatly increased, and his authority to his son Fa or king Woo. Woo then adopted Chow as the designation of the dynasty which he founded.

The Books of Chow were more numerous, as we might expect, than those of the previous dynasties,—even though they belong only to little more than the first half of its history. Nor did they suffer so much in consequence of the fire of Trin as those of the Shang dynasty. Out of 38 documents there remains 29 whose genuineness

is uncontested; and only 8 have been entirely lost. I have said that we might have expected that the Books of Chow would be more numerous than those of Shang; but we could not have expected that so much larger a proportion of them should escape the various dangers to which all were equally exposed.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—泰誓, 'The Great Declaration' 泰—大, 'great.'

King Woo, having at last taken the field against Chow, makes three speeches to his officers and men, expounding the grounds of his enterprise, urging them to play the man with him in the cause of humanity and Heaven. These are brought together, and constitute the grand whole.—'The great Declaration.'

TWO DIFFERENT TEXTS OF THE BOOK. This subject has been treated of in the preface; and I will content myself here with giving the summary of the discussions that have been raised upon it, which is quoted in the 通鑑

綱目 from Kin Le-t'ang's 通鑑前編, merely interjecting a remark or two, where his statements can be fairly called in question. The text preferred by K'ang Shing and other modern scholars will also be found, with a translation of it, in an appendix to this Book.

Le-t'ang says:—"The Shoo of Fuh-shang did not contain the 'Great Declaration.'" [But see the first Book of Mao K'uei's 'Wrongs of the old Text of the Shoo.' The 'Great Declaration' was in the Books of Fuh-shang.] It was in the "Old Text," found in the wall of Confucius' house; but as the commentary of K'ung Gan-k'uei was not entered in the Imperial college during the Han dynasty, his edition of it did not then become current. Chung Pa (張

霸) then fraudulently made a "Great Declaration," in three Parts, which became current, and contained the passage about "a white fish entering king Woo's ship," &c., which is found in Chung-shoo (仲舒) and Ssu-ma T'een.

[This passage is found in those writers, and also in Fuh-shang's Introduction to the Shoo. There is no necessity to say that the 'Great Declaration,' current during the Han dynasty, was forged by Chung Pa.] "But in the time of the Eastern Han, Ma Yang and other scholars became aware that this was not the genuine document; and it fell into general discredit, when the "Old Text" made its appearance at the commencement of the Eastern Tsin dynasty. Recently, however, this same Old Text has come to be suspected by the scholar Woo (吳氏).

"His language," he says, "is vehement and arrogant, not to be compared with that of the Declaration of Tang. As the document appeared so late, we may suppose that the whole of it is not the original text."

"In my opinion, the conduct and language of Tang and Woo were equally responsive to Heaven and accordant with men. They differed because the circumstances of the men differed. Tang was the founder of the fortune of his House; Woo entered into an inheritance which was already flourishing. Tang's enterprise commenced when men were beginning to look to Shang; Woo's was undertaken when many of

the princes had long been followers of the Chiefs of Chow. The battle of Ming-t'au was fought by the people of P'ei, while at Ming-t'au there was a grand assemblage of the princes with their hosts. With such differences of circumstances, we should expect differences of style and manner. As to what is said of Chow's being worse than K'ia, and the language being more ornate, these things are accounted for by the difference of time. Even allowing that the style was somewhat modified and improved, when the document made its reappearance, we may well believe that it gives us the views of king Woo."

CONTENTS. These may be stated in the language with which Le-t'ang concludes his observations.—"In the first Part, king Woo addresses himself to the princes and others of inferior rank; in the second, to the hosts of the princes; and in the third, to his officers. The ruling idea in the first is the duty of the sovereign,—what he ought to be and do; with this it begins and ends. There is not the same continuity of thought in the second, but the will and purpose of Heaven is the principal thing insisted on. The last Part shows the difference between the good sovereign and the bad, and touches on the consent that there is between Heaven and man. The Book is brilliantly composed, and far transcends the powers of any man of a later age to have made it."

CONTENTS OF THE FIRST PART. At a great assemblage of the princes, king Woo sets before them the reasons of his proceeding against Chow-ai. Starting from the position that the sovereign is ordained by God for the good of the people, he shows how the king of Shang acted only to the injury of the people. King Wan would have punished him if he had lived, but now the duty was devolved upon himself, and with their help he would proceed to obey the requirement of Heaven. They need have no fears as to the issue. Favoured by God and men, the expedition could not but be crowned with success. There are eleven paragraphs which are so connected as to form only one chapter.

Par. 1. The time, place, and occasion of the Declaration. The time was the spring of the 13th year; but it is hardly possible to place beyond dispute the prior date from which we are to calculate this 13th year. In the first place, the Preface assigns the time to the 11th year (note 32); and there is no way that can be admitted of reconciling the two accounts. The general view is that the 11 in the preface is a mistake for 13, but Lin Che-ku takes the opposite view, and contends that the 13 in the text should be 11.

In the second place, admitting the text to be correct, we find that the standard or common chronology reckons from the 1st year of king Woo's accession to the principality of Chow, which it places in B.C. 1153. This view is ably argued by T'ao Ch'iu in loc. On the other hand, Gan-k'uei said that the 13th year was to be reckoned from king Wan's receiving (as indicated by circumstances) the appointment of Heaven to the sovereignty of the empire. He is supposed to have then changed the style of his reign,—to have begun it afresh with a new 'first year.' Nine years then elapsed, and his work was not completed;—the tyrant was still upon the throne, and Wan

誓。○惟
天。地。萬。物。之。靈。萬。物。之。靈。萬。物。之。靈。
惟。人。萬。物。之。靈。萬。物。之。靈。萬。物。之。靈。
元。后。作。元。后。明。靈。萬。物。之。靈。
民。父。母。作。元。后。明。靈。萬。物。之。靈。

3 "Heaven and Earth is the parent of all creatures; and of all creatures man is the most highly endowed. The sincere, intelligent, and perspicacious *among men* becomes the great sovereign; and

died. Two years more passed by,—the period of mourning for him; and then king Woo took the field, but it was not till the year after, the 4th year of his reign, that the contest between him and Chow-sin was decided. This view is strongly advocated by Maou K'o-ling, against Tsue and others, in the third Book of his

尚書廣聽錄

But the various data on which it is endeavoured to decide the question are by no means certain;—are a mass in the 歷代統紀表 on the date of king Woo's birth, under a.c. 1168. I must for the present suspend the expression of any opinion of my own on the point.

A controversy, nearly as perplexing, is waged about the time intended by 'the spring,' where we should hardly think there was room for any difference of view. It has been already observed (on 'The Instructions of K' Pt. I., p. 1) that while the Hsia dyn. began the year with the 1st month of spring (the month 寅), the Shang began it with the last month of winter (the month 丑). The Chow dynasty removed the commencement of the year farther back still, and made it begin with the second month of winter (the month 子). Ts'ao and a host of followers say that by 'the spring' is intended the months of the Hsia year; and this appears reasonable for however different dynasties might begin their year in different months, they could not change the order of the seasons. The 'spring' of Chow was the same as that of Hsia; and if we suppose, as is most natural, that the historian is speaking in the text with reference to the Chow year, then the month intended by 'the spring' must be the first month of that season. Gan-k'wé, however, understands the month intended to be the first of the Chow year, and Maou K'o-ling supports his view. This question will come up again in the course of this and the two next Books.

The place where the declaration was made was Mang-tsin, or at the 'Fort of Mang;—see the Tribute of Yu, Pt. II., p. 7. There was there a great assembly of all the princes who already acknowledged the supremacy of Chow, and were confederate with Woo to make an end of the tyrant. Gan-k'wé says they were the princes of the two thirds of the empire, who had followed the banner of king Wán (Aas, VIII., xx., 4), and the chiefs of many of the wild tribes;—along with their various hosts.

P. 2. Opening of the address.

王曰。

—Woo is here styled 'king,' or emperor, by anticipation. Had he been defeated, he would have been 'a rebel;' but as his enterprise was crowned with success, from the moment he began to operate against Chow-sin, he was the sovereign of China, and the other was only 'a solitary fellow' (獨夫; Pt. III., 4).

我友邦冢君.—Ying-tá says—同志爲友, 'they were 友, as having the same mind

and aim with him.' 冢君 is literally 'highest rulers,' or 'great rulers.' The 'Daily Explanation' explains the phrase by—各國

嗣立之君, which I have followed in the translation.

越我御事庶士.—越—及, 'and; 御—主或治, to pre-

sides over, 'to manage.' 御事—治事者, 'managers of affairs.' The 'Daily Ex-

planation' would include the soldiers among the 士 as well as the officers.—衆士卒;

but it is better not to extend the meaning of the term so far in this passage. Madhurst strangely and quite erroneously translates 越我御

事 by—'it has fallen to me to manage these

affairs.' The address begins with 嗟 the exclamation which ordinarily precedes these military speeches.

3. The sovereign is ordained by Heaven and Earth, because of his virtue, for the good of the people.

Compare the 'Announcement of Tang,' p. 2. What is to be remarked here is the style of speaking which is new, and places 'Heaven and Earth' in the place of 'Heaven' simply, or 'God.' Woo does not always employ this style. In this same Part he employs both the terms which I have mentioned. There can be no doubt that the deification of 'Heaven and Earth,' which appears in the text, took its rise from the Yih King, of which king Wán may properly be regarded as the author. No one who reads what Wán says on the first and second diagrams, and the further explanations of his son Tan (the duke of Chow), can be surprised to find king Woo speaking as he does in the text.

惟人萬物之靈.—'it is

man who is the most intelligent of all creatures.' By 萬物 in the first clause we understand

池室以以暴冒民天受○
 侈臺世族虐色○降弗今
 服榭惟官罪敢沈_五災敬商
 以陂宮人人行酒下上王

- 4 the great sovereign is the parent of the people. But now, Show, the king of Shang, does not reverence Heaven above, and
 5 inflicts calamities on the people below. He has been abandoned to drunkenness, and reckless in lust. He has dared to exercise cruel oppression. Along with criminals he has punished all their relatives. He has put men into office on the hereditary principle. He has made it his pursuit to have palaces, towers, pavilions, embankments, ponds, and all other extravagances, to the most painful injury of you,

'all things,' inanimate as well as animate; in the second clause we must confine the meaning to animate creatures. The various tribes of animals have their several measures of intelligence, but all are very inferior to man.

Then, as men are superior to other creatures, there appear among them those who are superior to their fellows;—the sages, who are raised up by Heaven, and become the rulers, teachers,—parents, in fact—of the mass. Ch'in King says on this:—Man is one among all creatures. Other creatures, however, get but a portion of the energizing element of nature, while he receives it complete;—it is this which makes the nature of man more intelligent and capable than that of other creatures. But though men are endowed with this capacity and intelligence, there are those who are not able to preserve and maintain it, and there must be the quick-apprehending and understanding ruler to be a parent to them. In this way the people are able all to complete their intelligence. The sage possesses before me that of which I have the seeds in common with himself; and among intelligent beings he is the most intelligent.

人者萬物之一也。物得氣性
 之偏人得氣之全此人雖有
 所以獨靈於物然此靈者必
 此靈有不能保此父母之斯
 得聰明之君以全其靈聖人
 民始得以各之所同然而
 先得我心者耳

Pp. 4, 5. How Chow had forfeited all his title to the empire, and King Wau had been charged to punish him.

4. 商王受.—I have hitherto called the tyrant of Shang by the name of Chow (紂), after Sze-ma Ts'ien and Mencius. Here and elsewhere he appears as

Show, which Ts'ang says was 'the name of Chow.' Chow is his epithet in history, conferred upon him for his cruelty and wickedness;—see the

Dict. on the character (殘忍損義曰紂). Liu Che-k'e says that 紂 was inter-

changed with 受 from the similarity of the two characters in sound, but he must be wrong, because Show is here used by King Wau before the tyrant's death.

上天下民.—I think these phrases may best be taken as in the translation.

5. 沈酒.—comp. 沈酣于酒, in 'The Viscount of Wei,' p. 1.

冒色.—冒 is 'to go forward with the eyes covered,'—'to pursue blindly and recklessly.'

色—女色. 罪人以族.—he

crimed men according to their relationships. The meaning is as in the translation. The

'Daily Explanation' has:—加罪于人, 不但誅其一身, 并其族屬

而刑戮之. Mencius points it out as one of the glories of King Wan's administration of

K'w, that 'the wives and children of criminals were not involved in their guilt' (罪人不

孥; Bk. I, Fz. II, v. 3.) It was one of the principles of Shun that punishments should not

be extended to the offender's children (Counsels of the Great Yu, p. 11.) We have seen Yu's son,

(The Speech at Kan, p. 5) and even T'ang, (The Speech of T'ang, p. 4) menacing their troops

with the death of their children, if they did not do their duty. That may have been a measure

of war; and Chow carried it into all the penal administration of his govt. To what extent the punishment of relatives was carried by

Chow, we do not learn from the text. Gan-kwá supposes that the parents, brothers,

商、豕、發、○、威、文、天、剗、姓、殘
 惟、君、以、肆、大、考、震、剔、焚、害
 受、觀、爾、予、勳、肅、怒、孕、于
 罔、政、友、小、未、將、命、婦、爾
 有、于、邦、子、集、天、我、皇、萬

the myriad people. He has burned and roasted the loyal and good. He has ripped up pregnant women. Great Heaven was moved with indignation, and charged my deceased father Wān reverently to display its majesty; but *he died* before the work was completed.

6 "On this account I, Fā, who am but a little child, have by means of you, the hereditary rulers of my friendly States, contemplated the government of Shang; but Show has no repentant

wives and children, (三族) all suffered with the offender.

官人以世. —'he officed men according to their generation, or genealogical connection.' The 'Daily Explanation' makes the meaning to be that Chow put into office all the friends of his favourites. —其用人則不論賢否但其心之所喜即并其子弟親屬悉寵任之. But this view of 以世 is unwarrantable. Mencius, in the passage above referred to, says that king Wān salaried the descendants of meritorious officers. But tho' such men might be salaried, they were called to office only when they had the virtue and ability necessary for its duties. Chow did not look out for able and good men to fill the offices of the State. This is the burden of this part of the indictment against him.

惟宮室. —'he only cared for.' —其萬姓. —'he only cared for.' —其所務者惟在宮室云云. The 說文 defines 宮 by 室. The former term is the building as a whole; 室, the apartments in it. Lo Shun says: —臺 is a high terrace of earth, made for the purpose of observation; when a house or houses are built on the top of it, they are called 榭. 侈服. —'all extravagances.' 服—事. 焚炙忠良. —this refers to the punishment of Roasting, described in the historical note on the 'Conquest of Lo.'

剗. —we saw how Chow caused the heart of Po-kan to be cut out; —Hwang-poo

Moh, of the Tsin dyn., says that he also caused Po-kan's wife to be ripped up. No earlier account to that effect, however, is known. King Woo is no doubt rehearsing things which were commonly charged upon the tyrant at the time.

皇天. —see on the 'Announcement of Tang,' p. 2. 命我文考. —考 is the name for a father deceased. King Woo speaks in this way of his father having been charged to punish Chow, to vindicate all the better his own present course. We are not to suppose that any such commission was ever expressly given to Wān; and Confucius speaks of him as having been faithful to the dyn. of Shang to the last; —see Ana. VIII. xx. 4. 大勳未集. —大功未成. We must complete the meaning by adding 而崩, as in the translation.

P. 6. The feat of punishing Chow being now described on him, he sets forth the evidence of his hopeless wickedness. 肆. —故, 'therefore.' 以爾. —于商. —觀政 is explained by a reference to the same phrase in the 'Both possessed pure Virtue,' p. 10. The princes of the States were to Woo an index of the govt. of Chow. Had they remained loyal to him, that would have shown that his govt. was good. As they were now in the mass revolted from him, and following Woo's banner, it was clear that he was no longer fit to be emperor. Such is the explanation of this passage by Ts'ie, and what is now commonly received; and I see no better course than to acquiesce in it. Gan-kwō and the earlier scholars explained it with reference to an assembly, which they imagined, of Woo and the princes at the ford of Tsin, two years before the period of this 'Declaration.' Then he had thoughts of attacking Chow, but on contemplating his govt., concluded that the time was not yet come, and withdrew his troops.

悛心，乃夷居，弗事
 上帝，神祇遺厥先
 宗廟，弗祀犧牲粢
 盛，既于凶盜，乃曰
 吾有民，有命，罔懲
 其侮。○天佑下民，
 作之君，作之師，惟
 其克相上帝，寵綏
 四方，有罪無罪，予
 曷敢有越厥志。○

heart. He abides squatting on his heels, not serving God or the spirits of heaven and earth, neglecting also the temple of his ancestors, and not sacrificing in it. The victims and the vessels of millet all become the prey of wicked robbers; and still he says, 'The people are mine: the decree is mine,' never trying to correct his contemptuous mind. Now Heaven, to protect the inferior people, made for them rulers, and made for them instructors, that they might be able to be aiding to God, and secure the tranquillity of the four quarters of the empire. In regard to who are criminals and who are not, how dare I give any allowance to my own wishes?

Such a meeting is not properly substantiated; and the view is otherwise liable to many objections.

夷居.—compare 夷俟. Con. Ana., XIV., xlv.

弗事上帝神祇遺厥先宗廟弗祀—T'sao, after Gan-kwo, gives for this—廢上帝

百神宗廟之祀. 'he has discontinued the sacrifices,—to God, the hundred spirits, and the spirits of his ancestors.' Ying-tz observes that the meaning is that Chow had no religion, rendered no service to spiritual beings

(不事神祇); God, as the highest of all such beings, being mentioned, to show the enormity of his wickedness. In this way a distinction is made between 上帝 and 神祇, the latter phrase being synonymous with 百神.

On the other hand, the 'Daily Explanation,' for 弗事上帝神祇 has—忽慢天地神祇不知奉事.

'he slight and contemns the spirits of Heaven and Earth, and renders not service to them.' This would confound God with the spirits of Heaven and Earth, which is by no means inconceivable in Woo, when we consider the language of p. 3. Compare also the language of parr. 3 and 4 in the 'Announcement of T'ang.' Upon the

whole, however, the gradation of thought in the passage may determine the scale in favour of the former view.

犧牲粢盛既于凶盜—犧牲, see the last Book, p. 6; 粢盛, see Mou., III., Pt. II., III., 3; 既—盡, 'are consumed,' or 'are all taken.' The whole corresponds with the words of the Grand Tutor in the part of the 'Viscount of Wei' just referred to.

有民有命.—comp. the 'Conquest of Lo,' p. 2. 罔懲其侮—無有懲戒其侮慢之意.

P. 7. He returns to the principles declared in par. 3, and shows that he was constrained by them to attack Chow.

See this par. as it is quoted by Mencius, I., Bk. II., III., 7. The difference between the text here, and that which he gives is very considerable. We cannot suppose that the present text of the Shoo was forged from Mencius. A plagiarist, attempting such an imposition as is ascribed to 'the false K'ung,' would have taken the language exactly from his copy. We can only believe that Mencius had a copy of the 'Great Declaration' before him, differing not a little from the present, or that he quoted from memory, and allowed himself great license in altering the classic.

寵綏四方.—to show favour and tranquillize the four quarters of the empire.

予曷敢有越厥志.—我何敢

爾有衆底天之罰。上帝宜于冢土以懼受命文考類于予小子夙夜祇弗順天厥罪惟鈞。貫盈天命誅之予千惟一心。○商罪億萬心予有臣三義受有臣億萬惟同力度德同德度

- 8 "Where the strength is the same, measure the virtue of the parties; where the virtue is the same, measure their righteousness." Show has hundreds of thousands and myriads of ministers, but they have hundreds of thousands and myriads of minds; I have three thousand ministers, but they have one mind. The iniquity of Shang is full. Heaven gives command to destroy it. If I did not comply with Heaven, my iniquity would be as great.
- 9 "I, who am a little child, early and late am filled with apprehensions. I have received charge from my deceased father Wān; I have offered special sacrifice to God; I have performed the due services to the great Earth;—and I lead the multitude of you to

有過用其心乎. 'how dare I use my own mind too much?' Such is the interpretation of Ts'ao;—越厥志, is 'to go beyond what is right with—in accordance with—my own wishes.' The dict. follows Gan-kwō in defining 越 here by 遠, 'to put away.'—'My purpose is to destroy the tyrant for the good of the people. Whether he be guilty or not guilty, I will smite him. I will not let go that, my proper purpose.' This is evidently incorrect.

P. 8. He auspices success from the righteousness of his cause, and the harmony of mind among his followers, though they were comparatively few.

The two first clauses are supposed to be a current saying used against each other by contending parties;—Lin Che-k'ō has adduced from the 左傳 two examples of similar complets. The second clause is not so intelligible as the first. We can understand how when parties were matched in strength, the struggle should be expected to terminate in favour of the more virtuous; but it is difficult to perceive how 'virtue' and 'righteousness' can be set against each other.

受有臣億萬.—Ts'ao says here that 億 denotes 'a hundred myriads,' or a million. This was probably a slip of his pencil. 億.—ten myriads, or

100,000. The subject of Show's more numerous host comes up again in the next Part, p. 8. We may admit it as a fact, and it explains the risings and troubles which disturbed the dynasty of Chow after the death of king Woo. It is difficult, at the same time, to reconcile it with the representations of the general disaffection to the emperor, and of two thirds of the empire having been for years devoted to the House of Chow. See the note on this paragraph in the 後案. It is instructive, though not conclusive in favour of the author's views.

9. 'It was wise to Woo himself if he proceeded not to destroy Shang. Compare the 'Speech of T'ang,' pp. 1, 2; and the 'Announcement of T'ang,' p. 4.

商罪貫盈.—'the crimes of Shang are strung together and full.' 10. Woo's caution and conscientiousness in proceeding with his enterprise.

予小子夙夜祇懼—comp. the 'Announcement of T'ang,' p. 8.

受命文考類于上帝, 宜于冢土.—冢—大 'great'; 冢土, 'the great earth,'—大社, 'the altar dedicated to the great spirit of the Earth.' The sacrifice at this altar was called 宜. 類于上帝,

失哉四海人弼之天之所于民○
弗可時永清一爾尙從欲民天
十二

- 11 execute the punishment appointed by Heaven. Heaven compassionates the people. What the people desire, Heaven will be found to give effect to. Do you aid me, the one man, to cleanse for ever *all within* the four seas. Now is the time!—it may not be lost."

—see the 'Canon of Shun,' p. 6. In the *Le*

Ke, Bk. 王制, Pt. ii., 17, we find—天子

將出,類乎上帝,宜乎社造

乎廟. 'When the emperor is about to go forth,

he offers special sacrifice to God, performs the

due services at the altar of the Earth, and goes

to the shrine of his father.' Woo had attended

to all these observances; and it must have been

at the shrine of his father, that he somehow

understood himself 'to receive,' as he says here,

'charge' to attack Chow. 底天之罰.

—comp. 恭行天之罰, in the 'Speech at Kan,' p. 3.

11. *The enterprise was a proof of the compassion of Heaven for the people, and he summons all the princes and officers to strenuous cooperation with him.*

Under the 32nd

year of duke Seang, and in another place of the

左傳, we find the passage—民之所

欲,天必從之, quoted from the 'Great

Declaration.' It is also found in the 國語.

爾尙弼予一人,—see the 'Speech

of Tang,' p. 4.

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK I. THE GREAT DECLARATION. PART II.

惟訓次訓于河朔，
群訓后訓以師，
畢訓會訓王訓乃，
徇訓師訓而誓，
西訓土訓有衆，
咸訓聽訓朕訓言。

泰誓中

- 1 On the day mow-woo, the king halted on the north of the River.
- 2 When all the chiefs with their hosts were assembled, the king reviewed the hosts, and made the following declaration, saying, "Ah! ye multitudes of the West, listen all to my words,

CONTENTS OF THE SECOND PART. Since the delivery of the first address, the army has crossed the Ho, when Woo reviews it, and makes this speech, which is more especially addressed to the troops. He makes Show and Kê, Tang and himself, all pass before his men, showing that Show was more wicked than Kê, and that his punishment of him would be more glorious than Tang's had been of Kê. Heaven will surely crown their enterprise with success; and he therefore in conclusion urges them all to go into battle, not despising the tyrant, but with united hand and heart, to accomplish a work that should last for ages. The whole is divided into 9 paragraphs.

Pp. 1, 2. *The time, place, and occasion of the address; and the parties addressed.* The time was the day mow-woo, which we are able to determine, from the 1st par. of the 'Completion of the War,' to have been the 23th day of the 1st month. We are there told that Woo began his march to attack Chow on the day jin-shin, which was the 2d of the 1st month. Calculating on to the day mow-woo, we ascertain that it was the 23th of the same moon. The controversy, described on the 1st par. of the last Part, on the term 'spring,' however, is not

decided by this fixing of the relation between the two dates. T'ee will still have the month to be the first of the Hwa year,—really the first month of spring; Gan-kwê and others will have it to be the first month of the Chow year, the second month of winter.

次于河
北，一次一止，'to stop,' 'to be stationed.'

In the interval, therefore, between the two addresses, the army had crossed the Ho.

徇師，一徇 (3d tone) = 循，'to go about.'

Hwang Tso explains it from the phrase 拊循，'to cheer and animate.' 'To review' expresses the meaning accurately enough. Perhaps we are to understand that the king first crossed the river and encamped; and then, when all the princes with their troops, had pitched their tents around him, he went through the host and addressed the soldiers.

2. 西土有衆，—Woo and his father had both been 'Chiefs of the West,'—viceroys over that part of the empire.

○我聞吉人爲善，惟日不足，凶人爲不善，亦惟日不足。今商王受，力行無度，播棄黎老，昵比罪人，淫酗肆虐，臣下化之。朋家作仇，脅權相滅，無辜顓天，穢德彰聞。○惟天惠民，惟辟奉天，有夏桀弗克若天，流毒下國，天乃佑命成湯，降黜夏

- 3 "I have heard that the good man, doing good, finds the day insufficient, and that the evil man, doing evil, likewise finds the day insufficient. Now Show, the king of Shang, with strength pursues his lawless way. He has cast away the time-worn sires, and cultivates intimacies with wicked men. Dissolute, intemperate, reckless, oppressive, his ministers have become assimilated to him; and they form parties, and contract animosities, and depend on the emperor's power to exterminate one another. The innocent cry to Heaven. The odour of such a state is plainly felt on high.

- 4 "Heaven loves the people, and the sovereign should reverence this mind of Heaven. Kēē, the sovereign of Hea, could not follow the example of Heaven, but sent forth his poisonous injuries through the States of the empire:—Heaven favoured and charged T'ang, the

P 3. The dreadful wickedness of Show.

吉人凶人.—comp. the use of 吉 and 凶 in the 'Counsels of Yu,' p. 5. Here, however, we are to take the terms in their purely moral significations. This use of them shows the deep conviction that goodness and prosperity, evil and calamity, ought always to be found together.

播棄黎老.—comp. in the 'Viscount of Wei,' p. 3. 耄遜于荒. 播 is here explained by 放, very nearly synonymous with 棄. 黎 is most simply explained

by taking it as for 鰥, 'black and yellow,' the colour of old men's faces. Mih-tsu says of Chow that he 播棄黎老, where 黎 is probably intended for the character in the text.

昵比罪人.—昵 (nī), as in the

'charge to Yü' p. 5; 比, as in the 'Instructions of K.' p. 7.

朋家作仇.—各立朋黨, 互爲仇讐. 脅權.—as in the 'Punitive Expedition of Yin,' p. 5.—進, 'to press,' 'to force.' The phrase here—'they make forcible use of—press upon with—the power of the emperor.'

顓天.—告天 or 呼天, 'appeal to Heaven.' 穢德.—'their filthy, foul deeds.'

See on the 'P'wan-k'ang,' Pt. II, p. 8. Pp. 4, 5. Heaven will always overthrow wickedness and tyranny.—illustrated in the case of K'ü and T'ang, and now in that of Show, who was worse than K'ü, and himself.

4. 惠.—愛, 'to love.'

有夏桀 is not—'there was Kēē of Hea' but 有夏之君桀.

命。○惟受罪浮
于桀，剝喪元良，
賊虐諫輔，謂已
有天命，謂敬不
足行，謂祭無益，
謂暴無傷，厥鑒
惟不遠，在彼夏
王，天其以予乂
民，朕夢協朕卜，
襲于休祥，戎商

五

5 Successful, to make an end of the decree of Hea. But the crimes of Show exceed those of Kēē. He has stript and degraded the greatly good man; he has behaved with cruel tyranny to his reprov-er and helper. He says that his is the decree of Heaven; he says that a reverent care of his conduct is not worth observing; he says that sacrifice is of no use; he says that tyranny is no matter. The case for his inspection was not remote;—in that king of Hea. It would seem that Heaven is going by means of me to rule the people. My dreams coincide with my divinations; the auspicious omen is double. My attack on Shang must succeed.

'Kēē, the ruler who held Hea.' 流毒

下國—流毒于下國, 'flowed out his poison upon the lower States.' Kēē is conceived of on the Throne of the empire, as being raised on high, above his own and all the feudal domains.

降黜夏命—降黜—'to bring down and put away.' Comp. the expression in the 56th note of the Preface, 一成

王既黜殷命. 5. 罪浮于

桀—浮, comp. on the 'Pwan-kang,' Pt. II,

3. Here it is evidently—勝 or 過, 'to exceed.'

剝喪元良—剝 'to peel,' —'to degrade'; 喪 is 失位, 'to lose one's office,' used, here in a *légal* sense. It is supposed that this clause has reference to the viscount of Wei, whose withdrawal from court, it would thus appear, was preceded by violence and oppression on the part of Show.

The next clause, 賊虐諫輔, is referred to Pe-kan.

謂已有天命—see the 'Conquest of La,' p. 5.

敬不足行,—'reverence is not worth being practised.' We had better understand the 're-ference' with reference to his own conduct, and to the business of the State. 祭無益—

this was the cry of the wicked Jews in the time of Malachi,—'It is vain to serve God.'

暴無傷—無傷,—see Men. I., Pt. vii,'

3. 厥鑒云云,—see the quotation from the She King in Mencius, IV., Pt. I., II,

5. 天其以予乂民,—observe the force of 其.

朕夢協朕卜, 襲于休祥戎商必克.—We have no other intimation of Woo's being encouraged in a dream to act against Show; his divination may have been before the shrine of his father, referred to in the last Part, p. 10.

襲—重, 'double,' 'repeated.'

襲于休祥—'both agree in being auspicious,'

戎, 'a weapon,' here —'to attack with weapons.' Acc. to the interpretation thus indicated, which is after Ts'ao, the omens were only two, which united in being favourable. In the 國語,

however, 周語下, the passage is quoted,

where the speaker is treating of the agreement

of three omens, and he adds to the passage—

以三襲也. On this view, 襲于休

祥—'agree with the 休祥,' whatever this

was. Lin Che-k'e, adopting this construction,

refers to the 24th chap. of the 'Doctrine of the Mean,' where it is said that when a nation or a

family is about to flourish, there will be 禎祥,

seen in the nilfoil and tortoise, &c. There, a substantive meaning may be given to those two

必克。○受有
億兆夷人，離
心離德，予有
亂臣十人，同
心同德，雖有
周親，不如仁
人。○天視自
我民視，天聽
自我民聽，百
姓有過，在予

- 6 "Show has hundreds of thousands and millions of ordinary men, divided in heart and divided in practice;—I have of ministers capable of government ten men, one in heart and one in practice. Although he has his nearest relatives with him, they are not like
7 my virtuous men. Heaven sees as my people see; Heaven hears as my people hear. The people are blaming me, the one man, for my

characters, as to 休祥 here,—namely the occurrence of certain unusual phenomena;—see Ying-tā on the passage of the 中庸. The editors of Yung-ching's Shoo seem on the whole inclined to favour this view.

P. 5. The greater number of Shoo's lost and adherents was no cause for doubt as to the issue. See on the 5th pag. of last Part. 夷人—

夷—平常, 'common, ordinary men.' 子有亂臣十人,—see Con. Ann., VIII.

xx. 周親—周—至, the superlative adverb, 'most.' The phrase 周親 and the whole clause indeed, are difficult. The paraphrase of the 'Daily Explanation' is:—受所親信者，雖有同姓至親，然我皆凶人，醜類同惡相濟，我之十臣，雖不盡是我之親戚，然皆是仁厚有德之人，可以經邦濟世. Although those in whom Shoo reposes his most intimate confidence are his nearest relatives of the same surname with himself, yet they are all bad men and detestable, helping him and one another in their common wickedness. My ten ministers, on the other hand, although they are not all my own relatives, are virtuous men, benevolent and generous, fit to rule a country and benefit the age.

[Confucius said that there was a woman among Woo's ten able ministers;—see the Ann., *lee ch.* She is generally spoken of as 文母, 'mother Wao,' King Woo's mother, the famous 太姒. Others think Woo's wife, 邑姜 must be intended. It is not easy to believe this.]

P. 7. The will of Heaven might be seen from the earnest wish of the people that he should destroy Shoo. 天視……民聽,—see Men., V., Pt. I., v., 8.

It would not be easy to determine the exact meaning of the term 'Heaven' here. The attention of Choo He being called to the applicability of the definition of Heaven as meaning 'Reason,' or 'what is Reasonable' here, replied, 'Heaven certainly means "What is Reasonable"; but it does not mean that only.

It means also "the azure vault" (蒼蒼者亦是天); and it means too "the Lord and

Ruler who is above" (在上而有主宰者亦是天). The term is to be explained in every place by a consideration of the context. If here you say that it means

"what is Reasonable," how can that see and hear? Although the explanations are different, there yet is something common in all the usages. If you know that, you will not be startled by the differences; and if you know them, you will see that they are not inconsistent with the common idea.—See the passage quoted in the 集說.

百姓有過，在予一人.—Lin Che-k'e takes these words as equivalent to those in the 'Announcement of T'ang,' p. 7. 萬方有罪，在予一人; and most readers will feel inclined at first to agree with him. 過 is to

be distinguished, however, from 罪, and the sentiment appropriate to the lips of T'ang, who had vanquished his rival, is not to be expected from Woo, who was only marching to the fight. Gan-k'wé, as if he had T'ang's words before him, and yet felt the difference between 過

and 罪, interpreted,—'It devolves on me, the one man, to teach the people, and correct their

一人今朕必往。○
我武惟揚，侵于之
疆，取彼凶殘，我伐
用張，于湯有光。○
勗哉夫子，罔或無
畏，寧執非敵，百姓
懍懍，若崩厥角，鳴
呼，乃一德一心，立
定厥功，惟克永世。

8 *delay*;—I must now go forward. My military prowess is displayed,
and I enter his territories, to take the wicked tyrant. My punishment
9 *of evil* will be shown more glorious than that of T'ang. Rouse ye,
my heroes! Do not think that he is not to be feared;—better think
that he cannot be withstood. *His* people stand in trembling awe
of him, as if the horns were falling from their heads. Oh! unite
your energies, unite your hearts;—so shall you forthwith surely
accomplish the work to last for all ages."

errors.' But this idea is foreign to the occasion.
Ts'ao's explanation of 過 by 責, 'fault-
finding,' 'complaining of,' is very ingenious, and
sound.

See the *Conf. Ana.*, xx., l. 5, where
also we have the conclusion of the last para-
graph.

P. 8. *The present enterprise was not less but
more glorious than that of T'ang.* Compare
the paragraph as quoted by Mencius, Bk. III.,
Pt. II., v., 6. It will be seen to be rhythmical,
and this may account for the difficulty which
we find in construing it.

侵于之疆—*I invade and
enter the boundaries of Shou's domain.* 于

湯有光.—Ts'ao makes this to = 'and this
will reflect light on T'ang,' i.e., will make his
mind in attacking K'ee more clear. As the
editors of Yung-ching's Shoo say, this is too
ingenious. Ts'ao wanted to relieve Woo of a
portion of the charge of boastfulness, which is
urged against the language of this Book; but
foreign students of Chinese history do not feel
the pressure of such a charge. We are content
to take king Woo as we find him, and are not
concerned to bring his character either up or
down to the Chinese idea of a sage.

P. 9. *He rouses his men to prepare for the
fight with stern determination, not undervaluing
their enemy, but rather overvaluing him.* A

good part of this paragraph is also found in
Mencius;—see VII., Pt. II., iv. 5. His varia-
tions from the present text are, however, greater,
and affect the meaning of the several parts of
the par. How to account for the differences is
a difficult question. To say that our present
'Old Text' is a forgery, is an absurd solution;
—the true solution has yet to be found.

夫子.—'my masters,' here = 'my heroes.'

罔或無畏，寧執非敵—
無或以紂為不足畏，寧執
心以為非我所敵也， as in the
translation.

百姓懍懍—the people are
understood to be those of Shou's domain, and
the parts of the empire in the east. The
next clause represents them as a flock of cattle,
whose horns were being broken.

立定
厥功—the 立 is best taken adverbially,
= 'forthwith.'

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK I. THE GREAT DECLARATION. PART III.

泰誓下

時厥明王乃
大巡六師明
誓衆士。○王
曰、嗚呼、我
土君子、天有
顯道、厥類惟
彰、今商王受、
狎侮五常、荒

- 1 The time was on the morrow, when the king went round his six hosts in state, and made a clear declaration to all his
- 2 officers. He said, "Oh! my valiant men of the west, Heaven has enjoined the illustrious courses of duty, of which the *several* characters are quite plain. And now Show, the king of Shang treats with contemptuous slight the five constant virtues, and abandons himself

CONTENTS OF THE THIRD PART. On the day after addressing the troops as in the last Part, Woo had a grand review of all the hosts, and declared his sentiments more particularly to the officers. He sets forth, as before, the crimes of Show against God and men, as sufficiently justifying their enterprise; and urges the officers to support him with all their energies that he might do his work thoroughly, and utterly destroy the tyrant. Having set before them the prospect of rewards and punishments, he concludes with a humble but encouraging reference, to his father Wan.

P. 1. The time and occasion of the Declaration, with the parties addressed. The day was that immediately following that on which the last address was delivered,—the *Ko-wai* day of the calendar. It is supposed that the army was now about to march to meet or seek the enemy.

大巡六師—大巡, 'went greatly about.' Lee Ying-tsew (劉應秋) says that 巡 differs from 循, the latter meaning to

go round and cheer, while the former conveys the ideas of marshalling and warning. This is very doubtful. 六師 is used, like 王, throughout the Book, by anticipation. According to the subsequent statutes of the Chow dyn., the imperial forces consisted of six armies or brigades, while those of a great State were only three. In reality the hosts now collected on the banks of the Ho were an imperial force, and so they are denominated the 'six hosts.'

明誓衆士.—衆士, 'all the officers;—Gen- kwé says they were all 'from centuries upwards.'

P. 2. That Show, violating the laws of Heaven, had set both Heaven and men against him.

西土君子.—'princely men of the western regions' 君子 is appropriate as addressed to the officers, though Lin Che-k'e shows that it might be employed also to designate the common soldiers. 天有顯道、厥類

怠弗敬自絕于天
結怨于民。○斲朝
涉之脛剖賢人之
心作威殺戮毒痛
四海崇信姦回放
黜師保屏棄典刑
囚奴正士郊社不
修宗廟不享作奇
技淫巧以悅婦人
上帝弗順祝降時

to wild idleness and irreverence. He has cut himself off from Heaven, and brought enmity between himself and the people.

- 3 "He cut through the leg-bones of those who were wading in the morning; he cut out the heart of the worthy man. By the use of his power killing and murdering, he has poisoned and sickened all within the four seas. His honour and confidence are given to the villainous and bad. He has driven from him his instructors and guardians. He has thrown to the winds the statutes and penal laws. He has imprisoned and enslaved the upright officer. He neglects the sacrifices to Heaven and Earth. He has discontinued the offerings in the ancestral temple. He makes contrivances of wonderful device and extraordinary cunning, to please his woman. —God will no longer indulge him, but with a curse is sending down

惟彰—it seems most proper to explain these clauses by what is said below that Show had violated the 'five virtues.' The 'illustrious ways of Heaven,' therefore, are the various relationships, of society, and 'their characters,' are the duties severally belonging to them. This view is advocated by Ying-tā, who is followed by Ts'ao. Lin Che-k'ā, on the other hand, understood by the 'illustrious ways,' Heaven's love of virtue and hatred of vice, and by 'their characters,' the good and evil which severally attend them;—making reference to the use of the phrase 天道 in the 'Counsels of Yu,' p. 21, and in the 'Announcement of T'ang,' p. 2. This interpretation is ingenious and not without merit; but the other is preferable. 狎侮五常—狎—易

or 輕 'easily lightly; 狎侮—'slights and contemns' 五常—see on 五典, 'Can. of Shun,' p. 2.

P. 3. An enumeration of Show's wickednesses, and summons to the officers to support the king in punishing him.

斲朝涉之脛—Gan-k'wō tells us that Chow, one winter's day, seeing some people wading through a stream,

thought their legs had a wondrous power of enduring cold, and had them cut off through the shank-bone, that he might see their marrow.

剖賢人之心—this refers to the case of Po-kan. 毒痛四海—痛

—病 'to be sick'; here, 'to make sick.'

姦回—回—邪 or 曲, 'the crooked,' —'the bad.' 囚奴正士—this was

the case of the count of Ke. 郊社—see on the 'Doctrine of the Mean,' xis. 6 婦

人—this refers to Ts'ao. History has not preserved an account of the cunning contrivances referred to. Ts'ao says that since Show contrived 'the punishment of Roasting' to make her laugh, we can well understand that he tasked his ingenuity to the utmost in other things to please her. 祝降時—(是) 喪—Gan-k'wō defines 祝 by 斲 (up. 2d tone), 'to cut off,' 'to make an end of.' Ts'ao, misunderstanding 斲 for the same char. in the 3d tone, explains the clause by 斲然降

喪爾其孜孜奉予一人
 恭行天罰。○古^四人有言
 曰撫我則后虐我則讐
 獨夫受洪惟作威乃汝
 世讐樹德務滋除惡務
 本肆予小子誕以爾眾
 士殄殲乃讐爾眾士其
 尙迪果毅以登乃辟功
 多有厚賞不迪有顯戮。
 ○^五嗚呼惟我文考若日

- on him this ruin. Do ye support with untiring zeal me, the one man, reverently to execute the punishment appointed by Heaven.
- 4 The ancients have said, 'He who soothes us is our sovereign; he who oppresses us is our enemy.' This solitary fellow Show, having exercised great tyranny, is your perpetual enemy. *It is said again, 'In planting a man's virtue, strive to make it great; in putting away a man's wickedness, strive to do it from the root.'* Here I, who am a little child, by the powerful help of you, all my officers, will utterly exterminate your enemy. Do you, all my officers, march forwards with determined boldness, to sustain your prince. Where there is much merit, there shall be large reward. Where you advance not so, there shall be conspicuous disgrace.
- 5 "Oh! the virtue of my deceased father Wán was like the shining

是喪亡, 'is determinedly sending down this ruin.' But 祝, like the Hebrew *berak* is a *vox media*, and may be used for 'to curse' as well as 'to bless.' 孜孜—'with unwearyed efforts.'

P. 4. Show had shown himself the enemy of the people, never to be forgiven; and Woo calls his troops to support him in making root and branch work with the tyrant.

獨夫受—this was certainly very strong language, applied to Show who was still occupying the throne. See the reference to it by Mencius, I, Pt. II, viii. It is much in his style. Suen-tze has quoted it as from the 'Great Declaration,' in his 議

兵篇 世讐, 'an hereditary enemy,' one whose memory must be held in detestation in all the future. 樹德.....

務本—these clauses are probably sayings

of the day like the first two. The former of them appears, slightly varied, as 'an old saying,' in the 左傳 哀元年 其尙迪果毅—the union of 其 and 尙, to express earnest exhortation, has occurred more than once.

迪—進, 'to advance.' 果 and 毅 are both defined by 決 and 有決, 'determined.' It is said—致果爲毅, 毅 is the intensest determination.

登乃辟—登—成, 'to complete.' The 'Daily Explanation' brings the meaning out by saying:—以成爾君弔民伐罪之功.

功, 'to accomplish the work of your ruler in consoling the people and uniting the criminal.' Pp. 5, 6. The virtue of King Wán, and its effects. Success in the present enterprise would be owing to him; failure, if failure there should be,

月之照臨光
于四方顯于
西土惟我有
周誕受多方
○子克受非
予武惟朕文
考無罪受克
予非朕文考
有罪惟予小
子無良。

and influence of the sun and moon. His brightness extended over the four quarters of the empire, and shone signally in the western region. Hence it is that our Chow has received the allegiance of many States. If I subdue Show, it will not be my prowess, but the faultless virtue of my deceased father Wán. If Show subdue me, it will not be from any fault of my deceased father Wán, but because I, who am a little child, am not good."

would all be Woo's own. 5. The greater part of this par. appears in Mib-tse (兼愛, 下篇), thus:—太誓曰, 文王若

日若月, 乍照光于四方于西土, 惟我有周誕受多方, —I have translated this in the indicative mood, as historical narrative. Such is the view

of Gan-kwé who explains;—文王德大, 故受衆方之國, 三分天下

而有其二. 'The virtue of King Wan was so great, that he received the allegiance of the States of many quarters, and had two thirds of the empire.' Ts'ao found in the language an

auspice of Woo's success in the enterprise in

hazd. The 'Daily Explanation,' expanding his construction, says:—文考之德, 其所

及如此, 是以人心戴之, 天命歸之, 惟我有周, 宜其大受多方而有天下. 'Thus far-reaching was the virtue of my father Wán:—the hearts of men cherished him, and the decree of Heaven fell to him. Right it is that our House of Chow should receive the allegiance of the many regions, and possess the empire. I must prefer to construe with the older scholar.

6. The whole of this par. is found with the verbal variation of 紂 for 受, in the Lo Ke, Book 坊記, p. 16. In 無罪, 有罪, we must take 罪 lightly, as merely—過, 'fault,' 'error.'

APPENDIX.

I annex here the "Great Declaration," as it appears in Kéang Shing's 尚書集註音疏. He has been at great pains to gather up, and put together, the fragments of the Book, as it was when current in the Han dynasty. Wang Ming-shing, or Wang Kwang-luh (王光祿), gives a much briefer edition of it in his 尚書後案, and arranges many of the sentences, moreover, differently. The fragments give us now in many passages but a farrago of absurdities. We may be sure that a Book containing such things never received the imprimatur of Confucius:—

維四月，太子發上祭于畢，下至于孟津之上。○
 周公曰：都，忒哉！予聞古先哲王之格言。○太子
 發拜手稽首。○乃告司徒司馬司空，諸凡彌粟
 信哉。○子無知，以先祖之有德，臣左右小子，子
 受先公功，畢力賞罰，以定厥功于先祖之遺。○
 豢典師，師尚父，左杖黃戔，右把白旄，以號曰蒼
 蒼兕，兕，總余眾庶，與余舟楫，後至者斬。○太子
 發升舟中流，白魚入于王舟，王跪取出，俟以烹。
 羣公咸曰：休哉。○至于五日，有火自上復于下，
 至于王屋，流之爲雕，其色赤，其聲魄，五至以穀
 俱來。○武王喜，諸大夫皆喜。周公曰：茂哉茂哉，
 天之見此以勸之也，恐恃之。○正卜古立功立
 事，可以永年，傳于無窮，丕天之六律。○使上附
 以周公書，報誥于王，王動色變。○八百諸侯，不
 召自來，不期同時，不謀同詞，皆曰：受可伐矣。王
 曰：余未知天命，未可伐。維丙午，王還師，前師乃
 鼓拊譟，師乃桡，前歌後舞，極于上天下地。咸曰：
 孜孜無怠，天將有立父母，民之有政有居。○

In the fourth month, Fa, the eldest son and successor, went up and sacrificed at [or, to] Peih, and then proceeded to the neighbourhood of Meng-tsin.

The duke of Chow said, "Oh! exert yourself. I have heard the excellent words of the wise and ancient kings."

The prince Fa bowed with his face to his hands, and his head to the ground.

He then addressed the minister of Instruction, the minister of War, and the minister of Works, with all the other appointed officers,—"Be reverent, firm, and sincere. I am without know-

ledge, but I look to the virtuous ministers of my fathers to help me, who am but a little child. I have received the achieved work of the dukes my predecessors, and will exert my strength in rewards and punishments, to accomplish whatever they have left undone." On this he put the host in motion. The grand Tutor, Father Shang, carrying in his right hand an axe yellow with gold, and in his left a white flag, to give out his orders, said, "The hoary wild bull! The hoary wild bull! Lead on all your multitudes. There are your boats and cars. The last come shall be beheaded!"

As the prince Fa had got to the middle of the stream in his boat, a white fish entered it. The king knelt down and took it up. He then went on the bank, and burned it, in sacrifice to Heaven. All the dukes said, "This is auspicious!"

On the fifth day there was a ball of fire which descended from above, till it came to the king's house, and there dissolved into a crowd. Its colour was red; its voice was calm and decided; five times it came bringing a stalk of grain.

The king was glad, and all his officers also. The duke of Chow said, "Be strenuous! Be strenuous! Heaven has showed this to encourage us. But let us trust to it with dread."

Examining into antiquity, it is by accomplishing merit and accomplishing business, that one can transmit his work to perpetual generations, and magnify the laws of Heaven. They sent up this to be joined to the writing of the duke of Chow, and reported to the king, who was moved, and his countenance changed.

Eight hundred princes came of themselves without being called; they came at the same time without previous agreement; without consultation they all spoke to the same effect, saying, "Shou may be attacked." The king said, "You do not know the will of Heaven; it is not yet the time to attack him." On the day ping-woo he accordingly withdrew his army. In front the host beat their drums and shouted. Some of the soldiers lowered their spears, and went through their exercise; with songs in front and dancing behind, they made heaven and earth resound, while they cried out, "Let us never be weary. Heaven is about to raise up a parent for us. The people will have good government and dwell quietly."

司馬在前。○今殷王紂乃用其婦人之言，自絕于天，毀壞其三正。○離遏其王父母弟，乃斷棄其先祖之樂，乃爲淫聲，用變亂正聲，以悅婦人，故今台發，維錘行天罰，勗哉夫子，不可再，不可三。○附下而罔上者死，附上而罔下者刑，與聞國政，而無益于民者退，在上位，而不耐進取者逐。○紂夷居，不肯事上帝鬼神，棄厥先神祇不祀，乃曰：吾有命，毋侮其務，天亦縱之，棄而弗葆。○小人見姦巧，乃間不言也，發舉鈞。○紂有億兆夷人，亦有離德，余有亂十人，同心同德。○天既自我民眠，天聽自我民聽。○民之所欲，天必從之。○朕謬協朕卜，襲于休祥，戎商必克。○文王若日，若月，照光于四方，于西土。○子克紂，非子武，惟朕文考無辜，紂克子，非朕文考有辜，惟子小子無良。○惡乎君子而有顯德，其行甚章，爲鑑不遠，在彼殷王，謂人有命，謂敬不可行，謂祭無益，謂暴無傷，上帝不常，九有以亡，上帝不順，祝降其喪，惟我有周，受之大帝。○獨夫紂。○我武惟揚，使于之疆，則取于殘，殺伐用張，于湯有光。

The minister of War was in front. "Now, King Chow listens to the words of his women;—he has cut himself off from Heaven; he has destroyed and ruined all his hopes from heaven or earth or men. He has separated himself from his royal uncles and his maternal relatives. He has cast away the music of his forefathers, and by making dissolute melodies he has changed the correct melodies, to please his women. On this account I, Fa, reverently proceed to execute the punishment determined by Heaven. Rouse ye, my heroes! Don't let us need a second effort, or a third. He who deceives those above him, in the interest of those below, dies; he who deceives those below, in the interest of those above, is punished; he who takes counsel on the government of the kingdom, which is of no use to the people, has to retire, he who is in the highest position, and cannot advance the worthy, must be driven out.

"Chow abides squatting on his heels, and will not serve God or spirits. He has cast away, and will not sacrifice to, the spirits of his fathers. He says on the contrary, 'The decree is mine;' and therefore he will not put forth his strength in the duties to them. Heaven allows him to take this course, having thrown him away, and no more preserving him. A mean man sees villainy and cunning, or hears it, without speaking;—his knowledge makes him as guilty as the villain.

Chow has hundreds of thousands and millions of ordinary men, but they are divided in their courses; I have ten able men who are one in heart and in course. Heaven sees as my people see, and hears as my people hear. My dreams agree with my divinations; the auspicious omen is double;—my attack on Shang must succeed. King Wan was like the sun or the moon. He lightened with his shining the four quarters,—the western regions. If I vanquish Chow, it will not be my prowess;—it will be the faultlessness of my father Wan. If

Shou vanquishes me, it will not be from any fault of my father Wan, but because I am not good.

"Oh! when the superior man has illustrious virtue, his conduct is grandly displayed. There is a beacon not distant;—it is in that king of Yin. He says to men that the decree is his; that reverence should not be practised; that sacrifice is of no advantage; that oppression does not matter. God is not constant, and the empire is passing from him. God is not allowing him, but sending down his ruin with a curse. Our House of Chow is receiving the empire from the great God. The solitary fellow Chow. Chow has hundreds and tens of thousands of ministers, who have hundreds and tens of thousands of hearts. King Woo has three thousand ministers with one heart.

My prowess is displayed; I invade his borders, and will take the tyrant. My punishment of evil will be exhibited more glorious than that of Tang."

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK II. THE SPEECH AT MUH.

時^二甲子昧爽，王^一于商郊，
左杖黃鉞，右秉白旄，
以麾曰：逖矣，西土之

牧誓

- 1 I. The time was the grey dawn of the day kää-tsze. On that morning the king came to the open country of Muh in the borders of Shang, and addressed his army. In his left hand he carried a battle-axe, yellow with gold, and in his right he held a white ensign, which he brandished, saying, "Far are ye come, ye

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—牧誓, 'The Speech at Muh.' Muh [Kuang Shing edits 埤 instead of Muh] was in the south of the pres. district of Ke (淇縣), dep. of Wei-hwy, Ho-nan. It was a tract of open country, stretching into the pres. dis. of Keih (汲), and at no great distance from the capital of Show. King Woo had, no doubt, made choice of it as a favourable field for the decisive battle between him and the tyrant. I return here to the rendering of 誓 by 'Speech,' as in the 'Councils of the great Yu,' p. 20, and other places. It would have been well if the term 'Declaration' had not been used instead of it in the last Book. The Speech at Muh is found in both texts. There is more of the martial spirit in it than in any other of the speeches of the Shou.

CONTEXTS. It is the morning of the day of battle, for which the king had prepared his host in the three speeches of the last Book. Once more he addresses the confederate princes, his officers, and his men. He sets forth, much as before, but more briefly, the intolerable wickedness of Show, and then instructs and warns the troops on how they should behave them-

selves in the fight. The speech proper begins with the 5th paragraph. The four par. that precede may be considered as forming a preliminary chapter.

CH. I. Pp. 1-4. THE TIME AND CIRCUMSTANCES OF THE SPEECH. 1. The time; and the appearance of the king. 時甲子昧

爽.—the day 甲子 was six days later than now-woo ('The Great Speech' Pt. II, p. 1), which was, we saw, the 29th of the 1st month. The speech at Muh, therefore, is held to have been spoken on the 4th day of the second month.

昧—冥 'dark,' 爽—明, 'light;' 昧爽, 'the dark and the light,' —the grey dawn.

杖—持 'to hold in the hand.' Its tone in this sense was diff. at one time from that which it had in its more common signification of 'a staff.' It now seems to be used only with the 3d tone. 秉 (from a hand grasping stalks of grain) is of similar signification to 杖.

The 'axe' is supposed to be called 'yellow,' from its having been ornamented with gold. The 旄 ensign consisted (according to the figures

人。○王曰：嗟，我
友邦冢君，御事，
司徒，司馬，司空，
亞旅，師氏，千夫，
長，百夫長。○及
庸，蜀，羌，髳，微，盧，
彭，濮人。○稱爾
戈，比爾干，立爾
矛，予其誓。○王

- 2 men of the western regions!" He added, "Ah! ye hereditary rulers of my friendly States; ye managers of affairs, the ministers of instruction, of war, and of public works: the many *officers* subordinate to them: the master of my body-guards: the captains of thousands, and captains of hundreds; and ye, O men of Yung, Shuh, Keang, Maou, Wei, Loo, P'ang, and P'ö;—lift up your lances, join your shields, raise your spears:—I have a speech to make."

of it, which agree with the component parts of the character) of several ox-tails, suspended as streamers from a staff. By means of this Woo could intimate his wishes as to the order of their position, &c., to the troops, and therefore he carried it in his right hand. Gan-kwō says the *axe* was in the left hand and the flag in the right, to show that Woo considered his work was not so much to kill as to teach. This is being absurdly ingenious. We may be sure that Woo had his *axe* in his right hand in the battle.

遠，'far,' 'distant.' The 'Daily Explanation' paraphrases the clause thus:—爾等皆西土之人，我以伐暴救民之故，率爾至此，其行亦已遠矣。Ts'ao observes that he spoke thus to comfort the men under their long travel.

Pp. 2, 3. The different parties addressed.
2. 我友邦冢君，御事。—see on the last Book, Pt. i, p. 3. The 'managers of affairs' were the officers immediately after specified, belonging to Woo's own govt.,—to the State of Chow. The 司徒，司馬，

and 司空 were three of the 'six ministers' (六卿) under the imperial govt. of Chow, when the dynasty was fully established, and whose duties are described in Bk. XX, part. 7—13. A great State, such as Chow was before the extinction of the Shang dyn., had only three principal ministers, whose names are here given. But we may inquire what the ministers of instruction and works had to do in the camp. Ying-tz says that the former superintended all orders given to the troops, and the latter all

the business of intrenchments. Ts'ao seems to have thought that they were there as the generals of the three armies of the State. This is not likely;—see Ch'in See-k'ian, *in loc.* We can only form a vague idea on this, as on many other points in the Shoo.

亞旅—亞，'secondary,' 'of inferior rank'; 旅—衆，'multitude,' 'many.' I do not find it possible to say whether we are to understand by these characters the 'multitude of inferior officers' generally, or two distinct classes of such. Gan-kwō had the former view. He says:—衆大夫，其位次卿。The phrase denotes all the great officers, whose posts were inferior to those of the ministers. Ts'ao on the other hand supposes that the 亞 were the 大夫 or 'great officers,' below, but next in rank to, the ministers, and five of whom filled up the space between each minister and his 士, or 'officers,' of whom there were 27, denoted in the text by the term 旅。

師氏—'the Instructor.' The functions of an officer thus designated are given at length in the 13th Book of the Chow Le (地官司徒第二之六). He was a ts-foo or great officer of the second grade, and the Tutor of the heir-apparent, at the same time executing various duties about the sovereign, and specially having charge of the guard of foreign—barbarian—mercenaries who kept watch outside the royal gate. In time of war, or when the sovereign went abroad for any other cause, he followed in attendance, with the whole or a portion of that guard. It must have been in this capacity

○之惟之牝無牝言人曰
今索家晨鷄晨雞曰有古

- 5 II. The king said, "The ancients have said, 'The hen does not announce the morning. The crowing of a hen in the morning

that he was present at Muh;—if indeed the 師氏 of the text was the same officer who is so designated in the Chow Le. Tsan follows. Gan-kwā is saying that the 師氏 were 'the officers who guarded the gates' (以兵守門者).

千夫長百夫長

長—we can only translate these designations literally as I have done. According to the Chow Le, five men formed a wu (伍); five wus, or 25 men, formed a liang (兩); four liangs, or 100 men, formed a tsuh (卒); five tsuh, or 500 men, formed a lei (旅); five leis, or 2,500 men, formed a sze (師); and five szes, or 12,500 men, formed a ksun (軍). Gan-kwā and Wang Shu both say that the 百夫長 were 'leaders of tsuh,' which of course is literally correct; but they say also that the 千夫長 were 'leaders of sze,' commanded 2,500 men each. K'ang-shing agrees with them in this, but makes the 百夫長 to have been 'leaders of lei' (旅帥) commanding 500 men each. It seems absurd to insist on such explanations. The arrangements of Woo's army much more probably corresponded with the terms which he employed.

3. The names Yung, Shuh, &c., enumerated here, are said generally to be those of 'eight kingdoms of the rude tribes on the west and south' (西南夷八國名). The first and last are found associated together in the 左傳文十六年, in an attack upon the great State of Ts'oo. It is said that 'the people of Yung... led the hundred tribes of the P'ō to invade Ts'oo; and from this description of the P'ō by 'hundreds' it is supposed that they were under no general head or chieftain, but consisted of many clans, each acknowledging its own chief. The site of the Yung was in the pres. dia. of Ching-shan (竹山), dep. of Yun-yang (鄖陽), Hoo-pih; that of the P'ō was in the same prov., dep. of King chow (荊州), dist. of Shih-show (石首). The country of Shuh was the pres. dep. of Shing-too (成都) in Sze-ch'uan. West and north from this was the country of K'ang; while that of Maou and

Wei was to the east, radiating from the pres. dia. of Pa (巴縣), dep. of Chung-king, as a centre. Loou is referred to the present dia. of Nan chang (南漳), dep. of Ssang-yang (襄陽), in Hoo-pih.

The name of Pung remains in Pung-shan dia., dep. of Mei (眉), Sze-ch'uan.

All these tribes, we may suppose, acknowledged the supremacy of the princes of Chow, and had been summoned to assist king Woo in his enterprise against Shuh. Some critics, like Wang Lo-chai (王魯齋; see his 'Doubts about the Shoo,' on the Speech at Muh), say that they had come to his banner of their own accord, without being called—which is very unlikely.

[Gaubill says in a note on this par. (Le Chou-king, p. 157), that Yang, Shuh, &c., were the countries on the south-west,—e.g., in Sze-ch'uan and Yun-nan. To this M. de Gaubill appends a very bold and sweeping remark:—"I will add," he says, "that all the peoples in the text bear the name of 夷, or barbarians. Thus, this conquest of China, made by king Woo, was a conquest effected by the foreigners on the west of China." The remark is unwarranted. So far as we learn from the Shoo, these tribes were only an inferior and auxiliary force on the occasion.]

4. Attitude in which the troops were required to stand. 稱—舉, 'to lift up; apparently

—'to bear aloft in the right hand.' 立—立

於地, 'to erect on the ground; i.e., to rest the end on the ground, the points being shown above. There were three weapons of the nature of spears or lances, differing in the forms of their points which would be difficult to describe in brief space, but principally distinguished by their lengths,—the 戈, the 戟 and the 矛.

Acc. to Wang Ts'aoan, the handle of the 戈 was 6 ft. 6 in. long; that of the 戟 16 ft.; and of the 矛, 21 feet. Medhurst translates 戈 by 'javelin;' but I have not seen it anywhere stated that the instrument was thrown from the hand.

The 干 or 'shield' was long and comparatively narrow, so as to cover most of the body.

Ch. II. THE SPEECH. Pp. 3, 4. The crisis of Shoo.

晨—晨, 'the morning,' here = 晨鳴報曉, 'crows in the morning to an-

商王受，惟婦言是
用，昏棄厥肆祀弗
答，昏棄厥遺王父
母弟不迪，乃惟四
方之多罪逋逃，是
崇是長，是信是使，
是以爲大夫卿士，
俾暴虐于百姓，以
姦宄于商邑。○今

6 indicates the subversion of the family.' Now Show, the king of Shang, follows only the words of his wife. He has blindly thrown away the sacrifices which he should present, and makes no response for the favours which he has received; he has blindly thrown away his paternal and maternal relatives, not treating them properly. They are only the vagabonds of the empire, loaded with crimes, whom he honours and exalts, whom he employs and trusts, making them great officers and nobles, so that they can tyrannize over the people, exercising their villainies in the city of Shang.

nounce the day.' 索 is defined by Gau-kwó by 盡; and by Keang Shing, after K'ang-shing, by 散. The two definitions are much akin. Woo's language may seem rather malignised; but it was, no doubt, suited to his audience. And we must bear in mind the character and deeds of T'ü-ko against whom it was directed.

6. 昏 (昏) 棄厥肆祀不答. —comp. the last Book, Pt. I, §; Pt. II, §. 肆—陳, 'to set forth'; 厥肆祀—其所當陳之祭祀, 'the sacrifices which he ought to offer,' K'ang-shing understood by 肆祀, 'the name of a sacrifice';—but incorrectly. 答, 'to answer,' 'to make an acknowledgment for favours received,' such being the common meaning of sacrifice with the Chinese; —Tung-po says, 祭所以報也, 故謂之答. Here also K'ang-shing incorrectly defines 答 by 問; and 不答—不問, 'without asking any questions, or thinking about them.' 王父母弟—Gau-kwó takes 王父, as—祖 or 'grandfather,' saying that if he thus treated his grand-uncles, we may be sure he did not treat his uncles any

better. Woo Ch'ing says that 王父母弟—王之諸父, 諸母, 諸弟, 'the royal uncles, royal aunts, royal cousins.' I think we must join 王父 together, and agree with Wang T'aoou that 王父母弟—王父弟與母弟. The general meaning is plain enough,—that Show separated himself from all his relatives, both by blood and by affinity, who would naturally have the interests of the Imperial House at heart. 不迪—迪—道, and 不迪=不以道遇之, as in the translation. Keang Shing takes 迪=進 or 登, and 不迪—不用, 'does not employ them.' The meaning is not unsuitable; but it is not so good as that which I have followed. 逋逃—'refugees.' Woo Ch'ing says:—四方多罪之人逃亡而歸紂, 'the great criminals of all quarters make their escape, and betake themselves to Chow.' 商邑—'the city of Shang,' probably meaning the capital of Show. We might translate 邑, however, in the plural. Keang Shing takes it as—國, 'kingdom' or 'State.'

予發，惟恭行天之罰。今
日之事，不愆于六步七
步，乃止齊焉。夫子勗哉。
○不愆于四伐五伐六
伐七伐，乃止齊焉。勗哉
夫子。○尙桓桓如虎，如
貔如熊，如羆于商郊。弗
趯克奔，以役西土。勗哉
夫子。○爾所弗勗，其于
爾躬有戮。

- 7 "Now I, Fä, am simply executing respectfully the punishment appointed by Heaven. In to-day's business do not advance more than six or seven steps; and then stop and adjust your ranks:—my
8 brave men, be energetic! Do not exceed four blows, five blows, six blows, or seven blows; and then stop and adjust your ranks:—
9 my brave men, be energetic! Display a martial bearing. Be like tigers and panthers, like bears, and grisly bears;—here in the border of Shang. Do not rush on those who fly to us in submission, but receive them to serve our western land:—my brave men, be
10 energetic! If you are not thus energetic, you will bring destruction on yourselves."

Pp. 7-10. *Directions about the rules to be observed in the impending battle.*

7. The first part of this part had better be joined to the one preceding. King Woo speaks in it of himself in contrast with Shou;—of himself as engaged on behalf of Heaven to punish one who was an enemy to both Heaven and men. Ta'as and others, prefixing it to this and the succeeding part, make a milder spirit breathe in them than the reader will easily perceive. The stopping at every seven steps and seven blows was, they think, that as few of the enemy as possible might be killed. In this way the tyrant would be overthrown and Heaven's justice would be satisfied with the sacrifice of comparatively few lives! The cautions were evidently given that the order of battle might be preserved unbroken.

愆—過, 'to exceed,' 步—進
趯, 'to advance hurriedly,' 齊—齊
整, 'to adjust and put in order.' The paraphrase of the 'Daily Explanation' is—其進而迎敵，不過于六步七

步，即便止駐，以整齊部伍，然後復從而伐之。In advancing to meet the enemy, take no more than six or seven steps. Then stop and adjust your ranks, and go forward again to annihilate them.

夫子,—see the last Book, Pt. li., p. 2.

伐—擊刺, 'to strike and thrust.' They are thus admonished, it is said, lest they should be hurried on in their rage by a desire for slaughter.

桓桓—威武貌, 'the appearance of martial prowess.' The

說文 quotes the passage with 狙 instead of 桓. 貔 is described as 豹屬.

弗趯克奔—do not meet those who are able to—'who really do—run.' The meaning is as in the translation.

K'ang Shing, however, edits 禦 instead of 趯 after K'ang-shing. Ma Yung also read 禦.

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK III. THE SUCCESSFUL COMPLETION OF THE WAR.

商。于步己、翼死王惟
○征自王日魄、辰一 武
厥伐周、朝癸越旁月 成

- 1 I. In the first month, the day jin-shin immediately followed the end of the moon's waning. The next day was kwei ke, when the king in the morning marched from Chow to attack and punish Shang.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—武成, 'The Successful Completion of the War.' The phrase —武成, meaning, literally, 'military affairs completed,' occurs in the 3d paragraph, and has thence been taken to designate the Book. It is not objectionable as a designation; though it by no means covers the contents, they all grow up around the accomplishment of Woo's enterprise. The Book is found only in the old Text.

DIFFICULTIES IN THE ARRANGEMENT AND INTERPRETATION. These will fully appear in the course of the exposition; it may be sufficient here to describe them generally; and for that purpose I will use in the first place the words of Ying-tê. He says:—"This Book consists mainly of narrative; the portion composed of the king's words is small. The language of the several parts is without the beginning and the end properly marked, and its composition altogether is different from that of the other Books.

From 惟一月 (p. 1) down to 受命于周 (p. 3), the historian relates the march to the attack of Yin, and the return from the enterprise, with the assembling of the princes:—as introductory to the words of the king.

From 王若曰 to 大統未集 (both in p. 3), Woo narrates the rise of their House of Chow; from 予小子 (p. 3) to 名山

大川 (p. 5), he states how he had inherited the possessions and the duties of king Wan, and how he declared to the spirits the crimes of Show; from 曰惟有道 (p. 5) to 無作神羞, (p. 5), he repeats his prayer to the spirits.

From 既戊午 to the end, the historian again resumes his narrative, and tells of the attack on Show, of his death, of Woo's entrance into the capital of Yin, and of his governmental measures.

The prayer, however, which concludes with 無作神羞, is incomplete. According to the analogy of other prayers, recorded in the 左傳, there ought to be, after those words, some protestation by Woo of his own intentions. And when all the princes and officers were receiving their investitures and commands from the new emperor of the House of Chow, we cannot suppose that he did not address them, in a manner similar to T'ang, in his 'Announcement.' With so many speeches to them before the conflict, we cannot believe that he simply related to them after its close his prayer to the spirits. On these two grounds I must conclude that a portion of the Book, immediately following these words—無作神羞, has been lost.

'Perhaps it was wanting when the tablets were hidden away in the wall; perhaps it was among the confused and broken fragments which Gan-kuo says there were in addition to the 38 Books which he recovered. As he found in the tablets of this Book a beginning of it and an end, he did not say anything of the intermediate portion being deficient.'

Ying-tu was thus of opinion that the Book was deficient; but it does not appear that he had any doubts as to the relative order in which the several portions stand. He thought some tablets were lost; but did not suppose that any of those preserved had been displaced. In the Sung dynasty, however, the critics assumed not only that there were portions missing, but that the remaining tablets were all disordered and confused. Ch'ing E-ch'uan (程伊川),

Jew Gau-shu (劉安世), and others, had their several ways of arranging them so as to produce a consistent narrative; and Ts'ao Ch'in, profiting by the determinations of his master Ch'ao He, produced an edition of the Book, which has superseded the old one in the copies of the Shoo, which are now taught in schools. It will be found, with a translation, in an appendix. Scholars of the present dynasty for the most part acquiesce in his views, when they do not discard the old text altogether. There are some, however, who think they can improve on him, and Wang Leo-chue has given a disposition of the paragraphs somewhat different in his edition of 'Doubts about the Shoo.'

Maou Kw'ling will not admit either of disorder or defect in the Book. He has certainly proved by references to the 左傳 and the

國語, that the prayer of Woo to the spirits was a part of his speech or announcement to the princes;—see the 尚書廣聽錄, on the 武威. So far it is established that the

disorder in the parts which the Sung critics complained of and tried to remedy,—if indeed we should call it disorder,—existed even during the Chow dynasty. Maou says, 'If the text be not good, we have only to be content with it as it is.' In this he is right. The ingenuity of the critics has not been of service either to history or to the classic.

CONTENTS. These are summarily and correctly stated in the prefatory Notice.—King Woo amote Yin; and the narrative of his proceeding to the attack; and of his return and sending his animals back to their pastures, with his governmental measures, form 'The Completion of the War.' The whole is divided in Yung-ching's Shoo into 2 parts, which I have rearranged in 10, including them also in three chapters. The first chapter, containing 4 parts, consists of brief historical notes of the commencement and close of Woo's expedition. The second also contains 4 parts, and gives the address (or a part of it) delivered by Woo to his nobles and officers on occasion, we may suppose, of their solemn recognition of him as emperor, and of his confirming some of them in their old investiture or appointments, and giving new ones to others. The third, in the two concluding parts, is again historical, and relates several incidents of the battle between

Woo and Shou, going on to subsequent events, and important governmental measures of the new dynasty.

CH. I. Pp. 1—4. THE MARCH TO THE ATTACK, AND CONQUEST OF SHANG. THE RETURN, AND MEASURES ON THE CONCLUSION OF THE WAR.

1. 惟一月壬辰旁死魄

—月, 'the first month'; but whether we

are to understand the first month of the Hea year,—the first month of spring; or the first month of the Chow year,—the second month of winter, cannot yet be determined. Ts'ao endeavours here to reinforce his view that the month is the first of the Hea year, by calling attention to the language, 一月,

and not 正月, but this circumstance is of little weight. 壬辰 is the calendaric

name of the day, and it was 旁 (read *phang*,

3d time, = 近, 'near to' 'close by') 死魄,

'next to the *dis* of the dead disk.' This expression is generally understood to be descriptive of the first day of the new moon. In p. 1 we find the phrase 生魄, denoting the 15th

day or full moon. In p. 2, again, we have 哉

生明, 'the beginning of the birth of light,'

as denoting the third day, when the moon first becomes visible. It is clear therefore that the

term 魄 was applied to the disk of the moon

from the time it began to wane until the

new moon reappeared. How it came to be so

used, I do not perceive. The 說文 has 霸

instead of 魄, but pronounced in the same way;

and in the dict. we find the definition quoted,

一月體黑者謂之霸, 'the body

of the moon when dark is called 霸.'

[Fan Sze-lin (潘士遴) observes that

after the 1st day of the moon, the light went

on to grow, and the darkness of her disk (魄)

to disappear; that if the previous month was

'gravel' (consisted, that is, of 30 days), then on

the second day of the month, the 'light' began.

He concludes that this was the case here, and

that the day denoted by 旁死魄 was not

the second but the first day of the month. The

editors of Yung-ching's Shoo are inclined to

agree with him, saying it is more natural and

in rule to find a specification of the first day

of the month than of the second. This view

does not seem unlikely.]

越翼日癸巳一越及翼日

—明日, 'the morrow.' 癸巳 follows 壬

辰 in the calendar. 王朝步自周

—步一行, 'to travel,' 'to march.' 王步

is, literally, 'the king paced it.' 周 is

understood to stand here for Woo's capital,

四月哉生明王來自商，
乃偃武修文，歸馬于
華山之陽，放牛于桃
林之野，示天下弗服。

- 2 In the fourth month, at the first appearance of the moon, the king came from Shang to Fung, when he hushed all the movements of war, and attended to the cultivations of peace. He sent back his horses to the south of mount Hwa, and let loose his oxen in the open country of T'aou-lin, showing the empire that he would not use them again.

called Haou (郛), which was 30 li south of the pres. dis. city of Ch'ang-gan, dep. of Szechuan. In the next par. it is stated that he returned to Fung, which had been the capital of his father Wan, in the pres. dis. of Hoo (鄠), of the same dep. The two places were only about 8 miles apart; Haou on the east of the river Fung, and Fung on the west of it. The site of Haou was converted into a lake (昆明池) by the emp. Woo (世宗孝武帝, a.o. 139-87) of the Han dyn. 于征伐商一于一往 'to go,' 'to proceed.'

[We saw, in the 'Great Speech,' Pt. II. p. 1, that on the day *ow-wo*, the 25th day of the 1st month, king Woo halted on the northern bank of the Ho. On that same day he had crossed the river;—see the 9th par. below. The distance from Haou to M'ang-tsin is said by Ying-ta to be 1,600 li , and I have seen another estimate of it at 900 li . Taking the larger number, we have 25 days' marches, of 40 li each, or about 14 miles per day, which could be accomplished without difficulty. Five days

after (the day 癸亥), Woo drew up his army in the borders of Shang, and waited for the dawn of the next morning, the 4th day of the 3d month, to decide the contest between himself and Show.

After the battle, Show fled to the 'Star tower,' and burned himself to death. In the mean time, Woo, having received the congratulations of the princess on his victory, pressed on after the tyrant. On arriving at the capital, the people were waiting outside the walls in anxious expectation, which the king relieved by sending his officers among them with the words,—'Supreme Heaven is sending down blessing' (上天降休). The multitudes reverently saluted the king, who bowed to them in return, and hurried on to the place where the dead body of Show was. Having discharged three arrows at it from his chariot, he descended, struck the body with a light sword,

and cut the head off with his 'yellow' battle-axe, and made it be suspended from the staff of a large white flag. Much in the same way he dealt with the bodies of two of Show's concubines who had killed themselves; and then returned to his army. These accounts are taken from the 'Historical Records,' and are put down by subsequent writers as lying legends, inconsistent with Woo's character.

Next day he entered the capital of Shang in great state, attended by his brothers and the chiefs of his host, and solemnly accepted the charge of the empire. It was said to him, on behalf of all the nobles, 'The last descendant of the House of Yin having destroyed and disowned the bright virtue of his forefathers, having insolently discontinued the sacrifices to the spirits, and having blindly tyrannized over the people of Shang, the report of his deeds ascended to the great God in heaven' (其章顯聞于天上帝). On this, Woo bowed twice, with his head to the ground, and said, 'It is right that I should change the great charge, that I should put away the House of Yin, and receive myself the great appointment of Heaven.' He then again bowed twice, with his head to the ground, and went out.

In this way king Woo took on himself the sovereignty of the empire. One of his first steps was to appoint Show's son, Luh-too (祿父) prince over the domain of Yin; and he appears to have remained in the capital of Shang between two and three months, employed in the measures described in the last two parts of this Book, and in others requisite to the establishment of the dynasty of his House.]

Pp. 2, 3. Measures in the 4th month showing that the war was over.

2 既四月哉(一始)生明.—this was the 3d day of the month;—see on the last par. But there had been an intercalary month between. This is proved in the following manner.—The day 丁未 of par. 3 evidently belonged to the 4th

成,大戊,三豆,奔侯,廟祀,○
 ○告,柴日,籩走,衛邦,于丁_三
 既_四武,望庚,越執,駿甸,周末.

3. On the day ting-we he sacrificed in the ancestral temple of Chow, when the chiefs of the imperial domain and of the teen, how, and wei domains all hurried about, carrying the dishes. Three days after, he presented a burnt-offering to Heaven, and worshipped towards the mountains and rivers, solemnly announcing the successful completion of the war.

month. 甲子, the day of the battle of Muh, was the 4th of the 2d month, which we may suppose had 29 days. This brings us to 庚寅, for the first day of the next month, the 18th of which was a 丁未 day; but it could not be that of the text. We have to count 60 days before we come to the next 丁未 day, which would consequently be in the 5th month, unless there was an intercalary month between the 1st and the 4th. The chronologers are all agreed in supposing that there was a second month intercalary this year; and consequently the ting-we day of the text would be the 18th or 19th of the fourth month. 至于豐.

—Fung was the capital of Wan and here was the ancestral temple of the princes of Chow. That was the reason, as we gather from the next par., why Woo went in the first place to Fung and not to Hsiao.

假武修文. —in the rest of the par. we have two instances of the 'hushing of military measures,' (假 is defined by 臥, 'to sleep,' 'to send to sleep'); what 'the cultivations of peace' were, we are not told. 華山之陽 = 華山之南.

'the south of mount Hwa.' For mount Hwa, see on 'The Tribute of Yu,' Pt. I, p. 62.

The 'wild of Taon-lin' (Peach forest) is referred to the country about the hill of Muh-nu (牧牛), called also the hill of Kwa-foo (夸父), in the south-east of the pres. dep.

of Tung-chow (同州). An objection has been taken to the credibility of the account here on the ground that the horses and oxen belonged to the people,—were only contributed by them for the expedition; and that to appropriate them to himself in this way, instead of returning them to their owners, was an act befitting Shou, and not at all to be expected from king Woo. But we may be sure these were Woo's own horses and oxen. If it be granted that the people did supply a portion of the animals used in war, the sovereign himself furnished a larger

number;—see K'o-lung's 古文尚書寬詞, Bk. IV., on the point.

[In the Le Ke, the Bk. 樂記, pp. 29-22, there is an expansion of the text, celebrating King Woo. It may be that the author had before him some copy of the 武成, current in the Han dynasty, fuller than that which we now have. In p. 19, it is said—馬散之華山之陽, 而弗復乘; 牛散之桃林之野, 而弗復服; 車甲之郟, 而弗復用; 倒載干戈, 包之以虎皮. —然後天下知武王之不用兵也.]

3. Various sacrifices, and solemn announcement of the completion of the War. 丁未祀于

周廟—the fourth month would commence on 己丑 or 庚寅, according as the previous one had 29 or 30 days, and 丁未 must have been the 18th or 19th day. Before setting out on his enterprise, Woo had sacrificed to his father, to God and the earth ('The Great speech,' Pt. I, p. 10); here at its close he sacrifices, and, we may suppose, gives thanks at the same altars. 邦甸侯衛—see the account

and figure on pp. 148, 149, of the divisions of the empire under the Chow dynasty. By the 邦 we must understand, I think, the central division,—the imperial domain (王畿) and

甸侯衛—we have three of the divisions which lay beyond it,—a part for the whole of the five domains which constituted the 'middle kingdom.' We cannot account for the irregularity of the order in which they are given. After 衛

we must understand 諸侯, equivalent to 'the chiefs,' which I have supplied in the translation.

呼曰王^五周命工暨冢庶生
群鳴若○于受百君邦魄

- 4 After the moon began to wane, the hereditary princes of the various States, and all the officers, received their appointments from Chow.

Gao-k'wé defines 駿 by 大, 'great,' 'in great state'; it is better to take it with Ts'ao after the 爾雅 as 一速. 豆籩—see Chü. Ana., VIII, iv. 3. It was an honour to the chiefs and princes to assist at the sacrifice.

越三日庚戌—between ting-wé and kang-seuk there are two days, so the latter was the 21st or 22d day of the month. In Bk. XII, p. 2, we have 丙午越三日戊申, where both ping-woo and more-shin must be reckoned to make up the three days;—the writers had different methods equally legitimate, of reckoning. 柴—see on the 'Cau of

Shun,' p. 3. 望—see on the 'Cau of Shun,' p. 3. This sacrifice was offered, I suppose, at the altar of the great earth, mentioned in Bk. I, Pt. I, p. 10. 4. The princes and officers receive their appointments from Woo, as the first emperor of the dynasty of Chow. 既生魄

—the moon begins to wane.—the darkness is born—after the full moon. The day indicated in the text is generally supposed to be the 16th; but Ch'ü Leuk, observes that, if that had been the day, the phrase would have been 哉生魄, corresponding to 既生明 in p. 2. He

would lay stress therefore on the 既, as showing that the darkness was not only 'born,' but had made some growth; and fixes the day as the 17th. But here there is a difficulty.—The historian goes backward instead of forward with his narrative; the 17th would precede the day nay-wé. Ying-ti calls attention to this circumstance, he himself supposing the day to be the 16th; and in the fact of the chiefs assisting at the sacrifice in the ancestral temple he sees a proof that they had previously received their appointments from king Woo. I should

myself extend the force of the 既 much more than Ch'ü does. Why may not the phrase 既生魄 indicate any between the 15th and the end of the month, when we should come to the 'death' or end of the darkness? The historian has chosen to indicate thus indefinitely the day when the princes and officers received their appointments from Woo. As to their assisting on the day ting-wé at his sacrificial service, that might very well be. Things could not be done in order while the revolution was in progress. From the taking the field against Shou down to the new ennobling of rulers under the new supremacy, all was irregular and

only after this would a new order of things take its course.

[In the Books of the early Han dynasty. 律歷志第一下, compiled by Law Hün we find three quotations as from the 武成

The first agrees with the 1st par. of the chapter.—惟一月壬辰旁死霸若翼日癸巳武王乃朝步自周于征伐紂. The second is not found in the received text, nor any trace of it; but it agrees sufficiently with the first par. of the 'Speech at Muh,' and the statement in the 9th par. of this Book.—粵若來二

(some editions have 三, incorrectly) 月既死霸粵五日甲子咸劉商王紂. It is then stated that there was a second month intercalary in this year which began with the day 庚寅; that the third month began with 己未; and the fourth month with 己丑. Then comes the third quotation.—

惟四月既旁生霸粵六日庚戌武王燎于周廟翼日辛亥祀于天位粵五日乙卯乃以庶國祀餼于周廟.

In the fourth month, on the day kang-seuk, the 6th after the 16th, king Woo made a fire in the ancestral temple of Chow. Next day,—the day sin-hae,—he sacrificed at the altar of Heaven; and five days after,—on the day yih-mau,—attended by the princes of the various States, he sacrificed and presented the heads of Shou and his two concubines in the ancestral temple. Here the intimations of time are different from those which we have in par. 3 and 4 of the text. Possibly the 燎 here—

the 柴 of par. 3;—and they are referred to the same day. We cannot trace any other correspondencies.

The question occurs,—Where did Law Hün find the copy of the 武成, from which he made these quotations? Tsin Hsiao-koo supposed they were taken from some copy of Fuh-shang's Books; see an art. by Chou Hsi in the 集說. But Fuh-shang did not possess the 武成

德其撫勳考其肇前啟后
惟力方誕文勤基烈土惟
九小夏膺王王家迹于公先
年邦大天克我犬劉王建
統懷畏命厥文王篤邦

- 5 II. The king spake to the following effect:—"Oh! ye host of princes, the first of our kings founded the State and commenced our territory. The duke Lew was able to consolidate the merits of his predecessor. But it was the king T'ae who laid the foundations of the imperial inheritance. Then king Ke was diligent for the royal House; and my deceased father, king Wan, completed his merit, and received the great decree of Heaven to soothe the regions of the great bright land. The great States feared his strength; the small States cherished his virtue. In nine years, however, the whole

Yen Jê-ko, Wang, Ming-shing and others think that he took them from the copy of the 'Old Text,' which Gan-kwô had transcribed, and which was preserved in one of the imperial repositories. We know that Lew Hin had access to this copy, and it is possible that he might quote from the **武成** in II.

There is, however, another way of accounting for the quotations. There was a copy of the **武成** current in the Han dynasty, as we have seen there was of the **誓泰**. K'ang-shing states that it was lost in the reign of the founder of the eastern Han, A.D. 25-57. We do not know whence it was derived. From the last quotation we may suppose that its character was like that of the copy of the 'Great Speech,' which likewise disappeared. It appears to me more likely that the quotations by Lew Hin were made from it than from the 'Old Text' to which he had access. The authority of the received text, such as it is, need not be affected by the differences between it and the passages in the **律歷志**.

Ch. II. Pp. 5, 7. ADDRESS OF KING WOO TO THE PRINCES, ON GIVING THEM THEIR INVESTURES. 5. Sketch of the history of the House of Chow from its founder to king Woo. See the introductory note to Book I. on the name of this Part of the Shoo. **先王** 'the former king,'—'the first of our kings.' Ting-tê says that we know that K'ê, Shun's min. of agriculture, must be intended, because he is mentioned before the duke Lew. The predicates—**建邦啟土**—sufficiently indicate

the same. K'ê was not a king, but Woo here calls him so. **篤前烈—篤厚**

前人功烈 K'ê is to be understood as Lew's 'predecessor.' **犬王**—by king

T'ae is intended Tan-foo. **肇基王迹**

—'first founded the traces of imperial sway,' see in the Shu King, the 'Praise-songs of Loo,' II. 2, where it is said of T'ae that 'he dwelt on the south of mount K'ê, and began to shear the dynasty of Shang' (**居岐之陽. 實始翦商**)—not, say the critics, that he had any intention to do it, but 'the hearts of the people were so drawn to him, that they became devotedly attached to his House. **文考**

文王—'my deceased father Wan, the king Wan.' We cannot well repeat the honorary title in the translation. **誕膺**—'greatly received'; **膺—受** **以撫方夏**

—以撫安四方諸夏 On **夏**

see the Conf. of Shun, p. 20. **大邦畏**

其力小邦懷其德—this passage

is quoted, as from 'the Books of Chow,' in the

左傳襄三十二年 **大**

統—'the great united whole.' **未集—**

未集於其身, 'was not yet collected in his person.'

未集予小子其
承厥志。○底商
之罪，告于皇天
后土，所過名山
大川，曰：「惟有道
曾孫周王發，將
有大正于商。」今
商王受無道，暴
殄天物，害虐烝
民，爲天下逋逃

empire was not collected under his rule, and it fell to me, who am but a little child, to carry out his will.

- 6 Detesting the crimes of Shang, I announced to great Heaven and the sovereign Earth, to the famous hill and the great river, by which I passed, saying, 'I, Fā, the principled, king of Chow, by a long descent, am about to have a great righting with Shang. Show, the king of Shang, is without principle, cruel and destructive to the creatures of Heaven, injurious and tyrannical to the multitudes of the people, chief of the vagabonds of the empire,

[In the 'Doctrine of the Mean,' xviii, 3, it is said that 'the duke of Chow completed the virtuous course of Wan and Woo,' and that he carried up the title of king to T'ao and Ke, and sacrificed to all the former dukes above them with the imperial ceremonies.' As it was thus the duke of Chow who carried up the title of king to Tan-foo and Ke-loh, completing what Woo had left undone; it has been asked how we find those titles here in the mouth of king Woo. I apprehend that the merit of the duke of Chow was in extending the practice of honouring ancestors, beyond the circle of the imperial family, to 'the princes, the great officers, the scholars, and the common people.' King Woo no doubt took counsel on the subject with his brother the duke of Chow. Perhaps it was by his advice that he did it; but there can be no doubt that he had conferred the titles mentioned in the text. The thing is commemorated in the Lo Ke, the Bk. 大傳, p. 2. I give the whole paragraph here, because it gives a strong confirmation not only to this par., but also to the two preceding ones.—牧之野，武王之大事也。既事而退，柴於上帝，祈於社，設奠於牧室，遂率走天下諸侯，執豆蓬，逡奔走，追王大王，王昌，不以卑臨尊。]

Pp. 6-8. He relates the prayer which he addressed to the spirits of Heaven and Earth, of mount Hwa and the Ho, in contemplation of the engagement with Show. 6. 底商之罪。

—there is much difficulty in giving any appropriate meaning to 底. It has been defined by 至，致，and 極數. The last is given in the 'Daily Explanation,' the 'detesting' in the translation is as allowable, and that is all that can be said for it. 皇天后土。

—comp. what was said on the phrase 天地 in Bk. I, Pt. i, p. 3. This is the only place in the Shoo where the combination 后土 occurs.

Ying-ta understands, I think correctly, by 名山 mount Hwa, and the Ho by 大川.

Critics generally take 山 and 川 in the plural. We must understand, of course, that Woo made his announcement to the spirits of Heaven, Earth, the mountain, and the river. 有道曾

孫—I take 有道 and 曾孫 as in apposition. Such is the view of Ying-ta, who observes that Woo, in asking the help of the spirits, and speaking of himself in contrast with Show would not affect a false humility. T'ao and others say that by 'the principled' Woo refers to his forefathers, and construe the phrase as under the regimen of 曾孫, which means literally 'great-grandson.' 周王發，

T'ao supposes that 周王 is an interpolation, —which seems very likely. 大正—

comp. the use of 正 in the 'Speech of T'ang,' p. 2.—不敢不正。暴殄天物。

主萃淵藪，予小子既獲仁人，敢祗承上帝，以遏亂畧。華夏蠻貊，罔不率俾。○恭天威命，肆予東征，綏厥士。

7 who collect about him as fish in the deep, and beasts in the prairie. I, who am but a little child, having obtained the help of virtuous men, presume reverently to comply with the will of God, to make an end of his disorderly ways. The great and flowery region, and the wild tribes of the south and north, equally follow and consent with me. Reverently obeying the determinate counsel of Heaven, I pursue my punitive work to the east, to give tranquillity to its

—殄—絕, 'to destroy utterly.' 天物, 'the creatures of Heaven;' 'including men,' says Lin Che-k'e, 'but they are further specified, because of their greater importance.'

為天下逋逃主萃(一聚)淵藪, —the paraphrase of this in the 'Daily Explanation' is:—天下有罪在逃之人, 所當誅鋤之以安良善者, 也受反收留之與彼為主, 有司莫之敢捕如魚之聚于深淵獸之聚于林藪, 'The criminals and vagabonds of the empire ought to be taken off and rooted out, to secure the repose of the good, but Show receives and maintains them, and is their chief, so that the officers do not dare to apprehend them. They are as fish collected in the deep waters, and as beasts gathered together in the forests and thickets.'

予小子既獲仁人, —we have seen the references made by Woo in the 'Great Speech,' Pt. II, 9, et al., to his 'virtuous men.' We may compare with the sentiment here that of T'ang in his 'Announcement,' p. 4, where he says that before taking his measures against K'ê, he 'sought for the great sage, with whom he might unite his strength' (率求元聖與之戮力). 承上帝之意, 'to receive or comply with the will of God.'

亂畧—Gao-kwô takes 畧 in the sense of 路, 'ways;' T'ao takes it in that of 謀, 'counsels,' 'plans.' Both explanations are allowable.

華夏.—see on the 'Can. of Shen,' p. 20. 蠻貊.—see Ana., XV., v. 2. 率俾.—T'ao and others

take 俾 here in the sense of 從, 'to follow,' so that the clause = 'all follow one another to follow me.' Gao-kwô would put a comma at 率, and taking 俾 in its common signification of 使, join it to the next clause. This has in its favour, that the 肆 in next par. stands more naturally at its commencement than as we read it at present. The rhythm of the style, however, requires that we join 率 and 俾.

[In the 左傳, 昭七年, we find:—昔武王數紂之罪, 以告諸侯, 曰: 紂為天下逋逃主, 萃淵藪. The quotation is important, not only as guaranteeing so much of the prayer, but also as showing that the prayer was a part of the address which King Woo made to the princes. It is on this that Maou K'uei mainly relies in protesting against the way in which Choo He and others propose to break up and re-arrange the paragraphs of this Book.]

7. See the manner in which this paragraph is adduced by Mencius, III., Pt. II., v., 5. There are important alterations in the structure, the philosopher not directly quoting, but using the passage so as to suit his purpose. Gao-kwô puts all the verbs in the past tense, saying that the description is of what took place in the 11th year, when there was the first assemblage at M'ang-tsin, and Woo returned, without proceeding to the attack of Show. But there is no sufficient evidence of such a meeting. The two clauses, moreover,—恭天成命, 肆予東征, fix the whole par. to the time when being,—the time in which 武 was offering his prayer. 篚厥玄黃.—'basketed their azure and yellow fabrics.' See the many descriptions in the 'Tribute of Yu' of the

女惟其士女筐
厥玄黃昭我周
王天休震動用
附我大邑周○
惟爾有神尙克
相予以濟兆民
無作神羞○既
戊午師逾孟津
癸亥陳于商郊
俟天休命甲子

- men and women. Its men and women bring their baskets full of azure and yellow silks, to show forth the virtue of us the kings of Chow. Heaven's favours stir them up, so that they come with
8 their allegiance to our great State of Chow. And now, ye spirits, grant me your aid, that I may relieve the millions of the people, and nothing turn out to your shame!"
9 III. On the day mow-woo the army crossed the ford of Mäng; on the day kwei-hae it was drawn up in array in the borders of

offerings brought in baskets.

昭我周

王—displaying our kings of Chow. Some say that azure and yellow are the colours of heaven and earth respectively, and that the object of bringing such fabrics was to show that the kings of Chow were as good and beneficent as Heaven and earth. It is not necessary to seek for such a recondite meaning. The bringing of the baskets was an expression of allegiance, and an acknowledgment of the virtues of the House of Chow.

大邑周

take 邑 here—國. as we saw that Kiang Shing proposed to do in the last Book, p. 8.

8. 爾有神—the spirits are those of Heaven and earth, of the mountain and the river. The conclusion is sufficiently bold. Woo must have felt sure that his enterprise was right, and in accordance with the supreme mind and will.

Madhrai (Theology of the Chinese, p. 35) has translated the passage:—"Only may you shine, be enabled to assist me in settling the millions of the people, and do not bring disgrace on your chin-ships." He observes upon it, that "the form of expression would intimate that there was some power above the things invoked, and that it was possible they might be unable to grant the needful assistance." There is no such indication in the form of the expression as he supposes.

尙克相予以濟兆民 is not—"may you be enabled to assist me," but "grant me, I pray you, your help." The 克 denotes an efficacy in the spirits themselves, and gives emphasis, as we have often seen to be its force. To the word that follows, so that 克相予以濟兆民—help

me indeed. It is remarkable how, in the course of the prayer, reference is expressly made both to 'God' and to 'Heaven,' as supreme. Why was it not addressed directly to God? There are both imperfect monotheism and polytheism in it. God is recognized as supreme, and at the same time other spirits are recognized, who would give effect to His will, and might be prayed to for that purpose. As Woo addressed his army in the grey dawn of the day at Mub, we may say that he had but the grey dawn of religious knowledge in his mind.

I will not add anything here to what I quoted from Yung-ti in the introductory note on the abruptness and seeming incompleteness with which the prayer terminates. It would have been better if there had been some additional expression of Woo's own feelings and purposes, and some inculcation of duties on the princes. It may be that a portion of the Book has been lost; or it may be that we do have all which Woo was pleased to say.

Ch. III. Pp. 9, 10. THE BATTLE OF MUB, WITH KING WOO'S PROCEEDINGS IMMEDIATELY AFTER, AND SUBSEQUENT MEASURES.

既戊午師逾孟津—comp. the 'Great Speech,' Pt. I, p. 1. On this same day he delivered the address recorded in that Part.

癸亥陳于商郊—kwei-hae was the 3rd of the 2d month, five days after mow-woo. From Mäng-tsin to Shou's capital was 400 li, so that Woo must have hurried on his army with great speed.

俟天休命—the favourable decrees of Heaven was to be seen in the result of the impending battle, about which Woo felt quite confident. Gan-kwo says that this clause has reference to the ceasing of the rains which had fallen all the way from Mäng-

商容閭散鹿臺
囚封比干墓式
政由舊釋箕子
大定乃反商政
杵一戎衣天下
後以比血流漂
前徒倒戈攻于
罔有敵于我師
若林會于牧野
昧爽受率其旅

Shang, waiting for the gracious decision of Heaven. On the day *k'eh-tsze*, at early dawn, Show led forward his hosts like a forest, and assembled them in the wilderness of Muh. But they would offer no opposition to our army. Those in the front inverted their spears, and attacked those behind them, till they fled, and the blood flowed till it floated the pestles about. Thus did *king Woo* once don his arms, and the empire was greatly settled. He overthrew the existing government of Shang, and made it resume its old course. He delivered the count of Ke from prison, and raised a tumult over the grave of Pe-kan. He bowed in his carriage at the gate of

tai, so that they were able during the night to complete the order of battle. This view is at once far-fetched and shallow.

甲子昧爽.—see the 'Speech at Muh,' p. 1. 其旅

若林會于牧野.—see the *Shu King*, Pt. III, Bk. I. Ode II, 7. 殷商之旅其會如林. 矢于牧野.

Sze-ma Ts'uen says that Show's army amounted to 700,000 men, which is doubtless a great exaggeration.

敵于我師.—the historian identifies himself with Woo's army.

以北.—北—奔, 'to flee.' *Ts'uen* gives a diff. account of the battle. At least he makes no mention of Show's troops falling upon one another, but says that 'Woo sent his general Shang-foo, with a hundred of the most daring warriors, to dash forward at the head of a large body. Show's army had no mind to fight, but really wished king Woo to penetrate their host. They therefore inverted their lances, and made way for his men. They in fact all revolted from Show, who fled at once to the "Stag tower." This account is not reconcilable, however, with the statement which follows about 'the blood flowing till it floated the pestles of the mortars.'

The remarks of Mencius on the passage—血流漂杵 are well known. He attests (*VII. Pt. II, li.*) that the 'Completion of the War' contained such a passage, but protests against

believing it.—'When the prince the most benevolent was engaged against him who was the most the opposite, how could such a thing be?' It gives, no doubt, an exaggerated description of the slaughter which took place. 杵 means the wooden pestles of the mortars, which the soldiers carried with them to prepare their rice. We need not suppose, as some do (see a note in the 集傳 by 蔡清), that they were the pestles used for pounding the earth in making the intrenchments. *Maou K'e-ling* prefers the reading of 函, 'shields,' for 杵.

Mai Tsuh (梅鷟) would save the credit of Mencius at the expense of the classic. If, he argues, it had appeared, as in the present text, that the slaughter was occasioned by Show's troops turning against one another, there would have been no occasion for the philosopher's remark. The forger of *Tsin* evidently constructed his text that king Woo might not appear chargeable with the bloodshedding, which Mencius supposed might be attributed to him! It is much more natural to believe that Mencius, in the impulse of his ardent nature, spoke as he did,—unadvisedly.

—戎衣.—once he put on his martial garb. See in the 'Doctrine of the Mean,' xviii, 2. Comp. also on 殪戎殷. Bk. IX, p. 4.

反商政.—he turned back the govt. of Shang; i.e., he took away the oppressive laws of Show, and then—由舊政.—followed the old govt. i.e., the

之財發鉅橋之粟大賚于四海而萬姓悅服。○列爵惟五分土惟三建官惟賢位事惟能重民五教惟食喪祭惇信明義崇德報功垂拱而天下治。

Shang Yung's village. He dispersed the treasures of Luh-t'ae, and distributed the grain of Keu-k'eaou, thus conferring great gifts throughout the empire, and all the people joyfully submitted.

- 10 He arranged the orders of nobility into five, assigning the territories to them on a threefold scale. He gave offices only to the worthy, and employments only to the able. He attached great importance to the people's being taught the duties of the five relations of society, and to take care for food, for funeral ceremonies, and for sacrifices. He showed the reality of his truthfulness, and proved clearly his righteousness. He honoured virtue, and rewarded merit. Then he had only to let his robes fall down, and fold his hands, and the empire was orderly ruled.

govt. of Tang and the other good sovereigns who succeeded him.

釋箕子囚封比干墓—see the concluding note to the 'Viscount of Wei'.

式商容間—式, see *Conf. Ann.* X., xvi, 3. Shang Yung must have been some worthy in disgrace with Shih, and living retired in his village. Ying-ta quotes some account of him from Hwang-poo Moih's *帝王世記*, but it is the production of a later age.

散鹿臺之財發鉅橋之粟—of the 'Stag tower' we have spoken. Keu-k'eaou was in the north east of the pres. dia. of Keuh-chow (曲周), dep. of Kwang-p'ing (廣平).

Chih-le, where Shih had collected great stores of grain. These two measures were directed to the benefit of the masses of the people, impoverished by the exactions of the tyrant.

P. 10. 列爵惟五分土惟三.—this agrees with the account of the arrangement of dignities and emoluments determined by the House of Chow, given by Mencius, Book V., Pt. II., ii. The orders of nobility were the Kung, How, Pih, Tze and Nan, to the two first of which were assigned a hundred li square of territory, each, while the Pih had 70, and the Tze and the Nan only 50 li square each. Yen

Jō-ken absurdly says that this is different from the account of Mencius. It is different, however, from the account which we find in the *Chow Lo*, Bk. IX., (地官大司徒).

There the orders of nobility are five, as in Mencius, but the divisions of territory are also five. To the Kung, it is said, there were assigned 500 li square; to the How, 400; to the Pih, 300; to the Tze, 200; and to the Nan, 100. I don't see how the two accounts are to be reconciled. If it be said that the five-fold territorial division was made by the duke of Chow at a subsequent period, which is the view of K'ang-shing, why did not Mencius advert to it? If it be said, that the larger dimensions arose from the usurpations of the States among themselves, which is the view of Ying-ta, how is it that they have any place in the *Chow Lo*? 建官惟賢

位事惟能.—the historian proceeds to Woo's provisions for the officers about his court. His object was to have none in office but men of talents and virtue, and that each man's duties should be those for which he was specially able.

重民五教惟食喪祭—Gran-kwo explained the former of these clauses by inserting an 與 between 民 and 五教.—'he attached importance to the people, and to the inculcation of the five duties.' This is not so good as to take 民 to be under the regimen

of 五教. The force of 重 extends to the diff. terms in the second clause, and 惟 is used as a connective particle. Lin Che-k'ue compares its use here with the same in the 'Tribute of Yu,' Pt. I, pp. 44 and 51. It is said that Woo gave effect to this solicitude for the instruction of the people by establishing schools,—educational institutions of various kinds; and to make good the provision of food, he enacted 'the hundred-mow allotment and the share system' (see Mencius, III., Pt. I, iii.). 惇信明

義—惇—厚 'to make solid, or real.' The 信 or 'truthfulness' belonged, the critics say, to all his governmental orders, and the fidelity with which they were kept, and the 義 or 'righteousness,' to all his actions. We have in the 'Daily Explanation'—凡出一令, 必守之以信而始終不渝. 凡行一事, 必裁之以義而動無過舉. 垂拱—垂衣拱手, 'to let the robes hang down, and fold his hands ceremoniously before his breast.' The meaning is, that by the excellence of his institutions and example, there was superseded the necessity of any further laborious measures or efforts. The good order of the government followed as a matter of course.

CONCLUDING NOTES. [1]. On the inventions granted by Ling Woo. The 歷代

統紀表, under the year a.c. 1121, gives a list of the principal States into which the empire was divided in the dynasty of Chow:—six-Loo (魯), Wei (衛), Ts'ao (蔡), Tsin (晉), Ts'ao (曹), Ching (鄭), Woo (吳), Yen (燕), Ch'in (陳), Sang (宋), Ts'ao (齊), Ts'oo (楚), and Ta'in (秦). I will not here enter into particulars on each of these principalities, as I shall have to speak of most of them in connection with one or other of the following Books. I will now only refer to what is in the

Hk. 樂記, of the La Ke, Part III., par. 18,—that King Woo, on the overthrow of the Shang dynasty, before he descended from his chariot, invested the representative of Hwang-to with the territory of Ke (衛), the pres. dis. of Ta-hing.

[大興] in the dep. of Shun-t'een; the representative of Yaou with Chieh (祝), the pres. dis. of Ch'ang-t'ing [長清], in the dep. of Tse-nan; the representative of Shun with Ch'in (陳; the name remains in that of the dep. Ch'in-chow, Ho-nan); and when he had descended from his chariot,—*Le*, subsequently,—he invested the representative of Yu with K'e (杞; this name also remains in that of the dis. of K'e, in the dep. of K'ao-fung); and he sent the

representative of the House of Yin to the territory of Sang' (宋; the pres. dis. of Shangk'ue (商邱), dep. of Kwel-tih, Ho-nan). These appointments were given, not because of services rendered to the new dynasty, as many others were, but from respect to the memories of the great men represented, that the sacrifices to their spirits might not fall into disuse.

[ii]. On the specifications of time in this and the two preceding Books. King Woo proceeded from his capital to the attack of Show on the 3rd day of the 1st month of what is called his 13th year, a.c. 1121 (Gaubil, 1122); and in the 28th day of that month 'in the spring' (according to the 'Great Speech,' Pt. I, p. 1), he crossed the Ho at Mang-t'ien. Ts'ao Ch'in supposes that the year intended was that of Hsia, which has been that of all the dynasties of China since the Han. Now the first month of the present Chinese year began on the 18th of our February, and the cycle name of the day was mow-shin (戊申). If we multiply 2984 solar years, which have elapsed since the 13th of Woo's reign, by 365.24224, we obtain the number of days from that time up to the end of last Chinese year, = 1,089,882.34416, or 18184 cycles of days and 42 days more. But it will be found, on calculation, that the first day of new moon in February, 2984 years ago, occurred three days earlier than in the present year. Reckoning back therefore 18,184 cycles and 46 days more from mow-shin of the present year, we come to jin-seuh (壬戌), as the first day of the Hsia year in the 13th of Woo's reign; and the view of Ts'ao cannot be sustained.

Reckoning back other 30 days from 壬戌, we come to the day jin-shin (壬辰), as the first day of the first month in the year of Shang; and according to the view of Fan Ssu-lin, approved of rather by the editors of Yung-ching's Shuo, this is the day intended in the classic as the first day of the first month spoken of. It is only one day after sin-mao. It would thus appear that not only is Ts'ao in error in saying that we are to understand that the months in the text are the months of the year of Hsia, but that the other commentators are equally mistaken in referring them to the year of Chow. They are those of the year of Shang, beginning with the last month of winter. This conclusion lightens somewhat the difficulty occasioned by the mention of "the spring," in the "Great Speech," par. 1. This is spoken with reference to the day mow-woo, which certainly was close upon the spring. If it be thought that the whole of the first month is intended to be described as in 'the spring,' we must believe that in consequence of deficient intercalation, an error of one whole lunation had crept into the calendar by the time of the rise of the Chow dynasty. On suggesting that this might be the case to a very intelligent Chinese scholar, he replied, 'How can you think that the sages could have blundered so?' But it will be found, from what will be seen in the prolegomena on the subject of the astronomy and chronology of the ancient Chinese, that this was probably the case.

蔡沈考定武成

惟一月，壬辰旁死魄，越翼日，癸巳王朝步自周，于征伐商。○底商之罪，告于皇天后土，所過名山大川，曰：惟有道曾孫周王發，將有大正于商。今商王受無道，暴殄天物，害虐烝民，爲天下逋逃主，萃淵藪。予小子既獲仁人，敢祇承上帝，以遏亂畧。華夏蠻貊，罔不率俾。惟爾有神，尙克相予，以濟兆民，無作神羞。○旣戊午，師逾孟津。癸亥，陳于商郊。俟天休命，甲子昧爽，受率其旅若林，會于牧野。罔有敵于我師，前徒倒戈，攻于後以，北血流漂杵。一戎衣，天下大定。乃反商政，政由舊，釋箕子囚，封比干墓，式商容閭，散鹿臺之財，發鉅橋之粟，大賚于四海，而萬姓悅服。○厥四月，哉生明，王來自商，至于豐，乃偃武修文，歸馬于華山之陽，放牛于桃林之野，示天下弗服。

APPENDIX.

THE COMPLETION OF THE WAR, AS ARRANGED BY TSAE CH'IN.

In the first month, the day jin-shin immediately followed the end of the moon's waning. The next day was kwei-ke, when the king in the morning marched from Chow to attack and punish Shang.

Declaring the crimes of Shang, he announced to great Heaven and the sovereign Earth, to the famous hill and the great river, by which he passed, saying: 'I, Fa, the principled king of Chow, by a long descent, am about to have a great fighting with Shang. Show, the king of Shang, is without principle, cruel and destructive to the creatures of Heaven, injurious and tyrannical to the multitudes of the people, chief of the vagabonds of the empire, who collect about him as fish in the deep, and beasts in the prairie. I, who am but a little child, having obtained the help of virtuous men, presume reverently to comply with the will of God, to make an end of his disorderly ways. The great and flowery region, and the wild tribes of the south and north, equally follow and consent with me. And now, ye spirits, grant me your aid, that I may relieve the millions of the people, and nothing turn out to your shame!'

On the day mow-woo the army crossed the ford of Mang; on the day kwei-has it was drawn up in array in the borders of Shang, waiting for the gracious decision of Hsuan. On the day kwei-tze, at early dawn, Show led forward his hosts like a forest, and assembled them in the wilderness of Muh. But they would offer no opposition to our army. Those in the front inverted their spears, and attacked those behind them, till they fled, and the blood flowed till it floated the pestles about. Thus did king Wen once don his arms, and the empire was greatly settled. He overthrew the existing government of Shang, and made it resume its old course. He delivered the count of Ku from prison, and raised a tumult over the grave of Pe-kan. He bowed in his carriage at the gate of Shang Yung's village. He dispersed the treasures of Luh-t'ze, and distributed the grain of Kew-keou, thus conferring great gifts throughout the empire; and all the people joyfully submitted.

In the fourth month, at the first appearance of the moon, the king came from Shang to Fung, when he hushed all the movements of war, and attended to the cultivations of peace. He sent back his horses to the south of mount Hwa, and let loose his oxen in the open country of T'ao-lin, showing the empire that he would not use them again.

既生魄，庶邦冢君暨百工受命于周。○丁未，祀于周廟。邦甸侯衛駿奔走執豆蓬。越三日庚戌，柴望大告武成。○王若曰：鳴呼羣后，惟先王建邦啟土，公劉克篤前烈。至于太王，肇基王迹，王季其勤王家，我文考文王，克成厥勳，誕膺天命，以撫方夏。大邦畏其力，小邦懷其德。惟九年，大統未集，予小子其承厥志。○恭天成命，肆予東征，綏厥士女，惟其士女，饋厥玄黃，昭我周王。天休震動，用附我大邑周。列爵惟五，分土惟三，建官惟賢，位事惟能，重民五教，惟食喪祭，惇信明義，崇德報功，垂拱而天下治。

After the moon began to wane, the hereditary princes of the various States, and all the officers, received their appointments from Chow.

On the day ting-wa he sacrificed in the ancestral temple of Chow, when the chiefs of the imperial domain, and of the teen, how, and wei domains, all hurried about, carrying the dishes. Three days after, he presented a burnt-offering to Heaven, and worshipped towards the mountains and rivers, solemnly announcing the successful completion of the war.

The king spake to the following effect:—"Oh! ye host of princes, the first of our kings founded the State and commenced our territory. The duke Lew was able to consolidate the merits of his predecessor. But it was the king Tse who laid the foundations of the imperial inheritance. Then king Ke was diligent for the royal House; and my deceased father, king Wán, completed his merit, and received the great decree of Heaven to soothe the regions of the great bright land. The great States feared his strength; the small States cherished his virtues. In nine years, however, the whole empire was not collected under his rule, and it fell to me, who am but a little child, to carry out his will. Reverently obeying the determinate counsel of Heaven, I pursued my punitive work to the east, to give tranquillity to its men and women. Its men and women brought their baskets full of azure and yellow silks, to show forth the virtues of us the kings of Chow. Heaven's favours stirred them up, so that they came with their allegiance to our great State of Chow.

He arranged the orders of nobility into five, assigning the territories to them on a threefold scale. He gave offices only to the worthy and employments only to the able. He attached great importance to the people's being taught the duties of the five relations of society, and took care for food, for funeral ceremonies, and for sacrifices. He showed the reality of his truthfulness, and proved clearly his righteousness. He honoured virtue, and rewarded merit. Then he had only to let his robes fall down, and fold his hands and the empire was orderly ruled.

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK IV. THE GREAT PLAN.

惟^一王訪于箕子。呼^二曰：「惟天陰騭下民，相協厥居，我不知。」

洪範

- 1 I. In the thirteenth year, the king went to inquire of the vis-
- 2 count of Ke, and said to him "Oh! viscount of Ke, Heaven, unseen, has given their constitution to mankind, aiding *also* the harmonious development of it in their various conditions. I do not know how their proper virtues in their various relations should be brought forth in due order."

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—洪範, 'The Great Plan.' 洪—大 'great' 範—法, 'plan.' Other synonyms of 範, given in the dict., are 式 and 模, both conveying the same idea of 'plan,' or 'model.' The name, like that of the last Book, is taken from the Book itself. We read in par. 2, that 'Heaven gave to Yu the Great Plan, with its nine Divisions.' Some would adopt the whole of this,—洪範九

疇, as the name; but there would be no advantage gained by departing in such a matter, from the established usage. The Book is found in both the texts.

HISTORY OF THE BOOK AND MODE OF INTERPRETATION. The viscount of Ke had said that when rule overtook the House of Shang, he would not be the servant of another dynasty;—see 'The Viscount of Wei,' p. 8. Accordingly, he refused to acknowledge the sovereignty of king Woo, who had delivered him from the prison where Show had put him, and fled—or

perhaps only made it known that he would flee—to Corea. King Woo respected and admired his attachment to the fallen dynasty, and invested him with that territory. He now felt constrained to appear at the court of Chow, when the king took the opportunity to consult him on the great principles of government, and the result was that he communicated this 'Great Plan, with its nine Divisions.' Being first made public under the Chow dynasty, it is ranked among the 'Books of Chow.' It is often referred to, however, as one of the 'Books of Shang,' as having emanated from the viscount of Ke, who should properly be adjudged to that dynasty. When we read the Book itself, we see that it originally belonged to the time of Hsia, and at least the central portion, or text of it,—par. 4,—should be ascribed to 'the great Yu.' We have therefore a fragment in it of very ancient learning. How this had come into the possession of the viscount of Ke we cannot tell. It does not seem to have occurred to the Chinese critics to make the inquiry. Whether we should ascribe all the paragraphs from the 5th downwards to the viscount, is also a point on which I cannot undertake to pronounce a posi-

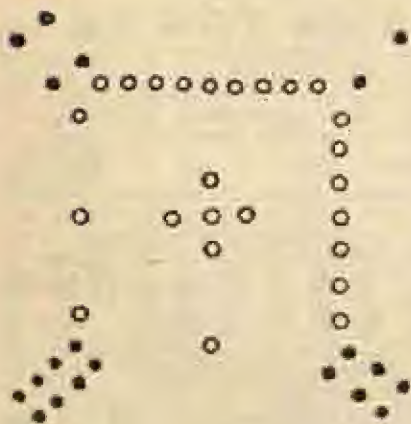
tive opinion. Hsü Senen (夏僊: Sung dyn.) says that 'though the words are those of the viscount of Ke, the record of them was made by the historians of Chow.'

That the central portion of the Book, and more or less of the expository part, came down from the times of Hsü is not improbable. The use of the number nine, and the naming of the various divisions of the 'Plan,' are in harmony with Yu's style and practice in his 'Counsels,' and in what we may call the 'Domesday Book.'

We are told that 'Heaven—God—gave the plan with its Divisions to Yu.' Upon this Gan-kwô says that 'Heaven gave Yu the mysterious tortoise, which made its appearance in the waters of the Lo, bearing marks on its back well defined, from 1 to 9; and thereupon Yu determined the meaning of those numbers, and completed the nine divisions of the plan.'

This legend has been fathered on Confucius, as we read in the 'Appendix to the Yih-king' (易經繫辭, Pt. I., p. 38, that 'the Ho gave forth the Scheme, and the Lo gave forth the Book (or defined characters), which the sages (or sage) took as their pattern' (河出圖, 洛出書, 聖人則之). If we admit

that these words proceeded from Confucius or were edited by him, while it is absurd enough to speak of the two rivers giving forth the Scheme and the Book, he says nothing of the Scheme being on the back of a dragon, which has been the current statement for more than 2,000 years, or of the Book being on the back of a tortoise. Moreover, there is no evidence that he meant to connect the 'Book of Lo' with the 'Great Plan' at all. We should rather imagine that he supposed the Scheme and the Book to be equally related to the diagrams of the Yih, and to have been both presented to Fuh-hu. I hardly know an interpreter, however, but Lin Che-k'g, who has not adopted the statement of Gan-kwô; and the consequence is that the explanations of this Book are overlaid with absurd twaddle about the virtue of numbers as related to Heaven and Earth, to the Yin and the Yang, the cardinal points, &c., &c. The following figure has been imagined as that which was exhibited to Yu:—



Near the head of the tortoise, it is said, were the nine open marks, and opposite was the one close mark. The two and the four were at the shoulders; the six and the eight were by the feet. Three and seven were on the left and right, and five were in the centre. Out of those numbers, odd and even, heavenly and earthly, now multiplied, now added together, the whole of the Plan and its Divisions is developed, with a glibness of tongue and a leger-de-plume, which only familiarity with the Yih-king, and the applications of it to astrology, geomancy, and other follies can produce. There is of course no 'solid learning'

(實學) in all this. We shall have to endeavour to treat seriously of it, when we come to the Yih-king, but it should be exploded from the study of 'The Great Plan.' The Book will be found dark enough in itself, but the viscount of Ke says nothing of occult qualities of numbers, from which the ideas in the different divisions of the Plan could be deduced. It will be my object, therefore, simply to elucidate the meaning of the whole as a scheme of government, intended to guide all rulers in the discharge of their duties.

Gaubil says that 'the Book is a treatise at once of Physics, Astrology, Divination, Morals, Politics, and Religion; and that it has a sufficiently close resemblance to the work of Ocellus the Lucanian.' There is a shadowy resemblance between the *Great Plan* and the curious specimens of Pythagorean doctrine which we have in the treatise *On the Universe*. The dissimilarities are still greater and more numerous. More especially are the different characters of the Greek mind, speculative, and the Chinese mind, practical, apparent in the two Works. Where the Chinese writer loses himself in the sleekest follies of his imagining, he would yet grope about for a rule to be of use in the conduct of human affairs. One of the most interesting curiosities which were obtained in 1861 from the 'Summer palace' near Peking, was a scroll, purporting to be in the handwriting of the emperor K'ien-lung, dilating on the meaning of 'The Great Plan,' and the lessons to be learned by sovereigns from it.

There is a general agreement among the critics in assigning its place to the Book either among the 'Counsels' of the Shoo, or among the 'Instructions.'

CONTENTS. I avail myself here, with a little variation, of the account of these given in the 'Complete Digest' of commentaries on the Shoo (書經備旨).—The whole divides itself into three chapters. The first part, 1-3, is introductory, and describes how the 'Great Plan with its Divisions' was first made known to Yu, and came at this time to be communicated to King Wên. The second, in p. 4, contains the Plan and its Divisions. The third, part, 5-49, contains a particular description of the several Divisions. 'The whole,' says the writer, 'exhibits the great model for the govt. of the empire. The fifth or middle division on Royal Perfection is, indeed, the central one of the whole, that about which the Book revolves. The four divisions that precede it show how this royal Perfection is to be accomplished, and the four that follow show how it is to be maintained.'

Ch. I. Pp. 1-3. KING WÛ APPLIES TO THE VISCOUNT OF KE FOR INFORMATION ABOUT

NOW THE GOVERNMENT OF THE EMPIRE SHOULD BE CONDUCTED, AND IS TOLD BY HIM OF THE GREAT PLAN WITH NINE DIVISIONS WHICH YU GOT FROM HEAVEN.

十有三祀

—the commentators observe that 祀, the Shang term for 'year,' is here used instead of the Chow 年, the viscount of Ke using the character to which he had been accustomed.

訪

to Ts'ao, —就而問之, —'went to and asked him.' It implies 'consultation.' See the note on the History of the Book.

2.

王乃言曰, —the king thereupon spoke, saying. The 乃 protracts the style, and indicates the deliberation with which the king made his inquiry. So in the next paragraph, —箕子乃言曰. 箕子, —king Woo, it is observed, addressed the noble by his Shang title, not having yet invested him with the territory of Corea. It may be so; but he might also address him thus, the old designation being familiar to him, even if he had already given him his new appointment.

天陰陰下

民相協厥居. 陰—默, 'secretly,' 'by a hidden influence.' 陰—定, 'to settle.'

Sze-ma Ts'ao gives the text as 天陰定下民, which shows at least how he understood the term 陰.

The meaning then of the first clause is that 'Heaven, working unseen, has made men with certain hidden springs of character.' As Gan-kwé says, 天不言而默定下民.

This interpretation is much to be preferred to that adopted by K'ang Shing and others from Ma Yung, who makes 陰—覆, 'to cover,' 'to overshadow,' and 陰—升—舉—生, 'to produce.' 天陰陰下民 is thus simply —'Heaven that overshadows produced the inferior people.'

The next clause is continuous, and is to be referred to Heaven as its subject.

相 (3d tone) —助, 'to aid.' 協—合, 'to unite,' 'to harmonize.'

厥居, —'their dwelling or abiding.' This expression is difficult. Both the 'Daily Explanation,' and K'ang Shing paraphrase it by 其所當居止之理.

'the principles in which they ought to abide.' Gan-kwé's language upon it is enigmatical. He says that 'Heaven thus aids and harmonizes their abiding, so that they shall have a provision for prolonged life.'

(是助合其居使有常生之資). Ying-ti is expanding this line some striking things. He says that 'the people have been produced by supreme Heaven (民是上天所生), and both body and soul are Heaven's gift (形神天

之所授). Men have thus the material body and the knowing mind, and Heaven further assists them, helping them to harmonize their lives. The right and the wrong of their language, the correctness and errors of their conduct, their enjoyment of clothing and food, the rightness of their various movements;—all these things are to be harmonized by what they are endowed with by Heaven. Accordance with the right way gives life, and error from it leads to death. Thus Heaven has not only given life to men, and conferred upon them a body and mind, but it further assists them to harmonize their conditions of life, so as to have a provision for its continuance' (天非徒賦命於人, 授以形體心識, 乃復佑助諸合其居業, 使有常生之資).

The fact is that the obscure text can only be brought out obscurely. We cannot do better than understand 厥居 as meaning 'the principles in which men should rest in their various conditions,' belonging to the complex constitution which God has given them.

I have said that Heaven is the subject spoken of in 相協厥居. The text certainly supplies no other; but Wang Shu supposed a 王者, before 相, thinking the meaning to be that 'Heaven having produced men with their peculiar constitution, and taking an interest in them, it derives on the sovereign to give effect to the wishes of Heaven for men's virtue and happiness.'

K'ang Shing follows this view. It cannot be said not to be in harmony with the general teaching of the classics. The text is thereby, indeed, brought into strict accordance with that in the 'Announcement of T'ang,' p. 2. But the language in that passage is sufficiently explicit. I can find no subject in the text for 相協 but 天.

The next clause, however, must be understood, I think, with reference to the duty of the sovereign, so that the whole paragraph may be considered as very nearly equivalent to that referred to in the 'Announcement of T'ang.'

我不知其彝倫攸敘—king

Woo, say many critics, knew very well all about the subject, but he thus speaks to bring out the learning of the viscount of Ke. We may rather suppose that he speaks with reference to the Great Plan and its Divisions, of which he had merely heard.

彝—常

'constant,' 'regular;' meaning here the nature of man, acting according to the regular laws of its constitution appointed by Heaven. Compare in the Shu King, Pt. III, Bk. III, Ode vi., st. 1, 天生烝民有物有則, 民之秉彝好是懿德.

'Heaven, in giving birth to the multitudes of men, to every endowment appointed its appropriate law.' The people, holding fast this constant nature, love the virtue which is admirable.

倫—人倫, 'the relations of human society,' in which are

其彝倫攸敘。箕子乃言曰：我聞在昔，鯀陞洪水，汨陳其五行，帝乃震怒，不畀洪範九疇，彝倫攸斁。禹乃嗣興，天乃錫禹洪範九疇。彝倫攸敘。○初

- 8 The viscount of Ke thereupon replied, "I have heard that of old time K'wán dammed up the inundating waters, and thereby threw into disorder the arrangement of the five elements. God was thereby roused to anger, and did not give him 'the great Plan with its nine Divisions,' whereby the proper virtues of the various relations were left to go to ruin. K'wán was then kept a prisoner till his death, and Yu rose up to continue his undertaking. To him Heaven gave 'the great Plan with its nine Divisions,' and thereby the proper virtues of the various relations were brought forth in their order.

seen the virtues of man's nature, intended by
彝攸—所攸敘—所以敘
'how they are arranged.'

I have said that this clause is to be understood with reference to the work and duty of the sovereign. Gau-kwó, indeed, supposes that Heaven is still the subject (我不知天所以定民之常道理次敘間何由); but the other view is generally adopted. The explanation of the whole paragraph, given by Ch'in Ye-yen (陳雅言; Ming dyn.) is the best which I have seen:

一武王意人君代天理物必仰承天意以治民而使其無失其理居上順其常得正心者倫負其道陰陽相協彝倫攸敘也我欲敘之何如箕子為之治道洪範九疇之敘即彝倫攸敘也

Gaubil's translation is—*Le ciel a des voies secrètes, par lesquelles il rend le peuple tranquille et sxe. Il s'unit à lui pour l'aider à garder son Etat. Je ne connois point*

cette règle: quelle est elle? Madhurst endeavours to keep more close to the text:—Heaven has secretly settled the lower people, aiding and according with that in which they rest; but I do not know the arrangement of those invariable principles.

P. 3. 鯀陞洪水—陞—塞, 'to dam up.' Instead of finding a vent for the accumulated waters, as his son Yu did, K'wán attempted to remedy the evils of their inundation by damming them up. 汨陳五行—*for the 'five elements,' see the 5th par.* 汨—

亂, 'to confuse,' 'to throw into disorder.' 陳—列, 'to arrange,' and 陳五行—上帝所陳列之五行, 'the five elements arranged by God.' How K'wán's damming the waters—dealing wrongly with one element—should derange all the other elements, is a statement which I can make nothing of.

不畀洪範九疇—畀—與, 'to give to; 疇—類, 'sorts,' 'classes,' 'divisions.'

彝倫攸斁—斁 (read *see*)—敗, 'to subvert,' 'to ruin.' How the consequence here stated took place, is likewise a thing which I don't understand. 鯀則殛死—see the 'Cau. of Shun,' p. 12.

天乃錫禹洪範九疇—see have seen, in the second introductory note, how it is fabled that Yu received the great Plan from

一、曰五行、次二、
 曰敬用五事、次三、
 曰農用八政、次四、
 曰協用五紀、次五、
 曰建用皇極、次六、
 曰又用三德、次七、
 曰明用稽疑、次八、
 曰念用庶徵、次九、
 曰嚮用五福。

- 4 II. "Of those divisions, the first is called 'The five Elements'; the second is called 'The Reverent Practice of the five Businesses'; the third is called 'Earnest Devotion to the eight objects of Government'; the fourth is called 'The Harmonious Use of the five Arrangements'; the fifth is called 'The Establishment and Use of Royal Perfection'; the sixth is called 'The Cultivation and Use of the three Virtues'; the seventh is called 'The Intelligent Use of the Examination of Doubts'; the eighth is called 'The Thoughtful Use of the various Verifications'; the ninth is called 'The Hortatory Use of the five Happinesses, and the Awing Use of the six Extremities.'

Heaven. Lin Che-k'e held that all which is meant by the text is that Heaven gave Yu the mind and the enlightenment to conceive and describe the Plan. Choo He was asked what he thought of this view, and whether it was not contrary to the Yü King, which says that 'the Ló gave forth the Book.' He answered, 'Suppose that Heaven had only now given the Book of Ló, if it did not also give the mind to interpret it, no man would understand it! Neither the old account, nor Lin Che-k'e's, is to be set aside.'

(便使而今天錫洛書若非天啟其心亦無人理會得兩說似不可偏廢也)。

I have said I don't understand how the virtues and relations were left to go to ruin, in consequence of K'wan's failure: Ch'in Sze-k'ao has tried to explain this difficulty, but with little success. He says:—

陶唐之盛於變時雍之際又何彝倫之敦哉此非言朝廷也蓋五帝之非九功未敘獸蹄鳥迹之汨道交於中所以數絕滅而後謂之綱常絕滅也豈哉。

CH. II. P. 4. THE GREAT PLAN AND ITS FIVE DIVISIONS.

The reader must not suppose that the great Plan was something different from its nine Divisions. It was merely the combination of them.

This paragraph is supposed to be the work of Yu. According to Lew Hün, indeed, the whole 65 characters were upon the back of the tortoise;—see the 前漢書五行志上凡此六十五字皆洛書本文. Gan-kwé says he did not know how many characters were on the back of the tortoise, but that the numbering of the Divisions, 'first,' 'second,' &c. (初一日、次二日、云云) was done by Yu. In this way there would be 58 characters left. Some take away the half of these again,—those, namely, which have a verbal or hortatory force, (敬用農用云云) leaving the names of the divisions. The prevailing opinion now, however, is that there were only the 48 small circles, upon and close, upon the creature; but even this much cannot be allowed. The whole story of the tortoise and 'the book of Ló' is only fit to be told to children. In the paragraph before us, the characters 五行、五事, &c. had come down from the times of Hün; perhaps the 敬用農用, &c. had done the same; 初一日、次二日, &c. were spoken by the viscount of Ké in the narrative which he gave to Woo.

While discarding the 'book of Ló,' it will be a help to the student's memory, and in his reading of the various logs on the Plan, if I append here an outline of the 'Book' with the

火 日 日 日 日 日 日 五 極 威
日 潤 土 金 木 火 水 行 〇 用
炎 下 水 五 四 三 二 一 一 六

5 III. [i.] "First, of the five elements.—The first is named water; the second, fire; the third, wood; the fourth, metal; the fifth, earth. *The nature of water is to soak and descend; of fire, to blaze and ascend; of wood, to be crooked and to be straight; of metal, to obey and*

names of the Divisions added to it. It differs from the common representations of the Plan, by containing the 5th division in the centre, which is ordinarily excluded, from numerical considerations.



For the names of the subjects of the nine Divisions, see on their several paragraphs that follow. With regard to the 'fire 事' it is said they are to be reverently used. The 事 being personal, belonging to the government of one's self, it is required to be 'reverent' in respect to them. [Kuang Shing, after Lew Hln, reads 羞用 for 敬用, but 敬 rests on good authority, —see the 後案, in loc.]

The 'eight 政' are to be used 'liberally.' 農 is read as if it were 饋, and defined by 厚. Ma Yung and Wang Suh try to retain the meaning of 農 'Agriculture,'—but ineffectually. The 'five 紀' are to be used 'harmoniously,'—to bring the works of men into harmony with the times of heaven. The 'various 徵' are to be used 'thoughtfully.' 念—'with considerate examination.' The 'five 福' are to be used 'encouragingly,'—so

as to attract men 'towards' (招徠) what is desired. No numbers, it is observed, are used with reference to the fifth Division, the perfection which it indicates not being capable of measurement.

Ch. III. Pp. 3—40. PARTICULAR DESCRIPTION OF THE NINE DIVISIONS. 5. Of the five elements.

Gaubil does not translate 行, but gives always—'les cinq Aïng.' We have got into the habit of rendering it in English by 'elements.' But it seems hardly possible to determine what the Chinese mean by the term. By 'elements' we mean 'the first principles or ingredients of which all bodies are composed.' The Pythagoreans, by their four elements of earth, water, air, and fire—a classification first made, apparently, by Ocellus—did not intend so much the nature or essence of material substances, as the forms under which matter is actually presented to us. The term 行, meaning 'to move,' 'to be in action,' shows that the original conception of the Chinese is of a different nature; and it is said, in the dict., that 'the five Aïng move and revolve throughout heaven and earth, without ever ceasing, and hence they are so called (五行運于天地間, 未嘗停息, 故名)' 'Distributed, say the editors of Yung-ching's Shoo, "through the four seasons, they make the "five arrangements;" exhibited in prognostications, they give rise to divination by the tortoise and the reeds; having lodgment in the human body, they produce "the five businesses;" moved by good fortune and bad, they produce "the various verifications;" communicated to organisms, they produce the different natures, hard and soft, good and evil; working out their results in the changes of those organisms, they necessitate here benevolence and there meanness, here longevity and there early death:—all these things are from the operation of the five Aïng. But if we speak of them in their simplest and most important character, they are, as here, what man's life depends upon, what the people cannot do without.'

Leaving all this jargon, and turning to the 'counsels of Yu' par. 7, 8, we find that 'water, fire, metal, wood, and earth' are, along with 'grain,' the six magazines, from which the people are to be provided with what is necessary for their sustenance and comfort. We may content ourselves, therefore, with under-

恭、聽、言、事、穡、酸、上、穡、曰、上、
 言、五、三、一、作、從、作、潤、從、木、
 曰、曰、曰、曰、甘、革、苦、下、革、曰、
 從、思、視、貌、○、作、曲、作、土、曲、
 視、貌、四、二、二、辛、直、鹹、爰、直、
 曰、曰、曰、曰、五、稼、作、炎、稼、金

to change; while the virtue of earth is seen in seed-sowing and ingathering. That which soaks and descends becomes salt; that which blazes and ascends becomes bitter; that which is crooked and straight becomes sour; that which obeys and changes becomes acrid; and from seed-sowing and ingathering comes sweetness.

- 6 [ii.] "Second, of the five businesses.—The first is called demeanour; the second, speech; the third, seeing; the fourth, hearing; and the fifth, thinking. The *virtue of the demeanour* is called respectfulness; of speech, *accordance with reason*; of seeing, clear-

standing 五行 here as 'the five essentials to human life.' From 水曰潤下 downwards is to be taken as the language of the viscount of Ka, or of the chronicler of Chow, to whom we owe the 'great Plan' of the Shoo; but the language is affected by the study of the Yih-king, which had come into vogue.

水曰潤下.—'water may be described as moistening and descending.' 潤下.....

從革. It is said, 以性言, 'describe the nature of the elements.' But nature in such a case is only expressive of some qualities belonging to them. 稼穡 again, is said to be

descriptive of the virtues of earth (以德言);

and hence we read 土爰稼穡 and not

土曰稼穡. 'Metal obeys and changes'; i.e., it alters its form when acted on by fire.

From 潤下 to the end we have the 五

味 or 'five tastes' of the elements:—not, however, the tastes that are proper to them, but those which they are found in course of time to assume. This is denoted by 作, which I have translated 'becomes.' Hea Seven has said, 'The reason why we find 作 used in connection with the five tastes or flavours of the elements is this.—Water as it issues from the spring is not salt;—but when it flows away to the sea, and is there collected and coagulated together for a long time, the salt taste is pro-

duced, and the saltness is made by the soaking and descending. When fire, blazes on without ceasing, charring and scorching for a long time, the bitter taste is produced, and the bitterness is made by the blazing and ascending'; &c., &c. The reader may find a reasonable meaning in all this, if he can. Ts'ao observes that the five elements have their several sounds, colours, and airs, as well as tastes, but the text only speaks of their tastes, those being of greater importance to the people than the others.

P. 6. Of the five businesses. To translate

五事 by 'the five businesses' reads awkward and uncouth; but I can do no better with it. Medhurst renders the phrase by 'the five senses,' which is plainly inadmissible. Gaubil gives for it—'les cinq occupations ou affaires.'

From the language of p. 4.—敬用五事, we gather that the 'aspect,' 'the speech,' &c., are not themselves the 事, but what give occasion to them. 貌—容儀, 'carriage,'

'demeanour.' 恭從 &c., describe the

several virtues or desirable characteristics of the 'businesses' (五事之德). 言曰從

—從—順, 'accordance,' that is, obedience to right and reason. It is strange that the old interpreters, Gan-k'wô, K'ung-shing, and Ma Yung, all agree in defining 從 by 可從,

making the meaning to be—'the virtue of speech is that it moves others to follow the speaker.' This is manifestly wrong. 睿—通乎

明聽曰聰思曰
 睿恭作肅從作
 父明作哲聰作
 謀睿作聖○
 入政一曰食二
 曰貨三曰祀四
 曰司空五曰司
 徒六曰司寇七
 曰賓八曰師○
 四曰五紀一曰
 歲

ness; of hearing, distinctness; and of thinking, perspicaciousness. The respectfulness becomes manifest in gravity; accordance with reason, in orderliness; the clearness, in wisdom; the distinctness, in deliberation; and the perspicaciousness, in sageness.

7 [iii.] "Third, of the eight objects of government:—the first is called food; the second, commodities; the third, sacrifices; the fourth, the minister of works; the fifth, the minister of instruction; the sixth, the minister of crime; the seventh, the entertainment of guests; the eighth, the army.

8 [iv.] "Fourth, of the five arrangements.—The first is called the year; the second, the month; the third, the day; the fourth, the

微 'penetrating to what is minute. 肅

父 &c., describe the consummation of those virtues (五德之用)—what they come to, as is indicated by the 作.

These businesses are represented as being in the human person what the five elements are in nature. Demeanour is the human correspondence of water, speech that of fire. But again leaving all this, can we tell what the writer would be at? Lin Chü-k'o refers to what Mencius says, VII, Pt. I, xxviii,—"The bodily organs with their functions belong to our Heaven-conferred nature; but a man must be a sage before he can satisfy the design of his bodily organization;" and then adds that this paragraph contains the science of doing this. Certainly if a man have attained to the results here exhibited, he has made much progress in self-government and personal cultivation.

P. 7. *The eight objects of government.* Medhurst translates 八政 by 'the eight Regulators,' and Gaubil by 'les huit règles du Gouvernement.' It means the eight things to be attended to in government, its objects or departments. They seem to be stated in the order of their importance in the view of the speaker. 'Food' belongs to the department of agriculture, and 'commodities' or 'goods' to that of trade and commerce. These two things being secured, the people would have the essentials of life, and would be able to attend to their duties to spiritual beings and to the dead. Then

would come in the minister of works, to secure the comfort of their dwellings; and the minister of instruction to teach them all their moral duties; and the minister of crime to deter them from evil. All festive ceremonies, all the intercourse of society, could then be regulated; and finally the efficiency of the army would be maintained, to secure the general well-being of the State.

It will be seen that the three first and two last are the objects to be attended to in their several departments, while the intermediate three are the names of the ministers. No account can be given of this peculiarity of the style. So the author was pleased to write,—very unsatisfactorily.

P. 8. *The five subjects of arrangement.* Medhurst calls the 五紀 the 'Five Arrangers,' and Gaubil, 'les cinq Périodes.' He observes in a note that '紀' is used for chronicles and annals; for a revolution of the stars, of cycles, of years; and that it may express a fixed point for chronology and astronomy. The term properly denotes 'the sorting of threads of silk,' and thence is applied to the digesting of chronicles and arranging of annals. It is hard to say whether it is intended in the text for the objective work of arranging the measures of the things spoken of, or, for those things as measured and arranged.

歲一天時之一周, 'a complete revolution of the seasons.' 月, 'the moon,' is

二日月，三日
日，四曰星辰，
五曰曆數。○
五皇極，皇建
其有極，斂時
五福，用敷錫
厥庶民，惟時
厥庶民于汝
極，錫汝保極。

stars and planets, and the zodiacal signs; and the fifth, the calendaric calculations.

- 9 [v.] "Fifth, of royal perfection.—The sovereign having established his highest point of excellence, he concentrates in himself the five happinesses, and then diffuses them so as to give them to his people:—then on their part the multitudes of the people, resting

here—'month,' the period of a lunation,' including the determination of new and full moon, and the intermediate phases. 日, 'the sun,'

is here—'a day.' 星辰—see *Can. of Yaco*, p. 3. 曆數—comp. the use of

this phrase in the *Canon of Shun*, p. 14. It is here used, in its primary meaning, of the computations by which the measures of the year, the month, the day, &c., are determined, and the calendar fixed.

This division of the Plan is substantially the same as Yaco's instructions to his astronomers. The language is too brief to tell us what improvement had been made in the science of astronomy between the time of Yaco, and that of king Woo.

Pp. 9–16. *Royal perfection* Medhurst

translates 皇極 by 'the princely perfection'; and Gaubil, by 'le terme du Souverain, ou le milieu du Souverain.' Gau-kwé had defined

the term by 大中, 'the great Mean,' and his explanation seems to have been unquestioned till the time of the Sung dynasty. Then Choo

He insisted that 皇 must be taken here in the sense of 君, 'prince,' 'sovereign,' referring to

the way in which it is interchanged with 王 in par. 14 (皇有訓大處惟皇極)

之皇不可訓大皇只當作

君，所以說遵王之義，遵王

之路，直到後面以爲天下

王其意可見，蓋皇字下從

王). Choo's criticism is correct.—He is correct also in rejecting the definition of 極 by 中. 極 is 'the utmost point,'—the extreme of excel-

lence, realized in the person of the sovereign, and serving as an example and attractive influence to all below, both ministers and people. It is supposed to be in the centre, the exact middle, but it should not be called the centre or Mean. Take its primary application to 'the beam forming the ridge of a house':—that is the highest point of the roof, on which the other parts rest, and it is in the centre of it; but it is called 極 and not 中.

By 'royal perfection' we are to understand the sovereign, all that he ought to be. T'sze dwells upon it in its relation to his personal character, exhibiting all the virtues. Others say it is the accumulation of the personal and governmental excellences described in the previous divisions of the Plan. Our best way is to leave it in its own vagueness.

I have already observed that no place is found for this in the numerical scheme of the 'Great Plan,' arranged according to the principles of the Yih King. There are only 8 diagrams, not 9. This might have shown the critics that this Book was not to be treated on those principles.

9. 斂時 (一) 是

五福.—'collects these five happinesses,' that is, collects, concentrates them in his own person

(斂集是五福于皇躬; see the 日講). Happiness, it is supposed, invariably follows virtue;—compare in the 'Counsels of Yu,' p. 5, 惠迪吉, 從逆凶, 惟

影響. The 'five happinesses' must be those of the last Division, and we are surprised to find them mentioned here, with the definitive

時—是 before them. It is not to be wondered at that Hung Maw (洪邁) should have

proposed to remove from this down to 錫之

福 in p. 11, to the ninth division. The difficulty is a little lightened by taking 時—於

○凡^十厥庶民，無有淫朋，無有比德，無有作極。皇作極，凡^十有爲，有守，汝則念之，不協于極，不罹于咎，皇則受之，而康而色，曰：

- 10 in your perfection, will give to you the preservation of it. That the multitudes of the people have no lawless confederacies, and that men *in office* have no selfish combinations, will be an effect of the
11 sovereign's establishing his highest point of excellence. Among all the multitudes of the people, when any have counsel, and conduct, and keep themselves from evil, do you bear them in mind; those who do not come up to the highest excellence, and *yet* do not involve themselves in crime, let the sovereign receive; and when a placid

是, 'thereon' or 'thereby,' as in the translation.

用敷錫厥庶民.—'uses them, diffusing and giving them to his multitudinous people.' The king, not able to be happy himself only, seeks to make his people happy;—it is not said by what methods.

惟時云云.—Ts'ao expands this:—當時之民亦皆於君之極與之保也。守不敢失墜。所謂錫保也。言皇極君民所以相與者如此。'the people, after that, guard and preserve the perfection of the sovereign for him, not daring to lose it or let it drop. This is what is shown by 錫保. The whole tells us what a mutual interest the ruler and the people have in this royal perfection.' It is really difficult to say what the whole tells us. The student will not fail to observe how the viscount of Ku begins here to address himself to king Woo.—汝極

10. Royal perfection will banish from the empire all unjust confederacies.

淫朋—邪黨 'bad, corrupt parties.' 淫 has here its frequent meaning of

過, 'beyond bounds.' Comp. 朋淫于家 in the 'Yih and Tschü,' p. 2.

人無有比德—the 人 here, in opp. to the 庶民 above, is understood to mean 有位之人, 'men having office.'

德 is used in a bad sense. 比德—私相比附, 'selfish combining.' 作極 is about 1. 5. 建極

of the last par. Perhaps 作 indicates the various efforts and steps of progress by which 建, the point of establishment, is attained.

11. How royal perfection will be seen in dealing with superior men, and with inferior men also, bringing the latter to approve and attain to the highest excellence.

有猷有爲 are men 'mighty in words and deeds.' They are supposed further to be 有守, to have that firm and resolute nature, which will sustain them against temptation. 念之, 'think of them,' 'bear them in mind.' This is—'give to such your confidence. You may repose trust in them.'

不協于極—'do not harmonize with—have not yet attained to—the highest excellence.'

不罹于咎=不陷於惡

The 不—而不, with the adversative force of 而, 'and yet.' These are a class of mediocre individuals, different from and inferior to the former.

而康而色.—Gan-kwò, taking 而—汝, took this as addressed to king Woo:—汝當安汝顏色以謙下人.

'you ought to compose your countenance, and condescend to those inferior men.' But he is then obliged to understand another 人 as the nominative to 曰, '—when men say,' &c.

It is better to take, with Choo He, 而康而色, as referring to the class of men just described, and—'when they are pleased, and look so, saying,' &c. Ts'ao says:—見於

予攸好德，汝則錫之福。時人斯其惟皇之極。○無虐癸獨而畏高明。○人之有能有為，使羞其行，而邦其昌。凡厥正人，既富方穀，汝弗能使其好于其家，時人斯其幸，于其無好德，汝雖

- satisfaction appears in their countenances, and they say—'Our love is fixed on virtue,' do you then confer favour on them. Those men will in this way advance to the perfection of the sovereign. Do not oppress the friendless and childless; do not fear the high and illustrious. When men have ability and administrative power, cause them still more to cultivate their conduct, and the prosperity of the country will be promoted. All right men, having a competency, will go on to be good. If you cannot make men have what they love in their families, they will only proceed to be guilty of crime;

外而有安和之色，發於中而有好德之言云云。

錫之福——福 here = 祿, one of the 'five happinesses.'

時(一)是(一)人其惟皇之極——the 'Daily Explanation'

paraphrases this:—將見惟是庶民感發于念受之已深鼓舞惟于錫福而不倦斯同歸極矣皇之極而信能以保極矣

12. Ts'ao says this par. completes the meaning of the one which precedes, and serves to introduce that which follows. To me it interrupts the train of thought, fugitive as that is. Gan-kwō says that 癸—單無兄弟, 'solitary, without brothers,' and that 獨

是無子, 'childless.'

13. Ts'ao says that this paragraph speaks of 'men who are in office' (此言有位者也.) This is in accordance with the distinction made between 庶民 and 人 in par. 10. This is the general view of the critics. I do not think it can be altogether sustained. The 'men' may not be in office, but only applicants for it. They are inferior to those first

mentioned in par. 11, having the ability, and the practical capacity, but being without the conservative (有守) element. If they can be led on to this—使羞(一)進其行

—they may be employed, and their employment will conduce to the prosperity of the country.

凡厥正人, —Gan-kwō takes 正人 in a moral sense as—正直之人

'correct men.' I think his view is right. Ts'ao understands the phrase in an official sense, and says it—在官之人, 'men who are in official employment.' The phrase may be so taken; but the other view suits the whole paragraph better.

既富—'being enriched,' having remunerative office conferred on them. 穀—善, 'good.' 方穀—'then they will be good.' Ts'ao makes this—'then you may require them to be good.' The idea is the same with that which Mencius often insists on,—that men, when raised above the pressure of want, are likely, may be expected, to cultivate the moral virtues. Though I have followed Gan-kwō in his view of 正人, I cannot accept his explanation of this 方穀;

—see the 註疏 汝弗能其幸—the principal difficulty here is with 有

好于而家. I take 好 in the 3d tone,

錫之福其作
汝用咎○無^{十四}
偏無陂遵王
之義無有作
好遵王之道
無有作惡遵
王之路無偏
蕩無黨無偏
王道平乎無

while they do not love virtue, though you confer favour on them, they will involve you in the guilt of employing them *thus* evil.

14

"Without deflection, without unevenness,

Pursue the Royal righteousness;

Without any selfish likings,

Pursue the Royal way;

Without any selfish dislikings,

Pursue the Royal path;

Without deflection, without partiality,

Broad and long is the Royal path.

Without partiality, without deflection,

The Royal path is level and easy;

and 有好^{as} = 有所好, 'to have what they love,' meaning the means of comfortable living. 而家 = 其所有家, 'their families;'—the 而 being taken as merely a pause or rest of the voice. Possibly it may be 汝, 'your,' and 家 may be, by synecdoche, for 國家, so that 而家 = 'your country.' I prefer the other construction however.

時人斯其辜—是人則將陷於罪. The whole is in opposition to the preceding clause.—'Let the sovereign employ and remunerate those able and well-meaning men, and they will go on to be really good. If on the contrary they are neglected, and left to suffer penury, they will lose their self-respect, and proceed to become evil.' Hoo Yih-chung (胡一中; Yuan dyn.) explains the passage very much in the same way. He says:—好

者自愛重也. 家謂有厚祿而若者. 凡正長之官, 汝當爲善, 汝若不愛, 使之富足, 方能富, 彼無所藉其無. 用咎—such men, falling off into

crime, may afterwards be put in remunerating offices; but the opportunity has been lost by the sovereign. He will only now reap the fruit of his want of wisdom in dealing with them in the past.

P. 14. An ancient Song, descriptive of the royal perfection, and stimulating men to imitate it. We may compare with it the songs of Shun and Kaou-yaou in the 'Yih and Tseih.' The lines are composed of four characters, and every two lines rhyme together after a fashion. The general opinion is that the song was not composed by the viscount of Ke, but that it was a well-known piece, which had come down from the Hea times, and which he recites to king Woo.

無偏無陂遵王之義—Sze-ma Ts'een gives 頗 for 陂, and there can be no doubt this was the reading till the reign of the emperor Hsuen-tsung (玄宗) of the T'ang dynasty. A proclamation of his, in the year 744, is still extant, ordering the change from 頗 to 陂, that there might be a rhyme with 義, and referring to the language of the Yih in the diagram 泰—無平不陂, as suggesting the latter character, which is in meaning much the same as the other. But we might still retain 頗, and read 義 as go, to rhyme with it. 備, which is a derivative from it, is allowed to be sometimes pre-

訓是行以近天
子之光曰天子
作民父母以爲
天下王。○六三
德一曰正直二
曰剛克三曰柔
克平康正直彊
弗友剛克變友
柔克沈潛剛克
高明柔克。○惟

mate to the glory of the son of Heaven, and say, 'The son of Heaven is the parent of the people, and so becomes the sovereign of the empire.'

- 17 [vi.] "Sixth, of the three virtues.—The first is called correctness and straightforwardness; the second, strong government; and the third, mild government. In peace and tranquillity, correctness and straightforwardness *must away*; in violence and disorder, strong government *must away*; in harmony and order, mild government *must stay*. For the reserved and retiring there is the strong rule; for the lofty and intelligent there is the mild rule.

之敷言 is of course 皇極之敷言. Medhurst erroneously translates the

clause—'carry out these wide-spread instructions.' The people are supposed to repeat and crowd over the amplification,—especially the song, teaching themselves and one another, and to be aroused to carry the lessons into practice, till they attain to a perfection in their degree equal to that of the sovereign in this. 曰

天子云云.—the people are the subject of the 曰 here. Hea Seuen would refer it to 箕子, like the 曰 in the last par., but he must be wrong. 天子,—the Son of Heaven;—see Part III., Bk. IV., 5.

Pp. 17–19. Of the three virtues. The three virtues are characteristics of the imperial rule;—they are not personal attributes of the sovereign, but the manifestations of the perfection which is supposed to have been described in the last Division. Their names are 正直, 剛

克, and 柔克. Trac makes the names 正直, 剛, and 柔; but the omission of the 克 in the case of the second and third

gives them too much the appearance of personal attributes. The second and third are chiefly dwelt on, this division being supplementary to the last,—to show how the Royal perfection will deal with times and cases of an abnormal

character. 17 正直.—see in p. 14,

王道正直. This is the course that the perfect sovereign will naturally and usually take. 剛克.—'strong subduing.' This is

the course of the perfect sovereign, when it is necessary for him to put on his terrors.

柔克.—'mild subduing.' This is his course, when it is proper for him to condescend to weaker natures. 彊弗友.—友,

'friendly,' 'disposed to be friendly,' must here be taken as—順, 'compliant,' 'obedient.'

變—和 'harmonious,' 'mild.' 沈潛.

—the former of these characters signifies 'to sink beneath the water,' and the second, 'to dive.' 'Disappearance,' 'being hidden,' belongs to both these things, and hence the combination is used in the text to denote individuals who are reserved and retiring, wanting in force of character. In 高明, 'the high and intelligent,' we have the opposite of them, those in whom the forward element predominates. The 'strong rule' must be applied to the former class,—to encourage them, and the 'mild rule' to the latter,—to repress them. The use of the 'virtues' is thus different from what it appears to be in the clauses that precede. Chinese critics do not venture to find fault with this;—to me it makes the text perplexing and enigmatical.

辟作福，惟辟作威，惟辟玉食。○臣之有作福作威玉食，其害于而家，凶于而國，人用側頗僻，民用僭忒。○^{二十}七稽疑，擇建

- 18 "It belongs only to the prince to confer favours, to display the
19 terrors of majesty, and to receive the revenues of the empire. There
should be no such thing as a minister conferring favours, displaying
the terrors of justice, or receiving the revenues of the country. Such
a thing is injurious to the families, and fatal to the States of the
empire;—small officers become one-sided and perverse, and the people
commit assumptions and excesses.
20 [vii.] "Seventh, of the examination of doubts.—Having chosen and

18, 19. *The prerogatives of the ruler must be strictly maintained.* Some critics would remove these paragraphs to the last Division. One certainly does not readily perceive what connection they have with the three virtues that have just been spoken of. We can hardly venture on the step of removing them, however, and putting them in another place;—we must be content with them where they are, acknowledging the vexation which their inconsequence occasions us. Only the prince 作福, 'rouses up, employs, the various happinesses;' i.e., he is the source of all favours and dignities. In the same way he only 作威, 'is the source of all punishments and degradations. 惟辟玉

食, 'only the prince the gemmeous food.' 玉食—珍食, 'the pearly or precious food,' each grain of rice or other corn being spoken of as a gem or pearl. There is no 作. It will be seen, between 辟 and 玉食, and we must therefore supply another verb, and one, it seems to me, of a different meaning. Lin Che-k'a, without repeating the 作, or supplying any other verb, yet understands the clause according to the analogy of the two preceding ones, and takes the 玉食 as meaning all the badges of distinction and favour conferred by the sovereign on his princes and ministers. There is thus no intelligible difference between the first clause, 惟辟作福, and this.

Ts'ao says that the 玉食, 'the precious grain,' is what the people contribute to their

rulers (下之所以奉上). He must be right. 玉食—'the revenues' of the State; and we must understand the verb, 享 'to enjoy,' 'to receive,' before the phrase.

According to this view, 辟 is to be interpreted not of the emperor only, but of all the princes, large and small, in their several States as well. K'ang-shing, Ma Yung, and Wang Suh all insist on this. Ma Yung's words are—辟君也. 玉食, 美食, 不言王者, 關諸侯也. Gan-k'wé does not speak distinctly on the point; but Ying-ta, in his gloss on the other's annotation, refers to Wang Suh's view, observing that, as the princes, in their several States, had the power of rewards and punishments, and, he might have added, the right to the revenue, this interpretation is perhaps correct. It does seem strange thus to pass from the person and govt. of the emperor; but so it is.

其害于而家, 凶于而國.—see on 好于而家, in par. 13. There is the same difficulty in determining the meaning. The two last clauses show how the injury and ruin will arise. There will be a general disorganization of social order, each lower rank trying to usurp the privileges of that above it;—comp. Mencius I. Bk. 1, 1, 4. 人 and 民 are again opposed to each other, as in the 10th and other paragraphs.

Pp. 20—21. *Of the examination of doubts.* The course proposed for the satisfaction of doubts shows us at how early an age the Chinese had come under the power of absurd supersti-

從筮立^用凡^日日雨、命立
 二三人時二、七、貞、驛、日卜
 人之占、作貳、五、悔、克、日○筮
 言。則卜○占○○蒙、日^乃

- 21 appointed officers for divining by the tortoise and by the milfoil,
 they are to be charged on occasion to perform their duties. In doing
 22 this, they will find the appearances of rain, clearing up, cloudiness,
 want of connection and crossing; and the symbols, solidity, and re-
 23 pentance. In all the indications are seven;—five given by the tortoise,
 and two by the milfoil, by which the errors of affairs may be
 24 traced out. These officers having been appointed, when the opera-
 tions with the tortoise and milfoil are proceeded with, three men are
 to obtain and interpret the indications and symbols, and the consent-
 ing words of two of them are to be followed.

tions. In the 'Counsels of Yu,' p. 18, that sage proposes to Shun to submit the question of who should be his successor on the throne to divination, and the emperor replies that he had already done so. There is no reason to doubt, therefore, the genuineness of the great Plan, as a relic of the Hsia times, from the nature of this part of it. As soon as the curtain lifts from China, and we get a glimpse of its greatest men about four thousand years ago, we find them trying to build up a science of the will of Heaven and issues of events, from various indications given by the shell of a tortoise and the stalks of the milfoil! Gaubil observes that according to the text the tortoise and milfoil were consulted only in doubtful cases. But we may be sure that if such was the practice of the sages, superstitious observances entered largely as a depraving and disturbing element into the life of the people. They do so at the present day. The old methods of divination have fallen into disuse, and I cannot say how far other methods are sanctioned by the government, but the diviners and soothsayers, of many kinds, form a considerable and influential class of society.

Pp. 20-24 contain some hints as to the manner in which divination was practised. The same subject is treated in the Chow Le, Bk. XXIV; but it is hardly possible to get the two accounts into one's mind so as to understand and be able distinctly to describe the subject.

20. Two kinds of divination and the appointment of officers to superintend them. The two kinds of divination were—first, that by means of the tortoise, or tortoise-shell rather, called 卜; and that by means of the stalks of the 著 plant, called 筮. 'The tortoise,' says Choo He, 'after great length of years becomes intelligent;

and the 著 plant will yield, when a hundred years old, a hundred stalks from one root, and is also a spiritual and intelligent thing. The two divinations were in reality a questioning of spiritual beings, the plant and the tortoise being employed, because of their mysterious intelligence, to indicate their intimations. The way of divination by the tortoise was by the application of fire to scorch the tortoise-shell till the indications appeared on it: and that by the stalks of the plant was to manipulate in the prescribed ways forty-nine of them, eighteen different times, till the diagrams were formed'

(龜歲久則靈 著生百歲 一本百莖 亦物之神靈者 卜筮實問鬼神以著龜神 靈之物故假之以其卦兆 卜法以明火焚柴灼龜為 兆筮法以四十九著分掛 揲扐凡十有八變而成卦)

See the Chapter on Divination in the 'Historical Records' (龜策列傳第六十八)

Medhurst says the 著 was one of the class of plants called *Achillea millefolium*. Williams calls it 'a sort of labiate plant, like verbena,' thereby leading us to think of the 'holy herb' of Dioscorides, the *verbena officinalis*. The correctness, however, of both these accounts may be doubted. There is a figure of the plant in the 本草綱目 (草部隱草類上):

but I have not yet been able to obtain a specimen to have its botanical name and place exactly determined.

We cannot tell how many were the officers of divination in the earlier dynasties, nor what were their several duties. In the Book of the Chow Li, referred to above, we have the 太卜, or 'grand diviner'; the 卜師, or 'master of divination'; the 龜人, or 'keeper of the tortoise'; the 華氏, or 'preparer of the wood'; and the 占人, or 'the observers and interpreters of the prognostics.' They were all, observe the critics, required to be men far removed from the disturbing influence of passion and prejudice. Only such could be associated with the methods of communication between higher intelligences and men.

Pp. 21—23. *The various indications.* 21. The appearances here described were those made on the shell of the tortoise. The way in which they were obtained seems to have been this.—The outer shell of the tortoise was taken off, leaving the inner portion on which were the marks of the lines of the muscles of the creature, &c. A part of this was selected for operation, and smeared with ink. The fire was then applied beneath, and the ink, when it was examined, according as it had been variously dried by the heat, gave the appearances mentioned. 霽 is defined as 雨止, 'rain stopping,'—'the weather clearing up.' 蒙 = 蒙昧不明, 'cloudiness, obscurity.'

騁, for which K'ang-shing and others have

圖 is understood to mean certain marks scattered about, without connection or relation;—see the remarks, by the editors of Yung-ching's Shoo, on Gan-k'uo's definition of the term by 落驛不屬, and Ts'ao's by 絡驛不屬. 克 = 交錯, meaning lines or cracks in the ink crossing each other. Ts'ao says these appearances belonged severally to the different elements,—that of rain to water, of cloudiness to wood, &c. The whole operation was a piece of absurdity, and we have too little information to say anything certain about it. 22. 貞

and 悔 were the names given to the diagrams formed by the manipulation of the stalks of the shu. In a complete diagram, composed of two of the eight primary ones, the lower figure is called 'the inner diagram' (內卦), and was styled 貞; the upper figure is called 'the outer diagram' (外卦), and was styled 悔. There were also other conditions according to which these names of 貞 and 悔 were applied to the different figures. How far, however, they obtained in the Hsia and Shang dynasties we cannot tell. Our present Yih King is entirely a book of the Chow dynasty;

but the text shows that the manipulation of P'oh-he's lines, and the derivation of meanings from the combination of them were practised, at least to some extent, in the earlier times.

The meaning of the names 貞 and 悔 is very much debated, and instead of entering on the discussion here, I will content myself with the words of Hsiao Gan-shu (項安世; Song dyn.), one of the most voluminous writers on the Yih.—'We only know that the inner diagram was 貞 and the outer 悔; we do not know what was intended by those designations.'

23. We have here a *resumé* of the two last parts, with the addition of the enigmatical phrase 衍貳 at the end. 卜五 占用二,

—we must understand a first 用 between 卜 and

五. The 卜占 here is equivalent to 卜筮 in p. 20, so that 筮 is exchanged for 占. 衍

貳—衍=推, 'to infer,' 'to push or carry out'; 貳 may be taken as either—差, 'error,'

or—變. Ts'ao adopts the former meaning, and interprets—'By this means the errors of human affairs may be traced out; that is, may be indicated before they occur, and so be avoided.

The 'Daily Explanation,' expanding this view, says—所謂推衍者推衍于未有過差之先非遲迴顧慮于已然之後. Choo He adopted

the former meaning, and interpreted—'every changing form of indication and symbol being traced out and determined.' See the quotation from him in the 集說; still, when the operations, thus many times varied, had been concluded, the object would be to obtain the guidance of their results in the conduct of affairs. Woo Ch'ing and many others prefer to say that they do not understand the phrase at all.

24. *Care to be taken in performing the divination.* 立時人作卜筮—時—

是, and the whole—既立是所擇之人以作卜筮之官, 'Having appointed the men thus selected to be the officers of divination.'

三人占—we are to suppose that they have been charged to perform their duties (乃命卜筮, p. 20), and then three men divine in each way. 占 in the last

part, was—筮; here it is used both for 卜 and 筮, including not only the various manipulations, but also the interpreting the results obtained. It is supposed that each man went through his operation farther on a different method.

蕃敘各者曰寒曰雨庶
 庶敘庶以來時曰燠曰徵
 ○草其備五風曰暘曰

32 [viii]. "Eighth, of the various verifications.—They are rain; sunshine; heat; cold; wind; and seasonableness. When the five come all complete, and each is in its proper order, even the various

之邪使箕子而溺於流俗
 何以爲箕子。'Ts'aun-loo' [this is a

designation by which Woo Ch'ing is known]. 'In his remarks upon the Classics, often speaks about the errors of the worthy and wise; but here he errs and commits himself more than usual. The Master, in his observations on the Yih, has said, "To unravel what is confused, and search out what is mysterious; to look up what is deep, and reach to what is distant,—thus determining whatever will be fortunate or unlucky, and rousing all men to continuous effort: there is nothing better than the use of the ale and the tortoise-shell" (see the 繫辭

上傳. p. 37. 'The Master' of course is Confucius). He also says, "Men are consulted; the spirits are consulted; the common people also contribute their ability" (繫辭下

傳. p. 69), meaning that thus all things doubted or may be determined. Did the great Yu mean anything else than this by his "Examination of Doubts"? and did the viscount of Ke accommodate to that what he said about divination by the tortoise and the milfoil? Had he been sunk in the current of prevailing custom merely, how could he have been the viscount of Ke?]

Pp. 32—33. Of the various verifications. Medhurst translates 庶徵 by 'the general verifications';—rightly, as regards 徵 but wrong, as regards 庶, which—非—'not one merely,' 'many,' 'various.' Ganhil renders the phrase by 'les apparences'—unhappily. In a note he says:—"I render the Chinese character 徵 by 'apparences,' not having found any word which would cover the whole extent of its meaning. In the present case, it signifies waters, phenomena, apparences, but in such a sort that those have relation to some other things with which they are connected;—the meteor or phenomenon indicates some good or some evil. It is a kind of correspondence which is supposed, it appears, to exist between the ordinary events of the life of men, and the constitution of the air, according to the different seasons;—what is here said supposes I know not what physical speculation of those times. It is needless to bring to bear on this text the interpretations of the later Chinese, for they

are full of false ideas on the subject of physics. It may be also that the viscount of Ke wanted to play the physicist on points which he did not know."

Ganhil describes correctly the way in which the character 徵 is here applied, but the translator should not render it from what it is applied to, but according to its proper signification. In the dict. it is defined by 證, 'to bear

witness,' 'to attest,' and by 明, 'to illustrate;'

and then there is quoted from par. 4 of this Book, 念用庶徵. 'Verifications' is prob-

ably as good a term as can be found in our language. The giving the name to the various phenomena in the text, and making them indicators of the character of men's conduct, is of a piece with the divinations of the last division. It is another form of superstition. If there underlie the words of the viscount of Ke some feeling of the harmony between the natural and spiritual worlds, which occurs to most men at times, and which strongly affects minds under deep religious thought or on the wings of poetic rapture, his endeavour to give the subject a practical application is so shallow that it only strikes us as grotesque and absurd.

The Division falls into two parts. In the first part. 32—34, we have a description of the verifying phenomena, and the interpretation of them.

P. 32. 暘—日出, 'the sun coming forth;'

or—明, 'brightness,' 'sunshine.' 燠—熱

在中, 'warmth diffused,' or—煖, 'heat.'

The meaning of 暘 and 燠 is sufficiently

shown by their opposition to 雨 and 寒.

'rain and cold.' 日時.—I have translated

this by 'seasonableness,' and would extend its

meaning to all the preceding verifications, so

that there are only five and not six phenomena.

The specification of 'five' immediately after

(五者來備), and the way in which the

phenomena are mentioned in the next par. with

the adjunct of 時, seem to require this inter-

pretation. This was the view also of Gan-kwo,

and is adopted by Choo He and most other

critics. Ganhil however, translates 日時

by '5. Les saisons.' And this view is contend-

若、陽、恆、若、寒、時、父、曰、無、一
 曰、若、雨、曰、若、若、燠、時、肅、凶、極
 急、曰、若、若、咎、曰、聖、曰、燠、雨、○、備
 恆、豫、曰、徵、曰、時、若、若、休、凶、一
 寒、燠、恆、狂、風、時、哲、曰、徵、極

33 plants will be abundantly luxuriant. Should any one of them be either excessively abundant, or excessively deficient, there is evil.

34 "There are the favourable verifications:—namely, of gravity, which is emblemized by seasonable rain; of orderliness, emblemized by seasonable sunshine; of wisdom, emblemized by seasonable heat; of deliberation, emblemized by seasonable cold; and of sageness, emblemized by seasonable wind. There are also the unfavourable verifications:—namely, of wildness, emblemized by constant rain; of assumption, emblemized by constant sunshine; of indolence, emblemized

ed for by Lin Che-k'o, who understands 時 of 'the round year, the months, and the days,' of which we have the account in the 33th and following paragraphs. He took the view from Ts'ao Yuen-too (蔡元度), a critic also of the Sung dyn., earlier than himself. It supposes a more artificial structure of the text than the study of the whole Book authorizes.

各以其敘—敘—序. 'order,' 'series.' The order of time and the degree of quantity, are both included, (各得其多寡先後之序). 庶草蕃庶—靡—豐茂. 'abundant,' 'luxuriant.' This is a very simple truth. It is supposed to be mentioned as one of the least consequences of the seasonableness of the various phenomena, from which all others, however great, may be inferred.

35. Gan-kwō's expansion of this is—者備極過甚則凶一者極無不至亦凶謂不時失敘

34. The favourable or good, and the unfavourable or bad, verifications. The student will see that this par. and the 33th are closely connected. The successful achievement of each of the 'five businesses' has its verification in the character of the phenomena which have been described, and failure in, or the neglect of, them, has also its corresponding onward manifestation. On the 若, with which each clause terminates,

T'ing-tā observes:—此休咎皆曰若

者其所致者皆順其所行故言若也. 'In every case, good and bad, the issue is in accordance with the course of the conduct, and therefore we find the character 若.' Opposed to 'gravity,' we have 狂—妄. 'incoherence,' 'wildness.' Opposed to 'orderliness,' we have 僭—差. 'error,' 'presumptuous error.' Opposed to 'wisdom,' there is 瞽. 'idleness,' 'indecision' (Wang Shū read 舒, with the same meaning). Opposed to 'deliberation,' there is 急. 'urgency,' 'haste';

and opposed to 'sageliness' there is 蒙. 'stupidity.' The various phenomena, by which these qualities good and bad are responded to in nature and providence, are of course all fanciful. Since the Han dynasty, the critics have nearly all abandoned themselves to vain juggling in speculations on the operation of the five elements, and their distributions through the seasons of the year, as support with the virtues and failings of men. And yet, as we saw on the last Division, many of them do not endorse the statements of the text without misgivings. Ts'ao observes that 'to say on occasion of such and such a 'business' being successfully achieved, there will be the favourable verification corresponding to it, or that on occasion of such and such a 'business' being failed in, there will be the corresponding unfavourable verification, would betray a pertinacious obtuseness, —would show that the speaker was not a man to be talked with on the mysterious opera-

時康。用父易。歲^時師。歲^時○曰。日
既○章。用百月尹。卿曰^時蒙。恆
易。日^時家。明。穀日。惟士。王恆
百月用俊。用時日。惟省風
穀歲平民成。無○月。惟若。

by constant heat; of haste, emblemed by constant cold; and of stupidity, emblemed by constant wind."

- 35 He went on to say, "The sovereign is to examine the character of the whole year; nobles and officers, that of the months; and
36 the inferior officers, that of the day. If throughout the year, the month, the day, there be an unchanging seasonableness, all the kinds of grain are matured; the operations of government are wise; heroic men stand forth eminent; and in the families of the people
37 there are peace and prosperity. If throughout the year, the month, the day, the seasonableness is interrupted, the various kinds of grain

tions of nature. It is not easy to describe the reciprocal meeting of Heaven and men. The hidden springs touched by failure and success, and the minute influences that respond to them;—who can know these but the man who has apprehended all truth (必曰某事得則某休徵應某事失則某咎徵應則亦膠固不通某而不足與語造化之妙矣天人之際未易言也失得之幾應感之微非知道者孰能識之哉) This is in effect admitting that the statements of the text can be of no practical use.

Pp. 35-38. We have here apparently an endeavour to show how the 'various verifications are to be thoughtfully made use of,' according to the language of p. 1. By 師尹 we are to understand all the 有司 or inferior officers. See on 庶尹 in the 'Yih and Taoih' p. 10. We may take 師 here as—庶 or 衆; with regard to the rank of the 尹 which the text mentions, the whole scope of the passage shows it could only be of a lower grade. The sovereign stands to his nobles and great officers as the year to months, including and leading on them all; and they again stand to their inferior employes as the month to the days. Must the sovereign then, by the rule here laid down, wait till the year's end before examining his character and ways? I suppose, as he com-

prehends all dignities in himself, he must be every month doing on himself the examination work of a high officer, and every day that of an inferior. The editors of Yung-ching's Shoo say on this point:—"The sovereign, the high officers, and the inferior officers, it is said here, must examine severally the year, the month, and the day; but this is spoken in a general and vague way, with reference to the different rank of their offices;—we must not stick to a phrase. For instance, a violent wind shall in a day do injury to the grain fields. The wind lasts for a single day only, but its injurious effects extend to the months and the year. Shall we make it relate to the inferior officers? or to the high officers and the sovereign? Whenever any unfavourable verification happens, no one should put the thing off himself. Every one should examine himself, and do so with regard to every matter." Experience and their own sense have made many in China wiser in many things than their classics, but they will not give up the national idols.

36, 37. 時無易.—if the times do not change. But we must take 時 in the same way as in p. 34, meaning 'seasonableness.' The meaning is that if rain and sunshine, heat and cold, and wind all occur seasonably, the various effects enumerated will follow. There is a grain of truth in the assertions, and a bushel of nonsense. Hoo Wei says that 父 is used with reference to the government of the court (以朝政言之), and 俊民 of individuals who have no office (以無位者言之), while 家 refers to those who are in

雨。從冬月星星。寧。用昏用。
 ○星。有之。行。好。星。有之。行。好。星。有之。行。好。星。有之。行。好。
 九。則夏。月。則雨。好。民。用。俊。父。
 五。以月。有日。風。惟。不。民。用。
 福。風。之。有。日。風。惟。不。民。用。

do not become matured; the operations of government are dark and unwise; heroic men are reduced to obscurity; and in the families of the people there is no repose.

- 38 "The common people are like the stars. Some stars love the wind, and some love the rain. The course of the sun and moon give winter and summer. The course of the moon among the stars gives wind and rain.

office. In regard to the last clause, I prefer the view which is given in the translation.

[Gauthier has here the following note:—There is supposed here a mutual correspondence between the ordinary events of the life of men, especially of kings and grandees, and the constitution of the air; but instead of adopting the false ideas which the viscount of Ke may have had on that subject we may reflect on what has been thought about it in Europe, and on what many people still think and say of a culpable and dangerous character. It appears that the Chinese have admitted a homogeneous matter in all bodies; that they have admitted a soul subsisting after the destruction of the body; that they have admitted spirits, and one spiritual Being, Master of heaven, of earth, and of men. But they have been bad physicalists, and have troubled themselves little with metaphysics or with logic. They have not thought too much (?) of examining the grounds of their reasoning on the nature of beings; and they have in no way fathomed the question of the union of the soul with the body, nor that of the operations of the soul.]

There is no danger of our adopting the notions of the viscount of Ke on the correspondence between the weather and the characters of men. A great service would be done by the Sinologue, who should take up 'the Great Plan,' and produce a commentary on it for Chinese readers, clearly and minutely unfolding the errors on the constitution of nature and the course of providence of which it is full. From this ground we might go on to shake the stronghold of their confidence in all the ancient teachings and the wisdom of their so-called sages.]

P. 38. *The people should examine the stars.*

庶民惟星.—Medhurst translates this—

'The common people are like the stars,' and Gauthier, in the same way,—'Les étalles représentent les peuples.' This also is the view of Ts'ao,

who says:—民之麗乎土猶星之麗乎天也。But this would make

the paragraph of a different character entirely from those immediately preceding. The text is evidently analogous with the clauses of par. 35, and the 省 which we must under-

stand there of the 卿士 and 師尹, we must understand here also after 庶民.

'The people should examine the stars.' But nothing is said of 'verifications' in connection with the stars and the people—what was to result from the examination of the stars? 'The people,' says Woo Ch'ing, 'would know when it was summer, and when it was winter, when they might expect wind, and when they might expect rain. Knowing these things they could carry on their labours and take their precautionary measures accordingly.' We thus find a meaning in the paragraph, though of a different kind from what the preceding paragraphs would lead us to look for. On the view of the first clause, taken by Ts'ao and the commentators generally, the whole paragraph appears equally out of place, and no reasonable meaning can be given to it. The constellation 箕—the hand of Sagittarius—is

said to bring wind, and 畢, or Hyades, to bring rain.

Ts'ao goes at great length into the courses of the sun and moon, but all according to the accounts of the astronomers of the Han dynasty. The text specifies no stars from which we might determine the place of the sun in the heavens at the solstices or equinoxes, when the Book was made.

一曰壽、二曰富、三曰康寧、四曰攸好德、五曰考終命。○六極：一曰凶短折、二曰疾、三曰憂、四曰貧、五曰惡、六曰弱。

- 39 [ix]. "Ninth, of the five happinesses.—The first is long life; the second is riches; the third is soundness of body and serenity of mind; the fourth is the love of virtue; the fifth is an end crowning the life.
40 As to the six extremities again, the first is misfortune, shortening the life; the second is sickness; the third is sorrow; the fourth is poverty; the fifth is wickedness; the sixth is weakness."

Pp. 39, 40. *Of the five happinesses and six extremities.* It is said, in p. 4, that 'a hortatory use is to be made of the five happinesses,' and 'an awing use of the six extremities.' It is not easy to see how this division enters into the scheme of the Great Plan. Tsang Kung (曾鞏) says:—The nine divisions all describe

the course of the sovereign. The happinesses and extremities are conditions by which the sovereign examines his own attainments and defects in reference to the people. That these happinesses should be among the people, is what the sovereign should aim after; and the extremities' being among them is what he should be standing in awe of;—see the 集說.

Hoo Wei, on the other hand, says:—The five conditions of happiness and six conditions of suffering, are by the doing of Heaven, and not from any arrangements of men. We have it said in the division on Royal Perfection, "He concentrates in himself the five happinesses, and then diffuses them so as to give them to his people."—we have therefore in this place only the names of the happinesses and their opposites, and nothing about their use' (五福六極皆天之所爲非人之所設也其歛時數錫之道具在皇極章中故此但列其目而不言其用).

39. 壽—'longevity;' without specifying any number of years. Gan-kwō says it means 120 years; but this is absurd. A man dying over 80 is spoken of by the Chinese as not having a short life. 80 and upwards is reckoned longevity. Tsao says that with long life all the other happinesses can be enjoyed, and therefore it occupies the first place among them.

富—'riches;' probably meaning a competency according to the rank and station. Lin Che-k'e says, 'a sufficiency for food and clothing is

富. 康寧—'freedom from sickness,' i.e., good health,—according to Gan-kwō. Modern critics extend the meaning, as in the translation.—形康而心寧 攸好德—所好者德, 'when virtue is what is loved.' The meaning, says Lin Che-k'e, is a natural disposition tending to the love of virtue rather than of pleasures and other lower things.

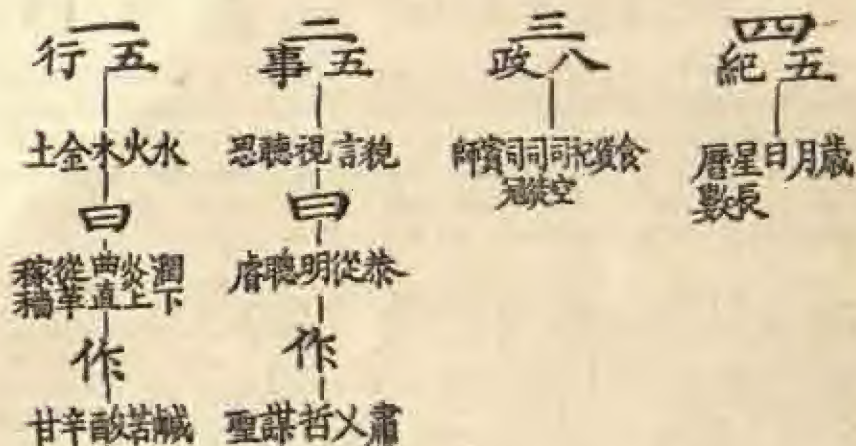
考終命.—Ts'ao explains this by the words of Mencius, VII, Pt. I, li. 1, 順受其正, 'submissively receiving all the will of Heaven.' 考 is generally explained here by 成, 'to accomplish,' and the happiness is that of 'accomplishing to the end the will of Heaven.' This does not differ materially from the view of the translation, which has the advantage of making more evident the proper meaning of 考.

40. 六極—極—窮—'exhaustion,' 'being brought to extremity.' It denotes the opposite of 福. 凶短折 is literally 'disastrous short breaking.' The meaning is—the life coming to an untimely and disastrous close. 疾 and 憂 are the opposite of 康寧. 惡—Gan-kwō explained this by 醜陋 'ugliness,' and the last extremity—弱 by 危劣, 'feebleness;'—perhaps in both cases with some reference to the mind as well as the body. 惡 means probably boldness in what is evil, and 弱, weakness in what is good. The viscount of Ke was not so successful in enumerating the 'extremities,' as with the 'happinesses.'

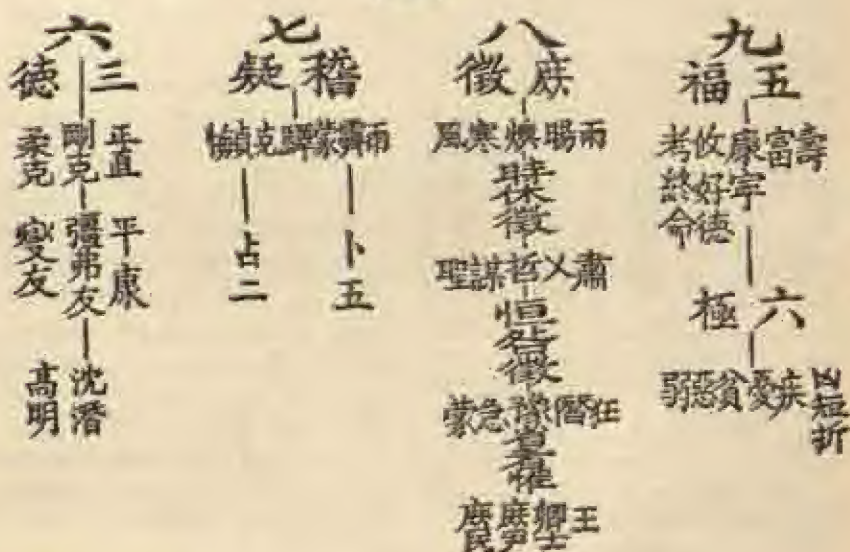
[Gaubil, in a concluding note, thinks it not unlikely that the viscount of Ke wished to speak of the 'Book of Lâ,' and under pretence of explaining this enigma, 'has given very excellent instructions on the duties which princes and subjects ought to observe.' I am unable to agree with the learned Jesuit. The Great Plan is little less of an enigma than the Book

of Lâ. It is full of perplexities and absurdities. There are some right principles of morals and government in it, but after hearing it all, king Woo must have been more in the dark than when he went to the viscount at first with the remark that he did not know how the virtues in men's various relations should be brought forth in their proper order.]

I append here a scheme of the whole Plan, modified from that which is given among the vats in Yung-ching's Shoo:—



五皇極



THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK V. THE HOUNDS OF LEU.

旅保厥旅八于遂惟
 獒乃獒底蠻九通克
 用作太貢西夷道商旅
 獒

- 1 After the conquest of Shang, the way being open to the nine wild and the eight savage tribes, the people of the western tribe of Leu sent in as tribute some of their hounds, on which the Great-guardian made "The Hounds of Leu," by way of instruction to the king.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—旅獒. 'The Hounds of Leu.' The 37th note of the Preface, on the subject of this Book, says that the 'western Leu' made an offering of some of their hounds' (西旅獻獒). Leu, therefore, is to be looked for in the west. It was the name of one of the rude tribes, lying in that quarter, beyond the 'nine provinces' of the empire. 獒 is the name of a kind of hound.

It was, acc. to the 爾雅, '4 feet—ancient feet, that is—high.' The 說文 describes it as 'knowing the mind of man, and capable of being employed' (知人心可使者). From an instance of its use, quoted in the 集傳 from Kung-yang, it was evidently a blood-hound. The critics generally understand the term in the text in the singular;—I know not why. There is nothing in the Book, and no ancient references to it, which should make us do so. We more naturally take it in the plural, and it seems to me more likely that several hounds, and not one only, would be sent to king Woo.

This is one of the Books found only in Gun-kwo's text. K'ang-shing and Ma Yung had not seen it, and they have strangely mistaken the meaning of the prefatory note. '獒' says

K'ang-shing, 'is read like 豪. The rude tribes of the west had no princes, but gave the title of 酋豪 to the strong among them, who governed them for the time. The people of the tribe sent at this time the principal man of their chiefs, to present himself at the court of Chow;—see the 後案, is so. But this view carries its own refutation on the face of it. The words of the prefatory note are that 'the western Leu presented—as an offering, expressive of their subjection—their 獒.' To suppose that their chief was thus made an article of tribute is absurd. Ch'ing's paraphrase of 獻獒 by 遣來獻見于周 is quite inadmissible. The signification of 獒 as 'hound' is not to be disturbed. The Book belongs to the division of 'Instructions.'

COMMENTS. The Leu people having sent some of their hounds to king Woo, and he having received them, or intimated that he would do so, the Great-guardian remonstrated with him, showing that to receive such animals would be contrary to precedent, would be dangerous to the virtue of the sovereign, and was not the way to deal with outlying tribes and nations.

The reader will think that the Book is much ado about a very small matter, and in truth it is so. It receives an interest, however, when

用。服。方。邇。無。夷。慎。呼。○。訓。
○。食。物。畢。有。咸。德。明。曰。于。
王。器。惟。獻。遠。賓。四。王。鳴。王。

- 2 He said, "Oh! the intelligent kings have paid careful attention to their virtue, and the wild tribes on every side have willingly acknowledged subjection to them. The nearer and the more remote have all made offerings of the productions of their countries;—

we see in it a specimen of the feeling and procedure by which the rulers of China have all along sought to regulate their intercourse with foreign nations. When the sovereign does not look on foreign things as precious, foreigners will come to him:—this language is a good exponent of the normal Chinese policy. A self-complacent assumption of superiority—superiority both in wisdom and in power—has always been displayed. I have read references to the steam-engine with its various applications, from men versed in all the learning of China; as if it were nothing more than a toy, to be thought of just as the duke of Shao thought of the hounds of Lou. Statesmen and people are now, in this nineteenth century, having a rude awakening from their dream.

P. 1. The occasion on which the Book was made. This par. might have had a place in the Preface, and Ts'ao calls it 'the proper preface of the Hounds of Lou' (此旅獒之本序). 惟克商.—on the conquest of Shang. The 'Daily Explanation' expands the clause:—推我周武王既克商而有天下. The 'General History' refers the tribute of the hounds to the 14th year of king Woo, a.c. 1,120. 遂通道于

九夷八蠻.—by the 'nine S and eight Man,' we are to understand the barbarous tribes generally,—expressed in the Can. of Shun, p. 16, by the phrase 蠻夷, and by 蠻貊 in the 'Completion of the War,' p. 6. See also in the 'Tribute of Yu,' Pt. II, p. 22. The diff. rude tribes round about the nine provinces of the empire are variously enumerated. Here we have the 'S 夷' and 'M 蠻'; in the Le Ko, BK. XIV, 明堂位, p. 3; we have the '9 夷, 8 蠻, 6 戎, and 5 狄,' in the Chow La, BK. XXXIII, 夏官. 司馬. 第四之六. 職方氏, p. 1, we have the 4 夷, 8 蠻, 7 閩, 9 貉, 6 戎, and 5 狄; in the 國語. 魯語下, we have the '9 夷 and 100 蠻.'

The numbers are not to be pressed, and we must be content with finding a statement in

the text, that the wild tribes all around came or sent to the court of king Woo;—acknowledging his supremacy.

Ts'ao says that we are not to understand from 通道, that king Woo used any efforts to open roads to the barbarous regions beyond the limits of the empire proper;—it was his virtue and fame which drew them, and they came, 'climbing the hills as if they had been ladders, and in boats across the sea.' It certainly would not have been discreditable to king Woo to have good roads made throughout all his dominions; and in the passage of the 國語 referred to above, evidently modelled on this part of the Shoo, the opening of the

thoroughfares is described as his work:—仲尼曰,昔武王克商,通道於九夷百蠻,使各以其方賄來貢,使無忘職業. 底貢.—the same phrase occurs in the Tribute of Yu, Pt. I, p. 52. The force of 底 passes on to the next character, and indicates that what it says took effect. 太保.—it is not said any-

where in the Book who the Great-guardian was; but since the commentary of Gan-k'w'k, the prevailing opinion has been that he was Shih, the duke of Shao. See on the name of BK. XII. He was Great-guardian under Woo's successor; and it is supposed—with probability—that he held the office also under Woo.

Pp. 2-10. THE ADDRESS OF THE GREAT-GUARDIAN TO KING WOO AGAINST EXCITING THE HOUNDS.

Pp. 2, 3. The precedent of former wise kings in receiving articles of tribute, and the use which they made of them.

明王慎德.—the language here is to be taken historically. Medhurst and Grabil both miss this point, and render—'When an intelligent prince is careful in the cultivation of his virtue' &c. The guardian is giving not merely the lesson of duty, but of duty illustrated by example. The 'Daily Explanation' has it:—自古明哲之王,

所以保邦安民者,要在謹修其德云云. 慎德, 'the careful cultivation of virtue,' is said to be the hinge on which the whole of the address moves. 咸

乃昭德之致于異姓之邦，厥服無替，寶玉分于伯叔，國展親時，庸展親時，不展親時，易親時，物人庸之。

3 clothes, food, and vessels for use. The kings have then displayed the things thus produced by their virtue, and distributed them to the princes of the States of different surnames, to encourage them not to neglect their duties. The precious things and gems they have distributed among their uncles in charge of States, thereby increasing their attachment to the throne. The recipients have thus not despised the things, but have seen in them the power of virtue.

賓—賓 is not merely —客 'strangers,'

'guests,' but —賓服:—see in the dict. on the character.

畢獻方物惟服食器用—方物—其方所生之物, 'the articles produced by their country,'

and we may understand also articles manufactured there. The last clause gives a summary of those articles, and the meaning is that the contributions were restricted to these—不敢

於此外有以奇玩異物進獻者. 3. 異姓之邦伯叔之

國.—the empire being divided into many States or principalities, the emperors of each dynasty apportioned these among their relatives and adherents. 'The States of their uncles' were

同姓之邦 'regions of the same surname,' i.e., their rulers had the same surname as the emperors. The 'regions of different surnames' were the States ruled by Chiefs, attached to the reigning dynasty, but of a different lineage.

To these the emperors 昭德之致, 'displayed what their virtue thus produced,'

the productions of remote territories, the tribute from distant tribes. The transitive meaning of 昭

is very much determined by its correlation with 分 in the next part of the par. The

things were sent about as imperial gifts among the States; so they were 'displayed,' and served to warn and encourage the chiefs to loyal service and duty. 無替厥服—無廢其

服事之職. 時庸展親—

Gas-xu3 explains this by 是用誠信

其親親之道, 'thereby verifying the

sincerity with which they held the principle of attachment to their relatives,' taking 展 as

信. Lin (ho-k' supports this interpretation,

and quotes with approval the words of Wang

Gas-shih.—'Though they loved them, yet if they had not shared their precious things with them, who could have known the sincerity of their

love (親之矣而不以所寶分之則人孰知親親之信也)'

But the clause is evidently related to the preceding 無替厥服, and must describe

—not the feeling of the emperors from which the gifts proceeded, but the feeling which they wished to increase in the princes, their relatives.

The explanation of 展 by 信 is therefore inadmissible. The meaning in the transl. is given by Tsao and in the dictionary.—使之益

厚其親.

[In the passage of the 國語 from which I quoted, on the 1st par. the words of Confucius, the sage goes on to say:—於是肅

慎氏貢楷矢石磐其長尺之慎氏貢楷矢石磐其長尺之

有恩先王欲昭其令德之致遠也, 以示後人, 使永監焉, 故銘其栝曰肅慎氏之

貢矢以分太姬配虞胡公而封諸陳, 古者分同姓以珍玉展親也, 分異姓以遠

方之職貢, 使無忘服也, 云云]

人不 易物, 惟德其物—by

人 is intended the various princes, receiving the imperial gifts; 易—輕 'to slight.' 不

易物—'have not slighted the things,' have not dared to think lightly of them, however

little valuable they might be; 德其物—

'they have virtued the things,' i.e., they have looked at the things in the light of the virtue which

貞。目。○以侮盡君狎○惟
○百不盡小人子侮德盛
玩度役其力罔狎以侮不
人惟耳

- 4 "Complete virtue allows no contemptuous familiarity. When a prince treats superior men with such familiarity, he cannot get them to give him all their hearts; when he so treats inferior men, he cannot get them to put forth for him all their strength. If he be not in bondage to his ears and eyes, all his conduct will be ruled by correctness.
- 5 By trifling with men he ruins his virtue; by finding his amusement in things he ruins his aims.

produced them, and as monitions to the virtue they themselves ought to cultivate. Gauthier's rendering of this part is sententious, but can be of no help to a student:—'Ainsi les choses qui viennent de la vertu retournent à la vertu.'

(This passage appears in the 左傳 僖五年 along with two other sentences from 'the Books of Chow,' in the following form:—民不易物惟德馨物. The use which is made of it there is to show that virtue is the only sure defence of a State.)

Pp. 4—6. How the sovereign's careful attention to his virtue will appear in his guarding against improper familiarity with men, and foolish cherishing of useless creatures and things. This is the meaning that is put upon these paragraphs. The interpretation of them, it will be seen, is perplexing and difficult.

4. 德盛不狎侮—comp. 狎侮五行, in 'the Great Speech,' Pt. III, 2. Koo Seli-ch'ow (顧錫疇; Ming dyn.) says upon the terms here:—狎者與之暱也, 侮者禮之倨也. 一是視為私人, 一是忽為易與. 狎 is being familiar with them; 侮 is a haughty disregard of the rules of propriety. The former indicates the looking upon them as more favourites; the latter expresses the treatment of them as easily consorted with. For the two terms, however, we have the one term 玩 'to make sport with' in p. 8. The 'Daily Explanation' says, on that par., that the first 玩 is the 玩 of contempt, and the second the 玩 of fondness (上玩字玩忽之意下玩字玩好之意). But we must find a con-

mon idea expressed by the two applications of 狎侮 here, and of 玩 in p. 8. Such an idea is that of contemptuous familiarity. Directed to creatures like the hounds of Lou, it will have more of the character of trifling sport; directed to men, there will be in the ruler who practises it a want both of self-respect, and of the respect which he owes to them. 君子 is descriptive of men in office, who are to be supposed to have a degree of elevated character. They have their minds—their virtues and acquirements—to serve the sovereign with; but when treated with contemptuous familiarity, they will despise him and go away. 小人 are the people, in whom the familiarity of their superiors is sure to breed contempt, so that they will not be careful to labour for them, as they ought to do, with their strength. Ying-ta, aptly enough, quotes, in illustration of 侮狎君子, the words of H Yin, 接下思恭 (太甲, Pt. II, p. 7); and the words of Confucius, 使民如承大祭 (Ana., XII. 11), in illustration of 狎侮小人. 5. 不役耳目—不為耳目所役, i.e. if he be superior to the external fascinations that assail him through the senses,—what are called 物 in the next paragraph. 百度, 'the hundred measures,' = 百為之度, 'the measures of all his conduct.' A certain rule—of 'correctness' (貞—正)—is supposed, by which the ruler, free from the bondage of his senses, will endeavour to regulate all his conduct. 'His words and actions,' it is said in the 'Daily Explanation,' 'will all be conformed to the measure of perfection, and he will not dare to transgress it an inch.' 6. 玩,—see on par. 4. Contemptuous familiarity with men destroys that self-

喪德玩物喪志。○志^七
 以道寧言以道接。○
 不作無益害有益功
 乃成不貴異物賤用
 物民乃足犬馬非其
 土性不畜珍禽奇獸
 不育于國不寶遠物
 則遠人格所寶惟賢
 則邇人安。○鳴呼^九夙
 夜罔或不勤不矜細

7 "The aims should repose in what is right; words should be listened to according to their relation to right.

8 "A prince should not do what is unprofitable to the injury of what is profitable, and then his merit may be completed. He should not value strange things to the contemning things that are useful, and then his people will be able to supply *all his needs*. Even dogs and horses which are not native to his country he will not keep; fine birds and strange animals he will not nourish in his kingdom. When he does not look on foreign things as precious, foreigners will come to him; when it is worth which is precious to him, *his own people* near at hand will enjoy repose.

9 "Oh! early and late never be but earnest. If you do not attend jealously to your small actions, the result will be to affect your virtue

respect and reverence for right which is at the foundation of all virtue. A fondness for, and fondling of, creatures like the hounds of Leu brings the whole mind down to the level of little things.

P. 1. *The rule for a prince's aims, and his intercourse with others.*

道—所當由之理, 'the principles according to which we ought to proceed.'

言以道接—人之言以道而接. The first clause is illustrated by Mencius' 持其志 (II, Pt.

I, li. 9), and the second by his 我知言 (ib. p. 11); also by Shun's language in 'The Councils of Yu,' pp. 14-16.

The two sayings are good enough in their way, but the object which they serve in the guardian's address is not very evident;—see the remark of Wang Pih at the conclusion of his 'Doubts' about this Book.

P. 8. *What things a sovereign should abstain from cherishing and pursuing, and what things he should prefer and seek.* In this par. the Guardian comes at last to the subject of the hounds of

Leu, though he does not expressly mention them. 不作至民乃足.—these two clauses are of a general character, and may be applied to an endless variety of subjects. 民

乃足.—'the people will be sufficient.' Chin Tih-sew says:—貴異物則征求多而民不足. 'If he set a value on strange

things, his exactions and requirements will be so many that the people will not be able to meet them.' 犬馬至不畜.—these dogs and horses might be useful, but being foreign, the virtuous sovereign will have nothing to do with them!

珍禽—珍 is here an adjective, = 珍美之禽. 不寶

至人安.—see the remarks on this in the note on the Contents of the Book.

Pp. 2, 10. *How the sovereign is to cultivate his virtue by an untiring attention even to the smallest matters, and what grand results will flow from such*

行終累 大德爲 山九仞 功虧一 簣○允 迪茲生 民保厥 居惟乃 世王。

in great matters;—as when, in raising a mound of nine fathoms the
10 work is unfinished for want of one basket of earth. If you really follow this course, the people will preserve their possessions, and the throne will descend from generation to generation.

a course. 不矜細行一矜 is used here much with the same meaning as in the *Con. Ana.* XV., xxi., 君子矜而不爭. Choo He was asked whether the term were not used in the same way in the two passages, and replied, 'Much about it. The idea is that of pitiful consideration, and firm conservation.'

(相似是個矜惜持守之意)

爲山云云—see the *Con. Ana.*

IX., xviii. 仞—八尺, 'eight cubits.' I

call it 'a fathom,' as being the nearest approximation to it which we have in our designations of measures. The paraphrase in the

'Daily Explanation' is—譬如爲山者

積累工夫已至九仞所少

一簣之土乃心生成也哉

肯加益九仞之成也哉

缺山豈可得而允迪厥

10. 允迪茲—comp. 允迪厥

Ps., II, Bk. III., p. 1. 生民保厥

居—生民. 'the living people,' is merely

an equivalent of 庶民. The phrase is found

also in the 孝經. For 保厥居

Medhurst has well—'may protect their hearths.'

惟乃世王—王業可永.

'the imperial inheritance may be perpetuated.'

I append Lin Che-k'e's observations on this:—

太保既以是訓王厥後凡

四夷所獻中國所慎一搭矢

太保之類也周七十一王君社

茲十也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

以是觀見矣子信之兆所無

也夫而世大爲不在

耳知命蓋

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK VI. THE METAL-BOUND COFFER.

我未○爲公弗年既
先可以周王曰豫王克
王以公穆我○有商
○戚曰卜其二疾二

金
縢

- 1 I. Two years after the conquest of the Shang dynasty, the king
- 2 fell ill, and was quite disconsolate. The two dukes said, "Let us
- 3 reverently consult the tortoise concerning the king"; but the duke of Chow said, "You may not so distress our former kings."

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—金縢 'The Metal bound.' 縢 is defined by 緘, 'to tie or shut up,' 'to seal or fasten.' A certain chest or coffer, which was fastened with bands of metal, plays an important part among the incidents of the Book. It is called, p. 11, 金縢之匱; and from this the name is taken. The Book is found in both the texts.

CONTENTS. King Woo is very ill, and his death seems imminent. His brother, the duke of Chow, apprehensive of the disasters which such an event would occasion to their infant dynasty, conceives the idea of dying in his stead, and prays to 'the three Kings,' their immediate progenitors, that he might be taken and King Woo left. Having done so, and divined that he was heard, he deposits the prayer in the metal-bound coffer, where important archives were kept. The king gets well, and the duke is also spared; but five years after, Woo really dies, and is succeeded by his son, a boy only thirteen years old. Rumours are spread abroad that the duke has designs upon the throne, and he withdraws for a time from the court. At length in the third year of the young king, Heaven interposes. He has occasion to open the metal-bound coffer, and the prayer

of the duke is found. His devotion to his brother and the interests of his family is brought to light. The boy monarch weeps because of the unjust suspicions he had harboured, and welcomes the duke back to court, amid unmistakable demonstrations of the approval of Heaven.

The whole narrative is a very pleasing episode in the history of the times, and is more interesting to the foreign reader than most other portions of the Shoo. It divides itself naturally into two chapters:—the first, par. 1—11, ending with the depositing the prayer in the coffer; and the second, detailing how it was brought to light, and the duke cleared by means of it from the suspicions which had been cherished of him.

Ch. I. Pp. 1—11. THE PRAYER OF THE DUKE OF CHOW; ITS OCCASION; HIS SUBSEQUENT DIVINATION, AND DEPOSITING THE PRAYER IN THE COFFER. 1. *The Illness of King Woo.*

既克商二年.—the current chronology refers this to the 14th year of King Woo, the year after the death of Shoo, B.C. 1,120. K'ang-shing thought that the year of the conquest of Shang should not be included in the two years, and the critics of the present dynasty generally concur with him. Ming-shing says that if the historians had meant to say that the year was that succeeding the change of dynasties, as Gan-k'wé, Sze-mu Ts'een, and Wang Shu

公乃自以爲功，同壇于南，方北，周公立，焉植璧，秉珪，告太王。

- 4 He then took the business on himself, and made three altars of earth, on the same cleared space; and having made another altar on the south, facing the north, he there took his own position. The convex symbols were put on their altars and he himself held his mace, while he addressed the kings T'ae, Ke, and Wán.

think, he would have used 惟 and not 既, and we should have read 惟克商二年. I cannot undertake to settle this trivial point.

弗豫 (so in *Suo-ma T'suen*. K'ang Shing, after the 說文, gives 不愈) = 不悅豫, 'was not happy.' We may suppose that he was distressed, thinking of the troubles that might arise on his death.

The other reading—不愈, 'did not get well,' would give a simpler meaning.

3. Proposal of the two dukes to divine respecting the issue of the king's illness.

The 二公, 'two dukes,' are understood to be 太公 and 召公.

The latter is the duke of Shao; spoken of on p. 1 of the last Book. T'ao-kung, —see on Mencius, IV., Pt. I, xlii. He played a very important part in the establishment of the Chow dynasty, as counsellor to Wán and Woo, and was invested by Woo with the principality of Ts'e, which his descendants held for nearly 640 years. He is the 尚父 in the apocryphal edition of the 'Great Speech.'

穆卜, —穆 (T'ao has 繆) is defined by Gan-kwó, after the 爾雅, by 敬, 'reverently.'

T'ao gives its meaning—誠一而和, 'with entire sincerity and in common,'

saying that on great emergencies all the officers, great and small, united in the ceremony of divination, so that 穆卜 is equivalent to 共卜, according to the view of an older interpreter whom he cites. This interpretation would give more emphasis to the 戚 in the next part, but I do not see that we can insist on extending the meaning of the term beyond the 敬 of Gan-kwó.

3. The duke of Chow declines the proposal. 周公, —this is the first time that we meet in the Shoo with this famous name, though we shall find him hereafter playing a most important part. But for him, indeed, the dynasty of Chow would probably

not have taken root. He was equally mighty in words and in deeds,—a man of counsel and of action. Confucius regarded his memory with reverence, and spoke of it as an evidence of his own failing powers and disappointed hopes, that the duke of Chow no longer appeared to him in his dream. He was the 4th son of king Wán, by his queen T'ao-tze. The eldest was Pih-yih-k'ao (伯邑考); the second was king Woo; and the third was Sien (鮮).

the Kwan Shuh (管叔), mentioned in p. 12. There were six other younger brothers, but of all Wán's sons, only king Woo and the duke of Chow were representatives of their father's virtue and wisdom. Chow was the name of the city where king T'ao fixed the central seat of his House;—see page 281, on the name of this part of the Shoo. It became the appanage of Wán's 4th son, Tan (旦), and hence, he is known as the 'duke of Chow.'

戚—憂 'to trouble,' 'to distress.' It would appear that the two dukes proposed to have a solemn service of divination in the ancestral temple of the Imperial House, and the duke of Chow negatives their proposal on the ground that there was no necessity for troubling the spirits of the departed kings by so much idle merely to divine the issue of the king's illness. He had himself determined what he would do. K'ang-shing says that he negatived their proposal, because he knew that the king would not die at this time. This view is grounded in a passage in the Bk. 文王世子, Pt. i, p. 2, of the Le Ke, where king Wán is made to interpret a dream of his son so as to assure him of a certain number of years. But there is much in that Book which we cannot receive. If the duke knew that his brother would recover, the prayer which follows, and his offer to die in his room, lose all their meaning and value.

P. 4. The duke's preparations for his prayer. 公乃自以爲功—功—事 'business or duty.' Gan-kwó paraphrases:—周公乃自以請命爲已事. 三壇同壇—築土曰壇, 除地曰壇, 'the rearing up of earth is called 壇; the clearing away of the ground is called

王之責于三王疾邁元曰乃王王
有不王若厲孫惟册○季
于子是爾虐某爾祝史文

- 5 The grand historian by his order wrote on tablets his prayer to the following effect:—"A. B., your chief descendant, is suffering from a severe and dangerous sickness;—if you three kings have in heaven the charge of watching over him, Heaven's great son, let me

禱: The duke cleared and levelled a space of ground, and there he built three altars facing the south, one for each of the kings to whom he intended to pray,—his father, his grandfather, and his great-grandfather, by whose wisdom and virtues the fortunes of their House had culminated in the possession of the empire. On the same area he raised another altar facing the north, where he himself took his place. K'ang-shing says that the altars were at Fung (Lk. III, p. 2), and that the area remained to his day. 桓

璧秉珪。璧和珪 (=圭) were two of the 'five tokens of gen.' mentioned in the Can. of Shun, p. 7, conferred by the emperor upon the various princes in connection with their investitures. There were two *pei*, belonging to the *zai* and the *nan* respectively, and three *kuai*, that appropriate to the duke of Chow being the 桓圭. But we can hardly understand the terms here of the badges of nobility, or tokens of imperial appointment. Gan-k'wé says the *pei* were brought and laid upon the altars of the three kings in reverence to them, and the *kuai* was the duke's proper *kuai*, which he held in his hands as the evidence of his person and rank in appearing before them. But from p. 8, we should rather conclude that all the articles were proper to the worship of the three kings. The 璧 is described as resting on a square base, while outwards it was round like the arch of heaven.

Pp. 5-8. The prayer. 8. 史乃册

祝-史=太史. 'the grand historiographer.' His services were called in to record the prayer. I take 祝 as=祝詞, 'the language of the prayer.' Gan-k'wé explains the clause:—史爲册書祝辭. 'The historian wrote for him on a tablet (or tablets) the words of the prayer.' This is the view now given in the 'Daily Explanation'—周公告三王之神命太史書祝詞于册. 若曰云云. This, it seems to me, must be the meaning of the text.

K'ang-shing, however, says:—策, 周公所作謂簡書也. 祝者讀

此簡書以告三王. 'The tablet, i.e. the writing, was made by the duke of Chow; the priest read this writing to inform the three kings.' In this way the 史 is altogether unaccounted for. Woo Ch'ing would put a comma at 册, and explain:—'The historiographer wrote this tablet, and the priest (祝) read it.' But who does not get the impression that the duke of Chow was himself the only priest on the occasion? 爾元孫某.

—'Your great-grandson, such an one.' The duke, no doubt, used the name of king Woo. But in the Chow dynasty, the practice of 'concoaling the name,' as it is called (諱名), came into vogue. K'ang-shing supposes that it was king Ching, who first dropped the name, and substituted 某 for it, when he found the prayer, as related in p. 16. 邁-遇 'to meet with.' Wang K'ang-yang says:—'A sage has nothing about him which could bring on sickness, but he may happen to meet with evil malaria in the air:—hence the use of 邁:—

see a note in the 集傳. We need not lay so much stress on the character. 若爾

三王至某之身—this passage has wonderfully vexed the critics, and the editors of Yang-ching's Shuo say that no one interpretation of it which has been given should be pertinaciously held to. The view in the translation is substantially that of Ts'ao, who says:—武王爲天元子, 三王當任其保護之責于天, 不可令其死. 如欲其死, 則請以旦代武王之身. 'King Woo is the great son of Heaven; you three kings ought to have the charge of protecting him in heaven, and should not let him die. If you wish that he should die, pray let me Tan be a substitute for his person.' Feeling that the 于天 lay loosely on this view in the sentence, he supposed that some characters following 天 have been lost. The interpretations of K'ang-shing and Ying-sh

天以旦代
其之身。○
予仁若考
能多材多
藝能事鬼
神乃元孫
不若且多
材多藝不
能事神鬼。
○乃命于

- 6 Tan be a substitute for his person. I have been lovingly obedient to my father; I am possessed of many abilities and arts which fit me to serve spiritual beings. Your chief descendant on the other hand has not so many abilities and arts as I, and is not so
7 capable of serving spiritual beings. And moreover he was appointed in the hall of God to extend his aid to the four quarters of the empire, so that he might establish your descendants in this lower world.

may be seen in the 後案 and the 註疏. Choo He preferred the view of a Chao 2-son (晁以道) that 責—to require the service of, and the meaning is—'If God requires the services of your eldest son in heaven, let me be a substitute for him.' Macu K'o-lung prefers the view of a Sen Chung-san (徐中山):—

惟爾元孫某邁疾若此，儻
三王以爲此雖我元孫實不
天之大于也，其責甚重，不
可死，則旦請代耳。 Ts'ao's

construction of the sentence is not more objectionable than either of these two. Thus much is plain—first, that the duke of Chow offered himself to die in the room of his brother King Woo; and second, that he thought his offer might somehow be accepted through the intervention of the great kings, their progenitors, to whom he addressed himself.

P. 6. *Reason why the duke should be taken instead of the king.* 子仁若考—考

—父：若—順。 Gan-kwé gives the meaning as 我仁能順父. 'I could affectionately obey my father.' Ts'ao takes the same view, only extending the meaning of 考 to 祖父, 'forefathers' generally.

Medhurst translates the clause by—say benevolence is equal to that of my forefathers, which the language will admit of. Woo Ching, indeed, gives for it—我之仁德如父. Still the other view is to be preferred. The duke would probably have declined to say that he was more virtuous than King Woo, though he was conscious of possessing certain qualities which might render him the better addition of the two to the spirit-world. See-ma T'ien has only 旦

巧能, and on his authority Keng Shing

would cast 仁若 out of the text, but though the 'Historical Records' show us the interpretation which their compiler put upon the Shoo, their authority cannot always be pleaded in favour of this or that reading.

We should be glad if we could ascertain from this paragraph what ideas the duke of Chow had about the other world, but his language is too vague to afford us satisfaction. He says he was better able than his brother to serve spirits;—did he then expect that some such service would have to be performed by him after death? and who was the spirit, or who were the spirits, to whom the service was to have been rendered? These questions are suggested by his words; and yet it may be, that all which he meant to say was that he was more religious,—more acquainted with ceremonies, and fonder of sacrificial services,—and therefore was somehow better fitted for admission to the spirit circle. I suppose he did not know his own meaning very clearly.

Chinese critics are concerned to free the duke of Chow from the charge of boasting which may be fixed on him from the paragraph. Ts'ang

Te-shang (蔣悌生; Ming dyn.) says—

'The duke of Chow did not boast of his services, but was the humblest of men;—how is it that here he boasts of himself in such a way to the spirits of the three kings? On this occasion, so important to his family and the kingdom, his love for his brother prevailed over every other consideration. He had not leisure to consider whether he was boasting or modest. The case is one of those instances in which the virtue of sagely men moves Heaven. Let it not be lightly thought of or spoken about;—see the 集說.

P. 7. *Reason why King Woo should be spared.*

乃命于帝庭—the 帝 here is 上帝 or God. Ma Yung says:—武王受命于天帝之庭—king Woo received appointment in the hall of the God of heaven. Medhurst has translated:—He has

帝庭敷佑四方用能
定爾子孫于下地四
方之民罔不祇畏鳴
呼無墜天之降寶命
我先王亦永有依歸
○今我即命于元龜
爾之許我我其以璧
與珪歸俟爾命爾不
許我我乃屏璧與珪
○乃卜三龜一習吉

- The people of the four quarters stand in reverent awe of him. Oh! do not let that precious Heaven-conferred appointment fall to the ground, and all our former kings will also have a perpetual
8 reliance and resort. I will now seek for your orders from the great tortoise. If you grant *what I request*, I will take these symbols and this mace, and return and wait for the issue. If you do not grant it, I will put them by."
9 The duke then divined with the three tortoises, and all were favourable. He took a key, opened and looked at the oracular

received the decree in the imperial hall, which is a great weakening of the duke's argument, and without the sanction of any critic.

四方至祇畏—the critics generally connect this with the preceding clause, and extend the force of the 用能 to it. It seems rather to be a description of the success of Woo's govt.—exaggerated, indeed, but justifiable in the circumstances.

天之降寶命—天所降之寶命—as in the translation.

我先王云云—"our former kings" are all the princes of the House of Chow, from Shun's minister of Agriculture downward. The saying that they would have "a perpetual reliance and resort" is to the effect that the sacrifices to them would ever be continued.

P. 8. The duke proposes to divine for the answer of the kings, and tells them what will be the consequence of their refusing his request.

今我即命—今我就受三王之命—"I will now go at once and receive the command—the decision—of you three kings."

元龜—see on 大龜 in the 'Tribute of Yu,' Pt. i., 53. The shells of the tortoise employed for imperial divinations were larger

than those employed by the princes.

歸
俟爾命—"will return and wait for your orders," which would be seen in the recovery of king Woo, and the duke's death. Ma says:—
待爾命武王當愈我當死
屏璧與珪—屏 (3d. tone) = 去 or 藏. The meaning is, that he would put these instruments of worship aside;—the dynasty would fall, and the House of Chow would have no more imperial sacrifices to offer.

Pp. 9, 10. The divination is favourable, and the duke deposits his prayer in the coffer.

卜三龜—"He divined with the three tortoises." I suppose that the divination took place before the altars, and that a different shell was used to ascertain the mind of each king.

Choo Ha says:—或曰三王前各一龜卜之. Lin Che-k'e, however, says:—

以龜之三兆卜之. "He divined according to the three prognostics given by the tortoise." This is in accordance with the language of the Chow Ls. Bk. XXIV., p. 1, 太卜

掌三兆之法. 一曰玉兆. 二曰瓦兆. 三曰原兆. which Biao

啟籥見書乃并
是吉。○公曰體
王其罔害予小
子新命于三王
惟永終是圖茲
攸俟能念予一
人。○公歸乃納
册于金滕之匱
中王翼日乃瘳。

- 10 responses which also were favourable. He said, "According to the form of the prognostic, the king will take no injury. I, who am but a child, have got his appointment renewed by the three kings, by whom a long futurity has been consulted for. I have to wait the issue. They can provide for our one man." Having said this, he returned, and placed the tablets in the metal-bound coffer; and next day the king got better.

translates:—Grand Augure. Il est proposé aux trois méthodes pour l'observation des fissures sur l'écaille de la tortue. La première est appelée fissure de jule; la seconde, fissure de poterie; la troisième, fissure de plume.

一習吉，一習一重，或襲；see the 'Great Speech,' Pt. II, 5. 啟籥見書—

by 書 we are to understand 占書, 'written oracles.' The par. of the Chow Li, following that quoted above, is—其經兆之體，皆百有二十，其頌皆千有二百。The forms of the regular prognostications were in all 120, the explanations of which amounted to 1,200. These explanations, no doubt, consisting of a few oracular lines; were the 書 of the text. They were kept by themselves, and consulted on occasion, according to certain rules which have not come down. The duke of Chow at this time had recourse to them.

The meaning of 籥 in this place is very uncertain. Properly speaking, it denotes a kind of flute. Here it seems to denote a sort of key with which the apartment or chest, or whatever it might be, in which these oracles were kept, was opened. Kang-shing, Ma Yung, and Wang Suh define it nearly in the same way, as 開藏之管; 藏卜兆書管; and 開藏占兆書管. 10. 體—兆之體: 'the form of the prognostic,' appearing on the shell of the tortoise.

惟永終是圖. —Woo Ch'ing understands this to be spoken by the duke of himself, so that he not only understood from the divination that the king would

not die, but also that he would get better without himself being taken as a substitute. The words do not convey that impression to my mind. In the 'Daily Explanation,' they are referred to the three kings as in the translation.

—我小子新受命于三王，惟以久後子孫爲計，而許我以保佑元子孫矣。茲攸俟，能念予一人。茲攸俟— the 歸侯爾命 of par. 8, the only difference being that the words here are those of soliloquy, and not addressed to the kings. The 一人 is king Woo. The duke would seem to be resigning himself to the thought of his own death. He must be taken, but he can confidently leave the king and the dynasty in the care of the three kings.

11. 金滕之匱, —the metal-bound coffer. True says that it was this coffer which contained the oracles of divination, the same which is alluded to in p. 8. It may have been so; but I should rather suppose it to have been different,—a special chest in which important archives of the dynasty, to be referred to on great emergencies, were kept. The duke gave orders to all whose services he had employed in the ceremony to say nothing about it (see p. 17) but it was right that the record of the prayer should be preserved in this repository. He therefore placed it there, not thinking that it would be—hoping that it would not be—brought to light in his time.

(The prayer of the duke of Chow is addressed to the three kings, and I have said above, that it is addressed to them in the character of mediators or intercessors with Heaven or God

○ 於 將 國 流 群 叔 既 ○
周 孺 不 曰 言 弟 及 喪 武
公 子 利 公 於 乃 其 管 王

12 II. Afterwards, upon the death of king Woo, the duke's elder brother, he of Kwan, and his younger brothers, spread a baseless rumour through the kingdom, saying, "The duke will do no good to the

The analogy of the circle of religious notions among the Chinese obliges us to adopt this conclusion, and, in par. 7, we have an express reference to the supreme disposing of God in human affairs. Still it must be allowed that the doctrine of the former kings being only intercessors is not indicated in the text so clearly as it might have been. In illustration of this I shall quote the words of Ts'ou Hsü-tseuen (曹學佺; Ming dyn). He says:

—The earlier scholars were led, by the words — "I have received a new appointment for him from the three kings," to doubt whether the duke's language (in p. 6) — "I have many abilities and arts which fit me to serve spiritual beings," really referred to Heaven. They rather thought it did not; but we must not thus pertinaciously insist upon particular expressions. Anciently, when sovereigns sacrificed to Heaven and Earth, they associated their ancestors as associates and sharers at the ceremony; when they prayed for anything to Heaven and Earth, they depended on the efficacious spirituality of their ancestors to present and second their request. Heaven was the most honourable, and they did not dare to approach it abruptly; their ancestors were the nearest to them, and they could, through the kindness between them, make their thoughts known to them. There is no reason why we should not say that the words, "I have received a new appointment from the three kings," are equivalent to "I have received a new appointment for him from Heaven" (先儒

因新命于三王即疑上文人
能多材多藝以服事鬼神
非指天言亦不祀天必拘
泥古者人君其有宗之靈
祖考配享藉祖尊殆可新
地亦必藉天至親于命也
之請蓋宗新命
而祖謂新命
也命于天可也)

Ch. II. Pp. 12—13. AFTER THE DEATH OF KING WOO THE DUKE OF CHOW FALLS UNDER SUSPICION OF NOT BEING LOYAL TO THE THRONE. TWO YEARS PASS BY, AND THEN HEAVEN INTERPOSES TO BRING HIS INNOCENCE TO LIGHT; THE

PRAYER IN THE COFFER IS DISCOVERED, AND THE YOUNG KING ACKNOWLEDGES WITH HIS TEARS THE INJUSTICE OF HIS THOUGHTS, AND RECEIVES THE DUKEDOM BACK, WHILE HEAVEN ACCORDS EVIDENT TOKENS OF ITS APPROVAL.

12. The manner in which the duke of Chow was brought into suspicion. The last par. closes with the statement that the king suddenly recovered the day after the duke's prayer. This opens with a reference to his death. Five years have elapsed. Woo died B.C. 1,115, and was succeeded by his son Sung (誦), whose reign dates from B.C. 1,114, and who is known in history by the title of Ching (成), 'the Completer.'

Ching was only 13 years old, and the duke of Chow acted as regent of the empire. It was natural he should do so, for he was the eldest of all the sons of Wan, and had been devotedly attached to his brother Woo, whose chief adviser he had been; and was without the shadow of disloyal feeling. The accession of dignity and influence which he now received, however, moved his elder brother Ssen, and some of his other brothers to envy, and they had come to be engaged in a treasonable conspiracy against the throne. We have seen how Woo, after the death of the tyrant Shou, pardoned his son, generally known by the name of Woo-kang (武庚), and continued him in Yin to maintain the sacrifices to the kings of his line. To guard against the very probable contingency of his rebellion, however, he placed three of his own brothers in the State along with him, with the title of 'Inspectors' or 'Overseers' (三

監), who should oversee both him and the old ministers of Shou. These overseers were Ssen, known as Kwan Shuh, elder than the duke of Chow; Too (度), known as Ts'au Shuh (蔡叔), immediately younger than the duke; and Ch'oo (處), known as Heh Shuh (霍叔), the eighth of Wan's sons. Perhaps Ssen thought that on the death of Woo the regency, if not the throne, should have devolved upon himself. Mencius ascribes the appointment of him as overseer of Yin to the duke of Chow (see *Mec.*, II., Pt. II., ix.), as, no doubt, it was made by Woo on his advice. This may have exasperated him the more against Tan who had thus shamed him, he would think, away from the court. However it was indeed, soon after the death of Woo, those three brothers entered into a conspiracy with Woo-kang to throw off the yoke of the

得。罪。二。公。王。告。我。之。公。乃。
 ○。人。年。居。○。我。無。弗。曰。告。
 于。斯。則。東。周。先。以。辟。我。二。

13 *king's young son.* Upon this the duke of Chow represented to the two dukes, saying, "If I do not take the law to these men, I shall not be able to make my report to our former kings."

14 He resided accordingly in the east for two years, when the

new dynasty, and as a preliminary step, they endeavoured, in the manner indicated in the text, to stir up division between the regent and his nephew.

管叔.—Kuan was the name of a city and territory,—the pres. sub. dep. of Ch'ing (鄭州), in the dep. of K'ao-fung, Ho-nan. It formed the appanage of Sien, the third of Wan's sons. I suppose that 叔 was originally merely indicative of Sien's place in the line of his brothers (see on *Con. Ans.*, XVIII, 11.); but it has come to be joined with 管, so that Kwán-shuh is now in effect simply a historical name. 羣弟—'the younger brothers' were Too and Ch'ou, as has been detailed above.

流言.—'set words flowing.'—spread a baseless rumour. 不利於孺子—'will not be advantageous to the child.' By 孺子, of course, the young emperor is meant.

我之弗辟.—ever since the Han dynasty the meaning of 辟 here has been debated. Gan-kwó, reading the term *pei*, according to its proper enunciation, defined it by 法, and explained the text by 我不以法法三叔則我無以成周道告我先王—

in the translation. K'ang-shing, on the other hand read 辟 as 避 and with the meaning of that term, so that the text—'If I do not get out of the way,—leave my dignities, and retire from court,—I shall not be able, &c., &c. The editors of Yung-ching's *Shoo* do not give a decided opinion on either side. Ts'ao has followed K'ang-shing, but his master Choo He wavered between the two views, approving now the one, and now the other. Maou K'uei has a long note on the subject, in his *尚書廣聽錄*.

Bk. III, recanting his early opinion in favour of K'ang-shing's view, and giving eight reasons for adopting in preference that of Gan-kwó. Some of them are sufficiently forcible. I have no hesitation in differing on this point from the generally approved interpretation associated by Ts'ao.

The duke of Chow, on being aware of the insinuations circulated against him, resolved to meet them with promptitude. He owed a duty to the former kings and to the dynasty, and whatever the young king might think, he would act at once against the rebellious and the disloyal.

14. *Justice done on the criminals.* The different views that are taken of the last paragraph necessarily affect the interpretation of this. Acc. to Gan-kwó, the duke spent two years in the east, operating against Woo-k'ang and the false brothers, and at the end of that time he had got them into his hands, and dealt with them according to his views of their several guilt. Ying-ta says:—**居東** (this has already

been explained by **東征之**) **二年則** 罪人於此皆得請獲三叔及諸叛逆者.

K'ang-shing on the other hand says:—**居東者** 出處東國待罪以須君之察已. He resided in the east "means that he left the court and dwelt in an eastern State, allowing the charge of guilt till the king should have examined into it."

The language so far will certainly admit of this interpretation, but what he says on the next clause is too ridiculous. It is:—**罪人周公之屬黨與知居攝者周公出皆奔今二年盡爲成王所得謂之罪人史書成王意也.**

'The criminals are the partisans of the duke of Chow and his acquaintances while he held the regency. When he withdrew from the court, they fled; but now in the two years they were all apprehended by king Ching. The historian calls them criminals, writing from the king's point of view.' Even K'ang Shing does not venture to adopt this interpretation, but supposes the meaning to be that the duke, while in the east, came to know who the criminals were that had slandered him.

I have said that the phrase **居東** will itself admit of the interpretation put on it by K'ang-shing; but Maou K'uei has shown, that if we do not understand it as Gan-kwó does, of the duke's operating in the east against his rebellious brothers, there is no other place in that direction from the court, to which his acquaintances

後、公乃爲詩以貽
王、名之曰鷗鴞。王
亦未敢誚公。○秋、
大熟、未穫、天大雷
電、以風、禾盡偃、大
木斯拔、邦人大恐。
王與大夫盡弁、以
啟金縢之書、乃得
周公所自以爲功。
代武王之說。二公

15 criminals were got and brought to justice. Afterwards he made a poem to present to the king, and called it "The Owl." The king on his part did not dare to blame the duke.

16 In the autumn, when the grain was abundant and ripe, but before it was reaped, Heaven sent a great storm of thunder and lightning, along with wind, by which the grain was all beaten down, and great trees torn up. The people were greatly terrified; and the king and great officers, all in their caps of state, proceeded to open the metal-bound coffer, and examine the writings, when they found the words of the duke of Chow when he took on himself the business of taking

ing for so long a time can be assigned with any degree of probability. 15. *The duke made a poem to the king to clear himself, but is only partially successful.* The poem here referred to is in the *Shu King*, Part I, Bk. XV., Ode II. It begins—

'O owl, O owl,
You have taken my young ones;
Do not also destroy my nest.
I loved them; I laboured for them;
I nourished them.—How am I to be pitied.'

The received interpretation of it is that it was composed by the duke after he had crushed the insurrectionary movements in Yin, and put to death Woo-kang and Kwan-shuh. By the 'owl' is intended Woo-kang; and by the 'nest,' the dynasty of Chow. The writer meant that King Ching should understand by it the devotion which he felt to the imperial House, and the sorrow which the stern justice he had been obliged to execute upon his brother occasioned him. K'ang-shing took a diff. view of it, in accordance with his interpretation of

罪人斯得 in the last par., and supposed that the duke intended by it to expostulate with the king on the persecution of his friends which he had instituted. But we cannot believe that he would have thus addressed the king as an 'Owl.' There is nothing in the poem or ode, which readily suggests the interpretation to be put upon it; but there is perhaps something in what Choo He says, that readers at the time, all-excited by the circumstances to which it

had reference, would not find the difficulty in understanding it which we do. 王亦

未敢誚公—誚 is now superseded by 誰; it means 'to reprove,' 'to blame.' The clause is understood to intimate that though the king now partially understood the motives of the duke's conduct, and could not blame him for the way in which he had dealt with his other uncles, he still looked on him with some degree of suspicion.

Pp. 14—16. *Heaven interposes to bring the duke's innocence to light by means of the prayer in the metal-bound coffer.* 16. 秋—we may suppose this was the autumn of the the third year of Ching,—a.c. 1,112.

雷電以風—Lin Che-k'e brings out the 以風 by expanding:—天忽雷電大作又繼之以風, as in the translation. The paraphrase of the 'Daily Explanation' is similar.

王與至之書—the 弁 was a 'skin cap' worn in court at audiences. It is generally said that the king was going to divine that he might discover the reason of the unusual storm, and therefore opened the coffer which contained the oracles of divination. But we saw, on p. 11, that it is not certain those oracles were kept in that coffer. Possibly it was a repository of important archives, which

及王乃問諸史與百執事。
 對曰信噫公命我勿敢言。
 ○王執書以泣曰其勿穆
 卜昔公勤勞王家惟予冲
 人弗及知今天動威以彰
 周公之德惟朕小子其新
 逆我國家禮亦宜之。○王
 出郊天乃雨反風禾則盡
 起二公命邦人凡大木所
 偃盡起而築之歲則大熟。

- 17 the place of king Woo. The king and the two dukes asked the grand historian and all the other officers about the thing. They replied, "Ah! it was really thus; but the duke charged us that we should not presume to speak about it." The king held the writing, and wept, saying, "We need not now go on reverently to divine. Formerly the duke was thus earnest for the royal House, but I, being a child, did not know it. Now Heaven has moved its terrors to display the virtue of the duke of Chow. That I meet him a new man, is what the rules of propriety of our empire require."
- 19 The king then went out to the borders, when Heaven sent down rain; and by virtue of a contrary wind, the grain all rose up. The two dukes gave orders to the people to take up all the large trees which had fallen, and replace them. The year then turned out very fruitful.

were consulted on great emergencies of the State.

17. 史與百執事—these were all the officers who had assisted the duke when he made his prayer, &c.

信噫云云—Ying-ti says:—噫心不平之聲噫 is a sound expressive of dissatisfaction of mind.

恨辭—Gan-kwo calls it 恨辭. They were vexed at being thus obliged to tell what the duke had charged them to keep secret. K'ang Shing reads 意, which he explains in a similar way.

18. 其勿穆卜—今觀公書可知天變之所由我君臣不必更穆卜矣—see the

講 予冲人—see on "The Fwan-kang," Pt. III, p. 7. Here king Ching was really a youth.

惟朕小子其新逆—逆—迎, 'to meet.' Ma Yung read 親

instead of 新, so that the meaning is—"That I go out and meet him in person," &c. This certainly gives a good meaning; and Ts'ao and K'ang Shing both adopt it. Gan-kwo and K'ang-shing, however, both understand 新 as in the translation. The language of the latter is:—新迎, 改先時之心, 更自新以迎周公. This is rather harsh, but it is more difficult to get a tolerable meaning out of many other passages of the Shoo.

P. 19. *The duke is received back, and Hennen signifies its approbation.*

王出郊—it is most natural to understand this going forth to the suburbs with reference to the king's purpose indicated in the

逆 of the last par. Gan-kwō, however, takes 郊 of the place, outside the city, where the great

sacrifice to Heaven was offered, and thought that the going forth was to offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving to Heaven for his deliverance from the unjust suspicions which he had incurred.

Tran says that after reading this paragraph it is impossible to doubt the doctrine of 'verifications,' laid down in the 'Pian!'

[I may here, in the vacant space of this page, introduce Wang Pih's chapter on the 金 藤 in his 'Doubts about the Shoo.' His views are questionable, but the student will be glad to have a complete specimen of the style and manner of his Work.—

此書敘事體也。與一後之此不止曲判於敘征然有竊責願三于武成同武武成是敘伐商前略書事東於可蓄總東當家實是以曰責武成篇是始納也。流潔情事四滕諸文不望天文不武此七力首其字間詰先終後小因如我無保同末六筆之詳餘揚大成之而餘者字事間任成始歷有藤不十抑來武事終其一責其中有武事中金可五折後此武始也未意望代王

神命合是者之也。公當我者言死公以作為私居一輯鬼乃字并卜卜吉者公者待之不從命是下以而只抵事如二乃此龜果王則圖所人公不俟只天得之卜不能矣孫此吉以之三夢是茲一而而當辟公不避穆初不味元於皆參卜于王終計於夢心則弗以固公二近能意脫孫卜而三命王永之忘王之公之公事曰者為面無却元三齋證新代惟終不也公在我周之息公字後全廷乃謂啟是子身也考必王監也已讀誅姑知敬則語帝舉者言乃小以命為王代天代而聲征而非於天之于復吉之書十欲代但三以亦之代入心恩東義也

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK VII. THE GREAT ANNOUNCEMENT.

大誥

王若曰，猷大誥
爾多邦，越爾御
事，弗弔，天降割
于我家，不少延
洪惟我幼沖人，
嗣無疆大歷服，
弗造哲迪民康。
矧曰其有能格

- 1 I. "The king speaks to the following effect:—'Ho! I make a great announcement to you, *the princes* of the many States, and to you, the managers of my affairs.—Unpitied am I, and Heaven sends down calamities on my House, without exercising the least delay. It greatly occupies my thoughts, that I, so very young, have inherited this illimitable patrimony, with its destinies and domains. I have not displayed wisdom, and led the people to tranquillity, and how much less should I be able to reach the knowledge of the decree of Heaven!

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—大誥 'The Great Announcement.' At the commencement of the first paragraph, these two characters,—

大誥,—occur, and they are thence taken and made the name of the Book. GUN-KWÖ, indeed, says that the Book sets forth great doctrines for the information of the empire, and thence

it received its name (陳大道以誥天下故以名篇). But we look in vain for any 'great doctrines' in the Book. The

emergency which called the announcement forth was sufficiently important to justify the duke

of Chow in calling it 'great.' We need not look for any higher or deeper meaning in the title. The Book is found in both the texts.

CONTENTS; DATE; AND STYLE. The prefatory note says, 'When king Woo had deceased, the three overlords and the wild tribes of the Hwa rebelled. The duke of Chow acted as prime minister to king Ching; and having purposed to make an end of the House of Yin, he made "The Great Announcement." This sets forth the occasion on which the address was composed, but when we come to look at the contents, we find very little appropriate, according to our views, to the circumstances. The young emperor speaks of the

responsibility lying on him to maintain the empire gained by the virtues and prowess of his father, and of the senseless movements of the House of Yin to regain its supremacy; he complains of the reluctance of many of the princes and high officers to second him in putting down the revolt; and proclaims with painful reiteration the support and assurances of success which he has received from the divining tortoise-shells. The three over-seers are not mentioned, though we may find an allusion or two to them. The whole tone is feeble. I have divided it, it will be seen, the 15 paragraphs in which it is now generally edited into five chapters.

The date of the announcement is generally referred to the third year of Ching B.C., 1112. But such an arrangement of events supposes the duke of Chow's residence in the east, spoken of in the last Book, to have been a voluntary exile, and that this expedition against Yin was undertaken after he returned in the manner described. But I saw reason to understand the sojourning in the east as a description of this very expedition, and that the return mentioned was on its successful termination. On this view the announcement was made in the first or second year of Ching, and the expedition was finished in the third year. On that point,—the date of the extinction of Woo-kang and his revolt, there is an agreement.

The style of the Book is about as difficult as that of the 'Pwan-kang.' 'We may doubt,' says Wang Gan-shih, 'whether parts have not been lost, and other parts have not fallen out of their proper place. Our plan is to let alone what we cannot understand, and to explain what we find ourselves able to do.' 'It is difficult,' says Choo He, 'to point the Book. The sentences are very long, and students generally try to break them up into shorter ones, which makes the interpretation more difficult still.'

Ch. I, Ep. 1, 2. NOTWITHSTANDING HIS YOUTH AND INCOMPEXIENCE, THE KING FEELS HONORED, BY HIS DUTY TO HIS FATHERS AND TO HEAVEN, TO DO HIS UTMOST TO PUT DOWN THE REVOLT WHICH WAS THREATENING THE RECENTLY ACQUIRED EMPIRE.

1. 王若曰—these are the words of the duke of Chow, spoken by him as regent of the empire, and in the name of the young king. We are not to suppose indeed that Ching had anything to do with the announcement. Doubting the duke's loyalty, he would not have sent him to attack his other uncles; but the duke acted as the great duties of his position required him to do, and would not allow the safety of the dynasty to be perilled by weak scruples. At the same time it was right that his address should appear as in the name of the king. There was no other king but Ching, and no other is intended by 王 throughout the Book. K'ang-shing, however, says that by 王 we should understand the duke himself. His words are:—王. 周公也. 周公居攝命大事則權稱王. 'The king is the duke of Chow. He was regent of the empire, and in giving charge about such great affairs, in the exigency of the circumstances, he called himself the king.'

K'ang-shing, Ming-shing, and other opponents of 'the false K'ung,' adopt this view, and the ingenuity with which they argue for it is amusing; but it is too absurd to justify our entering into an examination of their arguments. Comp.

the 王若曰 in the Pwan-kang, Pt. I, 16; and often in several of the Books of Chow that follow.

猷大詰爾多邦—猷 appears to have come into use, under the Chow dynasty, as an exclamation, like the 咨 of the 'Canon of Yao.' I do not see what other meaning can be given to it here, or in the next Bk., p. 1; *scil.* Here Ma Yang and others in the Han dynasty read it after 詰—大

詰猷爾云云—and explained it by 道. Gan-kwō even attempted to give it the same meaning in its place at the beginning of the sentence:—周公稱王命順大道以詰天下云云. But this is exceedingly harsh and unnatural. Lla Che-k'ue was the first, so far as I have ascertained, who explained the term as an exclamation. It is a pity that this meaning of it does not appear in the dictionary.

爾多邦—爾在外多邦之諸侯越爾御事.—see the 'Great

Speech,' Pt. I, p. 2. 弗弔—弔 (read *tsao*)=恤 'to pity,' as in the Shu King, Pt. III., Bk. III., Ode x., st. 5. In the 'Pwan-kang,' Pt. III., 7, it was read *tsai*, with the meaning of 至, 'to come to,' *i.e.* to reach the mark of goodness; and so Gan-kwō took it, and K'ang Shing takes it, but with different relations to the rest of the sentence.—see the 註疏 and

the 尚書集註音疏 Ts'ao expands the phrase as in the translation:—我不爲天所恤. 天降割于我家, 不少延—割—害, 'injuries,' 'calamities.' 'Heaven sends down calamities on my House,'—this has reference especially to the early death of King Woo; and we may include also the present troubles occasioned by the revolt in Yin.

不少延—without a little delay. Blow was following on blow in quick succession. Gan-kwō put a stop at 少, and carried 延 to the next sentence. Of this construction I shall speak on the next clause. K'ang-shing pointed as in the text and interpreted 不少延 as—'not few and prolonged.' 延 may certainly be thus taken as—長; but the whole phrase 不少延 is more naturally construed as I have done in the translation, following Ts'ao and other Sung critics. 洪惟—大恩, 'I greatly think' Gan-kwō, I have just said, began this

于天降威
予不敢閉
不忘大功
人受命茲
敷賁敷前
求朕攸濟
水予惟往
子若涉淵
已予惟小
知天命。○

- 2 'Yes, I who am but a little child am in the position of one who has to cross a deep water;—it must be mine to go and seek how to cross over. I must diffuse the elegant institutions of my predecessor, and augment the appointment which he received from Heaven;—so shall I be not forgetful of his great work. Nor shall I dare to restrain the majesty of Heaven seen in the inflictions it sends down.

clause with 延, and his comment on 延惟我幼沖人凶害延大惟累我幼童人成王言其不可不誅之意. 'The calamities are so protracted and great that they involve me who am so young;—the king's meaning is that there was nothing for him but to cut off the criminals.' This is very far-fetched, and must be rejected.

嗣無疆大歷服—歷 is defined as—數 'fate, destiny.' Woo Ch'ing says:—歷—天之歷數 服—domains. Ts'ao says—五服, 'the five domains;' but they were more than 'five' under the Chow dynasty. Nearly all the critics define 服 by 事, and then expand it into something like 服王事; but Ts'ao's meaning is much simpler.

弗造哲迪民康—on this Gan-kwō has—不能爲造智道以安人. 'I cannot practise the ways of wisdom to repose the people.' K'ang Shing has—弗遭逢明哲之人以道于安. 'I have not met with (=found), intelligent men to lead the people to repose.' Better than either, Woo Ch'ing read 造 with an aspirate, —'to go to,' 'to arrive at,' and says:—弗能造於明哲以導民於安. 'I have not attained to wisdom, so as to conduct the people to tranquillity.' So I take the words. 矧曰云云—I take 格

here with Gan-kwō as—至. 'to reach to.' I do not know what the young king, or rather the duke of Chow, had in view by 天命, 'the decree or appointment of Heaven,' nor can I discern the bearing of the whole clause on the

rest of the announcement. Perhaps a glimpse of light is afforded by Kin Te-ts'ung, who says:—此言成王以幼沖嗣位, 流言展轉而事變如此, 未能上測天意如何以起下文求濟卜筮之意. 'This speaks of how King Ching, inheriting the throne at so early an age, with the baseless rumours going about, and such changes of events occurring, was unable to fathom what might be the mind of Heaven, in order to introduce what is said below about his seeking how to cross over his difficulties, and the intimations afforded by divination;—see the 集說. 2. 已 is used, acc. to Ts'ao, as a continuative particle, indicating that though the speaker had come to a pause, yet he must go on expressing his sentiments (已承上語辭已而有不能已之意). Our 'Yes' corresponds to it.

予惟至攸濟—this, says Gan-kwō, 'expresses the king's awe' (言祇懼). He might have said—awe and perplexity. 敷賁敷前人受命,—the former clause expresses the young king's apprehensive perplexity; this seems to express what under all circumstances he felt it incumbent upon him to do. The language however, is difficult to construe and interpret. Llo Ch'ao says:—Gan-kwō read 賁, as in the "P'wan-k'ang," Pt. III, 7, and with the same signif. of great, and gave the meaning—'I will spread and practice great principles, so spreading and displaying the appointment received by Wān and Woo.'

But the text only says 敷賁, and to make that—'I will display great principles' is wide of the mark and forced. See and Lin Tse-hway (林子晦) read the character 飾, with the meaning of 'to adorn' (飾; as in the 'Announcement of Tang,' p. 5). See then in-

越亦西于有即紹大王用。
茲不土西大命天寶遺○
蠢靜人土艱曰明龜我寧

- 3 II. 'The Tranquillizing king left to me the great precious tortoise, to bring into connection with me the intelligence of Heaven. I consulted it, and it told me that there would be great trouble in the region of the west, and that the western people would not be still. Accordingly we have the present senseless movements.

interpreted—"What I diffuse must be to adorn and extend the appointment received by my predecessors, and not forget their merit," while Lin Tsz-hway says, "The meaning is—I will cultivate and illustrate the institutions, to impart ornament to the empire." The character 寶 is thus both pronounced and interpreted by them differently from Gan-kwó: but the meanings they bring out are as far from being clear as his. Wang Gan-shih says, better than any of them, that the text is maimed, and we need not weary ourselves to fix its meaning. The translation simply follows the view of Tsz'ze, which is that of See Tung-po. 予不敢

云云—in this clause the king intimates how it was his duty to punish Woo-káng and all aiding him in his revolt. He would let the justice of Heaven take its course; he would not restrain it, but execute it rather against them. 于, following 聞, is rather perplexing; but we have met with it before, similarly following transitive verbs.

Wang Gan-shih put a stop at 威, and read 用 with what follows—寧王云云, and Choo He approved of this construction,—see the 附錄. In this point Tsz'ze chose to follow the two K'ung, rather than his master. Woo Ch'ing, however, points with Gan-shih, and gives this view of the clause preceding, having closed a paragraph with 大功—'When Heaven was sending down its terrors on me, I did not dare to conceal them, but used the tortoise,' &c., &c.

Ch II. Pp. 3-6. THE DIVINATIONS HAD INFORMED THE KING OF THE COMING TROUBLES, AND THEY NOW ASSURED HIM OF THE PRESENT EXPEDITION. MANY OF THE BEST AND ABLEST OF THE PEOPLE WERE SUPPORTING HIM. THEY MIGHT THEREFORE GO FORWARD WITH CONFIDENCE. 3. 寧王—the Tranquillizing king.

Gan-kwó says that king Wan is intended; but the phrase 寧考 in par. 8 determines that we interpret the epithet of king Woo, Ch'ing's father. 紹天明—紹

—紹, 'to continue and transmit.' At a grand

reception of visitors at court there were the attendants and officers who received them, and went between them and the prince. They and their function were called 介紹. Similarly we are told here that the tortoise-shell was a connecting medium between the mind of man and the mind of Heaven. And this was the belief of the duke of Chow! 即命 is

used like the same phrase in the last Book, p. 8. 曰有大至不靜—this is to be taken as the reply of the tortoise, or the result obtained from the divination. Gan-kwó indeed makes the 曰 commence a new para-

graph. 即命 is with him—'I have consulted it, and received its instruction;' and then for a time all reference to the tortoise ceases, and 曰—'The king also says.' This construction is to me intolerably harsh. 曰 follows immediately on the divination by the tortoise-shell, and introduces the reply which was received. That reply is sufficiently enigmatical. The troubles arose in the east, and the oracle was that the west would be troubled. This difficulty is solved by saying that the troubles arose indeed in the east, but they necessarily went on to trouble the west. The 'Daily Explanation' paraphrases the text as if the oracle had been thus explicit:—龜

即命曰, 異日東方諸侯起而叛亂, 將有大艱難之事于西土, 使西土之人疲于奔命, 不得安靜, 是西土晏然之時, 龜兆已豫告矣. This was, it will be seen, a prophecy, rather than the solution of a doubt, and the oracle was like those of the west. We may compare it with the 'Alo te, Eacida, Romanos vincere posse.'

越茲蠢—these are again the words of the king. 蠢—蠢動, 'insects moving, wriggling about,' in the spring. It is often used in

有翼 ○ 鄙曰 疵知敘誕 ○
 十日 今我 予民 我天 敢殷
 夫民 蠱周 復不 國降 紀小
 予獻 今邦 反康 有威 其腆

4 'Little as the present prosperity of Yin is, its prince greatly dares to take in hand its broken line. Though Heaven sent down its terrors on his House, yet knowing of the evils in our kingdom, and that the people are not tranquil, he says—"I will recover my patrimony"; and so he wishes to make our State of Chow a border territory again.

5 'One day there was a senseless movement, and the day after, ten men of worth among the people appeared to help me to go forward

the sense of 'silly,' 'impertinent.' 4. The guilt of Woo-kang.

殷小腆—this 腆 has marvellously vexed the critics. Gan-kwo took it as—小, and K'ang-shing did the same.

Ma Yang made it—至, meaning probably 'Yin, who has but little attained.' Wang Shu made it—主 so that 殷小腆—'this small princelot of Yin.' The 說文 defines it

by 多, 'many or much,' and Ming-shing says this justifies the 小 of Kang-shing, like Acres a

son lucas! Ts'ao gives 厚, 'prosperous,' 'flourishing' for it, which is no doubt the correct

meaning here. Compare 自洗腆致用

酒 in the 'Announcement about Wine,' p. 6.

Tung-po was the first to bring this meaning of the term to the interpretation of the text. 敘

—'to arrange,' 'to place in order;' then, 'a series,' 'a rank.' Here, being under the govt.

of 紀, it is taken as—緒, 'the end of a cocoon, or of a ball of thread;' then 'a thread,'

'a line,' and with the same metaphorical applications as our word 'line.' The clause, as

expanded by Ts'ao, is—乃敢大紀其

既亡之緒. All the old interpreters understood 天降威 of the troubles of the

imperial House, with special reference to the rumours about the Duke of Chow set on foot

by his brothers, following so quickly on the death of King Woo. The same view is taken

also by Woo Ch'ing and K'ang Shing. If the

知 had been before the 天 we must have construed in this way. The meaning which appears

in the translation is given by Ts'ao, who follows his expansion of the previous clause, quoted

above, by—是雖天降威于殷然亦武庚知我國有三叔疵隨民心不安故敢云云

子復反鄙我周邦—we must put a stop at 復, and then supply 而欲, as

in the translation. 子 is Woo-kang himself speaking, but we cannot refer the 我 also to

him. 子復—我將復殷業

鄙 is used for 'a border,' 'a border town.' It has here the force of a verb.

5 今蠶至以于, 獻—賢 (comp. the 'Yih and Tseih,' p. 7. K'ang Shing reads 義, but with

the same meaning); 于—往, 'to go.' Who the 'ten men of worth' were, we do not know.

Gan-kwo supposed they belonged to Yin, 'loyal and far-seeing men in the rebellious territory.'

This is not likely. I suppose they were men of the imperial domain who had been forward to

express their attachment to the dynasty of Chow. The 今蠶今翼日, indicate

the promptitude with which they had come forward. Ts'ao expands the clause:—今武庚

蠶動今之明日民之賢者

十夫輔我以往云云 敘

寧武圖功—敘—撫, 'to soothe,' 'to tranquillize'; 敘寧—go together.—撫定

商邦, 'to soothe and settle the country of Shang. 武—繼, 'to continue.' (武 is used

for 'military prowess or achievement,' and also for 迹 'footsteps,' 'traces,' from which the

迹

越庶士御事罔
臣○爾庶邦君
邦于伐殷逋播
卜予惟以爾庶
御事曰予得吉
君越尹氏庶士
肆予告我友邦
休朕卜并吉○
圖功我有大事
翼以于救寧武

to restore tranquillity and to perpetuate the plans of my father. The great business I am engaging in will have a successful issue, for I have divined and always got a favourable intimation. 'Therefore I tell you, the princes of my friendly States, and you, the directors of departments, my officers, and the managers of my affairs,—I have obtained a favourable reply to my divinations. I will now go forward with you from all the States, and punish those vagabond and transported ministers of Yin.

7. III. 'And now, you the princes of the various States, and you the various officers and managers of my affairs, all retort on me, saying,

signification given to it in the text is derived. How the same character comes to have significations so different is one of the mysteries which a Lexicographer may solve by tracing its history, and showing how forms originally distinct have coalesced in one.] 武圖功—繼

嗣武王所圖之功. This construction of the clause is given by Ts'ao, and Keang Shing concurs in it. Other views may be seen in the 註疏, and in Woo Ch'ing's commentary.

我有云云—大事. 'great affair,' referring to the warlike expedition about to be proceeded with. It is said in the 左傳 that 'the "great affairs" of a State are sacrifice and war.' (國之大事在祀與戎).

并吉.—'all together are lucky.' The king had divined; and the 'three men' who had operated with the three shells, or interpreted the threefold intimation of the one shell, all foretold a happy result;—see the 'Great Plan,' p. 24. Ts'ao gives the connection of the two parts of the clause thus:—知我有戎事休美者以朕卜三龜而并吉也. We are not to suppose that this divining was the same as that mentioned in par. 2. That was earlier, before the rebellion had revealed itself; this was with reference to the expedition which was in progress. 6.

肆予至御事—肆—故. 'therefore'

尹氏. 'the governors or directors.'—庶官之正. 'the heads of the various magisterial departments.' Gun-kwō says they were the 卿大夫, 'nobles and great officers.' Compare the 百尹 of Bk. XXII, p. 3. We might bring out the meaning of the 氏 by saying—'the directors of the several surnames.'

予得吉卜云云—于. so in the last part.—往逋播臣.—'the absconded scattered ministers.' Woo-k'ang and the old adherents of his House, who continued with him, are intended by this contemptuous language. There was enough in the circumstances of their condition to afford a ground for so describing them.

Ch. III. Pp. 7—9. THE KING COMPLAINS OF THE HELENTANCE OF THE PRINCES AND OFFICERS TO GO FORWARD WITH HIM TO THE EXPEDITION, AND REPLIES TO THEIR PROPOSAL TO GO CONTRARY TO THE DIVINATIONS. 7. The proposal of the princes and officers to go contrary to the oracles, and abandon the expedition. 罔不反—there is not one who does not retort.' K'ang-shing says—無不反我之意. 'all oppose my views.' Keang Shing would take 反 as simply 復, 'to reply.'

The two ideas are here combined in the term. All the rest of the par. is to be taken as the language of the malcontents. Gun-kwō, indeed, takes only 覲大,

不反曰艱大民
不靜亦惟在王
宮邦君室越予
小子考翼不可
征王害不違卜。
○肆予冲人永
思艱曰嗚呼允
蠢鰥寡哀哉予
造天役遺大投
艱于朕身越予

"The hardships will be great, and that the people are not still has its source really in the king's palace, and in the mansions of those princes of the troubled State. We, little ones, and the old reverent men as well, think the expedition ill-advised. Why does your majesty not go contrary to the divination?"

8 'I, in my youth, think also continually of the hardships, and say, Alas! these senseless movements will deplorably afflict widowers and widows! But I am the servant of Heaven, which has assigned

'the difficulties will be great,' as their words, and makes out all the rest to be a portion of the king's reply. But, to my mind, the text is altogether unmanageable on this view. The exegesis which I have followed, and which appears in the translation, is not unattended with difficulties; but it gives an interpretation of the passage in harmony with the general tenour of the Announcement, and not harsher, as regards particular expressions, than we are obliged to admit in many other places.

民不靜

至君室, —this is an allusion, as plain as the duke of Chow could permit himself to make, to the dissatisfaction of his three brothers charged with the oversight of Yin, the rumours which they had spread against himself, and the suspicions which those had awakened in the king's mind. The 邦君 are Sem, Too, and Ch'ow. 室, as opposed to 宮, I translate by 'mansion.'

越予小子, 考翼不可征云云, —this passage presents several difficulties, and no construction of it has been proposed, against which objections cannot be urged. 予小子 is taken by Gan-kwō of the king speaking of himself, and this is the one strong point in his construction mentioned above. In the translation the phrase is taken in the plural:—so the princes and officers, opposed to the expedition, describe themselves.

考 is taken as —老 'old,' 'fathers.' 翼 —敬, 'to be reverent,' i.e., in the conduct of business. The character is thus used in the Shoo King, as may be seen in the dict. 考翼 —父

老之敬事者 害 (read in the 4th tone) —曷, 'why.' The paraphrase of the whole in the 'Daily Explanation' is:—子等小子固無所知識至子敬之練達未協聽事之父老乃老成人謀未協聽人皆以爲不可人謀未協聽龜兆難憑曷不違卜而聽人乎

Pp. 8, 9. How the king replies to the princes and officers, complaining of their want of sympathy with him, and saying again the authority of the oracles.

2. 允蠢鰥寡哀哉, —indeed the senseless movements; widowers and widows, alas! Gan-kwō brings out the meaning thus:—信蠢動天下使無妻無夫者受其害可哀哉. Woo Ch'ing observes that the young and strong would be carried off to the expedition, and so the widowers and widows would be left in their solitude without those whose duty it was to care for them.

予造天役, —予所爲之事皆天所役使, 'the things which I do are all services required from me by Heaven.' Keang Shing takes 造 —遺, as in p. 1, which would give here a good enough meaning.

遺大投大, —Heaven is the nominative to the verbs 遺 and 投. The 'Daily Explanation' has:—天

沖人、不邛自恤、義爾
邦君、越爾多士、尹氏
御事、綏予曰、無愆于
恤、不可不成、乃寧考
圖功。○已予惟小子、
不敢替上帝命、天休
于寧王、興我小邦周、
寧王惟卜用、克綏受
茲命、今天其相民、矧
亦惟卜用、嗚呼、天明

me this great task, and laid this hard duty on my person. I therefore, the young one, do not pity myself, and it would be right in you, the princes of the States, and in you, the many officers, the directors of departments, and the managers of my affairs, to soothe me, saying, "Do not be distressed with sorrow. We shall surely complete the plans of your Tranquillizing father."

9 'Yes, I, the little one, dare not disregard the charge of God. Heaven, favourable to the Tranquillizing king, gave such prosperity to our small State of Chow. The Tranquillizing king divined and acted accordingly, and so he calmly received his great appointment. Now Heaven is helping the people;—how much more must I follow the divinations! Oh! the clearly-intimated will of Heaven is to be feared:—it is to help my great inheritance.'

實以甚大者遺于吾之身、
甚艱者投于吾之身、不
邛自恤、邛、我、身、'I,' 'myself.'
The meaning is that the king would do his duty,
without considering the risks and troubles to
which it would expose him. 義爾至圖
功、義、以義言之、'speaking of
the case with reference to what is right.' 愆
—勞、'to labour,' 'to distress one's-self.' 無
(—毋)愆于恤、君毋勞于憂。
'Let not your Majesty distress yourself about
this matter of sorrow.' The princes and officers
are then supposed to say that they would dis-
pense of the revolt for him.—凡我爲臣
者、不可不共矢其力、聲罪
致討、成乃寧考所圖之功。
9. 已、—as in p. 2. 不敢替上

帝命、替、廢、'to disregard,' 'to make of
none effect.' 'The charge of God' is that implied
in p. 5, when the divinations were all favour-
able, and the king was thus instructed to go
forward with the expedition against Woo-kang
and his associates.

天休至茲命、
—the divinations of king Woo referred to are
those mentioned in 'The Great Speech,' Pt. II.,
p. 5, 朕夢協朕卜、襲于休祥。

今天其相民、—How was Heaven
now helping the people? Gan-kwé replies—
'By the coming forward of the ten men of worth
to support the king.' Possibly the king, or the
duke rather, may have had this in mind.

矧亦惟卜用、況我亦惟卜
是用、天明、云云、—the transla-

tion here follows Ts'ao. The 天明, 'intelli-
gence of Heaven,' is that mentioned in p. 2, as
conveyed by the 'great tortoise.' Thus clearly
intimated, it was to be reverenced. Opposition
to it could only entail disaster. How much

畏，弼我不丕基。○
 王曰，爾惟舊人，爾
 丕克遠省，爾知寧
 王若勤哉，天閼愆
 我成功，所予不敢
 不極卒寧王圖事，
 肆予大化，誘我友
 邦君，天棐忱辭，其
 考我民，予曷其不
 于前寧人圖功攸

- 10 IV. "The king says, 'You, who are the old ministers, are fully able to examine the long-distant affairs;—you know how great was the toil of the 'Tranquillizing king. Now where Heaven shuts up and distresses us is the place where I must accomplish my work;—I dare not but do my utmost to complete the plans of the 'Tranquillizing king. It is on this account that I use such efforts to remove the doubts and carry forward the inclinations of the princes of my friendly States. Heaven *also* assists me with sincere expressions of attachment, which I have ascertained among the people;—how dare I but aim at the completion of the work formerly begun by the

more should they be forward to obey it, when it was to establish the dynasty! K'ang Shing takes 畏—威, and the whole—'The brilliant majesty of Heaven is aiding me to enlarge this great inheritance.'

Ch. IV. Pp. 10—12. THE KING ADDRESSES HIMSELF MORE PARTICULARLY TO THE OLD MINISTERS OF HIS HOUSE; SETS FORTH HIS OWN WISH TO DO HIS DUTY AS A SON AND A SOVEREIGN, AND COMPLAINS OF THEIR WANT OF SYMPATHY WITH HIM. 10. 王曰，—see on 王若

曰, p. 1. It is one of the peculiarities of the Announcements in the Books of Chow, that they are broken up into many parts by the recurrence of these phrases. 爾惟至勤哉，—

by 舊人 we are to understand the old ministers of king Woo, (武王之舊臣)；—the 考翼 of p. 7, who are there quoted as opposed to the expedition. 遠省，—'to examine the remote,' i.e., the affairs of past days.

天閼至圖事，—this is an instance of what Choo He calls the 'long sentences' of the 'Great Announcement.' 閼者否塞不通之意，閼 means shut up, without thoroughfare. 愆者艱難不易之

意，愆 means difficult and not easy. These are the definitions given by Ts'ao, who adds—天之所以否閉艱難國家多難者，乃我成功之所在。

The above definition of 閼 is not given in the dictionary, tho' it may be very reasonably derived from the explanation of the term in the 說文 as—閉門. The dict. makes it—慎, after Gan-kwó, and with reference to this

passage. K'ang Shing defines it by 勞, which makes it simply a synonym of 愆. Ts'ao took his definition from Lin Che-k'ue. 'The place where king Ching had to accomplish his work,' was the east, where the revolt was going on; but the 所 does not indicate the locality simply, but all the circumstances of the case. 肆

予至邦君，—化者，化其固滯，'by 化 is meant dissolving their obstinate obstructions; 誘者，誘其順從，'by 誘 is meant inducing them to follow him with accordance.' These again are the definitions of Ts'ao,—very good. 天棐至攸終，—棐 is taken by Gan-kwó and most other

父蓄厥子乃弗
肯堂矧肯構厥
底法厥子乃弗
思若考作室既
其逝朕言艱日
○王曰若昔朕
寧人攸受休畢
予曷敢不于前
毖我民若有疾
終天亦惟用勤

Tranquillizer? Heaven moreover is thus toiling and distressing my people, so that it is as if they were suffering from disease;—how dare I allow the appointment which the Tranquillizer, my predecessor, received, to be without its happy fulfilment?"

- 11 "The king says, 'Formerly, at the initiation of this expedition, I spoke of its difficulties, and revolved them daily. But when a deceased father, wishing to build a house, had laid out the plan, if his son be unwilling to raise up the hall, how much less will he be willing to complete the roof! Or if the father had broken up the ground, and his son is unwilling to sow the seed, how much less

critics as — 輔: 'to aid.' 忱—誠信, 'sincere.' Heaven does not speak;—where were the 'expressions' of its regard? The ten men of worth, who had come forward to encourage the king, might be considered as giving utterance to the 'voice of the people,'—the 'voice of God.' Choo He was dissatisfied with this interpretation of 裴. He said that 'though all the elder scholars concurred in it, it made the passage unintelligible.' He himself, on the authority chiefly of Yen Sze-koo, made the character synonymous with 匪, 'not,' so that the meaning is—'Heaven really does not utter words, but its mind may be ascertained from the mind of the people.' This brings out substantially the same meaning as the other view of 裴. By 寧人 I understand king Woo.

It is only a variation of the phrase 寧王.

Ts'ao takes it as — 寧臣, 'the tranquillizing ministers,' meaning those who had co-operated with king Woo in his great work, and adds that this description of them would cover with shame those of them who were dissuading king Ching from the expedition. See a note from Ch'in Lai-h on this point in the 附錄. 天亦云

云,—here is another consideration, which determined the king's resolution. His father's object was to give repose and happiness to all the people. This revolt was distressing them,—a fever, a serious disease in the State. He must secure the realization of his father's pur-

pose by putting the revolt down. 11. How his sense of filial duty impelled the king to the expedition.

若昔日朕其逝—初欲東征之時, 'when I first wished to undertake this expedition to the east.' So, Ts'ao and Woo Ch'ing. Then the 言 and 思 of the next clause are to be taken in the past tense. Woo, indeed, is half disposed to take 言 simply as an expletive or exclamation, but there is no necessity for having recourse to such a construction. Thinking of the difficulties which the expedition was pressed with, the king might have wished to abandon it; but to prevent his doing so, there came in the considerations of his duty to his father which are set forth in the rest of the paragraph. In this way we get a consistent meaning from the whole. Gan-kwé and K'ang Shing, instead of taking 若

昔 as — 昔日, or 昔者, give 若 a full verbal force, — 順, 'to accord with.' The former then interprets—'In accordance with ancient principles, I must proceed with this expedition to the east (順古道, 我其往東征矣). I have spoken quite enough about the difficulties and hardships of the empire, and I daily think of them.' The latter says:—'In accordance with the example of the king my predecessor, I ought to go and punish

肯播矧肯穫厥考翼其肯曰予有後弗棄基肆予曷敢不越邛敕寧王大命○若兄考乃有友伐厥子民養其勸弗救。

will he be willing to reap the grain! In such a case will the father, who had himself been so reverently attentive to his objects, be willing to say, "I have an heir who will not abandon the patrimony?"—How dare I, therefore, but use all my powers to give a happy settlement to the great charge entrusted to the Tranquillizing king?

- 12 'If a father have those among his friends who attack his child, will the elders of his people encourage the attack, and not come to the rescue?'

these revolters (順昔前王之事則我其當往征). Of the hardships connected with the expedition I have spoken, and I daily think of them. The view which I have followed seems to me much preferable to either of them.

若考作室既底法—考 is 'a father deceased.' We must take it so here, king Woo being intended, while Ching is the son on whom it devolves to carry out and finish his father's undertakings. 既底法—has settled the plan, i.e., has laid out the foundation, and defined all the dimensions,—the length, breadth and height. For 堂 Woo

Ching says 築基, 'to build up on the foundation.' The meaning evidently is to proceed with the building, according to the plan. 構—蓋, 'to cover,' here,—'to construct the roof.'

[Immediately after 構, Kang-shing read 厥考翼其肯曰予有後弗棄基, which thus occurred with him twice in the paragraph.] 蓄—反土去草曰蓄, 'turning over the earth and removing the grass is called 蓄.' It denotes the first steps taken to bring waste land or virgin soil into cultivation.

考翼至棄基—Are we to take 考翼 in the singular, referring to the 考 and 父 in the preceding clauses, or in the plural, like the same phrase in p. 7? Gan-kwō and Ts'ao take it in the singular.

Ts'ao says—The spirit of king Woo in heaven would not be willing to say that he had a son and successor who would not let his inheritance fall to the ground. The paraphrase in the 'Daily Explanation' takes the phrase in the plural,—其家敬事之父老, 'the old and reverent elders of the family.' This is the view also of Woo Ch'ing, who has—其父之輔翼者, 'the assistants of his father.' I must understand the phrase in the singular.

肆予云云—越邛—於我身, 'in my person.' It is a strange and unsatisfactory expression; but all the critics explain it thus.

Q. 12. The king reproaches the princes and officers who would let the result take its course. A short paragraph, and all but unintelligible. The view which Gan-kwō gives may be seen in the

註疏. I cannot make it out, even with the help of Ying-ta. Ts'ao says that he does not understand what is meant by the phrase 民

養. He takes it, however, after Soo Tung-po as—人之臣僕 or 民長, as in the translation.

By 兄考, he says, 'is intended king Woo; by 友, Woo-k'ang and his confederates, the king's uncles; by 子, 'the people; and by 民養, the princes of the States, and the officers.' I would only differ from him in taking 子 not of the people, but of king Ching himself.

○王曰：嗚呼！肆哉，
爾庶邦君，越爾御
事，爽邦由哲，亦惟
十人迪知上帝命，
越天棐忱，爾時罔
敢易法，矧今天降
戾于周邦，惟大艱
人誕鄰胥伐于厥
室，爾亦不知天命
不易。○予永念曰：

十三節

十四節

- 13 V. "The king says, 'Oh! Take heart, ye princes of the various States, and ye managers of my affairs. The enlightening of the country was from the wise, even from the ten men who obeyed and knew the decree of God, and the sincere assistance given by Heaven. At that time none of you presumed to change the *royal* appointments. And now, when Heaven is sending down calamity on the State of Chow, and the authors of these great distresses appear as if the inmates of a house were mutually to attack one another, you are without any knowledge that the decree of Heaven is not to be changed!

Ch. V. Pp. 13-15. THE KING CONTRASTS THE PRESENT CONDUCT OF THE PRINCES AND OFFICERS WITH THE PAST, AND TRIES TO STIMULATE THEM TO CARRY OUT THE WISH OF HEAVEN. HE THEN STATES HIS OWN DETERMINATION, AND CONCLUDES BY VINDICATING HIS FOLLOWING THE ORACLES OF DIVINATION. 13. T'ze Ch'in, in interpreting this par., struck out a new path for himself, in which I have followed him. The par. mentions 'ten men who obeyed and knew the mind of God.' Were they the 'ten men of worth' mentioned in par. 5, who came forward to support king Ching against the revolt of Yin? All the old interpreters say so, and Woo Ch'ing and K'ang Shing, still hold to that view. This is to be said for it, that in the compass of a short Book, we can hardly expect two references to 'ten men,' of the same purport, and yet that they should be diff. men. I would willingly accept Gao-ko's view, if it did not make all attempts to explain the context not only troublesome but to my mind vain. T'ze decided that the ten men here were not the ten men of par. 5, but king Woo's 'virtuous men,' his 'ten ministers capable of govt.,' celebrated in 'The Great Speech.' He contends that the predicates of the 'ten men' here are too great for the ten men of the people who came forward to encourage king Ching, and tries to fortify his view by referring to the duke of Chow's language in Bk. XVI. p. 14, where he is speaking of king Wen's able ministers, as he speaks of the ten men here. The editors of Yang-ching's Shoo accept his view, but with some

misgivings, and think it necessary to preserve the other also. 肆—放心, 'put your hearts at ease.'

爽邦由哲—爽—明, as in 爽厥師, Pt. IV., Bk. II., p. 3. King Woo put an end to the 'dark ways' (昏德) of Shou, and displayed the mind of Heaven to the empire, 'by means of the wise men' (由哲), who were his counsellors and helpers,— 'the ten men who walked in (迪) and knew the commands of God.'

越天棐忱—棐—輔, as in p. 10. This clause is collateral with 上帝命, and under the regimen of 迪知. 爾時—爾於是時, 'you at that time.' Among those who followed Woo to the conquest of Shang, there were many of the princes and officers who were now shrinking from the expedition against Woo-kang. 矧

今云云.—it is difficult to render 矧 here by 'how much more,' in the usual way; yet its force extends to the end of the par., and may be indicated by a point of exclamation. The allusion in 天降戾于周邦 is to the death of king Woo. By 惟大艱人 we

天惟喪殷，若稽
夫子，曷敢不終
朕畝，天亦惟休
于前寧人。○予
曷其極卜，敢弗
于從，率寧人有
指疆土，矧今卜
并吉，肆朕誕以
爾東征，天命不
僭，卜陳惟若茲。

- 14 'I ever think and say, Heaven in destroying Yin is doing husbandman's work;—how dare I but complete the business of my fields! Heaven will thereby show its favour to the former Tranquillizer.
- 15 'How should I be all for the oracle of divination, and presume not to follow your advice? I am following the Tranquillizer, whose purpose embraced all the limits of the land. How much more must I proceed, when the divinations are all favourable! It is on these accounts that I make this expedition in force to the east. There is no mistake about the decree of Heaven. The indications of the divinations are all to the same effect.'

are to understand the king's uncles, confederate with Woo-king. For 誕鄰胥伐 Te'ao gives 大近相伐 and the 'Daily Explanation' has 相逼相攻 厥室 is taken by Woo Ching of 其邦君之室, and he supposes the meaning of the whole to be that the rebel-uncles were endeavouring to force others of their brothers in their neighbourhoods to join them in the revolt. The meaning I have given is preferable, though the 誕鄰 is difficult to manage. Gan-kwo says that when the king's uncles took arms against him, it was truly like the inmates of one house fighting with each other. If king Woo had been commissioned to destroy Show for his wickedness, much more must it be Heaven's will that this revolt should be suppressed; and yet the princes and officers were telling the king not to proceed with the expedition.

Wang T'iao traces the course of thought in the par. on Te'ao's view very clearly:—

迪知上帝命者心與天通，不不貫養
自然合理者也知天不不貫養
易者未能在武王討天命如天之
信盈不可不夢卜協吉天之
佑有周夢卜協吉天之

作此之之人易征害不心迪者
庚如天昔十敢可言命之與邦
武亦吉今有不不而天法則爽
日命并是昔亦翼法知奉義與
今天卜此在人考之不時之而
在討朕如然舊今我亦昔天間
此不翼又也爾法易則以順有矣
如可予亦一而之惟卜矣日惟功
又不獻忱理輔王不違易今者同
忱亂民棗事之武則不可爲知實

P. 14. 稽夫 is 'a snapper,' but the phrase is here used for a husbandman generally. A husbandman's work is thoroughly to clear his ground of weeds;—he must not let their roots remain. King Woo had spared Show's son, but it was plain that he must now be made an end of. So would king Ching complete the business of his fields. And when he had done so, the favour of Heaven to king Woo would be more fully displayed;—the empire would be made sure to his posterity. 15. 予曷其極卜。

敢弗子從—子何敢盡欲用
卜而不從爾勿征之言乎

The answer to this is given in the next clause. It was not merely a question between the oracles and the contrary opinions of many of the princes and officers. There was the example of king Woo and his ministers; and there was the duty of Ching to accomplish the work which his father had begun. These were potent considerations to go into the scale. They would determine in favour of the expedition, even if the oracles were not so decided. As the oracles were so entirely in favour of it, however, there could be—there ought at least to be—no hesitation in going forward. 率寧人有指疆土—循文王有指意以安疆土
This is Gan-kwō's explanation of the words, and I have not met with any other so satisfactory. His only error is in referring 寧人 to king Wan, instead of king Woo. 天命不

僭—comp. 天命弗僭, in the 'Announcement of T'ang,' p. 3.

[We have thus got to the end of 'The Great Announcement,' the style of which is at least as rugged and difficult as that of 'The P'wan-k'ang.' Notwithstanding the uncertainty which attaches to the interpretation of particular passages, however, I cannot but believe that the translation gives, with tolerable correctness, the general meaning of the Book. In the year a.c. 7, when Mang, the duke of Han (漢公莽) was acting as regent of the empire, and designed to usurp the throne, he published an announcement modelled upon that of the duke of Chow. He incorporated the text of the Shoo with his own statements in a very remarkable way. K'ang Shing and some others undertake to correct the text of the Shoo from Mang's Announcement, which ought not, however, to be appealed to for that purpose. It answers very well to show the general view which Mang and the scholars about him took of our Book. Mang's Announcement is preserved in the 前漢書, 第五十四卷, 翟方進傳.]

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK VIII. THE CHARGE TO THE VISCOUNT OF WEI.

微子之命
 王若曰、猷殷
 王元子、惟稽
 古崇德象賢、
 統承先王、修
 其禮物、作賓
 于王家、與國
 咸休、永世無
 窮。○嗚呼、乃

- 1 "The king speaks to the following effect:—"Ho! eldest son of the king of Yin, in accordance with *the statutes of antiquity*, that the honouring of the virtuous belongs to *their descendants* who resemble them in worth, do you continue the line of the kings your ancestors, cultivating their ceremonies and taking care of their various relics. Be a guest *also* in our royal house, enjoying the prosperity of our kingdom, for ever and ever without end.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—微子之命.
 'The charge to the viscount of Wei.' 微子.
 —see on the name of the 11th Book of the preceding Part. 命.—see on the name of the 8th Book of the same part.

The prefatory note says:—"King Ching having made an end of the appointment in favour of the House of Yin, and put Woo-kang to death, he appointed K'e, the viscount of Wei, to take the place of the descendants of Yin. Descriptive of this there was made 'The charge to the viscount of Wei.' This no doubt states correctly the time and occasion when the 'Charge' was made. We saw on 'The viscount of Wei,' how K'e was advised by his friends to withdraw from the court of Show and save himself from the destruction which was impending over the tyrant and his House; we saw also the account given by Sao-na T'wen of the guise in which

K'e presented himself with the sacrificial vessels of his family before King Woo. Some points in that account may be called in question, but there can be no doubt that K'e was honourably received and treated. When it is said that Woo restored him to his former office, I understand that he confirmed him in his appanage of Wei, so that he continued to be 'the viscount of Wei,' up to the date of this Charge, when he was appointed to be the duke of Sung (宋公), there to continue the sacrifices to T'ang, his ancestor and the founder of the dynasty of Shang.

In the first of the concluding notes to the 'Completion of the War,' I have quoted a passage from the 樂記 of the Le K'e, in which it is said that King Woo, after his victory over Show, 'when he had descended from his chariot, sent the representative of the House of Yin to Sung.' From this statement, some have contended that K'e's investiture with the

dukedom of Sung was from Woo and not from Ching, and was before the revolt which ended in the death of Woo-kang and not after it. But the editors of Yung-ching's Shoo have given good reasons why the authority of Sze-ma T'sien, and the preface to the Shoo, should be preferred in this matter to that of the 樂記.

If the merits of the men had been the sole ground for Woo's arrangements, he would have at once appointed either of the viscounts of Wei or Ke to continue the sacrifices to T'ang and the other sovereigns of his line, but there were, we can easily conceive, reasons of state, which determined him to make trial, in the first place, of Woo-kang, as being the son of Shou.

The Book is only found in the text of Gan-kwō.

Comments. The duke of Chow, as regent of the empire, and in the name of king Ching, tells the viscount that in accordance with the statutes of antiquity, and because of his own worth, he is selected to continue the line of the sovereigns, his ancestors. The virtues of T'ang and of the viscount are then celebrated, and he is charged to go and be prosperous, taking care to conduct his administration that the new dynasty of Chow might never have occasion to be weary of him. The Book is very short, consisting only of five paragraphs.

P. 1. The grounds on which the viscount of Wei was called to be the representative of the kings of his line, with some of his duties and privileges.

王若曰猷—see on the last Book, p. 1. 殷王元子—元子

—首子, or 長子, 'eldest son.' 'The

king of Yin' is T'o-yih (帝乙), the father both of K'ō and Shou. How K'ō, though older than Shou, did not succeed to the throne, has been explained on page 274. Some critics, supposing that 元子 is equivalent to 太子,

—'heir-apparent,' and cannot be otherwise applied, have contended on that ground against the authenticity of this Book, but to my mind there is no force in the objection. The 元子 is simply 'the eldest son';—he may be the heir-apparent, but not necessarily. That idea does not form a part of the significance of the phrase.

稽古崇德象賢—稽古, see on the 'Canon of Yao,' p. 1; 崇德謂先

聖王之有德者,則尊崇而奉祀之也. 崇德 means that the virtuous of the ancient sage sovereigns were honoured and sacrificed to; 象賢謂其

後子孫有象先聖王之賢者,則命之以主祀也. 象賢

means that he among the descendants of those ancient sage kings who resembled them in talents and virtue was appointed to preside over the sacrifices to them. These are the explanations of Ts'ao, similar to those of Gan-kwō. He adds:—言古制尊崇成湯之德以微子象賢而奉其祀

也. The text is very concise, and it takes many characters to bring forth its meaning; but the explanation is, no doubt, correct. To the ancient statutes, which prescribed the honouring and sacrificing to the founders of former dynasties, we have a reference in the Le Ke, Bk. 郊特牲 Pt. I, p. 12, where it is said, 天子存二代之後猶尊賢也. 尊賢不過二代. 'The emperor preserves representative descendants of two dynasties, still honouring the worth of their founders. This honouring of ancient worth does not go beyond two dynasties.' In what the honouring was displayed, is partly indicated in the remainder of the paragraph.

統承先王—the empire gathered under one rule is called 一統. Here the sovereigns of Shang are conceived of as all gathered up or collected in the person of K'ō, who should henceforth, in himself and his descendants in the dukedom of Sung, stand forth as their representative.

修其禮物—by 禮 we are to understand 典禮, 'the canons and ceremonies,' the institutions of Shang which had distinguished it from other dynasties; and by 物 we are to understand 文物, 'the literary monuments and other precious relics of the dynasty,'—carriages, flags, dresses, &c. The descendants of K'ō held the dukedom of Sung till nearly the end of the Chow dynasty, but by the time of Confucius many of the ceremonies and relics which it was their business to preserve were lost. The sage bewailed this, and said, 'I am able to describe the ceremonies of the Yin dynasty, but Sung cannot sufficiently attest my words. It cannot do so because of the insufficiency of its records and wise men' (Con. Ann., III. 12.). See the introductory note on the 'Praise-songs of Shang,' in the third Part of the She King.

作賓至無窮—the representatives of the two previous dynasties were distinguished above the other princes of the empire by being denominated 'guests' of the emperor of the dynasty then existing, as meeting him more on a footing of equality. See the She-king, Part III., the 'Praise-songs of Chow,' Bk. III., Song II., 振鷺于飛于彼西雝我客戾止亦有斯容. See also in the 左傳 僖二十

四年—宋先代之後也於周爲客天子有事膳焉有喪拜焉.

On this part Ts'ao gives some observations of Leu Tsoo-hsun, which deserve a place in any commentary:—先王之心公平廣大非若後世滅人

之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

公之國惟恐苗裔之存爲子孫害成王命微子方且撫

祖成湯克齊聖
廣淵皇天眷佑
誕受厥命撫民
以寬除其邪虐
功加于時德垂
後裔。○爾惟踐
修厥猷舊有令
聞恪慎克孝肅
恭神人予嘉乃
德曰篤不忘上

- 2 'Oh! your ancestor, T'ang the Successful, was reverent and sage, vast and deep in his virtue. The favour and help of Great Heaven lighted upon him, and he received the great appointment, to soothe the people by his gentleness, and to remove their wicked oppressions. His achievements affected all his age, and his virtue was transmitted to his posterity. And you are the one who pursue and cultivate his plans;—this praise belongs to you of old. Reverently and carefully you discharge your filial duties; gravely and respectfully you behave to spirits and to men. I admire your virtue, and pronounce it great, and not to be forgotten. God will always
- 3

助愛養欲其與國咸休永
世無窮公平廣大氣象於
此可見

The minds of the ancient kings were just, generous, and enlarged, not like those of the sovereigns of future times, who on the extinction of a kingdom would extirpate all the members of its royal House, fearing that the preservation of them might be injurious to their own posterity. King Ching not only appoints the viscount of Wei duke of Sung, but goes on to soothe and cherish him, wishing him for ever and ever to share in the prosperity of the empire.—Admirably was the just and enlarged spirit displayed in this.

An objection has been taken to the genuineness of the Bk. on the ground of the phrase 與國咸休 it being supposed that the empire would not be denominated 國 merely; but the objection is as futile as that taken from the use of 元子, which has been already pointed out. Compare the language of the last Bk., p. 4, and of 'The Metal-bound Coffin,' p. 18.

P. 2. The virtue of T'ang, the founder of the Shang dynasty, which made him worthy to be honored.

齊—莊或肅, 'reverent,' i.e., gravely and reverently attending to all his duties.

皇天眷佑誕受厥命
—comp. in the 'T'ao-k'ia,' Pt. I, p. 2. 天監
厥德用集大命撫民以寬

除其邪虐.—comp. in 'The Instructions of E,' p. 2. 代虐以寬兆民允懷

功加于時.—時—當時, 'that time,' his own age. 後裔.—'his posterity.'

Choo He observes that 裔 properly denotes the bottom of the skirt of a garment (衣裾之末)—the superfluity of it, and from this is applied to express a man's posterity.

P. 3. The worthiness of K'e, which made him fit to be selected to render the honour due to T'ang.

踐修厥猷—猷—道, 'ways' or 'plans; 踐—履其後, 'to tread in the steps

of T'ang's ways.' 修 expresses the earnestness with which he sought to carry the plans into practice. 令聞.—'a good reputation.' 恪

慎至神人.—Lin Che-k'ia joins these two clauses together, and supposes that they refer to K'e's taking care of the sacrificial vessels of his House during the overthrow of the dynasty, and his carrying them with him to the army of Chow. It seems more natural to me, however, to take them as in the translation.

篤不
忘—篤厚而不可忘 上帝
時歆—歆 is 'to enjoy the savour of offerings.' K'e, being the representative of the sovereigns of Shang, had the privilege of offering

帝時歆下民祇協庸
建爾于上公尹茲東
夏○欽哉往敷乃訓
慎乃服命率由典常
以蕃王室弘乃烈祖
律乃有民永綏厥位
毗予一人世世享德
萬邦作式俾我有周
無斁○嗚呼往哉惟
休無替朕命

enjoy your offerings; the people will be reverently harmonious under your sway. I raise you, therefore, to the rank of High Duke, to rule this eastern part of our great land.

- 4 'Be reverent. Go and diffuse abroad your instructions; be carefully observant of your robes and various other symbols of your appointment; follow and observe the proper statutes!—so as to prove a bulwark to the royal House. Enlarge the fame of your meritorious ancestor; be a law to your people!—so as for ever to preserve your dignity. So also shall you be a help to me the one man; future ages will enjoy the benefit of your virtue; all the States will take you for a pattern!—and thus you will make our dynasty of Chow never weary of you.
- 5 Oh! go, and be prosperous. Do not disregard my charge."

the great solstitial sacrifice to God. It is with reference to this that it is said God would always, or at the appointed season of sacrifice, accept his offerings.

肅—用—所以. 'therefore,' according to the frequent usage of 用 in the Shoo.

尹茲東夏—尹—治. 'to rule.' Sang, the pres. dep. of Kwei-tib in Ho-nan, lay east from Fung and Haou, the capitals of Wan and Woo, which were in the pres. dep. of Se-gan, Shen-se.

[In the 左傳 僖十二年, we have an address to the famous Kwan Chung, evidently modelled on the text of this par. and the next:—王曰: 舅氏余嘉乃勳, 應乃懿德, 謂督不忘, 往踐乃職, 無逆朕命.]

Pp. 4, 5. Charges, Continues, and Encouragements addressed to K'e. 4. 慎乃服命.—as a High duke, K'e had the robes and cap, the

carriage, flag, &c., appropriate to his rank, and which were the accompaniments of his investiture:—see the Le-ke, Bk. 王制 Pt. II, p. 7. He is charged to be carefully—cautiously—observant of them, not transgressing the proper statutes. He must not indulge the ambitious thoughts which had brought ruin on Woo-kang.

以蕃王室—蕃—屏衛. 'to screen and defend.' 藩 is more common in this sense.

律乃有民.—Gan-kwo says:—以法度齊汝所有之民. 'with laws regulate your people.' But this does not give all the emphasis of the text. The 'Daily Explanation' has better:—儀型爾宋之有民而作之師. 毗—輔. 'to assist.' 5. 往哉惟休—

Gan-kwo and all the critics after him make 惟休—務休美爾政. 'make your government prosperous and good.' I do not see the necessity for this.

[Wang Yen, Chin Tih-séu, and other scholars remark on the fact that nothing is said in this Book of the wickedness of Shou or of Woo-kang;—how it shows the consideration of the duke of

Chow for the feelings of the viscount of Wei, and the estimation in which his worth was held.]

[Here again there is space to introduce another Chapter from Wang Fih:]

讀而釋商子得不曉武失衰之者商其吾殺之熏改微則今以好所議不公啟問
每然首式箕以粟可聞封之之商子存子年於封者有封庚乎付自其謀爾周謀乘
唱政墓於所發不無乃周湯作微也微八乃後庚其子武祀而稍矣所人幼姦以
卷商干道皆財所然而祀夫七於知非位在而武聞微封足邦時右之故沖外可
廢反比訪此散耳寂既商者六過共家在何後彼未於湯猶它是左夕之子在謂
不之封復書若服子哉奉此君有所王王者之哉德過祀受於當之朝德嗣叔自
嘗王囚而之心悅微之以於之未之賓武子父晚惡有以受庚土為處酒廟管行
未武之既範之人於忘父大聖孫下作與微祿其之得可祀武故不遊于王而計
篇昔子聞洪子小獨豈祿有賢子天祀可知庚何紂烏則以封之必共醢武政凶
此嘆箕容得君過者王庚未也賢此之誰不武宋榮行子可不紂者與惟幸攝而

土羣蠱以能叛此其之則義非果身先復果武至之世是必以子詞乃懲有矣
境至敢無不敢於封使庚愚者子之修顧豈叛曰矣命後為也當微之律非而尊
之必孰言則不甚父可武知父其子艾不者必或久公於謬封不命封曰豈綏命
紂所庚流庚則有其則叛後其也其悔苟叛之知也上惑而始祀不始也位不之
復勢武非武言未殺也必而殺仁使痛祀於庚後宋封亦傳之湯而皆詞厥律臣
以叛非叛非流失曰人則者也者叛飲先輕武而於加此之子奉庚書之綏不史
掌之言之弟非之乃非也習非子必必保而若者子乃祀璧微必武此封永之乎
抵庚流庚羣庚周氏子人待說其則則以祀哉智微誅商衡若公命觀加曰庚戒
亂武之武之武曰蘇其果不此封也也行之也待封庚奉周也上禮今非民武告矣
倡矣弟之發叛故者子子叛曰也人人改王人不王武以歸說加是也也有創此嚴

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK IX. THE ANNOUNCEMENT TO THE PRINCE OF K'ANG.

惟^二三月哉生魄，
周公初基，作新
大邑于東國洛，
四方民大和會，
侯甸男邦采衛，
百工播民和，見
士于周，周公咸
勤，乃洪大誥治。

康誥

- [In the third month, when the moon began to wane, the duke of Chow commenced the foundations and proceeded to build the new great city at Lō of the eastern States. The people from every quarter assembled in great harmony. From the How, Teen, Nan, Ts'ae, and Wei domains, the various officers stimulated this harmony of the people, and introduced them to the business there was for Chow. The duke of Chow encouraged all to diligence, and made a great announcement about the performance of the works.]

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—康誥. 'The Announcement to the prince of K'ang.' Of the ten sons of king Wan, the ninth was called Fung (封), generally spoken of as K'ang Shuh (康叔). According to the analogy of the titles of the other brothers,—Kwan Shuh, Ts'ae Shuh, &c., we must conclude that K'ang was the name of Fung's appanage, somewhere within the imperial domain. Ma Yung and Wang Suh expressly affirm this. The only ancient scholar who expressed a different opinion was K'ang-shing, who thought that K'ang was the honorary posthumous title of Fung (康爲號諡). Be this as it may, the Book is the Charge

addressed to K'ang, or to the prince of Kung, on his appointment to the principality of Wei (命爲衛侯), the chief city of which was Chou-ko, which had been the capital of Shou. Wei extended westward from the pres. sub. dep. of K'uei (開州), dep. of Taming in Chih-le, to the borders of the pres. depp. of Wei-hway and Hsue-k'ing, in Ho-nan.

That the Book should be called an 'Announcement,' and not a 'Charge' (like the preceding), has occasioned various doubts about it,—and with reason. The title is no doubt taken from the occurrence of the word announcement in the last clause of what stands as the first paragraph (乃洪大誥治); but it will be

seen immediately that there are strong grounds for believing that that paragraph is out of its place, and should be removed to the beginning of Bk. XIII, 'The Announcement concerning Lo.'

Wang Pih observes that the Book might very well be named **康叔之命**, or **孟侯之命** (from the occurrence of **孟侯** in the 2d par). Its name, however, is **康誥**, and that has the sanction of Mencius, who makes express reference to it, in Bk. V., Pt. II., iv., 4. We have it even so designated thrice in 'The Great Learning':—Comm. 1, 1; II, 2; ix., 2. This carries up very nearly to Confucius himself. If we affirm, as I think we must do, the opinion of the scholars of Sung, that the 1st paragraph does not belong to this Book but to Bk. XIII., we must say what they have not done,—what they would not have ventured to say, even if they had seen to what their argument would lead,—that the great sage here made a mistake in compiling and arranging the tablets of the Shoo.

The Book is found in both the texts.

THE DATE OF THE ANNOUNCEMENT; AND ITS AUTHOR. The one of these points depends very much upon the other. The prelatory note says:—'King Ching, having smitten his uncles, the prince of Kwan and the prince of Tsao, invested his uncle of K'ang with the rule of the remnant of Yin. With reference to this, there were made "The Announcement to K'ang," "The Announcement about Wine," and "The Good Materials." According to this account, then, the appointment of the prince of K'ang, in connection with which this Charge was delivered to him, was made by king Ching, or rather by the duke of Chow, acting in the king's name. And it was not till the time of the Sung dynasty that this view was called in question. See-ma Tse-ma repeatedly affirms it. He says:—'Tan, the duke of Chow, having received the commands of king Ching, attacked and slew Woo-kang, and then divided the territory of Yin into two parts, appointing the viscount of Wei to one of them, over the principality of Sung, and the prince of K'ang to the other, over Wei' (**周公旦承成王命伐誅武庚分殷地爲二一封微子啟于宋一封康叔于微** See Maou K'o-ling **尚書廣聽錄**; and also the **史記衛康叔世家**, and **宋微子世家**). More important still is the testimony given in the **左傳** under the 4th year of duke Ting (**定公四年**—B.C. 505), where it is said that after king Woo had overthrown the dynasty of Shang, king Ching settled the empire by means of the regent, the duke of Chow, and that the duke appointed his brother the prince of K'ang over seven of the clans of the domain of Yin, with his seat of government in its capital (**封於殷墟**).

This view, I have said, was current and uncontradicted for many centuries. Under the

dynasty of Sung, Soo Tung-po was the first to throw out the idea that the first paragraph had erroneously found its way into this Book from among the tablets of the 'Announcement about Lo.' About the same time, Woo Yih (**吳棫**; he is also called **才老**) and other scholars came to the conclusion that the speaker in the Book was king Woo, and not the duke of Chow. Choo He adopted their views, and was followed by his disciple Ts'ao Ch'in, who sets forth the grounds of them in the following way:—

First, the prince of K'ang was king Ching's uncle (**叔父**), and could not be called by him 'younger brother,' as is the case in the par. 1. To the reply to this that the duke of Chow was really the speaker, and might so address Fang, he responds that the duke of Chow prefaced all the Charge with 'The king says,' and the words therefore should only be those appropriate to the lips of the king.

Second, if the Charge were given by the duke of Chow, how do we account for the fact that while there are many references in the Book to king Wan, there is not one to king Woo? And the same question may be asked with reference to the two Books which follow. The words of par.

4—**寡兄勗**, have indeed been explained of king Woo, the duke of Chow as speaking of him. But if we suppose that Woo was the speaker, he might very well so describe himself. On the supposition that the duke of Chow was the speaker, the language is contrary to all rule and propriety.

Third, it has been urged that at the time of the overthrow of Shang, Fang was still young, and unfit to be entrusted with an important govt.; and hence that his appointment took place subsequently, under king Ching. But when king Woo obtained the empire, he was about 90 years old. The ten sons of king Wan, so often referred to, were all by the same mother; Woo was the second of them—could there be one among them, when Woo was ninety, too young to be entrusted with an important administration? This point is too clear to need to be fortified by other considerations which Ts'ao has adduced.

It cannot be denied that there is much force in the two first of these points. We must assent also to Ts'ao's view of the age of the prince of K'ang. He was no doubt old enough to have received an appointment on the conquest of Shang. But other reasons might have prevented his being invested with a principality which would take him from the imperial court. One such reason, quite sufficient, is suggested in the passage of the **左傳** which has been referred to. It is there said, that, while the duke of Chow was prime minister under the new dynasty, the prince of K'ang was minister of Crime;—and this agrees with the prominent place which the subject of punishments occupies in our Book. The two other points, however, remain;—the general style of the Announcement, and particular expressions in it. For many years, when reading the Shoo without thinking of such critical matters as are now in hand, and without regard to commentators, I got the

越我一二邦
 肇造我區夏
 威顯庸民用
 寡庸祗祗
 ○不_四敢侮鰥
 克明德慎罰
 丕顯考文王
 子封○惟_三乃
 侯朕其弟小
 ○王若曰孟

- 2 I. "The king speaks to this effect:—'Head of the princes,
 3 my younger brother, little one, Fung.' It was your greatly dis-
 4 tinguished father, the king Wan, who was able to illustrate his
 virtue and be careful in the use of punishments. He did not dare
 to show any contempt to the widower and widows. He employed
 the employable, and revered the reverend; he was terrible to those
 who needed to be awed:—so getting distinction among the people.
 It was thus he laid the first beginnings of the sway of our small portion
 of the Empire, and the one or two neighbouring countries were

impression that the speaker in the text must be king Woo;—see the note in 'The Great Learning,' Comm., Ch. I. But I now give in my adhesion to the older view. The authority of the 左傳, as old as the time of Confucius, and of the Preface, is not to be set aside. The 王若曰 at the beginning, and the 王曰 throughout the paragraphs, assimilate the Book closely to the others in which the duke of Chow is undoubtedly the speaker. It will be seen in the notes that some explanation can be given of the most difficult expressions; and it is hardly competent for us to try the language of a man like the duke of Chow by our ideas of the way in which he ought to have spoken. Maou applies here, with considerable force, the saying of Mencius, that 'it is not every ordinary man who can understand the conduct of superior men' (君子所爲, 衆人不識).

子所爲, 衆人不識。

It still remains to make a remark or two on

THE FIRST PARAGRAPH. It speaks of the founding and completion of the city of Lō, which was one of the later labours of the duke of Chow, and is commonly referred to the 7th year of King Ching. As the scholars of Sung wished to make out that the Charge to the prince of K'ang was delivered by king Woo, it was necessary they should remove from it this paragraph;—as was done by Soo Tung-po in the manner which I have related above. But while dissenting from their view of the early origin of the Charge, and not hampered therefore in that respect by the par., I must still maintain the correctness of Shih's decision regarding it.

First, it is appropriate at the commencement of the Announcement concerning Lō; while here it is altogether out of place. What had the building of Lō to do with the investiture of

Fung with the principality of Wei? In the body of the Charge, moreover, there is not a word having reference to Lō, or the reasons which had led the duke of Chow to project the establishment of that new city. Second, the appointment of Fung was to Wei, and must have been contemporaneous with the appointment of the viscount of Wei to the government of Sung. It must have taken place in the 3d or 4th year of King Ching, some years before the building of Lō.

Gan-kwō felt these difficulties, and tried to meet them by supposing that some other noble or nobles had been appointed to rule 'the remnant of Yin,' during the years that elapsed between the suppression of Woo-king's rebellion and the building of Lō; and that the result having proved unsatisfactory, the prince of K'ang was then called to the task. This supposition is without any historical ground of support; and Lin Che-k'e prefers the view of a scholar Wang, (王博士), who supposed that Fung had been appointed to Wei immediately after the suppression of the rebellion, but that the Charge in this Book was not given to him till the time when Lō was built. But this solution is to the full as unsatisfactory as that of Gan-kwō. The knot cannot be loosed, it seems to me;—why should we hesitate to cut it, by removing the first par. from this Bk. to the 12th? We have seen, indeed, that but for the occurrence of the word 'announcement' in this par., the Book would hardly have been called by its present name; and yet that name was current in the time of Confucius. The sage himself perhaps misplaced the paragraph, or more probably left it, as he found it, in the wrong place. A Chinese critic would not allow this;—a foreign student may say it, when the weight of evidence seems to require him to do so.

CONTENTS. The key-note of the whole Book is in the clause 明德慎罰, 'the illustration of virtue and the careful use of punishments,' in the 3d paragraph. It has been divided into five chapters. The first three parr. (not including par. 1) celebrate the exhibition of those two things, which was given by king Wên, whereby he laid the foundations of the imperial sway of his House, and afforded an example for all his descendants. Parr. 5-7 inculcate on Fung how he should illustrate his virtue, as the basis of his good govt. of the people intrusted to him. Parr. 8-19, inculcate on him how he should be careful in the use of punishments, and set forth the happy effects that would ensue from his being so. Parr. 20-22 insist on the influence of virtue, as being superior in govt. to that of punishments, and how punishments should all be regulated by the ruler's virtue. The last chapter, parr. 23, 24, winds the subject up with a reference to the uncertainty of the appointments of Heaven, and their dependance for permanence on the discharge of the duties they require from those, on whom they have lighted.

P. 1. See on the 'Announcement concerning Lâ.'

Ch. I. Pp. 2-4. THE DUKE OF CHOW, ADDRESSING FUNG AS HIS YOUNGER BROTHER, SETS FORTH TO HIM THE ADMIRABLE QUALITIES OF THEIR FATHER WÂN.

2. 王若曰, --see on the 1st par. of the 7th Book. The 'king' is king Ching.

孟-長, 'the eldest,' 'the first.' It is here = 'chief,' and 孟侯-諸侯之長, 'Head of the princes.'

Acc. to the Le. Ke, Bk. 王制, Pt. II., p. 2, every 州 or province of the empire, embracing

210 國 or States, was under the authority of a chief or 伯. We may conclude therefore that Fung had been invested with that dignity.

Fuh-shang has said, indeed, that the son of the emperor when 18 years old, was styled 孟侯

(天子之子, 年十八稱孟侯);

and K'ang-shing supposes that it is king Ching who is thus addressed in the text. This is one of the extravagances which we are surprised to find men like K'ang Shing and Wang Ming-shing adopting and defending at the present day.

朕其弟-朕之弟. King Woo might thus have addressed Fung; king Ching could not thus address him. We must believe that, while the duke of Chow spoke as the representative of the young emperor, his nephew, he addressed Fung from the stand-point of his own relation to him.

小子, 封. --小子 is often used in the Shoo by emperors, whether old or young, in mock humility, as a deprecatory designation of themselves. In the Great Announcement, p. 7, we found it interpreted of the princes of States. Here it is spoken to Fung and not by him; and we must take it as the language of kindly, brotherly feeling. Fung was younger than either king Woo, or

the duke of Chow; but we cannot suppose that he was under 70 when he was appointed to Wei.

3. 明德慎罰,--these words form the text of the whole Charge. Ts'ao, in illustration of them, quotes from the 左傳

成二年: 明德慎罰, 文王所以造周也. 明德, 務崇之之謂也. 慎罰, 務去之之謂也.

With 克明德 we may compare the 克明俊德, Canon of Yao, p. 2. The whole tenor of this Book, however, makes it more

natural to understand the 德 here of king Wân's own virtue as seen in his administration of government.

4. 錄寡,--see 'The Great Announcement,' p. 7; et al.

不敢侮錄寡,--the 不虐無告, 'Counsels of Yu,' p. 3.

庸-用, 'to employ.'

祇-敬, 'to reverence.'

庸庸, 祇祇, 威威,--用其所當用, 敬其所當敬, 威其所當威, 顯

民 is a consequence flowing from the virtues

just described,--故德著於民; and all that follows, down to 時敘, sets forth

the further results of Wân's conduct thus acknowledged by the people.

肇造我區夏,--始造我區域於中夏, 區者小室之名, 區 is

the name of a small house. Here it is employed to denote the original seat of the House of

Chow, as but a small territory in the great empire.

惟時怙冒,--the old interpreters put a stop at 怙, and read 冒

along with the clause that follows. I have followed Ts'ao in joining 冒 with 怙. He

says:--罄西土之人, 怙之如

父, 冒之如天, 'the people of all the west relied on him as a father, and looked up

to him as to Heaven.' I think the rhythm of the clauses is thus preserved better, and there

is no more difficulty in interpreting 冒 than

there is if we join it to 聞. It is used for 'a

covering for the head,' and generally as 'to

cover.' Wân's influence was like the gracious

overshadowing of the firmament.

聞于上帝,--we must understand the virtue or

the fame of Wân as the subject of the verb

聞. 帝休,--God approved. The

simple 帝 takes the place of 上帝; and

以修我西土惟
時怙冒聞于上
帝帝休天乃大
命文王殪戎殷
誕受厥命越厥
邦厥民惟時敘
乃寡兄勛肆汝
小子封在茲東
土○王曰嗚呼
封汝念哉今民

brought under his improving influence, until throughout our western regions all placed in him their reliance. The fame of him ascended up to the High God, and God approved. Heaven gave a great charge to king Wán, to exterminate the great dynasty of Yin, and receive its great appointment, so that the various States belonging to it and their peoples were brought to an orderly condition. Then your unworthy elder brother exerted himself;—and so it is that you, Fung, the little one, are here in this eastern region."

5 II. "The king says, 'Oh! Fung, bear these things in mind. Now your management of the people will depend on your reverently

both those names are immediately exchanged for the vague designation of 'Heaven.'

殪—滅, 'to exterminate.' 戎—大, 'great' 厥邦厥民惟時敘—

萬邦萬民各得其理莫不時敘 It is an exaggeration to speak of Wán's influence as having thus extended over all the empire; but we cannot find much fault with it in the circumstances. 乃寡兄

勛—those who understand the speaker to be king Woo find no difficulty in his thus speaking of himself as 寡德之兄, 'your brother

of slender virtue.' See the use of 寡人 as a designation of themselves by the princes of States in Mencius, I, Pt. I, iii, 1; et al. The language has been a stumblingblock, however, to those who maintain that it is employed of king Woo and not by him. Gan-kwó made 寡兄 to = 寡有之兄, 'our brother whose match is rarely to be found.' But this is a very unlikely expansion of the phrase, and devised to get over the difficulty so strongly felt by a Chinese. I do not see any serious obstacle to our understanding it as in the translation. Why might not the duke of Chow, once at least in his life, speak thus of one brother to another? He had taken himself 'a great part' in all the exploits of Woo; to speak of him was much the same as to speak of himself. We like him all the better for eschewing the

dattering tongue. 在茲東土—得

以享爵位在此東方. Wei was not only east from Ching's capital, but it was the eastern part of the territory of which Woo-kang had been permitted to retain the sway.

Ch. II. Pp. 5—7. HOW THE PRINCE OF K'ANG SHOULD CULTIVATE HIS VIRTUE, AND MANIFEST IT IN THE ADMINISTRATION OF HIS GOVERNMENT. 5. Fung should follow the example of king Wán; gather up lessons from the former kings and wise men of Yin; and from the sage monarchs of remote antiquity.

今民將在祗遜乃文考紹聞衣德言,—it will be seen, from the translation,

that I understand a 治 before 民, by which 民 is governed. This is after the example of Gan-

kwó, Lin Cho-k'ó, Ts'ao, and others. Then, 通—述, 'to transmit'; 衣—服, 'to put on,'—

'to carry into practice,'—as in 'The Charge to Yuá,' Pt. II, p. 12, 說乃言惟服. The

'Daily Explanation' has:—今汝治民將敬述文考之緒務取所

聞之德言繼紹而服行之如衣之被身遵循勿替可也.

K'ang Shing takes 民 in the nominative, and supposes that 在 is a verb—視

將 在 祗 適 乃 文
考 紹 聞 衣 德 言
往 敷 求 于 殷 先
哲 王 用 保 乂 民
汝 丕 遠 惟 商 耆
成 人 宅 心 知 訓
別 求 聞 由 古 先
哲 王 用 康 保 民
弘 于 天 若 德 裕
乃 身 不 廢 在 王

following your father Wán;—do you carry out his virtuous words which you have heard, and clothe yourself with them. Moreover, where you go, seek out extensively among the traces of the former wise kings of Yin what you may use in protecting and regulating their people. Again, you must more remotely study the old accomplished men of Shang, that you may establish your heart, and know how to instruct the people. Further still, you must seek out besides what is to be learned of the wise kings of antiquity, and employ it in the tranquillizing and protecting of the people. Finally, enlarge your thoughts to the comprehension of all Heavenly principles, and virtue will be richly displayed in your person, so that you will not render nugatory the king's charge."

'to regard,' 'to look at,'—compare its use in the 'Caum of Shun,' p. 3. He also takes 衣 as 一般, the name of the dynasty. In this way he makes the whole—今民將視汝之敬述乃文考紹文考所聞殷之德言汝當以民爲念. This view is certainly no improvement on the other.

往敷至乂民—往—之國, 'when you go to your State; 敷求—廣求, 'seek out extensively.'

汝丕至知訓—耆成人, comp. in the 'Vicount of Wei,' p. 3. 弗其耆長舊有位之人. The course of thought in the paragraph, however, leads us to think of the old accomplished men of a former time, such as 王 Yin and Foo Yué, by whom the best monarchs of the Shang dynasty had been directed. 惟 is used as a verb, —思, 'to think of,' 'to study.'

宅心—處心, 'to settle your heart,'—to bring it to its proper resting place. 知訓—知所以訓民, —'know how to instruct the people.'

別求至保民.—Fung is here sent to the earliest sages and monarchs of the empire,—Yao, Shun, and Yu.

別求聞由—'you must elsewhere enquire, that you may learn from and follow.'

由—行 弘于天, 云云.—it is not easy to say what is the meaning of 弘于天. Lin Che-k'e

says:—To the other injunctions it still subjoined this 弘于天. Now 弘 means to widen and enlarge.

The critic Sze says, "Every man has his heavenly nature, which is in him as a fire that has just been kindled, or a spring which is just issuing forth. What is required is the widening and enlarging of it." This explanation is correct. Step by step the prince of Kiang is carried on to take his rule and pattern from Heaven, after which there is nothing to be added. I suppose this is the correct view. 'Heaven' is used as the comprehensive designation of all true right principles. The translation has taken its form from the words of Woo Ching,—又當擴充其德與天之爲一若德足乎已則王之命汝者永不廢矣.

又當擴充其德與天之爲一若德足乎已則王之命汝者永不廢矣.

命。○王曰，嗚呼，小
子封，恫瘝乃身，敬
哉！天畏棐忱，民情
大可見，小人難保。
往，盡乃心，無康好
逸豫，乃其乂民，我
聞曰：怨不在大，亦
不在小，惠不惠，懋
不懋。○已汝惟小
子，乃服惟弘王，應

- 6 "The king says, 'Oh! Fung, the little one, it is as if some disease were in your person; be respectfully careful. Heaven in its awfulness yet helps the sincere. The feelings of the people can for the most part be discerned, but it is difficult to calculate on the *attachment of the lower classes*. Where you go, employ all your heart. Do not seek repose, nor be fond of idleness and pleasure;—so may you regulate the people. I have heard the saying—"Dissatisfaction is caused not so much by great things or by small things, as by a ruler's observance of principle or the reverse, and by his energy of conduct or the reverse."
- 7 "Yes, it is yours, O little one,—it is your business to enlarge the royal influence, and harmoniously to protect this people of Yin.

what awe and cautious diligence Fung should go about the duties of his government.

恫—痛，'pain.' 瘝—病，'sickness.' 恫瘝乃身—疾病在汝身，'sickness and pain are in your person.' The meaning is that Fung's appointment was not one of ease, but one of labour, in which he should feel the sufferings of the people as if they were wounds in his own person.

天畏棐忱 is equivalent to 天命不常，雖甚可畏，然誠則輔之. 'The appointments of Heaven are not unchanging; and though they are to be thought of with awe, yet it helps the sincere.'

民情大可見，小人難保—至民情好惡，雖大畧可見，然小民之心，最為難保. as in the translation. The uncertainty of the will of Heaven, and the changing of the minds of the people,—these are two considerations, which should stimulate Fung to caution and diligence that he might hold fast what he had received. Some would connect 民情

大可見 with what precedes, so that the meaning is—'Heaven in its awfulness yet helps the sincere, and this is greatly seen in the feelings of the people.' But this construction of the text is not so good as the other. 無康—毋

自安，'do not give yourself to repose.' 我聞云云—I have followed in the translation here the interpretation which is given by Tsao and in the 'Daily Explanation.' I am not sure, however, but it would have been better to adopt the view of Gan-kwō which is to this effect:—'The dissatisfaction of the people may be occasioned by things which are great in themselves, and by things which are small. It shows itself unexpectedly, and it is this which makes the people so difficult to be calculated on. A ruler, therefore, ought always to be bringing his conduct, which may have been defective, into conformity with what is right, and to be acting energetically wherever he may have been remiss.'

7. The great duties of Fung, and how the happy results of his virtues would appear.

乃服惟弘王—服—事; 乃服—汝之事，'your business.'

弘王—'enlarge the king.' It would seem that the meaning must be as in the translation.

保殷民，亦惟助王。宅天命，作新民。○
 王曰：嗚呼！封敬明。乃罰人有小罪，非
 眚，乃惟終，自作不。典，式爾有厥罪小，
 乃不可不殺。乃有大罪，非終，乃惟眚，
 災適爾，既道極厥。辜，時乃不可殺。○

Thus also shall you assist the king, consolidating the appointment of Heaven, and renovating this people."

- 8 III. "The king says, 'Oh! Fung, deal reverently and understandingly in your infliction of punishments. When men commit small crimes, which are not mischances, but purposed, themselves doing what is contrary to the laws, intentionally, though their crimes be but small, you may not but put them to death. But in the case of great crimes, which are not purposed, but from mischance and misfortune, accidental, if the offenders confess unreservedly their guilt, you may not put them to death.'"

應 is explained by 和, 'harmony,' and here used adverbially. This definition does not occur in the dictionary, but it may be deduced from that of 物相應, 'things answering, responding, to one another.' The people of Yin were not in harmonious accord with the dynasty of Chow. It would be the business of Fung to bring them to base. The view of Gan-kwō is different.

He says:—汝惟小子，乃當服行德政，惟弘大王道上，以應天下，以安我所受殷之民衆。宅一定，'to settle,' 'to consolidate.'

作新民—see on 'The Great Learning,' Comm. II, 2. The 作 and 新 must be taken, however, both as verba, blending their meaning together. Perhaps a good version would be—'and make a renovated people.'

Ch. III, Pp. 8—19. How Fung should be careful in the use of punishments.

8. Modifying circumstances in judging of small and great offences.

人有小罪，至不可不殺—comp. the 'Canon of Shun,'

p. 10, 式爾—式—用; 式爾—用

意如此, 'purposely thus.' The meaning of the phrase is determined by its correlation

with 適爾—偶爾, 'accidentally,' below.

乃有大罪云云—comp. in the

'Canon of Shun,' 眚災肆赦，既道

極厥辜—既自稱道，盡輪

其情，不敢隱匿. When they have

themselves confessed, presenting fully all the

circumstances, not daring to conceal anything.

This must be the meaning, though Gan-kwō

supposes Fung himself, or the judge, to be the

subject of the clause, explaining it by—汝

盡聽訟之理，以極其罪, 'after

you have employed every resource in hearing

the case, so as thoroughly to investigate the

offence.'

[Soo Shih contended that the 小罪 and

大罪 here were not to be taken absolutely

in the sense of small and great offences, but

relatively to each other, as less and greater.

The less offence is a capital crime as well as

the greater one; but the final decision of the

judge might find a way of pardon for what

seemed at first unpardonable, and would let

the sentence of the law take its course, where

there might seem at first to be room for for-

giveness. I do not see in the text any ground

for this criticism. A small offence, purposed

and persevered in, becomes a capital crime;—

或刑人殺人之無
刑人殺人之無
父。○惟民其康
子。惟民其康
棄咎若保赤子
疾惟民其畢
勅懋和若有
明服惟民其
有敘時乃大
王曰。嗚呼。封。

- 9 "The king says, 'Oh! Fung, there must be the right regulation in this matter. When you show a great discrimination, subduing men's hearts, the people will admonish one another, and strive to be obedient.' Deal with evil, as if it were a sickness in your person, and the people will entirely put away their faults. Deal with them, as if you were guarding your infants, and the people will be tranquil and orderly. It is not you, Fung, who inflict a severe punishment or death upon a man; you may not of yourself so punish a man or

the transgressor is not fit to live. A great offence, not purposed, repented of, and confessed may be pardoned. This is what the paragraph inculcates.]

9. The influence of the careful use of punishments in transforming the people and making them happy.

有敘—刑罰有次序。[In the use of punishments there is an order.] K'ang Shing explains 敘 by 順, and connects with the preceding.—"If you conform to this method of judging in the case of small and great crimes," &c. But the interpolation of 王曰, 嗚呼, 封, forbids any such constructive connection between the paragraphs.

時(=是)乃大明服。明者明其罰。明 refers to the intelligent use of punishments; 服者服其民。服 refers to the subjecting the people thereby.

民其勅懋和—民其戒勅而勉於和順. 'the people will warn one another, and exert themselves to be harmonious and obedient.' 若有疾—this clause is evidently to be referred to the person of Fung, like the 若保赤子 below. Let him deal with the crimes of the people, as he would with sickness in his own person, not suffering it, but treating it with tender hand, and the people would be both awed and won to put away their faults. The meaning of 若保

赤子 appears clearly from the use which Mencius makes of it, III, Pt. I, v., 3. He says—If an infant crawling about, is about to

fall into a well, it is no crime in the infant. No man would be roused to anger by the sight of such an infant, and every one would do his utmost to rescue it. Let Fung thus look upon the people, to save them from crime as he would save an infant from falling into a well, and they would be tranquil and orderly.

[K'ang Shing joins 若有疾 with the previous clause, taking 疾 in the sense of 速, 'quickly.'—The people will exert themselves to be harmonious and obedient with the greatest rapidity." The structure of the paragraph is opposed to such a construction, as I have pointed out above. Shing, however, could plead the authority of Sean K'ing, who says in his 富國篇三德者誠乎上, 則下應之如景響。雖欲無明達得乎哉。書曰, 乃大明服。惟民其力懋和而有疾。此之謂也。 But neither this text nor interpretation of Sean is correct. The same may be said of the way in which he quotes and applies the difficult clause—弘于天 of p. 8, which appears in the same 富國篇 as 弘覆乎天]

10. Punishments were to be employed according to the laws. Fung ought not to allow any feeling of his own in the use of them. I have translated 刑 by 'to inflict a severe punishment,' because 刑人殺人 are opposed to 剗人刳人, the severer punishments to the lighter. What particular punishment or punishments

于旬時不蔽
念五六日至
又曰要囚服
殷罰有倫○
時臬司師茲
曰外事汝陳
劓人○王
劓人無或
非汝封又曰

put him to death.' Moreover, he says, 'It is not you, Fung, who cut off a man's nose or ears; you may not of yourself cut off a man's nose or ears.'

- 11 "The king says, 'In things beyond your immediate jurisdiction, have laws set forth which the officers may observe; and those should be the penal laws of Yin, which were right-ordered.'"
- 12 "He also says, 'In examining the evidence in criminal cases, reflect upon it for five or six days, yea for ten days, or three months. You may then boldly carry your decision into effect in such cases.'"

are intended by it, it is not easy to see. 'Cutting off the nose' was one of the regular five punishments, but not 'cutting off the ears,' though mention is made of this in Bk. XXVII, p. 2. The 又曰 should probably be before the 非汝封 which precedes it in the text,—as in the translation.

11. In things not falling immediately under his own jurisdiction, he should let the old laws of Yin take their course. The meaning of this par. is very uncertain. Ts'ao says that he does not understand what is meant by 外事, 'outside affairs.' The common view is that it means 有司之事, 'the affairs of the officers,' matters which it was not necessary the prince himself should take the management of. Then 臬, anciently 'a small post in front of a gate' (門樑), marking a limit, is used for laws.

師—法, 'to follow as the law.' The 'Daily Paraphrase' says:—凡外而有躬不示之然立
司訟獄之事必欲一若昭意
親綜理勢有所不能之任畫使治
預取法令而有司將求之爲
屬僚則汝務頒布以出
入者矣汝列所守必
規陳有所不
確有也

條款也。但取殷罰以治殷民可矣。云云。

Gau-kwō adopted a different exegesis, understanding by 外事—外土諸侯奉王事. But his interpretation is quite unsatisfactory;—see the 註疏. Ts'ao quotes the view of one of the critics Lou (呂氏) that by 外事 are to be understood the affairs of Wei (衛國事) in opposition to the affairs which would come under Fung's notice as the minister of Crime at the imperial court. But the whole tenor of the Book sufficiently proves that the charges in it were delivered with exclusive reference to the govt. of Wei. K'ung Shing gives still a diff. view in the foll. words:—外事聽獄之事也。聽獄在外朝故曰外事。

P. 12. How Fung should exercise a cautious deliberation before deciding on criminal cases. 要囚.—Ts'ao defines this as—獄辭之要者, 'the summary of the pleas in criminal cases.' Moellmüt renders it by 'important criminal cases;' and Gauhl by 'S'il s'agit de fautes considérables.' They both err by taking 要 in the 3d tone, —'important.' The dict. gives one meaning of 囚, with reference to the text, as 獄辭 'the evidence in a criminal case;' and, with the same reference it defines 要 as—察, 'to examine.' These meanings

要囚。○王曰：汝
陳時臬事，罰蔽
殷彝，用其義刑。
義殺，勿庸以次。
汝封，乃汝盡遜。
曰：時敘，惟曰未
有遜事。○已^{十四}汝
惟小子，未其有
若汝封之心。朕
心朕德，惟乃知。

- 13 "The king says, 'In setting forth the business of the laws the punishments will be determined by the regular laws of Yin. But you must see that those punishments, as well as the penalty of death, be righteous. And you must not let them be warped to agree with your own inclinations, O Fung. Then shall you be entirely accordant with right, and may say, "These are properly ordered;" yet you must say at the same time, "Perhaps they are
- 14 not yet entirely accordant with right." Yes, you are the little one;—who has a heart like you, O Fung? My heart and my virtue also are known to you.

of the terms are applicable to the phrase when it occurs again in Bk. XV., and I have followed them here. Fung is told that in deciding on evidence, he should do so cautiously, and not hastily. It is supposed to be in a case where guilt would involve death, and when the accused was once executed, there could be no remedying a wrong decision.

服念—服膺而
念之 旬—十日 時—三
月 蔽—斷, 'to decide.'

P. 13. Summary of the *fiction* preceding paragraph.

汝陳時 (= 是) 臬事—the difficulty here is with the 事 Ts'ao connects it with 臬 by means of an 與, 'In setting forth these laws and other matters' (敷陳是法與事). Yung-ta and K'ang Shing both give it a verbal force. The latter explains: 汝陳是法以從事于罰. Simpler than either of those methods is the construction of Woo Ch'ing, who makes 事 the object

of the verb 陳, and puts 臬 under its regimen:

汝陳列用法之事 罰蔽

殷彝—蔽, as in the last par.; 彝—常,

'what is regular;—in this case, 'the ordinary laws' of the former dynasty. Still Fung

was not blindly to adopt all the laws of Yin. He must be satisfied that they were righteous, —appropriate to the crime, and suited to the

altered times; 義—宜 勿庸以
次汝封—庸—用; 次—即或就
The whole—刑殺不可以就汝
封之意. This is plainly the meaning; but
the usage of 次 is peculiar. Ts'ao says that it
is the 次 of 次舍, 'a mansion,' 'a dwelling.'

乃汝云云—遜—順 meaning
'accordant with right.' 時敘—是有

次敘, having reference to the 有敘 of par.

9. The gist of the whole is, that Fung should never allow a feeling of elation, as if all his affairs were arranged as well as they possibly could be.

[K'ang Shing, following a quotation by Seun King, in his 致仕篇, of a portion of this

paragraph, reduces the whole to—王曰汝
陳時臬事 罰蔽殷彝 誼刑
誼殺 勿庸以即女 惟曰未
有順事. But only prejudice can, in my
opinion, make any of Seun's quotations carry
it over the authority of the *textus receptus*. Shing
interprets the last clause—But say, "There
are still instances of disobedience among the
people." This is far-fetched.

P. 14. The confidence and affection subsisting
between Fung and the duke of Chou. See on par.

2. Why these expressions of attachment should
be interjected here, it is not easy to understand.

○凡民自得罪、寇攘姦宄、殺越人于貨、斃不畏死、罔弗慙。○王曰、封、元惡大憝、矧惟不孝不友、子弗祗服厥父事、大傷厥考心、于父不能字厥子、乃疾厥子、于弟弗念天顯、乃弗克恭厥

- 15 'All people who of themselves commit crimes, robbing, stealing, practising villainy and treason, and who kill men or violently assault them to take their property, being violent and fearless of death:—those are abhorred by all.'

- 16 "The king says, 'Fung, such chief criminals are greatly abhorred, and how much more detestable are the unfilial and unbrotherly!—as the son who does not reverently discharge his duty to his father, but greatly wounds his father's heart; and the father who can no longer love his son, but hates him; and the younger brother who does not think of the manifest will of Heaven, and refuses to respect his elder brother, so that the elder brother does not think of the

Pp. 15—17. Cases in which severe punishment may be inflicted without hesitation.

15. Robbers, murderers, &c. 自得罪—'of themselves,' i.e., without being tempted or involved by others, 'offending.'

寇攘姦宄—comp. the Canon of Shun, p. 26; et al.

殺越人于貨.—from this the par. is quoted by Mencius, V. Pt. II, iv. 3, which see. Ts'ao illustrates the meaning of 越 here

by a reference to 顛越不恭, in the 'Pwan-k'ang,' Pt. II, 16; but it is not apt. The character must have in the text the meaning of, 'to throw down,'—'to assault violently.'

斃—強. 慙—惡. 'to hate,' 'to detest.' Justices executed on such parties would meet with general sympathy and approbation.

16. The case of the unfilial and unbrotherly. 元惡大憝.—this takes up the case of the parties in the last par. The next clause must be completed as in the translation.

True gives for it:—況不孝不友之人而尤爲可惡者. 不孝 is the crime of the son, and 不友 is that of the elder brother. But as the par. goes on to speak of the father's failure in duty as well as

the son's, and of the younger brother's as well as his senior's, we must understand by 不孝 all offences between father and son, and by 不友 all between elder brother and younger.

厥考心.—考 is evidently used of the father when alive.

于父至厥子.—this must be, I think, a fresh case, and is not to be connected with the preceding, as if the 于 were equivalent to 以致, 'so that,' which is the paraphrase of the 'Daily Explanation.'

We cannot connect 于弟, which immediately follows, with any clause which precedes.

于父 and 于弟.—'in the case of the father—the younger brother—who,' &c. 字—愛, 'to love'; 疾—惡, 'to hate.'

天顯 is 'the manifest will of Heaven'; requiring that the younger should serve the elder.

不念鞠子哀.—Gan-k'wō takes 鞠 in the sense of 稚, 'child,'

'junior,' and explains the clause—不念稚子之可哀, 'does not think of the pity he should cherish for his younger brother.'

Liu Che-k'e, foll. by Ts'ao, took 鞠—養,

兄亦不念鞠
子哀大不友于
弟惟弟茲不于
我政人得罪天
惟與我民彝大
泯亂曰乃其速
由文王作罰刑
茲無赦○不率
大戛矧惟外庶
子訓人惟厥正

toil of their parents in bringing them up, and is very unbrotherly to his junior. If we who are charged with government do not treat parties who proceed to such wickedness as offenders, the laws of our nature given by Heaven to our people will be thrown into great disorder or destroyed. You must deal speedily with such parties according to the penal laws of king Wān, punishing them severely and not pardoning.

17 'These, who are disobedient to natural principles, are to be thus severely subjected to the laws;—how much more the officers employed in your State as the instructors of the youth, the heads

and interpreted as in the translation.

惟申茲至泯亂—all this must be taken together as one sentence, and interpreted as in the translation. The paraphrase of the

'Daily Explanation' is:—夫廢棄人倫滅絕天理至如惡尤甚於此較使不勸所滅

倫滅絕天理至如惡尤甚於此較使不勸所滅
之寇攘姦宄其視爲固無從將天泯
我爲政之罪則人變不
加之風俗何由常性
懲與我民之素亂乎

Lin Che-h's takes quite a diff. view of the scope of the passage.

申 is read by him *zen*, 'to pity,' and not *shen*, —'to come to.' His interpretation is:—'The criminals I have mentioned above are detected by all, and to be put to death.' But these parties are to be pitied. Their offences must be owing to the failures in duty of us who are charged with govt., &c. Lin argues ingeniously, but not satisfactorily, in support of his view. We feel that he ought to be right. Robbers and murderers must be summarily dealt with for the preservation of society; but unkind fathers and undutiful children, and dishel brothers, cannot be taken cognizance of in the same way by the law. The duke of Chow, however, makes them—and here he is correct—in advance of the others in point of guilt; and goes on to say that they are to be punished accordingly, without

interposing anything about pitying and teaching them in the first place. 曰乃云云

—Woo Ch'ing brings out the force of the 曰 very well:—然則如之何哉

汝其曰速由云云. 'What then is to be done? You must say, "I will quickly punish them." What the law of king Wān regarding such cases was, we do not know. There is a difficulty in applying here what is said about 不孝之刑, and 不弟之刑, in the Chow Le, Bk. IX. 地官大司徒

P 17. The case of unworthy and factionist officers.

不率大戛—this corresponds to the first clause of the last par., and must be construed accordingly. 不率 is descriptive

of the 不孝, 不友, and 大戛 of the punishment which each received. The difficulty is with the interpretation of 戛. The 爾

雅 defines it by 禮, 'propriety,' which is taken to = 常法, 'a constant law.' Gan-kwo,

adopting this account of the term, makes 不

率大戛 all descriptive of the unfilial and unbrotherly, as those who do not comply with the invariable laws of human duty. This is contrary to the analogy of the last clause, which I have pointed out, and it must be rejected.

人越小臣諸
節乃別播敷
造民大譽弗
念弗庸瘝厥
君時乃引惡
惟朕慙已汝
乃其速由茲
義率殺○亦
惟君惟長不
能厥家人越

of the various official departments, and the petty officers, charged with their several commissions; when they propagate and spread abroad other lessons, seeking the praise of the people, not thinking of the sovereign nor using the rules for their duties, but distressing him! These lead on to wickedness and are an abomination to me. Shall they be let alone? Do you quickly, according to what is recognized as right, put them to death.

- 18 'And you are here prince and president;—if you cannot manage your own household, with your petty officers, the instructors, and

Ts'ao makes the word — 法, 'laws,' and with verbal force, — 實之法, 'to subject to the laws.' I have followed this view. Woo Ch'ing gets substantially to the same conclusion by taking it as — 擊, 'to smite,' after the analogy of the 'Yih and Tsoih,' p. 9.

外諸子訓人—外諸子以訓人爲職. Medhurst translates the clause by—'the outside princes, whose business it is to instruct the people.' Gaubil has—'Ceux qui, par état, doivent enseigner les autres;—more correctly than Medhurst, but he takes no account of the 外. In the Chow Le, Bk. XXXI, p. 18, we

have an account of the 諸子, as the various officers charged with the training of the youth of the kingdom, sons of nobles, high officers, and others of the best promise. It is said—

諸子掌國子之倅掌其戒令與其教治辨其等正其位, which Biot translates—'L'attaché aux

fil de dignitaires est chargé de conduire les suppléants des fil de l'Etat. Il s'occupe de leur règlement spécial; il dirige leurs études, il distingue leurs rangs, et détermine leurs positions dans les cérémonies.'

This was the function of those officers in the imperial domain, at the court;—there were similar officers in the various states, who as distinguished from these were the 外諸子.

庶官之長 越小臣諸節—in the 31st Bk. of the Chow Le, referred to above, we have an account of the office of the 小臣, or 'Minor ministers' (petits servi-

teurs;—Biot), par. 53—54. They were charged with the minor orders of the emperor and, in the States, of the princes, conveying them to the parties to whom they were addressed, and as symbols of their authority they carried the 節, talles, or credentials appropriate to the mission with which they were charged.

乃別至厥君—乃別爲條教而
頒布之取悅時俗要求衆不
譽將君上委任之意全咸
體念井國家官守之法干譽
廢格不用徒知違道千譽
以病其君時(是)乃引

惡—these are leaders of wickedness, i.e., they set an example of wickedness and led others on to it as well.

由茲義—according to this righteousness, i.e., what is recognized and has been enacted as right to be done in such cases.

乃別播敷, considering it as addressed to Fung himself. Such a construction is most unnatural, and breaks entirely the train of thought.

Pp. 18, 19. Advice to Fung to be himself an example of what he required in others, and by gentleness make the people rich and happy, and fulfil the hopes which were entertained of him. Such is the view of those par. taken by Ts'ao and Woo Ch'ing. K'ang Shing supposes that par. 18 speaks of the princes of the various States to which Fung acted in the relation of president (孟侯). The view is ingenious, but it necessitates more wringing and suppl-

厥小臣外正惟威
惟虐大放王命乃
非德用乂。○汝亦
罔不克敬典乃由
裕民惟文王之敬
忌乃裕民曰我惟
有及則予一人以
懌。○王曰封爽惟
民迪吉康我時其
惟殷先哲王德用

- heads of departments, but use only terror and violence, you greatly set aside the royal charge, and try to regulate your State contrary to virtue. Do you also in every thing reverence the constant statutes, and so proceed to the happy rule of the people. There are the reverence of king Wán and his caution;—in proceeding by them to the happy rule of the people, say, "If I can only attain to them." So will you make me the one man to rejoice."
- 20 IV. "The king says, 'Fung, when I think clearly of the people, I see they are to be led to happiness and tranquillity. I think of the virtue of the former wise kings of Yin, whereby they tranquil-

menting of the text than the other. 18. The two preceding parr. had stimulated Fung to be bold in punishing the unfilial and unbrotherly, and refractory officers; but there was a more excellent way,—the way of example. If he could bring all the family virtues into action in his own household, they would flourish also throughout the State. He might so deal with his petty officers, the instructors, and heads of departments also, that they would be glad to perform their duties, instead of having to be punished for the neglect of them. If he could not thus accomplish much by example and influence, his administration would be bad.

小臣外正—the 外諸子, 正人, and 小臣諸節 of the last par. Choo Hs took the 惟威惟虐 to be descriptive of the 小臣外正, and supposed the design of the whole to be to warn against being lenient in his government;—see the 集說. I am surprised to find him advocating such an exegesis.

19. 乃由裕民—由是求裕民之道, 'by this method seek the proper way of enriching the people,' i.e., of making them good and happy. 'The reverence of king Wán and his caution' indicate at once his attention to the duties of govt., and the caution of his measures,—particularly those of a penal character. 我惟有及—我

惟求能及文王之裕民. 斯已矣

Ch. IV. Pp. 20—22. HOW THE VIRTUE OF THE GOVERNOR IS THE MOST IMPORTANT THING IN THE GOVERNMENT OF THE PEOPLE, AND RULERS SHOULD SEEK BY VIRTUE TO SUPERSEDE THE NECESSITY OF USING PUNISHMENTS. 20. By the example of the good kings of Yin, and his own wish to copy them, the king seeks to make Fung content to govern by virtue.

爽惟民迪吉康—Gan-kwó put a comma at 迪, which character he took in the sense of 道, explaining the whole by 明惟治民之道. 而善安之. Ying-tá expands this into—O Fung, a ruler ought clearly to think of the proper way to govern the people, and thereby secure for them a happy tranquillity. It is much better to put the comma at 民, and take 迪 in the sense of 導, 'to lead,' 'to conduct,' i.e., by means of virtuous influence. We thus bring out the meaning in the translation, 爽 being—明, and 惟—思. Woo Ch'ing says, clearly and concisely:—明知斯民導迪之, 則吉康. 我時至作求—時

康父民作求矧今
民罔迪不適不迪
則罔政在厥邦○
王曰封予惟不可
不監告汝德之說
于罰之行今惟民
不靜未戾厥心迪
屢未同爽惟天其
罰殛我我其不怨
惟厥罪無在大亦

lized and regulated the people, and rouse myself to realize it. Moreover, the people now are sure to follow a leader. If one do not lead them, he cannot be said to exercise a government in their State."

- 21 "The king says, 'Fung, I cannot dispense with the inspection of the ancients, and I make this declaration to you about virtue in the use of punishments. Now the people are not quiet; they have not stilled their minds; notwithstanding my frequent leading of them, they have not come to accord with my government. I reflect on Heaven's severe punishments, but I do not murmur. The crimes of the people whether they are great or many, are all

—是, here equivalent to 是以, 'therefore.'

惟—思. The two characters 作求 have been much disputed. The older scholars and Ts'ao took 求—等, 'a mate,' 'a match,' so that 作求—爲等於商先王, 'to be a mate of, equal to, the former kings of Shang.' It seems to me more natural and simple to take the terms as in the translation, —as Lin Che-k'w and Woo Ch'ing do. 今

民罔迪不適,—adhering to the meaning of 迪 as —導 these words are susceptible of two meanings. They may be translated —'The people are sure to follow as they are led' (民無導之而不從者), which is the view of Ts'ao; or—'If the people have none to lead them, they will not go on to the desired condition' (民無以迪之則不能自適於吉康之地), which is the view of Woo Ch'ing. The former interpretation is that which the whole of the paragraph requires. The sentiment is too broadly stated, and the term did not justify it in the case of the people of Yin; but it is not the correctness of the sentiments that a translator has to do with.

不迪則罔政在厥邦—this ex-

presses very strongly the feeling of the duke of Chow, that a govt. maintained by force did not deserve to be called a government.

P. 21. By the failure of his own repeated efforts to secure the good govt. of the people of Yin, the king still further stimulates Fung to strive to realize the way of virtue. The mention of the repeated efforts to bring the people of Yin to a state of good order is not appropriate in the mouth of King Woo, supposed to give this charge to the prince of K'ang immediately after the conquest of the dynasty.

予惟不可不監—we may take the 惟 either as —思 'to think,' or as a particle, —'indeed.'

告汝德之說于罰之行—告汝以德行罰之說—I declare to you this saying, that virtue is to preside over the use of punishments.

未戾厥心—戾—止. 'to stop.' The people's minds did not acquiesce in the existing state of things, and hence their turbulent movements.

迪屢未同—雖屢經開導究未能同歸于治. 惟厥罪至在多—I cannot find any better way of explain-

無在多矧曰其尙
顯聞于天。○王曰
嗚呼封敬哉無作
怨勿用非謀非彝
蔽時忱丕則敏德
用康乃心顧乃德
遠乃猷裕乃以民
寧不汝瑕殄。○王
曰嗚呼肆汝小子
封惟命不于常汝

chargeable on me, and how much more shall this be said, when the report of them goes up so manifestly to Heaven!"

- 22 "The king says, 'Oh! Fung, be reverent. Do not what will create murmurings; do not use bad counsels, and uncommon ways. Decidedly and with sincerity, give yourself to imitate the active virtue of the ancients. Hereby give repose to your mind, examine your virtue, send far forward your plans, and thus by your generous forbearance you will conduct the people to repose in what is good:—so shall I not have to blame you or cast you off.'"

- 23 V. "The king says, 'Oh! you, Fung, the little one, Heaven's appointments are not constant. Do you think of this, and do not

ing this than that given in the translation. The 'Daily Explanation' has:—

萬方有罪。予一人惟厥小民無知。而陷于罪不在於大亦不上。在於多即至微至纖皆其。在人失教之所致也。其尙顯聞於天—尙=上。 The cry of the crimes of the people of Yin accumulated, and was clearly heard in heaven;—it was not merely with a few and slight offences that the king had to charge himself.

22. Various advices to Fung, winding up the chapter. 無作怨—汝慎毋作可怨之事。 'Do not do things that will create murmurings.' This is a dissuasive from the use of punishments. They will be followed by the resentment of the people; govt. carried on by them is not on a good plan; punishments may be occasionally resorted to, but they are not the regular method of procedure.

蔽時忱—蔽—斷;時—是;忱—誠。 The clause has an adverbial force, and is carried on to the clauses that follow;—'with the determination of sincerity.'

丕則—則 is a verb, —'to imitate.'

顧—'to have the eyes constantly on,' 'to regard and examine.' 裕乃以民

寧—this will be the result of obedience to the advice just set forth, —由是寬裕不迫使民日斯月摩相安於善而不自知此德化之至耳。

Ch. V. Pp. 23, 24. A CONSIDERATION OF THE UNCERTAINTY OF THE APPOINTMENTS OF HEAVEN SHOULD DEEPEN THE IMPRESSION OF THE WHOLE CHARGE.

23. 肆—T'ie confesses that he does not know the meaning of 肆 here. There does not seem much difficulty in it. We may take it as—'therefore,' or 'now,' 命不于常—命 is of course 天命. For the sentiment, compare 'The Instructions of K.' p. 3; et al. See also the expansion of it in 'The Great Learning,' Comm. x. 11. 命

不于常—the appointments of Heaven are not in —i.e., are not characterized by—constancy. 無我殄享—毋或不念使自我而殄絕所享之國

念哉無我
殄享明乃
服命高乃
聽用康父
民○王若
曰往哉封
勿替敬典
聽朕告汝
乃以殷民
世享

make me deprive you of your dignity. Reflect clearly on the charges you have received. Think highly of what you have heard, and tranquillize and regulate the people accordingly."

- 24 "The king thus says, 'Go, Fung. Do not disregard the statutes you should reverence; hearken to what I have told you:—so with the people of Yin you will enjoy *your dignity*, and hand it down to your posterity.'"

也。K'ang Shing makes the meaning to be — Do not make me deprive you of the privilege of sacrificing to the spirits within your jurisdiction. The issue is the same; but this meaning of 享 is far-fetched.

明乃服命。—comp. 慎乃服命 in the last Bk., p. 4. 服命 may be taken here as there, 服 being 七章之服, and 命 the 七命 of a prince of Fung's rank. So, K'ang Shing; but it seems to me better to take the clause as in the translation, — 命汝所

受于我之誥命 高乃聽

—we must take 高 in the sense of 'to think highly of.' Ts'ao says:—高其聽不可卑忽我言. 24. Ts'ao observes

that the 世享 here responds to the 殄享 of the last par. It does so, and shows that 享 is to be taken of the enjoyment of the princely dignity. Gan-kwō gives for the clause: —即汝乃以殷民世世享國福傳後世.

THE BOOKS OF SHANG.

BOOK X. THE ANNOUNCEMENT ABOUT DRUNKENNESS.

酒誥

王若曰：明大命于妹邦。○考文王，肇國在西土，厥誥毖庶邦。庶士，越少正御事，朝夕祀茲酒，惟天降命，肇我民，惟元祀。

1 "The king speaks to this effect:—"Do you clearly make known my great commands in the country of Mei.

2 "When your reverent father, the king Wän, laid the foundations of our kingdom in the western region, he delivered announcements and cautions to the princes of the various States, all the high officers, with their assistants, and the managers of affairs, saying, morning and evening, "For sacrifices spirits should be employed." When Heaven was sending down its favouring decree, and laying the foundations of the eminence of our people, spirits were used only in

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—酒誥 'The Announcement about Drunkenness.' I have spoken of the proper meaning of the term 酒 on Part IV, Bk. VIII, Pt. III, 2. In the 'Songs of the five Sons,' and the 'Punitive Expedition of Yin,' I was unwilling to depart from the common usage of translators, and rendered 酒 by 'wine;' but there can be no doubt that the term in the ancient Books signifies 'spirits distilled from rice,' = our 'ardent spirits.' The French term 'vin' seems to be capable of a wider application than our 'wine.' Gaubil says:—"Le titre de ce chapitre signifie avis ou ordres sur l'usage du vin. Il s'agit ici du vin de riz, qui fut découvert, suivant le plupart des auteurs,

du tems de Yu, fondateur de la premiere dynastie. Le raisin n'est à la Chine que depuis les premiers Han." The title therefore might be correctly translated 'The Announcement about Spirits,' but the cursory reader would most readily suppose that the discourse was about spiritual beings. I have preferred in consequence to render it by—"The Announcement about Drunkenness."

The Book is found in both the texts. There are the same questions about the date of it, and the speaker in it, which have been discussed with reference to 'The Announcement to the prince of Kang;' and it is not necessary to enter on them again here. I suppose the speaker to be the duke of Chow, addressing his brother Fung in the name of the young king Ching.

CONTENTS. The Announcement, as has just been said, is, like the last, addressed to Fung as invested with the gov. of Wei. We have seen how the drunken debauchery of K'ê was the chief cause of the downfall of the Hea dynasty; and how that of Shang was brought to an end mainly by the same vice in Shou. The people of Yin had followed the example of their sovereign, and the vice of drunkenness, with its attendant immoralities, extensively characterized the highest and the lowest classes of society. One of Fung's most difficult tasks in his administration would be to correct this evil habit, and he is in this Book summoned to the undertaking. He is instructed on the proper use, and the allowable uses of spirits; the disastrous consequences of drunkenness are strikingly set forth; he is called to roll back the flood of its desolation from his officers and people.

The scholar Woo Ts'ao-lou, earlier than Chou He, thought that there was in the Book sufficient evidence of its being composed of two announcements originally distinct:—the first, embracing parr. 1—7, being addressed by king Woo—[Ts'ao-lou is one of the most earnest advocates of the early date of the Book]—directly to the people of Yin; and the second, parr. 8—17, being addressed to Fung. Ts'ao has examined this hypothesis, in his introductory observations on the Book, and adduced sufficient reasons for rejecting it. The whole, as we now have it, was, no doubt, addressed to Fung; but in the 6th and 7th parr. the king seems to forget that he is speaking to him, and appeals to the people and officers of Yin, for whose sakes the announcement was made. There is nothing unnatural or much out of the way in this.

The criticism of Woo suggests, however, a natural division of the Book into two chapters:—the first preliminary, parr. 1—7, chiefly on the original use and the permissible uses of ardent spirits; the other, addressed directly to Fung, and showing how drunkenness had proved the ruin of the Shang dynasty, and how they of Chou, and particularly Fung in Wei, should turn the lesson to account.

In the 'Complete digest of Commentaries on the Shoo,' the following summary of the contents is given:—The whole is to be looked at from the standpoint of the first par., after which the contents might be divided into 4 chapters. Parr. 2—8 would form the first. The speaker relates the instructions of king Wan on the subject of spirits, to introduce his own commands to the country of Mei, and concludes by relating how their dynasty of Chou rose by obedience to Wan's lessons. Parr. 9—12 would form the second. They describe the rise and fall of the Shang dynasty, and how they should look into it as a glass, where they would see their present duty.

The 13th par. strictly charges Fung with the duty of imposing the lessons he received upon his people and officers, and on other princes, and of rendering a personal obedience to them himself. The other parr., 14—17, would form the fourth chapter, and state how obedience to the commands on the use of spirits should be enforced.

Ch. I. Pp. 1—7. FUNG IS ORDERED TO MAKE THE KING'S COMMANDS KNOWN THROUGH MEI. THE PRINCIPLES INDUCTED BY KING WAN IS RELATED TO THE USE OF ARDENT

SPIRITS ARE RELATED; AND THE SPEAKER DECLARES HIS OWN COMMANDS IN HARMONY WITH THEM.

1. In the north of the great dia. of K'ê (淇縣), in the dep. of Wei-hway, Honan, there is a place called 妹鄉—a relic of the ancient name of the whole territory. It was in Mei that Shou had his capital;—the imperial domain north from Chou-kô, was all called Mei acc. to Gau-kwâ. In the Shoo King, Pt. I., Bk. IV., Ode iv., 'the villages of Mei,' 'the north of it,' and 'the east of it,' are all mentioned.

The character in use for the name there is 妹, but the country intended is the same which is here called 妹. Fung's principality of Wei must have embraced the greater part of it.

明大命—明 is in the imperative mood. The whole—封今汝往治妹地當以我誥誡之辭敷布于妹邦之臣民.

Pp. 2—6. The lessons of king Wan on the use of ardent spirits. 2, 3. Spirits should be used only in sacrifices. So it is in times of prosperity; when calamities come upon a State, the cause will be found to be drunkenness.

乃穆考—the old interpreters all took 穆 as simply denoting the place of king Wan's shrine or spirit-tablet in the temple of ancestors;—see on this 'Doctrine of the Mean,' xix., 4. Many still follow this view, as K'ang Shing, for instance, who says:—周家世次文王第當穆故稱穆考. I cannot think that this is the meaning, and much prefer to take

穆=敬, as in the translation,—an epithet descriptive of king Wan, who is celebrated in the Shoo King as the 穆穆文王. It is observed, by those who understand the character in this way, that king Wan in the last Bk. p. 13, is called 顯考, because the subject there is the manner in which he displayed his virtues (明德), while here he is called 穆考, being spoken of as instructing and cautioning his people. 肇國在西土.—'founded our kingdom in the western regions.' But Wan was not the founder of the House of Chou, whose fortunes had been gradually growing in the west. We must make allowance for the duke of Chou's language in speaking of his father. See, moreover, the statements of king Woo's about Wan's receiving the command of Heaven, 'to soothe the regions of the empire,' Bk. III., p. 5; et al.

厥誥恇至朝夕日,—in his announcements &c., he said. 恇—慎—戒謹, 'to caution,' 'to warn;'—diff. from the meaning of the character in Bk. VII., p. 8. 庶邦 is taken by Lin Che-k'e as—諸侯 'the princes of the various States,' i.e., of the States within his jurisdiction

夕日,—in his announcements &c., he said. 恇—慎—戒謹, 'to caution,' 'to warn;'—diff. from the meaning of the character in Bk. VII., p. 8. 庶邦 is taken by Lin Che-k'e as—諸侯 'the princes of the various States,' i.e., of the States within his jurisdiction

惟罔用小惟罔喪用威○
 辜非喪大行非德大我天
 ○酒亦邦越酒亦亂民降

3 the great sacrifices. When Heaven has sent down its terrors, and our people have thereby been greatly disorganized and lost their virtue, this might also be invariably traced to their indulgence in spirits; yea, the ruin of States, small and great, by these terrors, may be also traced invariably to their crime in the use of spirits.

as chief of the west' (西伯). This seems the simplest view of the phrase.

庶士, 'all the officers.' Those, acc. to Ting-ti, were the 朝臣, 'ministers of the court.' It is better to understand them as the 正 or 官之長, 'Heads of the various magisterial departments';—so, the 'Daily Explanation.' Then the 少正 are the assistants of those Heads of departments; and the 御事, all who held any office, however low it might be.

祀茲酒—惟祭祀則用此酒. 'only in sacrifices should these ardent spirits be used.'

惟天降命肇我民惟元祀.—Moilhurst translates this:—'And Heaven sent down the decree in the first instance to our people (to make it) that they might use it principally in sacrificing.' Gaubil has:—'Cet ordre, ajoutoit-il, est venu du ciel; quand pour la première fois il donna le vin aux peuples, il voulut que ce ne fût que pour les cérémonies religieuses.' These versions are erroneous or defective in several points, but they agree in the view they give of the general scope of the passage. It is substantially that propounded by Gan-kwé, whose commentary is—

惟天下教命始令我民知作酒者惟爲祭祀. This interpretation has been generally received by the critics. In the 'Daily Explanation' we have:—天令我民始作此酒者止爲郊社宗廟之大祭饗而設此外無可用酒之時矣. This construction uses too much freedom with the text, which says nothing about Heaven's having given the command to make wine. 肇我民, standing as the characters do here, must be under the government of 降命, and = 'to found our people.'

Woo Ch'ing and Keang Shing do not follow the usual view, but their own explanations are not more admissible. Ch'ing

says:—如今我民作酒惟用之於大祭祀是天以此教人也, letting the 肇 slip quietly out of sight.

Shing says:—惟天之下教命始開導我民者惟始于祀也.

Here 肇我民 is better dealt with, but I know not whence he derives the 始 in his last clause (始于祀), and I cannot admit the 命 of 降命 to stand here for 教命.

The view of the meaning which appears in the translation does not seem to have occurred to any commentator. I am led to it chiefly by considering the relation in which 天降命

here, and 天降威 at the beginning of the next par. evidently stand to each other. I have had occasion before to translate 命 by 'favouring decree' (See IV, Bk. VII. Pt. 1, 4; et al.) This indeed is its common signification. Heaven only confers its appointments where its approbation has gone before.

Compare also the contrast between 威 and 命 in the 'Conquest of Lo,' p. 4, et al., exactly corresponding to what appears here. It does not matter whether we understand the speaker to be king Wán, or, as I rather think, king Ch'ing, commenting on Wán's 祀茲酒. He goes back to the days of early simplicity and virtue, when that character was being formed in the chiefs and people of Chow, in virtue of which they went on to attain the supremacy of the empire; and then they made no use of spirits excepting at the great sacrifices. In 元祀 the 元—大, and we may take the 'great sacrifices' as those to Heaven, the earth, and ancestors. Sacrifices were not so numerous then as they afterwards became.

In the third par. two causes are assigned for the ruin of virtue and prosperity,—the terrors of Heaven and indulgence in spirits. The 用 expressly asserts the agency of Heaven, and the 亦, as clearly, that of intemperance. We must understand that the terrors of Heaven

are its justice manifested in the punishment of men's guilt. Men first wrest spirits from their proper use to feed their own lusts, and there is a natural issue of evil consequences. Then Heaven, seeing men obstinate in their wicked course, righteously accelerates their overthrow and ruin. T'ao says:—酒之禍人也。

而以爲天降威者。禍亂之成是亦天爾。T'ao, it will be seen,

takes 我民 as simply = 人. So, Gan-kwó and others. This avoids the necessity of supposing any special references to events in the history of the House of Chow; but the 我民 is special. We cannot take it here otherwise than in the *proc. par.* The translation I have given involves such references, tho' we cannot say what events they were, which the speaker had in his mind. Indeed, we might translate in the future tense, instead of the present complete as I have done; and in the last portion of the *par.*,

一越小大云云—the speaker passes from his own people to speak of the subject with relation to all States great and small. 酒惟行。酒惟辜。—Intemperance is their conduct, intemperance is their guilt.

[Choo He gives a view of the meaning of 天降命 and 天降威, in which I am not

able to concur, but it is worthy to be preserved, and made current beyond the sphere of China. He says:—Nan-keen (張南軒, a critic of the Sung dynasty, contemporary with Choo He), in his treatise upon this Book, has brought out the meaning of the two phrases 天降命

天降威, much better than any of the critics in the many centuries before him; and here I transcribe the whole of his remarks:—“Strong drink is a thing intended to be used in offering sacrifices and in entertaining guests—such employment of it is what Heaven has prescribed. But men by their abuse of such drink come to lose their virtue and destroy their persons—such employment of it is what Heaven has annexed its terrors to. The Buddhists, hating the use of things where Heaven smites down its terrors, put away as well the use of them which Heaven has prescribed. It is not so with us of the Learned (i.e., the Orthodox) school;—we only put away the use of things to which Heaven has annexed its terrors, and the use of them of which it approves remains as a matter of course.

—For instance, in the use of meats and drinks, there is such a thing as wildly abusing and destroying the creatures of Heaven. The Buddhists, disliking this, confine themselves to a vegetable diet, while we only abjure the wild abuse and destruction. In the use of clothes, again, there is such a thing as wasteful extravagance. The Buddhists, disliking this, will have no clothes but those of a dark and sad colour, while we only condemn the extravagance. They, further, through dislike of criminal connection between the sexes, would abolish the relation between husband and wife, while we only denounce the criminal connection.

“The Buddhists, disliking the excesses to which the evil desires of men lead, would put away, along with them, the actions which are in accordance with the justice of Heavenly principles, while we, the orthodox, put away the evil desires of men, and what are called Heavenly principles are the more brightly seen. Suppose the case of a stream of water.—The Buddhists, through dislike of its being foul with mud, proceed to dam it up with earth. They do not consider that when the earth has dammed up the stream, the supply of water will all be cut off. It is not so with us, the orthodox. We seek only to cleanse away the mud and sand, so that the pure clear water may be available for use. This is the difference between the Buddhists and the Learned school.” (南天所之客以即天降失去而之至於欲其而愿與去矣沙土儒清

命者酒實人身惡之然者食惡不至於欲其而愿與去矣沙土儒清
降儒曰供而喪本天不威飲氏則而之則淫其欲吾昭其不矣水之分
天年說祀也德氏與則降如釋儒服惡儒惡去人之者惡土飲而之
解百其祭命失釋併儒已在物吾衣氏吾於則惡去理氏以可沙釋
段千載奉降於也乃吾而自天茹已釋衣至儒本者天釋之水泥儒
一誠備以之至威者之者而自天茹已釋衣至儒本者天釋之水泥儒
詰處今本天故降威去威命暴食珍奢色而婦釋之所水而則澄其此
酒威及物即之降者降降於欲暴珍奢色而婦釋之所水而則澄其此
軒降不爲此酒天之命其而至於必於窮衣奢絕而天人譬之既不者

A part from the interpretation of the disputed phrases in the text, the contrast here drawn between Buddhism and Chinese orthodoxy is interesting. It will, perhaps, suggest to the reader the words of the apostle Paul, about 'forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving.' It may remind him also of the controversies in the West about the subjects of vegetarianism, and total abstinence from all spirituous liquors.]

文王誥教小子有正有事
無彝酒越庶
國飲惟祀德
將無醉○惟
曰我民迪小
厥心臧聰聽
祖考之彝訓
越小大德小

- 4 'King Wān admonished and instructed the young and all who were charged with office and in employment, that they should not ordinarily use spirits. Throughout all his States, he required that they should be drunk only on occasion of sacrifices, and then that virtue should preside so that there might be no drunkenness. He said,
- 5 "Let my people teach their young men that they are to love only the productions of the ground, for so will their hearts be good. Let the youth also hearken diligently to the constant lessons of their fathers. Let them look at virtuous actions whether great or small in the same light."

Ep. 4, 5. Further instructions of king Wān on the use of spirits, showing his anxiety especially that the young should be kept from the habit of drinking them, and trained to virtuous industry. In par. 2 we have the opinion of Wān that spirits were intended to be used only at sacrifices, their strong and fragrant odour being acceptable to the spirits worshipped (蓋藉以薦馨香;—see the 日講, *is loc.*); here it would appear that he also permitted the use of them by the worshippers after the sacrifices, only requiring that they should not go to excess.

4. 小子有正有事—小子=少子之稱 '小子 is the appellation of young people.' Ts'ao observes that such are more readily awayed by impulses and led away by strong drink, and therefore king Wān addressed himself specially to them. But does this paragraph speak of the young only? K'ang Shing thinks so, and explains 有正有事 as descriptive of 小子:—'the young who have their superiors and their duties.' His language is—正長也, 小子有長上之人, 有服勞之事, 常酒則必慢上而廢事, 故戒令毋然. It would simplify this par., if we could consider it all occupied with the duty of the young, but Shing's explanation of 有正有事 is too forced, and contrary moreover to the analogy of other passages in the Book;—see particularly 有正 in par. 7. I must take

有正, therefore, with Ts'ao, as—有官可守者, and 有事 as—有職業者. 無彝酒—毋常於酒, 'that they should not be always (ordinarily) at wine.' 飲惟祀—其飲惟於祭祀之時, 'their drinking should only be at times of sacrificing.' Compare 祀茲酒 in par. 2. The text is a relaxation or extension of the rule in regard to the use of spirits, which would flow from the former statement. 德將無醉—將 is here = 節, 'to regulate,' 'to keep in order.' We do not find this meaning of the character in the dictionary.

5. 惟曰,—we must suppose 文王 as the subject of 曰. Some think differently. Woo Ch'ing, for instance, says that here king Woo delivers to K'ang-shuh the words which he should go and announce to the people of Mei; = 'When you now proceed to your State, you ought to say,' &c. (今汝之往惟當言曰). But this is inadmissible. 迪—訓導, 'to instruct and lead,' 'to train.'

厥心臧—臧=善, 'good.' Ts'ao says:—'When they toil at their sowing and reaping, and labour on their fields, desiring nothing beyond, than what they keep in their minds will be correct, and their goodness will grow from day to day.'

Wān's idea was that if the young were trained to industrious habits, they would not be likely

子惟一。○妹^大土。
嗣爾股肱純其
藝黍稷奔走事
厥考厥長肇牽
車牛遠服賈用
孝養厥父母厥
父母慶自洗腆
致用酒。○庶^七士
有正越庶伯君
子其爾典聽朕

- 6 'Ye people of the land of Mei, if you can employ your limbs, largely cultivating your millet, and hastening about in the service of your fathers and elders; and if with your carts and oxen you traffic to a distance, that you may thereby filially minister to your parents:—then, when your parents are happy, you may set forth your spirits clear and strong, and use them.
- 7 'Hearken constantly to my instructions, all ye high officers, ye assistants, and all ye noble chiefs:—when you have largely done

to fall a prey to intemperance. The fact sung by our children in the words,

'Satan finds some mischief still
For idle hands to do,'

was held in substance by him.

== 'to give a ready ear to.'

小子惟一。=不可以謹酒
爲小德小德大德小子惟
一視之可也。'Let them not look on

watchfulness in the use of spirits as a small virtue. The young should look in the same way on what are called great virtues and small virtues, equally observing them.' Gan-kwō takes the clause distly, but not so well. K'ang Shing takes it as declarative that the young of king Wen's States became equally observant of great virtues and small;—but neither can I agree with him.

Pp. 5, 7. The Duke of Chow, in the name of king Ching, addresses the people and officers of Mei directly, and warns them against using spirits excepting in certain specified cases. P. 6 is addressed to the people. They might drink spirits after having tided for their parents and done all their duty for them. Both this par. and the next must be taken as addressed directly by the speaker to the people of Mei. Woo Ch'ing and others try to put them into the mouth of Fang, following the 惟曰 of the last par.; but such a construction is forced on the text.

爾股肱。= 'connect your arms and legs; i.e., employ your limbs, one after the other; let none of them be idle.

純至稷。純

—大。純藝。= 'largely, or diligently, cultivate.' 黍和稷 are two species of mil-

let, put by synecdoche for 五穀, 'the five kinds of grain;—intimating perhaps that millet was cultivated more than the others in Mei.

肇至賈。肇。敏。= 'to be diligent,' 'urgent.' 服一事。服賈。= 'doing the business of traffic.' The whole—'if you are diligent in hauling about your carts and oxen, pursuing to a distance the business of traffic.'

厥父母慶。慶。喜。慶。= 'to be happy and complacent.' This is better than to take the term, with Gan-kwō and others, in the sense of 善, 'to approve,' as if the meaning were—'when your parents approve of your conduct.'

自洗腆致用酒。—洗 (sān) 和 腆 are both verbs, intimating operations to be performed upon the spirits, to make them fit for use, the effect of the former being to make them clear; of the latter, to make them strong. The 自 = 自此 the 'then' of the translation. Gauhū cannot be said to translate the clause at all. Medhurst has for it:—'then you may bathe and enjoy your abundance, and after that make use of wine.' The meaning of the whole par. is—that spirits might be used at family feasts. The 'Daily Explanation' expresses this clearly enough in its paraphrase of this clause:—自此則洗以致其潔。腆以致其豐。以用

教爾大克羞者
惟君爾乃飲食
醉飽不惟曰爾
克永觀省作稽
中德爾尙克羞
饋祀爾乃自介
用逸茲乃允惟
王正事之臣茲
亦惟天若元德
永不忘在王家。

your duty in ministering to your aged and serving your sovereign, you may eat and drink freely and to satiety. And to speak of greater things:—when you can maintain a constant watchful examination of yourselves, and your conduct is in accordance with correct virtue, then may you minister the offerings of sacrifice, and at the same time indulge yourselves in festivity. In such case you will indeed be ministers doing right service to your king, and Heaven likewise will approve your great virtue, so that you shall never be forgotten in the royal House."

酒於父母之前而燕樂於
家庭之內其亦可矣 P. 7

is addressed to the ministers and officers of Mel. I suppose the 庶士, 有正 and 庶士, 伯君子 to correspond to the 庶士, 少正, and 御事 of par. 2. The 御事 are here styled 庶伯君子 by way of compliment.

爾大克至醉飽
—Gan-kwé supposed that this was addressed to Fung himself, and explains it by—汝大君能進老成人之道則爲君之戒矣如此汝乃飲食醉飽之戒道先戒羣吏以聽教次戒康叔以君義 Ming-shing may well set this view aside as 'wide of the mark,' but it is not easy to arrive at the true meaning. The 惟君 is really unmanageable, and Ts'ao honestly confesses that he does not understand it. He explains 羞 by 養 and 羞者 by 養老 which is a more likely interpretation than any other that I have seen. The translation is after the paraphrase in the 日講:—爾能盡誠致敬大修養老奉君之禮則勸酬之閒無非禮節雖飲食醉飽亦

不爲過矣 不惟曰至用

逸,—here again Gan-kwé strangely supposes that Fung is addressed, and 不惟曰—我大惟教汝曰. K'ang Shing supposes that the subject of 曰 is 君;—'when you can 羞者, 惟君, then your prince will say,' &c. This view also is unsatisfactory.

I have taken, with Ts'ao, 不惟曰 as—以事之大者而言 作稽中德—稽—合, 'accommodant with,' 中德 is 'virtue exactly correct, without inclination or deflection,' 爾尙克羞饋祀—尙—庶幾, 'perhaps;' but more is meant than meets the ear. The king politely indicates by the character his full conviction that the officers, being such as he described, would be acceptable worshippers. 羞 is here—進—爾乃自介用逸—介—助, 'to assist.' The sacrifice to the spirits is represented as the great or chief ceremony; the subsequent festive indulgence by those who have taken part in it is a subsidiary ceremony (享神爲正而我後飲是副之也;—this is the very pithy gloss of a 朱養醇, one of the five critics at the end of the long list of authorities quoted in Yang-ching's

○王^八曰封我西土
 裴徂邦君御事小
 子尚克用文王教
 不腆于酒故我至
 于今克受殷之命
 ○王^九曰封我聞惟
 曰在昔殷先哲王
 迪畏天顯小民經
 德秉哲自成湯咸
 至于帝乙成王畏

- 8 II. "The king says, 'O Fung, in our western regions, the princes of States, the managers of affairs, and the youths, who in former days assisted *our ancestor*, were able to obey the lessons of king Wān, and indulge in no excess of spirits; and so it is that I have now received the appointment which belonged to Yin.'"
- 9 "The king says, 'O Fung, I have heard it said that formerly the first wise sovereign of Yin manifested a reverential awe of the bright principles of Heaven, and of the lower people, steadfast in his virtue, and holding fast his wisdom. From him, Tang the Successful, down to the emperor Yih, the sovereigns all completed

Shoo, whose age the editors say they have been unable to ascertain).

正事之臣。—Woo Ch'ing takes this as—有正有事之臣, with reference to par. 4; but the context makes it more natural to take the phrase as—'ministers doing right service.'

天若元德—若—順, 'to accept with,' equivalent to 'to approve.' The critics all call attention to the various relaxations of Wān's original rule, that spirits should be used only for sacrifices. They say that we have in them an instance of prohibition by permission (不^天禁之禁). See Tung-po says:—'Spirits are what men will not do without. To prohibit them and secure a total abstinence from them is beyond the power even of the sages. Here, therefore, we have warnings on the evils of drunkenness in the abuse of them, and the joy that is found in the virtuous use of them is set forth;—such is the way in which the sages lay their prohibitions upon men' (see the 集說).

Ch. II. Pp. 8—17. THE KING, ADDRESSING FUNG DIRECTLY, SHOWS HIM THE CONSEQUENCES OF TEMPERANCE AND INTemperance RESPECTIVELY, IN THE FORTUNES OF THEIR OWN HOUSE, AND OF THE DYNASTY OF YIN; AND REQUESTS HIM TO ILLUSTRATE, INCULCATE, AND ENFORCE HIS LESSONS IN MET.

8, *How the fortunate*

of Chow had risen by obedience to the lessons of king Wān.

我西土至小子, —the 裴徂 make this passage very perplexing. 裴 is taken as—輔, 'to assist,' and 徂—往, 'go by,' 'of the time past.' The two characters are best joined as descriptive of the parties immediately enumerated,—as in the translation. Gian-kwō and Lin Che-k' suppose that 文王 is the nominative to 裴, which then governs 邦君, &c.—我文王在西土輔訓往曰國君云云. This is very unnatural.

尚—庶幾, as in the last par. The peculiarity of its use here is that it is all historical.

9, 10. The example of various virtues, and especially of temperance, afforded in the prosperous times of the Yin dynasty. 我聞惟曰.—Ying-tz gives for this—我聞於古所聞惟曰. 迪畏天顯小民,—'walked in the fear of Heaven and of the people.' Compare the 'T'ao-k'ia,' Pt. III, p. 1.

自成王咸至于帝乙—咸, as it now stands,—徧 'through-out.' Some would place it after 乙, in which position it would—'all.' Yih was the father

助成王德顯越尹
惟不敢亦不暇惟
居罔敢酒于酒不
服宗工越百姓里
百僚庶尹惟亞惟
衛邦伯越在內服
越在外服侯甸男
矧曰其敢崇飲○
恭不敢自暇自逸
相惟御事厥棐有

10 their royal virtues, and revered their chief ministers, so that their managers of affairs respectfully discharged their helping duties, and dared not to allow themselves in idleness and pleasure;—how much less would they dare to indulge in drinking! Moreover, in the exterior domains, the princes of the States of the How, Teen, Nan and Wei, with their chiefs; and in the interior domain, all the various officers, the directors of the several departments, the inferior officers and employes, and the Heads of great Houses, with the men of honoured name living in retirement, all eschewed indulgence in spirits. Not only did they not dare to indulge in them, but they had not leisure, being occupied with helping to complete their king's virtue and make it more distinguished, and helping the directors of affairs reverently to attend to the service of the sovereign.

of the tyrant Shou; himself the 27th emperor of the dynasty. We may admit with Mencius, II., Pt. I., i., 8, that between Tang and Wootung, the 20th of the line, there were six or seven good sovereigns;—the statement in the text is a grand exaggeration.

成就君德而無隕越之憂
敬畏賢相而無驕肆之失

厥棐有恭—'in their helping had reverence.' The有恭 is best understood

by reference to Mencius, IV., i., 18,—責難於君謂之恭 崇飲—崇—尙, 'to value,'—'to indulge in.' 10.

外服. 內服.—by the 內服 we are to understand, of course, the 王畿 or 'imperial domain.' It would appear that an arrangement of the 'domains,' akin to that which obtained under the Chow dynasty, had come, during the dynasty of Yin, to supersede the older one introduced by Yu.—see the figure on page 149. By 侯甸男衛, we are to understand

the princes of those domains; and by 邦伯 the presidents of those princes (諸侯之長伯).

百僚—百官之僚 屬—'all the officers belonging to the various departments.'

庶尹—庶官之長 what are elsewhere called the 正 'the Heads of the various departments.'

惟亞—亞—次大夫, 'officers of the second degree.'

惟服—服—奔走服事之人, 'petty officers who had to run about discharging their duties.'

宗工—尊官, 'honoured officers.' Woo Ch'ing describes them as 王朝公卿大夫及

王子弟食采邑, 爲大宗者. This is probably correct, and I have translated

—'Heads of great Houses.' I take 百姓里居 together, and understand 百官 by

人祇辟。○我聞亦惟
 曰、在今後嗣王酣身、
 厥命罔顯于民、祇保
 越怨不易、誕惟厥縱
 淫佚于非彝、用燕喪
 威儀、民罔不盡傷心、
 惟荒腆于酒、不惟自
 息乃逸、厥心疾狠、不
 克畏死、辜在商邑、越

11. 'I have heard it said likewise, that in these times the last successor of those kings was addicted to drink, so that no charges came from him brightly before the people, and he was reverently and unchangingly bent on doing and cherishing what provoked resentment. Greatly abandoned to extraordinary lewdness and dissipation, for pleasure's sake he ruined all his majesty. The people were all sorely grieved and wounded in heart, but he gave himself wildly up to spirits, not thinking of ceasing, but continuing his excess, till his mind was frenzied, and he had no fear of death. His crimes accumulated in the city of Shang, and though the extinction of the dynasty

百姓. Officers of distinguished name, who had retired because of age from the public service, are intended.

助成王德顯-助成人君之德而使之益顯. The 助 extends also to the next clause, so that it is-亦助尹人使之祇敬君事而不少怠. Other explanations of this clause have been proposed, but it does not seem worth while to discuss them. 尹人-御事, above.

11. The drunkenness of Shou, and its issue. The 在今後嗣王 of course, is Shou. 酣 is defined by 樂酒, 'being fond of strong drink.' It is often used to denote a state short of gross intoxication, but we are not to think of that modified signification here. Woo Ch'ing explains 酣身 by 酣酒於身. We might translate it literally-'was a drunken body.' 厥命至不易-the translation of this part is after Gan-kwa and Tsao, the latter of whom explains:-昏迷於政.

命令不著於民其所祇保者惟在於作怨之事不肯悛改. Woo Ch'ing construes diffily, but it seems to me with more constraint of the text:-其命令之出無能明於民之當祇保及民怨之不易弭. 'When he issued his commands, he showed that he did not understand how he ought to reverence and cherish the people, and when they resented his conduct, he would not change or stop it.' 誕惟至威儀于非彝-于非法, our 'extraordinary.' Tsao refers in illustration to 作奇技淫巧以悅婦人, in the 'Great Speech,' Pt. III, p. 3;—see the account of Shou's debaucheries on pp. 269, 270. 民罔至畏死-盡一痛, 'to be grieved,' 'to feel sad and sore.' The 惟 in 不惟自息=思, 'to think of,' and the 乃, which follows, =仍. Keung Shing says well:—不思自止息, 仍

殷國滅無懼，弗惟
德馨香祀登聞于
天，誕惟民怨庶群
自酒，腥聞在上，故
天降喪于殷，罔愛
于殷，惟逸，天非虐
惟民自速辜。○王
曰：封，予不惟若茲
多誥。古人有言曰：
人無於水監，當於

of Yin was imminent, this gave him no concern, and he wrought not that any sacrifices of fragrant virtue might ascend to heaven. The rank odour of the people's resentments, and the drunkenness of his herds of creatures, went loudly up on high, so that Heaven sent down ruin on Yin and showed no love for Yin,—because of such excesses. There is not any cruel oppression of Heaven; people themselves accelerate their guilt, and its punishment."

- 12 "The king says, 'O Fung, I have no pleasure in making you this long announcement; but the ancients have said, "Let not men look *only* into water; let them look into the glass of *other* people."

然淫佚乃之言仍也。疾
狠——'angrily wrangled.' 辜在至于
天——商邑，probably means the capital of
Shou, and 殷國——'the dynasty of Yin.' 罹
——憂，'sorrowful.' In 弗惟惟——思
——as in 不惟, above. 誕惟至在
上，——the 誕惟 like the same characters in
the previous part of the part, indicate that
what follows was attributable to Shou. 自
酒——'abandoning themselves to drink.'

惟逸——以紂淫佚故，'because of
these excesses of Shou.' There is a difficulty
with the concluding clauses. All through
the part, the speaker has been dilating on the
wickedness of Shou, and suddenly it seems
to be said, at the end, that the ruin of the
dynasty was the work of 'the people.' Ts'ao
would interpret 民 of Shou and his ministers,
according to the analogy of 先民 in 'The
Instructions of E,' p. 5. K'ang Shing takes
民, as——冥——天降喪亡，
天非虐也。惟冥冥昏亂，自
召辜罰。 Other methods to lighten the

difficulty have been tried. In the translation,
I take 民 as——人，'men,' 'people' generally.

12. How the House of Chou should see its
duty in the history of Yin. The meaning of 予
不惟若此多誥 is probably what
appears in the translation. Ts'ao and K'ang
Shing bring it out by taking 惟——徒，'simply,'
i.e., merely for the sake of talking. The 'Daily
Explanation' puts it——予豈好爲是
多誥哉。古人有言云云，
—In illustration of this saying, K'ang Shing
quotes, aptly enough, a fragment of the lost Book
of Shou which was called 'The Punitive Ex-
peditions of Tang' (湯征):—湯曰，人
視水見形，視民知治不。
我其可不監撫于時，——this
is to be understood interrogatively. Gan-kwō
took 撫——撫安, in which he is correctly
followed by Ts'ao, whose expansion of the whole
is very lucid:—我其可不以殷民
之失爲大監戒，以撫安斯
時乎。 This is much better than, with K'ang
Shing, to take 撫——循，'to follow,' 'to accord

民監今惟殷
墜厥命我其
可不^十大監撫
于時○子惟
曰汝劼毖殷
獻臣侯甸男
衛矧太史友
內史友越獻
臣百宗工矧
惟爾事服休

Now that Yin has lost its appointment, ought we not to look much to it as our glass, and learn how to secure the repose of our time?

- 13 'I say to you,—Strenuously warn the worthy ministers of Yin, and the princes in the How, the Teen, the Nan, and Wei domains; and still more, your friends, the great Recorder and the Recorder of the interior, and all your worthy ministers, the Heads of great Houses; and still more, those whom you serve—with whom you calmly converse, and who carry out your measures; and still more, those

with, and 時—是, referring to the good ways of the sovereigns of Yin before Shun. His words are:—我其可不監于是撫于是乎監監紂也撫循也謂循商先王之道也時是也指謂殷

P. 13. Fung is required to take home to himself the lessons about temperance, and to enjoin them on the princes and officers in his jurisdiction.

汝訪至男衛—劼—用力, 'strenuously.' 獻臣—賢臣. These were good ministers of the former dynasty, who were still retained in their former offices under Fung.

As 孟侯, or 'Head of the princes,' his authority extended also over the princes of the portions of the domain that were under his jurisdiction. He should strenuously warn them,—on the subject, of course, of abstaining from intemperance.

太史友內史友—the duties of the 太史 and 內史, with other officers of the same department, are described in the Chow Lo, Bk. XXVI. 春官宗伯

第三之十. They were very honourable and extensive, and such as brought them into frequent contact and consultation with the 太宰 or prime minister ('grand administrateur general.' Biot).

It is said in general that the 太史 had the management of what Biot calls 'the six constitutions (六典), the eight regulations (八法), and the eight statutes

(八則).' These six constitutions were the various departments of the administration,—of rule, of instruction, of ceremonies, of prescripts, of punishments, and of business; the regulations and statutes embraced all connected with the working of those departments. The 內史 again had the management of 'the eight

powers or prerogatives' of the emperor (掌八柄之法). These duties branched off into a great variety of minor functions. The 史 kept all the records which were to be appealed to in connection with them, so that we may consider them as having been confidential secretaries and advisers of the prime minister. Biot calls the 太史, 'le grand annaliste,' and 內史, 'l'annaliste de l'interieur.' I prefer to call them 'recorders,' as being a more general term. The various princes had their 'grand Recorder,' but the 'Recorder of the interior' belonged, it is maintained, only to the imperial court; and the individual mentioned in the text is supposed, therefore, to have been the old minister of the court of Shang, now superseded under the new dynasty and Hing is Wei. However this may be, it is said that the two Recorders were 'friends' of Fung. As men of research and ability and general good character, he would so cherish them.

獻(—賢)臣百宗工.—we must suppose these, in distinction from the 獻臣 above, to be those appointed under the existing dynasty. Or, acc. to the view of Woo Ch'ing, we may suppose that they were good men, Heads of influential families, who were not in office, and were called 臣, in the same way as

服采矧惟 若疇圻父 薄違農父 若保宏父 定辟矧汝 剛制于酒 剛制于酒 曰、群厥^{十四}或誥 勿佚盡汝 拘以歸于

- 14 who are, as it were, your mates,—your minister of War, who deals with the rebellious, your minister of Agriculture, who is like a protector to the people, and your minister of Works, who settles the boundaries: and above all, do you sternly keep yourself from drink.
- 14 'If you are told that there are companies who drink together, do not fail to apprehend them all, and send them here to Chow, where I may put them to death.

every individual in the empire is supposed to be a 臣 of the sovereign. 爾事服休 服采—the translation here follows the view of Tsao. He supports his explanation of 事 by 'to serve,' from the passage of Mencius, V., Pt. II., vii., 4, where Tsao-ao is introduced as saying, 古之人有言曰事之云乎, 豈曰友之云乎. 'The ancients have said, "The scholar (or virtuous officer) should be served;—how should they have merely said, "He should be made a friend of?"' This view of 事 being adopted, 服休—坐而論道之臣, 'ministers who sit (by their prince) and discourse to him about principles,' and 服采—起而作事之臣, 'ministers who rise and perform the business (of their prince),' 服休 is 'to serve in hours of ease;' 服采 'to serve in active business.' I have hesitated between this view, and that given by Woo Ch'ing—爾事—服事於爾者大夫也, 'those who serve you,—your great officers;' 服休—職之優閑者, 'those whose offices were comparatively easy, and allowed of leisure;' 服采—職之繁劇者, 'those whose offices were more bustling and troublesome.' Gau-kwo took a diff. view which is quite inadmissible. He says—汝身事服行美道, 服事治民, making Fung himself, to the discharge of his duties, the subject. This cannot be right. Kwag-shing had still another view, in which he is followed by Kwang Shing, acc. to which the whole—'the employees,—those who are near to you in festivals and

leisure, and those who are near at audiences and sacrifices' (汝之執事服職于燕息及朝祭之臣.) This diversity of opinion serves to show how uncertain the meaning is. 圻父, 'the controller of boundaries,'—司馬, 'the minister of War.' This meaning is determined by the 1st ode in the 4th Book of the Shu King, Part II., where it is said—祈(圻)父子王之爪牙. This being determined, it follows that 農父—司徒, 'the minister of Instruction;' and 宏父—司空, 'the minister of Works.' These were the 'three high nobles' (三卿), belonging to the court of one of the princes. They were the highest in authority, and might be considered as their prince's 'mates' (疇匹). 薄 (read pōh)—迫, 薄違—迫逐違命者. The minister of Instruction is called 若保, 'the harmonious preserver.' The promotion of agriculture, which supplies the staff of life, being within his province, he is thus denominated. The minister of Works is called 定辟, 'the settler of rules,' i.e., the decider of all questions about the settlements and tenements of the people. Kwang Shing would take 辟 in the sense of 君, which does not seem at all applicable here. 剛制于酒—剛果用力自制酒.

Pp. 14-16. By what rules obedience to the king's injunctions against the use of spirits were to be enforced. 14 汝勿佚—佚—失, 'to fail.' The punishment here threatened is so far beyond the crime, that the critics fall upon various devices to explain it, or to mitigate the

周予其殺。○又惟
殷之迪諸臣惟工
乃酒于酒勿庸殺
之姑惟教之。○有
斯明享乃不用我
教辭惟我一人弗
恤弗蠲乃事時同
于殺。○王曰封汝
典聽朕恣勿辯乃
司民酒于酒。

- 15 'As to the ministers and officers of Yin, who have been led to it, and been addicted to drink, it is not necessary to put them to death;
16 —let them be taught for a time. If they keep these lessons, I will give them bright distinction. If you disregard my lessons, then I, the one man, will show you no pity. As you cannot cleanse your way, you shall be classed with those who are to be put to death."
17 "The king says, 'O Fung, give constant heed to my admonitions. If you do not manage right your officers, the people will continue lost in drink."

force of the language. First, the coming together in companies to drink is supposed to carry with it the design of their assembling, as being not merely to drink, but, under the cloak of that, to plot against the govt. Second, the 其 to 予其殺 is taken to indicate uncertainty. The king would examine for himself into their guilt, and according as he found they had treasonable designs would put them to death. If they really only met to drink, he would inflict on them some lighter penalty. I have allowed the second remark by using the 'may' in the translation. The former remark may also be correct. If it be not so, we cannot account for the difference of spirit between this and the two next paragraphs.

15. 又惟
殷之迪諸臣惟工—今殷之
諸百工其素爲商紂導引
爲惡者。Kiang Shing says that 惟
惟工 is superfluous. We hardly know what
to do with it. 16. 有斯明享—商
之諸臣果能遵我教訓之
辭存之于心而不忘我則
顯揚之而享之以爵位—

in the translation. This is forcing a meaning out of the words. The most that can be said for it is, that it is more likely than any other construction which has been proposed. Kiang Shing took 斯 as 析, which Kiang Shing adopts. He has 又分析其明用
我教者獻之古者諸侯有
獻士于天子之制 乃不
用云云,—the king here turns to the officers of Yin who should persist obstinately in their drunkenness and other evil ways, and addresses them directly. 弗蠲乃事
—不能潔汝舊染之汙 時
—是或於是

P. 17. Concluding admonition to Fung. 勿
—不; it is not imperative. 辯—治 'to
rule.' Fung was specially to direct his efforts to discountenance drunkenness in the officers,—the higher classes. If he could not succeed with them, his efforts with the lower classes would be vain.

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XI. THE TIMBER OF THE TSZE TREE.

惟臣家臣民以王
邦達以達暨厥曰梓
君王厥大厥庶封材

- 1 I. "The king says, 'O Fung, to have a good understanding with the multitudes of his people, and his ministers *on the one hand*, and with the great families *on the other*; and again to have the same with all the subjects *under his charge* and with the sovereign:—is the part of the prince of a State.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—梓材, 'The Timber of the Tsze tree.' Though it does not affect our understanding of the Book, I am sorry that I cannot give the proper botanical name of the Tsze. It is described as allied to the Ts'ew (楸), which has the leaves of a cypress and the trunk of a fir! (柏葉松

身). It was esteemed as the most valuable for making articles of furniture, and for the carver's art. The phrase,—the timber, or materials, of the Tsze, occurs in par. 4, and was thence assumed to designate the Book, intimating apparently that the administrator of government ought to give himself to his duties skilfully and thoroughly, as the cabinet-maker deals with his materials. The cultivation of a field and the building of a house are spoken of in the same paragraph; and either of these things might have been used as the name instead of the phrase which it pleased the fancy of the compiler to adopt. The Book is found in both the texts.

CONTENT. The Book is sadly wanting in unity. The 1st par. is directly addressed to Fung, and we may suppose that the three which follow were so also. He is admonished of his duty to promote a good understanding between the various classes in his State, and between them all and the sovereign; and that, in order to this, his rule must be gentle, eschewing the use

of punishments. The interpretation, however, is anything but certain. The remaining paragraphs are of a diff. character. They are not the charges of the emperor, insisting with a prince upon his duties, but the admonitions of a minister loyally and affectionately cautioning his sovereign, and praying for the prosperity of his reign. They would be appropriate as addressed to king Ching by the duke of Chow, or the duke of Shao. We might also suppose them the response of Fung; but the text gives no intimation of a new speaker being introduced. The whole Book is very unsatisfactory, and it is a translator's greatest comfort that it is short.

Ch. I. Pp. 1—4. *How the prince of a State is a connecting link between all the classes of his people, and between his people and the emperor.*

達—通, 'to reach to,' 'to effect an intercommunication.' By 大家 we are to understand what Mencius, IV., Bk. I., vi., calls 巨室, 'the great Houses,' saying that 'the administration of govt. is not difficult, but lies in not offending the great Families, for whom they affect will be affected by all the State.' It is observed in the 'Complete Digest,' that the force of the 達 is to show how the conduct of the ruler draws forth the approval of all parties, so that there is an uninterrupted flow of their good feeling towards him, and we are not to

往厥敬勞肆徂先人予空徒有恆
 姦宄殺肆徂先人予空徒有恆
 越曰我若恆
 師司徒
 司馬司
 尹旅曰
 罔厲殺
 亦厥君
 敬勞肆
 厥敬勞
 往姦宄

- 2 'If you regularly in giving out your orders say, "My instructors whom I am to follow, my minister of Instruction, my minister of War, and my minister of Works; my Heads of departments, and all ye, my officers, I will on no account with oppressions put men to death;"——. Let the prince also set the example of respecting and encouraging the people, and these will proceed to respect and encourage them. Let him go on in dealing with those who have been traitors and villains, murderers and harbourers of criminals,

take it as intimating that the ruler brings the higher and lower classes into intimacy and good feeling with one another" (達者吾之而之)

行事與其情兩相通徹而之
 無睽阻非使上下相通之

謂). The first 厥臣 is descriptive of the ministers and officers of the State, and those not filling the highest offices, which would for the most part be occupied by the Heads or scions of the great families. The second 厥臣 is descriptive of all the people of the State, the official classes and the unofficial, as being equally the subjects of the sovereign (王) or emperor.

Such is the view of the par. that appears to be given by Tsao. Lin Che-k'e took the same, only understanding the 達 of bringing the various classes mentioned into good and harmonious relation with one another. Gan-k'ue's view was different. He paraphrases:—言當

用其衆人之賢者與其小
 臣之良者以通達卿大夫
 及都家之政於國信用其
 臣以通王教於民言通民
 事於國通王教於民惟乃
 國君之道. Of this I can make little or

nothing. Ch'ing K'ang-shing had still another view which deserves to be noticed only for its singularity. He seems to have read the last clause—以厥臣達王暨邦君; and then by 王 he understood 二王之後, 'the descendants of the emperors of the two previous dynasties;' and by 邦君, the princes of the various States within Tsao's jurisdiction, as

孟侯. Adopting this strange view, K'ang

Shing says—以臣民達大家則
 聯上下之情以臣達王與
 邦君則聯邦交之誼

P. 2. The prince of a State must inculcate in his ministers, and exemplify himself, leniency in dealing with criminals. Tsao honestly acknowledges that the most of this par. is unintelligible to him, and he does not attempt any paraphrase of it. In the translation, I have followed the 'Daily Explanation.' The meaning given is more likely than any other which it has been attempted to put upon the text;—this is the most that can be said for it.

汝若至
 殺人一起 is taken in the sense of 發 or
 發令, 'to give forth orders.' This meaning
 of the term is given in the Dict. (一揚), and
 supported by examples from the 國語.

師師一相師爲善之意, 'instruct-
 ors whom I am to make my model.'—comp.
 the same phrase in Pt. IV, Bk. XI, p. 2; et al.
 The three ministers immediately mentioned
 are the instructors intended. 尹—正官

之長, 'the Heads of the various official de-
 partments;' and 旅—衆, —that is, 衆士,

'the whole body of officers.' The 曰 which
 follows is superfluous, and the sentence is left in-
 complete. The 'Daily Explanation' supplements
 it by—'and you all ought to cherish the same
 regard for the lives of the people' (汝咸當

仰體吾好生之心). The older in-
 terpreters, followed by K'ang Shing and many
 others, connect 汝若恆越曰我有

人歷人宥，肆亦見厥
君事，戕敗
人宥。○王
啟監厥亂
爲民曰無
胥戕無胥
虐至于敬
寡至于屬
婦合由以

3 to exercise pardon, and these, when they observe the prince's conduct, will likewise pardon those who have assaulted others and injured their property. When sovereigns appointed inspectors, they did so in order to the government of the people, and said to them, "Do not give way to violence or oppression; and go on to show reverence for the weak, and find connexions for destitute women. Your protection of the people must proceed in this way to cherish

師師 with the *prec. par.*, giving it substantially this meaning.—'Do you accord (若—順) with this regular rule for your duty, and (越—于是) then say to yourself, "I have this law which I am to observe." Then commences with them a new *par.*, and 司徒, &c., form the subject of the second 曰. On this construction the two 曰 are accounted for; but to put 子罔厲殺人 in the mouths of all the officers is inadmissible. 亦厥君先敬勞肆徂厥敬勞—勞, in the 3d tone, is taken in the sense of 慰, 'to comfort,' 'to encourage.' The 'respecting' the people (we must understand 民 or 其民 under the govt. of 敬勞) is to be taken with reference to the ruler's eschewing the use of punishments rather than run the risk of putting any to death unjustly, 'with oppressions.'

肆—遂, 'then,' 'thereupon.' 徂—往 'to go.' The subject of this verb is the ministers and officers above. Gau-kwō supposes the 君 to be the subject of 徂, as well as of the previous verbs.—'It is also the way of a ruler to take the initiative in respecting and encouraging the people; do you therefore, in going to rule this people, be careful to respect and encourage them.' K'ang Shing takes 亦 as—

掖—助, 'to assist,' and connects the clause with the preceding, thus:—'The ministers will say, "We will be cautious with you of putting men to death unjustly." Then they will help their prince to reverence and encourage the people as the thing of greatest importance.'

肆往姦至末—the first of these

clauses—肆往, 云云,—is descriptive of the ruler; and the second—肆亦見云云,—of his ministers. The former of the two 肆 is in the way, indeed, of this construction. The character introducing, immediately above, the subject of the ministers as distinguished from the ruler, and doing the same here in the second instance, we might have expected 亦往 instead of 肆往. This is a serious difficulty; but the view upon the whole harmonizes with the general scope of the paragraph, and enables us to explain the 亦見君事, to which both Gau-kwō and K'ang Shing do great violence.

肆往姦宥殺人歷人宥—遂與往日爲姦宥殺人者罪人所經歷者今皆寬宥與之爲新. Ts'ao explains 歷人 by 罪人所過, 'those through whom offenders have passed,' meaning individuals who have connived at crime, and more or less aided and abetted it. 戕敗人 are individuals guilty of lighter offences than those mentioned above, whose cases should be summarily dealt with by his ministers and officers, without their being appealed to the ruler himself. We cannot suppose that this charge to Fung to pardon offenders—even murderers, was to be taken without qualification. He could only be required to note and act upon all mitigating circumstances in his punishment of crime.

P. 3. The object of the emperor in delegating authority to princes and officers is the wisely and abundant rule of the people. 王啟監—

Ts'ao says that 監 has reference, to the 'three inspectors' appointed by king Woo to oversee Wook'ang in his govt., and that the same title is given to Fung, as being appointed to a portion of the

容王其效邦君越御事厥命曷以引恬古王若茲監罔攸辟。

them." And when the sovereigns gave their injunctions to the princes of States, and their managers of affairs, what was the charge? It was that they should lead *the people* to the enjoyment of plenty and peace. Such was the way of the kings from of old. An inspector is to eschew the use of punishments.'

same territory. It is very strange that he did not perceive that this view was inconsistent with his other view, that the speaker in this and the two preceding Books was king Woo and not the duke of Chow. Woo could not have spoken thus of what he had done himself. It is better, however, to take 監 as a general title, applicable to all princes—the 公, 侯, 伯, 子 and 男.—Such a use of it is found in the Chow Ls, Bk. II., p. 34 (天官太宰)—乃施典于邦國而建其牧立其監云云。厥亂爲民—亂—治。The whole—其治本爲民而已。曰無胥至以容—we must understand all this as the imperial charge to the princes invested with inspection and rule. The 胥—相, indeed, occasions some difficulty, which is best got over by understanding it of those princes and their ministers and people. This is the solution adopted by Lin Che-k'e from Wang Gan-shih (胥者謂君臣上下並爲戕虐之政也). Gan-kwō took the subject of 曰 to be the 'inspectors.'—Appointed for such a purpose, they ought to teach their people saying, 'Do not among yourselves,' &c. This is plainly inadmissible.

敬寡.—'respect the few,' i.e., those who have few to help them. 屬 (club) 婦—婦之窮獨者當使之有所歸而聯屬之, 'in the case of women reduced to straits and solitary, you ought to bring it about that they shall have those to whom they may turn, and find connexions for them.' This is forcing a meaning out of the 屬; but I do not see what better can be done while the text stands as it does. We must interpret one clause by the analogy of another, and 敬 being a verb in 敬寡, 屬 must be one here. The dict., with reference to this

passage, defines 屬 by 恤, 'to pity';—after Gan-kwō, who gives for the clause—存恤妾婦. I do not think, however, that Gan-kwō understood 屬 to mean 'to pity.' The sense in which he took this term appears in 妾婦, 'concubines,'—women attached to the proper wife, and inferior to her. He supplied the 存恤, as necessary to make sense of the clause. The 說文 quotes it as—至于嫺婦嫺 meaning 妊, 'pregnant.' The critics who adopt this reading suppose that the preceding 敬 ought to be 矜, to which they give the meaning of 鰥, 'widowers';—but this is mere conjecture. 合由以容.—Ts'ao takes 合 as—保合 and 容 as—容蓄, understanding the whole as in the translation (又推而保合一國之民率由此道以相爲容蓄使各得其所焉). It would be hard to say that this is really the meaning; but it is preferable to Gan-kwō's exposition,—和合其教用大道以容之無令見冤枉. 王其效至末—效—責效, 'to give charge to and require service from.' This is akin to the meaning of the character which the dict. defines by 勉. 厥命曷以—其命何以哉. 引養引恬.—this is the answer to the question. Ts'ao expands it by—亦惟欲其引掖斯民於生養安全之地而已. 監罔攸辟—監其無所用乎刑辟, 'an inspector should have nothing to do with the using of punishments.'

惟^四曰若稽田既勤
敷蓄惟其陳修爲
厥疆畎若作室家
既勤垣墉惟其塗
堅茨若作梓材既
勤樸斲惟其塗丹
王既勤用明德懷
爲夾庶邦享作兄
弟方來亦既用明

- 4 "He says moreover, 'As in the management of a field, when the soil has all been laboriously turned up, they must proceed by orderly arrangement to make its boundaries and water-courses; as in building a house, after all the toil on its walls, they have to plaster and thatch it; as in working with the wood of the *tsze*, when the toil of the coarser and finer operations has been performed, they have to apply the paint of red and other colours'":—

- 5 II. "Now let your Majesty say, 'The former kings diligently employed their illustrious virtue, and produced such attachment by their cherishing of the princes, that from all the States they brought offerings, and with brotherly affection they came from all quarters, and likewise showed their virtue illustrious.' Do you, O sovereign,

F. 4. *Fung* is required to complete the good work which had been begun. It will be seen that this paragraph is imperfect. We have the protasis of the sentence thrice repeated in various form, the apodosis being left to be supplied, in some such way as—"so must you, O Fung, proceed in raising in your State the superstructure of gov't., of which the foundations have been laid."

惟曰—we may understand 王 as the subject of 曰. 稽田—稽一治, 'to manage,' i.e., to perform all the necessary operations on.

勤敷蓄—comp. Bk. VII., p. 11. 勤敷—'toilfully and widely.'

若作室家—these two characters—室家—are simply equivalent to the 室 in Bk. VII., p. 11, and = our 'house.'

Ma Yang says that 'a low wall is called 垣, and a high one, 墉 (牆卑曰垣, 高曰墉). 惟其塗堅茨—there have to be the clay, the facing plaster, and the thatch grass.'

梓材—see on the name of the Book. 樸斲—the first of these

characters denotes the rough fashioning of the work; and the second the fine finish given to it (具粗曰樸, 致巧曰斲). 牆 is a name given to the various colours used in painting articles of furniture. (采色之名).

Wang Kang-yai observes that 塗, 丹, and 牆 are all verbs, and that we are to understand them—塗之, 丹之, and 牆之, as in the case of 塗, 堅, 茨 above. It would seem that we should construe so, but it is difficult to determine the independent meaning of 塗. See the 讀書管見 in loc.

Ch. 5-8. These four paragraphs are evidently addressed not to a subject, but to the sovereign. Gan-kwō takes no notice of the difference in style between them and the preceding ones, and Ying-tā says expressly that the king goes on in them to complete his charges to Fung. This view now finds no advocates. The speaker was evidently some loyal minister of Chow. K'ang Shing thinks that we have here the response of Fung to the various lessons which he had received. Ming-shing says that, having done with Fung, the duke of Chow now

德后式典集
庶邦丕享。○
皇天既付中
國民越厥疆
土于先王。○
肆王惟德用
和懌先後迷
民用懌先王
受命。○已若

use their statutes to attach *the princes*, and all the States will largely come with offerings.

- 6 "Great Heaven having given this Middle kingdom with its people
7 and territories to the former kings, do you, our present sovereign, employ your virtue, effecting a gentle harmony among the deluded people, leading and urging them on;—so *also* will you please the former kings, who received the appointment *from Heaven*.

turns to king Shing, and speaks some words of warning to him. We need not trouble ourselves with speculation on so uncertain and unimportant a matter.

P. 5. *How Wán and Woo ruled the princes by the influence of their virtue, and future sovereigns must imitate their example.* 先

王,—these 'former kings' can only be Wán and Woo. What is said of the effects of their way is much exaggerated. Had it been as the speaker says, there would not have been the troubles which disturbed the reign of king Ching.

懷爲夾,—for this Gan-kwó gives—懷遠爲近, 'cherished the distant and made them near.' The meaning seems to be that by their kindly cherishing of the princes of States, Wán and Woo gained them and made them a strength and defence to their govt. (以成夾輔之勢). The last of Confucius' 'nine standard rules' for the govt. of the empire,—the king's cherishing the princes of the States' (懷諸侯)—is traced to this expression.

作兄弟方來,—by 兄弟 Gan-kwó understood the princes who were of the imperial House, the uncles and brothers, &c., of the sovereign, in contradistinction from the princes of other surnames. Kéang Shing adopts the same view, and extends it to princes related to the imperial House by affinity. It seems to me preferable to take 兄弟 as in the translation, like the 子來 in the quotation from the She King, *Men-chua*, I, Pt. I, H., 3.

后式典集—后—君 We are to understand by the term

king Ching, as the successor of Wán and Woo.

式—用, 'to employ.' Another meaning of the term—to imitate,—would suit equally well. 典, 'statutes,' has reference to the ruling by virtue, whose influence has just been described. 集, 'to collect,'—to bring around, to attach.

Pp. 6, 7. *How the sovereign must attack the people by a mild rule.* These par. are held to be the origin of Confucius' sixth standard rule of government,—to treat the mass of the people kindly as children' (子庶民). 5. The whole of this is one sentence, and Choo He calls attention to it as an instance of the long sentences of the Shoo.

中國—compare 中邦. 'Tribute of Ya,' Pt. II, p. 15. 7. 肆 is taken as—今, 'now.' In the 附錄 there is an ingenious note by Ch'in Leih, contending that its proper meaning in such cases as this, at the commencement of clauses, is 故, 'therefore,' or 遂, 'and,' 'thereupon,' and not 今.

和懌先後迷民—迷民, 'the deluded people,' meaning the people of the imperial domain of Yin chiefly, but also of other parts of the empire, who were reluctant to acknowledge the authority of the dynasty of Chow. 先—'go before,' 後—'come after.' The meaning is that Ching should beset the people 'before and behind' with his virtue and kindness, so leading and urging them on.

用懌先王受命—this implies that Wán and Woo could take cognizance of the character and doings of their successor.

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XII. THE ANNOUNCEMENT OF THE DUKE OF SHAOU.

豐。則。步。未。六。既。惟^上
○。至。自。王。日。望。二
惟^三。于。周。朝。乙。越。月。召誥

1. 1. In the second month, on the day Yih-we, six days after the full moon, the king early in the morning proceeded from Chow, and

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—召誥, 'The Announcement of the duke of Shaoü.' Shaoü was the name of a place within the imperial domain, corresponding to the present district of Hwan-k'ueh (垣曲), in the small dep. of K'ang (絳州), Shan-si. It was the appanage of Shih (奭), one of the ablest of the men who lent their aid to the establishment of the dynasty of Chow. He appears here as the 'Great-guardian' (太保) of king Ching; and we have met with him before in 'The Hounds of Lem,' and 'The Metal-bound Coffin.' He was one of 'the three dukes,' (三公), or highest officers of the dynasty, and is frequently styled 召公, the 'duke of Shaoü.' He appears here in connection with one of the most important enterprises of the duke of Chow, the building of the city of Loh (洛邑), as a new and central capital of the empire. King Woo had conceived the idea of such a city, but it was not carried fully into effect till the reign of his son;—see on the second paragraph below. In Loh the duke of Shaoü composed the 'Announcement' which forms the subject-matter of this Book, and sent it by the hands of the duke of Chow to the young emperor. It might, perhaps, with more than equal propriety, have been styled 'The Instructions of the duke of Shaoü' (召訓).

According to Sze-ma Ts'een, Shih belonged to the Imperial House of Chow, and consequently had the surname Ke (姬). The historian, Hwang-y'oo Mei, says he was a son of king Wan by a concubine (文王之庶子);—on what authority I cannot tell. King Woo appointed him to the principality of 'The Northern Yen' (北燕), corresponding to the present dep. of Shan-t'ung (順天), Chih-le, which was held by his descendants fully nine hundred years. He remained himself, however, at the imperial court. We find him often styled the 'Chief of Shaoü' (召伯); and Ts'een says that all the country west of Shen (陝) was under him, as all east of it was under the duke of Chow. See the 史記, 三十四, 燕召公世家第四. His posthumous title was K'ang (康), and hence he is sometimes referred to as 召康公奭. As to the date of the Announcement, see on par. 1. It is found in both texts.

CONTEXTS. The first seven paragraphs are introductory to the body of the Book, which is composed of the Announcement of Shih. They contain various information about the surveying and planning and building of Loh. We may consider them as forming a first or preliminary chapter. Parr. 8-22, contain the Announce-

太保先周公若宅越三月來惟丙午臚越三
日戊申太保朝于洛宅厥

2 came to Fung. Thence the Grand-guardian went before the duke of Chow to inspect the localities, and in the third month, on the day Mow-shin, the third day after the first appearance of the new moon on Ping-woo, came in the morning to Lō. He consulted the tortoise about the localities, and having obtained favourable indications, he

ment, which, however, commences properly with par. 9. The 'Complete Digest' says it may be divided into three parts. In the first, par. 9—12, Shih sets forth the uncertainty of the favour of Heaven, and urges the young king to cultivate 'the virtue of reverence.' In order to secure its permanence, concluding with a recommendation to him not to neglect his aged and experienced advisers. The second, par. 13—18, speaks of the importance and difficulty of the imperial duties, and enforces the same virtue of reverence by reference to the rise and fall of the previous dynasties. In the last part, par. 19—23, Shih insists on the importance of the king, at this early period of his reign, and on his personal undertaking of the duties of govt., at once setting about the reverence which was required to attach the people to himself and his House, and insure the lasting favour of Heaven. In the last part, the duke of Shao gives expression to his personal feelings for the king, in the peculiar situation in which he was placed at Lō. The burden of the announcement all turns on 'the virtue of reverence.' Let the king only feel how much depends on his reverently attending to his duties, and govern for the people and not for himself—let him do this, and all will be well. The people will love and support the dynasty of Chow, and Heaven will smile upon and sustain it.

CH. L. PP. 1—7. PROCEEDINGS OF THE KING, THE DUKE OF SHAOU, AND THE DUKE OF CHOW, IN CONNECTION WITH THE BUILDING OF LŌ.

1. 惟二月至乙未—according to this statement, the day Yih-we must have been the 21st of the second month, and, as Gauthier observes, we may, from the data here supplied, determine the year to which the Announcement of Shao should be referred. It was, he says correctly, the year a.c. 1,008. 乙

未 being the 21st day of the second month, 乙亥 must have been the 1st, and the 1st day of that year of Chow must have been Ping-woo (丙午), the 43d day of the cycle. But that was the day of the new moon preceding the winter solstice, from which under this dynasty they calculated the year, in a.c. 1,008, or 1,007 (not reckoning a.d.). This result is not accordant with the current chronology of king Ching's reign, nor with the date assigned to it from the

'Bamboo Books.' The building of Lō is assigned to his 7th year, which was, on the received system, a.c. 1,109 (or 1,108), and acc. to the Bamboo Books a.c. 1038. It is enough to call attention to this point here, without going into further discussion about it. Ching K'ang-shing proposed to change 二月 into

一月, in which case the year would have begun with 乙亥, the 11th cycle day; and he assigned the building of Lō, after Puh-shing, to Ching's 5th year instead of the 7th. Even if we were to follow him in these points, we should be equally unable to reconcile the note of time given in the text with the arrangements of the chronologers.

王步至豐—comp. Rk. III, p. 1. The temple of king Wan was in Fung, and we may suppose had been left standing when Woo transferred the capital to Hao. Now when such an important thing as the establishing of a new capital, which should rank with Hao, if it did not supersede it, was in progress, it was proper that the king should solemnly announce it in the temples of his father and grandfather. That he might do so to the spirit of king Wan, he went from Chow or Hao to Fung. 2. To Shih the Grand-guardian, and to the duke of Chow, was assigned the duty of making all the arrangements for carrying out the plans of king Woo about establishing a new capital at Lō. In fact, Woo had himself taken some measures towards the accomplishment of his views. We are told in the 左傳, under the year a.c. 708 (桓公二年), that 'he removed the nine tripods or vases to the city of Lō' (武王克商, 遷九鼎於洛邑). Those vases might be considered a sort of regalia of the empire. Originally cast by Yu, they had passed from the Hsia dynasty to Shang, and were now the property of the House of Chow. See a detailed account of them in the 左傳, under the year a.c. 605 (宣公三年). Sze-ma Ts'uen also gives, in his 'Records of the Chow dynasty,' and probably from some of the lost Books of the Shoo, a conversation between the duke of Chow and Woo, in which the latter says, 'On the south I look to San-t'ao (there is still the mountain of San-t'ao, to the south-west of the district

寅、五、洛、攻、以、太、日、○、則、既
位、日、汭、位、庶、保、庚、越、經、得
成。甲、越、于、殷、乃、戊、三、營。卜、

- 3 set about laying out the plans. On Käng-suh, the third day after, he led the people of Yin to prepare the various sites on the north of the Lō; and this work was completed on the fifth day, Kē-yin.

city of Sang (嵩縣); on the north I look, and see the towns near the Yoh [this is supposed to be the T'ao-hang mountain, north of the Ho, on the border between Shan-se and Ho-nan; see the 'Tribute of Yu,' Part II., par. 1]; when I look round, I see the Ho; and again I behold the Lō and the E' (我南望三塗, 北望嶽鄩, 顧詹有河, 粵詹洛伊). Ts'een adds that Woo laid out or built a settlement for Chow on the spot, and went away (營周居於洛邑而後去). These passages make it plain that Woo had fixed on Lō, at the time of his conquest of Shang, as the proper capital for his dynasty, and had taken measures to make it so. There was already, it is likely, some settlement at the place, which he enlarged. His locating at it the vases of Yu was a sufficient declaration to all the empire of his purpose. And that purpose had not been forgotten by the duke of Chow. When we bring together all the passages referring to Lō, the natural conclusion is that he had been gradually enlarging the place, and had even removed to it the more dangerous among the old adherents of Yin who still continued disaffected to the new rule. Up to the time when the action of this Book commences, however, nothing had been done towards the building of the palace and other structures which were the necessary appendages to it, and the planning of all these was, I think, the special mission entrusted to the duke of Shao.

In the statistical account of the empire under the present dynasty, it is stated that the remains of the ancient city of Lō,—what was called 成周城, 'the capital of the completed or established Chow,' are 30 li on the north-east of the pres. city of Lōh-yang (lat. 34° 43', N.; lon. 114° 4', W.), and those of the old city of Ho-nan, what was the 'imperial city' (王城) and 'the eastern Capital' of Chow—are 5 li on the west of it. The imperial city got the name of Ho-nan (河南) about the year B.C. 500, when the emperor King (敬王) left it, and took up his residence in the 成周城. It may add to these notices of Lō, that notwithstanding the wishes of king Woo and his labours, king Ching continued to reside at Hao; it was not till the reign of Ping (平王) that the

court was removed to the east, B.C. 769.

惟太保先周公相宅.—that the Grand-qua-tien (see Bk. XX., p. 5) was the duke of Shao; it is nowhere said in the Book itself, but the title and the prefatory note (see page 10) are sufficient evidence on the point. 先 may be construed in the 1st tou or the 3d, 相—視, 'to survey.' 宅.—K'ang Shing gives for this, very aptly,—可定居處, 'the places which might be fixed for residence.' This character does not denote so much 'a dwelling,' as the site of a dwelling. 越若至于洛.—Ts'ue takes 越若來 as simply a conjunction (古語辭).—our 'thereupon.' Attempts have been made to translate the character, Medhurst renders them—'proceeding leisurely on his journey,' which might be taken as a translation of Gan-kwō's 於順來, but he wrongly joins them to the preceding clause. Others (see Lin Che-k'ue is &c.) take them as—'so, in obedience to the charge, he came.' Our best plan is to follow the view of Ts'ue.

胙, formed from 月 and 出, 'the moon come forth,' denotes the third day of the month. As this was Ping-woo, the second month must have been 'small,' consisting only of 29 days; and Mow-shin was the 5th of the 3d month. From Fung to Lō was 300 li, so that if Shih commenced his journey, as the critics suppose, on the day Yih-wu of the month before, he must have travelled leisurely enough.

卜宅—用龜卜宅都之地, 'he used the tortoise to divine where the capital should be built.' Wang K'ang-iang observes on 經營, that we are not to understand those terms of any actual work in building, but only of the determination of the dimensions of the wall, the palace or court, the ancestral temple, &c.;—see the 集說.

三日庚戌.—it may be observed that in these three days both Käng-suh and Mow-shin are included. So, in the case of the 'three days' in the last par. 以庶殷攻位于洛汭—庶殷—殷之衆民.

豕邑、午、二、用、越^五于、于、外、○
 一、牛、乃、越、牲、三、新、洛、周、若^四
 ○、一、社、翼、于、日、邑、則、公、翼
 越^六、羊、于、日、營、○、達、朝、日
 七、一、新、戊、牛、巳、○、觀、至、乙

- 4 The day following, being the day Yih-maou, the duke of Chow came in the morning to Lō, and thoroughly surveyed the plans for the new
 5 city. On Tung-sze, the third day after, he offered two bulls as victims in the suburbs; and on the morrow, Mow-woo, at the altar to the spirit of the land in the new city, he sacrificed a bull, a goat,

'all the people of Yin.' This confirms what I have said above about the population of the imperial domain of Yin having already been in part removed to Lō, the city commenced by king Woo.

攻位 describes the marking out on the ground of the foundations of the various structures from the plans of Shih. 洛汭

—see 'The Songs of the five Sons' p. 3.

五日甲寅.—the five days include K'ang-suk and K'ui-yin. The latter was the 11th of the 2d month.

Pp. 4-7. The measures of the duke of Chow.

4 達觀于新邑營—達—徧 'all over.' The duke made a thorough survey of all the Guardian's plans and arrangements for the building of the new city; and, as we conclude from the next two parts, approved of them.

5 用牲于郊牛二.—the disputes about the sacrifice or sacrifices here intended are very warm and lengthy. Tsao says that by 郊 are intended the sacrifice or sacrifices to Heaven and Earth (郊祭天

地也). Whether he meant that the duke of Chow offered two sacrifices,—one to Heaven and one to Earth; or only one sacrifice to Heaven and Earth together, offering the two bulls at the same altar, does not appear. Maou K'uei, supposing that the latter was his view, shows that to sacrifice to Heaven and Earth together was an uncanonical practice. But I should rather think that Tsao meant that two sacrifices were offered, one to Heaven in the southern suburb, and one to Earth in the northern, a single bull being used at each. These sacrifices of course would be on occasion of the marking out the spots for the respective altars. Maou himself thinks that only one sacrifice—that to Heaven—is spoken of, and that two victims are mentioned, because How-tsieh (后稷), as the great ancestor of the House of

Chow, was associated with Heaven at the sacrifices to it. So far he is correct in saying that How-tsieh participated in the usual sacrifices under the Chow dynasty to Heaven, and that there was special provision for a victim-bull to him, and one to the supernal Power. This was the view, moreover, of Gau-kwo. If the text were that 'the duke of Chow sacrificed to Heaven, using two bulls,' I should adopt it. As the text stands, however, I prefer the view given above, and which I have said was probably that of Tsao.

社于新邑,牛一,羊一,豕一.—社—'he offered the sacrifice at the altar to the spirit of the land.' Maou contends that this was the sacrifice to Earth, corresponding to the previous one to Heaven. But the text shows clearly that he is wrong. This sacrifice was offered 于新邑, 'in—i.e., within—the new city,' whereas the sacrifices to Heaven and Earth were both celebrated in the suburbs, outside the city. We are to understand here, beyond doubt, the sacrifice to the spirit of the land, with which there was always associated that to the spirit of the grain. The altars were and still are within the wall of the imperial city. Who the spirits thus sacrificed to were, is a question not easy to determine. It seems to me probable that they were not spirits distinct from God, who was served in the sacrifices to Heaven and Earth. Compare the dictum of Confucius in 'The Doctrine of the Mean,' xix., 6. Whatever opinion may be held on this point, the human worthy associated at the sacrifice to the spirit of the land was Kow-lung (勾龍), minister of Works to the very ancient emperor Chuen-hsueh, whose place on the list of Chinese sovereigns is immediately after Hwang-ti. The human associate with the spirit of the grain was How-tsieh. These same names appear in the ritual of the present dynasty (see the

大清通禮,卷之七. A long note on this paragraph by the editors of Yang-ching's Shuo is well worth the attention of the student.

日甲子，周公
乃朝用書命
庶殷侯甸男
邦伯。○厥既
命殷庶。庶殷
丕作。○太保
乃以庶邦冢
君出取幣，乃
復入錫周公
曰：拜手稽首

- 6 and a pig. After seven days, on K'ên-tsze, in the morning, from his written specifications he gave their several charges to the people of Yin, and to the chiefs of the States from the How, Teen, and Nan
7 tenures. When the people of Yin had thus received their orders, they arose with vigour to do their work.
8 II. The Great-guardian then went out with the hereditary princes of the various States to bring their offerings; and when he entered again, he gave them to the duke of Chow, saying, "With my head in my hands and bowed to the ground, I present these before the

6. 用書.—I have translated 書 by 'written specifications.' The duke had employed the six days after Ting-sze (that day is not included in the 七日) in writing out the work which was to be done in executing the Guardian's plans, with all the necessary specifications, and especially of the parties to whom the different parts of it should be assigned. The Chiefs of countries (邦伯) in the tenures specified must have been the pastors of the provinces (州牧). They would give their instructions to the princes belonging to their respective jurisdictions, who again would issue the necessary commands to the companies of their people whom they had brought with them to labour on the work in hand. 7. Liu Che-k'o observes on this:—"The duke of Shao completed all his plans for Ls in 7 days, from Mow-ship to K'ên-yin inclusive; then came the duke of Chow, and in ten days he was ready with all his specifications, and the work was grandly in hand:—so earnest and prompt were they with their measures. All together, from the day Yih-wu, when king Ching came to Fuang, to the day K'ên-tsze, there elapsed but one month. The foundation of 10,000 years' possession and prosperity was laid in one month! Future ages could not show such an achievement!" The observation must be accepted with due allowance for its grandiloquence.

Ch. II. Pp. 2-23. THE ANNOUNCEMENT.

8. The old interpreters all thought that king Ching was present in Ls when this announcement was made. It may be well to give the exposition of Gan-kwô. On 太保至復入 he says:—"諸侯公卿並觀于王王與周公俱至文不見

者王無事也。召公與諸侯出取幣，欲因大會顯周公。" The various princes, the dukes and high nobles appeared together before the king. The king and the duke of Chow had both come to Ls. The text is silent about the king's coming, because there was nothing to be done by him at that time. The duke of Shao and all the princes went out to fetch the ceremonial offerings, wishing to take occasion of the great assembly to glorify the duke of Chow. On 錫周公至若公 he says:—"召公以幣入，稱成王命，賜周公曰：敢拜手稽首，陳王所宜順周公之事。" The duke of Shao then entered with the offerings, and, proclaiming the command of king Ching, gave them to the duke of Chow, saying, "I venture, with my face to my hands and my head to the ground, to set forth the things in which the king ought to act in accordance with the duke of Chow." On the last clause he says:—"召公指戒成王而以衆殷諸侯於自乃御治事，爲辭謙也。諸侯在故托焉。" The duke of Shao's aim was to admonish king Ching, and that he addressed himself to the multitudes of Yin and the princes, down to the managers of affairs (see Ying-ta's paraphrase), was the language of modesty. The princes were present, and he took the opportunity to address himself to the king through them.

K'ung-shing's view of the passage was substantially the same as that of Gan-kwô. That the king was present, and that the design of

旅王若公，誥告庶殷，越自鳴呼，皇天上帝，改厥元子，茲大國殷之命，惟王受命，無疆惟休，亦無疆惟恤，鳴呼，其奈何弗

king and your Grace. Announcements for the instruction of the multitudes of Yin must come from you with whom is the management of affairs.

- 9 "Oh! God dwelling in the great heavens has changed his decree in favour of his eldest son, and this great dynasty of Yin. Our king has received that decree. Unbounded is the happiness connected with it, and unbounded is the anxiety:—Oh! how can he be other than reverent?

Shih was to glorify the duke of Chow for the services he had performed:—these are assumptions, for which I can find no support in the tenour of the Book itself. That the offerings were presented to the duke of Chow for himself is broadly contrary to the last paragraph. The interpretation, moreover, of 旅王若公

and of 越自乃御事, is intolerably harsh and forced. In the translation I have preferred to follow the views of Tsao, who himself followed Chou He. There is a great assembly of the two dukes and the princes who were with them at L.3. The duke of Chow is about to return, or at least to send a communication, to king Ching in Haou. The duke of Shao, revering the king's majesty in the regent, takes the opportunity to send by him the loyal presents of the princes, and his own loyal wishes and advices to the court. And there was the greater propriety in his doing so now, as it was understood that the duke of Chow was about to withdraw from the duties of the regency, and the king might be expected to take the administration of affairs into his own hands.

以庶邦冢君—以—與; see the dict in sec. 冢君,—comp. Bk I., Pt I., p. 2.

旅王若公—旅—陳, 'to set forth,' 'to exhibit;' with reference to the offerings, which would be set down and displayed in the court below the hall where they were assembled. The 若 is very perplexing. We have seen how the old interpreters tried to manage it. Tsao takes it as simply = 與, 'and.' This gives a good enough sense, but I must confess that I cannot think of a similar use of the term elsewhere.

誥告至末—this is an indirect call to the king to come before the people in his own person, pointing out to them the

course of their duty, and leading in the way of it. The duke delicately avoids any direct mention of the king, but he really intends him as 'the manager of affairs.' In this way we see the force of the 自, which the old interpreters could not manage.

Pp. 9—12. With the favour shown by God to the king there was connected much anxiety. He must reverently cherish the thought of his responsibilities and duties; learn from the experience of the former dynasties; and listen to the advice of his wise and aged ministers.

9. 皇天上帝,—see on 皇上帝, in 'The Announcement of Tang,' p. 2. 元子,—see on Bk.,

VIII., p. 1. Here and in par. 13, it is a designation equivalent to 'the emperor.' When he is called Heaven's eldest son, the mind thinks of the favour which must rest upon him, and may well deem his state secure. K'ang-shing says here:—凡人皆云天之子,天子爲之首耳. 'All men may be called the sons of Heaven; the emperor is the head or the eldest of them.'

惟王受命,—the king here is king Ching,—our king, who was now become God's eldest son. 曷其奈

何不敬,—this puts the duty of being reverent in the strongest way. On the meaning of this 'being reverent' Tsao says, that 'it is being sincere and without guile, the eyes, ears, words, and movements all being accordant with reason; the likings and dislikings, the usings and refusings never contrary to the will of Heaven. When one's virtue thus agrees with that of Heaven, he will surely be able to receive the bright favouring decree of Heaven' (敬則

敬。○天^十既遐終大
邦殷之命，茲殷多
先哲王在天，越厥
後王後民，茲服厥
命，厥終智藏，瘝在
夫知保抱攜持厥
婦子，以哀籲天，徂
厥亡，出執，嗚呼，天
亦哀于四方民，其
眷命用懋，王其疾

- 10 "When Heaven rejected and made an end of the decree in favour of the great State of Yin, there were many of the former intelligent kings of Yin in heaven. The king, however, who had succeeded to them, the last of their race, from the time of his entering into their appointment, proceeded in such a way as at last to keep the wise in obscurity and the vicious in office. The poor people in such a case, carrying their children and leading their wives, made their moan to Heaven. They even fled away, but were apprehended again. Oh! Heaven had compassion on the people of the four quarters; its favouring decree lighted on our earnest founders. Let the king sedulously cultivate the virtue of reverence.

誠實無妄視聽言動一循
乎理好惡用捨不違乎天
與天同德固能受天明命
也。

10. Much of the language of this paragraph, it is observed by Ts'ao, is difficult of explanation; but there is a general agreement as to the meaning of most of it. King Ching is reminded of the fall of the dyn. of Yin through the misgovernment and wickedness of Shou, and how it was because of the earnest virtue of his own predecessors that they had been called to the sovereignty of the empire.—Let it be his to imitate them.

天既至在天—
遐—遠, 'far,' 'distant;' here, as I under-
stand it, —'to reject.' 終—絕, 'to make
an end of.' It is difficult to give the force of

茲 Perhaps we should join it emphatically
to 殷—'Of this Yin, thus rejected, many of the
former kings, &c.' The speaker believed that
the good kings were in heaven, and he intimates
that it might therefore have been expected that
they would have been able to preserve their
dynasty; but that could not be.

越厥 至瘝在—越 is here —'but,' 'however.'

後王後民—both these phrases
seem to be best taken of Shou, who is the subject
of all this portion. Gan-kwé, however, under-
stood 厥後王後民 茲服厥命
of good sovereigns and their people, who worthily
continued the way of their predecessors. It is
only at 厥終, 'the last of them,' that the
tyrant comes with him upon the stage.

瘝—病, 'to distress.' 瘝在—病民
之人在位 夫知至籲天

—on 夫知 Wang Suh says:—匹夫知
欲安其室, 'the ordinary people, who
knew enough to wish to secure the comfort of
their families.' Compare 匹夫 in Ana, IX.,
xxv. This is as satisfactory as anything which
can be said about the 夫知 here. 夫 should
be read in the upper first tone.

徂厥 亡出執—往而逃亡 出見拘
執 無地自容, as in the translation.

其眷命用懋—'it looked round
and gave its appointment to those who were
employing themselves earnestly on virtue.'

眷命 in 'The Counsels of Yu,' p. 4.

敬德。○相古先民有
 夏。天迪從子保。面稽
 天若。今時既墜厥命。
 今相有殷。天迪格保。
 面稽天若。今時既墜
 厥命。○今冲子嗣。則
 無遺壽者。曰其稽我
 古人之德。矧曰其有
 能稽謀自天。○嗚呼。
 有王雖小。元子哉。其

- 11 "Examining the men of antiquity, there was the founder of the Hea-
 dynasty. Heaven guided his mind, allowed his descendants to suc-
 ceed him, and protected them. He acquainted himself with Heaven,
 and was obedient.—But in process of time the decree in his favour
 fell to the ground. So also when we examine the case of Yin. Hea-
 ven guided its founder, so that he corrected the errors of Shang, and
 it protected his descendants. He also acquainted himself with Heaven,
 and was obedient.—But now the decree in favour of him has fallen to
 12 the ground. Our king has now come to the throne in his youth:—
 let him not slight the aged and experienced, for it may be said
 of them that they have studied the virtuous conduct of our ancient
 worthies, and still more, that they have matured their plans in
 the light of Heaven.
 13 "Oh! although the king is young, yet is he the eldest son of
 Heaven. Let him but effect a great harmony with the people, and

Ying-ta gives for the clause:—其眷顧天
 下選擇賢聖命用勉力行
 敬者以爲民主 11. By 有
 夏, 'the holder of Hea,' we are to understand
 Yu, as the founder of the Hea dynasty. So by
 有殷 Tang is meant. 先民—古
 人, 'the ancients.' To 相古 the 今相
 afterwards responds. 天迪從子保
 —天敢迪之, 又從其子而保
 佑之, as in the translation. In the case of
 Tang, it was not necessary to take notice of
 the transmission of the throne to his descend-
 ants. The hereditary principle had long been
 established. 面(—鄉)稽天若—
 仰考天心敬順不違, 'he looked

up and examined the mind of Heaven, reverent-
 ly obedient and not opposing it.' The first
 今時, must be understood as in the transla-
 tion. 13. 無遺壽者—無一母
 imperative. 考.—see Bk IX., p. 5. The 曰
 may be taken as in the translation (and it is
 better taken so), or we may understand it, with
 Kiang Shing, as—富曰, 'he—our young
 king—ought to say.' On the 稽古人之
 德, it is said that they could thus give prece-
 dents and authorities in every case they were
 consulted on, and on the 稽謀自天, that
 in their advice there would thus be nothing
 contrary to what was right.

Pp. 13-18. The importance of the king's posi-
 tion, and duties to which he must address himself,
 especially new on his personally undertaking the

不能誠于小民，今休王不敢後，用顧畏于民，^{十四節}王來紹上帝，自服于土中，且曰：其作大邑，自時配皇天，祀于上下，其時中，又王厥有成命，治民今休。

that will be the blessing of the present time. Let not the king presume to be remiss in this, but continually regard and stand in awe of the perilousness of the people.

- 14 "Let the king come here as the vicegerent of God, and undertake himself the duties of government in the centre of the land. Tan said, 'Now that this great city has been built, from henceforth he may be the mate of great Heaven; from henceforth he may reverently sacrifice to the upper and lower spirits; from henceforth he may in this central spot administer successful government.' Thus shall the king enjoy the favouring regard of Heaven all complete, and the government of the people will now be prosperous.

responsibilities of the past. The whole is enforced by a second reference to the previous dynasties.

13. 元子哉，^{we on par. 9} 其不能誠于小民今休，^{the} 其 ^{is} strongly hortative. 誠一和，^{'harmony,' 'to}

be harmonious.' We had the char. before in 'The Counsels of Yu,' p. 21, where the meaning was different. The 'Daily Explanation' thus paraphrases:—王其大能誠和小民，使之歡欣鼓舞，一則民情安而天命固，豈不為今日之休美乎？王不敢後，

—'let the king not postpone'—what? His effecting a great harmony with the people. And that was to be accomplished by means of 'the virtue of reverence.' *San-ko* put a comma at 用, and interpreted—當不敢後能用之士，必任之為先，

'let the king not leave in the background capable officers, but make employment of them a primary consideration.' This is far-fetched; and so is his explanation of 暑, the erroneousness of which is pointed out in the dict. The character—險, 'precipitous,' 'perilous,' 14. 王來紹上帝，自服于土中，一紹上帝，

'to continue God.' We often find it said

of emperors, and especially of the founders of dynasties that they 繼天立極, 'carried on the work of Heaven, and set up the perfect model.' There underlies such language the view that Heaven delegates its way to the Powers ordained by it. Compare, for the general sentiment, *Hk. I., Pt. I., p. 7*; and for the use of 紹, *Hk. VII., p. 3*. 自服于土中

—labour himself in the midst of the land. The 'himself' must have reference to the young king, now undertaking the responsibilities of govt. 服—行事, 'to labour.' Lo is said to be 'in the middle of the land' from its central position. It must have been, in the time of Chow, about the central spot of the empire, and was therefore well fitted to be the seat of administration. The commentators speak of it as not only in the middle of the land, but as 'in the centre of heaven and earth,' and they undertake to show how this was determined by means of a dial! See the whole geodesy of the duke of Chow, in the *Chow Le, Hk. IX., pp. 26—31*.

Lin Ch'ao-k'ue takes these two clauses as historical, and considers them to be decisive on the point of the king's being at this time in Lā. It seems to me much more natural to read them in the imperative mood. 且日至中

父, —the duke of Shao supports his advice by using the similar language of the duke of Chow, whom he names 旦, in accordance with the rule that 'ministers should be called by their

夏服天命惟有
我不敢知曰有
可不監于有殷
監于有夏亦不
德○我不可不
作所不可不敬
日其邁○王敬
周御事節性惟
事比介于我有
○王先服殷御

十五節

- 15 "Let the king first bring under his influence the managers of affairs of Yin, associating them with the managers of affairs of our dynasty of Chow. This will regulate their *perverted* natures, and they will make daily advancement.
- 16 "Let the King make reverence the resting-place of his mind. He may not but maintain the virtue of reverence.
- 17 "We should by all means survey the dynasties of Hea and Yin. I do not presume to know and say, 'The dynasty of Hea was to enjoy the favouring decree of Heaven for so many years,' nor do I

names in the presence of the emperor.

皇天—see on Pt. IV., Bk. V., Pt. III., p. 3.

慈視于上下—compare 上下

神祇 in the 'Announcement of Tang,' p.

3. On 中义 Wang Tsaoen says that it denotes that 'from the centre the king would diffuse his rule throughout the four quarters of the empire' (自中而布治於四方). Here the words of Tsao seem to terminate.

成命—the completed appointment. The will of Heaven in favour of the House of Chow would now be put beyond doubt and beyond the risk of being assailed.

Pp. 15, 16. The king would have in the first place to attach to his House the disaffected officers of the previous dynasty; but let him bear in mind that he must always set the example of the virtue of reverence in himself.

服 is here a transitive verb. The 'Daily Explanation' defines it by 化 'to transform.'

比介于我有周御事—比

—親 'to be near to.' 介—助, 'to assist,' to co-operate with. This extension of confidence to the officers of Yin would be the way to win their confidence and attachment, and the associating them with the friends of the present dynasty would lead them to change their views.

節性惟日其邁—
Tsao gives for this—以節其驕淫之

性則日進於善而不己—
in the translation. Lin Che-ke contends that by 性 we should not understand the *perverted* nature, but the *good* nature, which was still in the officers of Yin, and had only to be properly directed. His words are:—節之者非強其所無也, 以其所固有之性還以治之, 法其不善而反之善也, 有以節之則臣民將遷善遠罪而不自知, 惟日其進於善也. The difference of view is more in words than in reality.

18. After all, the *primum mobile* of govt. must be the personal character and example of the king. 王敬作所—王當以敬爲居心之所. The 所 is used like 止 in the 知止 of 'The Great Learning.'

Pp. 17, 18. The lessons to be learned from the *ten previous dynasties*; and the exhortation which they should have now at the commencement of the present dynasty, and of the king's personal entrance on his responsibilities.

17. Compare p. 11. The 有夏 and 有殷 here, however, are to be extended to all the sovereigns of the two dynasties. Moreover, what was said above had reference more especially to the establishment of those dynasties by the blessing of Heaven; here the subject is their fall, for want of 'the

歷年我不敢知曰不其
 延惟不敬厥德乃早墜
 厥命我不敢知曰有殷
 受天命惟有歷年我不
 敢知曰不其延惟不敬
 厥德乃早墜厥命○今
 王嗣受厥命我亦惟茲
 二國命嗣若功王乃初
 服○嗚呼若生子罔不
 在厥初生自貽哲命今

presume to know and say, 'It could not continue longer.' The fact was simply that, for want of the virtue of reverence, the decree in its favour prematurely fell to the ground. Similarly, I do not presume to know and say, 'The dynasty of Yin was to enjoy the favouring decree of Heaven for *so many years*,' nor do I presume to say, 'It could not continue longer.' The fact simply was that, for want of the virtue of reverence, the decree in its favour prematurely fell to the ground. The king has now inherited the decree,—the same decree, I consider, which belonged to those two dynasties. Let him seek to inherit the virtues of their meritorious sovereigns;—especially at this commencement of his duties.

- 19 "Oh! it is as on the birth of a son, when all depends on the training of his early life, through which he may secure his wisdom in the future, as if it were decreed to him. Now Heaven may

virtue of reverence' in their rulers. The 'Daily Explanation' says that the first 我 is to be understood of the king, and the others of the duke of Shann himself. It is much better to take the character always in the plural.

有夏服天命惟有歷年—服天命 is more than 受天命, which most of the paraphrases give for it. It indicates not only that Hsia received the favouring decree of Heaven, but that it was under that decree. The guardian will not venture to say that Heaven had only decreed so many years to its rule.

18. 厥命—the 厥 is to be understood of 天. 'Heaven.' The next clause is in apposition with this, 惟 being—思. Gao-kwé takes it differently, and explains down to 功 where

he ends the paragraph thus:—其夏殷也, 繼受其王命, 亦惟當以此夏殷長短之命爲監戒, 繼順其功德者而法則之. He overlooks the 我 before 亦惟. 嗣若功, 王乃初服—當嗣(一繼)其有功者, 況王乃新邑初政, 服行教化之始乎. This must be the meaning, but the language is very elliptical.

Pp. 19—23. The great issues depending on the king's son, on his assuming the government, taking the right course; and the Guardian's anxiety that by his virtuous reverence and gentleness he should lay the foundations of permanent prosperity.

19. 嗚呼至哲命—by 初生

天其命哲，命吉凶，
命歷年，知今我初
服。○宅新邑，肆惟
王其疾敬德，王其
德之用，祈天永命。
○其惟王勿以小
民淫用非彝，亦敢
殄戮用乂，民若有
功。○其惟王位在

have decreed wisdom to our king; it may have decreed good fortune or bad; it may have decreed a long course of years:—we only know that now is with him the commencement of his duties.

20 "Dwelling in the new city, let the king now sedulously cultivate the virtue of reverence. When he is all-devoted to this virtue, he may pray to Heaven for a long-abiding decree in his favour.

21 "In the position of king, let him not, because of the excesses of the people in violation of the laws, presume also to rule by the violent infliction of death. When the people are regulated gently, the merit of government is seen.

must understand not the infancy, but the early years, when the child becomes the proper subject of education. Then such a foundation of goodness may be laid, that the youth shall 'himself hand down an appointment of wisdom.' He shall appear to be, shall really be, wise through this training, as much as if Heaven had previously decreed him to be so.

命歷年
—或命歷年長久。After this we must understand 皆不可預知, 'all these things we cannot know beforehand.'

20. The Guardian evidently supposes that the king will make the new city which was founded the seat of his government. The meaning of 今, 'now,' for 肆 seems to suit the connection here better than that of 故 or 遂. The 其 is 王其德之用 gives to the second part of the par. a slightly hortative force. Chiu Tih-seu observes upon the sentiment, 'The favour of Heaven is entirely just, and is not to be obtained by praying for it. The text tells the king to pray, because to be all-devoted to the practice of virtue is prayer without praying. (天命至公, 不可以求而得也。曰祈者, 蓋一於用德, 乃

不祈之祈). Compare with this the words of Confucius about himself, Ana., VII., xxxiv. 21. I read 其惟王 to 戮用

is one sentence, and a good instance of the long sentences of the Shoo. Gan-kwō and K'ang Shing, indeed, break it up into two, and understand the first part as meaning—'Let not the king go to excess in employing the people, beyond the regular periods when he may call them out in the public service.' By doing so, he would, as Mencius phrases it, rob the people of their time, and take them away from their necessary labours in agriculture (see Mencius, page 11). But the introduction of such a topic seems foreign to the style of the Announcement. It involves, moreover, taking the 亦敢 which

follow as—亦勿敢, which is very harsh. The subject of avoiding punishments in the administration in govt. was a favourite one with king Ching and his ministers. See many passages in Bka. IX., and X. 民若有功,

—'when the people accord there is merit. They must be ruled,' 'in harmony with their feelings, and the true laws of their nature.' Ts'ao observes that the people may be compared to the water of a stream, when it is overflowing and spreading abroad; it is acting contrary to its nature. But if you dam it up, you only make the evil worse. Lead it into its proper course, and you accom-

德元小民乃惟刑
用于天下越王顯
○上下勤恤其曰
我受天命丕若有
夏歷年式勿替有
殷歷年欲王以小
民受天永命○拜
手稽首曰予小臣
敢以王之讐民百
君子越友民保受

22 "It is for him who is in the position of king to overtop all with his virtue. In this case the people will imitate him throughout the whole empire, and the king will become more illustrious.

23 "Let the king and his ministers labour with a common anxiety, saying, 'We have received the decree of Heaven, and it shall be great as the long-continued years of Hea,—it shall not fail of the long-continued years of Yin.' I wish the king through the inferior people to receive the long-abiding decree of Heaven."

24 III. *The duke of Shao* then did obeisance with his head to his hands and bowed to the ground, and said, "I, a small minister, presume with the king's heretofore hostile people, with all his officers, and his loyal friendly people, to maintain and receive his majesty's dread

plish the purpose.

22. 其惟王位

在德元—He being king, his position is at the head of all virtue. It is simpler to take 元 as—首, than to give it the substantial meaning which it has in the first diagram of the Yih King, as that quality in Heaven which corresponds to 仁, 'benevolence,' 'goodness complete' in man.

小民乃惟刑

(—法) 用于天下,—the inferior people on their part will be found imitating him and employing virtue throughout the empire.

越王顯— and the king will be illustrious, i.e. the virtue of the king will thereby be more widely and brilliantly displayed.

23. 上下勤恤—by 上下 we

are to understand 君臣, 'the sovereign and his ministers.' 恤—as in p. 9, —憂, 'to be anxious.' Then the 其 in 其曰 is strongly hortative.

式勿替云云,—both

Gan-kwé and Ts'ao define 式 by 用, but it is difficult to find a place for any other meaning

of it here than as a conjunction = 'and.' The 'Daily Explanation,' after defining it by 用, is obliged in the paraphrase to substitute 又 for it. 勿替—'we are determined that

it shall not fail of.' At 欲 the duke of Shao speaks again in his own person. The 'people,' ruled over as he desired, would wish the rule to be perpetual, and the wish of the people would be the wish of Heaven.

Ch. III. Pt. 24. We must understand 召公 before 拜手稽首. The Guardian here winds up his address. He will do his duty with the people under his charge. It resolves for the king to secure the permanence of the dynasty. In the meantime he presents the offerings of the princess, to aid at the sacrifices to be offered, on the inauguration of the new capital.

王之讐民—these are the people of Yin that had been removed to Ló, and could still not be spoken of as other than disaffected and hostile.

百君子,—compare the same phrase in Ek. X., p. 7. It is used here

王威命 明德王 末有成 命王亦 顯我非 敢勤惟 恭奉幣 用供王 能祈天 永命。

command and brilliant virtue. That the king should finally obtain the decree all complete; and that he should become illustrious,—this I dare not to labour about. I only respectfully bring these offerings to present to his Majesty, to assist in his prayers to Heaven for its long-abiding decree.

as complimentary to the ministers and officers of Yin, in whom loyal feelings might arise when they were thus spoken of. The 'friendly people' are the adherents of the House of Chou.

威命 must be the king's charge for the building of Lo. 明德 has more sound than sense. 王末至亦顯.—this describes the king's consolidation of the dynasty,

and transmitting the crown to his descendants. That must be the king's own work. The Guardian would not presume to think that his labours could effect it.

惟恭云云.—the king would be coming to Lo, and by solemn sacrifices inaugurate the new city, and then the offerings would be useful. This is a delicate way of conveying to him those expressions of the princes' fealty.

Wang Pih's 'Doubts' about this Book and the next are the following—

三山林氏說之所終東萊先儒之說始有未子知言王缺放諸固亦雜者洛位焉有周公之詞焉此洛致若疾則兩民成欲是殿雖第諸末誠位政政正蘇然此相新政服以此作頑欲止此反殺也來為義失親為王復義乎也載新初則義當遷周公治洛詞反殺也來為義失親為王復義乎也雖王乃生一恐洛周成治首詞條子解復未未代政辟何此無前成王初第洛營禮王公之就程王有固此公歸厥初避能詒以曰厥新政洛烝於周公中易事王有固此公歸厥初避能召是已在新若卜禋政命周冊未之答得王前周公政政而不觀也止而不王白洛明復辟冊而皆辟作安成王幼周復歸嫌以一事後詞罔為明相節洛即如末此復欲位然成王長尹謂所之一戒生子敬頗節是王歸一於一儒嘗精也也成如氏亦愚

洛致若疾則兩民成欲是殿雖第諸末誠位政政正蘇然此相新政服以此作頑欲止此反殺也來為義失親為王復義乎也載新初則義當遷周公治洛詞反殺也來為義失親為王復義乎也雖王乃生一恐洛周成治首詞條子解復未未代政辟何此無前成王初第洛營禮王公之就程王有固此公歸厥初避能詒以曰厥新政洛烝於周公中易事王有固此公歸厥初避能召是已在新若卜禋政命周冊未之答得王前周公政政而不觀也止而不王白洛明復辟冊而皆辟作安成王幼周復歸嫌以一事後詞罔為明相節洛即如末此復欲位然成王長尹謂所之一戒生子敬頗節是王歸一於一儒嘗精也也成如氏亦愚

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XIII. THE ANNOUNCEMENT CONCERNING LÖ.

○ 明 復 曰 稽 拜 周 洛
王 辟 子 朕 首 手 公 誥

[In the third month when the moon began to wane, the duke of Chow commenced the foundations and proceeded to build the new city at Lō of the eastern States. The people from every quarter assembled in great harmony. From the How, Teen, Nan, Ts'ae, and Wei domains the various officers stimulated this harmony of the people, and introduced them to the business there was for Chow. The duke of Chow encouraged them all to diligence, and made a great announcement about the execution of the works.]

- 1 I. The duke of Chow bowed his head to his hands and then to the ground, saying, "Herewith I report the *execution of my commission*

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—洛誥. 'The Announcement about Lō.' The prefatory note (see page 10) says:—'The duke of Shao having surveyed the localities, the duke of Chow went to build this capital, called Ching Chow, and sent a messenger to announce the divinations. With reference to this, the ANNOUNCEMENT ABOUT LÖ WAS MADE.' As will be seen from the next note, however, the action of the Book goes many months beyond the report about the survey and divinations; but it all has reference, more or less, to the city of Lō. It may well be said to be about Lō. The use of the term 'An- nouncement' has its difficulties, and must be taken more vaguely than in the account of the Announcements of the Shoo which I have given on page 177. The Book is found in both texts.

CONTENTS. Ts'ae says:—'The arrangements for the building of Lō having been made, the duke of Chow sent a messenger to inform the king of the result of his divinations. The historian recorded this as the announcement about Lō, and at the same time recorded a dialogue between the king and his minister, and how the king charged the duke to remain at Lō and conduct the government of it.' He goes on to

say more particularly:—'Parr. 1—3 contain the duke's message about his divinations; and par. 4 gives the king's reply. Parr. 5—13 are occupied with instructions from the duke to the king on the measures which he should pursue on taking up his residence at Lō. In par. 14—21, the king charges the duke to remain at Lō, and undertake its government. In par. 22—24, the duke responds, accepting the charge, and dwells on the duties which the king and himself would have to discharge. Parr. 25—28 relate the action of the duke on a certain message and gift from the king, intended for his special honour. In par. 29—31, the historian relates to sacrifices offered in Lō by the king, and the proclamation which he issued, and adds how long the duke continued in his government;—showing how the duke began the city and completed it, and how king Ching, after offering the sacrifices and inaugurating the government, returned to Hsao, and did not after all make his capital at Lō.'

The Seven divisions thus indicated, present themselves to any careful student of the Book. Mao, K'uei, differing widely from Ts'ae in his view of the general tenour, and of particular

passages and terms, gives the same, only including par. 22-28 in one. Many critics make more to do than is necessary about the want of historical order in the Book, and suppose that portions have been lost, and other portions transposed. I have already given my opinion that the first paragraph in 'The Announcement by the Prince of K'ang' should be the first par. here. As to other portions being lost, the Book may be explained without resorting to so violent a supposition. It is not by any means so plain as it might be, but I am inclined to think that it is as plain as it ever was.

The first paragraph from the Announcement to the Prince of K'ang. For the reasons why this par. should be edited here and not as a portion of Bk. IX., see page 388.

三月 哉生魄.—see on Bk. III., pp. 1 and 4. This would be the 16th day of the month. In the last Book, pp. 4-8, we saw that on the 12th day of the 3d month, the duke of Chow arrived at Ló; on the 14th and 15th, he sacrificed to Heaven and Earth, and to the spirit of the land, while on the 21st he was ready with specifications of all the works which were to be executed. It would appear from this par. that on the 16th he made a commencement with the foundations of some of the works.

作新大邑 于東國洛—the 'Daily Explanation' gives for this—作新大邑于成周之東洛邑之地而有王城下都之建焉, 'he made the new great city on the east of Ching Chow, in the territory of the city of Ló, and there was the building both of the imperial city and of the lower capital. This may be understood by referring to the note on p. 2 of the last Book; but the text does not so clearly indicate that the building of the two cities is spoken of. The 成周城 went also by the name of 下都 'the lower capital.'

侯甸男邦采衛.—see the figure of the domains of Chow on p. 149. The five of them which constituted, with the imperial domain, the 'Middle Kingdom' are here enumerated in their proper order, though why the 邦 should be introduced between 男 and 采 I cannot explain.

百工播民和—百工=百官, 'all the officers,' including, probably, from the princes downwards; 播民和—宣揚民心之和—'spread abroad the harmony of the people.'

見士于周.—士 is taken as—事, 'business,' the work to be done. Ch'in Leih explains 見士 by 朝見而趨事, 'presented themselves as if at court, and hastened to the work.' We do not know well what is made of the phrase.

周公成勳—the 'Daily Explana-

tion' takes this as—'The duke of Chow himself and all with him laboured diligently.' Gen-kwó explains it as in the translation. I understand 詰治 as meaning that the duke now announced in a general way the works which were to be executed, preparatory to the specifications which were issued five days after.

Ch. I. Pp. 1-3. THE DUKE'S MESSAGE TO THE KING, INFORMING HIM WHAT HE HAD DONE, AND LAYING BEFORE HIM MAPS, PLANS, AND THE RESULT OF HIS DIVINATIONS.

1. There is a controversy which it is not easy to settle on the meaning of 復 in this par., and the view to be taken of the whole Book depends very much upon it. Gen-kwó took 復 as—還政, 'to restore the government.' He explains the whole par. thus:—周公盡禮致敬言我復還明君之政於子成王, 年二十成人故必歸政而退老. 'The duke of Chow, in the most ceremonious way and with the utmost reverence, said, "I return the government of the intelligent sovereign to you, my son." By his son he meant king Ching, who was now 20, and full grown. It was requisite that the duke should return the govt. to him, and withdraw into retirement in his old age.' This interpretation, which is still held by many, was not doubted till the Sung dynasty, when the critic Wang (? Wang Gen-shih) was the first to suggest that 復 should be taken as meaning 'to report,'

'to announce the fulfilment of a commission,' referring to the phrase 反命, which is common in Mencius, and to the use of 復 alone by him, Bk. I, Pt. 1, vii. 10.—有復於王者. The duke, he contended, had never been anything but regent; he could not speak of himself as restoring the govt. This view was adopted by Ts'ao, and became current through his commentary.

Maou K'e-ling refers to the 1st words of Pt. IV., Bk. VI.—伊尹既復政厥辟 as decisive in favour of the older view; but the use of the 政 there after 復 makes the passages by no means parallel, nor was the position of the duke of Chow to king Ching the same as that of E Yin to T'ao-kes. It must be allowed at the same time that Mencius' 復於王 is different from the simple 復子 of the text.

On the whole, I must incline to the view adopted by Ts'ao. In the answer of the king to the duke's message there is not a word about his accepting the restoration or resignation of the govt. It was understood between them, and throughout the empire, that the time was come for the king to undertake the duties of the administration himself, and we shall see hereafter in this Book that the duke expresses his purpose to go into retirement, now that the building of Ló was in a state of forwardness;

如弗敢及天
基命定命予
乃膺保大相
東土其基作
民明辟。○予
惟乙卯朝至
于洛師我卜
河朔黎水我
乃卜澗水東
灋水西惟洛

- 2 to my son, my intelligent prince. The king appeared as if he would not presume to determine the founding and the fixing of our appointment by Heaven, whereupon I followed the *Grand-Guardian*, and made a great survey of this eastern region, with a view to found the place where he might become the intelligent sovereign of the people.
- 3 On the day Yih-maou, in the morning, I came to the city of Lō. I first divined concerning the country about the Le water on the north of the Ho. I then divined concerning the east of the Kēn water and the west of the Ch'en water, when the ground near the Lō was

but the most natural interpretation of the text is as in the translation.

The duke's bowing and putting his head to the ground was intended for the king, but performed in the presence of the messenger, who was to carry the report to court. The duke was now in Lō, and the king was probably at Haou. The duke calls the king his 'son,' expressing his affection for him, and he calls him his 'intelligent prince,' giving him honour.

P. 2. The view taken of the former par. affects the meaning which is given to this. Gan-kwō took 如—往 'formerly;' 天基命定命—天始命周家安定 天下之命, 'Heaven's favouring decree when first it charged our House of Chow to tranquillize and settle the empire;' and 予乃膺保—我乃繼文武安天下之道, 'I therefore continued the ways of Wen and Woo to tranquillize the empire.' K'ang Shing, again, taking 復 in the same way, keeps the natural interpretation of 如 as —若, but by 基命 he understands king Wen, 'the first commissioned,' and by 定命, king Woo 'settler or completer of the commission.' In his view of 膺保 he agrees with Gan-kwō, and says that the 基 in 其基—謀 'to plan.' The advocates of the other interpretation of 復 understand by 基命 'the laying the foundations of the appoint-

ment to the empire,' and by 成命 'the securing permanently that appointment'—results which were both to be realized by making Lō the capital of the empire.—Then by 保 is intended the duke of Shao, the 'Grand-guardian' (太保); and 其基作民明辟—其庶幾爲王始作民明辟之地, as in the translation, the 其 having, as often, the signification of 期 'to expect,' 'to aim at.' In this way the par. has a unity and consistency in itself, which we do not find in the other interpretations. I cannot but understand it thus, and doing so I cannot but take the previous 復 as Ts'ao does.

P. 3. 予惟至洛師.—see the last Book, p. 4. Lō is called 師 as being intended to be the capital, where the emperor should reside. See in the dic., 天子所居曰京師. It is needlessly embarrassing the interpretation to make, with Gan-kwō and K'ang-shing, 洛師—洛之衆.

卜河朔黎水—I have been strongly inclined to translate this in the past complete tense,—'I had previously divined,' &c. The Le water was a name given to the united stream of the Wei (衛河) and the K'w (淇河), on its reaching a place which was afterwards called Lo-yang (黎陽), in the north-east of the pres. dis. of Senn (滑), dep. of Wei-hwuy. This was not far from the old capital of Shou,

于稱公誨拜敬予貞我卜
新殷曰言手天之萬公二休
邑禮王○稽之億其以人恆
咸祀肇周_五首休年以共吉

favourable and always auspicious. Let us two sustain the responsibilities in common. The duke has reverently acknowledged the favour of Heaven, making provision for me for myriads and tens of myriads of years. With my face to my hands and my head to the ground, I receive his instructive words."

- 5 III. The duke of Chow said, "Let the king at first employ the ceremonies of Yin, and sacrifice in the new city, doing everything in

with Gan-kwō as—所卜之美常吉
之居, 'the admirable sites which he divined,
and which will always be fortunate.' 二

人共貞.—by the 'two men' are meant the
king and the duke of Chow. I don't know what
to make of the 貞. Gan-kwō has—我與
公共正其美 from which I get an
meaning apt in the place. Ma Yung explained
the term by 當, 'to bear,' 'to sustain,' which
is preferable to the other. Hsu Shen says:—
王欲與公共當此吉卜. The
king wishes along with the duke to sustain the
duties arising from the auspicious divinations.

公其至之休.—the meaning of
this is that as Heaven had shown its favour to
the House of Chow in calling it to the sove-
reignty, so the duke by all his care in founding
the new capital had fixed upon a central seat
where that sovereignty could be maintained for
ever. Before 誨言 we must understand

以誨, or some words of similar import. I
do not think we are to suppose that the king
made a second prostration.

Ch. III. Pp. 5—13. ADVICE BY THE DUKE
ON THE SACRIFICES WHEN THE KING SHOULD
OFFER ON COMMENCING HIS ADMINISTRATION IN
THE NEW CITY, AND ABOUT HIS SUBSEQUENT
GOVERNMENT. HE ALSO ESTIMATES HIS OWN
PERIOD NOW TO RETIRE FROM PUBLIC LIFE.

We must suppose that these advice were
given in Huu. The duke had returned there
some time after receiving the king's reply to the
message which he sent. It is most likely that
he had left Lō immediately after the duke of
Shao had made what is called his announcement,
and set forth before him the various
offerings which were presented by the princes, to
be used, it is said, at the sacrifices which would
be offered,—we may suppose on the solemn

inauguration by the king in person of the new city
as the capital of the empire. However this may
be, it is plain that the duke, in the first instance
at least, is speaking to the king in some other
place from which he is urging him to go to Lō.

P. 5. The sacrifices which the king should offer
in the first place. 王肇稱殷禮—

both Gan-kwō and K'ang-shing take this clause
as in the translation, understanding by 殷禮
"the ceremonies of the Yin dynasty." K'ang-
shing says that the ceremonies for the services
of the present dynasty had not yet been settled,
or if settled, had not yet been made publicly
known. That would be done next year, which
would be the first of the king's independent
reign. In the meantime he should employ the
ceremonies of Yin. Yung-ti, on the other hand,
in his gloss on Gan-kwō's commentary, says
that the ceremonies had been settled, but from
their general agreement with those of the pre-
vious dynasty, they are still called here 殷禮.

This remark is very unsatisfactory. We cannot
tell why the duke gave this particular advice,
but I do not see that the phrase can be rendered
otherwise than I have done. To be, indeed,
after Wang Gan-shih and Liu Cho-k'e, proposes
to take 殷 in the sense of 盛, so that the
meaning would be—Let the king employ the
fullest ceremonies. To justify such a meaning
of the term, they refer to an expression in K'ung-
yang's commentary on the Ch'un T'ew, under
the 2d year of duke Wau (文公二年), where
it is said—五年而再殷祭; but 殷
there means 'great,' and not 'full.' The refer-
ence is to the 'great sacrifices,' called 禘 and

禘 (see Ana. III, x). As Maou Ke-ling
observes, we may speak of 殷祭, but not of
殷禮. The text is silent on the sacrifice or
sacrifices, which the duke wished the king to
offer as his first act in the new city. Gan-shih

汝祀以曰今庶周倂予秩
受惟功記王有事予從齊無
命命作功卽命○曰于工○
篤曰元宗命○

- 6 an orderly way, but without any display. I will marshal all the officers to attend your majesty from Chow, merely saying that probably there will be business to be done.
- 7 "Let the king instantly give orders, saying, 'Let those distinguished by merit be recorded; the most meritorious shall be the first in the sacrifices.' Let him also command, saying, 'You in whose behalf this order is given must give me your assistance with sincere ear-

supposed it was that mentioned in par. 29;—which is not likely. I should rather suppose it was a series of sacrifices like those offered by Ssin on his undertaking the duties of government for Yao; see the 'Canon of Ssin,' p. 6. The occasion was a grand one,—the inauguration of Lo as the capital, and of Ching's becoming of age and taking the government in his own hands.

咸秩無文—秩—序, 'order,'

'to arrange orderly;' 無文—'without ornament.' Simplicity was a characteristic of the ceremonies of Yin as compared with those of Chow;—see *Conf. Ann.* III. xiv. Gan-kwo took 無文 differently, and Ts'ao agrees with him. The latter's exposition of the whole par.

is:—王始舉盛禮祀之于洛邑,皆序其所當祭者,雖祀典不載而義當祀者亦序而祭之也. 'Let the king begin by em-

ploying the fullest ceremonies in his sacrifices at Lo, offering in order to all the spirits to which he ought to sacrifice. There may be some to which in right he ought to sacrifice that are not contained in the sacrificial canons; let him likewise sacrifice to them, having arranged them in their proper order.'

P. 6. *In what way the duke would instruct the officers to attend the king to Lo.* 齊百工—整齊百官; meaning probably nothing more than what appears in the translation, though some of the critics (see the *集說*) dwell on the 齊, as if it included all moral adjustment.

從王于周,—this can only mean—'follow the king from Chow to Lo;' as the 'Daily Explanation' has it—從王自周以適洛. 庶有事—this is not so indefinite as Gan-kwo has it,—

庶幾有善政事, 'probably there will be some business of good government.' Indeed, he appears to have thought it a remark of the duke to himself, — 'I may consider the govt. will now go on well.' From the usage of the phrase 有事, it would be understood that he intimated that sacrifices were to be offered.

P. 7. *How the king should stimulate the officers to loyal exertions by promising them a place in the sacrificial canon according to their merit.* Compare 'The Pwan-kang,' Pt. I, p. 16,—

茲予大享于先王,爾祖其從與享之. and the note where it is said that under the Chow dynasty there was a 'Recorder of Merits,' who entered the names of meritorious ministers among the imperial kindred when alive, and regulated the arrangement of their spirit tablets at the sacrifices in the ancestral temple, when they were dead. It is to this custom, which the dyn. of Chow took from Yin, that the duke refers. 記功

宗—記功之尊顯者, as in the translation. K'ang Shing, after Gan-kwo, makes 宗 a verb.—'Record the meritorious and honour them.' How they should be honoured is shown in the next clause, so that the general meaning is not affected by the way in which we construe 宗. In the *Le Ke*, Bk.

XXIII., called 祭法, or 'The Laws of Sacrifice,' p. 3, there is a list given of various services to the state which would entitle their performers to be sacrificed to (夫聖王之制祀也,法施於民,則祀之以死勤事,則祀之以勞定國,則祀之,能捍大災,則祀之,能捍大患,則祀之).

惇。即有僚。明作有功。周工往新邑。伴嚮。撫事如予。惟以在。其絕。○厥若彝。及。醺醺厥攸灼。敘弗。朋其往。無若火。始。孺子其朋。孺子其。○汝其悉自教工。○弼。○丕視功載。乃。

- 8 nestness.' Freely display the record of merits, for it is you who must yourself in everything train the officers. My young son, can
9 you indulge partiality? If you do so, the consequences hereafter will be like a fire, which, a spark at first, blazes up, and by-and-by cannot be extinguished.
10 "Let your observance of the constant rules of right and your soothing measures be like mine. Take only the officers that are in Chow to go to the new city; and make them there join their old associates. With intelligent vigour establish your merit, with a generous largeness richly completing the public manners:—so shall you obtain an endless fame."

命云云—this is evidently to be addressed by the king to the officers, = 王又惟勉勵之曰汝等既受此褒獎之命宜感激殊恩厚轉王室 (see the 日講). Gau-kwo strangely takes it as addressed to the king.—惟天命我周邦汝受天命厚矣當轉大天命

Pp. 8, 9. Publicity should be given to the record of merits, and entire impartiality maintained in it.

8. 丕視功載—(ian-kwo makes this—'Observe the services of all the officers, and record the meritorious, omitting none.' It is better to take 視=示, as in p.

4. 功載—記功之載籍 This record should be displayed where all could see it. The evidences afforded by it of the king's impartiality would powerfully influence the officers to the cultivation of a public spirit. This is the import of the second clause.

9. 朋—比 'to be partial;' comp. Ana.

II. 21v. 孺子其朋 must be taken inter-

rogatively, = 孺子其可少狗比黨之私乎 其往—自是而往 'from this forward' 無 (=毋) 若火云云—do not be like fire! Ke. It is difficult in translating to keep to the style of the text. 醺醺—the 說文 defines this by 火行微 敘—'by degrees' Ts'an says—將次第延熱不可得而撲滅矣

P. 10. How the king should make the duke his model. 厥若彝—其順常道 'his (= your) following the constant path.'

惟以在周官勿參以私人往新邑—'use the officers of Chow that now exist, not mixing with them other men of mercenary views, to proceed to the new city.' The meaning is that the king at first should only surround himself with the men whom the duke had tried and proved. 伴嚮即有僚—Ts'an put a comma at 嚮, and interpret-

惟事其爽侮。○凡民惟曰不享，惟不役志于享，及物惟曰不享，享享多儀儀不享，亦識其有不汝其敬，識百辟惟沖子，惟終。○公曰：已，汝

- 11 The duke said, "Yes, young as you are, be it yours to complete
12 the work of your predecessors. Cultivate the spirit of reverence, and you will know who among the princes sincerely present their offerings to you, and who do not. In those offerings there are many observances. If the observances are not equal to the articles, it must be said there is no offering. When there is no service of the will in the offerings of the princes, all the people will then say, 'We need not be troubled about our offerings,' and affairs will be disturbed by errors and usurpations.

ed 俘縶¹¹ 使百工知上意¹² 縶
'cause all the officers to know the views of the sovereign.' But this is too great a supplement to the text, nor is there any necessity for it.

縶 and 卽 may very well be joined together. The duke tells the king to take the officers now in Chow to Lo¹³ and there make them join their companions, i.e., labour in their old departments at their old duties. Lin Che-k'w has it:—使之向就舊僚以趨事

It is difficult to say whether we should understand 明作有功 惇大成裕 as descriptive of the king's measures, or of the conduct of the officers. I have taken it with the former reference. 汝永有

辭—comp. the 'Tse-k'w, Pt. I, p. 7. I did not accept the meaning of 'praise' there, but we may as well admit it here, where the words are addressed to the king, and he is not himself the speaker.

Pp. 11—13. The contents here are of a wider import, and relate to how the king should deal with the princes of the empire, and attach the masses of the people to himself. The duke also plainly intimates his own purpose to retire from public life. The 公曰 in p. 11 might seem to intimate that they were delivered at a different time and place from those which preceded; but

it is better to leave that point as incapable of any very definite settlement. 11. The greatness of the work devolving on the king.

已 indicates that the duke felt constrained to go on with what he had to say. 惟終—終文武之業. 'Finish the work of Wau and Woo,' i.e., secure the establishment of the dynasty of Chow.

12. The importance of sincerity in the offerings and in all expressions of loyalty of the princes; and how the king might know whether they were sincere or not. T'ien puts a stop at 敬, so that 汝其敬 is equivalent to the duke of Shau's repeated admonition that the king should cultivate the virtue of reverence. It is supposed that Ching, reverent himself and sincere, would, as if intuitively, know whether the princes were sincere or not in their expressions of loyalty.

享多儀—in the presenting of offerings, there are many ceremonial usages. 禮—儀. See the use of this passage made by Mencius, VI, Pt. II, v. 4. The 'Complete Digest,' on that passage, says that 多—厚, and paraphrases—享上貴厚乎禮意. 惟不役志于享—諸侯惟不役志于享, as in the translation. 惟事其爽侮

—爽侮—差爽僭侮. 13. How

民無遠用戾。○明農哉，彼裕我往敬哉，茲予其不敢廢乃命。汝正父罔不若予，不永哉，篤敘乃是不覆，乃時惟于棐民彝，汝乃不暇聽朕教。汝乃惟孺子，頒朕

- 13 "Do you, my young son, manifest everywhere my unwearied diligence, and listen to my instructions to you how to help the people to observe the constant rules of right. If you do not bestir yourself in these things, you will not be of long continuance. If you sincerely and fully carry out the course of your correct father, and follow exactly my example, there will be no venturing to disregard your orders. Go and be reverent. Henceforth I will study husbandry. There do you generously rule our people, and there is no distance from which they will not come to you."

the king should address himself generously to the government of the people with diligence and reverence.

The duke will withdraw to his fields.

乃惟孺子，頒朕不暇。—T'ao says he does

not understand 頒朕不暇, but thinks

the meaning may be—成王當頒布

我汲汲不暇者，—as in the transla-

tion. This appears to have been the view like-

wise of Gan-kwō. K'ang Shing reads on to

聽 before putting a comma, and takes 頒 (the

說文 quotes the passage with 攸—分,

'to separate,' 'to divide,' alleging for this the

authority of K'ang-shing. He has:—政事

繁多，孺子分其任，我有所

不暇聽。'The business of government is

burdensome. Divide, my son, the duties. Even

I had not time to listen to everything.'

棐民彝—輔民常性之道，'to

help the course of the people's constant nature.'

This meaning seems to be what I have given in

the translation. If the people be thus ruled,—

influenced, not forced,—it may be hoped they

will be forward to obey the guidance.

覆—勉，'to use effort,' 'exert one's self.' There

are disputes as to the form of the character, but

none as to the meaning.

乃時惟不永哉—汝是惟不可長哉

篤敘乃正父—敘，'to arrange order-

ly.' Here the meaning is that king Ching's

measures should all be ordered after those of

his father. We cannot suppose that any other

than king Woo is meant by 正父, though

K'ang Shing explains the phrase by 'those

whom your father honoured,' referring to the

great captains and ministers who assisted in the

overthrow of Shōw.

子其明農哉，—all the critics understand that the duke of

Chow here intimates his purpose to withdraw

from public life. Gan-kwō, however, would

interpret:—'I will retire as old, and teach the

husbandmen about righteousness;' and in illus-

tration of this, Ying-ta quotes a passage from

Fuh-shang's 'Introduction to the Shoo' (尙書

大傳), that it was the rule for retired officers

to occupy themselves in the villages with teach-

ing the young (禮致仕之臣教

於州里，大夫爲父師，士爲

少師，朝夕坐於門塾而教

出入之子弟). But we cannot suppose

that the duke of Chow would come under any

such rule.

彼裕至末—彼—in

彼，'there,' i.e., in Lo.

戾—至，'to come.'

The whole = 汝若于彼洛邑，果則無

能盡心教養，寬裕其民，則往無

遠而不至矣 (see the 日講).

十四
王若曰公明保
予冲子公稱丕
顯德以予小子
揚文武烈奉答
天命和恆四方
民居師○惇宗
將禮稱秩元祀
咸秩無文○惟
公德明光于上
下勤施于四方

- 14 IV. The king spoke to this effect:—"O duke, you are the enlightener and sustainer of my youth. You have set forth great and illustrious virtues, that I, notwithstanding my youth, may display a brilliant merit like that of Wān and Woo; reverently respond to the favour of Heaven; harmonize and long preserve the people of all the regions, and settle their multitudes here; and that I may give due honour to the great ceremony of recording the most distinguished, regulating the order for the first places at the sacrifices, and doing everything in an orderly manner without display.
- 15
- 16 "But your virtue, O duke, shines brightly above and below, and is displayed actively throughout the four quarters. On every

Ch. IV. Pp. 14-21. THE KING, WITH MANY COMPLIMENTS, RESPONDS TO THE COUNSELS OF THE DUKE, AND PROMISES TO ACT ACCORDINGLY. AT THE SAME TIME HE INTERESTS HIM NOT TO CARRY OUT HIS PURPOSE OF RETIRING, AND CHARGES HIM TO REMAIN AT LO. CH'IN LEIH observes that after the 13th par. there ought to be some mention of the king's having gone with the duke from Haou to LO, and he supposes that a portion of the Book is here lost. The natural inference from par. 18-21 certainly is that the king, when he spoke them, was in LO; but we need not suppose that any tablets were lost. The Book may never have been longer or less confused than it now is.

Pp. 14, 15. The king, with mention of his obligations to the duke for his counsels, promises to take his advice about the sacrifices to be offered and the record of merits to be made.

14. 公明保子冲子, - it is much more natural to construe this historically, in the indicative mood, than to take it with Gau-kwo in the imperative. He says the meaning is:—"You ought, O duke, to enlighten and sustain me. You must not leave me" (言公當明安我童子不可去之). 稱=舉 or 揚, 'to speak of; 'to display.' The 'great and illustrious virtues' which the duke had celebrated are those implied in the counsels which he had just given. If the king could 揚文武烈, he would display the virtue required in p. 11.

If he could 奉答天命, he would escape the evil menaced in the 乃時惟不永 of p. 13. If he could 和恆四方民居, he would realize the 彼裕我民無遠用戾, also of p. 13. Chou He says that 居師=營洛邑, 定民 (=衆民之) 居, 'to build the city of LO, and settle the dwelling of the people there.' 15. This par. must be construed in close connection with the preceding. It has reference to the counsel given in p. 7. 惇宗將禮=將一大, 'great; 宗 is evidently employed from the 記功之宗; 惇= 'to deem important,' 'to give the due importance to.' 稱秩元祀= this also must be interpreted from p. 7. Of the last clause it is not necessary to treat again.

P. 16. The great services of the duke in the business of the govt., which left the king nothing to do but to attend to the sacrifices. 'We must understand all this as said by the king to prepare the way for pressing the request that the duke would not carry out his purpose of withdrawing from public life. 旁作穆穆迂衡=旁= 'on every side' as in the

旁作穆穆 迂衡不迷 文武勤教 予冲子夙 夜毖祀○ 王曰公功○ 斐迪篤罔 不若時○ 王曰公予 小子其退

hand appears your deep reverence to secure the establishment of order, so that you fail in nothing of the earnest lessons of Wán and Woo. It is for me the youth *only* to attend reverently early and late to the sacrifices."

17 The king said, "Great, O duke, has been your merit in helping and guiding me;—let it ever continue so."

18 The king said, "O duke, it is for me, the little child, to return to my throne in Chow, and I charge you, O duke, to remain behind."

'Tse-k'ia, Pt. I, p. 5.—旁求俊彥 衡 'a steelyard,' here = 'to balance,' 'to make even.' When it is said 迂衡, we see the

duke calmly and reverently 'meeting' all difficulties and emergencies, and adjusting them with the balance of his wisdom and measures. Gau-kwo is evidently wrong, when he takes this clause not as descriptive of the character of the duke's government but of its results, and interprets:—四方旁來爲敬敬

之道以迎太平之政 不迷文武勤教—K'ang Shing ingeniously takes this as—'you make no error; with civil capacity and with military you teach the empire.' I prefer, however, to construe as in the translation.

予冲子云云—'What have I to do? I should not do so well as you in the administration of affairs. I have only to perform the sacrifices which devolve upon me.'

P. 17. The king briefly recapitulates the duke's services, and asks him to continue them, and maintain equilibrium from public life.

迪—啟 'to teach,' 'to direct,' T'iao says—公之所以輔我啟我者厚矣當常如是未可以言去也

Gau-kwo's explanation of 罔不若時, though wrong, is yet amusingly ingenious:—天下無不順而是公之功 'the whole empire accords, and affirms by its approval the merit of your services!'

Pp. 18—20. The king declares his own purpose to return to Hsiao, and charges the duke to continue in public life, remaining at L₃, and completing the measures of government which he had initiated.

18. On the interpretation of this par. there is as much diversity of opinion as on par. 1. The view in the translation is that of T'iao, adopted from Lin Che-k'e and other early scholars of the Sung dyn. The old interpreters, followed by many in the present dynasty, understand that the king is here acceding to the duke's request that he would proceed to L₃, and promises that he would there appoint the duke's son, Pih-k'ia (伯禽), to the principality of Loo.

Where were the king and the duke when the par. was spoken? The old interpreters say—'In Hsiao,' and Gau-kwo supposes that the king is on his throne, at a solemn audience where the duke has resigned the regency, so that 予其退 即辟于周—'I will when I have retired from this audience, go and be king in L₃.' I cannot read the Book without getting the impression that the speakers were now in L₃. And without referring to any passages, which might require a lengthy and minute discussion of them, the fact that king Ching did not take up his residence at L₃, and that this city did not till after many reigns become the real capital of Chow, is sufficient to show that the king is not here promising to go to L₃, but saying that he will retire from it.

On this view 即辟于周 has its natural meaning. Chow is Hsiao, as in the first par. of last Book. I should say that this clause ought to be decisive on the point of the dialogue's taking place in L₃, were it not for the 從王于周 of par. 4. And allowing all the weight we can to the interpretation of 于周 necessarily adopted there, I must still think that 即辟于周 is strongly confirmatory of the view of the Book taken by the Sung scholars.

With regard to 命公後, 'it indicates,' says K'ang Shing, 'the appointment of Pih-k'ia. The king's idea was that if he conferred the investiture on his son, he might retain the

武工監迪救禮未四方^{十九}命卽
受誕我將公亦定于迪公後辟
民保士其功未于亂○周
亂文師後○克宗亂○

- 19 Order has been initiated throughout the four quarters of the empire; but the ceremonies to be honoured by general observance have not yet been settled, and I cannot look on your merit as completed.
- 20 Commence on a great scale what is to be done by your remaining here, being an example to my officers, and greatly preserving the people whom Wán and Woo received:—by your good government you will prove the help of the whole empire.

duke at court as the prime minister of the govt. Nothing can be argued conclusively on either side of the question from the words of the text. 命公後 may be taken as in the translation; and when I look at them without reference to the controversy agitated about them, I must understand them thus. They may, however, likewise be taken as Gau-kwó and the other early interpreters did.

Referring to Sze-ma Ts'ien, he tells us that king Woo, immediately after the overthrow of Shou, invested his brother Tan with the principality of Loo, and that Tan did not proceed to take the charge of it, but remained at court to assist the king. (封周公旦於少昊之虛曲阜是爲魯公周公不就封留佐武王) See the

魯周公世家第三). He tells us also, that after the death of Woo, when the duke of Chow had received, notwithstanding the injurious suspicions about him, to remain as regent of the empire during the minority of Ching, he invested his son Pih-k'in with Loo, and gave him this charge:—'A son of king Wán, brother of king Woo, and uncle of king Ching, I am not of mean position in the empire. But I have sometimes shies left my bath unfinished, and thrice left a meal to receive officers, fearing lest I might fail to secure a man of virtue and ability for the service of the govt. When you go to Loo, be careful lest your being a prince makes you arrogant to others.' According to this account, Pih-k'in had been invested with Loo several years before the building of Ló. Ts'ao argues the same thing from passages of Bk. XXIX; but I do not insist on them, because Maou K'ie-ling has shown that they need not be taken as decisive on the question. Still Ts'ao's statements carry in themselves evidence of their correctness. Of all his brothers and adherents, the duke of Chow was the one whom king Woo was bound to reward. No doubt he did confer on him the country of Loo; and as the duke was detained

from it all his reign and during so many years of his son's reign, there must have been some one to supply his place. I believe that Pih-k'in went to Loo at once, and that subsequently, in the 3d or 4th year of Ching, his father resigned the dukedom entirely to him. This being the case, there is no room left for the understanding the text—命公後—as the old interpreters did.

19, 20. The king could not look on the duke's work as done, and he calls his attention to various points which were yet to be settled.

19. 四方迪亂—四方開治, taking it 迪—啟 or 開. K'ang Shing takes it—進, and says:—四方雖進於治. The meaning is substantially the same. 未

定宗禮—Ts'ao takes 宗禮 as referring to the 功宗 of p. 8, and 禘宗將禮 of p. 15. It may be so, but I rather understand the king to be speaking here of the ceremonies in general, by which their dyn. was to be distinguished from those which preceded it. K'ang Shing says they are called 宗禮.

'being honoured by all the empire' (宗禮者言禮爲天下所宗). 亦未克救公功—救, has occurred twice before, in Bk. VII, pp. 5 and 11, joined with 寧, and in the sense of 撫 or 安, 'to soothe' 'to settle.' 'It means,' says Woo Ch'ing, 'to honour and reward.' I do not see how to translate the term faithfully, and bring out a meaning appropriate to the contents.

20. 迪將其後 means, acc. to Ts'ao, 啟大其後, as in the translation. Woo Ch'ing takes 迪將 as 'an introductory phrase,' but says he

爲四輔。○王^二
 曰公定予往
 己公功肅將
 祇歡公無困
 哉我惟無斃
 其康事公勿
 替刑四方其
 世享。○周^三
 拜手稽首曰
 王命予來承

- 21 The king said, "Remain, O duke. I will certainly go. Your meritorious deeds are devoutly acknowledged and reverently rejoiced in. Do not, O duke, occasion me this difficulty. I on my part will not be idle or tired in seeking the tranquillity of the people; and let not the example which you have afforded be intermitted. So shall the whole empire enjoy for generations the benefits of your virtue."
- 22 V. The duke of Chow bowed his face to his hands and his head to the ground, saying, "You have charged me, O king, to come here.

does not understand the meaning of it. The 其後 would certainly seem to have reference to the 命公後 of p. 18. I do not see how

Gan-kwō makes out of 迪將 his 公留 教道將助我 監我士師 工一士師工 is equivalent to 百官

Among the officers there were those called 士, and others called 師. 監 may be taken, with Tr'ae, 'to afford an example to, or, with Gan-kwō, 'to inspect, 'to oversee.' 亂爲

四輔.—I do not think that this means more than—'effecting good government, and being a help to me on every side.' Compare with 四輔 the 四鄰 in the 'Yih and Tsih,' p. 5. Tr'ae takes the phrase as a name of the new city, or the two new cities of 成周 and 王

城, taken in connection with Haou and Fung, as the points d'appui of the empire,—which is far-fetched; and intended to strengthen his view of 後 as meaning to remain at Lō, sufficiently strong without such support. In a passage in the Le Kē, Bk. VIII. (文王世子), p. 17, mention is made of the appointment of

四輔 and 三公, from which it would appear that 'four' men were denoted by the former phrase. If so, and we are to interpret the text in acc. with that passage, we must suppose that the king wishes the duke alone to be to him all that those four highest and

trusted ministers could be.

P. 21. The king finally announces his determination not to remain himself at Lō, and requires the duke to do so. Of course the old interpreters make 予往己 mean, 'I will go to Lō.'

K'ang Shing puts no comma at 己, but reads on from 予往 to 祇歡, making 往—往 日, 'formerly.' All agree in taking 定—

止, only with the old interpreters and their modern adherents it means, 'remain to assist me as my premier,' while with Tr'ae it is 'remain here' at Lō. The 'Daily Explanation' paraphrases from 公功 to 困哉 (哉

perhaps should be 我) thus:—我公迂而且 衡迪亂之功人皆肅敬而 奉行無敢違逆于外 祇畏而歡悅之無有拂

于中. This is acc. to the views of Tr'ae, and I must think that the other interpretations of this par. are non-natural. 斃—厭

'to dislike,' 'to turn away from.' 公勿 替刑—公勿替所以監我士 師工者, taking 刑—儀刑. K'ang

Shing takes 斃—解, but the meaning comes to the same. He would point the whole differently, however.—我惟無斃其康事公

勿替刑四方其世享

Ch. V. Pp. 23-34. THE DUKE ACCEPTS THE CHARGE LAIN UPON HIM; SETS FORTH HOW

刑乃單文祖
先考朕昭子
其師作周孚
前人成烈答
子越御事篤
○予旦以多
惟王有成績
父萬邦咸休
曰其自時中

successors of Chow." "From this time," said the duke, "by the government administered in this central spot, all parts of the empire will be conducted to repose, and this will be the completion of your merit, O king.

- 24 "I, Tan, with the numerous officers and managers of affairs, will consolidate the achievements of our predecessors, in response to the hopes of the people. I will afford an example of sincerity to future ministers of Chow, seeking to render complete the pattern intended for the enlightenment of you, my son, and thus to carry fully out the virtue of your grandfather Wau."

has been put upon it. Comp. the view of Gan-
kwō:—大其厚行典常于殷賢
人, and that of K'ang Shing:—其大厚
取典于殷之賢民 亂
(一治)爲四方新辟,—comp. the
民明辟 of par. 2. 作周恭先
—T'ao expands this by 人君恭以接
下以恭而倡後王, 'as the sovereign
shows respectfulness towards your ministers,
and by such respectfulness leads the way for
future kings.' Gan-kwō's view is the same:—
爲周家見恭敬之王後世
所推先 K'ang Shing brings out nearly
the same meaning by another construction of
the characters:—作立周邦以恭敬
爲先務. The 曰 is perplexing. The
simplest way is to suppose 公 as the nomina-
tive to it. I understand 自時 as in the
'Complete Digest'—今而後. With 中
父 compare the 自服土中, and 自時
中父 in the last Book, p. 14. 24. The
duke here speaks fully and bravely of what he
himself will do. We have had instances before
of his superiority to the mock humility with
which Chinese statesmen generally veil apprecia-
tion of themselves and their services.

多
子越御事—see on the Con. Ann., I., 1.

for the meaning of 子. 多子 is 'the many
gentlemen;' and from the 御事 which follows,
we conclude that the gentlemen intended the
officers of the superior classes,—as the critics
say. 卿大夫. 答其師 (一衆)
—'in answer to the multitude.' The meaning
must be as in the translation. 作周孚
先—孚—信, 'faithfulness,' 'loyalty.' The
expression is correlate to the 作周恭君
of the last par.; and they throw light on each
other. As the king would show to future kings
an example of respectfulness in dealing with his
ministers, so the duke would show to future
ministers an example of loyal devotedness in
serving his sovereign. 考朕昭子刑
—考—成, 'to complete.' T'ao takes 昭
子 as = the 明辟 of par. 1, so that the
meaning of the clause is—'I will render com-
plete the pattern afforded by you, my illustrious
son.' The editors of Yung-ching's Shuo observe
that everywhere else he takes 昭 as = 明,
'to enlighten,' and that there is no reason to
depart from that signification here; so that the
meaning of the whole is as in the translation.

單—盡, 'to complete,' 'to carry fully
out.' Everything necessary to consolidate the
dynasty might be considered as carrying out—
completing—the virtue of king Wau, its proper
founder.

○文宿○稽明鬯寧愆德。
 惠^七王則予^六首禋二予殷○
 篤武禋不^六休拜卣以乃^五
 敘王于敢享手曰秬命來

- 25 VI. Afterwards, the duke of Chow took occasion to say, "The king has sent messengers to admonish the people of Yin, and with a soothing charge to me, along with two flagons of the black millet herb-flavoured spirit, saying, 'Here is a pure sacrificial gift, which with my hands to my face and my head to the ground I offer for you to enjoy its excellence.' I dare not keep this, and offer it in sacrifice to king Wan and
 26 king Woo." In doing so, he prayed, "Let him be obedient to and
 27

Ch. VI. Pp. 25-26. THE CONDUCT OF THE DUKE IN DECLINING SOME EXTRAORDINARY GIFTS FROM THE KING, AND TAKING OCCASION FROM THEM TO OFFER A PRAYER TO WAN AND WOO, EXPRESSIVE OF HIS LOYALTY.

I cannot say that I am satisfied with the meaning of these parts, as it appears in the translation; but no interpretation of them has been proposed which can be fully acquiesced in by a cautious student. I have mainly followed the view of them given by Ts'ze, who himself followed Soo Shih. The action of them is referred to some time subsequent to that in which the previous parts were spoken. The king is supposed to have returned to Haou, and thence he sends messages and gifts, doing honour to the duke as if he had been a departed spirit, and were continuing in heaven the guardianship of the dynasty which he had so efficiently discharged during his life. This was improper, and may be deemed improbable; but if we remember how the boy had given ear to the rumours that the duke had designs upon the throne, and consider that even now he was not really following his advice, and fixing his residence at Lo, we may believe that the young emperor had more awe of the powerful minister than love for him, and that he wished to propitiate him by such an extraordinary offering.

佂來愆殷乃命寧子—王遣使詰誡殷民因念周公之功而來慰寧之錫以殊典

The king sent messengers with admonitory lessons for the people of Yin, and being impressed with the merits of the duke, at the same time to soothe his mind, by the gift of an extraordinary mark of his regard.

秬鬯

二卣—秬 is a species of black millet, used in the distillation of spirits. 鬯 is a species of fragrant grass employed to flavour the spirits. The two characters are used here as a name of the spirit which was made from them. 卣 is the name of a cup or bowl of medium size, in which such spirit was usually kept. A larger vessel used for that purpose was called 彝, and a smaller, 罍; the size of the 卣 was between the others.

日明至末—this is supposed to be the message of the king which accompanied the offering. 明—潔, 'pure;' 禋—敬, 'to revere,' 'reverent.' The 'Daily Explanation' gives for this clause:—此秬鬯之酒所以明潔禋敬以奉神而格帝者也。我敢拜手稽首以此美物而致享于公焉。

26. 予不敢宿—True says that 宿 here has the same meaning as the phrase 三宿 in Bk. XXII, p. 26, where the character is explained by 進爵, 'to advance the cup;' making the meaning to be—'I do not dare to drink this spirit.' But it will be seen on that passage, that if we must so define 宿 there, we cannot admit the signification in this text. And why should there be any difficulty in understanding here as I have done.

There is an instance of the same usage, quite in point, in the Ana. X, viii, 8. The duke was so far from using for himself the king's gift, that he could not even allow it to remain by him, but presented it at once in a sacrifice to Wan and Woo. 27. This part is to be taken as a prayer for the king, offered when the duke sacrificed to Wan and Woo with the spirit which

册、册、王 駢 一、王 祭 新 辰、德。
 惟 逸 命 牛 武 駢 歲、邑、王 ○
 告 祝 作 一、王 牛 文 烝 在 戊

廿九
 日

- 29 VII. On the day Mow-shin, the king in the new city performed the annual winter sacrifice, offering a red bull to king Wān, and the same to king Woo. He then commanded a declaration to be prepared, which was done by Yih in the form of a prayer, and it simply announced the remaining behind of the duke of Chow. The king's

使有次序，無有遇用患疾
 之道者，則天下萬年厭於
 汝德，殷乃長成爲周。 On the
 28th par. he says:—"When the king causes
 the people of Yin, high and low, to have such
 orderly relations with one another, then will be
 seen the course of good for myriads of years,
 and the people will for ever look to our des-
 cendants and turn to their virtue." Thus he
 stimulates the king to complete the work begun
 by Wān and Woo' (王使殷民上下
 相承有次序，則萬年之道
 民其長觀我子孫而歸其
 德矣，勉使終之)

It would be easy to fill pages with smaller variations of view that have been proposed on this difficult passage; but the student will probably think that it has been dwelt upon at sufficient length. I will, however, here subjoin the version of Gaubil, and a note which he gives on the character 醴. His version is:—*Vous avez envoyé un exprès pour faire instruire les peuples de Yin, et vous lui avez ordonné de me demander en quel état étoit ma santé; entre cela vous m'avez envoyé en présent deux vases remplis du vin Ku-tchang, et vous avez ainsi parlé: il faut avoir le cœur pur et respectueux. Je me prosterne à terre, et je me sers de ces deux heureux vases pour marquer mon respect.*

'Je n'oserois boire de ce vin; mais je m'en mets déjà servi pour honorer avec respect Yen-rang, et Vou-rang.

'Je souhaite que le Roi soit exact à imiter ses ancêtres, qu'il vive long tems sans fâcheux accident, que jusqu'à dix mille ans il ait des imitateurs de sa vertu, que les nouveaux sujets de la dynastie Yin jouissent d'une longue et heureuse suite d'années.

'Je souhaite que jusqu'à dix mille ans vous gouverniez heureusement les peuples de Yin. Dans tout ce qui les regarde, faites ensuite qu'ils se plaisent à suivre vos exemples.'

I need not speak of the character of this version. His note is to the following effect:—

'The characters 秬 醴 express a wine made from black millet or 秬, and an odoriferous

herb called 醴. Acc. to the thought of king Ching, this required in him who used it a heart pure and full of respect. It was set apart therefore for the ceremonies performed to Heaven, or spirits, or to ancestors. It was employed perhaps in all the three ceremonies. Now the character which expresses the respect to be shown in the use of this wine is 醴, which is composed of three other characters:—示,

meaning to show to; 西, the west; and 土, country. Could the ancient Chinese have had in view, in the use of this character, the country of the west from which they had come forth? Do we have in it, applied to these ceremonies, the vestiges of some ancient ceremony, in which they regarded the west, when they honoured Heaven, the Spirits, or their first ancestors? The Chinese characters are composed of several other characters, and the whole has regard to the thing expressed by the composite character; the several characters are the simple ideas which make the composite one. The analysis which

I make here of the character 醴 is but a conjecture. I only give it as such, and I do not care to engage to find proofs of it in the ancient monuments and traditions of China. I know that several Europeans have abused the analysis of Chinese characters; but the Chinese themselves make sometimes such analyses.

Gaubil was at home when he brought his knowledge of mathematical and astronomical science to bear on the illustration of Chinese chronology; but this conjecture about the meaning of the term 醴 cannot be called happy. 示 sug-

gests the idea of some religious meaning, as belonging to the whole character; but the other half of it—醴—is entirely phonetic, and suggests merely its name or sound. It enters in the same way into more than 50 other characters. The character is used in the 'Canon of Shun,' p. 6, where I do not know that the idea of the objects sacrificed to being the fathers of the nation who had their seats in the west ever occurred to any one.

Ch. VII. Pp. 29—31. HISTORICAL NOTICES OF THE PUBLIC ANNOUNCEMENT OF THE DUKE'S APPOINTMENT TO REMAIN AT LO; AND OF HIS SUBSEQUENT GOVERNMENT. 29. 戊辰

周公其後王
賓殺禋咸格
王入太室禩
○王命周公
後作冊逸誥
在十有二月
○惟周公誕
保文武受命
惟七年。

guests, on occasion of the killing the victims and offering the sacrifice, all made their appearance. The king entered the grand apartment, and poured out the libation.

- 30 The king charged the duke of Chow to remain, and Yih, the preparer of the document, made the declaration;—*all* in the 12th month.

- 31 Then the duke of Chow greatly sustained the decree which Wán and Woo had received, through the space of seven years.

—we may conclude from the next par. that this was in the 12th month. The king was then in Ló. We may believe that he had come to it expressly for the service which is here described. Gan-kwé supposed that he had arrived on the day Mow-shih; but in that case we should have read 王到新邑, and not 王在新邑.

烝 is the name given to the winter sacrifice in the temple of ancestors. T'ao read the three characters 烝祭歲 together, with the meaning which I have given in the translation;—whether correctly or not I cannot undertake to say. The 歲, occurring where it does, is a great difficulty. K'ang Shing puts a comma at 烝, and then takes 祭歲 as another sacrifice, offered on the first day of the first month of the next year. This was the view of K'ang Shing, who also supposed that after the usual service of the day there was still the special sacrifice to Wán and Woo, which follows. Lin Ch'ü-k' says the best plan is to allow that the 歲 is inexplicable, and so pass over it.

I believe he is right. 辟—see Ana. VI.

iv. 王命作冊,—comp. on Bk. VI.

p. 6. 逸祝冊,—逸 was the name of

the 史, or 'Recorder,' who officiated on the occasion;—see again Bk. VI., p. 6, and also Bk. X., p. 13. Over 惟告周公其後

there is fought again the battle as to the meaning of 後, which has been gone into on par. 16.

王賓殺禋咸格.—'the king's guests' denotes all the princes present and assisting at the ceremonies, and specially those representing the previous dynasties. 殺=殺牲, 'killing the victims.' 禋 is descriptive of the whole service as 'a pure sacrifice presented in the temple of ancestors.'

王入太室禩.—王乃入太室禩地以降神.

'the king entered into the great apartment (Ló, the middle hall of the temple), and poured the fragrant spirits on the ground to invite the descent of the spirits.'

30. I understand this par. as a *resumé* of the preceding, with an additional note of time.

31. According to the translation which I have given, the 'seven years' mentioned are to be calculated from the 7th year of king Ching.

As Ch'in Sze-k'ue says,—'The duke of Chow acted as regent for seven years, and then wished to retire from public life; but king Ching detained him in the govt. of Ló, where he spent other seven years, making in all fourteen years from the death of king Woo' (see the 集說).

This view of course is contrary to the old interpreters and those who adhere to their views. They think that the 'seven years' here are simply the seven years of the duke's regency.

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XIV. THE NUMEROUS OFFICERS.

士。商用邑于公月，惟^三多
○王告洛，新初周三士

- 1 I. In the third month, at the commencement of the government of the duke of Chow in the new city of Lō, he announced the royal will

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—多士. 'The numerous Officers.' By the 'numerous officers' are intended the officers of the previous dynasty, who had been removed along with the people to the new city of Lō. The phrase occurs several times, and is taken to designate the Book, which indeed was addressed to those officers. It is found in both the texts, and has its place among the 'Announcements' of the Shoo.

The prefatory note about the Book (see page 10) says that when the new city of Ching-chow was completed, the obstinate people of Yin were removed to it; and that it was then that the duke of Chow announced to them the royal will, as it is here set forth. This statement has given rise to some discussion. We have met with various passages in the two last Books, which make it appear that many of the people of Yin had been removed to the country about the Lō before the dukes of Shao and Chow received their mission to proceed thither. The same thing may be argued from passages in this Book itself as well. Hence Ts'ie follows in the wake of Woo Ts'ie-liaou, and says we have here an instance of how little the notices in the so-called Confucian preface are to be depended on. Maou K'e-ling has endeavoured to weaken the force of their observations, but with little success.

It is just possible that king Ching, on returning to Hsiao after the sacrifice described in the end of last Book, ordered another migration of the people of Yin to Lō, and on a large scale; and that their arrival at the new settlement gave occasion to this address. This would reconcile the statement in the preface and the intimations which are found of previous removals of the people; but it can be given only as a supposition.

CONTEXTS. The object of the announcement is to reconcile the minds of the people of Yin, and especially of the higher classes among them, to their lot. The day of Yin had gone by. The House of Chow was in the ascendant. They had been dealt with kindly and generously. They had better acquiesce in their condition, and by loyalty deserve well of their new masters. If they did not do so, a worse thing would come upon them.

The address or announcement, much broken up, occupies the whole of the Book after the introductory paragraph. It has been divided into four chapters. The first, par. 2-4, vindicates the justice of the sovereigns of Chow in taking the empire to themselves. The second par. 5-15, unfolds the causes why the dynasty of Yin had been set aside. The third, par. 16-23, shows how it had been necessary to remove the people to Lō, and with what good intention the new city had been built. The fourth, par. 24-26, shows that comfort and prosperity are here at Lō open to their attainment, while by perseverance in disaffection they will only bring misery and ruin on themselves.

Ch. I. Pp. 1-4. WHEN THE ADDRESS WAS DELIVERED. THE HOUSE OF CHOW HAD OVERTHROWN THE DYNASTY OF YIN, NOT FROM AMBITION, BUT IN EXECUTION OF THE WILL OF GOD.

1. *Introductory.* 惟三月, this third month is most naturally reckoned from the sacrifice described in the concluding par. of the last Book. Some call the year the first of Ching's reign, i.e. after he attained his majority. Others call it the first of the duke of Chow's government of Lō. Woo Ching

王^三若曰爾殷
遺多士弗弔
旻天大降喪
于殷我有周
佑命將天明
威致王罰勅
殷命終于帝
○肆爾多士
非我小國敢
弋殷命惟天

- 2 to the officers of the Shang dynasty, saying, "The king speaks to this effect:—Ye numerous officers who remain from the dynasty of Yin, great ruin came down on Yin from the want of pity in compassionate Heaven, and we, the princes of Chow, received its favouring decree. We accordingly felt charged with its bright terrors; carried out the punishments which kings inflict; rightly disposed of the appointment of Yin; and finished the work of God.
- 3 Now, ye numerous officers, it was not that our small country dared to aim at the appointment of Yin. But Heaven was not with

would identify this month, indeed, with the third of the previous year, and the address here with what I have called the 'written specifications' delivered then to the people of Yin and the chiefs of the various States; but it is sufficient to have referred to his view.

初于新邑洛。—始行治洛之事。'when he commenced discharging the business of the govt. of Lō.' 用告商王

士。—we might take 用 as simply—'thereupon.' The critics, however, all complete its meaning as in the translation, —用成王之命。The officers are said to be those of 'the king of Shang,' meaning Shōw; or perhaps we should take 王 in the plural, and then 商王, —'the Shang dynasty.'

Pp. 2—4. Chow only executed justice in overthrowing Yin,—was but the instrument in the hands of God. 2. 弗弔旻天大降喪

于殷—for the meaning of 弗弔 comp. Bk. VII., p. 1, and XVI., p. 2. On 旻天, see Pt. II., Bk. II., p. 31, and on Men. v., Pt. I., l. 1. In addition to the two explanations of the meaning of 旻 which are cited in the notes on Menelus, I find a third, given here by Ma Yung,—that the autumnal sky is called 旻, because 'the autumn air is killing' (秋氣殺也); and he argues that what is said immediately after of ruin inflicted by Heaven confirms this act of the character. K'ang Shing approves

this view; but there is more force in the language, when we take 旻 as —'compassionate.' With sorrow was the ruin sent down, but Yin could not be spared, so great was its wickedness. —'Without pity, pitying Heaven sent down great ruin on Yin.'

我有周佑命。—我周受眷佑之命, as in the translation. This requires a considerable supplement. K'ang Shing, without such sup., makes the text—我周佑助天命, —our Chow lent its aid to the charge of Heaven; —with which the student will probably be still less satisfied.

將天明威。—comp. in 'The Announcement of T'ang,' p. 4, 將天命明威。致王罰。—in 'The Speech of T'ang,' p. 4, we have 致天之罰, 'carry out the punishment appointed by Heaven.' The 'punishment' here is the same, but described with reference to the agents employed by Heaven to execute it. 勅殷命,—it is

not easy to catch the exact force of 勅 here and in p. 14. We must accept the definition of it by 正, 'to correct,' 'to rectify.' But in the rectification of the decree of Yin, there was involved the overthrow of the dynasty. 終

于帝。—終上帝之事, 'to complete the work or business of God.' 3. 弋殷

命。—弋, 'to shoot at.' See Ans. VII., xxvi. K'ang-shing and Wang Suh read 翼, but they must have written, we may almost say, that

格、逸、逸、聞、天、下、帝、敢、亂、不、
嚮、則、有、曰、明、民、不、弼、界、
于、惟、夏、上、畏、秉、界、允、
時、帝、不、帝、○為、惟、○我、罔、
夏、降、適、引、我、^五惟、^四我、其、固

Yin, for indeed it would not strengthen its misrule. It, *therefore*
4 helped us;—did we dare to seek the throne of ourselves? God was
not for Yin, as appeared from the conduct of our inferior people, in
which there is the brilliant dreadfulness of Heaven.

5 II. 'I have heard the saying—"God leads men to tranquil securi-
ty;" but the sovereign of Hea would not move to such security,
whereupon God sent down *corrections*, indicating His mind to

character by mistake for 弋. They define it by
取 'to take,' and by 驅 'to drive out.'

天不界.—'Heaven did not give,' *i.e.*, did
not any longer give its favour to Yin. Gan-kwō
read this on with the next clause, and has
天不與信無堅固治者. 'Hea-
ven did not—or does not—give its favour to
those who are not sincerely strengthening their
govt.' K'ang Shing and Ming-shing, pointing
in the same way, but dissatisfied with Gan-
kwō's explanation, take 罔 = 誣, and change

固 into 怙, on the slenderest ground,—in fact,
without any ground at all,—making the whole—
天不與信誣罔而怙亂者
which is to me more unsatisfactory than the
view which they condemn. The view given in
the translation was first proposed by Soo Shih.

我其敢求位 is to be taken in-
terrogatively.

4. How was the mind of
Heaven known to be averted from Yin? This
par. supplies the answer:—'By the dissatisfaction
of the people.' We have here again the doctrine
of *see people see Dei*.

惟帝不界.—the
change of style from the indefinite term 'Heaven'
to the personal 'God' is to be remarked. We
have met with it before.

惟我下民
秉為.—惟我下民之所秉為.

'was what our people held fast and did.' The
expression 秉為 is peculiar, but this explana-
tion of it is much preferable to that of Gan-
kwō, who reads 為 in the 3d tone, and says:

—惟我周家下民秉心為我.
'the lower people of our House of Chow main-
tained their right hearts, and were for us.' A

peculiar force of the 惟, common in the Shoo,
is very marked here. It serves to link the
various propositions together, indicating that
they form a series, each one being a sequence
of what has preceded.

Ch. II. Pp. 3—15: THE REASONS FOR THE
OVERTHROW OF YIN; ILLUSTRATED BY REFER-
ENCE TO YIN'S OWN OVERTHROW OF THE DYN-
ASTY OF HEA. 5, 6. *The fall of Hea and rise*
of Shang.

5. 上帝至適逸.—the
meaning of these clauses has been very various-
ly explained. The whole par. seems to me to
speak about K'ē, and the ruin of the Hea dynasty
brought about by him; and in acc. with this,
these two preliminary clauses are best under-
stood as in the translation.

上帝引逸
—上帝引人至於安逸之地.

'God leads men to a condition of tranquil ease.'
How does he lead men to this? By the inward
satisfaction and outward prosperity which be-
long to a course marked by obedience to His
will. It is added that 'the sovereign of Hea—
K'ē, that is—would not move to this security.'

有夏不適逸=桀乃不適於
逸. 自趨於危. 'K'ē would not go
to security, but hurried himself on to peril' (see

陳大猷 in the 集說). Gan-kwō's view
makes the passage have reference to K'ē, but is
more superficial. It is thus paraphrased by
Ying-ia:—'The feeling of supreme Heaven is a
wish that the people should always enjoy a
tranquil happiness; but K'ē, the king of Hea,
rebellious to Heaven and injurious to the people,
would not allow them to move towards this
tranquil happiness.' K'ang Shing likewise un-
derstood K'ē by 有夏, but he takes in 則

as belonging to the second clause. He then
says that 引佚 (he reads 佚 for 逸)—引

弗克庸帝大
淫佚有辭惟
時天罔念聞
厥惟廢元命
降致罰。○乃
命爾先祖成
湯革夏。俊民
甸四方。○自
成湯至于帝
乙罔不明德

- him. K'ê, however, would not be warned by God, but proceeded to greater dissoluteness and sloth and excuses for himself. Then Heaven no longer regarded nor heard him, but disallowed his
6 great appointment, and inflicted extreme punishment. Hereupon it charged your founder, T'ang the Successful, to set Hea aside, and by
7 means of able men to rule the empire. From T'ang the Successful down to the emperor Yih, every sovereign sought to make his virtue

進遺佚之賢言天欲人君
任賢, 'to lead or bring forward worthies

left in obscurity, meaning that Heaven wishes sovereigns to employ the worthy.' The second clause — 'but K'ê would not conform to this rule of employing the worthy.' Woo Ch'ing struck out a new path for himself, supposing that down to 格 it is the great Yu and other good kings

of Hea who are spoken of. — When sovereigns love idleness and pleasure, God lends and puts them away. But the kings of Hea, like Yu, K'ê, and Shao-k'ang, by their anxious diligence accorded with this mind of Heaven, and went not on to any idle ways, so that God sent down to them his favour and protection (上帝於

人君之好逸樂者, 引而祛之, 有夏之君, 若禹若啟若少康, 皆以憂勤合天意而適於逸, 則上帝降格眷佑之. This variety of opinion shows that the meaning of the text is uncertain; but that which I have given seems to be decidedly the preferable view of it.

則惟帝降格, 嚮于時夏. —

here also, both the meaning and the pointing are far from being agreed upon. Woo Ch'ing's view of the whole par., which has been given above, makes him pass after 格 to K'ê, to that

嚮于時夏 — 向至于是夏樂. But when it came to this sovereign of Hea, K'ê, K'ang Shing, after Ma Yung, puts a comma at 時, and reads 夏 with the next clause. The scope of the whole, however, is pretty clear. In consequence of K'ê's character and course, Heaven sent down various premi-

tory warnings, to arouse him to a recognition of its will. T'ao says: — 帝猶未遽絕

也, 乃降格災異, 以示意嚮於樂. Gas-k'wé takes the 嚮, 'towards,' as

not expressing the will of Heaven but its favour towards the House of Hea, so that the distinctions intimated in 降格 were expressions of its kindly regard, which regard was only extinguished by the subsequent recklessness of K'ê. But this is finding too much in the character. 弗克庸帝 — 不能用帝

命 (or 戒), 'could not use the warnings given him by God.' 有辭 — comp. 夏王

有罪矯誣上天. In the 'Announcement of Ch'ing-hwen,' p. 8. It is better to understand the phrase as I have done, with such a reference, than to take it, with Woo Ch'ing and others, as simply — 有可罪之辭.

惟時 may be 'then,' or 'thereupon.'

時 — 是. 元命 — 大命, 'great appointment,' i.e., to be sovereign of the empire.

This is better than to take 大命 — 始時之命, as K'ang Shing does. 降致

罰, 'sent down and carried punishment to the uttermost.' 6. 俊民甸四方.

— comp. the 'T'ao-k'ê,' Pt. I. 5. 旁求俊

彥, 甸 — 治, 'to rule.' Lin Che-k'è joins 俊民 to the preceding 革夏, which is very unlikely.

Pp. 7—12. How the dynasty of Yih long continued, and how it finally perished. 7. Com-

恤祀。○亦惟天丕建，
保乂有殷，殷王亦罔
敢失帝，罔不配天其
澤。○在今後嗣王，誕
罔顯于天，矧曰其有
聽念于先王勤家，誕
淫厥汰，罔顧于天顯
民祗。○惟時上帝不
保，降若茲大喪。○惟
天不畀，不明厥德。○

- 8 illustrious, and duly attended to the sacrifices. And thus it was that while Heaven exerted a great establishing influence, preserving and regulating the house of Yin, its sovereigns on their part were humbly careful not to lose the favour of God, and strove to manifest a good-
9 doing corresponding to that of Heaven. But in these times, their successor showed himself greatly ignorant of the ways of Heaven, and much less could it be expected of him that he would be regardful of the earnest labours of his fathers for the country. Greatly abandoned to dissolute idleness, he paid no regard to the bright principles of Heaven, nor the awfulness of the people. On this account God no longer protected him, but sent down the great ruin which we have
10 witnessed. Heaven was not with him because he did not seek to illus-

p. Bk. X., p. 2. 成湯咸至于帝乙，

成王畏相云云。恤祀—were anxious about the sacrifices, i.e., diligently attended to them. The second of Yang in the 'Tao-k'ia,' Pt. 1., 2, gives a good illustration both of the 明德 and the 恤祀.

Observe how the 亦 in the two parts of the par. correspond to each other. 罔敢失

帝—'did not dare to lose God,' i.e., the favour of God. The critics all say 無敢失上

帝之則 or 上帝之意, 'did not dare to neglect the pattern set them by God, or to fail of the wish of God.'

罔不配天其澤—使德澤之及民者

有以配天之廣大, 'caused their virtuous beneficial influences to reach the people in a manner corresponding to the vastness and greatness of Heaven.' K'iang Shing most unwarrantably changes and everts the sentiment, making the text merely — 無不配天享

其福澤, 'all stood before Heaven and enjoyed its blessing.'

9. 在今後嗣王—comp. Bk. X., p. 11. It is Shou, of course, who is spoken of.

罔顯于天—不明於天道, 'unintelligent of the ways of Heaven.'

The meaning given to 罔顯于民 in the par. of the 10th Bk. just referred to might suggest another version of the text; but it will be found that we must take 顯 actively here, whereas it was passive in the other passage.

矧曰,—comp. the same phrase in Bk. X., p. 13, et al.

先王勤家—先王之勤勞於國家, 'the earnest toil of the former kings for the country.'

罔顧云云,—comp. 迪畏天顯小民, Bk. X., p. 9.

10. 惟時—惟是之故, 'on this account.' 11. Gan-k'ao and K'iang Shing take this par. as one long clause, assigning the reason of the ruin just men-

凡^{十二}四方小大邦
喪^{十三}罔非有辭于
罰。○王若曰：爾
殷多士，今惟我
周王，丕靈承帝
事。○有^{十四}命曰：割
殷，告勅于帝。○
惟^{十五}我事不貳適，
惟爾王家我適。

- 12 trate his virtue. *Indeed, with regard to the overthrow of all States, great and small, throughout the four quarters of the empire, in every case there are reasons to be alleged for their punishment.*
13 "The king speaks to this effect:—Ye numerous officers of Yin, the case now is this, that the sovereigns of our Chow, from their great goodness were charged with the work of God. There was the charge to them, "Cut off Yin." *They proceeded to perform it, and announced the correcting work to God. In our affairs we have followed no double aims:—ye of the royal house of Yin must follow us.*

tioned.—大喪之所以降惟天
不與不明其德者故也。It is
better to take it as in the translation.—天之
所不與紂者以紂不明其
德故耳。12. A general proposition
is here laid down embracing the case of Shou.
Comp. Bk. X., p. 3.

Pp. 13–15. *The sovereigns of Chow in over-throwing Yin had merely performed the will of God.* 13. 我周王，—the sovereigns of Chow—were kings Wû and Woo.

丕靈承帝事，—we must take both 丕 and 靈 as adverbs joined to the verb 承. The kings undertook the work, and they did so with a great and almost more than human efficiency. Le-t'ang says:—周之靈承蓋得於不言之表者矣. With 承帝事 comp. 祗承上帝以遏亂略 Bk. III., p. 6. 14. 告勅于帝，—we may suppose this announcement to have been made, either while the operations against Shou were in progress, as related in Bk. III., pp. 6–8, or after they were completed, as in the same Bk., p. 8. 15. The translation of this par. is after Ts'ao, who succeeds better with it than any other of the critics. He says:—周不貳于帝，殷其能祗於

周乎，'As Chow had not been double to God, dare Yin be double to Chow?' 王家—

商王士，p. 1. Lin Che-k'e goes round about the passage in a strange way:—我于

割殷之事，應天順人，一舉而兩之。乃我周王，丕靈承帝事，以紂不明其德故耳。12. A general proposition is here laid down embracing the case of Shou. Comp. Bk. X., p. 3.

割而明之，天用兵之，遂至我周。In the business of cutting off Yin, we were acting in obedience to Heaven and in accordance with man. One movement accomplished the work. We did not need to go twice to the capital of Yin. But you would not discern to whom the favour of Heaven had fallen. After your overthrow you rebelled, and caused us a second time to put our forces in motion. It was you, belonging to the House of the kings of Shang, who called us to go to your capital of Yin. As far fetched is the interpretation of K'ang Shing, who takes 適—敵

—'enemies.'—惟我事順天下，不有貳心而為敵者，惟爾王家作難，與我為敵，謂武庚叛也。

時惟天命無違
人奉德不康寧
居西爾非我一
士予惟時其遷
王曰猷告爾多
大戾肆不正○
亦念天卽于殷
動自乃邑○予
洪無度我不爾
○予其曰惟爾

- 16 III. 'May I not say that you were very lawless? I did not want
17 to remove you. The thing came from your own city. When I
consider also how Heaven has drawn near to Yin with so great
tribulations, it must be that there was *there* what was not right.'
18 "The king says, 'Ho! I declare to you, ye numerous officers, it
is simply on account of these things that I have removed and
settled you in the west;—it was not that I, the one man, considered
it a part of my virtue to make you untranquil. The thing was from

Ch. III. Pp. 16-23. THEY HAD OBLIGED
THE KING BY CONTINUED DISAFFECTION TO
REMOVE THEM TO LS. HE HAD DEALT KIND-
LY WITH THEM, AND WAS PREPARED TO DO SO
STILL MORE. THEIR RESORT TO LS WAS
INTENDED FOR THEIR GOOD. 16, 17. It
was the lawless and continued disaffection of Yin
which had necessitated their removal. 18.

予其曰云云,—the emphatic force of
the 其 is brought out in English by using the
negative interrogation. 無度—無法.

'lawless,' 'unregulated.' The reference is to
the rebellion of Woo-kang and his people, with
the king's uncle who had been set over them.

不爾動—動, 'to move,' 'to ex-
cite,' in this case — 'to remove.' 自乃

邑,—comp. 造攻自鳴條 in the 'In-
structions of K.' p. 2. 17. Here, as in p.

11, I have translated according to the view of
Ts'ao, whose exposition of the whole is—

予亦
念天就殷邦屢降大戾紂
既死武庚又死故邪惡不
正言當遷徙也. Gan-kwō ex-

pounds it:—我亦念天就於殷大
罪而加誅者故以紂不能
正身念法. 'I also thought of Heaven;

and having reference to the great crimes of Yin,
inflicted the punishment of death, because Shou
would not correct himself and think of the
laws.' This is absurd enough, but not so much

so as it may at first appear. Gan-kwō under-
standing the 爾洪無度 of the last par.
to have reference to Shou. K'ang Shing takes
a view of the par. quite as wide of the mark,
making 正—殺, 'to put to death,' and inter-
preting:—我亦念武庚之叛是
天就于殷而大拂戾之非
爾多士之由故不正爾多
士釋所以不誅而遷之
意.

P. 18. The king reiterates his assertion that in
removing them to LS he was merely obeying the will
of Heaven. There was no reason why they should
murmur against him. 猷—see on Bk. VII. p.

1. 惟時—惟是之故, 'on account of
these things,' the facts mentioned in the two prec.

par. 遷居西爾,— 'have transferred
your dwelling and settled you,' i.e., have removed
and settled you here in the west. LS lay south
and west from Shou's old capital, though it was
to the east of Haou, Woo's capital. K'ang Shing

strangely argues for the meaning of 西 as
being 止息, 'to give rest to,' so that the
meaning is—'I have changed the place of your
dwelling in order to give you rest' (遷所

居以西息汝). 非我奉德好
不康寧—非我奉持其德好
勞動爾不安寧爾. The expres-

朕不敢有後，無我
 怨。○惟爾知，惟殷
 先人有册，有典，殷
 革夏命。○今爾又
 曰：夏迪簡在王庭，
 有服在百僚，予一
 人惟聽用德，肆予
 敢求爾于天邑商。
 予惟率肆矜爾，非
 予罪，時惟天命。○

- the decree of Heaven; do not resist me; I dare not have any further
 19 *change for you.* Do not murmur against me. Ye know that your
 fathers of the Yin dynasty had their archives and narratives *showing*
 20 how Yin superseded the appointment of Hea. Ye now indeed say
 further, "*The officers of Hea were chosen and promoted to the*
imperial court, or had their places among the mass of officers." I,
 the one man, listen only to the virtuous and employ them; and
 it was with this view that I presumed to seek you out in *your* hea-
 venly city of Shang. I thereby follow the ancient *example*, and have
 pity on you. *Your present non-employment is no fault of mine;*
 it is by the decree of Heaven."

sion 奉德 is here difficult. K'ang Shing gives for the whole—非我所秉之德性不靜安—"was not because my disposition is restless." 時—是。無違。朕不敢有後—I have translated this after Ts'ao, and Gau-kwō took substantially the same meaning:—汝無違命我亦不敢有後誅. The editors of Yung-ching's Shoo say this interpretation is suitable enough; but they also mention with approbation another, proposed by Lin Che-k'e:—"The thing was from the decree of Heaven. That was not to be resisted, and I did not dare to make any delay in obeying it. Do not murmur against me, as if the transference of you here proceeded from me." It is difficult to decide between the two. On the whole, I think the first is preferable.

Ep. 19, 20. Yin's overthrew of Hea sufficiently justified Chou's overthrow of Yin; and if the officers of Yin were not now treated as well as those of Hea had been, they had only themselves to blame.

19. 殷先人—殷之先世. "the prime—early—ages of Yin." 有册有典.—Ts'ao Seih-ch'ow says that by 册 we are

to understand the engraved tablets kept in the depositories, and by 典, the same circulated through the empire (藏府曰册,頒行曰典). 20. 夏迪至百僚—迪—進, 'to bring forward'; 簡=拔, 'to make choice of,' 'to promote.' By 夏 we are evidently to understand 夏之士, 'the officers of the Hea dynasty.' The officers of Yin urge that they were not treated as those of Hea had been. 天邑商—all agree that the capital of the Yin dynasty and country about it are here intended. But why is it called 'the heavenly city?' K'ang-shing says, 'Because it had been originally established by Heaven.' Lea Tsao-hen and others say, 'Because there the emperors of Yin—the sons of Heaven—had dwelt.' Wang Suh says:—"The king means to say, 'Shang, which is now my heavenly city.'" I think it may be spoken ironically—"your heavenly city." K'ang Shing takes the language from 予一人 to 商 to be spoken of the appointment of the virtuous of Wei.—"I also had regard to and employed the virtuous, and I therefore ventured to seek out the descendant of your kings in the city," &c. This is amazingly ingenious, but few will be found to adopt the

多遜。○王^{廿二條}事臣我宗爾遐逃。比致命我乃明爾四國民奄予大降昔朕來自王曰多士

- 21 "The king says, 'Ye numerous officers, formerly, when I came from Yen, I greatly mitigated the penalty in favour of the lives of the people of your four countries. At the same time I made evident the punishment appointed by Heaven, and removed you to this distant abode, that you might be near the ministers who had served in our honoured capital, and learn their much obedience.'"

view. The king is evidently speaking of what he had done to those whom he was addressing.

予惟率肆矜爾—予惟循商故事矜恤爾而已。The meaning is that the king hoped their removal to Lo would lead them to virtue and loyalty, so that it was really an act of kindness to them. While they were vicious and disaffected, it would be contrary to the will of Heaven to confer dignities and offices on them.

P. 21. The officers and people of Yin had really been dealt with very leniently. This par. refers to the time three or four years back, when the rebellion of Woo-kang, supported by the king's uncles, had been disposed of. The wild tribe of the Yen—a district corresponding to the pres. dis. of K'uh-fow, dep. of Yen-chow, Shan-tung—had joined with the insurgents. We hear of them again in Bk. XVIII, as in arms a second time against the new dynasty. The crushing of the Yen had been the last act in the suppression of the rebellion. When that was accomplished, the duke of Chow—for he was the agent, though the thing is here ascribed to the king, after the manner of 'The Great Announcement'—had time to deal with the people of Yin. Our natural conclusion from this par. is certainly that many of the people of Yin were then removed to Lo.

降爾四國民命—降 is here used in the sense of 減 'to diminish,' 'to mitigate.' Their lives were all forfeited; but the king spared their lives, and only banished them. We have not met with this usage of the character before; but it is now quite common in legal language. 民命 as equivalent to 君. Yung-chi says:—民以君爲命。故民命謂君也。The people consider their sovereign to be their life, and hence the sovereign is designated 'the life of the

people.' The meaning then is—I made an end of the rulers of your four kingdoms, thereby executing on them the punishment appointed by Heaven. But this is very far-fetched, and unwarranted. Nor is the view given by K'ang Shing more likely.—I sent down lessons and commands for you, the people of the four kingdoms, and carried clearly out the punishment appointed by Heaven upon their rulers. By the 'four kingdoms' we are to understand the 'imperial domain of Xia,' which had been portioned out to Woo-kang, and three of the king's uncles;—see the note on Bk. VI, p. 12.

移爾遐逃—移爾遠居于洛。Both 遐 and 逃 are defined by 遠 'far,' 'distant.'

比事臣我宗多遜—宗 is here taken as = 宗周, 'the honoured Chow,' a name given to Hsiao, the old capital of Chow, in distinction from the new capital of

成周 at Lo. It was in the duke's mind, in prospect of the new capital, that the old trusted ministers of Chow should remove to it, when the influence of their character and principles would affect beneficially the adherents of the old dynasty brought there into contact with them. The translation is after the 'Daily Ex-

planation':—移爾遠居于洛使爾得密邇王室親比臣事我宗周之臣子遠離頑梗之俗漸摩遜順之風。There is little to choose between this and the following ingenious exposition by Choo He:—以親我事我臣我宗法我周濟濟多遜之盛, 'that ye might be near us, serve us, and be ministers to us, honouring and imitating the rich and full obedience of our Chow.'

曰告爾殷多士。今予
 惟不爾殺。予惟時命
 有申。今朕作大邑于
 茲洛。予惟四方罔攸
 賓。亦惟爾多士。攸服
 奔走。臣我多遜。○爾
 乃尚有爾土。爾乃尚
 寧幹止。○爾克敬天
 惟畀矜爾。爾不克敬
 爾不啻不有爾土。予

- 22 "The king says, 'I declare to you, ye numerous officers of Yin, —now I have not put you to death, and therefore I repeat to you my charge again. I have built this great city here in Lō, considering that there was no other place in which to receive my guests from the four quarters, and also that you, ye numerous officers, might here with zealous activity, perform the part of ministers to us with much obedience. You have still here I may say your grounds, and here you may still rest in your duties and dwellings.
- 23
- 24 If you can reverently obey, Heaven will favour and compassionate you. If you cannot reverently obey, you will not only not have

Pp. 22, 23. The king again reports his objects in building Lō, and impresses on the officers of Yin the kindness with which he was treating them.

22. 予惟不至有申。申—重。'to repeat.' They had received one charge in their first removal; the present address might be considered a repetition of it. 今朕

作大邑于茲洛—possibly the 'great city' here may be the 王城, or imperial city, in connection with the building of which we have seen that the duke of Shao was specially despatched. Though 'the lower capital,' where the officers of Yin were located may have been previously built, at least in part, the design intended by it could not be realized, until the other was likewise prepared. 四方罔攸

賓—四方諸侯罔有賓禮之所. The king's 'guests' were the princes coming to court from all the States. 攸服

奔走—where ye might serve, heaving and running. 23. Gan-k'ed took this part as a promise.—'If you learn obedience to us, and

become loyal subjects, then you will still have here your grounds,' &c. But it is better to take the language as historical, and showing how generously they had been treated. 尚—庶幾. here—our 'I may say.' 幹—事, 'business,' 'duties.' 止—居, 'dwellings,' 'settlements.'

CH. IV. Pp. 24—25. LET THE OFFICERS OF YIN ACQUIESCE IN THEIR LOT, AND THEY MAY HAVE A HAPPY AND PROSPEROUS FUTURE IN Lō. IF THEY REFUSE TO DO SO, THEY WILL BRING ON THEMSELVES UTTER RUIN. 24.

爾克敬—'If you can reverence.' We are not to find in 敬 here all that is denoted by 'the virtue of reverence' in Bk. XIII., but a standing in awe and submission to what had happened to them. 畀矜爾—such of

these verbs 畀 and 矜 has a meaning of its own. We are not to think that they run into each other. As Lin Che-k' has it, 天必

有以畀予之矜憐之—但 'only,' 致天之罰于爾躬—compare 致天罰 in p. 21. The

亦致天之罰廿五節于爾躬。○今爾惟時宅爾邑，繼爾居，爾厥有幹有年，于茲洛。爾小子乃興從爾遷。○王曰：「又曰：時予乃或言，爾攸居。」

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK. XV. AGAINST LUXURIOUS EASE.

則難穡先無子鳴周
知乃之知逸所呼公
小逸艱稼○其君曰
無逸

- 1 I. The duke of Chow said, "Oh! the superior man rests in this,
- 2 —that he will have no luxurious ease. He first understands the painful toil of sowing and reaping, how it conducts to ease, and thus

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—無逸, 'Avoiding Luxurious Ease.' These words are taken from the first paragraph. They are the keynote to the whole Book, and hence are rightly taken to designate it. Gauthier says the characters mean—'If no first pain is there no pleasure.' Moell-hurst entitles the Book—On avoiding luxurious ease. 逸 and 佚 are used interchangeably.

Their primary signification is that of 'Idleness'; compare Mencius, VII. Pt. II, xlv. 1, and IV., Pt. II, xxx. 2. But as the character is used in the Shoo, it does not denote a mere passive idleness, but one in which, while the proper duties are neglected, improper lusts and gratifications may be eagerly sought; see the 'Counsels of Yu,' p. 14; *et al.* Still the idea of the term here is that of 'luxurious or indulgent ease.'

無 is used as the imperative 毋. The Book is found in both the texts. It comes under the division of 訓 or 'Instructions.'

CONTEXTS. The prefatory note is simply to the effect that 'the duke of Chow made the *Woo Yü*,' without a word about the time or occasion of it. The general view, which there is no reason to dispute, is that the duke of Chow addressed it to King Chung, soon after he had resigned the government into his hands. That the minister thought it necessary thus to admonish the young sovereign confirms what I have several times urged, that there was between them a measure of dissatisfaction on the one

side and of suspicion on the other. There are six pauses in the course of the address, which is resumed always with a 周公曰鳴

呼. 'The duke of Chow said, "Oh!"' A division into seven chapters is thus suggested.

In par. 1—3, the duke leads the king to find a rule for himself in the laborious toils which devolve on the husbandman. In par. 4—7, he refers to the long reigns of three of the sovereigns of the Yü dynasty, and the short reigns of others, as illustrating how the blessing of Heaven rests on the diligent sovereign. In par. 8—11, the example of their own kings, T'ae, Ke, and Wan is adduced with the same object. In par. 12, 13, the duke addresses the king personally, and urges him to follow the example of king Wan and flee from that of Shou. In 14, 15, he stimulates him by reference to ancient precedents to adopt his counsels, and shows the evil effects that will follow if he refuse to do so. In par. 16—18, he shows him by the examples of the good kings of Yin and of king Wan how he ought to have regard to the opinions of the common people, and gird himself to diligence. The last par. is a single admonition that the king should lay what had been said to heart.

Ch. I. Pp. 1—3. THE GREAT PRINCIPLE, THAT THERE SHOULD BE NO INDULGENT EASE. IT IS ENFORCED BY A REFERENCE TO THE TOILS OF HUSBANDRY, AND THE FREQUENT DECEASE OF THE SONS OF THOSE WHO HAVE TOILED

人之依。○
 小人厥父○
 勤勞稼穡
 子乃不知稼
 穡之艱難
 逸乃諺既誕
 否則侮厥父
 母曰昔之人
 無聞知。○
 公曰嗚呼我

- 3 he understands the law of the support of the inferior people. I have observed among the inferior people, that where the parents have diligently laboured in sowing and reaping, their sons often do not understand this painful toil, and abandon themselves to ease, and to village slang, and become quite disorderly. Or where they do not do so, they throw contempt on their parents, saying, 'Those old people have heard nothing and know nothing.'
- 4 II. The duke of Chow said, "Oh! I have heard that aforetime the emperor of Yin, Chung-tsung, was grave, humble, reverential, and

HARD. 1. 君子所其無逸—

K'ang-shing thought that 君子 here was spoken simply of the ruler (君子止謂在官長者), without any implication of the virtuous character which is commonly denoted by the expression. He must be wrong. The designation is to be taken of 'the man of virtue,' with an application of it implied to such a man in authority. I take 所 as a verb

—止. The usage is akin to that in Bk. XIII, p. 16.—王敬作所 其無 (一毋)逸 is then under the govt. of 所.

T'sao, after Loü Tsao-hsien, gives for the par.—君子以無逸爲所 which brings out the meaning very well. Ch'ing and Gan-kwé both put a comma at 所,—which is very

harsh. The former says:—君子處位爲政其無自逸豫也; and the latter:—君子之道所在念德其無逸豫

2. It is as well to take 君子 as the subject of the two 知 here. The meaning would be substantially the same if we supposed the language directly addressed to king Ching, when 先知 would be 'when you first understand.' The only difficulty is with the 乃逸. The characters simply show that ease and plenty are a result of the toils of husbandry. Gan-kwé attributed a sort of hortatory force to them, and inter-

preted:—稼穡農夫之艱難事

先知之乃謀逸豫, 'sowing and reaping are the toilsome business of the husbandman. This must first be known, and then plans for ease may be laid.' Soü Shih objected to this that the object of the duke of Chow was to get the king to put away the thought of ease, and it was not likely he would begin to suggest to him the idea of 'planning for ease.' The criticism is subtle, but correct. 'What the inferior people depend on' is 'their hard toil in the fields.' That is the law of their support. Ease comes from it as a matter of course. Ease finds them; they do not seek it.

3. 小人—compare 相古先民. Bk.

XII, p. 11. 小人,—as in the last par.—

小民 乃逸乃諺既誕—乃縱逸自恣乃習俚巷鄙語既又誕妄無所不至, as in the translation. 誕 is 'a proverb,' 'a saying.' Gan-kwé understands by it 'coarse language,' taking it—嘖:—see Ana. XI, xvi.

4. K'ang Shing reads—乃佚乃憲

既誕不則, 'they become idle, and indulge in pleasure, behave rudely, and are lawless.' I prefer the received text and interpretation.

昔之人—古老之人, as I have translated it; or it may mean 'our predecessors.'

Ch. II. Pp. 4—7. THE ADVANTAGES OF AVOIDING SELF-INDULGENT EASE SHOWN BY THE HISTORY OF SEVERAL OF THE SOVEREIGNS

聞曰、昔在殷王中宗、
嚴恭寅畏、天命自度、
治民祗懼、不敢荒寧、
肆中宗之享國、七十
有五年。○其在高宗
時、舊勞于外、爰暨小
人、作其卽位、乃或亮
陰、三年不言、其惟不
言、言乃雍、不敢荒寧、
嘉靖殷邦、至于小大、

fearful. He measured himself with reference to the appointment of Heaven, and cherished a reverent apprehension in governing the people, not daring to indulge in useless ease. It was thus that Chung-tsung enjoyed the throne for seventy and five years.

- 5 "If we come to the time of Kaou-tsung, he toiled at first away from the court, and was among the inferior people. When he came to the throne, it may be said that, while he was in the mourning shed, for three years he did not speak. Afterwards he was still inclined not to speak; but when he did speak, his words were full of harmonious wisdom. He did not dare to indulge in useless and easy

OF THE YIN DYNASTY. 4. The case of Chung-tsung.

昔在殷王中宗。—the 在 here and the following part. = 'In the case of.' 中宗 was the sacrificial title (廟號) of the emperor described. See the note on Tsun-mow, p. 229. 嚴 and 恭 are said to express the king's reverence as shown externally, while 寅 and 畏 describe his inward feeling of it.

天命自度。—by 天命 Ts'ue and many others understand 天理, 'Heavenly principles,' so that the meaning of the clause is, 'He measured (= defined the rules of life for) himself in accordance with heavenly principles.' But this is needless refining. The meaning rather is that Kaou-tsung felt that 'the appointment of Heaven,' which placed him upon the throne, brought with it certain duties and responsibilities, on his discharge of which depended his retaining Heaven's favour; he therefore measured himself to know whether his course was what it ought to be. Woo Ch'ing brings this meaning out very clearly. 天命在躬, 易失難保. 故反躬自省, 謹循法則, 惟恐不能永保天命也. I have

said on p. 229 that we might doubt the length of Chung-tsung's reign, if it were not thus guaranteed by the duke of Chow. Two brothers are said to have preceded him on the throne:—first Yung-ke, who reigned 12 years; and before him Sekou-k'ia, who reigned 17 years. If Chung-tsung were born in the same year that their father died, a.c. 1664, he must have been 30 when he succeeded to the empire.

5. The case of Kaou-tsung. See Book VIII, of the last Part.

其在高宗時。—the 時 should evidently be read with the first clause, but it is difficult to explain it, or to account for it.

舊勞于外, 爰暨小人。—comp. 'The Charge to Yü,' Pt. iii, p. 1. The old interpreters took 舊—久, 'long.' It is better to take it as = 'at first,' i.e., while his father was alive (當其爲太子之時). 爰—於是; and 暨—與, 'with.' The text must be supplemented:—於是與小人同其事. It is perplexing to find 暨 used as a preposition, and not simply a conjunction. 作其卽位。—in order

無時或怨肆高
宗之享國五十
有九年。○其在
祖甲不義惟王
舊爲小人作其
卽位爰知小人
之依能保惠于
庶民不敢侮鰥
寡肆祖甲之享
國三十有三年。

ways, but admirably and tranquilly presided over the empire of Yin, till in all its States, great and small, there was not a single murmur. It was thus that Kaou-tsung enjoyed the throne for fifty and nine years.

- 6 "In the case of Tsou-k'ia, he would not unrighteously be emperor, and was at first one of the inferior people. When he came to the throne, he understood *the law* of the support of the inferior people, and was able to exercise a protecting kindness towards their masses, and did not dare to treat with contempt the widower and widows. Thus it was that Tsou-k'ia enjoyed the throne for thirty and three years.

to bring out the meaning of 作 Woo Ch'ing

says: 一起自民間卽天子位

'He arose from among the people, and ascended the imperial seat.' But in trying to account for the 作, he overlooks the 其 作 has

here merely a conjunctive force, 一及 乃

或亮陰三年不言—see 'The

Charge to Yue,' Pt. I, p. 1. I have said there

that we are not to suppose that the emperor

during the years of mourning maintained a total

silence, but only kept from speaking on govern-

mental matters. This is perhaps indicated by

the 或. 其惟不言言乃雍

—I have translated this according to the account

which we have in the beginning of 'The Charge

to Yue.' K'ang-shing supposed that the duke

is still speaking of Kaou-tsung during the time

of mourning; but that is very unlikely. The

history is evidently being carried on and for-

ward. 嘉靖殷邦—he made the

States—the empire—of Yin admirable and tran-

quil, i.e., he hushed all jarings, and produced

great prosperity.

6. *The case of Tsou-k'ia.* Tsou-k'ia was the

son of Kaou-tsung. I have mentioned on p. 363

that Sze-ma Ts'ien says that Tsou-k'ia was lowly

and disorderly. Similar testimony is found in

spoken of here was the son of Kaou-tsung,

and maintained that we were to find him in

T'ao-k'ia, the grandson of T'ang. But from

Chung-tsung the duke comes on to Kaou-tsung,

approaching to the rise of their own dynasty of

Chow,—how unnatural the address would be if

he were now to go back to the beginning of the

times of Yin! Moreover, the son of Kaou-tsung

was styled Tsou-k'ia, while the grandson of

T'ang was called T'ao-k'ia. Nor does the con-

finement of T'ao-k'ia for a season by E Yin for

his misdeeds sufficiently answer the require-

ments of the text.—不義惟王舊爲

小人知小人之依 Gan-k'wo

says—湯孫太甲爲王不義

久爲小人之行伊尹放之

桐. T'ao-k'ia, being king, proved unrighteous.

He had long displayed the conduct of an

unworthy person, and E Yin confined him in

T'ang. But the meaning thus given to 小人,

which has already occurred three times in the

address, and always with the signification of

'the inferior people,' without any implication

of unworthiness, must be rejected. On every

ground we must conclude that the sovereign

spoken of was not the grandson of T'ang. He

was the son of Kaou-tsung. K'ang-shing has a

story that Woo-ling wanted to disinherit Tsou-

k'ia's elder brother in favour of him, and that

Tsou-k'ia, thinking such a proceeding would be

unrighteous, withdrew and lived for a time among

○自時厥後立王，
生則逸，生則逸，不
知稼穡之艱難，不
聞小人之勞，惟耽
樂之從，自時厥後，
亦罔或克壽，或十
年，或七八年，或五
六年，或四三年。○
周公曰：嗚呼，厥亦
惟我周太王王季。

- 7 "The emperors which arose after these all their life-time enjoyed ease. From their birth enjoying ease, they did not understand the painful toil of sowing and reaping, nor hear of the hard labours of the inferior people. They only sought after excessive pleasures, and so not one of them enjoyed the throne for a long period. They continued for ten years, for seven or eight, for five or six, or perhaps only for three or four."

- 8 III. The duke of Chow said, "Oh! there likewise were king T'ae and king Ke of our own Chow, who attained to humility and reverential

the common people (祖甲以爲不義逃於民間). T'ae adduces this as the ground of the language in the text, — 不義惟王。

舊爲小人。Ying-ta and Maou K'e ling after him object to this account, that no authority can be adduced for it, and that there is no evidence of K'ea's elder brother being unworthy, while it is defaming a good king like Woo-t'ing to say that he wanted to disinherit his eldest son in favour of a younger brother. K'e ling, therefore, supposes that T'ao-k'ea, in his youth, had been dissolute, and consorted with unworthy associates (不義惟王，舊爲小人，言祖甲少行不義，爰及非類). But here is the meaning of 小人 to which I have objected above.

His explanation is as much an hypothesis as that of K'ang-shing, whom he vehemently condemns. The truth is, — while it is plain that it is the son of Kao-t'ung of whom the duke of Chow speaks, we do not know enough of that emperor to explain all his language.

Gan-kwé for 保惠于庶民 gives 安順於庶民. It is better to take 惠—愛, as in the translation.

1. The other emperors of Yin. 生則逸. — being born, they had ease. The 'Daily

Explanation' says: — 身爲帝王之裔，長于宮禁之中，生則止見安逸耳。K'ang Shing says in-

geniously that the repetition of 生則逸 indicates that thus it was with one emperor and another. It is as well, however, to construe as I have done.

惟耽樂之從. — another reading for this is 惟湛樂是克. 從: but the meaning is the same.

壽 — 'could come to old age'; but the sequel shows that he is speaking of the occupancy of the throne. A long life and a long reign, however, would generally go together. It is to be observed that the reigns of the other sovereigns of Yin were not so short as the text says. There were six emperors after T'ao-k'ea, of whom one reigned 21 years; a second, 23; and the tyrant Shou himself, 28. Between Kao-t'ung and Chung-t'ung, again, there were 12 reigns, of which only 2 were under ten years.

Ch. III. Pp. 8—11. THE DUKE DIRECTS THE KING'S ATTENTION TO THE PRINCES OF THEIR OWN DYNASTY, — TO KINGS T'AE AND KE, AND ESPECIALLY TO KING WAE. 8. 厥亦

云云, — the 厥 corresponds to the 其 with which pp. 5 and 6 begin. 太王王季 — see Bk. III., p. 5; and the notes in pp. 268, 269.

克自抑畏。○文
王卑服。○微柔懿
恭懷保小民惠
鮮鰥寡。自朝至
于日中。昃不遑
暇食。用咸和萬
民。○文王不敢
盤于遊田。以庶
邦惟正之供。文

- 9 awe. King Wān dressed meanly, and gave himself to the work of
10 tranquillization, and to that of husbandry. Admirably mild and beau-
tifully humble, he cherished and protected the inferior people, and
showed a fostering kindness to the widower and widows. From
morning to midday, and from midday to sundown, he did not allow
11 himself time to eat;—thus seeking to secure the happy harmony
of the myriads of the people. King Wān did not dare to go to any
excess in his excursions or his hunting, and from the various States
he received only the correct amount of contribution. He received

克自抑畏—抑 means 'to press hard,' and 'to repress.' Hence 自抑—'to be humble.' 9. 文王卑服.—comp. what Confucius says about Yu, Ana, VIII, xxi. 卽—就 'to approach to;' here—'to apply to.' 康功—安民之功. 'services giving repose to the people.' 田功—養民之功. 'services giving nourishment to the people.' See Mencius, I, Pt. II, v., 3.

K'ang Shing takes 服—事, so that the par. would have a very unworthy meaning, 'king Wān occupied himself with mean affairs,' &c.

10. 微柔懿恭—微 and 懿 are both defined by 美, 'admirable,' 'excellent.' If Wān's mildness, it is said, had not been 微, it would have been weakness; and if his respectfulness had not been 懿, it would have been hypocrisy (足恭之恭; see Ana. V, xxi.). 惠鮮鰥寡—惠鮮 is a difficult expression, and K'ang Shing reads 惠

于鰥寡, which is much simpler. Ts'ao, adhering to the meaning of 鮮 as 'fresh, with no taint of corruption,' says that 'widowers and widows hang their heads down, all out of spirits; and when you give them an alms, you make them as it were become alive.' This is very

strained. We must take 鮮—善, a meaning which it sometimes has. Gan-kwō seems to miss the meaning altogether, and construes absurdly. 昃 is the sun declining in the west. 自朝至于日中昃—自朝至于日之中, 自中至于日之昃. 不遑暇食.—both 遑 and 暇 signify 'leisure.' Ying-iti observes that in their conjunction we have an instance of the duplicated expressions (複語) of the ancients.

11. 盤于遊田.—we met with 盤遊無度 in Pt. III, Bk. III, p. 1, where 盤 has the sense of 樂, 'pleasure.' Here, followed by 于, however, the meaning of 盤桓不止, 'incessant movement,' is to be preferred. On the 遊—see Mencius, I, Pt. II, iv., 5. There were the proper seasons both for tours of inspection and hunting expeditions. Wān made them both at those seasons, and did not protract them beyond the regulated length of time. 田—畋, 'to hunt.' 以庶邦惟正之供.—Ts'ao, after earlier critics of the Sung dynasty, takes this as—於常貢正數之外無橫斂也, 'beyond the correct amount of the regular tribute, he made no oppressive exactions;' and he adds that if Wān dealt in

王受命惟中身厥
享國五十年。○周
公曰、嗚呼、繼自今、
嗣王則其無淫于
觀于逸于遊于田、
以萬民、惟正之供。
○無皇曰、今日耽
樂、乃非民攸訓、非
天攸若、時人不則
有愆、無若殷王受

the appointment of Heaven in the middle of his life, and enjoyed the throne for fifty years."

- 12 IV. The duke of Chow said, "Oh! from this time forward, do you who have succeeded to the throne imitate his avoiding of excess in his sights, his ease, his excursions, his hunting; and from the myriads
13 of the people receive only the correct amount of contribution. Do not allow yourself the leisure to say, 'To-day I will indulge in pleasure.' This is not holding out a lesson to the people, nor the way to secure the favour of Heaven. Men will on the contrary

this way with the States which acknowledged his authority as chief of the West, it is easy to see how gentle was his taxation of his own people. Gan-kwé interpreted the clause quite differently:—以衆國所取法則

富以正道供待之, which Ying-tā expounds, 'He considered that it was from him that all the States had to take their pattern, so that his proper business was to regulate himself with a right heart, to minister the treatment to them.' This is hardly intelligible; and Kéang Shing would gladly reduce the whole clause to 唯政之恭, 'and reverently attended to the business of the govt.,' from a passage in the 國語, 楚語上, which even Yuh-tsun says ought not to be credited in the case;—
段大令古文尚書撰異, in 100.

受命惟中身.—Wán's 'receiving the appointment' here can only be understood of his succeeding to his father as one of the princes of the empire. Gan-kwé observes that Wán died at the age of 37, and as he was 47 when he came to the principality of Chow, the expression 中身, 'middle of his life,' must not be pressed.

Ch. IV. Pp. 12, 13. THE DUKE CHOW KING CHING TO MAKE THE MAXIM OF 'NO DAY FOR IDLENESS' THE RULE OF HIS LIFE, AND TO RECHER THE EXAMPLE OF SHOU. 12. Gan-

kwé points 繼自今嗣王, 云云, and understands the duke to have in view all future sovereigns of the House of Chow (繼從今已往嗣世之王, 皆戒之), so that the 則 that follows is merely a particle. I prefer, however, the construction of Te'we, which appears in the translation. Acc. to it, the words are addressed to king Ching, though there is of course a lesson in them for future kings as well; 則 is a verb, —法, 'to imitate,' and the 其 which follows it refers to king Wán.

觀—our 'sight-seeing.' 以萬民 takes here the place of 以庶邦, being appropriate to the case of the emperor, whereas the other expression was descriptive of Wán as the 'Chief of the West,' the Head of a portion of the States.

Kéang Shing gives for the par.—嗚呼 繼自今嗣王其毋淫于酒, 毋佚于游田, 維正之共, which appears in one of the chapters of 'The Books of Han,' and was perhaps the reading of Peh-shang. 12. 皇 must be taken as—the

邊 of par. 10. 非民攸訓—非民之所以爲教, 'is not what the people should take as their lesson. 天攸若—

之迷亂。酖于酒德哉。○周公曰：嗚呼！我聞曰：古之人，猶胥訓告，胥保惠，胥教誨。民無或胥譴。張爲幻。○此厥不聽人乃訓之，乃變亂。

greatly imitate you, and practise evil. Become not like Show, the king of Yin, who went quite astray, and was abandoned to the practice of drunkenness."

- 14 V. The duke of Chow said, "Oh! I have heard it said that, in the case of the ancients, *their ministers discharged their functions* in warning and admonishing them, in protecting and *loving* them, in teaching and instructing them; and among their people there was hardly one who would impose on them by extravagant language or deceiving tricks. If you will not listen to this *and profit by it*, your ministers will imitate you, and so the correct laws of the former

天之所順。'what Heaven will accord with.' 時=是, corresponding to the 乃 above. 時人不則有愆—是人 大則效之斯有愆尤矣。 酖于酒德—comp. 'The Viscount of Wei,' p. 1. It is very evident that 德 may be spoken of vice as well as of virtue.

Ch. V. Pp. 14, 15. THE DUKE URGES THE KING TO RECEIVE GOOD ADVICE, REFERRING TO THE CASE OF ANCIENT SOVEREIGNS WHO HAD DONE SO, AND POINTING OUT THE EVIL CONSEQUENCES OF A CONTRARY COURSE. 14. By

古之人 we are probably to understand the three sovereigns of Yin celebrated in the second chapter, and king Wan. 猶胥至教誨—we have to understand 其臣, 'their ministers,' as the subject of the verbs 訓告.

Ac. The force of the 猶, 'still,' is thus brought out:—'The virtue of those ancient sovereigns was complete. It seemed as if they needed no assistance; but *still* their ministers did not cease to instruct them,' &c. 胥—相. It indicates the mutual intercourse of sovereigns and ministers, while we must restrict the action of the verbs to the latter. 民無或云云—this shows the result throughout the empire, when these good sovereigns were guided and supported in such a way by their ministers. The dict. explains 譴張 together by 誣, 'to

lie,' 'to deceive.' This is plainly the meaning, but I do not know that 張 by itself is ever found with this signification. 幻 is defined by 變名易實以眩觀, 'changing names and transposing realities, to deceive the sight.' In T'uh-shang's text this clause appears to have wanted the commencing 民, and the 胥 after 或.

15. An application of the statements in the prec. par. is here made to king Ching. If he will not listen to them, 人乃 訓之 (=人乃法則之), 'men will learn of him.' The 'men' intruded are his ministers. 正刑—正法, 'correct laws.' True instances the light punishments and light taxation, which were the rule with ancient good sovereigns, and which would be superseded by severe penalties, and heavy exactions.

至于小大 is to be joined with 正刑. 民否,—the people disapproving.' The disallowing and changing the laws which were favourable to them will awaken their disaffection and displeasure. Hostile feelings will be cherished in their hearts, and turn to curses on their tongues. 詛祝—these two terms together—our 'to curse.' Ying-ti says that 'to ask the spirits to make miserable is called 詛; and to announce one's thoughts to the spirits by words is called 祝 (請神加殃 謂之詛, 以言告神謂之祝).

True and many others explain the par. in

先王之正刑，至于小
大民，否則厥心違怨，
否則厥口詛祝。○周
公曰：嗚呼！自殷王中
宗及高宗及祖甲及
我周文王，茲四人迪
哲。○厥或告之曰：小
人怨汝，詈汝，則皇自
敬德。厥愆，曰：朕之愆，
允若時，不啻不敢含

- kings, both small and great, will be changed and disordered. The people blaming you will disobey and rebel in their hearts;—yea, they will curse you with their mouths."
- 16 VI. The duke of Chow said, "Oh! those kings of Yin, Chung-tsung, Kaou-tsung, and Tsao-keen, with king Wan of our Chow,—these
- 17 four men carried their knowledge into practice. If it was told them—The inferior people murmur against you, and revile you, then they paid great and reverent attention to their conduct; and with reference to the faults imputed to them they said, 'Our faults are really so.' They acted thus, not simply not daring to cherish

the way thus exhibited; and I don't think we can do better with it. Woo Ch'ing, taking 此厥

不聽 as Ts'ao does, gives for the rest a con-

struction of his own, and makes the meaning—

'If you will not hearken to this and profit by it, then men will persuade you to change and con-

fuse the correct laws of the former kings. Those laws were very favourable to the people; and

when they are so changed, the people, small and great, will cherish, some of them, a rebellious

resentment in their hearts, while others will proceed to curse you with their mouths' (成

王于此古人不聽信則先王于小

人乃道說之以變亂先王之法甚或

之正法變亂之則至于心者矣

民一變或有詛祝于口者矣

或大或詛祝于口者矣

此厥不聖人乃訓變

亂正刑云云，—'When the ancient

sovereigns were not sage, then men led them

away to change,' &c., according to the view of

Woo Ch'ing. He is compelled, however, to doubt

the genuineness of the 民; and indeed, if 民

be genuine here (and there is no evidence to

the contrary), the same character in the pro-

par. cannot be assailed. The reading of 聖

moreover, and consequent making this chapter

terminate without any application to king Ching,

taken from its connection with the rest of the

Book.

Ch. VI. Pp 16–18. THE DUKE PRESENTS

ON THE KING THE DUTY OF LISTENING TO

ADVICE BY THE EXAMPLE OF THE GOOD SOVE-

REIGNS WHOM HE HAS MENTIONED, AND POINTS

OUT AGAIN THE EVIL CONSEQUENCES OF A CON-

TRARY COURSE. 16. 迪哲,—tried in the

way of their knowledge.' Ts'ao says this is

what Mencius calls 'the richest fruit of wisdom,

—the knowing, and not putting the knowledge

away' (智之實知而弗去是也; see IV., Pt. I., xxvii. 2).

17. 皇自

敬德—皇—大 'great,' 'greatly.' We

may take 敬德 as in Bk. XII., or more

generally, as I have done in the translation.

Ying-t'ao makes the clause—增修善政,

'they increasingly cultivated good government.'

怒。^{十八}此厥不聽人
乃或譸張爲幻，曰
小人怨汝詈汝，則
信之，則若時不永
念厥辟，不寬綽厥
心，亂罰無罪，殺無
辜，怨有同，是叢于
厥身。^{十九}周公曰：嗚
呼！嗣王其監于茲。

18 anger. If you will not listen to this *and profit by it*, when men with extravagant language and deceptive tricks say to you, 'The inferior people are murmuring against you and reviling you,' you will believe them. Doing this, you will not be always thinking of your princely duties, and will not cultivate a large and generous heart. You will confusedly punish the crimeless, and put the innocent to death. There will be a general murmuring, which will be concentrated upon your person."

19 VII. The duke of Chow said, "Oh! you king, who have succeeded to the throne, make a study of these things."

厥愆—于其所誣毀之愆。
"in the case of the faults which were wrongly imputed to them." 18. This is the application of the prec. two parr., as par. 15 was an application of 14. K'ang Shing cannot adopt 聖 here in the first clause as in p. 18, not having the precedent which he there had. Still he says we ought to read 聖; but I cannot think so. The duke of Chow would not have put the case that the worthies he celebrated could have behaved themselves so unworthily.

At 則若是 the transition is abrupt, but the meaning is plain.

不永念厥辟—不能永念其爲君之

道, as in the translation. This is much better than, with K'ang Shing, to read 辟 as p'ei, and understand the expression as—不能引咎自責也. 'they could not have acknowledged the blame, and reproved themselves.' 怨有同,—"resentments will be the same," i.e., people may receive injuries of different kinds, but all will agree in the feeling of injury and resentment.

Ch. VII. P. 19. Concluding exhortation, that the king should think of all that had been said to him, and use the address as a light to guide him to safety and exaltation,—as a lesson to warn him from what was evil and dangerous.

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XVI. PRINCE SHIH.

周命既于天 ○ 曰周
既我墜殷降弗君公 君
受有厥殷喪弔爽若 爽

- 1 I. The duke of Chow spake to the following effect, "Prince Shih,
- 2 Heaven, unpitying, sent down ruin on Yin; Yin has lost its appointment, and the princes of our Chow have received it. I do not dare, however, to say, as if I knew it, 'The foundation will ever truly

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—君爽, 'Prince Shih.' With these words the Book begins, and they are taken to be its designation. Shih was the name of the duke of Shao; see on the title of Book XII. It was to him that the address or announcement here preserved was delivered, so that his name is not an inappropriate designation for it. The Book is found in both the texts.

CONTENT. True says that the duke of Shao had announced his purpose to retire from office on account of his age, when the duke of Chow persuaded him to remain at his post, and the reasons which he set before him were recorded to form this Book. If this was the design of the duke of Chow, he was a master of the art of telling his thoughts with a cloud of words. There are expressions which may be taken, indeed, as intimating a wish that the prince Shih should continue at court; but some violence has to be put upon them.

The prefatory notice is to the effect that, when the two dukes were acting as chief ministers to King Ching, the duke of Chow was 'not pleased' (不悅; see p. 11), and the duke of Chow made the 'Prince Shih.' This expression—'not pleased'—has wonderfully vexed the ingenuity of the critics. It is of no use adducing their various explanations of it, for there is nothing in the Book to indicate the existence of such a feeling in Shih's mind. If

he was really entertaining such a feeling from any cause, and had in consequence sought leave to withdraw from public life, the duke of Chow thought it his best plan to make no open reference to those delicate points.

The two principal ideas in the address are—that the favour of Heaven can only be permanently secured for a dynasty by the virtue of its sovereigns; and that that virtue is secured mainly by the counsel and help of virtuous ministers. The ablest sovereigns of Shang are mentioned, and the ministers by whose aid it was, in a great measure, that they became what they were. The cases of Wan and Woo of their own dynasty, similarly aided by able men, are adduced in the same way; and the speaker adverts to the services which they—the two dukes—had already rendered to their House and their sovereign, and insists that they must go on to the end, and accomplish still greater things. It may be that he is all the while combating some suspicion of himself in the mind of prince Shih, and rebuking some purpose which Shih had formed to abandon his post at the helm of the State; but this is only matter of inference, and does not by any means clearly appear. It will be seen that I have, for convenience' sake, arranged the three and twenty paragraphs in four chapters.

Ch. I. Pp. 1—5. CHOW IS FOR THE PRESENT RAISED BY THE FAVOUR OF HEAVEN TO THE SOVEREIGNTY OF THE EMPIRE. BUT THAT FA-

我 不 敢 知 曰 厥
基 永 孚 于 休 若
天 棐 忱 我 亦 不
敢 知 曰 其 終 出
于 不 祥 〇 嗚 呼
君 已 曰 時 我 我
亦 不 敢 寧 于 上
帝 命 弗 永 遠 念
天 威 越 我 民 罔
尤 違 惟 人 在 我

abide in prosperity. [If Heaven aid sincerity,—] Nor do I dare to say, as if I knew it, 'The final end will issue in our misfortunes.' Oh! you have said, O prince, 'It depends on ourselves.' I also do not dare to rest in the favour of God, never forecasting at a distance the terrors of Heaven in the present time when there is no murmuring or disobedience among the people;—the issue is with men. Should our present successor to his fathers

YOUR MAY NOT BE PERMANENT. THE DUKE OF CHOW IS ANXIOUS, AND PRINCE SHIH SHOULD BE THE SAME, TO SECURE IT BY CULTIVATING THE VIRTUE OF THE MING.

1. 君 爽—in the plainness of ancient manners, it is said, when people were talking together they called each other by their names. Shih, however, is honoured with the title of 'prince,' which might be given to him, as he had been invested with the principality of Yen. See on the name of Bk. XI.

2. 嗚呼 expressed Yin in the possession of the empire, but it could not be known beforehand how long it would continue.

弗 既 甲 云 云.—see Bk. XIV, p. 2. The 既 in the next two clauses has no conjunctive force, but marks the perfect tense.

我 不 敢 知 至 末—compare Bk. XII, p. 17. That passage seems to have misled the old interpreters, and still to mislead many of the present day, as to the meaning of the text. They make the speaker to have the fate of the past-away dynasty of Yin before him, and not that of their existing Chow.—'I do not dare to know and say, "The House of Yin at its beginning might have long accorded with prosperous ways," &c. It is plain to me that the speaker has before him the destiny of Chow, which they of the dynasty must fashion for themselves. Whether it would be long or short must depend on their conduct.

厥 基 永 孚 于 休—its foundation will for ever be sincerely established in prosperity.

I do not understand the next clause, —若 天 棐 忱 'if Heaven assist the sincere.' Whether we suppose the speaker to have reference to the past Yin or the present Chow, these words were equally out of place. To say that either dynasty might be

sincerely virtuous, and so be aided by Heaven, and yet not abide in security, is contrary to reason; and to the most strongly cherished principles of Chinese doctrine. Medhurst read the words with the next part of the par.—'And should Heaven aid us in very deed, still I would not dare positively to affirm that our end would be entirely the result of misfortune.' But such a construction is inadmissible. I have put the clause in the translation as incomplete, and also within brackets, to intimate that I think it out of place.

其 終 出 于 不 祥.—K'ang Shing reads 其 崇 出 于 不 祥; but he explains 崇 by 終, and 詳 by 善 (—祥). Another reading, evidently false, was—道 出 于 不 祥.

Pp. 3—5. The duty of the ministers of Chow was to do what they could in the present to secure the permanence of the dynasty.

3. 嗚 呼.

君 已 曰 時 我—the simplest way of explaining these words, is by taking 時 我—

是 在 我 而 已. 'It—the permanence of the dyn.—depends on us,' and supposing that the duke refers to a remark to that effect made at some former period by Shih. Lin Che-k'ue and others adduce his language in many parts of his Announcement, e.g. pp. 19, 20, which they think the duke has in view. This is very likely. Other methods to try to get a meaning from the passage are harsh and violent. Gan-k'ue, for instance, took the meaning to be—'Oh! prince, what shall I say? I will say, "You should approve of my remaining in the gov't." It is strange that Maou K'ue-hing should still approve of such a construction. Woo Ch'ing

前克其天^四家前上下大後
人經墜難命^能不知人光弗嗣
恭歷命乃易○在佚恭子
明嗣弗乃易○在佚恭子

prove greatly unable to reverence Heaven and the people, and so bring to an end their glory, could we in our families be ignorant of it?
4 The favour of Heaven is not easily preserved. Heaven is hard to be depended on. Men lose its favouring appointment because they cannot pursue and carry out the reverence and brilliant virtue

takes 君已 in the same way, and then makes 日時我—'But it is my duty to do my utmost to preserve the favour of Heaven.'

我亦至惟人，—the 惟人 with which this part ends corresponds to the 時我 at the beginning, and—實惟在人而已。

弗永遠念天威越我民罔尤違 is all one clause, and to be read together,—another instance of Choo He's long sentences in the Announcements of the Shoo. Ts'ao explains it by 不永遠念天之威於我民無尤怨悖違之時。K'ang Shing puts a stop at 威, understanding the duke as giving one reason for his remaining in the govt. that he could not rest in the present favour of Heaven, but must foresee a change in the aspects of Providence. For the same resolution he finds another reason in the words that follow—越我民罔尤違。

惟人在 (so he points), —'That our people may be kept from murmurs and disaffection depends on the right men being there.' To make the language in any way bear this interpretation he is obliged to suppose that 越 is a mistake for 日。Gau-kwō passed at 命, and made 弗永遠念天威越我民罔尤違 an address to Shih, —'Why do you not think of the terrors of Heaven, and set about affecting and transforming our people, that they may not commit errors and fall into opposition.' Interpretation could hardly be more unlicensed. Nor does he succeed better in what remains of the par. K'e-ling labours in vain to impart some likelihood to his views.

在我後至末—the 在 is used as in the last Book, pp. 3 and 4. By 我後嗣子孫 we must understand king Ch'ing. The

same interpretation must be given of the reading—我嗣事子孫, adopted by K'ang Shing from a passage in the 'Books of the Early Han;—see the 王莽傳上。恭

上下.—Ts'ao understands 'Heaven' to be meant by 上, and 'the people' by 下,

so that the expression—敬天敬民. Others understand 'Heaven and Earth' to be intended.

邊佚前人光—過絕佚墜文武光顯 在家不知 is to be taken interrogatively, —

可得謂在家不知乎. Ts'ao, holding that the object of the address was to induce the duke of Shao to abandon his purpose of retirement; takes the question as addressed to him, —'Could you be ignorant of it?' The old interpreters, holding that the speaker is much occupied with vindicating his own remaining in the government, take it in the first person, —'Could I be ignorant.' The best plan seems to be to put it as in the translation. It may thus be applied to either of the dukes; and I believe that the duke of Chow intended it both for himself and his friend.

4, 5. 天命不易. 天難謀—comp. the 'Both possessed Pure Virtue, p. 2; et al. K'ang Shing, on the authority mentioned above, reads—命

不易. 天應棗謀, which may safely be rejected on internal grounds. In interpreting the rest of the par. there is much difference of view. Acc. to that followed in the translation, 前人恭明德—前人

之恭德與明德, 'the reverent virtue and the brilliant virtue of their forefathers; the former referring to the 恭上下 of the

last par., and the latter to the 前人光

This 恭明德 is governed by the

伊尹格于皇天，在
既受命，時則有若
爽，我聞在昔成湯
王受命。○公曰：君
延天不庸，釋于文
信，我道惟寧王德
子。○又曰：天不可
前人光施于我，沖
且非克有正，迪惟
德。○^五在今予小子

- 5 of their forefathers. Now I, Tan, being but as a little child, am not able to correct *our king*. I would simply conduct him to the glory of his forefathers, and make his youth partaker of that."
- 6 He also said, "Heaven is not to be trusted. Our course is simply to seek the prolongation of the virtue of the Tranquillizing king, and Heaven will not find occasion to remove its favouring decree which king Wan received."
- 7 II. The duke said, "Prince Shih, I have heard that of ancient time, when T'ang the Successful had received the favouring decree, he had with him E Yin, making his virtue like that of great Heaven.

verbs 經歷 and 嗣. Gan-kwō, instead

of construing the passage thus, put a stop at 歷, and read on the conclusion with the first part of the 5th par.—嗣前人恭明德，在今予小子旦。'To continue the reverent and brilliant virtue of our forefathers rests now with me the little child Tan.' K'ang Shing has nearly the same punctuation. After all this, no two agree in explaining the former portion—乃其 (K. S. omits this 其) 歷命弗克經歷. It will suffice to mention the view of K'e-ling:—夫天之歷人，命者，以其不能有經歷人，'now Heaven lets its favouring decree fall to the ground, because they cannot have men of experience!'

For 非克有正, 云云, the 'Daily Explanation' gives:—我非真有格心之術，可以匡正；惟我與天下至真，有君也，所孜孜德付與，而事繼嗣不沖子，使其上而經人之治民，知所前人之邊佚。

P. 6. *The favour of Heaven being so uncertain, the way to secure it is by perpetuating the virtue of king Woo.* We are to understand king Woo by 'The Tranquillizing king,'—see on Bk. VII., p.

3. T'sao expands the text very clearly:—天固不可信，然在我之道，惟以延長武王之德，使天不容捨文王所受之命也。

CH. II. Pp. 7-10. WHAT BENEFITS WERE DERIVED DURING THE TIME OF YIN FROM THE GREAT AND ABLE MINISTERS WHO LIVED IN DIFFERENT REIGNS. IT WAS FOR PRINCE SHIH IN HIS TIME TO REVEAL IN THE SAME WAY THE DYNASTY OF CHOW. 7. *The most distinguished ministers of Yin, and the emperors under whom they flourished.* 我聞至皇天，—the 若

prefixed to all the names = 'a man like,' yet not implying any other besides the minister thus pointed out. 伊尹，—see the first introductory note on 'The Instructions of E'

格于皇天，—see 'The Charge to Yü,' Pt. III., p. 10.

在太甲至保衡，—see on 'The T'ao-k'ia,' Pt. I., p. 1, and 'The Charge to Yü,' Pt. III., p. 10. The duke of Chow here calls E Yin by his name or title, with evident reference to the beginning of the 'T'ao-k'ia.'

太戊至王家

有惟有賢乙咸扈則保太
殷茲若武時父格有衡甲
故殷甘丁有王家上帝伊在太
禮陳盤。○時若祖巫臣時
陟父率^八則巫巫臣時若

T'ae-k'ä, again, had Paou-häng. T'ae-mow had E Chih and Chin Hoo, through whom his virtue was made to affect God; he had also Woo Heen, who regulated the royal House. Tsou-yih had Woo Hecü. Woo-ting had Kan Pwan. These ministers carried out their principles, and effected their arrangements, preserving and regulating the empire of Yin, so that, while its ceremonies lasted, those sove-

—see the notices 22 and 23 in the Confucian preface. We may assume that in this passage the duke of Chow had before him the Books of Shing mentioned in those notices, which are now lost. If we had them, we should find the expression 格于上帝, as we find 格于皇天 in 'The Charge to Yü.' From the 13th notice in the preface we learn that Tang had a minister called Chin Hoo. He would be an ancestor probably of the Chin Hoo mentioned here in connection with T'ae-mow. 祖乙至巫賢, —if we had the lost Book Tsou-yih (see Pref., n. 26), we should probably find this Woo Heen mentioned in it.

甘盤—see 'The Charge to Yü,' Pt. III, p. 1. We cannot but be surprised that the duke does not make any mention of Foo Yü. Keang Shing throws out the hint that Kan Pwan and Foo Yü may have been the same man, — which is absurd. Gan-shih says that as Pwan was the earliest instructor of Woo-ting, the wisdom which guided that emperor to get Yü for his minister was owing to him; but this does not account for the omission of Yü in the duke's list. Perhaps something like a reason for it is suggested by the next par. 8. The happy result of the services of these ministers.

率惟茲有陳,—this must be spoken of the six great ministers just enumerated.—'In accordance with this,—i.e., their course of action as described,—they had an arrangement.' The meaning is very obscure. The critics, however, all expand it much as T'ae does:—六臣循惟此道,有陳列之功. 殷禮陟配天.—Gan-kwö takes 殷禮, 'the ceremonies of Yin,' as= 'the govt. of Yin'

(安上治民之禮), and the whole clause as meaning that the govt. of Yin was so good that its sovereigns were on earth the representatives of God above, and occupied the imperial seat (殷得此安上治民之禮, 能升配上天, 天在人上, 故謂之升, 爲天之子是配也). This is ingenious, but it imposes too great violence on the language. 禮 cannot be taken as the nominative to 陟 and 配. 殷禮 are most naturally taken adverbially, — 'according to the ceremonial usages of Yin,' or as in the translation. Then 陟 and 配天 are predicates of the emperors of Yin, probably of those who are specially mentioned in the preceding par., the former char., describing them as 'deceased' (see 'The Canon of Shun,' p. 28), and 配天 declaring the fact of their being associated with Heaven in the sacrifices to it. In the present dyn. all its departed emperors are so honoured at the great sacrificial services. Under the Chow dyn. only How-tseih and king Wan enjoyed the distinction. The rule of the Yin dyn. seems to have been to associate the five emperors of whom the duke has been speaking. (We have perhaps in this custom a reason for the omission of Foo Yü in the prec. par. From the Pwan-kang, Pt. I, 14, we learn that their ministers shared in the sacrifices to the sovereigns of Yin. Each emperor would have one minister as his assessor, and so Woo-ting could not have both Kan Pwan and Foo Yü. Though the latter may have been the greater man of the two, the sacrificial honour was given to the other as having been the earlier instructor of the emperor. The duke, having the emperors

罔于辟惟矧恤人則○配
不是四方故德咸小罔商天
孚。若卜一人稱奔走臣實惟百姓
○公^十筮事厥厥茲旬明王命所。

9 reigns though deceased were assessors to Heaven, while it extended over many years. Heaven thus determinately maintained its favouring appointment, and Shang was replenished with men. The various officers, and members of the royal House holding employments, all held fast their virtue, and displayed an anxious solicitude for the empire. The smaller officers, and the chiefs in the How and Teen domains, hurried about on their services. Thus did they all put forth their virtue, and aid their sovereign, so that whatever affairs he, the one man, had in hand, throughout the four quarters of the empire, an entire sincerity was conceded to them as to the indications of the tortoise or the milfoil."

as sacrificed to in his mind, had no occasion therefore to mention Yuē. This explanation was first suggested by Soo Shih.]

I acquiesce in this view of the text, in preference to that proposed by Gan-kwō. It has its difficulties, however, and one of the principal is that we are obliged to find another subject for the verb 歷 in the concluding clause. The use of 所, at the end is peculiar. The 'Daily Explanation' says it is merely 'an expletive' (語辭), which is saying that no account of it can be given. A usage of it apparently analogous to that here is given in the Diet., with the definition—指物之辭 'a demonstrative.'

P. 9. The same subject. 天惟純佑命則商實, —such is the punctuation adopted by Tsao, and also by Keang Shing. Gan-kwō read on to 百姓, but the meaning which he endeavours to make out for 商實百姓 is inadmissible. Tsao supports the explanation of 實 which appears in the translation, by referring to Mencius, Book VII., Pt. II., xii., 1, —不信仁賢則國空虛. 'If men of virtue and ability be not trusted, a State will become empty and

void.' The meaning seems to be that Heaven smiled upon the empire sustained by those great ministers, and there was no lack of smaller men to do their duty in their less important spheres with ability and virtue. 百姓

王人, —It is not possible to say positively what officers are intended by these designations. Woo Ch'ing takes 百姓 as 'the people of the imperial domain' (王畿之民; comp. the use of the phrase in 'The Canon of Yao,' p. 2); but it must be used of officers or ministers, and not of the people. I suppose it = 百官. Perhaps Keang

Shing is correct in taking 百姓 as the officers with different surnames from that of the imperial House (異姓之臣), and 王人 as cadets of that House in official employment (王之族人同姓之臣). 明恤—明致其恤有憂國之心. The phrase is correlative with 秉德, and is not to be joined with 小臣 below, —as Gan-kwō does. 屏侯甸—為屏藩于侯甸之服者—those who acted as screens (—the prin-

曰君奭天壽平
格保乂有殷有
殷嗣天滅威今
汝永念則有固
命厥亂明我新
造邦。○公曰君
奭在昔上帝割
申勸寧王之德
其集大命于厥

- 10 The duke said, "Prince Shih, Heaven gives long life to the just and the intelligent;—it was thus that *those ministers* maintained and regulated the dynasty of Yin. He who at last came to the throne was extinguished by the majesty of Heaven. Think you of the distant future, and we shall have the decree *in favour of Chow* made sure, and its good government will be brilliantly displayed in our new-founded State."
- 11 III. The duke said, "Prince Shih, aforesime when God was afflicting Yin, he encouraged anew the virtue of the Tranquillizing king, till at last the great favouring decree was concentrated in his

oes) in the How and Tsen domains."

'still more;' or simply — 'likewise.'

惟德稱一惟此內外之臣
皆舉稱其德, 'all these ministers, about the court and away from it, throughout the empire, displayed and exerted their virtue.'

若卜筮罔不是(一是之)
孚(一信之)一如龜之卜如
著之筮天下無不敬信之

P. 10. Advice to Shih, grounded on the prec., that he should do for Chow what those ministers had done for Yin.

天壽平格—
Gan-kwé supposes that 平格 is spoken of the sovereigns of Yin, (平至之君. It is better to understand the characters of the ministers who have been spoken of. They are called 平, 'level,' free of all selfishness, and 格, 'intelligent,' all-reaching and embracing.

壽 conveys not only the idea of long life, but also of prosperity,—as in the last Book, p. 7. Shou is intended by 有殷嗣. 天滅威—天滅之以示威. 永念—think of the distant future. This is better than to take the terms as simply — 'always think of this.'

厥亂明我新造

邦—其治效亦赫然明著於
我新造之邦. 'Its efficient govt. will be gloriously and brilliantly displayed in our new founded kingdom.' Macu K'e-ling understands 1.6 to be 'the newly founded country;' but the dynasty is what is meant; compare the passage of the Shu King, quoted in 'The Great Learning,' comm., ii., 3. (It does not appear from this par. that the duke of Shaoou had expressed his wish to withdraw from the public service, but the duke of Chow is evidently urging him to continue at his post to the last.)

Ch. III. Pp. 11—17. IT WAS BY THE AID OF THEIR ABLE MINISTERS THAT THE KINGS WAN AND WOO WERE RAISED TO THEIR GRAND DISTINCTION AND THE SOVEREIGNTY OF THE EMPIRE. THE DUKE OF CHOW LOOKS TO SHIH TO COOPERATE WITH HIM IN MAINTAINING THEIR DYNASTY OF CHOW.

11. 上帝割—
'God was cutting,' i.e., was bringing about the overthrow of the dynasty of Yin. K'ang Shing, after K'ang-shing, takes 割 for 蓋, a particle of style, the force of which passes into the verbs that follow; but there is no necessity to resort to such a device. Hea Seen observes that 'Heaven encouraged king Wan, and afterwards encouraged king Woo; hence the language—申勸;—see the 集說. 申 is 'a term, continuative of what has gone before,' (繼前之辭). In the Le Ke, Bk. 繙衣, p. 24, we find this par. in the form—

躬。○^{十二}惟文王，尙克
修和我有夏，亦惟
有若虢叔，有若閔
夭，有若散宜生，有
若泰顛，有若南宮
括。○^{十三}又曰：無能往
來，茲迪彝教。文王
蔑德降于國人。○^{十四}
亦惟純佑秉德，迪
知天威，乃惟時昭

- 12 person. But that king Wān was able to conciliate and unite the portion of the great empire which we came to possess, was owing to his having such ministers as his brother of Kih, Hwang Yaou, San E-sāng, T'ae Teen, and Nan-kung Kwō.
- 13 He repeated this sentiment, "But for the ability of these men to go and come in his affairs, developing his constant lessons, there would have been no benefits descending from king Wān on the
- 14 people. And it also was from the determinate favour of Heaven, that there were these men of firm virtue, and acting according to their knowledge of the dread majesty of Heaven, to give themselves

在昔上帝周田觀文王之德，其集大命于厥躬。This was, no doubt, the reading current in the Han dyn., as from Fuh-shang.

12. King Wān and the ministers who aided him.

惟文至有夏—我有夏—我所有之諸夏，'the empire, or the portion of the empire, which we had.' The reference is to the two-thirds of the empire which acknowledged the authority of Wān.

尙—庶幾，'perhaps.' Tsow Ching-k'e says that the terms 克尙 intimate the difficulty of Wān's undertaking, and the greatness of the assistance which he derived from his ministers.

虢叔—from a passage in the 左傳. 僖五年, we learn that this was a son of king Ke, and a younger brother of Wān. Kih was the name of his appanage, in the pres. dis. of Paou-ke (寶雞), dep. of Fung-ta'ëng, Shen-si. [This was called the western Kih. There were two other districts called Kih under the Chow dynasty,—the eastern Kih, and the northern.]

閔散泰 and 南宮 are surnames; and 夭宜生, 顛, and 括 are

names. So says Gan-kwō, and there is no reason to call the thing in question, except in the case of the second, whose surname is said by some to have been 散宜. Of those five ministers we can hardly be said to know more than the surnames and names. It would be a waste of time to refer to the legendary tales that are circulated about them. If we were surprised that there was no mention in p. 7 of Foo Yō, it is no less strange that the greatest of Wān's ministers, the 太公望, should here be passed over in silence.

13. It is certainly most natural to take 又曰 here as introducing another remark, confirmatory of the preceding, by the duke of Chow. I can by no means accede to the view of Gan-kwō, and of K'ang Shing and K'e-ling among the moderns, that 又曰無能往來 is an observation of king Wān, who, though he had those five ministers, still said, 'They are not able (=enough) to go and come in my affairs.' In order to make the rest of the par. harmonize in any way with this construction, they are obliged to take 蔑德—'exquisite virtue.'

14. This par. corresponds to par. 9. What E Yin and the others did for the emperors of Yin, that did these five ministers for king Wān,—and all by the determinate favour of Heaven. The 'Daily Explanation' expands 亦惟純佑秉德 into—我

文王、迪見冒、聞于上
 帝、惟時受有殷命哉。
 ○武王^{十五節}惟茲四人、尙
 迪有祿、後暨武王、誕
 將天威、咸劉厥敵、惟
 茲四人、昭武王惟冒、
 丕單稱德。○今^{十六節}在予
 小子、且若游大川、予
 往暨汝、夷其濟、小子
 同未、在位、誕無我責、

- to enlighten king Wān, and lead him forward to his high distinction and universal over-rule, till his fame reached the ears of God, and
 15 he received the decree of Yin. There were still four of these men who led on king Woo to the possession of that decree with all its emoluments. Afterwards, along with him, in great reverence of the majesty of Heaven, they slew all his enemies; and then these four men made king Woo distinguished all over the empire,
 16 till the people universally and greatly proclaimed his virtue. Now, with me Tan, who am but a little child, it is as if I were floating on a great stream; let me from this time cross it along with you, O Shih. Our young sovereign is powerless as if he had not yet

文王之時、有虢叔等五臣、
 爲之輔佐、亦惟天意在、文
 王純一不二、以佑助之、故
 生此等秉持明德之人、迪
 知天威、—comp. 迪哲 in the last Book,
 p. 16. 乃惟時昭文王—乃
 惟以是昭文王—K'ang Shing puts
 a stop at 昭, and makes 乃惟時昭 to
 be descriptive of the ministers, as becoming
 thoroughly enlightened and virtuous. This
 construction is not good. 迪見冒—
 啟迪其德、使著見於上、覆
 冒於下。Comp. Bk. XIV., p. 4. 15.

King Woo and his able ministers.

武王
 至有祿、茲四人、'four of these
 men.' One of them had died,—it is supposed,
 the prince of Kih. 天祿,—comp. 'The
 Counsels of Yu,' p. 17. King Wān had the
 decree,—the appointment to the possession of

the empire; but Woo came into the possession
 itself. 後暨武王—暨 is used here
 as in the last Book, p. 5,—與, a preposition,
 'along with.' 劉—see 'The Puan-k'ang,'
 Pt. I., p. 2. 昭武王惟冒—昭

武王、遂覆冒天下。K'ang Shing
 puts a stop at 昭, as in the last par., and reads

冒 for 冒, with which character the passage
 is quoted in the 說文. The meaning would
 then be—'king Woo looked humbly down on
 all beneath.' But the punctuation and reading
 are both bad. 16. The duke of Chow ex-

pects Shih to co-operate with him in supporting their
 new dynasty. If he will not do so, the consequences
 will be disastrous. We must suppose that all
 the four ministers who had aided Woo were now
 dead, and the burden of the State was on the
 dukes of Chow and Shaou. 游—浮水,

'to float on the water.' 予往暨(—與;
 as in the last par.) 汝夷其濟—我
 自今以往與汝夷同心輔

收罔最不及者
造德不降我則
鳴鳥不聞矧曰
其有能格。○公^{十七}
曰嗚呼君肆其
監于茲我受命
無疆惟休亦大
惟艱告君乃猷
裕我不以後人

ascended the throne. You must by no means lay the whole burden on me; and if we draw ourselves up without an effort to supply his deficiencies, no good will flow to the people from our age and experience. We shall not hear the voices of the singing birds, and much less can it be thought that we shall make his *virtue* equal to Heaven."

- 17 The duke said, "Oh! consider well, O prince, these things. We have received the favouring decree of *Heaven*, to which belongs an unlimited amount of what is desirable, but having great difficulties attached to it. What I announce to you are counsels of a generous largeness. I cannot allow the successor of our kings to go astray."

佐共濟艱難可也。小子

同未^{by}在位。小子 here we must understand king Ching. The duke had, indeed, resigned the regency, and the govt. was in the emperor's hands. But Ching was still young, and unequal to his high duties.

誕無我責。收罔最不及。—Ta'ao thinks there is something wanting before the former of these clauses, and says he does not understand the latter. Gan-kwō took

誕無我責 as —汝大無非責我之留, "and you are blaming me for remaining in the govt.," which agrees with his view that the duke of Shao was dissatisfied, because the other had not retired upon resigning the regency. The terms will bear the meaning which I have given in the translation; and it appears to me more in harmony with the tenor of the address.

As to the meaning of the second clause, the editors of Yung-ching's Shao give a modified approval to the view of Lou Tsoo-han, adduced by Yu E-shoo (余芭舒, of the Yuan dyn.), making the words addressed to the duke of Shao: —召公若收斂退藏。

罔最勉成王之所不逮。I take the characters much in the same way, but consider that the duke of Chow is speaking of himself as well as of prince Shih. I can hardly tell how Gan-kwō interprets here. He uses

many words, but I do not understand them. K'ang Shing points—誕無我責收罔最不及,—"Do not you by any means charge me to retire. I will exert myself, and exertion is never made without success!"

考造德—考老成人之德。

鳴鳥.—by 'the singing birds' are meant the male and female phoenix, fabled to appear at court in times of great prosperity. See on the 'Yin and Tseih,' p. 2. In the *She King*, Pt. III., Bk. II., Ode viii., st. 9, mention is made of the phoenixes flying about and screaming on the hills. The ode is ascribed to the duke of Shao, and is supposed to celebrate king Ching and the happiness of his times.

其有能格—this is said with reference to the predicates in p. 7 about what the ministers of Yin did for their sovereigns.

17. The duke urges Shih to lay to heart what he has said to him.

肆其監于茲,—comp. the last Book, p. 19. 肆 is taken —大。我受至

惟艱—comp. Bk. XII., p. 9. By 後

人, 'the after man,' we are to understand king Ching. The 前人 at the beginning of next par. renders this very probable.

迷。○公曰：前人敷乃
心，乃悉命汝作汝民
極。曰：汝明勗偶王在
亶，乘茲大命，惟文王
德，丕承無疆之恤。○
公曰：君告汝朕允保
奭，其汝克敬，以予監
于殷喪大否。肆念我
天威。○予不允惟若
茲誥。予惟曰：襄我二

- 18 IV. The duke said, "The former king laid bare his heart, and gave full charge to you, constituting you one of the guides of the people, and saying, 'Do you with intelligence and energy prove a helper to the king; do you with sincerity support and carry on this great decree. Think of the virtue of king Wān, and enter greatly into his boundless anxieties.'"
- 19 The duke said, "What I tell you, O prince, are my sincere thoughts. O Shih, the Grand-protector, if you can but reverently survey with me the decay and great disorders of Yin, and thence consider the dread majesty of Heaven which warns us!—"
- 20 "Am I not to be believed that I must thus speak? I simply say, 'The establishment of our dynasty rests with us two.' Do you agree

Ch. IV. Pp. 18—23. 18. The duke of Shoon had received a special charge from king Woo to be a guardian of the young king and of the dynasty.

前人, 'the former man,' is to be understood of king Woo. On his deathbed he had given the charge, of which a portion is here adduced, to the dukes of Chow and Shoon.

敷乃心—the 乃 here would seem to = 其, the adj. pronoun of the third person.

The phrase, however, — 所敷者乃其

心腹. 作汝民極—this has reference to the appointment of Shih to be the Grand-guardian, in which office he was to be a support and pattern for the people. Liu Che-k'e says:

—凡爲大臣者,皆曰以爲民

極. 偶王—輔弼嗣王, 'to help the heir king.' Two, joined in any way, are

called 偶. Shih was to prove as a help-mate

to the king. In 乘大命, we have the metaphor of a carriage in which the sovereign

appointment was placed and carried on.

惟文王德—the 惟—念, 'to think of.' 丕承無疆之恤—comp. 無

疆惟恤, Bk. XII, p. 2. 19. The duke

of Chow earnestly begs Shih to enter into his anxieties, and learn from the fate of Yin to labour for the establishment of their dynasty.

其汝

克敬—this is hortatory, and the meaning seems to be best brought out by giving the translation an optative form.

以予 may be taken as—與予. 大否 (p'ei) = 大亂,

'great disorders,' or 大阨, 'great distresses.'

我天威—'our Heavenly terrors,' i.e.,

the terrors of Heaven which were to be dreaded by them, and guarded against through a diligent

discharge of their duties. 20. So much was

dependent on the two dukes that they ought to be exerting themselves to the utmost, and especially to be

looking out for men who might hereafter supply their places.

予不允惟若茲誥 is

人汝有合哉言曰在
時二人天休滋至惟
時二人弗戡其汝克
敬德明我俊民在讓
後人于丕時。○嗚呼
篤棐時二人我式克
至于今日休我咸成
文王功于不怠丕冒
海隅出日罔不率俾。

with me? Then you *also* will say, 'It rests with us two.' And the favour of Heaven has come to us so largely:—it should be ours to feel as if we could not sustain it. If you can but reverently cultivate your virtue, and bring to light our men of eminence, then when you resign to some successor in a time of established security,

- 21 "Oh! it is by the earnest assistance of us two that we have come to the prosperity of the present day. But we must go on, abjuring all idleness, to complete the work of king Wān, till it has entirely overspread the empire, and from the corners of the sea and the sunrising there shall not be one who is disobedient to our rule."

to be taken interrogatively. The 'Daily Explanation' gives for it:—凡我言語豈是不足取信于人而如此諄諄告汝乎。襄我二人。

—襄—成。The two men are evidently the duke of Chow himself, and the duke of Shao. The clause—王業之成在我與汝而已,—as in the translation. Gan-kwō took the two men to be Wān and Woo, and this idea put him to the greatest straits throughout the par. Even Maou K'e-ling does not venture to defend such as an interpretation. 在時

(=是)二人—在我二人。戡—堪或勝, 'to be equal to,' 'to sustain.' I do not know what to make of the 在 in the last

clause. The speaker does not complete his meaning. He simply says—In the fact of yielding to successors in a time of great prosperity,——. Critics supply what is wanting according to their different opinions as to the main object which the duke of Chow had in view in the address. 21. The two dukes

had done much for Chow in the past; it remained for them to complete their work. 篤棐時

(=是)二人—篤於輔君 (or 王室) 者是我二人。我式(=用),—'we thereby.' The 'we' is we of Chow, =our dynasty. 丕冒—使不偏

覆冒于斯民, 'causing it universally to overspread this people.' 罔不率俾—無不循我化可臣使也, 'all yield to our transforming influences, and become subjects who may be employed.

[M. de Guignes observes on this paragraph:—'It is sufficiently singular that a philosopher like Chow-king inspires here the spirit of conquest; it was then, therefore, the taste of the Chinese, who sought to extend themselves more and more to the east.' See 'Le Chou-king,' p. 297. The duke's words hardly called for such a remark. He is merely seeking the full establishment of their dynasty,—that Chow should enter into all the possessions of Yin.]

治。若茲往敬用。初，惟其終，祗厥。亦罔不能厥。惟乃知民德。公曰：「嗚呼！君，^三于天越民。」誥予惟用閔。不惠若茲多。○公曰：「君子。」

- 22 The duke said, "O prince, am I not speaking in accordance with reason in these many declarations? I am only influenced by anxiety about the decree of Heaven, and about the people."
- 23 The duke said, "Oh! O prince, you know the ways of the people, how at the beginning they can be all we could desire, but it is the end which is to be thought of. Act in careful accordance with this fact. Go and reverently exercise your government."

P. 22. The duke affirms the reasonableness of his conduct, and re-states the grounds of them.

子不惠若茲多誥 is to be taken interrogatively, like the commencing clause of p. 20. This is sufficient against the view of K'ang Shing, who reads it indicatively, and takes 惠—慧, so that the meaning is—'I in my want of wisdom make these many declarations.' 惠—順於理, 'accordant with reason.' We have met with it before, having

this meaning. 子惟用閔于天

越(一及)民—子惟用憂天命. 難以永保及生民無所倚賴.

23. The uncertainty of the attachment of the people should make ministers careful to retain their good will. 民德—'the ways of the people; 'now all-attachment to a govt., now disaffected and rebellious.

惟其終—

當思其終.

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK. XVII. THE CHARGE TO CHUNG OF TS'AE.

蔡仲之命

惟^一周公位冢宰，正
百工，群叔流言，乃
致辟管叔于商，囚
蔡叔于郭鄰，以車
七乘，降霍叔于庶
人，三年不齒，蔡仲
克庸祗德，周公以
爲卿士，叔卒，乃命

- 1 When the duke of Chow was in the place of prime minister, and directed all the officers, the *king's* uncles spread abroad an *evil* report, in consequence of which he put to death the prince of Kwan in Shang; confined the prince of Ts'ae in Koh-lin, with an attendance, however, of seven chariots; and reduced the prince of Hō to be a private man, causing his name to be erased from the registers for three years. The son of the prince of Ts'ae being able to display a reverent virtue, the duke of Chow made him a high noble, and when his father died, requested a decree from the king, investing him with the country of Ts'ae.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—蔡仲之命, 'The Charge to Chung of Ts'ae.' Ts'ae was the name of the small State or district, which formed the appanage of Too, a younger brother of the duke of Chow, on whose history I have slightly touched in the note on p. 12 of Bk. VI. The name still remains in the dia. of Shang-ts'ae (上蔡), dep. of Joo-ning, Honan. Too was deprived of this appanage, but

it was subsequently restored to his son, and the Charge preserved in this Book was given to him on the occasion. The name of Too's son was Hoo (胡). He is here called Chung; but that character only denoted his place in the roll of his brothers or cousins. A Chinese scholar has attempted to explain it to me thus.—Too was younger than king Woo, and so, from the standpoint of king Ching, he is called 蔡叔.

'(younger) uncle of Ts'ao.' King Ching and Hoo were cousins,—'brothers,' according to Chinese usage of terms, and Hoo, being the younger of the two, was called 蔡仲, '(second) brother of Ts'ao.'

The Book is only found in the old text, or that of Gan-kwō. There is some difference of opinion as to the place which it should occupy in the list of the Books of Chow. Ts'ao thinks it ought to be placed before 'The Announcement about Lō.' In the 'Little Preface,' as we have it from Ch'ing, it is placed the 96th in the list of Books, immediately before the 'Speech at Pe.' Ming-shing allows that so it is wrongly placed, which indeed is evident, but says that Ch'ing gave the preface as he found it without venturing any alterations, whereas the author or forger of Gan-kwō's commentary took it upon him to remove the notice to where it now stands. Whether Gan-kwō's commentary be a forgery or not, the Book occurs in it, I apprehend, in the place which it originally occupied. There is no necessity for supposing with Ts'ao that it should be before Book XIII. We do not know in what year Ts'ao Shuh died. Ts'ao Chung's restoration to his father's honours may not have taken place till after the building of Lō, and king Ching had taken the government, upon reaching his majority, into his own hands.

CONTENTS. The first par. is of the nature of a preface, giving the details necessary to explain the appointment of Hoo. The seven paragraphs that follow are the king's Charge, directing him how to conduct himself, so that he might blot out the memory of his father's misdeeds, and win the praise of the emperor.

P. 1. Prefatory details. 惟周公至

百工,—comp. 'The Instructions of K.' p.

1. 羣叔流言,—comp. Bk. VI, p.

12. 致辟—'carried out the law to the utmost,' = 'put to death.' [This confirms the interpretation given of 我之弗辟, in Bk.

VI, p. 13.] 囚蔡叔至七乘,—囚

= 'to confine.' Kang-shing defined the term by 拘 郭鄰 was the name of a place; but where it was, we cannot tell. Sze-ma Ts'uen, in the 替蔡世家第五, says that Ts'ao Shuh was allowed an attendance of 'ten chariots and 70 footmen.' In the 左傳

定四年, mention is also made of 70 footmen, but the chariots are seven, as in the text.

For 以車七乘 the 'Daily Explanation' gives—猶以車七乘隨之. 降

霍叔至不齒,—the name of Hōt Shuh was Ch'oo (處). Ch'oo's appanage was Hoh, the name of which remains in Hoh Chow, dep. of Ping-yang (平陽), Shan-se. 三年

不齒,—for three years he had not his teeth,' i.e., he was struck off the family roll. The names of all the brothers were entered according to their 'teeth' or age; hence one of the definitions of 齒 is the diet, is by 年也.

列也. 蔡仲至卿士—蔡仲

see the note on the 'name of the Book.' Ts'uen says that 'when the duke of Chow heard of the good character of Hoo, he raised him to be a noble of Loo' (周公聞之,

而舉胡以爲魯卿士). The

opinion of the speaker in the passage of the 左傳 referred to above was the same (蔡仲

改行帥德周公舉之以爲

己卿士). Ts'ao on the contrary thinks that

the office of 'high noble,' conferred on Hoo, was within the imperial domain, and not in Loo.

This view appears to me the more likely; but the text does not enable us to decide the point.

命諸王邦之蔡—請命于

成王,復封其國于蔡使繼

叔之後. He requested a decree from king

Ching, and again invested Hoo with Ts'ao, that he might continue the line of his father.' Gan-

kwō thought that the Ts'ao with which Hoo was invested was not the same which had been

the appanage of his father, but another on the east, 'between the Hwae and the Joo,' to which

the name of Ts'ao was given, to mark the connection between it and the former. This is

not likely, nor is it supported by proper historical evidence.

[Shih King (郝敬) of the Ming dynasty]

denies the various statements in this par., saying they are legends founded on a misapprehension of the duke of Chow's language in 'The

Metal-bound Coffin,'—我之弗辟我無

以告我先王; and that to suppose that

the duke killed one brother and degraded two others, as he is here said to have done, is injurious to his character, and would establish a precedent of most dangerous nature. Having

thus settled it that the statements are not true, he goes on to the conclusion, that this Book is a forgery. But this is egregious trifling. The

statements of this par. were staple of Chinese history before the burning of the Shoo. The

passage of the 左傳 alluded above, and the sequel of which contains a part of par. 3, is

sufficient to prove this. The duke of Chow is easily vindicated from any charges brought

against his character for the deeds which are related here.]

諸王邦之蔡。○王
若曰：小子胡惟爾
率德改行，克慎厥
猷，肆予命爾侯于
東土，往卽乃封，敬
哉。○爾尙蓋前人
之愆，惟忠惟孝，爾
乃邁迹自身，克勤
無怠，以垂憲乃後。
率乃祖文王之彝

- 2 "The king speaks to this effect, 'My little child, Hoo, you follow the virtue of our ancestors, and have changed from the conduct of your father; you are able to take heed to your ways;—I therefore appoint you to be a prince of the empire in the east. Go to your country. Be reverent!'
- 3 'In order that you may cover the faults of your father, be loyal, be filial. Urge on your steps in your own way, diligent and never idle, and so you will hand down an example to your descendants.

Pp. 2-3. THE CHARGE. 2. The virtue of Hoo, to which he was entitled for the distinction conferred on him.

王若曰.—it may seem that this should be translated—'The king spoke to the following effect,' rather than as I have done. I apprehend, however, that the charge was delivered by the duke of Chow in the king's name, in the same way as the charge to the Viscount of Wei, Bk. VIII. The 命諸王邦之蔡 in the last par. leads me to this view, nor need it be rejected though Hoo's appointment may have taken place after the building of Lō. 率德改行 must—循祖之德改父之行,—as in the translation.

東土.—Ts'ae was to the east of Haou, Ching's capital. 往卽乃封.—the first definition of 封 in the dict. is 爵諸侯之土, 'the country with which a prince was invested.' The primary meaning of the term, however, was, no doubt, 'a tumulus or mound;' and Sze Ko-seuen (薛季宣) ingeniously accounts for its being used as the designation of a territory in this way:—天子建侯立國，分以天子之社，使置社於其國，因謂之封。

The emperor, when appointing a prince over a State, took from the earth of his own altar to

the spirit of the land, and gave it to the prince, that he might raise an altar to the spirit of the land in his State, which was thence called by the name of 封. Compare the note on 'The Tribute of Yu,' Pt. I., p. 25. 3. Hoo must go on as he had begun, covering by his good deeds the evil memory of his father.

爾尙至惟孝.—the force of the 尙 is partly concessive, and partly hortatory. By 前人 is intended, of course, Hoo's father. Though Hoo was acting contrary to his father's example, yet as his conduct would remove the disgrace that rested on his father's memory, it is characterized as 'filial.'

邁迹自身.—Gan-kwō gives for this—行善迹用汝身. There is a reference plainly to the conduct of Hoo's father, who had left no traces of good by which he might direct his steps. Lin Che-k'w says:—汝之行善迹當自汝身而始. The characters, as I understand them, are literally:—'Do you push boldly on (邁卽勇往) 力行之意, treading on your own person.' The conclusion,—無若爾考之違王命—is quoted in the 左傳 as referred to above.

[Ch'in Foo-liang says:—'When Shun gave charge to Yu, he made no reference to the misconduct of his father K'wān; and the duke

訓無若爾考之違王命。
 ○^四皇天無親，惟德是輔。
 民心無常，惟惠之懷，爲
 善不同，同歸于治，爲惡
 不同，同歸于亂，爾其戒
 哉。^五○慎厥初，惟厥終，終
 以不困，不惟厥終，終以
 困窮。^六○懋乃攸績，睦乃
 四鄰，以蕃王室，以和兄

Follow the constant lessons of your grandfather, king Wān, and be not like your father disobedient to the royal orders.

- 4 'Great Heaven has no affections;—it helps only the virtuous. The people's hearts are not constant;—they cherish only the kind. Acts of goodness are different, but they contribute in common to government. Acts of evil are different, but they contribute in common to disorder. Do you be cautious!
- 5 'To give heed to the beginning, think of the end:—the end will then be without distress. If you do not think of the end, it will be in distress, and that the greatest.
- 6 'Exert yourself to achieve your proper merit. Seek to be in harmony with all your neighbours. Be a fence to the royal House. Live in harmony with your brethren. Tranquillize and help the inferior people.

of Chow, when giving charge to the viscount of Wei, made no mention of Woo-k'ang. How is it that he here makes mention so repeatedly and distinctly of Hoo's father? Hoo's father was his own brother. It was necessary he should speak of him, on the principle explained by Mencius, VI, Pt. II, III.;—see the 集說.]

provision—惟厥終—in the last Bk. p. 23. In the 左傳 襄二十五年, there is a quotation from the Shoo, the original of which is probably in this part—慎始而敬終，終以不困。

P. 4. 皇天至之懷.—comp. the 'Tao-k'ang, Pt. III, p. 1. 皇天無親，惟德是輔 is quoted as from the Books of Chow, in the 左傳 僖五年. 慎厥初，惟厥終.—Comp. 慎終于始, in the 'Tao-k'ang, Pt. III, p. 6. The same sentiment is here brought differently out. 惟 is to be taken—思, as in the same ex-

P. 6. Rules for Hoo in his relations with others. 懋乃攸績—勉汝所立之功, 'exert yourself in achieving your proper merit.' What that merit was is not said. 'It embraced,' says T'ai-sou Hwang (焦贛), 'the bringing forward the able, the intelligent administration of the government, and the right use of punishments.' 四鄰—'the prince of the neighbouring States on every side.' 以

荒棄朕命。胡汝往哉。無曰。嗚呼。小子。人。汝嘉。○王。厥。度。則。予。一。罔。以。側。言。改。章。詳。乃。視。聽。作。聰。明。亂。舊。○率。自。中。無。弟。康。濟。小。民。

- 7 'Follow the course of the Mean, and do not by assuming to be intelligent throw old statutes into confusion. Watch over what you see and hear, and do not for one-sided words deviate from the right rule. Then I, the one man, will praise you.'"
8 "The king says, 'Oh! my little child, Hoo, go, and do not idly throw away my charge.'"

恭以和—the 以 does not connect the clauses with those which precede 兄弟 'brethren,' are the princes and nobles of the same surname with himself. 7. *Rules of a more internal character.* 率自中,—Lin Chek's observes that this clause is equivalent to the 率性 at the commencement of the 'Doctrine of the Mean.' We need not, however, look for any moral or metaphysical doctrine in the text. 中 is here 'the middle,' 'the proper Mean.' Emphasis is to be laid on the 作 in the second clause. Wang Ts'ienou says—'Intelligence is a Heavenly virtue; assuming to

be intelligent is a selfish shrewdness' (聰明, 天德也, 作聰明則私智耳. 詳=審, 'to exercise a discriminating judgment.' 厥度,—厥 might be translated in the second person, 'your,' or even in the first. Ts'ao expands from 審乃 thus:—視聽不審惑於一偏之說, 則非中矣其能不改吾身之法度乎

P. 8. *Concluding admonition.*

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XVIII. NUMEROUS REGIONS.

多方

命弗永寅念于祀。知○洪惟圖天之。大降爾命，爾罔不。爾殷侯尹民，我惟。告爾四國多方，惟。周公曰：王若曰：猷。自奄至于宗周。○惟五月丁亥，王來。

- 1 I. In the fifth month, on the day Ting-hae, the king arrived from
- 2 Yen, and came to the honoured city of Chow. The duke of Chow said, "The king speaks to the following effect, 'Ho! I make an announcement for you of the four kingdoms and many other regions. Ye who were the officers and people of the prince of Yin, I have dealt very leniently as regards your lives, as ye all know. You
- 3 kept reckoning greatly upon some decree of Heaven, and did not keep with perpetual awe before your thoughts the preservation of your sacrifices.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE. The Preface to the Shoo contains the names of two Books now lost, which had their place between 'The Charge to Chung of Ts'ao' and 'The Numerous Regions.' The one was styled 'The Government of king Ching,' and was made on occasion of an expedition of the king to the east, when he smote the wild tribes of the Hsiao, and extinguished the State of Yen (東伐淮夷遂踐奄). The other had reference to the king's removal of the chief or ruler of Yen to the district of P'oo-ko (蒲姑) in

Ts'ao, and was styled 將蒲姑, which we do not know how to translate, being unable, from the loss of the Book, to say how the character 將 should be taken. The Book that now comes under our notice was a sequel to these two, the prefatory note saying that it was made on the return of the king to Hsiao from Yen (成王歸自奄在宗周詰庶邦作多方).

Now, the prefatory note to 'The Great Announcement' says that after king Woo's death,

when Woo-kang and the three uncles of Ching, who had been placed as overseers of him in Yin, rebelled, the wild tribes of the Hwa rose at the same time and made common cause with them. In 'The Numerous Officers,' p. 21, again, the king is made to say to the nobles of Yin, that, 'when he came from Yen,' he dealt very leniently with them. The question has been raised whether, in those and other notices, we have intimations of only one expedition against the tribes of the Hwa and Yen, or of successive expeditions. On the lost Book of 'The Govt. of King Ching,' Ch'ing K'ang-shing says that the exploits described in it were those of the duke of Chow when he put down the rebellion of his brothers, and that he did not know how the Book had been arranged in the place assigned to it in the Preface. K'ang Shing, Wang Ming-shing, and others, who all but swear to the words of Ch'ing, would arrange all the Books I have mentioned before 'The Numerous Officers.' In the standard chronology, moreover, the 'Numerous Regions' is assigned to the fifth year of king Ching, B.C. 1,110 (or 1,111). On the other hand, Gan-k'wo maintains that the wild tribes spoken of were not tamed by one visit of the Imperial forces. The duke of Chow smote them, he says, and Yen with them, when quelling the rebellion of his brothers and Woo-kang, but they rebelled again when the duke had resigned the regency, and the king himself, probably attended by his uncle, took the field against them; and it was on his return from extinguishing the State of Yen, that the announcement contained in the 'Numerous Regions' was made. It is of the operations at this time against the Hwa and other wild tribes, he thinks, that mention is made in 'The speech at Pe.'

I am inclined in this matter to adopt the view of Gan-k'wo. We may conclude from the arrangement of the Books that this was the opinion of the compiler of the Preface. If we may credit what Mencius says, the records of the Shoo do not tell us a titch of the wars carried on by the duke of Chow to establish the new dynasty.—He smote Yen, and after three years put its ruler to death. He drove Fei-teen to a corner by the sea and slew him. The states which he extinguished amounted to fifty (Mencius, Bk. III., Pt. II., tr. 8). I may conclude this note with the remarks of Shoo Shih on the difficulty with which the dynasty of Chow was established. He says:—"The Great Announcement," "The Announcement to the prince of K'ang," "The Ann. about Drunkenness," "The timber of the Tszu," "The Ann. of the duke of Shao," "The Ann. about Lo," "The Numerous Officers," and "The Numerous Regions,"—these eight pieces, each having its different subject, yet have all a general reference to the fact that the minds of the people of Yin would not submit to Chow. When I have read "The Great Speech," and "The Completion of the War," I have always exclaimed:—'How easily did Chow take the empire from Yin!' But when I read those eight Books, I exclaim:—'With what difficulty did Chow bring Yin to a quiet submission!' "The Numerous Regions" was addressed not to the off. of Yin only, but also to those of the other regions throughout the empire;—showing us that it was not the people of Yin only who refused to acknowledge the

new way. One can understand how deep had been the influence of the six virtuous kings who came after T'ang. Under the tyranny of Shou, the people were as if in the midst of flaming fire, and they turned to Chow as water flows downwards, without thinking of the virtue of the former kings. But when the empire was a little settled, they were no longer amid the fires, and their thoughts turned to the seven emperors of Yin, as a child thinks of its parents. Though sages like king Woo and the duke of Chow followed one another with their endeavours to soothe them, their insurrectionary movements could not be repressed. Had the new dynasty not possessed the duke of Chow, it could hardly have been established.—This he knew, and it was this which made him apprehensive, and that he did not dare to withdraw from public life.' See the 集傳.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—多方 'The Numerous Regions.' The phrase occurs in the 2d par., and up and down throughout the greater portion of the Book; and hence it is used to designate the whole, indicating that it was addressed to the representatives not of one region, but of many. In par. 24—29, the phrase 多士, 'numerous officers,' takes the place of 多邦, and Woo Ch'ing has removed so much to the former Book;—for which he is hardly to be blamed. 'The Numerous Regions' is found in both the texts.

COSMETIC. The king has returned to his capital in triumph, having put down rebellion in the east, and specially extinguished the State or tribe of Yen. A great assembly of princes and nobles,—the old officers of Yin, and chiefs from many regions besides,—is gathered on the occasion. They are all supposed to have been secretly, if not openly, in sympathy with the rebellion which has been trampled out, and to grudge to yield submission to the rule of Chow. The king, by the duke of Chow, reasons and expostulates with them. He insists on the leniency with which he had dealt with them in the past; and whereas they might be saying that Chow's overthrow of the Yin dynasty was a usurpation, he shows that it was from the will of Heaven. The history of the empire is reviewed, and it is made to appear that king Woo had displaced the emperors of Shang, just as T'ang, the founder of Shang, had displaced the emperors of Hsia. It was the course of duty for them therefore to submit to Chow. If they did not avail themselves of its leniency, they should be dealt with in another way.

Having thus spoken, the duke turns, at par. 24, and addresses the many officers of the States, and especially those of Yin who had been removed to Lo, speaking to them in the style of 'The Numerous Officers.' Finally he reminds them all that it is time for them to begin a new course. If they do well, all will be well with them; if they continue perversely, they will have themselves to blame for the consequences.

Ch. I. Pp. 1-32. TIME WHEN, AND PARTIES TO WHOM THE ANNOUNCEMENT WAS MADE. A REVIEW OF THE DOWNFALL OF THE HIA

DYNASTY, AND OF THE HISTORY OF THAT OF SHANG—TO SHOW THE WAY OF HEAVEN IN THE RISE AND FALL OF THE IMPERIAL WAY. I.

See the introductory note. On 奄 and 宗

周 see the notes on Bk. XIV., p. 21. Gaubil observes that whereas the most approved history of the empire refers the date of this Book to the 5th year of king Ching, or B.C. 1,111, there really was no day Ting-hse in the 5th month of that year in the calendar of Chow. The correctness of his observation is easily verified, for the Chow year corresponding to B.C. 1,111, must have commenced with the cycle day

辛酉. But we have seen (p. 421) that it was in the year B.C. 1,098 that the duke of Chow resigned the regency. The next year, B.C. 1,097, began, if the calendar was correct, on the 6th cycle day, or 己巳, and the 5th month must

have commenced with the day 丁卯 or 戊辰, so that the day Ting-hse would be the 20th or 21st of it. Gan-kwé arrived at the same result from his view that the day 戊辰, Bk. XIII., p. 29, was the last day of the year. Let these numerical statements have whatever weight is due to them—they seem to me to show that this Book follows 'The Announcement about 18,' in chronological order, and that we are right in rejecting the early date assigned to it by K'ang-shing and his followers.

2. 周公曰. 王若曰.—the announcement is thus introduced differently from any that have preceded. 'The Great Announcement' for instance begins with 王若曰, though the king could have had little or nothing to do with it. The language of it, like the expedition which it vindicated, was all from the duke of Chow. The compilers of the Books, however, did not think it necessary to prefix a 周公

曰, as they have done here. The only reason for the addition in the text at all satisfactory assumes (what I have inferred on other grounds) that this announcement was made after the duke had resigned the regency. The king might then have been expected to declare his sentiments in his own person. He did not do so on this occasion. There were reasons, no doubt, for his not doing so, though we cannot assign them. The duke of Chow was spokesman as before; and to indicate their different positions we have the prefix.—'The duke of Chow said,'

猷告爾四國多方.—on 猷告, see upon Bk. VII., p. 1. Woo Ch'ing understands by 四國 'all the States in the four quarters of the empire' (四方諸國), and by 多方, 'the people of all the States' (諸國之民). This is ingenious but not satisfactory. 四國多方 stand collaterally, and indicate different regions. The 'many regions' are more extensive than the 'four States,' and cannot be taken as embraced in them. We must understand the 四國 as in

Bk. XIV., p. 21, of the imperial domain of Shang or Yin, which had been divided into four parts presided over by three of king Woo's brothers, and by Woo-k'ang, the son of Shou. It seems to me absurd to suppose, with K'ang Shing, that Yen was one of the States thus classed together.

Then by 多邦 are intended the princes and people of other regions generally. It is probable the people of Yen, in the rising which had been quelled, had raised the standard of the fallen dynasty, and that the issue of their struggle had been eagerly waited for by the people of the old imperial domain, and of other eastern regions. However that may be, the duke of Chow and other friends of the new dynasty thought the time a fitting one to give another and general exposition of the grounds on which they vindicated for it the sovereignty of the empire. 惟爾殷侯尹民, 云云.

—by 殷侯, 'the prince of Yin,' is denoted Woo-k'ang. K'ang Shing takes 殷—衆, so that 爾殷侯尹民—爾諸侯治民者, 'ye princes of the empire, governing the people,' but such a meaning of 殷 in this place is very unlikely. Woo Ch'ing retains 殷 in the sense of 'the Yin dynasty,' but takes the clause in the same way as Shing (殷諸侯之尹其民者), saying that whereas the 'people' were addressed in 爾四國多方, the speaker here rises to address their 'rulers' (諸民而因及其君). But there is no such gradation of thought in the text, and Ch'ing's exegesis lies under the additional disadvantage of making 惟—及, 'and.'

The duke of Chow, having called the attention of all in the assembly to what he had to say (告爾四國多方), here turns and addresses himself more particularly to the nobles and people who had occupied the imperial domain of Yin. I understand 殷侯尹民 as—殷侯之百官與衆民. The 'Daily Explanation' differently:—爾殷侯所尹正統轄之民. 我惟大降爾命.—see on Bk. XIV., p. 21. I understand the language here as in that previous passage, in accordance with the views of Ts'ao. Here, however, he supposes that the king says he is sparing their lives a second time, and 爾罔不知 is with him—爾宜無不知. 'Be ye all aware of this.' But this clause and the former are to me plainly historical, and refer to what is past. Ts'ao's view is fully and clearly expanded in the 'Daily Explanation':—爾……助奄作叛. 今奄國既滅, 皆當以從逆坐.

爾攸聞。○帝之迪乃終日勸于淫昏不克于民乃大不肯感言夏誕厥逸格于夏有惟帝降

- 4 'God sent down correction on Hea, but the sovereign *only* increased his luxury and sloth, and would not speak kindly to the people. He proved himself on the contrary dissolute and dark, and would not yield for a single day to the leading of God;—this

誅我惟不忍多殺大降恩赦宥爾殷民之命爾等宜無不知之勿復生二心 3.

This par. is the key-note to the Book, and it is right to connect it closely with what precedes. The subject of it is the officers and people of Yin, who had deemed the empire belonged to the House of T'ang by a 'divine right' (天之命), and did not consider that what Heaven had given, it might and would take away, if there were not the earnest and virtuous discharge of the duties of government. Ts'ao makes Yen to be the subject of the par. Thus the 'Daily Explanation' follows the passage just quoted with—'And do you know the reason why Yen has perished? The people of Yen presumed greatly on their private views, reckoned on the decree of supreme Heaven, and with evil action rose in rebellion. They used no far-reaching reverent forethought, which would have led them to obey the laws, and rest in their lot, whereby they would have preserved the sacrifices to their ancestors. They have thus suddenly brought destruction on themselves; and do you look to Yen as a beacon, and know that the decree of Heaven is not to be rashly sought or relied on? But why should we suppose that the speaker has here the State of Yen in view? It is mentioned indeed in the 1st par.; but that is an addition by the compiler, and Yen is nowhere referred to in the address. It was too insignificant, moreover, to occupy the place which must be assigned to it, if we suppose that the announcement is thus made to turn upon its history.

No similar objections can be made to the view which I have taken. The sacrifices to the emperors of the Yin dynasty were allowed, in the generous clemency of king Woo, to be continued by their lineal descendant Woo-kang, the son of the tyrant Shou; but no sooner was Woo dead, than he and his adherents rose in rebellion against the new dynasty, and brought down new and heavy punishments, though still tempered with mercy, upon themselves. I am surprised that none of the Chinese critics have thus connected the 2d and 3d par.

Gan-kwa joined the 3d par. with the 4th, and supposed that K'ee, the last emperor of the Hea dyn., was the subject of it. K'ang Shing deals with it very inanely, saying that it is a general declaration,—'Should kings reckon on the decree of Heaven, and not reverently consult with long forethought, for their sacrifices' (王者圖度天命而不長敬念于祭祀乎)? 洪惟—sew on the same characters in Bk. VII, p. 1. K'ang Shing would make them in both places merely a phrase of introduction or exclamation; but we are not reduced to have recourse to such a device.

pp. 4—7. *How the sovereignty of the empire passed from the House of Hea to T'ang.* 4.

Ts'ao thinks that some paragraphs introductory to this have been lost, his reason being that it is the custom in the Shoo to precede the account of the downfall of a dynasty because of the wickedness of its last emperor with a reference to the virtuous emperors who preceded him. That is the practice certainly, but the duke of Chow may not have observed it here. We are not obliged to suppose any loss of text.

惟帝降格于夏,—comp. Bk. XIV,

p. 5. The 'Daily Explanation' here takes 格—正—感言于民—感—憂, 'sorrowfully,' 'with sympathy.'

不克終日勸于帝之迪,—終日, in the Analects and Mencius, is used for 'a whole day.' Here the phrase = 'one day,' 'a single day.' K'ang Shing has for it 一日; and the 'Daily Explanation' gives 終日之暫. 'He could not for a single day be advised by (exert himself on) the leading of God,'—the critics dwell on the phrase—the leading of God, and understand by it the incessant admonitions of conscience,—all the ways by which the heart of man is touched in Providence, which may be described as efforts on the part of God to keep him from evil, and lead him into the way of righteousness. 5.

厥^五圖帝之命不克開于民之麗乃大降罰崇亂有夏因甲于內亂不克靈承于旅罔惟進之恭洪舒于

5 is what you have heard. He kept reckoning on the decree of God in his favour, and would not promote the means of the people's support. By great inflictions of punishment also, he increased the disorder of the States of Hea. The first cause of his evil course was the internal misrule, which made him unfit to deal well with the multitudes. Nor did he seek at all to employ men whom he could

Ts'ao says that most of this par. is not understood by him. He brings out the meaning which appears in the translation, however, and is on the whole more successful in dealing with it than the other critics. The same subject evidently is continued,—the crimes of K'ao, which occasioned the overthrow of the Hsia dynasty. 厥圖帝之命—compare the notes on 'The Speech of T'ang,' p. 8.

不克開于民之麗—the expression 民之麗 has been taken variously.

Gan-kwō explains 麗 by 施, so that the meaning is—'that which should be bestowed on the people,' viz., good govt. and lessons of instruction; and the whole = he could not begin even to govern and instruct the people as he ought. This is very unsatisfactory. In the Yü King (離卦) it is said—日月麗乎

天百穀草木麗乎土. K'ang

Shing, taking 麗 there as—附, 'to be attached to,' understands the text as—'he could not do what would make the people attached to him.' Ts'ao defined the character in the Yin

by 依, 'to rely on,' and not by 附, from which he deduces the meaning of the text which I have given.—K'ao made no provision for the necessities of life among the people, such as food and clothing.

乃大至有夏—this continues the description of K'ao. He is the subject of 降. Woo Ch'ing on the contrary

understands 'Heaven' as the subject of 降, and makes the clauses descriptive of the punishment of K'ao.

因甲至于旅—the critics

are all agreed that by 內亂, 'internal disorder,' we are to understand the vile debaucheries of which K'ao was guilty in his connection with Hsiao-he (see pp. 170, 171).

With Ts'ao, Woo Ch'ing, and others, I take 甲—始, 'to begin,' and 因 is equivalent to

a noun, the subject of 甲. K'ang Shing and

Wang Shih both took 甲 as—狎, or 習, but

they do not account for the 因. Equally un-

satisfactory is the exegesis of Gan-kwō, who

takes 甲 as if it were 夾. With 靈承

于旅 comp. Bk. XIV., p. 13, 我周王

丕靈承帝事. Here 旅 is taken, by

all the critics except Woo Ch'ing, as—衆, 'all

the multitude of the people.' The only diffi-

culty in so taking it is with 承, which would so

be applied to describe the act of the superior to

his inferiors,—which is contrary to its common

usage. Feeling this, Ch'ing takes 旅 as denot-

ing the sacrifice to God which was so called (see

the dict. in loc.), who takes the clause as—'he

could not attend well to the sacrifices to God.'

But this is so far-fetched that it is better to

acquiesce in the other view, even with the

difficulty attaching to it. 罔丕至于

民—I have translated here after the 'Daily

Explanation,' which has:—無能大進

賢人而敬用之使大布寬

舒之澤于其民. There is little to

choose between this and the view of Ts'ao and

Woo Ch'ing:—Nor could he make great ap-

proaches towards the virtue of reverence in

which he might have shown a generous largeness

of heart to the people' (不能大進於

恭而大寬裕其民). Gan-kwō

gave quite a different meaning to the second

clause:—Nor could he greatly advance to the

virtue of reverence, but was very indifferent

and idle in governing the people' (大舒惰

于治民). K'ang Shing reads 茶

instead of 舒, and interprets:—'The greatly

民亦惟有夏之民
 叨憤日欽劓割夏
 邑。○天惟時求民
 主乃大降顯休命
 于成湯刑殄有夏。
 ○惟天不畀純乃
 惟以爾多方之義
 民不克永于多享
 惟夏之恭多士大
 不克明保享于民

respect, and who might display a generous kindness to the people, but he daily honoured the covetous and cruel, who were guilty of
 6 cruel tortures in the cities of Hea. Heaven on this sought a true
 7 lord for the people, and made its distinguishing and favouring
 decree light on T'ang the Successful, who punished and destroyed the
 sovereign of Hea. Heaven's refusal of its favour to Hea was decided,
 and it was because the righteous men among your many regions were
 not permitted to continue long in their posts of enjoyment, and the
 many officers whom Hea respected were quite unable to maintain
 an intelligent preservation of the people in the enjoyment of their

false were employed by him, and put into
 offices, to the calamity and bitter suffering of
 the people' (誣罔大者惟進之
 任使供職大爲患苦于民)

惟有夏至末一叨一繫 'to
 be gluttonous or greedy,' 'to covet,' 憤 'to
 be angry,' 'resentful.' 劓
 割夏邑, comp. in 'The Speech of T'ang.'

p. 3, 率割夏邑. 劓 'to cut off the
 nose,' is better translated here generally. K'ang
 Shing reads 氏 after 夏, on the authority of
 the 說文; but the meaning which he gives
 to the whole is very far-fetched.—'The people
 also under the rule of Hea, suffering the oppres-
 sion of greed and cruelty, longed more every day
 to see the kingdom of Hea cut off.' Only one
 searching for strange meanings could attempt
 to draw this from the text.

F. 6. 時—是天惟時求民
 主—天惟是之故求可爲民
 主者. 7. 惟天不畀純—天
 之不畀於桀(—夏)者大矣

'Heaven's refusal of its favour to K'eh (or Hea)
 was great and decided.' The rest of the par-

explains why Heaven thus withdrew its favour.
 We have in Bk. XVI., p. 9, an opposite declara-
 tion of Heaven's favour to Shang.—天惟
 純佑命. It is well to take 純 in the
 same way in both passages, as meaning 'deter-
 minate,' 'decided.'

爾多方之義
 民—義民, 'righteous people,'—賢者
 'men of virtue and ability.' They are called
 'of your many regions,' i.e., the many regions
 of the empire. We can lay no stress on the
 爾, 'your.'

永於多享—'long in
 much enjoyment,'—'long in the enjoyment of
 their offices.' K'ang Shing says:—不能
 久長多享祿位言桀不任
 賢. 不克明保享于民—

'could not understand to preserve and secure
 enjoyment for the people.' The use of 享, and
 the 于 before 民, render the language obscure,
 but the meaning seems to be what I have given.

The 'Daily Explanation' gives for it—不能
 明達治體以保安享有國
 家之民, 'they could not understand the
 art of govt. so as to secure their tranquil enjoy-
 ment (= possession) of the people of the empire.'

乃胥惟虐于民，至于百爲大不克開。○乃惟成湯克以爾多方，簡代夏作民主。○慎厥麗乃勸，厥民刑用勸。○以至于帝乙，罔不明德慎罰，亦克用勸。○要囚。

lives, but on the contrary aided one another in oppression, so that of the hundred ways of promoting prosperity they could not advance one.

- 8 'In the case indeed of Tang the Successful, it was because he was the choice of your many regions that he superseded Hea and
9 became the lord of the people. He paid careful attention to the essential virtues of a sovereign, in order to stimulate the people, and
10 they on their part imitated him, and were stimulated. From him down to the emperor Yih, the sovereigns all made their virtue illustrious, and were cautious in the use of punishments;—thus also
11 exercising a stimulating influence over the people. When they, having

Ying-tê quotes the view of Too Yn (杜預) to the same effect, making 享—受, 'to receive';—see the 註疏. K'ang Shing defines

胥 by 皆, 'all.' It is equivalent to 'all,' but with the further meaning of 'mutual' co-operation.

至于百爲大不能開.—Gan-kwô connected the former of these clauses with the one preceding.—'They aided one another in oppression, even in a hundred different ways.' The last four characters are then simply an addition to the indictment.—'And they were greatly unable to initiate any plan of good'

(大不能開民以善). It is better to connect the clauses together as I have done. The 不克開 leads us back to 不克開于民之麗 in p. 5, and the meaning comes out as in the translation.

Pp. 8—12. The empire gained by the virtue of Tang, and maintained by that of his successors, was finally lost by the wickedness and misgovernment of Shou.

8. It is only in the interpretation of the intermediate clause of this par.,—克

以爾多方簡, that there is a difference of opinion. We may translate it 'on the ground of being chosen by your many regions; and the meaning, as stated by Yao Shu-muh (姚舜

牧), is that 'Heaven, in seeking a lord for the people, simply followed the choice of the many regions' (天求民主蓋從多方之所簡耳). Gan-kwô and K'ang Shing translate, however,—'was able among your many regions to choose the worthy.' But this is forcing a meaning, much more than the other construction, from the characters themselves, nor is the sentiment so suitable to the tenor of the Book.

9. We ought surely to take 麗 here as in p. 5. Ts'ao, however, makes 麗麗 to be—'what he depended on,' i.e., the essential virtue of a sovereign, or benevolence.

刑—法, 'to imitate,' 'to find a pattern.' Gan-kwô takes it in the sense of 'punishment.'—'His people, though he might punish them, were stimulated to virtue!'

The student will mark the force of the 乃 and the 用 in the two clauses. And yet, such is the peculiar character of the Chinese language, that the critics interpret 用 in the next par. quite differently.

10. 明德慎罰.—see Bk. IX, p. 3. The assertion made here about the sovereigns of the Shang dynasty down to Yih, must be taken with large allowance.

11. 要囚.—see on Bk. XI, p. 11. It is strange to find this specified

辭。大淫圖天之命，屑有
 乃惟爾辟，以爾多方，
 夏，非天庸釋有殷。○
 爾多方，非天庸釋有
 鳴呼，王若曰，誥告
 以爾多方，享天之命。
 今至于爾辟，弗克
 開釋無辜，亦克用勸。
 殄戮多罪，亦克用勸。

- examined the evidence in criminal cases, put to death those charge-
 able with many crimes, they exercised the same influence; they did so
 also, when they liberated those who were not purposely guilty. But
 when the throne came to your late sovereign, he could not with the
 good will of your many regions continue in the enjoyment of the
 favouring decree of Heaven.¹²
 II. "Oh! the king speaks to the following effect, 'I announce and
 declare to you of the many regions, Heaven had no set purpose to
 do away with the sovereign of Hea, or with the sovereign of Yin.
 But it was the case that your ruler, being in possession of your
 many regions, abandoned himself to great excess, and reckoned on
 the favouring decree of Heaven, making trifling excuses for his
 conduct. And so in the case of the sovereign of Hea;—his schemes

with reference to the emperors; but so it is in the text.

開釋無辜—comp. in 'The
 Counsels of Yu,' p. 12. 與其殺不辜，
 寧失不經。 12. By 爾辟, 'your
 sovereign,' we are to understand Show.

以爾多方 should be interpreted with
 reference to the 以爾多方簡 of p. 8.
 The critics have all overlooked this.

Ch. II. Pp. 13—15. How THE SOVE-
 REIGNTY OF THE EMPIRE, HAVING PASSED FROM
 HEA TO YIN, BY THE WILL OF HEAVEN, PASSED
 AGAIN FROM THE TYRANT SHOW TO THE PRINCES
 OF CHOW. 13. The critics have much

to say on the manner in which this par. begins,
 —the repetition of 王若曰, and the 鳴
 呼, which precedes. But what can be said to
 the purpose, more than that the duke of Chow
 chose thus to speak? Very strange is the
 method of K'ang Shing, who makes the 鳴

呼 an exclamation concluding the previous
 paragraph. 庸釋—庸—用 有

心之謂也 (Ts'ao), our 'on purpose,'
 'with premeditation; 釋—去之, 'to put
 away,' 'to remove.' By 有夏 and 有殷,
 we are to understand K'ee and Show. The re-
 moval of them, however, was equivalent to the
 overthrow of their respective dynasties. 14.

爾辟—爾君, 'your sovereign,' referring
 to K'ee. 以爾多邦—by—on the

ground of—your many regions.' K'ang Shing
 gives:—relying on the multitudes of your
 many regions. 屑有辭—屑, as in

p. 22, —輕, 'lightly,' 'triflingly.' Compare in

Bk. XIV., p. 5, 大淫汙有辭. 15.
 Here the speaker turns again to K'ee, the
 representative of the Hea line (有夏). Lu

T'ao-hsien says that the 集 here is that of 積

政不集于享天
降時喪有邦間
之○乃惟爾商
後王逸厥逸圖
厥政不蠲烝天
惟降時喪○惟
聖罔念作狂惟
狂克念作聖天
惟五年須暇之
子孫誕作民主

- of government were not of a tendency to secure his enjoyment of the empire, so that Heaven sent down ruin on him, and the chief of your State entered into the line of his succession. Indeed, it was the case that the last sovereign of your Shang was luxurious to the extreme of luxury, while his schemes of government showed neither purity nor progress, so that Heaven sent down such ruin on him.
- 17 'The wise, not thinking, become foolish, and the foolish, by thinking, become wise. Heaven for five years waited kindly, and forbore with the descendant of Tang, to see if he would indeed prove himself the true ruler of the people, but there was nothing

集 meaning 'to—collect,' and the 享 is that of 享國, meaning 'to enjoy the empire.' He adds that 'good governmental measures bring together all means of prosperity' (治世之政聚其所以興). This is the easiest way of explaining the characters. K'ang Shing, not so well, takes 集—就. Woo Ch'ing is here, as frequently, peculiar. He makes 不集于享 to mean—'the princes were alienated, and he could not bring them together and make them come to court with their offerings' (諸侯離心不能合聚之使來朝享). 時(—是)喪—'this ruin,'—such a ruin.

有邦間之—by 有邦 is meant Tang, so called as being then merely one of the princes, 'the holder of a State.' 間之—separated—interrupted—It. K'oo Selh-ch'ow says:—From Yu to K'ee there had been a continuous succession of 400 years; but from this it was interrupted and broken off (自禹至桀四百年之統自此間而斷也).

16. Liu Che-k'e observes on 逸厥逸 that it means 'he carried his 逸—his luxurious in-

dolence to excess.' This is better than to take one of the characters in the sense of 過, 'to go beyond.' 蠲烝—蠲—潔, 'pure'; 烝—進, 'to advance,' 'progress.' The meaning of the clause 不蠲烝 then comes out as in the translation. K'ang Shing, after Ma Yung, takes 烝=升, 'to ascend,' so the whole—'his measures of govt. did not go up purely to Heaven.' This is far-fetched, but not so much so as Woo Ch'ing's interpretation. He takes 烝 in its sense of 'the winter sacrifice,' and hence for 'sacrifices' in general, so that 不蠲烝—'he did not offer his sacrifices with purity!'

P. 17. 惟聖至作聖—these two sayings have wonderfully exercised the ingenuity of the critics. Confucius has said (Ana. XVII, lil.) that 'the wise of the highest class and the stupid of the lowest class cannot be changed.' Surely he who can be called 聖 belongs to 'the wise of the highest class';—how can the dictum of the great sage and the sentiment of the duke of Chow in this passage be reconciled? The foreign student is not concerned to reconcile them. What the duke says we know to be accordant with facts. He had not come to the folly and arrogance of the sage and his school exalting the 'sage' man above the attributes

惟式教我用
惟典神天
旅克堪用德
周王靈承于
顧之。○惟我
爾多方罔堪
開厥顧天惟
方大動以威
天惟求爾多
罔可念聽。○

- 18 in him deserving to be regarded. Heaven then sought among your many regions, making a great impression by its terrors to stir up one who might look *reverently* to it; but in all your regions, there was not one deserving of its regard. There were, however, our kings of Chow, who treated well the multitudes of the people, and were able to sustain the burden of virtuous *government*, and to preside over all services to spirits and to Heaven. Heaven thereupon instructed

of humanity, and all created beings. 須一

待 'to wait,' 暇一寬限, 'to allow indulgently a longer time.' The 之 in 之子

孫 occasions a difficulty. Woo Ch'ing makes it—是, 'this,' as in the expression 之子

子歸, quoted in the 'Great Learning,' Comm. 12, 6. It is better to take it as merely giving

emphasis to the active meaning of the verbs 須 and 暇. Show of course is intended,—the

descendant of T'ang. The clause 誕作民

主 ought, I think, to be connected with the preceding, as appears in the translation. Gan-

kwò, however, and in recent times K'ang Shing, understand it as—'But he greatly played the

people's lord, and there was nothing in him,' &c. When it is said that Heaven forbore with

Show for five years, giving him the opportunity of repentance, there must have been something

remarkable in the closing period of his history, which was known to the duke of Chow and his

bearers, and to which allusion is made. We, however, do not know the events of the time

with sufficient minuteness to be able to say what it was. See on the 十三年 in the

'Great Speech,' Pt. I, p. 1. 18. 大動以威,—greatly moving by its terrors.' Moving

whom? Gan-kwò says—'Show.' But this is evidently wrong. 'The individuals intended to be

moved were the princes of the various regions; the terrors employed to move them were the

overthrow of Show, and the troubles generally of the time. There is a difficulty in interpreting the expressions 顧天和 顧之.

顧之命者, 'to influence and bring forth one who might receive its decree of favour

and regard,' for 開厥顧天. Then for 罔堪顧之 there is given 皆不足

以堪眷顧之命, 'all were insufficient to sustain the favouring decree.' Woo

Ch'ing explains in the same way. But 厥顧天 must mean 'their looking to Heaven,'

not 'Heaven's looking to them.' 顧 simply 一回視, 'to turn round and look at,' com-

monly with the idea of kindness or favour attached. I suppose that the subject of the

former 顧 is 'the princes,' and the object, Heaven, while of the latter the subject is Heaven, and the object, the princes. 19. 我

周王—these 'kings' were Wan and Woo. 靈承于旅,—see p. 5. 惟典

神天,—典—主, 'to preside over.' The whole—主神天之祀 'who could

preside over the sacrifices to spirits and to Heaven.' The phrase 神天 has occasioned

some difficulty. When Dr. Medhurst made his translation of the Shoo, he supposed that

神 was an adj. qualifying 天, and rendered the passage by—'Only they could superintend

the worship of the Divine Heaven.' Subsequently he saw the error of this, and has corrected

it in his 'Theology of the Chinese,' pp. 54, 57, where he refers to the paraphrase of the 'Daily

Explanation,'—誠可典司神天爲上帝百神之主矣 Gaubil trans-

休簡畀殷命
尹爾多方○
今我曷敢多
誥我惟大降
爾四國民命。
○爾曷不忱
裕之于爾多
方爾曷不夾
介乂我周王
享天之命今

them, and increased their excellence, made choice of them, and gave them the decree of Yin, to rule over your many regions.

- 20 III. 'Why do I now presume to make *these* many declarations? I have dealt very leniently as regards the lives of you, the people of
21 these four States. Why do you not show sincere and generous obedience in your many regions? Why do you not aid and co-operate with us the kings of Chow to secure the enjoyment of

lated the clause by—'I (he takes 我周王 as singular) fut en état d'être mis à la tête des affaires qui regardent les esprits;' and observes, in a note, that 典神天 is equivalent to the 作神主 in the 'Both possessed pure Virtue,'

p. 3. So far he is correct; but the 天 should not be sunk in a translation. Its use shows very clearly, how, while the ancient Chinese could say of God, whom they intended by 'Heaven,' that he was a spirit, just as we do, they did not consider him as merely one of 'the host of spirits.' No Chinese critic has ever taken 神 here as an adjective. They invariably

understand a conjunction between 神 and 天.

I need only give further what Ch'iu Ts'ayew

says on the passage:—可爲神與天之

之主山川宗社之得其安

三光寒暑之得其序皆人

君有以主之. If it be still asked why

天 as the more honourable, does not precede

神, we may reply with Dr. Medhurst, that

天神 might have been taken as meaning 'the

spirits of heaven;' or (which seems to me more

likely, as that usage of 天神 is foreign to the

Shoo) that the collocation was chosen to avoid

the coming together of the closely allied sounds

of 典 and 天. 惟天式教我用

休, 'Heaven therefore (see 式 in Bk. XVI,

p. 21) taught us, and thereby was excellence.'

By the 我, 'us,' are intended the 我王, at

the beginning of the par., and I have therefore

kept the third person in the translation.

CH. III. Pp. 20—23. THE KING COMPLAINS OF THE BRIGTANCE WITH WHICH THE RULERS OF CHOW WERE SUBMITTED TO; SHOWS THE FOLLY OF IT, AND DECLARES THAT, IF PERSISTED IN, IT SHOULD BE DEALT WITH IN ANOTHER STYLE.

20. 曷敢.—how dare I? The critics

make no remark on the use of 敢, 'to dare,'

'to presume,' here. It is strange from the lips

of the king in this connection. He might very

well speak of himself as 'presuming,' with re-

ference to Heaven; but it sounds oddly as it

stands. 我惟云云.—see on p. 2.

Yao Shun-mah says:—At the commencement

of the announcement, the king tells them how

he had spared their lives, and starts from that

to unfold the reasons why Heaven now bestows

its favour and now withdraws, that they might

be taught to nip the unquiet and insurrection-

ary tendencies of their hearts in the bud. Here

he reminds them a second time of the same

thing, wishing to show them the path of self-

renovation and improvement, that they might

escape the miseries of extreme punishment in

which they were going on to involve themselves.

See the 集說. 21. 爾曷不忱

裕之.—I take the 之 here like the same

character in 須暇之, p. 17, as giving em-

phasis to the previous verbs. This usage cor-

responds to that which is not unfrequent with

our English 4.—Why do you not sincere it,

and liberalize it? Treated so well by the govt.

of Chow, why would they not obey it sincerely

and with a largeness of mind like that which

had been shown to them. It is not easy to trans-

late the clause. Medhurst misuses the meaning;

and when Gaubil says 'Pourquoi ne seriez-vous

pas desormais fideles et tranquilles dans votre

pays,' the 'tranquilles' by no means brings out

sufficiently the meaning of 裕. 夾介

爾尙宅爾宅，畋爾田，爾曷不惠王熙天之命。○爾乃迪，屢不靜，爾心未愛，爾乃不大宅天命，爾乃屑播天命，爾乃自作不典，圖忱于正。○我惟時其教告之，我惟時其戰要囚之，至于再。

- 22 Heaven's favouring decree? You now still dwell in your dwellings, and cultivate your fields;—why do you not obey our kings, and consolidate the decree of Heaven? The paths which you tread are continually those of disquietude;—have you in your hearts no love for yourselves? do you refuse so greatly to acquiesce in the ordinance of Heaven? do you triflingly reject that decree? do you of yourselves pursue unlawful courses, scheming by your alleged reasons for the approval of upright men? I simply instructed and declared to you; I secured in trembling awe and confined the chief criminals:—I have done so twice and for three times,

—夾輔介助, to assist and 'to aid.'

父 is best taken as—保, 'to preserve,' 'to maintain.' The kings of Chow had received the favouring decree of Heaven; but that decree had to be made firm or sure by the cheerful acquiescence of the people and princes in their sway.

今爾至爾田.—comp. the closing par. of the 'Numerous Officers.'

惠—順, 'to accord with,'—'to obey and have sympathy with.'

熙=廣, 'to make wide,'—'to strengthen.' 22. The 'Daily Explanation' says that here 'the people of Yin are reproved as to the past, and admonished as to the future.' The first clause is to be supposed narrative; but all the others are best taken interrogatively.

爾乃迪屢不靜.—爾乃屢蹈不靜. This is somewhat harsh, requiring the inversion of 迪 屢;

but what can we do? K'ang Shing takes 迪 in the sense of 道.—'I have sought to guide you repeatedly, but still you are not tranquil.' This construction is more objectionable. Their 'paths of disquietude' were the rebellious movements in which they had repeatedly engaged.

爾心未愛 is taken by Gan-kwó and K'ang Shing indicatively,—

'you do not yet love our dynasty of Chow.' I prefer, however, to understand it as in the translation. Ts'ae gives:—爾心其未

知所以自愛也. 宅天命—

宅—居或安, 'to rest or repose in.' 屑

—see par. 14. 不典—不法, 'lawless

ways.' The last clause, 圖忱于正, is a

difficult one. Gan-kwó and Ying-tá are as

enigmatical upon it as the text itself. K'ang

Shing takes 正—長, 'superior,' and gives:

—謀取信于長上, 'scheming to be

believed by your superiors.' But what 'super-

riors' can we think of in the case? The trans-

lation is after the 'Daily Explanation,' which

says:—且爾等反覆叛亂, 自作

不法之事, 爲正人所深惡,

乃猶以義不忘殷, 圖見信

于正人乎. 23. Past history would

not be continued, if they still continued dissatisfied

and gave disturbance. 我惟至于三

is to be taken as descriptive of the king's past

dealings with the rebellious. Kin Le-t'ang

says:—教告之 refers to the announce-

ments made before the expedition to the East

至于三，乃有不
用我降爾命，我
乃其大罰殛之。
非我有周秉德，
不康寧，乃惟爾
自速辜。○王曰：
嗚呼，猷告爾有
方多士，暨殷多
士，今爾奔走臣
我監五祀。○越

- But if you do not take advantage of the leniency with which I have spared your lives, I will proceed to severe punishments and put you to death. It is not that we, the sovereigns of Chow, hold it virtuous to make you untroubled, but it is you yourselves who accelerate your crimes and sufferings."
- 24 IV. "The king says, 'Oh! ho! I tell you, ye many officers of the various regions, and you, ye many officers of Yin, now have ye been hurrying about, doing service to my overseers for five years.

(謂東征之前，文告之)：戰
要囚之， refers to the captives and prisoners,
during that expedition, who however were not
put to death' (謂東征之時，俘囚
之，然不殺) 惟時—惟是。 We
may retain the signification of 惟 as 'only,'
'simply.' We cannot, however, interpret 要
囚 as we have done in the previous instances
of its occurrence, p. 11, and Bk. IX, p. 12. The
之 here perhaps requires that we interpret the
phrase differently. Wang Ts'ao gives for it
東而囚執之。 非我云云，
—comp. the two last clauses of Bk. X, p. 11.
Compare also Bk. XIV, p. 18, 非我一人
奉德不康寧

Ch. IV. Pp. 24—25. THE KING ADDRESSES
MORE PARTICULARLY THE NUMEROUS OFFICERS
WHO HAD BEEN REMOVED TO LÜ, AND URGES
THEM TO THE RIGHT DISCHARGE OF THEIR DUTIES.
IF THEY DO WELL, THEY WILL HAVE GREAT
REWARDS. IF THEY PROVE IDLE AND PERVERSE,
THEY WILL BOTH BY HEAVEN AND THE KING,
BE MORE HEAVILY PUNISHED THAN THEY HAD
YET BEEN. Woo Ch'ing, as I stated in the
note on the name of the Book, removes this
chapter to the 'Numerous Officers,' with the
exception of a part of the 29th par., which he
seems to reject altogether. In this measure, he
followed the example of the critics Woo and Hoo
(probably 吳才老 and 胡明仲). The
change of the style of address, from 多方 to

多士, certainly gives countenance to it,
though the 有方多士 in par. 24 may be
pleaded in favour of the received arrangement.
The point, however, is of little importance.

P. 24. Ying-tz explains 爾有方多
士 by 汝在此所有四方之多
士，謂四方之諸侯， 'you who are
here, the numerous officers of the four quarters.
The princes from the four quarters of the empire
are thus designated.' I would rather take 有
方 as—所有之方, equivalent to 'all
the quarters of the empire.' 臣我監

五祀 (一年. The Yin term for 'year' is
used, perhaps because it is the old officers of that
dyn. who are addressed),—acting as ministers
to my overseers for five years.' K'ang Shing
supposes that the 'overseers' are the three
uncles of the king, who had been appointed by
his father to oversee Woo-kang, and finds a
reference to the past, 'Ye hurried about, doing
service to my overseers for five years.' But
this interpretation is quite absurd; and more-
over the 今 is inexplicable on it. It is only
excused in absurdity by the view of Gan-k'wo,
who would interpret:—Ye run about serving
my overseers. If you do so for five years with-
out fault, I will restore you to your original
territory! King Ch'ing's 'overseers' were the
ministers of Chow, under whose charge the
officers and people of Yin removed to LÜ were
placed. The statement that those officers had
served them there for 'five years' should put

惟有胥伯小大
多正爾罔不克
臬○自作不和
爾惟和哉爾室
不睦爾惟和哉
爾邑克明爾惟
克勤乃事○爾
尚不忌于凶德
亦則以穆穆在
乃位克閱于乃

- 25 There are among you the employés, the chiefs, with the numerous directors, small and great:—endeavour to discharge your duties according to the laws. It is from yourselves that the want of harmony arises:—strive to be harmonious. In your families there is a want of concord:—strive to be harmonious. When intelligence rules in your cities, then will ye be proved attentive to your duties.
- 27 Do not be afraid, I pray you, of the evil ways of the people; and moreover by occupying your offices with a reverent sedateness, you will find it possible to select from your cities individuals on

beyond a doubt what I have all along maintained, that the removal of the people to the new settlement had taken place before the building of the imperial city of Ló. See the 集傳.

25. 胥, 伯, and 正 are all names given to various officers. They were common designations under the Chow dyn.—see the note from Ch'ia See-k'ue in the 集傳. But what 胥, what 伯, and what 正 are here intended we cannot tell, and any very definite translation of the terms cannot be given. Ts'ao gives 臬 the meaning of 事, 'affairs,' 'business,'—'duties.' The dict. refers to the passage under the meaning of 法, 'laws,' which we know that 臬 often has. I have combined the two. [We know that Fuh-shang read—越惟有胥賦.

小大多政, which K'ang Shing of course admits; but I cannot find or give any suitable explanation of such a text.] 26. There seems to be some gradation of thought here, from harmony of mind to harmony of conduct; thence to social harmony in the families of the people; and thence again to what we may call a general political harmony:—all to be secured by the harmony of the officers addressed. Wang Ts'ao says that 'the first 和哉 requires serene tranquillity of mind in order to the harmony of the body or whole character, and the second requires the harmonious obedience of the whole character to reason in order to the harmony of the family.' See the 集說. This significance of the diff.

clauses, however, is very indistinctly intimated, and hence Gan-kwo gives another interpretation, which it is not worth while to adduce and animadvert upon. 27, 28. The former of these par. describes certain things to be aimed at by the numerous officers, if they could succeed in which, there would be the results which the latter par. sets forth. It must be allowed that it requires considerable ingenuity to decide on the meaning which is to be given to the clauses of the former.

爾尚不忌于凶德.—忌 is to be taken in the sense of 畏, 'to fear.' 尚 has its force of exhortation or entreaty. The 凶德, 'evil conduct,' is to be referred to the people, whose stupidity and obstinacy (頑民) made them so difficult of management. 穆穆—和敬貌, 'the appearance of harmony and reverence.'

克閱于乃邑謀助—能簡閱爾邑之賢者以謀其助, 'can select the worthy in your cities, thus consulting to get their assistance.' Such is the view of the meaning proposed by Ts'ao, only that he finds the idea of concession in 尚. Woo Ch'ing's interpretation is different. He says:—度幾無有凶惡之德可忌諱也, 亦且肅敬在爾之位, 能臨視於爾之邑, 而謀者大矣. K'ang Shing reads the first clause

邑謀介。○爾乃自時
洛邑。尚永力畋爾田。
天惟畀矜爾。我有周
惟其大介賚爾。迪簡
在王庭。尚爾事。有服
在大僚。○王曰。嗚呼。
多士。爾不克勸忱我
命。爾亦則惟不克享。
凡民惟曰不享。爾乃
惟逸。惟頗。大遠王命。

- 28 whom you may calculate. You may thus in this city of Lō long continue, cultivating your fields. Heaven also will favour and compassionate you; and we, the sovereigns of Chow, will greatly help you and confer rewards, selecting you to stand in our royal court. Only be attentive to your duties, and you may rank among our great officers."

- 29 "The king says, 'Oh! ye numerous officers, if ye cannot exhort one another to pay a sincere regard to my charges, it will further show that you are unable to honour your sovereign, and all the people will also say—"We will not honour him." Thus will you be proved slothful and perverse, greatly disobedient to the charges of your sovereign.

along with par. 26, and edit it—爾上不基

于凶德。For 基 he gives the authority

of the 說文; but that is of no importance, as

this character is there explained by 忌. But

the 說文 quotes the passage with 尚 and not

上, which Shing arbitrarily assumes to have

been the original reading. The meaning which

he thus finds is:—"You will be proved atten-

tive to your duties, and your superiors will

have no occasion to detect your evil ways."

爾乃至爾田。自時(一)是洛

邑 seems to—'from this—on the ground of

your behaviour in this—city of Lō.' The force

of 尚 is sufficiently given by our 'may.' On

畋爾田, Wang Ts'ao observes that 'to

cultivate a field (田) is called 畋 in the same

way as to catch fish (魚) is called 漁.

畀矜爾—畀子矜憐於爾。

'gift you and compassionate you.'

爾—介助賚錫於爾, 'aid you and

confer bounties on you.' 尚爾事, the

尚 has its hortative force. Ts'ao gives for the

clause—其庶幾勉爾之事。

有服在大僚—comp. 'The Numerous

Officers,' p. 20. It will there be seen how the

officers of Yin desired the favours that are here

promised them.

P. 29. If they will not be won by the leniency

shown and the favours promised to them, but continue

disaffected, and make the people also disaffected,

they shall be dealt with summarily and severely.

The critics are here concerned to free the duke

of Chow from the charge of speaking, or making

the king speak, like one of the chiefs and

arbiters among the princes, of whom we read

so much in Mencius,—first coaxing and then

threatening, subduing men merely by their

strength. Loo Tsao-hen goes into the point at

length, and says that here we have the judgment

and the infliction of Heaven always preceding

the judgment and act of human authority. But

we should find the same thing in the speeches

of those tyrant-chiefs. The duke said what

seemed most likely to him to accomplish his

則無我怨。不克敬于和。曰時惟爾初。告爾命。○又^{卅二節}多誥我惟祇。王^{卅一節}曰我不惟離^{卅三節}逃爾土。○則致天之罰。探天之威。我則惟爾多方。

Throughout your many regions, you will bring on yourselves the terrors of Heaven, and I also will inflict its punishments, removing you far from your country."

- 30 V. "The king says, 'I do not *wish* to make these many announcements, but in a spirit of awe I lay my commands before you.' He
31 also says, 'Now you may make a *new* beginning. If you cannot reverently realize the harmony *which I enjoin*, do not *hereafter* murmur against me.'"

end. 嗚呼至不享.—comp. Bk.

XIII, p. 12. The meaning of 享 is the same in both passages, only the idea of 'offerings' is more here as the expression simply of loyal obedience. 頗—僻, 'depraved,' 'perverse.'

遠王命—違王命: 探—求取
'to seek for and bring on.' 離逃爾

土.—comp. 移爾遐逃. Bk. XIV, p. 21. The king would seem to be threatening the refractory with another and more distant banishment. To me conjectures that 多方 is a

mistake for 多士, which, I think, is very likely.

Ch. V. Pp. 30, 31. The conclusion of the address.

我不至爾命.—the relation between the two clauses seems to require that the former should be supplemented as in the translation. 時惟爾初—今與爾

更始. 'now I grant to you to change and begin afresh.' The 時, however, is not—今, but—是.

THE BOOKS OF CHOW

BOOK XIX. THE ESTABLISHMENT OF GOVERNMENT.

立政

周^二公若曰拜
手稽首告嗣
天子王矣用
咸戒于王曰
王左右常伯
常任準人綴
衣虎賁周公
曰嗚呼休茲

- 1 I. The duke of Chow spoke to the following effect, "With our heads to our hands and then to the ground, we make our declarations to the new emperor, our king." In such manner accordingly all *the other ministers* cautioned the king, saying, "In close attendance on your Majesty there are the regular presidents, the regular *high* officers, and the officers of the laws; the keepers of the robes *also*, and the guards."—The duke of Chow said, "Oh! admirable are these *officers*. Few, however, know to be sufficiently anxious about them."

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—立政, 'The Establishment of Government.' This phrase occurs four or five times in the course of the Book, and is thence taken to denominate it;—with considerable appropriateness. The subject treated of throughout is, it will be seen, how good government may be established. The Book is found in both the texts.

CONTENTS. The editors of Yang-ching's Shoo give the following summary of the Book from Tung Ting (董鼎) of the Yuan dynasty, which is tolerably complete:—In imperial govt. there is nothing more important than the use of *proper men*; and when *proper men* are being looked out for, the first care should be for those to occupy the "three *Alpha* positions." When these are properly filled, all the other

offices will get their right men, and imperial govt. will be established. The appointment of the officers of business, of pastoral oversight, and of the law (宅事, 牧, 準; p. 2) is the great theme of the whole Book (其綱領), and the words, "Admirable are these! But to know to be sufficiently careful about them," —, are its pulse (其血脈; i.e., may be felt everywhere, throbbing in all the sentiments). Parr. 2 and 3 illustrate the subject from the history of the Hsia dynasty; parr. 4 and 5 do the same from that of the House of Tang; and in parr. 9 to 15 it is shown how Wan and Woo, like the founders of the previous dynasties, knew how to be anxious about the selection of their officers, and so obtained the great inheritance of the empire, initiating the happy state

which was then continuing. From par. 16 to the end, the duke earnestly addresses the king on his duty to put away from him men of artful tongues; to employ the good, distinguished by their habits of virtue; to be always well prepared for war; and to be very careful of his conduct in the matter of litigations. His object is all was that the king should learn from the founders of the different dynasties how he should manifest anxiety on the great subject of the Book, and should be warned by the fate of Kee and Show against allowing himself to be indifferent about it. The whole is an example of loyal affection, which we seem even to the present day to be able to take hold of.

Lin Che-k'e comments upon it, arranged in three chapters:—par. 1—5; 6—15; 16—28. The student will find the arrangement in five chapters which I have adopted of more assistance to him.

THE ORDER OF THE PARAGRAPHS; AND DATE. There is no ancient authority for altering the arrangement of the received text; but the reader can hardly fail to be annoyed with the long list of officers of Wan and Woo in par. 6—15. Why should the speaker go at so much length into their appointments, after having touched so briefly on those of Yu and Tang? The student's attention is distracted by the lengthy enumeration; it could only have diverted the young king's mind from the important lesson which the duke wished to impress upon him. There is, again, the greater portion of par. 2,—from 乃敢 to the end, which has always seemed to me to have no proper connection as it stands.

The only Chinese critic, however, whom I have met with, who owns to feeling the same difficulties is Wang Pih. He does not scruple to say that the text as it stands is 'head and tail in disorder, and without connection.' His conception of the occasion when the duke delivered the sentiments of the Book is this:—It was soon after king Ching undertook the responsibilities of the government. At such a time it was proper that all the officers should unite in *lessewing* him, and the duke of Chow accordingly appeared with a host of them, great and small, and when they had expressed their views on the point which seemed most important to them, he took the subject up, and prosecuted it in his own way. Pih would thus remove par. 8—11, and the part of par. 2 to which I have referred, and make them all one long preliminary paragraph;—

周公若曰拜手稽首告嗣天子王矣用咸戒于王曰王左右常伯常任準人綴衣虎賁趣馬小尹左右攜僕百司庶府大都小伯藝人表臣百司

大史庶常吉士司徒司馬
司空亞旅夷微盧僉三毫
阪尹乃敢告教厥后曰事宅
手稽首后矣宅乃事宅謀茲
乃牧宅乃準茲惟后宅人鳴
面用丕訓德則乃宅公曰
乃三宅無義民周公曰
呼休茲知恤鮮哉

The praise of ingenuity cannot be denied to this arrangement of the text, and if it were proper to decide on such a point simply on internal grounds, I should not hesitate to adopt it.

Wang Pih supposes that this announcement was made after the duke of Chow had resigned the regency. Such was the opinion of all the early scholars; and likewise, we may presume from the order in which the Book stands, of the compiler of 'The Little Preface,' though his note says nothing on the point (see Pref. N. 54). Now, however, in the received chronology, the Book is referred to the 4th year of king Ching. This date was first proposed by Hoo Woo-fung (胡五峰; one of the early Sung writers, author of the 皇王大紀), and is argued for in the 通鑑綱目,—on very insufficient grounds, as will be seen from the notes on various paragraphs.

Ch. I. P. 1. CIRCUMSTANCES ATTENDING THE DELIVERY OF THE ADDRESS; AND ITS TEXT. 周公若曰至王矣—it

will be seen that I have translated 拜手

云云, in the first person plural, understand-

ing that the duke of Chow appeared before

the king with a long train of ministers, and

that he here speaks first in their name,—for

himself and for them. Then 用咸戒于

王 intimates that the ministers all took up

the subject, and began to speak for themselves.

As the 'Daily Explanation' has it:—羣臣

用皆進戒于王. They have hardly

entered on their admonitions, however, when

the duke takes the word from them, and con-

tinues the address in his own person,—周公

曰鳴呼云云. Gan-k'wō supposed

that the duke of Chow was the speaker in his

own person throughout. Hence he understood

拜手云云 as—'with my head to my

hands, &c., I make an announcement.' For

用咸戒于王曰, he gives—又用

王所立政之事皆戒于王

曰, 'He also took up the various procedures of the king by which he should establish his govt., and warned him on the subject of them all, saying,——. But Liu Che-k'e well observes that this is very forced, and apart from the meaning of the text. The interpretation which I have given was first fully developed by Ch'iu Shao-nan (陳少南) who found the germ of it in the comment of Wang Suh,

于時周公會羣臣共戒王, 其言曰拜手稽首者是周公讚羣臣之辭休茲此五官美哉. Dr. Medhurst makes 拜手

云云, to be addressed by the duke to all the ministers.—'The duke of Chow, addressing his ministers, spoke to the following effect, Bow down and make obeisance, while you address the new emperor and king.' This construction is to be decidedly rejected, but there can be pleaded for it the authority of Woo Ch'ing, who says:—前周公若曰公與羣臣言也, 後周公曰公與王言也. 嗣天子王矣.—the son of Heaven who has inherited (or, who is continuing) the line of succession, the king.' This language, it is said, is more appropriate, if addressed to the young king, a minor, than if addressed to him when of full age. It seems to me, on the contrary, what we should expect, if spoken to Ching now fully seated on the throne of his father.

常伯常任準人, —'the regular chiefs, the regular holders of office, and the equilibrating men.' It is difficult to say what officers are intended by these designations. Lien Tsoo-hen says:—'These are the occupiers of 'the three positions,' mentioned in the 4th par., but nowhere else in the Books of the three early dynasties do the designations appear. May we not suppose that they were other names for the high nobles and assistants about the imperial court? Different names were given to the occupants of offices, as when the prime minister was called A-hang (阿衡) and Paou-hang (保衡), and when the three chief ministers about a prince's court were called K'o-foo (圻父), Nung-foo (農父), and Hwang-foo (宏父). In the same way, the names in the text are to be taken simply as diversified designations of the great ministers who assisted in the govt. during the three dynasties. The two designations of 綴衣 and 虎賁 which follow are the names of two selected from among the various classes of inferior officers, as specimens of the rest. With

those who were in the great offices was lodged the safety or the peril of the throne; by those whose offices brought them into familiar intercourse with the sovereign his character was liable to be affected;—the condition of the empire depended equally on them both.' See the 集說. There can be no doubt these observations give the general meaning of the text, and the reason why the ministers and officers mentioned in it are specified; but how are we to translate the different designations? Gaubil avoids the difficulty by retaining the names, and giving vague accounts of the officers intended by them in his notes. It seems reasonable to take, with Liu Che-k'e, the 常伯 here as—the 宅

乃牧 of par. 2; the 常任 as—the 宅乃事; and the 準人 as—the 宅乃準. We may then understand by 常伯

the chiefs or presidents who had a pastoral charge of the people (牧民之長); by 常任, the high ministers of War, Instruction,

Works, &c., in the imperial domain; and by 準人, the law officers. 準='level,' 'to level,' 'the instrument to make or determine a level.' 準人 are the officers who guard the laws, the instrument of justice. The officers called 綴衣, 'Connected Robes,' and 虎賁,

'Tiger Braves,' are not known to have existed under these names in the previous dynasties; this Book shows that they were an institution in the times of Wan and Woo. We do not find the name of 綴衣 in the Chow Lo, but there are enumerated the 'master of the furred robes' (司裘), the 'master of robes to the empress' (內司服), the 'tailor' (縫人), and the

'master of robes' (司服) which must have been kindred appointments. See Books VI., VII., and XXI. The 虎賁 are expressly mentioned in Bk. XXXI. They were guards,

amounting, acc. to K'ung-shing, to 800 men, generally in attendance on the emperor's person; but might be detailed off to other services.

休茲—美矣此官, as in the translation. Many critics understand the characters as meaning—'Admirable are these observations!' But it would be hard to say what observations have been made. The duke takes the word out of the mouth of the others, and at once gives out the text which he proceeds to illustrate in his own way.

知恤鮮哉—知以不得人爲憂者殆亦鮮矣. 'those who know to make the not getting the proper men for them a subject of sorrow are few.'

知恤鮮哉。○
古之人迪惟
有夏，乃有室
大競，顓俊尊
上帝，迪知忱
行，乃敢告教
厥后曰：拜手
稽首，后矣。曰：
宅乃事，宅乃

- 2 II. "Among the ancients who exemplified *this anxiety* there was the founder of the Hea dynasty. When his House was at its strength, he sought for able men to honour God. *His advisers*, when they knew of men thoroughly proved and trustworthy in the practice of the nine virtues, would then presume to inform and instruct their sovereign, saying, 'With our heads to our hands and then to the ground, O sovereign, we would say, Let such an one occupy one of your high offices: Let *such an one* be one of your pastors: Let such an one be one of your law-officers. By such appointments

Ch. II. Pp. 2, 3. THE IMPORTANCE OF THIS PRINCIPLE.—AN ANXIOUS CONCERN TO GET THE OFFICES OF STATE FILLED BY THE RIGHT MEN, ILLUSTRATED IN THE HISTORY OF THE HEA DYNASTY.

2. 古之人迪惟有夏—古之人君迪行知恤之道者，惟夏王大禹。'of the ancients who walked in this course of a wise anxiety there was the great Yu, the Sovereign of Hea.' 迪—行 or 蹈，'to walk,' 'to tread.' Gan-kwō and Kēang Shing take it as—道；but they bring out the same meaning. 有室大競—當王室大強之時，'when the imperial House was greatly strong.' Kēang Shing, after Gan-kwō, by 有室 understands 卿夫大之家，'the families of the high nobles and officers';—an interpretation not nearly so good as that which I have followed. 顓（一呼一求）俊尊上帝，—comp., in p. 4, 丕釐上帝之耿命，and, in p. 8, 以敬事上帝. These three passages supply a very striking testimony of the recognition in those times of God as ruling over the nations of the earth. Yu, Tang, and kings Wan and Woo, the founders of the three great dynasties which are still celebrated, all considered it their great business to honour and serve God. They were simply His ministers. Whatever were the errors of religious belief and worship into which they fell, they held fast this important principle—that they were called to their high stations by the one Supreme Ruler,

and were bound to occupy in them so as to please Him. 迪知忱恂于九德

之行,—this, I think, is spoken of Yu's ministers, the advisers who were about him. Not only did he seek out able men to honour God, but they also sympathized with him in his views, and co-operated with him, and recommended to him men of whose character and fitness they were assured. As Wang Ts'aoon tersely says:—

古之賢臣，以人事君；古之賢君，以人事天。'The good and able ministers of antiquity served the sovereigns by recommending the right men; the good and able sovereigns of antiquity served Heaven by employing these men. For 九德之行 see 'The Counsels of Kaou-yaou,' pp. 3, 4. Liu Che-k'e explains 迪知 by 驗之於實迹而知之，'those whom they know by examination of their actual conduct.' 宅乃事

云云,—these three clauses are to be taken not as general advice with regard to putting good men in the positions indicated, but as specific, with reference to the individuals whom they had in view as displaying more or fewer of 'the nine virtues.'

茲惟后矣—如此而後可以爲君也，'do this, and so will you prove yourself the sovereign indeed.' 謀面至末—Gan-kwō quite misunderstood the meaning of this part of the par., led away in the first place by interpreting the 三宅 of the 五宅三居，'three

localities assigned to the five banishments,'

牧宅乃準茲惟
 后矣謀面用丕
 訓德則乃宅人
 茲乃三宅無義
 民○桀德惟乃
 弗作往任是惟
 暴德罔後○亦
 越成湯陟丕釐
 上帝之耿命乃
 用三有宅克卽

you will discharge your royal duty. If you judge by the face only, and therefrom deem men well schooled in virtue and appoint them, then those three appointments will all be occupied by unrighteous people.' The way of K'ē, however, was not to observe this precedent. Those whom he employed were cruel men;—and he had no successors.

4 III. "After him there was T'ang the Successful, who, rising to the throne, greatly administered the bright ordinances of God. He employed to fill the three high positions those who were equal to those

mentioned in the 'Canon of Shun,' p. 20. Ho gives for the whole:—

事無疑則能用大順德乃
 能居賢人于眾官若此乃
 能三居無義民大罪宥之
 四裔次九州之外次其國
 之外。Consult on the ground of the things

you have seen before your face, and which will not admit of doubt; you can then employ those who are greatly accordant with virtue, and will be able to fill all the offices with men of worth. Thereafter you can locate the unrighteous people in the three places assigned to them:—those whose crimes are heinous, farthest among the four wild tribes; less heinous criminals beyond the nine provinces; and those whose offences are lighter still beyond the boundaries of their several States.' This interpretation of 三宅 is altogether foreign to the scope of the paragraph; but it continued till the Sung dynasty, and even then Ssu Tung-po followed it.

謀面 is 'to judge merely from the face, or outward appearance.' 謀面用丕訓德則乃宅人—徒謀之面貌用以爲大順于德乃宅而任之. K'ang Shing avoids the old interpretation of 三宅, and brings out a meaning something like what I have given, but by hard shifts. He reads 亂 before 謀: takes 面—

向; 丕 for 不; 義 for 儀; and interprets, 'If your counsels are deceived, and you move towards men who are not virtuous, and place them in these offices, then the occupants of these three positions will be able to give no good example to the people.' 3. 桀德—

'K'ē's virtue,' i.e., his evil way. 德 being in a

bad sense. 弗作往—'did not do the past,' i.e., did not imitate the example of Yu in employing the worthy. The language is not clear, but it is better to point and construe as I have done, —after T'ao. Gan-k'wō and K'ang Shing have each a different method; but they take the same view of the whole paragraph. 任是惟

暴德—所任者乃惟暴德之人.

Ch. III. Pp. 4, 5. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE SAME PRINCIPLE EXEMPLIFIED IN THE HISTORY OF THE SHANG DYNASTY. 4. 亦越 may be

taken, with T'ao, as a compound conjunction, —'our' again, 'further.' 陟丕釐上帝

之耿命—'ascended, and greatly regulated the bright appointment of God.' 陟, 'ascended,' seems to be used with reference to T'ang's from being the chief of a second-rate State becoming emperor. Other explanations of the term are given, but it is not worth while to dwell on them. 釐—理 or 治, 'to regulate,' 'to administer.' Gan-k'wō prefers the meaning of 賜, 'to give,'—but very inappropriately. The

宅曰三有俊，克卽俊嚴惟
丕式克用三
宅三俊其在
商邑用協于
厥邑其在四
方用丕式見
德。○鳴呼其
在受德賢惟
羞刑暴德之

positions; and those who were called possessors of the three grades of ability could display that ability. He then studied them severely and greatly imitated them, making the utmost use of them in their three positions and with their three grades of ability. The people in the cities of Shang were hereby all brought to harmony, and those in the different quarters of the empire were brought greatly under the influence of the virtue thus displayed. Oh! when the throne of Tang came to Show, his character was all violence. He preferred men of severity, princes of States who deemed cruelty a virtue, to share

meaning is, that when Tang was established on the throne, his whole system of govt. was in harmony with the mind of God. His institutions might be regarded as divine ordinances.

乃用三有宅克卽宅—this is clearly paraphrased in the 'Daily Explanation'—乃又能旁求賢才相助爲理，所用以居常伯常任準人之官爲三有宅者，實能就是位而不曠廢其職。Still more evident here than in the 2d par. is the blunder of Gan-kwô in taking 三宅 of 'the three places of banishment.'

俊—'the three—or three classes—of possessors of ability, men among a thousand.' Gan-kwô and K'ang Shing suppose that men, are meant who possessed the 'three virtues' mentioned in 'The Great Plan,' p. 17; but it is simpler to understand that by 俊 are intended men who had talents and virtue which would make them eligible to the three high positions. On such Tang had his notice fixed, and was prepared to call them to office at the proper time. 曰三有俊克卽俊—所稱三俊實能就是德而不浮其名。嚴惟至三俊—

Woo Ch'ing may be said to expunge 嚴惟 丕式, for he says that they are 'a form of introduction' (發語辭). Gan-kwô and K'ang Shing interpret the passage thus—'Tang's majesty became a great example to the

empire because he was able to use the right men' (湯之嚴威惟能大法于天下者以其能用三宅三俊). They differ, however, in the mean-

ing which they give to 三宅; but their construction of the text is far inferior to that of Lea Tao-keen and other critics, which I have followed. 惟 is not the particle, but the verb, —思, 'to think of,' 'to study;' and 式—法 or 效, 'to imitate.' Tao-keen says that Tang's way with E Yin, first sitting as a learner at his feet, and then reposing entire confidence in him as his minister, may illustrate the meaning.

其在商邑,—by 'the cities of Shang' we are to understand all the territory of the imperial domain. 用丕式見德,—thereby were led to great imitation, and saw the virtue of their sovereign.' The 'Daily Explanation' expands it:—其在四方之遠而自慕者用以大爲取法,如親見其君德而無不順治焉。其在受,—comp.

the commencement of par. 5 and 6 in Bk. XV. 賢—強, 'strong,' 'violent.' Ts'ao explains 羞刑 by 進任刑戮者, 'be advanced to office those who punished capitally.' K'ang Shing also gives 進任 for 羞; but I must take 羞刑 as a description of 暴德之人, 'men of violent character, like his own, who

人同于厥邦，乃惟
庶習逸德之人，同
于厥政。帝欽罰之，
乃侔我有夏。式商
受命，奄甸萬姓。
亦越文王武王，克
知三有宅心，灼見
三有俊心，以敬事
上帝，立民長伯。

- with him in the government of the empire; and at the same time, the host of his associates, men who counted idleness a virtue, shared the offices of his court. God then sovereignly punished him, and caused us to possess the great empire, enjoy the favouring decree which Shang had afore received, and govern all the people in their myriad realms.
- 6 IV. "Subsequently there were king Wān and king Woo, who knew well the minds of those whom they put in the three positions, and clearly saw the minds of those who had the three grades of ability. Thus they could employ them reverently to serve God,

advanced (—doomed) punishments as the proper instrument of govt.' Show had pleasure only in those princes of the States who were such.

厥邦, 'his countries,' seems to be opposed to 厥政, 'his govt.,' i.e., the fiefs to the court.

I take 欽 in the sense of 'sovereignly.' Anything with the express sanction of imperial authority is so denominated.

侔我有此奄甸萬姓—entirely to rule the myriad surnames. Compare in Bk. XIV., p. 6, 成湯革夏俊民甸四方. We need not seek for any other meaning to 甸 (as Ts'ao does) than the general one of 治, 'to govern.'

萬姓—comp. Pt. III., Bk. III., p. 3. I suppose that 萬 is used without any particular reference to the surnames of the people as being so many, or that 萬姓—萬邦之民.

立民長伯—those whom Wān and Woo thus appointed were the 三宅 and 三俊. Ts'ao, arguing from the language of the Bk.

王制 in the Le Ka, makes the 長 to be the governors of a 屬 or five States, and the 伯 to be the Chiefs of a 州 or 210 States. I do not think that we need to seek for such a definite application of the terms. Ch'in Leli says that it was a common practice of antiquity for the princes of States to reside at the imperial court, and there sustain office, while the officers of the court were also sent forth, as princes of

d. Ts'ao observes that when it is said that Wān and Woo knew the minds and saw the minds of the 三宅 and 三俊, this is equivalent to the language of the 22 par., 迪知忱恂而非謀面. It certainly indicates that those sovereigns sought to obtain the most thorough knowledge of those whom they placed or would place in the highest offices of trust. Ts'ao-hen calls attention to the difference between 知 and 見.—They knew what was in the highest servants of their govt.; they saw what the men of ability could prove themselves to be, when called to employment.

立民長伯—those whom Wān and Woo thus appointed were the 三宅 and 三俊. Ts'ao, arguing from the language of the Bk. 王制 in the Le Ka, makes the 長 to be the governors of a 屬 or five States, and the 伯 to be the Chiefs of a 州 or 210 States. I do not think that we need to seek for such a definite application of the terms. Ch'in Leli says that it was a common practice of antiquity for the princes of States to reside at the imperial court, and there sustain office, while the officers of the court were also sent forth, as princes of

立^七政任人準
夫牧作三事。
○虎^八賁綴衣。
趣馬小尹左
右攜僕百司
庶府。○大^九都
小伯藝人表
臣百司太史
尹伯庶常吉

- 7 and appointed them as presidents and chiefs of the people. To establish their government, they had the men of office, the officers of law, and the pastors, and these appointments were their three concerns. They had also their guards; their officers of the robes; their equerries; their heads of petty officers; their personal attendants; 9 their various overseers; and their treasurers. They had their governors of larger assigned cities and of the smaller; their men of arts; the overseers whose offices were beyond the court; their grand historiographers; and their chiefs of direction:—all, good men of constant virtue.

States. See the 集說. 7. K'ang Shing briefly and comprehensively explains this par.—

文武立政以任人準夫牧爲三事。任人是常任 of par. 1. 準夫, the 準人; and 牧, the 常伯.

8. The long enumeration of officers in this and some following paragraphs has no organic connection with the rest of the Book, the argument of which would be improved by the omission of it. I have shown in one of the introductory notes how Wang Pi would dispose of it. All that we can do is to explain the various designations in the best way we can.

趣 (read *re'ee*) 馬, —'equerries.' These belonged to the department of the 校人 or masters of the imperial stud. Their rank was that of 下士. See the Chow Le, Books XXVIII and XXXII. 小尹—小官

之長, 'the heads of small officers.' We cannot define the designation more particularly.

左右攜僕—Gau-kwó understands this phrase as in the translation, —左右攜持器物之僕. Ts'ao supposes that 攜 has this signification, and that 僕 denotes 'charioteers' (僕御). Woo Ching, again would confine the two characters to this latter meaning. Gau-kwó's interpretation seems the preferable. 百司, —'the hundred superintendents or overseers.' The phrase denotes

all the officers who had their special individual charges. Many 司 are mentioned in the Chow Le,—the 司服, 司門, 司市, 司甲, 司弓矢, &c. 庶府,—'all the treasurers.' In the Chow Le, Bk. VI, we have the 大府, or 'Grand Treasurer;' the 玉府, or 'Treasurer of gems, pearls, gold ornaments,' &c.; the 內府, or 'Keeper of the inner treasury;' and the 外府, or 'Keeper of the outer treasury,'—the treasury of disbursements. Other 府 are mentioned in other places. Wang Yen says:—The 庶府 denote all charged with the management of the imperial wealth' (凡掌財).

9. The 大都 小伯 must be construed, with Ch'in Shaou-sen, 大小都伯, 'the commandants of Tso, great and small.' The clause is an instance of what is called 'interlaced style' (互文見意), and when completed would be 大都之伯 小都之伯. On the meaning of 都, see the note on Mencius, II, Pt. II, iv, 4. By the 'great Tso' here we are to understand the cities in the imperial domain assigned for the support of the highest nobles (公之采邑), and by the 'small Tso' the cities assigned to those of inferior dignity.

藝人,—'men of arts.' This is understood to

以事克厥文^十毫^十微亞司士。
 以克司立宅王^十阪盧旅馬○
 俊牧茲心惟尹。烝○司司^十
 有人常乃克○三夷^十空徒

- 10 "In the various States there were the minister of Instruction, the minister of War, and the minister of Works; with the many officers subordinate to them.
- 11 "Among the wild tribes of the Wei, the Loo, and the Ching; in the three Pō; and in dangerous places: they had wardens.
- 12 "King Wān was able to have in himself the minds of those in the three high positions, and so it was that he established those regular officers and superintending pastors, so that they were men of ability

include, according to the language of the *Le Ke*, Bk. 王制, Pt. iv, p. 10, 'all who employ their arts in the govt.,—priests, historiographers, archers, charioteers, doctors, diviners, and the practicers of the various mechanical arts' (凡

執技以事上者祝史射御醫卜及百工) 表臣百司。—these 百司 are distinguished from those in

the *pres. par.* by the addition of 表臣, 'outside ministers.' We are to understand officers with special charges, as in the former case, but located away from the court. 大史—

see on Bk. X, p. 13. We are to understand here not only the 'Grand Historiographer,' but all the officers in his department. 尹伯

is defined by *Ts'ao* 有司之長, 'the heads of the several classes of officers.' He illustrates his meaning by referring to the 庖人 (一庖

尹), or 'butcher,' and the 內饗, or 'cook,' whose offices were both subordinate to that of the 膳夫, or 'master cook,' who was their

伯 庶常吉士.—this is descriptive of the officers enumerated, and of the subordinates employed by them.

P. 10. This par. has reference to the various officers in the States of the princes. See 'The Speech at Muh,' p. 2.

P. 11. This par. would seem to go on to speak of the officers,—overseers or governors,—whom Wān and Woo appointed among the wild tribes, the 尹 at the close belonging to each of the tribes specified, all included under the commencing 夷. The 三毫, however, occasions a difficulty, for their people were the descend-

ants of T'ang's original subjects, and could not be classed with the 夷, under which term therefore we can only include the 微, the 盧,

and the 烝. The two first of these are mentioned in the 2d par. of Bk. II., referred to above, with other wild tribes, who acted with the forces of King Woo in his overthrow of Shou. The 烝 are not mentioned there, and there is much difference of opinion as to how that term should be taken. Gan-kwō adopts the meaning of 衆, 'the multitudes;' Ming-shing approves that of 君, 'rulers,' which is

given to it in the 爾雅; and others suppose it is the name of a wild tribe, like the two preceding terms. The 'three Pō' were Mung (蒙) or the 'northern Pō,' in the *pres. dia.* of Shang-k'ew, dep. of Kwei-tih in Ho-nan; the western Pō, in the *pres. dia.* of Yen-ear, dep. of Ho-nan; and the 'southern Pō,' which was only a few li from the northern. *Ts'ao* says that he does not understand the meaning of 阪. He supposes however that it may mean 'strong positions' (阪-險) throughout the five domains, where it was deemed proper to locate special officers. K'ang-shing joined it with 三毫, and supposed that it denoted the three strong-holds, where the overseers of the different Pō were placed.

Pp. 12-13. Further exemplification in Wān and Woo of their anxiety to get right men; and of the confidence which they reposed in them when got.

12. 文王惟克厥宅心
 — we must explain these words from the 克
 知三有宅心 in par. 8. King Wān was able to know fully the minds of his officers,

德。○文王罔^{十三}
攸兼于庶言^{十四}
庶獄庶慎，惟^{十五}
有司之牧夫。
是訓用違。○
庶獄庶慎，文
王罔敢知于
茲。○亦越武
王，率惟救功
不敢替厥義

- 13 and virtue. He would not himself appear in the various notifications, in litigations, and in precautionary measures of government. There were the officers and pastors *to attend to them*, whom he *simply*
14 required to be obedient and not disobedient. *Yea*, as to litigations and precautionary measures *he would seem as if* he did not presume
15 to know about them. He was followed by king Woo, who carried out his work of settlement, and did not dare to supersede his right-

and to employ them with entire confidence. Gan-kwó, indeed, took the language differently:—文王惟其能居心遠惡舉善, 'king Wán was able to set his mind on this,—the putting far off the bad and elevating the good.' But, as Choo He has observed, if this were the meaning, we should have read 克宅厥心, and not 克厥宅心. K'ang Shing reads 文王維厥度心, which he interprets—'King Wán employed his deliberating mind.' 乃

克立茲常事, 司牧人, —by 常事 are intended the 常任 of par. 1, and by 司牧人 the 常伯. The 準人 are not mentioned here, unless the 司牧人 be taken to include them and all the other officers who have been enumerated. 以

克俊有德—皆是實能俊而有德, being a description of the qualifications and virtue of Wán's officers. 13, 14. These par. are intended to show how king Wán, having appointed the right men, left them to the management of their office, and did not interfere with them in the discharge of their duties. 罔攸兼—

無所兼理, 'he in no way interfered with,—did not attend to, along with his own duties.' 庶言—號令, 'governmental orders and notifications.' This seems to be the only proper meaning of this phrase in the connection. It must run on with the 庶獄

and 庶慎—all under the govt. of 罔攸兼于. K'ang Shing, partly after Gan-kwó, would attach 文王罔攸兼于庶言 to the previous par., with the meaning that king Wán was guided in appointing his officers by the deliberations of his mind, and paid no attention to the praise or censure of individuals by others (庶言—眾人毀譽之言). 庶獄—獄訟, 'civil and criminal causes';—see on Ana. XII, xlii. 庶慎

—國之禁戒儲備, 'all things in the State which were to be guarded against and provided for.' 惟有至末,—the 之 is taken as—及, a particle of connection.

是訓用違,—this is a very difficult clause.

I have translated it after Foo Yuen-tsao (傅元初; Ming dyn.), who says:—文王三宅之賢, 無非常德, 吉士安得, 有違命者, 推誠任人, 馭下有體, 只是訓戒之, 欲其用命, 不欲其違命耳. 14.

Litigations and precautionary measures only are mentioned here, because king Wán could not but know the notifications that went forth in his name. 15. How King Woo entered into the spirit and work of his father. 率惟

救功—率循文王安定天下之功. Comp. 未克救公功. Bk. XIII, p. 19. By 義德 Ts'ao thinks we

德率惟謀從容
德以竝受此不
丕基。○^{十六}嗚呼孺
子王矣。繼自今
我其立政立事
準人牧夫我其
克灼知厥若不
乃俾亂相我受
民和我庶獄庶
慎時則勿有間

eous and virtuous men; who entered also into his plans, employing as before his forbearing and virtuous men. It was thus that they unitedly received this vast inheritance.

- 16 V. "Oh! young son, the king, from this time forth be it ours to establish the government, appointing the *high* officers, the officers of the laws, and the pastors;—be it ours clearly to know what courses are natural to them, and then greatly to employ them in the government, that they may aid us in the management of the trust of the people, and harmoniously conduct all litigations and precautionary measures. And let us never allow others to come between us and

should understand 義德之人; and similarly 容德. We get an easier meaning certainly by taking the expressions in this way, then if we understand them of king Wan himself.

Ch. V. Pp. 15–24. THE DUKE ADDRESSES KING CHING DIRECTLY, AND URGES HIM EVER TO ACT ON THE PRINCIPLE WHICH HAS BEEN ILLUSTRATED. 15, 16. *How the king should*

carefully choose, entirely trust, and steadily maintain his officers.

孺子王.—this language has been pressed to show that the address was delivered when the king was a minor.

孺子, it must be conceded, is properly 乳子, 'a sucking child'; but it is used away from that signification, whether it was applied to Ching about his 15th year, or his 20th. When the duke of Chow had resigned the regency, he still continued to think of the king as the boy he had watched over, and ruled for, and so he calls him here, when offering these counsels, which are not at all appropriate to him as a minor.

我其至牧夫.—the critics all say

that 我 here (and in other clauses below) refers

to king Ching. Woo Ch'ing says, 'The six 我

in pp. 15, 16, are all the duke's 我 king

Ching' (六我皆我成王). Ch'in Ta-

yew says, 'By the 我 the duke identifies him-

self with the king. Sovereign and minister should compose, as it were, one body' (我者

我其君君臣一體也). All this

may be correct, but we may as well translate by

the plural of the first personal pronoun. 立政

covers the 立事, 準人, 牧夫, as it does

任人, 準夫, 牧 in p. 7. It is remark-

able how the order of enumeration, when speak-

ing of the three positions, is continually varied.

我其克灼知厥若.—comp-

the language of p. 8. 若 here must be equal

to 心 there. The critics generally define it by

順, and then understand by 知厥若,

'know that they are accordant with right,'

obedient to heavenly principle. T'ao, much

more happily, goes on to explain 順 by 心之

安, 'that in which the mind reposes,' and then

adduces, to illustrate the meaning, the words of

Confucius (Ann. II, z.) 察其所安人

焉廋哉, 'Examine in what things a man

rests. How can he conceal his character!'

不乃俾亂=大委任之使展

布四體以爲治 K'ang Shing would

strangely make 不 here only a particle of in-

roduction. 我受民=我所受

是父之。○自古
庶獄庶慎。惟正
文孫其勿誤于
矣。繼自今文子
言咸告孺子王
且已受人之徽
受民。○嗚呼予
德之彥以父我
言我則末惟成
之。○自一話一

17 them. *Yea*, in our every word and speech, let us be thinking of officers of complete virtue, to regulate the people whom we have received.

18 "Oh! I, Tan, have received these excellent words from others, and tell them all to you, young son, the king. From this time forth, O accomplished son of *Woo*, accomplished grandson of *Wān*, do not err in regard to the litigations and precautionary measures;—let

之民, 'the people whom we have received,' i.e. who have been entrusted to us by Heaven, and transmitted to us by our ancestors. 時

則勿有間之。—時—如是, 'thus,' 'in this condition.' 間之, 'to come between them;' either between them and their work, or between them and us. K'ang Shing joins this clause on to the next, and reads 物 instead of 勿, from Wang Chung's 論衡. He labours hard but unsuccessfully to interpret his text.

17. In translating this par. I have followed Ts'ao, who takes 末—終 and 惟—思 自一話一言—一話一言—之, 'during the space of one word or one sentence.' Lin Che-k'w has the same view. Woo Ch'ing would refer — 話一言 to the

庶言 of par. 13. Gan-k'w's comment on the whole par. is strangely laboured and absurd: 一言政當用一善, 善在一言而已, 欲其口無擇言, 如此我則終惟有成德之美, 以治我所受之民

18—21. The king is repeatedly and variously warned against erring in the matter of litigations and precautionary measures. There was probably some disposition in the young emperor to interfere with the regular course of these two departments, which made the duke dwell so

pointedly upon them. 15. 徽言—美

言 or 善言, 'admirable words' or 'good words.' He refers no doubt to all that he has said in the address. The 'men from whom he received them' were probably the best of ministers and officers, who had commenced to address the king when he took the words out of their mouth. Lin Che-k'w praises the honesty of the duke of Chow in making this acknowledgment, and contrasts him with some other statesmen who used the ideas of others, taking all the credit of them to themselves. 文子, 文

孫, 'the accomplished son, the accomplished grandson.' King Shing no doubt is intended.

正是父之, 'there is no end of the disputes about how 正 is to be taken. Ts'ao supposes that it—正人, which phrase we have in Bk. IX., p. 17. From the conclusion of p. 21 we must conclude that the 有司之

牧夫 are intended. Wang Ts'ao makes a good observation on this par. 'The prec. par. says that the sovereign is not to let other men interrupt the proceedings of his officers; here he is admonished not to throw those proceedings into error by interference of his own' (上言勿間之以人, 此言

勿誤之以己, 大抵人君任賢不專, 其弊有是二端, 故反覆言之也). 19. 自古商

商人亦越我周文王立
政立事牧夫準人則克
宅之克由繹之茲乃俾
父○國則罔有立政用
儉人不訓于德是罔顯
在厥世繼自今立政其
勿以儉人其惟吉士用
勤相我國家○今文子
文孫孺子王矣其勿誤
于庶獄惟有司之牧夫

- 19 the proper officers regulate them. From of-old to the founder of Shang, and downwards to king Wān of our Chow, in establishing government, when they appointed *high* officers, pastors, and officers of the laws, they settled them in their positions and unfolded their talents. It was thus that they gave the government into their hands.
- 20 In the empire never has there been the establishment of government in the employment of artful-tongued men;—*with such men*, unlessoned in virtue, never can a *government* be distinguished in the world. From this time forth, in establishing government, make no use of artful-tongued men, but *seek for good officers*, and get them to use all their powers in aiding the government of our empire.
- 21 Now, O accomplished son of *Woo*, accomplished grandson of *Wān*, young son, the king, do not err in the matter of litigations. There are the officers and pastors to attend to them.

人—自古及商人. By 'of old,' Yu, the founder of the Hsia dyn., must be intended.

克由繹之.—由繹 is explained by 紬繹 'to unroll a clue,' 'to get hold of the end, and draw out all the silk.' The high officers, being put in their positions, were made to unfold all their talents. We may keep the proper meaning of 由, however. See the comment of Leu Tao-hsien in the 集說.—由繹由其外而繹其中也. 由繹其言而繹其心云云. 茲乃俾父—茲其所以使之治事. It is better to understand the clause thus, than to take it, with Gan-kwo, as —此乃

使天下治.

20. Men of artful tongues should on no account be allowed to get office.

諛 (K. S. edita 儉) 人—佞人, 'specious,' 'talkative,' 'artful men.' Cuesong Kew-shing gives the following account of them:—儉人者, 傾巧辯給之人, 詐是飾非, 言足拒諫, 悅其心則譽, 榮紂爲堯舜, 失其意則誣, 伯夷爲盜跖, 不訓于德. 訓 is commonly defined by 順, but we may retain its proper signification.

其惟吉士.—其惟用有常吉士. See par.

21. Comp. par. 13.

其克詰爾戎
 兵以陟禹之迹
 方行天下至于
 海表罔有不服
 以觀文王之耿
 光以揚武王之
 大烈。○嗚呼繼
 自今後王立政
 其惟克用常人。

22 "Have well arranged also your military accoutrements and weapons, so that you may go forth beyond the steps of Yu, and be able to travel over all beneath heaven, even to beyond the seas, everywhere meeting with submission:—so shall you display the bright glory of king Wăn, and render more illustrious the great achievements of king Woo.

23 "Oh! from this time forth, may you and your successors, in establishing the government, seek to employ men of constant virtue."

P. 22. This par. suddenly introduces a subject diff. from those hitherto dwelt upon, and seemingly quite out of place, in the Book. At the close of his address to prince Shih, however, we found the duke of Chow all at once break into the same warlike mood. There he would have the dynasty extend its sway, till 'from the corners of the sea to the sunrise there should not be one disobedient to the rule of Chow.' Here his enthusiasm rises higher, and he will have the empire extended beyond its limits in the time of Yu. Many of the critics argue that after the dynasty of Hsia began to decline, the wild tribes all round the empire encroached upon it, till the 'nine provinces' of Shang hardly embraced half the territory which those of Yu had done. There is no definite testimony, however, to this effect. If it were so, we can well suppose that the duke of Chow was bent on extending the sway of his House, to recover at least all the ground that had been lost from the time of Yu.

詰爾戎兵—詰 is defined by 治, 'to have in good order.' The term means 'to interrogate judicially.' Its proper force here is 'to maintain a strict inquiry into.'

戎 and 兵 are used in the dict. to define each other; both signify 'military weapons.' Gan-kwô is followed by Ts'ue in distinguishing them, as I have done in the translation (戎服兵器). 陟禹之迹—'ascend the footsteps of Yu.' But this hardly makes sense. The 'Daily Explanation' defines 陟 by 越而過之, 'to go beyond.' For the 'footsteps of Yu,' the limits

of his different progresses, see 'The Tribute of Yu,' Pt. II., p. 23, and the 'Yih and Tseih,' p. 8.

方行天下—方—四方 or 徧 觀 is used in the sense of 見, —'to cause to be displayed.' Len Tsao-hen tries to argue that the duke of Chow is not inciting the king here to warlike expeditions, but only to be prepared for war as the best security for peace. He lays down this maxim very tersely: —古人治兵乃所以弭兵後世銷兵乃所以召兵 Kiang Shing defines 詰 by 謹, 'to be circumspect,' 'to watch against,' so that he brings out the meaning that the king was to have done with war and cultivate the arts of peace, as the means of securing universal submission! For this interpretation there is no more ground than for Tsao-hen's reasoning. [I am glad to find that Woo Ch'ing thinks this par. as much out of place as I do. 'It has no connection,' he says, 'with the text before and after. It may be presumed that a portion of the Book has been lost.]

P. 23. The duke here repeats the burden of his address, extending his wishes from king Ch'ing to his successors. 常人—常德之人. Comp. 庶常吉士, p. 2, and in 'The Councils of Kaou-yaou, p. 2, 彰厥有常, 吉哉.

用慎茲我獄敬蘇史若○
 中 以 式 王 以 爾 公 司 曰 周
 罰 列 有 國 長 由 式 寇 太 公

- 24 VI. The duke of Chow spake to the following effect, "O grand historiographer, the minister of Crime, the duke of Soo, dealt reverently with all the criminal matters which came before him, thereby to perpetuate the fortunes of our empire. Here was an example of careful anxiety for other ministers, to rank with him in the ordering of the appropriate punishments."

Ch. VI. P. 24. I cannot see that this par. has any connection with the rest of the Book. It appears indeed to be more out of place, if possible, than par. 22. It is evidently a fragment of some of the lost Books which has got tacked on here.

司寇蘇公, 'the minister of Crime, the duke of Soo.' From a passage in the 左傳, 成十一年, we learn that the duke of Soo (where Soo was I have not ascertained) was called 忿生, and was minister of Crime to king Woo.

式敬爾由獄—Gan-kwō gives for this—能用法。敬汝所用之獄, 'could use the laws to as to reverence the criminal cases which you use.' But what meaning can a reader get from this? K'ang Shing endeavours in vain to explain it. I take 敬爾 together as an adverb,

= 'reverently.' 式=用; different from 式 below, which = 法. 由獄=所斷之獄, 'the criminal cases which he decided,'—which 'passed through' his hands. 茲式云云, 'the 'Daily Explanation' gives for this:—嗣爲司寇者于此取法而加謹焉, 則必能以輕重條列用其中罰, 無偏輕偏重之條, 無失入失出之慮, 刑獄清而天下無冤民矣. This seems to give the meaning, but I prefer to take 列 as referring to the duke of Soo, and = 'to rank with him.'

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XX. THE OFFICERS OF CHOW.

周德辟民庭甸萬惟
董歸罔六綏四邦周
正于不服厥征巡王
治宗承群兆弗侯撫

周官

1. I. The king of Chow brought the myriad regions of the empire to tranquillity; he made a tour of inspection through the How and T'een tenures; he punished on all sides the chiefs who had refused to appear at court; thus securing the repose of the millions of the people, and all the *princes of the six tenures* acknowledging his virtue. He then returned to the honoured capital of Chow, and strictly regulated the officers of the administration.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—周官, 'The Officers of Chow.' The Book contains a general outline of the official system of the Chow dynasty. It details the names and functions of the principal ministers about the court, to whom various counsels moreover are addressed by king Ching. The Officers of Chow' is not an inappropriate name for it. It is found only in the old, or Gau-ko's text. Ts'ao assigns it to the class of the Books of the Shoo called 'Instructions' (訓體).

DATE; AND QUESTION OF GENUINENESS. The first par. refers the Book to king Ching, without any mention of the duke of Chow. Its date therefore must be in some year after the duke resigned the regency, and the king took the govt. into his own hands. As the next Book but one (now lost) contained an account of the duke's death, in the 11th year of Ching, we may assign the 'officers of Chow' to the 9th or 10th year of that monarch. I introduce the subject of the date here, because of the strangeness of the prefatory note about it, that the Book was made 'when king Ching

had made an end of the House of Yin, and extinguished the wild tribes of the Hwas' (see page 12). The 'making an end of the House of Yin' carries us back to the death of Wou-kang in the 2d or 3d year of Ching (see P. N. 41); from which the extinction of the Hwas tribes would bring us down to his 7th or 8th year. The 1st par., which is the proper introduction to the Book, makes no mention of either of these events. I do not think the prefatory notice is entitled to any consideration.

On the question of the GENUINENESS of the Book, it will be sufficient here to give the remarks of Ts'ao, reserving the fuller discussion of the points he mentions for their proper place in the annotations. He says:—"This Book disagrees with the Chow Le, as we now have it, in various points. For instance, the Chow Le does not contain the ministers called here the 'three Kung,' and 'the three Koo.' Some have said that the Kung and Koo were dignities, enjoyed by other ministers, and were not specific offices; but if we refer to parr. 5 and 6, where it is said that 'the three Kung discourse of the principles of reason, and adjust the States,' and that 'the

three Koo assist the Kung to diffuse widely all transforming influences; these are specific duties, belonging to offices to which there can be none superior. Others would identify the 太師 here with the 師氏 of the Chow Le, and the 太保 with the 保氏; but this cannot be, for the 師氏 and 保氏 are only subordinate officers in the department of the minister of instruction.

Again, it is said here, p. 14, that "in six years the chiefs of the five tenures attend once at court," whereas in the Chow Le, Bk. XXXVIII., the princes of the six tenures appear at court, from such and such a tenure, every year; from another tenure in two years; and so on;—a quite different arrangement. These discrepancies give rise to doubts; but the Chow Le could only have been made by a sage. Or perhaps, the duke of Chow, when he was making all his arrangements for the officers of the government, had not come to the offices of the 師 and 保. What I mean is this, that he was restrained by some consideration of their greatness from speaking of them. Moreover, the book was not completed when the duke died. The laws and regulations in it had not all come into practice;—this may account for the discrepancies I have pointed out. And still further:—What must have formed the sixth part of the Chow Le, "The officer of the Winter," is lost. The beginning and end of it are incomplete. It is a work of the duke of Chow, to which alas! he did not put the finishing hand. Let the reader of the Shoo, however, compare it carefully with the classic, and he will be able to judge of the governmental arrangements of the duke of Chow.

CONTEXTS. The Book has a beginning, middle, and end, more distinctly marked than we generally find in the Books of the Shoo. The first par. is introductory, and describes the condition of the empire when the arrangements of the official system of Chow were publicly announced; all the other par. contain that announcement. The king begins by referring to the arrangements of former dynasties. He then, par. 5—14, sets forth the principal offices of State, the ministers of which had their residence at court, and goes on to the arrangements for the administration of the provinces. The remaining par. contain many excellent advices to the ministers and officers, to discharge their duties so that the fortunes of the dynasty might be consolidated, and there be no dissatisfaction among the myriad States. The whole, it will be seen, falls naturally into a division into five Chapters.

CH. I. THE CONDITION OF THE EMPIRE WHEN THIS ADDRESS TO THE MINISTERS AND OFFICERS WAS PROCLAIMED. Rebellion had been quelled; disobedience had been punished; peace had been secured at length within the borders of the empire.—There was now leisure to attend to the right ordering of the system of administration.

惟周王撫萬邦—'the king of Chow soothed the myriad regions.' This phrase,—'the myriad regions,' as well as the 四征 and 兆民 below, are taken by Ying-ta as vague expressions, it being proper,

when speaking of the movements and measures of the emperor, to do so 'in large terms,' and both Liu Che-k'ue and Ts'ao approve of the remark. I have spoken of the five tenures of Yu, and the ten tenures of the Chow dynasty on pp. 148, 149; and the difficulty of reconciling them with one another, and of reconciling the dimensions of even the five tenures with the actual extent of the country. There are other difficulties, however, in the way of taking the 'myriad regions' of the text literally, which may be seen in the note of Ch'iu Sze-k'ue *in loc.* He says.—The empire of Chow was 10,000 *le* square. A space of 1,000 *le* square, giving an area of 1,000,000 square *le*, would contain 100 States, each 100 *le* square; and the whole, 10,000 such States. But the territory of one of the greater princes was 100 *le* square.—It is easy to see how the tenures could contain 10,000 States. At the beginning of the Chow dynasty, however, the princes who assembled at Mu were only 800 (see on p. 298, App. to the Great Declaration). And in the "Imperial Regulations" [see the Le Ke, Bk. 王制] the States of the empire only amount to 1,713. For these reasons Ying-ta said we were not to take the 10,000 in the text literally. We can indeed only regard the 'myriad States' of the text as a great exaggeration; and we must take in the same way the statement in the 左傳, about the great Yu, that 'when he assembled the princes at mount T'oo, they came with their gins and silks from ten thousand States' (哀公七年—禹合諸侯於塗山執玉帛者萬國).

巡侯甸—see the figure of the tenures of Chow, on p. 149. Those of the Hsiang and the T'een were the first and second beyond the imperial domain. The critics seem to think that the king's progresses were not confined to them, but extended at least to the 'six tenures' immediately mentioned. 'These two are mentioned,' says Ying-ta, 'as being nearest to the imp. domain.' But why should we extend the meaning of the text in this way? There may have been good reasons, not recorded, why only the Hsiang and T'een tenures were inspected at this time.

四征弗庭—四方征討不庭之國. Ying-ta says the king had only smitten the Hsue tribes, and the statement here that his punitive expeditions had extended on every side is an exaggeration like that in 'myriad regions.' Here again our best way is simply to take the text as we find it.

弗庭—弗來庭者, as in the translation. Gau-k'ue takes 庭—直, a meaning which the character has, but which does not seem so appropriate here.

兆人—comp. Pl. III., Bk. III. p. 5. 六服—the Chow dyn. had nine *fa*, or ten, including the imp. domain. By the 'six tenures' here are probably to be understood the Hsiang, T'een, Nan, Ts'ao, Wei, mentioned in the 1st par. of the 'Announcement about L'ü,' and the imp. domain. There is much discussion on the point among the critics, however;—see Liu Che-k'ue *in loc.*

官。若昔大猷。治邦于未亂。制保邦于未危。唐虞稽古。建官惟百。內有百揆。四岳外。州牧侯伯。

- 2 II. The king said, "It was the grand method of former times to regulate the government while there was no confusion, and to
3 secure the country while there was no danger." He said, "Yaou and Shun studied antiquity, and established a hundred officers. At court there were the General Regulator, and the *President* of the Four Eminences. Abroad there were the Pastors of the provinces, and the princes of States. Thus the various departments of

羣辟—諸侯 承德—奉
承周德, 'honoured and received (= acknowledged) the virtue of the House of Chow.'

歸于宗周—where did the king return from? This announcement, occurring here, affords some ground for Ying-ta's view, that the king made a progress not only through the How and Teen tenures, but through all the others. By 宗周 it would seem that we should understand Woo's capital of Haou;—see on Bk. III, p. 1. There king Ching continued to have his residence, notwithstanding the duke of Chow's wish that he should remove to the new city of Lâ. The prefatory notice, however, says that the king returned to Fung, which had been the capital of Wan. The various methods by which it has been attempted to harmonize the two statements may be seen in Lin Che-k'e. He himself approves of the view of Ch'in Shaou-nan,—that king Ching first came to Haou, 'the honoured city of Chow' in the text, and there deliberated and determined on the various arrangements for the officers; and that then, before the public proclamation of them, he went to Fung, to announce the intended measure in the temple of king Wan. 董正

治官—督正治事之官, 'strictly managing the rectification of the officers administering the affairs of government.'

Ch. II. Pp. 2-4. FIRST PART OF THE KING'S ADDRESS:—THE PREJUDICES OF FORMER DYNASTIES, AND HIS OWN ANXIETY TO DISPLAY A SIMILAR WISDOM.

2. 若昔大猷—
Gan-k'wô gives for this—當順古大道, 'we ought to accord with (= to follow) the great method of antiquity.' It is better to take 若 with Lin Che-k'e, as an introductory particle, so that 若昔 simply—在昔, 'anciently.' Ts'ue understands the phrase thus. He is wrong, however, I think, in his interpreta-

tion of 大猷 as—大道之世, as if it were in apposition with 若昔, and the whole meant—'in ancient times, the age when right principles greatly prevailed.' Gaubil takes the passage thus, and appears to think that some great meaning lies hid in it. He translates—'Anciently, in the time *de la grande loi*, good government consisted in preventing troubles, and in preserving the kingdom without danger,' adding in a note, 'We see that the time of the *grand loi* is a time of innocence: the troubles and the dangers of States come not till after this time. I believe that king Ching means to say that innocence of manners and public tranquillity are the basis of good government. The commentaries give here no light on the text.' The text is really sufficiently plain, 若昔

大猷—'The grand method of former times was this:—'. The next par. illustrates how this method was carried out by Yaou and Shun, and Yu, and T'ang. When they had brought peace about in their distracted empires, they proceeded to secure it by the ordering of their official system. And Ching, having got the empire tranquillized at length, would now go on to imitate their example.

3. 唐虞稽古.—for 唐 and 虞 see on the names of Pt. I, and II. Yaou and Shun are intended, and it seems better to give those well-known names in the translation. Medhurst for 稽古 gives—'examined the records of antiquity.' But a statement so remarkable should not be supplemented. Gaubil observes that 'these two sovereigns, it may be inferred, had certain sources of knowledge, that is to say, some history, of the times anterior to theirs.' The expression may lead us to infer so, but I have not introduced the inference into the version. Gaubil adds:—'The author of the 左傳 speaks of the officers of Hwang-ta, and of Shaou-haou, who reigned before Yaou. Confucius, in his commentaries on the Yü King,

庶政惟和萬國
咸寧夏商官倍
亦克用乂明王
立政不惟其官
惟其人○今予
小子祇勤于德
夙夜不逮仰惟
前代時若訓迪
厥官○立太師

government went on harmoniously, and the myriad States all enjoyed repose. In the dynasties of Hea and Shang, the number of officers was doubled, and they continued able to secure good government. Those intelligent kings, in establishing their government, cared not so much about the number of the offices as about the men. Now I, who am a little child, cultivate with reverence my virtue, concerned day and night about my deficiencies. I look up to those former dynasties, and seek to conform to them, while I instruct and direct you, all my officers.

speaks of Fuh-he, of Shin-nung, and of Hwang-te, as of princes of an earlier date. This subject will be found touched on in the prolegomena.

內有至侯伯—*for* 百揆, see on the 'Canon of Shun,' p. 2.

四岳—see on the 'Can. of Yaou,' p. 11; *et al.* 州牧—see on the 'Can. of Shun,' p. 16. Ts'ao takes

侯伯 as—'the chiefs of the princes of States;' and Ying-ta identified them with the

五長, mentioned in the 'Yü and Tz'ü,' p. 8. Much preferable to either of these views is that

of Lin Che-k'o, that the 侯 and 伯 are two of the five orders of feudal princes, among whom the provinces were divided,—two specified

for the whole 庶政惟和—comp.

庶績咸熙, 'Can. of Shun,' p. 27.

Medhurst translates 亦克用乂 by 'and yet they were enabled to maintain order,' as if it were surprising that they should be able to do so with two hundred officers instead of one hundred. We ought not to suppose any adversative force in 亦. Lin Che-k'o appears to have had an impression of the meaning similar to that of Dr. Medhurst, for he writes of the officers of Hea and Shang being double the number of those of Yaou and Shun, and of those of the Chow dyn. being still more numerous (amounting to 300), because men were more able in the

earlier times. It is strange that it did not occur to him that, as the population grew with the lapse of time, the number of officers was necessarily increased.

明王至末—Lin Che-k'o joined this to the next par., and understood it as a general remark about 'intelligent kings,' with which Ching prefaces the account of his own arrangements. It is better to understand the remark as applying to Yaou and Shun, Yu and Tang. The gist of it is, that these sovereigns were not anxious to have the show of many offices, but to get right men. Ts'ao says:—明王立政不惟其官之多, 惟其得人而已.

4. 祇勤于德—'reverently medulous about my virtue.' 逮—及 'to reach to.'

夙夜不逮—夙夜常恐有所不及. We must suppose that he measured his deficiencies with reference to the standard of Yaou, and the other 'intelligent monarchs.'

仰惟前代時(是)若(順)—予仰承前代之明王, 惟奉順不違, 'I look up to those intelligent monarchs of former dynasties, seeking to honour them and conform to them, and not to act contrary to their example.' 訓迪厥官,—to lesson and lead the officers.

太傅、太保、
茲惟三公、
論道經邦、
變理陰陽、
官不必備、
惟其人。○
少師、少傅、
少保、曰三
孤、貳公弘
化、寅亮天

- 5 III. "I appoint the Grand Tutor, the Grand Assistant, and the Grand Guardian. These are the three *Kung*. They discourse of the principles of reason, and adjust the States; harmonizing *also* and regulating the operations of Heaven and Earth. These offices need not *always* be filled:—there must *first* be the men for them.
- 6 "I appoint the Junior Tutor, the Junior Assistant, and the Junior Guardian. These are called the three *Koo*. They assist

Ch. III. Pp. 5—14. THE SECOND PART OF THE KING'S ADDRESS, GIVING THE PRINCIPAL OFFICIAL AND GOVERNMENTAL ARRANGEMENTS UNDER THE NEW DYNASTY. 5, 6. The three *Kung*, and three *Koo*. We cannot well translate 公 and 孤 in these parts. Medhurst calls the 三公, 'three dukes,' and the 三孤, 'three conspicuous ones.' But the terms are here as names of office, and not of nobility. We may suppose that the *Kung* were so called with reference to the public spirit and freedom from all selfishness which 公 denotes. The dict. says the *Koo* were so named to show that, though they were assistant to the *Kung*, they were not to be considered as subordinate officers of their departments. Gan-kwé's account of the name is somewhat similar.—孤, 特也. 卑於公尊於卿. 特置此三者. When it is said—I appoint the Grand Tutor, &c. (立大師云云), we are not to understand that these names and the offices belonging to them were first constituted by king (Shing). From Pt. IV., Book XI., we see that they were in existence in the time of the Shang dyn. King Wan had 太公 for grand Tutor, and under Woo that office was exercised by the duke of Chow, while the duke of Shao was Grand Protector or Guardian. The meaning must be, that the offices were now more definitely declared a part of the governmental system of the Chow dynasty. Lin Che-kwé is of opinion that little is to be gained by attempting curiously to define the names 師、傅、保 and distinguish them from one another. Kea K'wei (賈逵) held that 保 had reference to the preservation of the person; 傅, to aiding in virtue and righteousness; and 師, to the guidance of instructions. Gan-kwé said that (the 師 was the

emperor's pattern; the 傅, his helper; and the 保, his sustainer in virtue and righteousness. The renderings in the translation cannot be far from the exact meaning. The business of the three *Kung* was 論道經邦變理陰陽. By 道 we are to understand all principles of reason and truth,—all the *cosmos* or *ways*, which it was proper for the emperor to pursue. The effect of the *Kung's* discoursing on these with him would be seen in the States of the empire, in the govt. of which there would be no disorder. It would be seen also in the harmony of all the elements of nature, and the material prosperity which was dependent on them. This seems to be what is intended by 'harmonizing and regulating the Yin and Yang.' On the two characters 陰 and 陽, which occur with their mystical application nowhere else in the Shoo, it may be sufficient here to give the note of Gaubil:—Chinese books are filled with these two characters. In their natural sense 陽 signifies "clear," "light," and 陰, "obscure," "darkness." In Chinese Physics 陽 is "movement," or the principle of movement; and 陰 is "repose," or the principle of repose. The moral and metaphorical applications of the terms are infinite, and extend to whatever is susceptible of them more or less, whether in Physics or in Morals. The sense of this paragraph is that all goes well in the empire; that the laws are in vigour; that commerce flourishes; that there are no public calamities; that the seasons are not deranged. I believe that the meaning is not more than what Gaubil says. The remarks of Wang Kang-yan are quite express on the point:—變理陰陽, 別無他道, 惟區處人事, 各得其宜, 則天地之氣自順, 故堯舜在上, 而天災滅熄. (This is a sad mis-

海。均。百。治。掌。冢。人。予。地。 ○。四。官。統。邦。宰。○。一。弼

the *Kung* to diffuse widely all transforming influences; they with reverence display brightly the powers of heaven and earth:—assisting me, the one man.

- 7 "I appoint the prime minister, who presides over the ruling of the empire, has the general management of all other officers, and secures

representation]. 庶政太和在夏懋德而罔有天災考其所爲不過咨四岳九官十二牧分任庶政使人各遂其性而已初未嘗特設變陰陽之官亦未聞別有變理陰陽之政云云。See my remarks on 'The Doctrine of the Mean,' L. 5; et al. 官不必備惟其人—the meaning of this is briefly and clearly given by one of the brothers Ch'ing—不得其人而居之不若闕之之愈也。"II the right men cannot be got to put in these positions, it is better to leave them unoccupied."

貳公弘化寅亮天地—貳公, 'seconding' (=helping) the *Kung*. 天地 correspond to 陰陽 in the former par. Tsou-hên says that 'Heaven and Earth are used with regard to the visible forms of those bodies or powers, and 陰 and 陽 with regard to their 氣, or operating energy.' Gauthier is wrong when he would understand 'religion' by 'Heaven' and 'government' by 'Earth.'

[I have stated, in the introductory note from Ts'ao, the objection taken against the genuineness of this Book, from the Chow Le's saying nothing about the duties of the three *Kung* and three *Kao*. But the existence and exalted dignity of these offices is referred to repeatedly in the Chow Le. For instance, Bk. XXI, p. 3, commences—王之三公八命其卿六命, which declares the existence of the *Kung*, and intimates their superiority in rank to the executive ministers of the government. Par. 22 of Book XXXVI, again, gives the *Kao* likewise precedence of those ministers. —左九棘孤卿大夫位焉羣士在其後右九棘公侯伯子男位焉羣吏在其後面三槐三公位焉州長衆

庶在其後. The Chow Le therefore is not silent on these great ministers, as we might suppose from what Ts'ao says. It only does not treat of them separately, defining their duties, and enumerating the officers in their departments. But they were not the heads of departments. They composed the emperor's cabinet or privy council. Biot calls them, happily—'les conseillers auliques,' and 'les vice-conseillers.' They were the prototypes of the 內閣, or 'Inner Council' of the present day. It did not belong to the plan of the Chow Le to speak of them more fully than it does.

But if we could not thus account for the little that is said about them in that Work, the inference would be against it, and not against this Book. There can be no doubt as to the genuineness of the first half of par. 3. If all the rest of the Book be forged, so much—立太師, 太傅, 太保, 茲惟三公—has come to us with the guarantee of Ch'ing Heuen; and even K'ang Shing edits it as a veritable fragment of 'The Officers of Chow.'

Ep. 7—12. The six chief ministers of the executive. Only the minister is mentioned, but in every case we are to understand that he was the head of a department with many subordinate officers. There is a close correspondence between those six departments of Chow, and the 'six Boards' (六部) by which the govt. of the empire is now administered.

7. 冢 (—大) 宰, —the great or prime governor. The name was as old as the Shang dynasty, for we find it applied to E Yin, Pt. IV, Bk. IV, p. 1. This was the office of the duke of Chow (see Bk. XVII, p. 1), who united with it the dignity of 'Grand Tutor.' The 冢宰 is 'the officer of Heaven' (天官) of the Chow Le, and is represented now by the 'Board of Civil Office' (吏部). He was superior to all the other great ministers, and was called 'their Head' (六卿之首). This difference between him and them is intimated, I think, by the 統百官, 'has the general management of all the officers.' This is probably what is intended by the difficult clause in Pt. IV, Bk. IV, p. 1. 百官總已以聽冢宰

司平政司和禮宗擾教司
寇邦統馬上治伯兆敷徒
掌國六掌下神掌民五掌
邦○師邦○人邦○典邦

- 8 an uniformity throughout all within the four seas: the minister of Instruction, who presides over the education of the empire, inculcates the duties attaching to the five relations of society, and trains
9 to obedience the people: the minister of Religion, who presides over the ceremonies of the empire, attends to the service of the spirits
10 and manes, and makes a harmony between high and low; the minister of War, who presides over the military administration of the empire, commands the six hosts, and secures the tranquillity
11 of all the States: the minister of Crime, who presides over the prohibitions of the empire, searches out the villainous and secretly

must understand 立, from p. 5, at the commencement of this and the other part. The 邦 in them is also to be taken as = 邦國,

'the empire.' 8. 司徒, — the superintendent of the multitudes, perhaps with a reference to the meaning of 徒 as 'disciples.' This officer was as old as the time of Shun; — see the 'Can. of Shun,' p. 19. He is the 'officer of Earth' (地官) of the Chow Le. His department seems to merge in that of the present 'Board of Rites,' for we can hardly identify it with the 'Board of Revenue' (戶部).

敷五典, — comp. 敬敷五教, 'Can. of Shun,' p. 19. 擾一安, 'to tranquillize.'

Ts'ao for 擾兆民 gives 馴擾兆民之不順者而使之順. 8.

宗伯 — this office was also as old as the time of Shun. See 'Can. of Shun,' p. 24; which supplies an explanation of the name 宗伯.

as 宗廟官長, 'chief officer of the ancestral temple.' Otherwise, we might translate it by — 'The reverend,' 'The very reverend.' He was the 'officer of the Spring' (春官) of the Chow Le; and his department now is that of the Board of Rites (禮部), which also absorbs in a great measure the functions of the 'minister of Instruction,' as I have observed. 治

神人 — the 掌建邦之天神地祇人鬼之禮, 'manages the ceremonies to be paid to the spirits of Heaven, of Earth, and of

Men,' of the Chow Le. Grunil says: — 'Il s'agit des ceremonies religieuses pour les esprits, et des civiles pour les hommes morts.' One cannot restrain a smile at the distinction which he introduces between the ceremonies, as here

'religious,' and there only 'civil!' 和上下, — all festive, funeral, and other ceremonies, as well as those of sacrifice, came under the 宗

伯, who had therefore to define the order of rank, precedence, &c. This is what is intended by the 'high and low' of the text. 10.

司馬, — Ts'ao says that 'no arm of warlike measures is more important than the cavalry, and hence the minister of War was called "master of the Horse"' (軍政莫急於馬故以司馬名官). This minister does not appear among the officers of Shun. He is the 'officer of Summer' (夏官) of the Chow Le, and appears in the 'Board of War' (兵部) of the present day. 掌邦政,

— 'handles the govt. of the empire.' But the same might be said of every other minister; — why is the name of 'government' used only in connection with the minister of War? Ts'ao says: — 'Military measures are used to punish and to unite, — to correct the evil-doers; they are the greatest of the measures of imperial govt.' (戎政用以征伐而正彼之不正, 王政之大者). 六師, — see on 'The Punitive Expedition of Yin,' p. 1.

11. 司寇, — 'manager of banditti' (羣行攻劫曰寇). Kao-yao was Shun's minister of Crime, though he was only called 士; see the 'Can. of Shun,' p. 20. There is

禁誅姦慝刑
暴亂。○司空^{十二箇}
掌邦土居四
民時地利。○
六卿分職各
率其屬以倡
九牧阜成兆
民。○六年^{十四箇}
服一朝又六

- wicked, and punishes oppressors and disturbers of the peace: and the
12 minister of Works, who presides over the land of the empire, settles
the four classes of the people, and regulates the seasons for obtain-
ing the advantages of the ground.
13 "These six ministers, with their different duties, lead on their
subordinates, and set an example to the nine pastors of the provinces,
enriching and perfecting the condition of the millions of the people.
14 In six years the chiefs of the five tenures attend once at court. When
this has been done a second six years, the king makes his tours of

now the 'Board of Punishments' (刑部). But the text says that the minister of Crime 'handled the prohibitions of the empire.' 'He is so described,' observes Ch'in King, 'to show the benevolent purpose of punishments, as instituted to deter men from doing evil.' This minister was 'the officer of Autumn' (秋官) of the Chow

Lo. 12. 司空—the minister of Works. He was the 'officer of Winter' (冬官) of the Chow Lo, the portion of which relating to his department was unfortunately lost, though the scholars of the Han dynasty have endeavoured to supply it. The present 'Board of Works' (工部) corresponds to this minister, and his functions. In the 'Canon of Shun' we have the name of 司空, and also of 共工, which appears to have been the more ancient designation;—see the 'Can. of Yaou,' p. 16. 司空 may be translated—'overseer of the unoccupied lands. Kin Lo-t'ang says:—'The 司空 was the minister who managed unoccupied grounds (空土), dividing and defining them in preparation for the investiture of ministers; for donations to officers; for assignment as fields to husbandmen, shops to mechanics, and stances to traffickers. All the ground unapportioned was under his management; once apportioned, the minister of War, and the minister of Instruction had then to do with it.' See the 集說. 居四民,—settles the four

classes of the people, i.e., arranges that scholars or officers, farmers, workers, and merchants

shall all live in the places best adapted for them.

時地利.—'times the advantages of the earth.' This would seem to imply that different operations might be required at different times, and that changes and removals of settlements might come to be desirable,—all to be done by the advice and authority of the minister of Works.

Pp. 13, 14. Relation of the six ministers to the pastors of the provinces; and rule for imperial progresses, and appearances of the various princes at court.

13. 各率其屬.—each one leads on those belonging to his department. The subordinates of each department amounted, in theory, to sixty. As the Chow Lo exists, however, the dept. of the prime minister has 63 officers; that of the minister of Instruction, 76; that of the minister of Religion, 69; that of the minister of War, 69; and that of the minister of Crime, 65. The excess in each, it is supposed, belonged originally to the officers of the dept. of the minister of Works, the account of which is commonly believed to be lost. See the work of Ch'in Sze-k'ue in loc.

以倡九牧.—'to go before—be an example to—the nine pastors.' We do not learn from the Shoo how communications were maintained between the six ministers at the imperial court and the pastors of provinces.

14. 六年至又六年.—in the Chow Lo, Bk. XXXVIII., it is said that the princes of the How tenures appeared at court every year; those of the Toen, every two years; of the Nan, every three years; of the Ts'ao, every four years; of the Wei, every five years; and of the Yaou, every six years. This seems a different arrangement from that described in the text. The text mentions five

年王乃時巡考制
 度于四岳諸侯各
 朝于方岳大明黜
 陟○王曰嗚呼凡
 我有官君子欽乃
 攸司慎乃出令令
 出惟行弗惟反以
 公滅私民其允懷
 ○學古入官議事
 以制政乃不迷其

inspection in the four seasons, and examines the regulations and measures at the four mountains. The princes attend on him, each at the mountain of his quarter, and promotions and degradations are awarded with great intelligence."

- 15 IV. The king said, "Oh! all ye men of virtue, my occupiers of office, pay reverent attention to your charges, and be careful of the commands you issue; for, once issued, they must be carried into effect and not be retracted. By your public feeling extinguish all selfish aims, and the people will have confidence in you, and be gladly obedient.
- 16 Study antiquity in order to enter on your offices: In deliberating on affairs, determine by help of such study, and your arts of government

tenures and not six;—perhaps the Yaou tenure was too distant, and too little reduced to the order of the nearer domains, to be made much account of in king Ching's time. The text of the Shoo and of the Chow Le so far agree, that in six years the princes from all the tenures had appeared at court. They differ in this, that the text would appear to make the princes to appear there only once, whereas, acc. to the other authority, all but those of the Yaou tenure would have appeared repeatedly. The interpretation must be strained either in the one case or the other, to make the two accounts agree. 王乃時巡以下, Compare parr. 8, 9. Shun's progresses were made every five years, and the nobles all appeared during the intermediate ones. As the empire and its population grew, it was found necessary to separate the progresses by a longer interval.

Ch. IV. Pp. 15—20. THIRD PART OF THE ADDRESS:—VARIOUS EXHORTATIONS TO THE MINISTERS AND OFFICERS AS TO THE WAY IN WHICH THEY SHOULD DISCHARGE THEIR DUTIES.

15. How they should attend to their offices, especially in the matter of issuing orders, and in putting away all selfishness. 君子 is best

taken here as 有德之稱; the king thus shows his respect for his officers. 欽乃

攸司—敬汝所主之職 慎
 乃出令—what commands are we to under-
 stand by 令 here? Most critics take them
 as 'governmental notifications' (國家政
 令), but I cannot think so. Such orders
 would go forth as from the sovereign himself.
 I understand the commands here, with Leu
 Tsao-hsien, as orders to be issued by superior
 officers to their subordinates; to which I would
 add notices by any of them to the people under
 their jurisdiction. 令出惟行弗

惟反—反—回還, 'to return,' 'to come
 back.' It is here nearly equal to our 'to retract.'
 The difficulty is with the 惟, especially in 弗
 惟反. Ts'ao gives 欲 for it in both cases.
 一令出欲其行不欲其壅逆
 而不行. There seems no better way of
 dealing with it. 民其允懷—民

莫不敬信懷服. 15. The necessity
 of study—of acquainting themselves with the past
 and the present—in order to their discharge of
 their duties. 學古至不迷—學古

爾典常作之師，無以利口亂厥官，蓄疑敗謀，怠忽荒政，不學牆面，蒞事惟煩。○戒爾卿士，功崇惟志，業廣惟勤，惟克果斷，乃罔後艱。○位不期，祿不期，侈恭驕。

will be free from error. Make the regular statutes of our dynasty your rule, and do not with artful speeches introduce disorder into your offices. To accumulate doubts is the way to ruin your plans; to be idle and indifferent is the way to ruin your government. Without study, you stand facing a wall, and your management of affairs will be full of trouble.

- 17 I caution you, my high nobles, exalted merit depends on the high aim, and a patrimony is enlarged only by diligence. It is by means of bold decision that future difficulties are avoided.
18 With rank, pride comes unperceived, and extravagance in the

而入官; it is, no doubt, to these words that Tze-ch'ien, the minister of Ch'ing, refers in the 左傳襄二十一年, when he says—僑聞學而後入政, 未聞以政學者也. In illustration of the advice, comp. Bk. IX, p. 5. The clause 議事以制 seems also to be quoted in the 左傳昭六年, in connection with the same Tze-ch'ien. 其爾至厥官.

—by 典常 we are to understand the statutes of the existing dynasty. The 'Daily Explanation' expands 其爾典常作之師 clearly, though rather lengthily:—然天下事有宜于古而未即宜于今者, 又當以本朝為法, 如周公之典常也, 爾大祗遵先王典常, 祇遵先王典常, 祇遵先王典常, 祇遵先王典常. We may compare with the sentiment that in 'The Charge to the viscount of Wei,' p. 4, 率由典常.

利口.—Ts'ao thinks the 'sharp mouths' are those of the officers themselves; Wang K'ang-

yay thinks they are those of others to whom suggestions the officers listen. What is said in 'The Charge to Chung of Ts'ao,' p. 7, may be pleaded to determine in favour of either view, —無作聰明亂舊章, 罔以側言敗厥度. 不學牆面.—comp. Gen. Ann., XVII, x. 17. The necessity of a high aim, of diligence, and of decision.

This advice (and we may suppose, with Ts'ao, the others that follow also) is addressed to the 卿士, 'the chief ministers and officers;' but we need not confine its application to them.

Gan-k'wō says:—此戒凡有官位, 但言卿士, 舉其掌事者, 功崇惟志, —this may be expressed by 功以志崇, or 崇功在志, or 功之所以崇乃志, &c. I call attention to this to illustrate the use of the 惟, which may be called the particle *per antea* of the Shoo.

Choo He illustrates the sentiment by 斷以不疑, 鬼神避之, 需者事之, 賊也. This last expression is from the 左傳. We say—Procrastination is the thief of time; the Chinese say—Procrastination is the thief of business. 18. Against pride and extravagance, 位不期驕, —see, for the

儉惟德無載爾僞
作德心逸日休作
僞心勞日拙○居
寵思危罔不惟畏
弗畏入畏○推賢
讓能庶官乃和不
和政厖舉能其官
惟爾之能稱匪其
人惟爾不任○王

- same way with emolument. Let reverence and economy be *real* virtues, and do not show them in your affairs with hypocrisy. Practise them as virtues, and your minds will be at ease, and you will daily become more admirable. Practise them in hypocrisy, and your minds will be toiled, and you will daily become more stupid.
- 19 In the enjoyment of favour think of peril, and never be without a cautious apprehension. He who is without such apprehension
- 20 finds himself amidst what is to be feared. Push forward the worthy, and give place to the able, and harmony will prevail among all your officers. When they are not harmonious, the government becomes a tangled confusion. If those whom you advance are able for their offices, the ability is yours. If you advance improper men, then you are not equal to your duty."

meaning of 期 on 期于子治, in 'The Counsels of Yu,' p. 11. The cure for pride is 'reverence' (恭), akin to what we call 'self-respect.' If a man feel that he is in himself above his rank he will not be lifted up by it. Similarly, the cure for extravagance is 'economy' (儉). But this reverence and economy must be real, and not assumed.—true virtues. This is the meaning of 恭儉惟德無載爾僞, 'Reverence (the cure for pride) and economy (the cure for extravagance) must be truly virtuous, and not merely conveyances (=carriages to convey) for your hypocrisy.' I cannot do anything better than this with the 載. Mencius probably had this passage in view, when he wrote 恭儉豈可以聲音笑貌爲哉. (IV. Pt. I., xvi).

19. In prosperity think of adversity. 居寵思危—comp. in 'The T'ao-k'ia, Pt. III., p. 6, 無安厥位惟危 We find the

text quoted in the 左傳襄十一年 with 安 for 寵. We may take the 惟 in 惟畏 = 思, according to the construction of the T'ao-k'ia, L.c. 弗畏入畏—不知祇畏則入于可畏之中. Shin She-hing observes that 'the first two 畏 intend the apprehension of the mind, while the last indicates the calamity of overthrow and disgrace.' 20. How it would be for their own good and the public advantage to advance the meritorious. The first four characters—推賢讓能, are found in Seun K'ing. 仲尼篇. 讓能, 'yield—show complaisance—to the able.' 政厖, —the 說文 defines 厖 by 石大貌 'the appearance of a great rock.' The meaning of 亂, 'confusion,' is commonly given to it here. 舉能其官—所舉者能修其官

無萬康乃政亂爾大三曰
 斃邦兆辟以爾有夫事鳴
 惟民永佑有官敬暨呼

- 21 V. The king said, "Oh! ye charged with the threefold business of government, and ye great officers, reverently attend to your departments, and conduct well your affairs of government, so as to assist your sovereign, and secure the lasting happiness of the millions of the people:—so shall there be no dissatisfaction among the myriad States."

Ch. V. P. 21. THE END OF THE ADDRESS:—THE HAPPY AND PERMANENT RESULTS OF THE MINISTERS AND OFFICERS ACTING AS THEY WERE EXHORTED.

三事,—see last Book, p. 7. The 'six ministers are intended by the phrase; but how to classify them as the 任人, 準夫, and 牧 respectively, I do not know. By 大夫 are intended all the subordinate officers of the six departments.

亂 爾有政—亂 is evidently —治. Wang

Kang-yay says that the last clause, 萬邦惟無斃 is inexplicable. The 無斃 = describing the feeling of the people to the officers, is inadmissible, he thinks, and he cannot construe the 惟. But there are many more difficult passages in the Shoo. I do not think the meaning is that the States would never be wearied of the officers, but that they would never be weary of the dynasty sustained by them in such a way.

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XXI. KEUN-CH'IN.

王^一陳^二德^三孝^四弟^五政^六茲^七哉^八
 若^九爾^十恭^{十一}友^{十二}克^{十三}命^{十四}東^{十五}郊^{十六}
 曰^{十七}君^{十八}陳^{十九}惟^{二十}爾^{二十一}令^{二十二}君^{二十三}
 昔^{二十四}周^{二十五}敬^{二十六}尹^{二十七}有^{二十八}兄^{二十九}惟^{三十}令^{三十一}君^{三十二}

- 1 I. The king spake to the following effect, "Keun-ch'in, it is you who are possessed of excellent virtue, filial and respectful. Being filial, and friendly with your brethren, you can display those qualities in the exercise of government. I appoint you to rule this eastern frontier. Be reverent!

Isauroccroast Note. Keun-ch'in was the successor, in 'the eastern capital,' of the duke of Chow, who henceforth passes off the stage of the Shoo, which he has occupied so long. Between the 'Officers of Chow' and the 'Keun-ch'in' there were two Books, which are both lost. The loss of the second we must much deplore, for it contained an account of the death of the duke of Chow, and an announcement made by king Ching at his bier. The duke died in Fung, the capital of his father Wan, and, dying, signified his wish to be buried at Ching-chow, which he had built and watched over. The place was dear to him; but his wishes in regard to it were always to be disappointed. He had sought to make it the capital of the dynasty, but king Ching would not leave Hann. He now wished that his dust should rest in its soil, but the king chose rather to have him buried in Poih, the cemetery of their House (in the peas district of Han-yang, dep. of Se-ngan). The object, according to Sze-ma Tseu, was to honour him. He says that 'the king buried him in Poih, near by king Wan, to show that he did not presume to look on the duke as a minister.'

I do not know the statesman of any nation with whom his countrymen need shrink from comparing him. But this is not the place for writing either his history or his eulogium; I only wish, before passing on with the translation of the Shoo, to consider the claim which has been advanced for him to the invention of the mariner's compass. Gaubil held that he was versed both in astronomy and geometry, and says expressly that the use of the compass was known to him;—see 'Le Chou-king,' p. 214, note 4. The common opinion of the Chinese is that not only was the use of the instrument known to him, but that he discovered it. In the chapter on 'Inventions' (制作), in the 幼學故事尋源, or 'Inquiries into ancient things for the use of Learners,' it is said—'The duke of Chow made the south-pointing chariot, which has come down to us in the form of the mariner's compass' (周公作指南車羅盤是其遺制).

The circumstances under which he is said to have made this instrument may be given first in the narrative of P. De Maille, in his 'Histoire Generale de la Chine,' pp. 316—318. When I

The duke of Chow was undoubtedly one of the greatest men whom China has produced, and

subjoin the sources of his narrative, the reader will see how the history has been compiled, and whether we can put faith in the things related. F. De Mailla says:—This same sixth year of his reign, king Ching, after having established his different officers, received the news that the ambassadors of a foreign kingdom, called Yü-tehang-tchi (越裳氏), were come to bring him presents and do him homage. This kingdom, situated to the south of the country of Kiso-tchi (交趾) or Cochín-china, had never sent anybody to China. The emperor gave orders that the ambassadors should be conducted to the court, and that great honours should everywhere be paid to them. This prince (the king, or the duke of Chow) received them very well, treated them with distinction, and accepted their presents, among which was a white pheasant,—a species heretofore unknown; after which he made the inquiry be put to them on what business they had come. They replied by interpreters, that the elders of their country said loudly, that for three years they had had neither winds nor tempest, no unseasonable rains nor great waves of the sea, and that there must be some special cause for such favour of Heaven; that apparently the throne of China was occupied by a sage emperor, who had procured for them these benefits.

After that, the duke conducted them to the ancestral temple of the reigning family, where he caused to be displayed on the one side the presents which they had brought, and on the other those which king Ching was sending to their prince. Among these were five chariots of a new invention. They accommodated the travellers, and indicated at the same time the route which they kept, by means of a small box, made in the form of a pavilion or dome, suspended from the roof, in which was a hand that always pointed to the south, to whatever side the chariots might turn. It was on this account that they were called Tchi-nan-tsi (指南車), or *chariot of the south*. This machine was very useful to the envoys of Yü-tehang-tchi, for when they were arrived at the kingdom of Fou-nan-lin, on the borders of the sea, they took to some bargues, and by means of this compass they needed only one year to return to their own kingdom.

Now, the Shoo does not contain, and never contained, any account of this embassy from Cochín-china, and I have searched in vain for any mention of it in Sze-ma Tse'en. The earliest mention of it is in Fuh-shang's 'Introduction to the Shoo' (尚書大傳). His account is the following:—

周公居攝六年，天下歸之。天子曰：『公其欲也。』黃帝之制禮作樂，重九譯，不令吾國以三象歸焉。施此吾國，成王不加施焉。吾國受命，不令吾國受命。

矣天之無別風淮雨，意者中國有聖人乎？有則盍往朝之。周公乃薦於宗廟。

In the sixth year of the duke of Chow's regency, he framed the ceremonial and official statutes of the dynasty, and made its music. The whole empire became harmonious and tranquil. At that time, ambassadors came from Yü-tehang, with three elephants, and interpreters speaking nine languages, and presented a white pheasant. King Ching put them in the hands of the duke of Chow, who said, "Where the benefits of his virtue have not been experienced, the superior man declines to receive gifts; and a sovereign does not acknowledge as his subjects those to whom he has not issued the orders of his govt.;—on what ground is it that this offering comes to us?" The ambassadors begged to say, "We come by the command of the elders of our kingdom. They said, 'For a long time there have been no unusual winds nor unseasonable rains in the sky. Is it not likely that there is a sage man in the middle kingdom? Why should you not go and pay homage at his court?'" On this the duke of Chow presented them in the ancestral temple.

It will be observed that in this account no mention is made of the 'south-pointing chariot.'

We come to Han Ying, not much later than Fuh-shang. In his 'Introduction to the Shoo King' (韓詩外傳), composed about the middle of the second century B.C., we have substantially the same account of the embassy from Yü-tehang, but with certain marvels which preceded it. He says:—

成王之時，禾秀，王公下越雒幽重見黃疾於三苗，貫桑而長，幾充物意，三至，遠達吾命，不也。始，三苗同也，九譯路之，公曰：『吾天被中於此。』盍往朝之。

In the time of king Ching, three stalks of grain grew through a mulberry tree and came out in one flowering head, which was almost large enough to fill a cart, and long enough to fill the box of it. The king said to the duke of Chow, "What is this thing?" The duke replied, "Three stalks growing into one head probably betoken that the empire is now at length becoming one." Sure enough, three years after, the ruler of Yü-tehang sent an embassy with

interpreters speaking nine different languages, which presented a white pheasant to the duke of Chow. The interpreters were necessary, because the distance was very great, with dark and deep mountains and rivers, so that the ambassadors might not be understood. The duke of Chow asked to what they were indebted for the offerings, when the interpreters said, "We received the command from the grey-haired men of our kingdom, who said, 'For long, even for three years, we have had neither violent winds nor disastrous rains, nor storms on the sea. We may believe that there is a sage in the middle kingdom;—why not go and present yourselves at his court?' This is the reason we are come."

I do not find this account in the Introduction of Hsu Ying, as it is now generally edited; but it is quoted continually in illustration of the embassy from Yü-chang;—see the **四**

書人名考, on the 'Life of the duke of Chow.' There seems to be no reason to doubt its having come from Hsu Ying; but it will be seen that neither does he make any mention of the 'south-pointing chariots.'

The earliest authority that I have found for connecting the duke of Chow and the embassy from Cochinchina with these chariots is the

中華古今注, a Work of the Tsin dynasty, the writer of which, after giving his opinion that the invention was due to Hwang-te, about 1,500 years anterior to the Chow dynasty! adds that Hsueh K'ien of the 'After Han,' attributed it to the duke of Chow. We read:—The duke having produced by his govt. a state of great tranquillity, the people of Yü-chang came with interpreters speaking different languages, and presented one white pheasant, two black pheasants, and the trunk of an elephant. The ambassadors being astray as to their road back, the duke gave them two pieces of ornamented and embroidered silk, and five light carriages, all made on the pattern of pointing to the south. The ambassadors were conveyed in these to the south, as far as the city Lin [probably the pres. Kwei-lin, metrop. of Kwang-se] of Foo-nan near the sea, so that in a year they reached their own country, &c. (後漢

恆建舊說云周公所作也。周公致治太平，越裳氏重譯來獻白雉一，黑雉二，象牙一，使者迷其歸路。周公錫以文錦二疋，輶車五乘，皆爲司南之制，使越裳氏載之以南，緣扶南林邑海際，基年而至其國云云。卷上，art. 大駕指南車。

My readers will probably be disposed with me to set down the embassy from Yü-chang as a mere legend, and the claim of the duke of Chow to be the inventor of the 'south-pointing chariot' as nothing better.

It is attributed to him under different circumstances in a fragment of the Works of **鬼谷**

子, 'The hero of Demon valley,' a Taoist character, somewhat later than Mencius, towards the end of the Chow dynasty. What he says, is that 'the prince of Suh-shin presented a white pheasant to king Wan. There being a fear lest he should lose his way on his return home, the duke of Chow made the south-pointing chariot to conduct him safely' (肅慎氏獻白

雉於文王，還恐迷路，周公因作指南車以送之。—see the **太平御覽**, 卷第七百七十五, art. 1.). Now, the Book of the Shoo which

immediately followed the 'Officers of Chow' was about the chief of Suh-shin; but the presumption from the prefatory notice is that it did not contain anything about the duke of Chow. It related, moreover, to a visit from that chief to king Ching, and not to king Wan.

Allusion has been made to the account which carries back the making of the south-pointing chariot to Hwang-te, more than 2,000 years before Christ. This is given by Sze-ma T'een.—Hwang-te was operating to put down a rebellious chief, called Ch'e-yew, who frustrated his measures for a time by enveloping the armies in clouds of mist, so that the emperor's men could not tell their position. Against this magical contrivance, Hwang-te made the chariots in question, and succeeded in taking the rebel alive. Later narrators ascribe the chariots to Hwang-te's empress; and there have been those who, forgetting the claims both of Hwang-te and the duke of Chow, have ascribed them to Kwan Chung, the chief counsellor of the duke Hwan of T'ie, in the 7th cent. B.C.;—see the **事物紀原**, 卷第二.

The general opinion among the Chinese, therefore, that the duke of Chow made the 'south-pointing chariot,' cannot be received as resting on a historical foundation. The 'south-pointing chariot' altogether may be called in question. The accounts of its construction as being drawn by four horses, with the wooden figure of a genius (木仙人) on the roof, are all fabulous;—see the **太平御覽**, i.e. It would be hard to say that the mariner's compass was the child of this chariot. The truth, I imagine, is this, that the Chinese got some knowledge of the compass—found it out themselves, or learned it from India—not long before the Christian era, and that then the fables about the making of south-pointing chariots in more ancient times were invented.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—**君陳**, 'Keun-ch'in.' T'wae says that this was the name of the minister; and as the Book contains the charge given to him, it is called after him. Others would translate the characters—'Prince Ch'in,' as we translate the title of Bk. XVI, by 'Prince Shih.' Thus Hsu Seon says—'He must have been invested with some principality as its ruler, on which account he is called **君**.'

公師保 萬民 懷其德 往慎乃司 厥常 懋昭周公 之訓 惟民其父。

- 2 II. "Formerly, the duke of Chow acted as teacher and guardian of the myriads of the people, who cherish the remembrance of his virtue. Go you, and with sedulous care undertake his charge; act in accordance with his regular ways, and exert yourself to illus-

Prince" (必封國爲君故稱君)

But as we know nothing of any principality with which this Keun-ch'in had anything to do, it is better to abide by the view of Ts'ao, in which he followed Gan-kwō.

Kang-shing supposed that Keun-ch'in was a son of the duke of Chow, a younger brother of Pih-k'in, but the evidence seems conclusive that this was not the case. The charge could hardly have been delivered without containing some reference to such a relation between Keun-ch'in and his predecessor. See in Lin Che-k'e, on the point. The Book is found only in the text of Gan-kwō.

CONTENTS. I take the summary of those which is given in the 'Complete Digest of Commentaries on the Shoo.'—The whole Book may be divided into three parts. The first, which is also the first par., contains the words of Keun-ch'in's appointment to the charge of the eastern capital. The concluding words,—"Be reverent," are specially emphatic, and give the key-note to all that follows. The second part contains par. 2-6, and enjoins on Keun-ch'in to exert himself to illustrate the lessons of the duke of Chow, and thereby transform the people of Yin. The third part, par. 7-14, further enjoins on him to give full development to these lessons, and adduces various particulars in which his doing so would appear,—all illustrative of the command at the commencement, that he should be reverent.

CH. I. P. 1. THE CHARGE TO KEUN-CH'IN, AND THE GROUND OF IT IN HIS PERSONAL EXCELLENCE.

惟爾至有政.—the 'filial piety and respectfulness' (孝恭) are the attributes which compose the 'excellent virtue' attributed to Keun-ch'in. Gan-kwō interprets 恭 wrongly as 'self-respect' (行己以恭). It is expanded, however, in the next clause into 友于兄弟 and is thus made to embrace both the respectfulness of the younger brother and the kindness of the elder. 克施有政.—'can be displayed in the possession (or by the possession) of gov't.' This sequel does not commend itself so readily to a foreigner as it does to the Chinese. A man, it seems to us, may be a good son and a good brother, and yet be but poorly fitted for the

duties of an administrator, while it is true that a bad son and a bad brother cannot be trusted to discharge the duties of any other relation. The doctrine of King Ching, however, is that of all Chinese authorities, ancient and modern,—compare 'The Great Learning,' Comm., ch. ix.

[This portion of the Keun-ch'in is quoted by Confucius, Ana. II, xxi.; but not to the letter. It would be absurd, however, to conclude from that that the text here is not genuine.]

By the 東郊, 'eastern border or frontier,' we are evidently to understand Ching-chow, 'the lower capital,' to which the people of Yin had been removed. Gaubil is quite wrong, when he would understand by 郊 here the sacrifice offered to Heaven, or the place of it. Ch'in San-k'ao gives the following statements:—"The imperial city formed a square of nine *li*. Outside the city was called the 郊. Fifty *li* off was called the "near 郊, or frontier," and a hundred *li* off was called the "remote frontier." Ching-chow would be in the "near frontier."

CH. II. Pp. 2-6. KEUN-CH'IN MUST FOLLOW THE EXAMPLE AND LESSON OF THE DUKE OF CHOW; MUST FEEL THE DIFFICULTY OF HIS DUTIES; SEEK THE COUNSEL OF OTHERS, BUT USE HIS OWN JUDGMENT; EVEN ASCRIBING HIS MEREY AND SUCCESS TO THE INFERIOR. 2. 師

保萬民.—'tutored and preserved the myriads of the people.' The myriads of the people were those of Yin who had been removed to Lo. —This is a very clear instance of the way in which such high-sounding phrases as 萬民 are employed. 往慎乃司.—from the 厥常 which follows, we must interpret 乃司 of the duke of Chow,—'其所司之職,' 'that which he was charged with.' Medhurst takes 乃 as —汝, 'you,' which is often so; but its usage in the Shoo permits us also to take the 乃司 as I propose. Ts'ao also takes it thus. 惟民其父.—則民

莫或不艱，有廢
有興，出入自爾
師虞，庶言同則
繹。○爾有嘉謀
嘉猷，則入告爾
后于內，爾乃順
之于外，曰：「斯
猷惟我后之
德，嗚呼！臣人咸
若時，惟良顯哉。」

- 5 "In revolving the plans of your government, never hesitate to acknowledge the difficulty of the subject. Some things have to be abolished, and some to be adopted:—going out and coming in, seek the judgment of your people about them; and when there is a general agreement, exert your own powers of reflection.
- 6 When you have any good plans or counsels, enter and lay them before your sovereign in his palace. Thereafter, when you are acting abroad in accordance with them, say, 'This plan or this view is all due to our sovereign.' Oh! if all ministers were to act thus, how excellent would they be, and how distinguished!"

民似之云云。 5. 圖厥政。

—'planning your govt.' The 爾, lower down, shows that we are to take 厥 in the second person. Compare the same expression in Bk. XVIII, pp. 15, 16. 莫或不艱 may

be taken imperatively, as in the translation, or indicatively, 'there will perhaps always be difficulties.' 出入自爾師虞—

the 出入 seem to trouble the critics considerably. Ying Yung (應鑄) says on them:—

出上之意以達之下，入下之言以達之上，'giving out the views of the sovereign to make them known to the people; bringing in the words of the people to make them known to the sovereign;' comp. on the 'Can. of Shun,' p. 35. Chin Ts'ayew says—出謀之國人入謀之左右，'going out, consider the matters with the people; coming in, consider them with your associates.' But we may very well translate the terms literally, and consider the meaning as—'always and everywhere.' 師—衆，

'all,' 'the multitude of the people.' 虞—度，'to calculate,' 'to consider.' 言

同則繹—'when their words agree, then unroll the matter,' (i.e., come to your own deci-

sion. Compare 克由繹之, Bk. XIX, p. 19. Gao-kwo gives for 繹 here—陳而布之—'not so well.

[In the *Lo Yu*, Bk. 繹衣, p. 12, we find the words quoted from 'The Keun-ch'in,'—出入自爾師虞，庶言同， the concluding 則繹 being omitted.]

6. 謀 is defined by Ts'ao as 言切於事，'words important to business;' and 猷 as 言合於道，'words agreeing with reason.' The 'plans' and 'counsels' of the translation seem to correspond to the characters. Of 良顯 it is said—良以德言，顯以名言，'良 has reference to virtue; 顯 to fame.'

The critics take different views of king Ching's requirement in this par., that he should himself have all the credit of Keun-ch'in's wisdom and successes. Some, like a 葛氏, quoted by Ts'ao, see in it a disclosure of the king's weakness and vanity. Others would make the king be speaking of Keun-ch'in's ways in the past.—'When you had good plans and counsels, you entered,' &c. This construction is not natural; and besides it would not much lighten the conclusion as to the king's unjust vanity. Many critics endeavour to

弗若于汝政弗
 宥惟厥中○
 予曰宥爾惟勿辟
 曰辟爾惟勿辟
 ○殷民在辟予
 有制從容以和
 倚法以削寬而
 無依勢作威無
 惟弘周公丕訓
 ○王曰君陳爾

- 7 III. The king said, "Keun-ch'in, do you give their full development to the great lessons of the duke of Chow. Do not rely on your power to exercise oppression; do not rely on the laws to practise extortion. Be gentle, but with strictness of rule. Promote harmony by the display of an easy forbearance.
- 8 "When any of the people of Yin are amenable to the laws, if I say 'Punish,' do not you therefore punish; and if I say 'Spare,'
- 9 do not you therefore spare. Seek the due course. Those who are disobedient to your government, and uninfluenced by your instruc-

make it out that the king is only laying down what ministers should do, with a lofty superiority to the imputation of vanity to which it might subject himself! The truth is, king Ch'ing was but a very ordinary man.

[The whole of this par. is found, quoted from 'The Keun-ch'in,' in the *Le Ka*, Bk. 坊記, p. 15.]

Ch. III. Pp. 7-14. THAT KEUN-CH'IN'S GRAND OBJECT SHOULD BE TO CARRY OUT THE PLANS OF THE DUKE OF CHOW, WITH THE SPIRIT AND MEASURES IN WHICH HE SHOULD DO THIS.

7. It is observed by Hea Sien that this paragraph describes the way in which Keun-ch'in should carry out the plans of his predecessor among the people of Yin who did not violate the laws. There must be an absence of all oppression, but generosity must at the same time be accompanied with firmness.

作威—'to play the awe-inspiring.' 無 (一毋) 倚法以削—'to cut,' 'to pare.' Its application here is to the practice of extortion. Keun-ch'in it is observed by Lin Che-k'o, was not likely to do either of the things against which he is here warned, but it was right for the king to speak to him as he does, as it was right for Shun's counsellors to warn him against vices from which as a sage he was far removed.

從容以和—'be easy and tolerating to harmonize.' The meaning seems to be that Keun-ch'in should carry himself easily and forbearingly, and so effect a harmony between the people and himself and

his measures. Te'ae explains the clause—和不可一於和必從容以和之而後可以和厥中, which Kang-yai says he does not understand. Te'ae has a trick of pointing his sentences, with more reference to their sound than their sense.

Pp. 8-10. These par. regard how Keun-ch'in should deal with the people who were transgressors of the laws. He should have respect to the decisions of the law, and to the end of all law; and to nothing else.

在辟—辟—法, 'the laws,' meaning the punishments assigned by them. The 'Daily Explanation,' for 殷民在辟, gives—凡此殷民苟有犯法而入于刑辟之內者, 惟厥中—惟當審其輕重之中, 'you ought simply to judge according to the due medium of lightness and severity.' The case which the emperor puts here is a very remarkable one,—that of himself seeking to interfere with the operation of the laws, and yet telling Keun-ch'in not to pay regard to him. There are both weakness and goodness in what he says.

若—順. 辟以止辟乃辟—this would seem to say that even in such cases, where punishment was inevitable, it should be modified by a consideration of the end of all punishment. But the idea of a modification of the punishment is out of place; and therefore Gaubil has probably given the real meaning of the passage by translating—'vous devez les

化于汝訓。辟以止辟。乃辟。○狂于姦宄。敗常亂俗。三細不宥。○爾無忿疾于頑。無求備于一夫。○必有忍。其乃大。○簡厥修。亦簡其或不修。進

tions, you will punish, remembering that the end of punishment is to make an end of punishing. Those who are inured to villainy and treachery, those who violate the constant duties of society, and those who introduce disorder into the public manners;—those three classes you will not spare, though their particular offences be but small.

11 "Be not passionate with the obstinate, and dislike them. Seek
12 not every quality in one individual. You must have patience
13 and you will be successful; have forbearance and your virtue will be great. Mark those who manage their affairs well, and also

punir sévèrement, afin d'empêcher que les autres ne tombent dans les mêmes fautes." 10

狂一習, 'practised,' 'habitually given to.'

敗常—comp. 反道敗德, 'Counsels

of Yu,' p. 20; and 欲敗度, 縱敗禮

'T'ao-k'ea,' Pt. II, p. 3. Wang T'ien-shan refers,

pertinently enough, to Bk. IX, p. 13, for in-

stances of the crimes which are thus described.

P. 16 may also illustrate the 亂俗 三

細不宥=人犯此三者雖小

罪亦不可宥. Sun K'uei (孫

繼有) observes:—三細非以三

者爲細也, 三事中所犯亦

自有大小, 舉小以該大.

Pp. 11—12. How K'uei-ch'ie should show

patience and generous forbearance in dealing with

the people. 11. 無(一毋)忿疾, 'do not

burst out into anger, and cherish dislike against.'

疾 is the abiding of the 忿, —comp. 身有

所忿憶云云, 'Great Learning,'

Comm., vii. 1. By 頑 are intended the 'stupidly

obstinate' people of Yin, who should continue

opposed to the way of Chou. They would

give occasion for the 'patience,' immediately

spoken of. 無求備于一夫, —comp.

Ann. XVIII, 2, 無求備于一人

This regards the people of Yin, who might be prepared to submit cordially, and who would give occasion for a 'generous forbearance.'

12 若有忍其乃有濟—this

appears in the 國語, as from the Shoo, but

slightly varied,—必有忍也若能

有濟也. Comp. Ann., XV, xxxvi.

有容德乃大, 'have forbearance, and

the virtue is great.'—T'ao says:—'Patience is

associated with the issue of business; forbear-

ance, with virtue. The king's discourse distin-

guishes these two things, as the one is more deep,

and the other more shallow.' Forbearance then

is superior to patience. Kang-yai condemns

this reading of the text; but something of the

sort seems to be implied. 13. 簡, —to

select; meaning here 'to mark,' 'to take dis-

tinguishing notice of,' whether in the way of

approval or the contrary. On 簡厥至

不修 the 'Daily Explanation' gives—

力田安居能修其職業者, 其表殊別修

亦遊手好閒其不修者, 其表殊別修

職業者里亦不使混自

厥宅井疆修者益

則將修者益

則將修者益

厥良以率其或
不良。○惟民生
厚。因物有遷。違
上所命。從厥攸
好。爾克敬典。在
德。時乃罔不變。
允升于大猷。惟
予一人。膺受多
福。其爾之休。終
有辭于永世。

mark those who do not do so. Advance the good to induce those who may not be so to follow *their example*.

- 14 "The people are born good, and are changed by *external things*, so that they resist what their superiors command, and follow what they *themselves* love. Do you but reverently observe all the statutes, and they will become virtuous; they will thus all be changed, and truly advance to a great degree of excellence. Then shall I, the one man, enjoy much happiness, and your excellent *services* will be famous through long ages!"

者亦知愧矣。On 進厥良。良之良行。云云。T'ao says:—進行義之良行。者以率其不良。則人勵行。

P. 14. The radical goodness of human nature always makes it capable of being reformed. What happy effects would follow from Keen-ch'in's conducting his govt. to this issue.

厚—compare Ana., VI. xvii. 也直。T'ao considers that 命從厥所好 mean—'They resist what their rulers only command, not exemplifying the same themselves, and follow what they love:' according to the teaching in the 'Great Learning,' Comm. ix. 4. On this view the statement is that of another fact in the ways of men additional to what is said in the two previous clauses; and may be considered as the foundation of the 在德 in the admonition to Keen-ch'in which follows. Another view, which I have followed, is ingeniously suggested by Wang K'ang-yai. Acc. to it 違上所命從厥

(一其)所好 is merely an expansion or illustration of 因物有遷. The whole of K'ang-yai's annotation on the passage is with reading:—孩提之童皆知愛親及長皆知敬兄. 民生本厚也. 知誘物化然後百姓不

親五品不遷者有之蓋因
物有遷耳是違上所命
教令有所不行從厥攸
而放僻邪侈無所不為
者其也指民而言自狗
所好耳以為從上所好
非也。爾克敬典在德—

T'ao makes this—'If you can reverently observe all the duties of society, and that with a real virtue,' influenced no doubt by his view of 違上所命從厥所好. Our safer

plan is to take 敬典 accord. to its use in the 'Ann. to the prince of K'an,' where it twice occurs;—in par. 19 and 24. 在德 will then be descriptive of the conduct of the people thus ruled over. So, Lin Che-k'e:—爾能敬典

以導之其所行惟在於德則無有不變. 'If you can reverence the constant statutes, and so lead them on, what they do will be in the way of virtue, and so all will be changed.'

允升于大猷—信其能升進於大道. 其爾云云—all this belongs to Keen-ch'in.

T'ao is wrong in making 終有辭于永世 belong both to him and the king.

BOOK XXII. THE TESTAMENTARY CHARGE.

1 I. In the fourth month, when the moon began to wane, the king
2 was indisposed. On the day Kēa-tsze, he washed his hands and
face, his attendants put on him his cap and robes, and *he sat up, lean-*

use here in the Shoo. The Book is found in both the texts.

CONTENTS. King Ching, feeling that his end is near, calls his six principal ministers and other officers around his couch, and commits his son Ch'iao to their care and guidance. The record of all the circumstances and the dying charge form a chapter ending at par. 10 with the announcement of the king's death. The rest of the Book is occupied with a detailed account of the ceremonies connected with the publication of the charge, and the accession of Ch'iao to the throne. It is an interesting monument of the ways of that distant time on such occasions. M. De Guignes tells us that Father Goubli said that if all the other Books of the Shoo had been filled with the names of instruments, dresses, arms, &c., like this, he would not have undertaken to translate the Work. The difficulties which it presents of this nature, however, are not greater than we had to encounter in translating "The Establishment of Government."

Ch. I. Pp. 1-10. THE SUICIDE; TESTA-
MENTARY CHARGE; AND DEATH OF KING CHING.

1. 哉生魄—'at the beginning of the growth of our harvest,'—when the moon began to wane, the 15th day of the month. See on the 'Completion of the War,' pp. 1, 2, and 4.

不憚, 'was not pained.' The phrase
-不豫 in VI, p. 1, —an euphemism, instead

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—**顧命**, 'The Testamentary Charge.' Dr. Medhurst has most unfortunately rendered these characters by 'Retrospective Decree.' **顧**—還視, 'to turn round and look;' and **命** is 'The charge given, when turning round and looking.' K'ang-shing says:—**回首曰顧**, **臨死回顧而發命**. 'To turn round the head is called **顧**. The king, when about to die, turned round and looked at his ministers, and so issued his charge.' The phrase is now generally employed for a 'testament,' or 'dying charge,' such application being derived from its

事。百氏毛公彤夷召
 ○尹虎公衛伯芮太
 王_四御臣師侯畢伯保同

3 ing on the gem-adorned bench. He then called for the Grand-protector Shih, the baron of Jui, the baron of T'ung, the duke of Peih, the prince of Wei, the duke of Maou, Sze, the master of the warders, the master of the guards, the Heads of the officers,—all the superintendents of affairs.

of saying directly that the emperor was unwell. Woo Ch'ing observes that 'the emperor's being ill is expressed by 不懌 and 不豫 and his decease by 登遐 and 宴駕, because his ministers could not bear to name such things directly.'

2 甲子, 'on the day K'ia-tze.' But what day of the month this was cannot be determined. Hsü Sên observes that 'the historians of Han conclude that it was the same day intended by 哉生魄 in the 1st par., but it is to be presumed they are wrong. In the "Completion of the War," p. 1, we read—
 惟一月壬辰旁死魄 越翼日癸巳, where the day intended by 旁死魄 is determined by its calendaric name preceding. In the text here there is no such name given, and we cannot say what day

甲子 was.' See the 集說. On the conclusion of the historians of Han, and the year of King Ching's death, Gaubil says—Lew Hsin, who lived some years B.C., and Pan Koo (班固), the historian, who flourished 70 or 80 years after Christ, place the year of the death of King Ching in 1,079, B.C., and make him to have reigned 37 years; and they are followed in these points by the standard History (通鑑綱目). They add that, on this year of

Ching's death, the day 庚戌, the 47th of the cycle, was new moon of the 4th month of the calendar of Chow, and that 甲子 was the day of full moon;—citing the text of this par. On the year B.C., 1,079, the day 庚戌 was the 28th February of the Julian year, but new moon was several days after; the day 甲子 was the 14th of March, and the full moon was not till several days after. These two authors therefore make a false calculation, founded on their false principles of the motion of the sun and moon, and of the return of the period of seventy-six years. The year 1,068 (or 1,069) B.C. was the year of the death of King Ching; the 18th of March was the day 甲子, and also the day

of full moon in the morning for China. The place of the sun shows that it was the 4th month of the calendar of Chow, because the equinox happened in the course of it.' The argument of Gaubil here agrees with that which I have presented on Bk. XII., p. 1; but the data are less sure, as we cannot be certain that 甲子 in the text should be connected with the date in the 1st par., as the reasoning supposes. I receive the impression that it should not be so connected.

王乃洮頰水—王乃用水盥手洗面. The meaning of 頰 (= 頰), 'to wash the face,' is sufficiently established; and hence Ying-ta says it remains that 洮 be taken for 'to wash the hands.' Ma Yung made it—'to wash the hair.' The 說文 has

沫 for 頰. 相被冕服—it is not worth while to try and settle the question of what particular cap or crown and robes the king wore on this occasion. His 冕 or crowns were six, and for each there was the appropriate occasion. See on the duties of the 司服 in the Chow Ls, Bk. XXI. The present was an extraordinary occasion, and no doubt his attendants settled on their principle of exact etiquette the proper habit in which he should receive his ministers. The text determining nothing, however, on this point, critics are left to decide the questions which they raise, according to their several views. See Lin Che-kye and K'ang Shing, *in loc.* We must leave in the same way the question undetermined of who the 相 was or were. The 太僕 and officers of his dept. are probably intended. See the Chow Ls, Bk. XXXI., in 太僕. Ts'ao would take the term more generally as—扶相者, 'the supporters and assistants.'

被冕服—以冕服被(—加)在王身. Lin Che-k'e ingeniously refers to the practice of Confucius, Ana. X., xiii. 3.—'When he was sick, and the prince came to visit him, he had his head placed to the east, made his court robes be placed over him, and drew his girdle across them.' The sage would

命汝。予審訓。言嗣。茲誓。不獲。彌留。恐。日臻。既。惟幾。病。疾大漸。呼。曰。嗚呼。

- 4 The king said, "Oh! my illness has greatly increased, and it will soon be over with me. The malady comes on daily with more violence and without interruption. I am afraid I may not find another opportunity to declare my wishes about my successor, and therefore I now lay my charge on you with special instructions,

not receive a visit from his prince in his distress, even though he was sick; and in the same spirit king Ching would be properly arrayed on the occasion in the text. 憑玉几—we are to

conceive of the king seated on a mat, and leaning forward in his weakness on the bench or stool before him. The benches used at various imperial ceremonies were of five kinds, of which the 'gem-adorned' was the most honorable. See the Chow Lo, Bk. XX., on the duties of the 司几筵. Diff. accounts are given

of their size. They were all, acc. to Ma Yang, 3 feet long. Yuen Chia (阮譙) says they were 3 feet long, and 2 feet high.

3. The duke of Shao, and the other five ministers mentioned, were no doubt the six King of Bk. XX. On the death of the duke of Chow, the duke of Shao had succeeded him as 冢宰, or prime minister, retaining also his dignity of 'Grand-Guardian.'

A baron of Juy is mentioned in the preliminary notice to one of the lost Books, as having made the Ch'ao Ming (巢命) by order of king Woo. The one in the text may be the same, or a son of his. Juy is referred to the pre-dia, of Chao-yih (朝邑), dep. of So-nan, Shen-tu. The baron of Juy was minister of Instruction. The baron of Tung was probably the minister of Religion. His principality of Tung was in the sub. dep. of Hwa (華州), dep. of Tung-chow.

'The duke of Peih,'—see Bk. XXIV. Ch'in Sze-k'ac says that he succeeded to the duke of Chow as chief of all the princes of the east, and in the office of Grand-Father. He was minister of War. 'The prince of Wei,'—see on the name of Bk. IX. He or his son was now the minister of Crime. 'The duke of Mao must have been the minister of Works. He is supposed to be called Kung or 'duke' here from having been appointed Grand-Assistant. Where Mao was is not certainly known.

師氏.—see on Bk. II., p. 2. By 虎

臣 we are to understand the 虎賁 of Bk.

XIX., p. 1,—the 虎賁氏 of the Chow Lo,

Bk. XXXI. 百尹—百官之長

'the heads or chiefs of the various departments of officers;'—as frequently.

We may take 御事, with Woo Ch'ing, as a general designation of all the ministers and officers mentioned. It is said that the king sent 'a common summons' for them all to come to his presence (同召). On common occasions the order to repair to the imperial presence was given to the 'six King,' who would 'lead on the officers belonging to their several departments' (see Bk. XX., p. 13); but on the present extraordinary occasion the order was sent directly to all, of whatever rank. Such at least is the explanation given of this phrase 同

召

Pr. 4-9. The king's charge. 4. The severity and dangerousness of his illness, rendering it necessary for him to take that opportunity of making his wishes known to them.

疾大漸惟幾—疾 is the general name for sickness or disease. When the sickness is severe, the term 病 is used. 漸—進, 'to advance,' 'to grow.' 幾 is defined by 殆 or 危, 'perilous.'

The 'Daily Explanation,' however, for 惟幾, gives 但幾希不絕耳, 'it wants only a little to the extinction of my breath.'

臻—至, 'to come on.' 彌—益, 'to increase,' or it may be construed with 留, in the sense of 終, 'to continue.'

恐不獲

誓言嗣—I am afraid I shall not find the opportunity to speak solemnly and publicly about the succession. This is the simplest way of construing this clause, and is that adopted by Woo Ch'ing and K'ang Shing. Gan-k'ue's method, followed by Ts'ac, is over ingenious—

恐遂死不得誓言以嗣續

我志, 'I am afraid I shall forthwith die, and

not be able to make a public declaration to develop continuously what I have in my mind.'

審訓—詳審發訓, 'with careful

exercise of thought I issue instructions.' 3.

五
昔君文王武
王宣重光奠
麗陳教則肄
肄不違用克
達殷集大命。
○在後之侗
敬迓天威嗣
守文武大訓
無敢昏逾。○

- 5 The former sovereigns, king Wān and king Woo, displayed in succession their equal glory, making sure provision for the support of the people, and setting forth their instructions. *The people* accorded a practical submission; they did so without any opposition, so that their influence extended to Yin, and the great
6 appointment of *Heaven* was secured. After them, I, the stupid one, received with reverence the dread *decree* of Heaven, and continued to keep the great instructions of Wān and Woo, not daring blindly to transgress them.

The brilliant and successful rule of Wān and Woo.

昔君=先王, 'the former kings,' 昔 is used as an adj. 宣重光=pub-

lished—manifested—their doubled light, —相

繼而能明其德 as Chên Ya-yen

expresses it, 'continued one the other, and could

make their virtue illustrious.' This is much

better than to understand, with Ma Yung and

K'ang Shing, that 重光 is the light of the

heavenly bodies combined together, and that 宣

重光 is merely a figurative description of

the virtue of Wān and Woo, as like the bright-

ness of the sun and moon. 奠(一定)麗

—comp. Rx. XVIII, p. 5. I take 麗 in the

same way as there. The various views of its

meaning taken by the critics all re-appear on

this passage. 則肄肄不違=肄

is found with the meanings of 習, 'to practise,

and of 勞, 'to toil.' Gan-kwō takes the latter

meaning, and understands the characters of

Wān and Woo, = 'thus they toiled; and though

they toiled, they did nothing contrary to what

was right' (文武勤勞雖勞而不違道). So, Lin Che-k'w, as far as regards

the meaning of 肆. The other meaning, how-

ever, is preferable. It was approved by Choo

He, and adopted by Ts'ao. Acc. to it, 民, 'the

people,' is understood as the subject of 肆.

There is no difficulty in this way with 不違.

K'ang Shing also takes this view, and attributes

the repetition of 肆 to the gasping utterance

of the dying king. This is not necessary. The

repetition of the character gives emphasis to its

meaning. I put no comma after the 1st 肆,

as is generally done. 用克達殷=

'thereby they could reach to all Yin,' i.e., the

whole empire came under their influence.

6. How king Ching had endeavored to discharge

his kingly duties. 在後之侗=The

stupid one who was after them. So Ching

designates himself. Gan-kwō and Woo Ch'ing

find in 侗 the idea of 'youth' as well as of

'stupidity' (侗幼而未有知也);

but there is no such idea in the term in Ana.

VIII, xvi. K'ang Shing, on the authority of

the 說文, and partly also of Ma Yung,

edits—在夏后之詞, from which he

endeavours to force out the meaning of 承文

武之業在中夏爲諸侯之

共主, 'receiving the possession of Wān

and Woo, and being in the Central Great Land

the common lord of all the princes!' 敬

迓天威—I reverently met (=set my-

sail to receive) the dread decree of Heaven.

By 天威 is meant, no doubt, the 大命

of last par.—the appointment to the empire,

今天降疾殆弗^七
興弗悟爾尙明
時朕言用敬保
元子釗弘濟于
艱難○柔遠能^八
邇安勸小大庶
邦○思夫人自^九
亂于威儀爾無
以釗冒貢于非

- 7 "Now Heaven has laid affliction on me, and it seems as if I should not again rise or be myself. Do you take clear note of my words, and in accordance with them watch reverently over my eldest son, Ch'aou, and greatly assist him in the difficulties of his position. Be kind to those who are far off, and help those who are near. Promote the tranquillity of the States, small and great, and encourage them to well-doing.
- 8 "I think how a man has to govern himself in dignity and with decorum:—do not you allow Ch'aou to proceed heedlessly on the impulse of improper motives."

from those who held it. 7, 8. The general duties which the ministers would have to perform for his son and successor.

今天至弗悟—Te'se puts a comma at 疾, and joins 殆 with the words that follow, as an adverb, —'probably,' 'it is to be feared that.' Gan-kwo and K'ang Shing put the comma after 殆 and make it an adj., descriptive of the sickness. I prefer the former construction.

弗悟:—'will not awake,' i.e., to a conscious ability for my duties.

元子釗—Ching thus declares his eldest son as his successor. Ch'aou was the son's name. He is known in history by his honorary title of K'ang (康). I have not been able to ascertain how old he was at his accession.

弘濟于艱難—no particular hardships and difficulties are meant, in which the new emperor might be involved, but those of his position generally.

As the 'Daily Explanation' has it:—以宗社之重基業之大付之一人可謂艱難矣. 柔遠能邇. 勸云云. Ying-tz says:—又當安

勸云云. Ying-tz says:—又當安

勸小大衆國安之使國得安存勸之使相勸爲善. 'tranquillize them, making the States feel in a condition of tranquil safety: encourage them, making them emulate one another in well-doing.' 遠邇 and 大小庶邦 are composite designations for the whole empire.

9. Special charge to them to watch over the character of his son.

思夫人—夫人, 'this man,'—'men' generally, or 'any man.' 自亂 (—治) 于威儀—for 威儀 see on 'The Doctrine of the Mean,' xxvii., 3.

貢—進, 'to advance.' 非幾—

'improper springs,' i.e., of action. Choo Ho was asked the meaning of this phrase by one of his disciples, who said that most critics took 幾 in the sense of 危, 'perilous,' but that he thought it should be taken as simply—事, and 非幾—非所當爲之事, 'things which ought not to be done.'

The master answered that 幾 meant 事之微, 'the small beginnings or springs of things.' Ching had in view, no doubt, the mind of his son, as the spring and regulator of all his conduct.

幾。○茲^十既受命，
還出綴衣于庭，
越翼^{十一}日乙丑，王
崩。○太保命仲
桓南宮毛倬爰
齊侯呂伋以二
干戈虎賁百人，
逆子釗於南門
之外，延入翼室，
恤宅宗。○丁^{十二}卯

- 10 Immediately on receiving this charge, the officers retired. The tent was then carried out into the court; and on the next day, being Yih-ch'ow, the king died.
- 11 II. The Grand-protector then ordered Chung Hwan and Nan-keung Maou to instruct Leu Keih, the prince of Ts'e, with two shield-and-spearmen and a hundred guards, to meet the prince Ch'aou outside the south gate, and conduct him to *one of the wing apartments near to that where the king lay*, there to be as chief mourner.

10. *The king's death.* 茲既受命
還 (read *seven*) 茲 is to be taken adverbially. 一是時, 'then.' We must understand 羣臣, 'all the ministers,' as the subject of 受命. 還—退, 'retired,' i.e., from the apartment where they had received the charge. Gan-kwo, as amplified by Ying-ta, makes the meaning to be that they retired from around the king to the ceremonial places in the apartment appropriate to their different ranks. In this way the interpreter only gives himself trouble. I prefer the simpler view.

出綴衣于庭—we are obliged to seek a meaning for 綴衣 here quite diff. from that assigned to it in Bk. XIX., p. 1, where it denotes—'the keeper of the robes.' K'ang-shing would make the 衣 to mean the 'grave clothes,' and 綴衣='they made the grave clothes' (連綴小殮大殮之衣). But this view, though defended by Ming-shing, may safely be pronounced absurd. If it were to be admitted, we should have to find a third meaning for the phrase on its recurrence in p. 14. Ta'ao is right in defining it here, after Gan-kwo, by 幄帳, a kind of 'tent,' or curtains and canopy, set up over the emperor, when he held audiences. This had been prepared when he sent for his ministers to give them his last

charge; and that ceremony over, it was now carried out into the court. Into what court? This question will be best answered, and the student prepared to understand the next chapter, if I refer to the form of the imperial palace in the time of Chow. It will easily be conceived by any one who has studied the architecture of the courts of the high officers throughout the empire at the present day.

The palace was much more long or deep than wide, consisting of five series of buildings, continued one after another, so that, if it had been according to etiquette, and all the gates had been thrown open, one might have walked in a direct line from the first gate to the last. The diff. buildings were separated by courts partially open and embracing a large space of ground. The gates of the different divisions, had their particular names. The first or outer gate, fronting the south, was called 梟門; the second was called 雉門; the third, 庫門; the fourth, 應門, and the fifth 路門, called also 畢門 and 虎門. Outside the second gate—the 雉門—was held the 'outer levee,' (外朝) when the sovereign received the princes and officers generally. Outside the 3th gate—the 路門—was held the 'audience of government' (治朝) when the king met his ministers, to consult with them on the business of the State. Inside this gate were the buildings which formed the private apartments, called

路寢. in the hall of which was held 'the inner audience' (內朝), and where the sovereign on occasions treated those whom he designed specially to honour.

[Such is the general view of the palace given by Chao He. Acc. to K'ang-shing, the second gate was the 庫門, and the 雉門 was the third. Into a discussion of this point we need not enter. The gates were only gates according to our idea, in name, and included a large space, covered by a roof supported on pillars.]

The place where Ching delivered his testamentary charge was probably the hall in front of his bed-chamber, a sort of throne with curtains and canopy—the 綴衣—being provided for the occasion. When he had finished, either before or after the retirement of the ministers, he was removed back to his chamber, and the tent—so to name it—was carried out into the court within the 路門. Medhurst mistook the meaning, and translated 出綴衣于庭, with reference to the ministers,—'going out, they set up their tents in the courtyard.' Gaubil saw that 綴衣 should be referred to the king; but he translated the clause by—'On descendit les rideaux, et on les remporta,' taking no notice of the 于庭.

Ch. II. Pp. 11—29. PUBLIC DECLARATION OF THE KING'S CHARGE TO HIS SUCCESSOR, WITH THE VARIOUS CEREMONIES OBSERVED ON THE OCCASION. 11. Immediate measure to recognize Ch'ao as the successor to the throne.

太保至呂伋—the Grand-Guardian being also the 冢宰, or 'prime minister,' the regulation of all matters fell to him. Of Chung Hwan and Nan-keung Maou, we know nothing more than is here related. They were, no doubt, officers of trust and distinction about the court. 俾爰齊侯 simply—'使齊侯' 'to cause,' or 'to instruct the prince of Ts'ao.' 俾爰—俾於, but the 爰 has little independent meaning. K'ang Shing would define it by 引, 'to lead,' after the 說文; but what then becomes of the 俾, to which 爰 is merely supplementary. The prince

of Ts'ao was the son of 太公, the friend and minister of king Wan, who had been enclosed by Woo with the principality of Ts'ao, the capital of which was Ying-k'ow (營邱), in the pres. dis. of Lin-kze, dep. of T'ung-chow, Shan-tung. Keih is known in history as duke

Ting (丁公 or 玎公). His place at court, say all the critics, was that of 虎賁氏, or master of the guards. If it was so, it shows the dignity of that office, that it should be held by one of the chief princes of the empire.

以二千戈虎賁百人.—Gan-kwé supposed that 'the two shield-and-spearmen' were Hwan and Maou themselves, and that the meaning is that these officers were sent to the prince of Ts'ao to get from him a hundred of the guards under his command, whom they preceded with spear and shield, to meet the prince. But the text, as it stands, will not bear this interpretation. It does seem strange, indeed, that only two men thus armed should have been selected; but so the record says. Medhurst, by mistake, took 千 for 千 and has rendered—'two thousand spearmen.' The style might have suggested to him that he was in error.

逆子釗於南門之外—逆—迎, 'to meet.' Ts'ao and most of the other

critics suppose the 5th or the 路 gate to be that intended. They think also that Ch'ao had been by his father's side at the time of his death, and that he went out purposely from the buildings in the rear, that he might be met thus publicly, and conducted back to be near the corpse as chief mourner. I cannot help thinking that by the 'south gate' we are to understand the first or outer gate of all,—the

梟門. This is the view of K'ang Shing, who thinks further that the prince had been absent on some expedition, and that he was now returning, just in the nick of time. This last supposition appears to me unlikely. The prince may have been absent from the palace, tho' not far off, when his father died, or he may have purposely gone outside, that his entrance in such a style, which was a public declaration that he had been appointed successor to the throne, might be seen by all. 延

入翼室. 恤宅宗—翼室, 'a wing apartment.' On each side of the hall, immediately in front of the private apartments, called the 後堂, there was a 夾室, side chamber, or wing, only not spread out, as in our idea of the wings of a house. That to which the prince was conducted was the 東夾室, 'side chamber on the east.' 恤

宅宗—爲憂居之宗主, 'to be the lord of the mournful dwelling.' The 'mourning shed' called 梁闇 was not yet erected. At the present stage the apartment indicated in the text was the proper one for the prince to occupy.

命作冊度。○越^{十三}
 七日癸酉。伯相^{十四}
 命士須材。○狄^{十五}
 設黼展綴衣。○
 牖間南嚮。敷重
 篋席。黼純華玉
 仍几。○西序東^{十六}
 嚮。敷重底席。綴
 純文貝仍几。○

- 12 On the day Ting-maou (two days after the king's death), he ordered a record to be made of the charge, and the ceremonies to be observed in publishing it. On Kwei-yew, the seventh day after, as chief of the west and premier, he ordered the proper officers to provide the wood for all the requirements of the funeral.
- 14 The salvage men set out the screens ornamented with figures of axes, and the tents. Between the window and the door, facing the south, they placed the different mats of bamboo basket-work, with their striped borders of white and black silk; and the usual

12. The writing of the charge, and of the ceremonies to be observed. The order here given is to be understood as from the Grand-Guardian. It would be given to the 內史, or 'Recorder of the Interior,' who was charged with the writing of the appointments of the emperor (內史掌書王命:—see the Chow Li, Bk. XXVI.). 作冊度—爲冊書

法度, 'to make the writing on a tablet (or tablets), and the regulations.' For what was thus written see par. 24. The 'regulations' are all the ceremonies connected with conveying the appointment of Ching to his son. Few, if any, students, I apprehend, will be found to adopt Keong Shing's notion, that by 度 is intended 冊長短之數, 'the measure of the length of the tablets.' 13. An order to

prepare wood. 伯相,—no doubt the Grand-guardian is still intended. In the 1st par. of the next Bk. he is introduced as 'leading forward all the princes of the western regions,' and we have seen before that he and the duke of Chow were 'the two chiefs,' the one having under his jurisdiction the east of the empire, and the other the west. Still is here designated accordingly, as uniting the dignities of Chief and Premier, though it is difficult to assign a reason why the compiler of the Bk. should vary his style in so perplexing a manner. Ts'ao

defines 須 by 取, 'to take,' 'to procure,' but this meaning of the character is not found in the dict., nor is it necessary. We may take it

as an adj.,—'requisite,' 'necessary,' and 命士

須材 will be 'required from the proper officers the necessary materials,' those materials being probably of wood, though that is not necessarily implied in the term. So Gan-kwō:—命士致材木須待以供喪用. Acc. to the usual custom, the deceased monarch had been shrouded and confined on the day 壬申,

the seventh after the day of his death. The duties to him, therefore, were so far forward, that they might proceed to the announcement of his testamentary charge. There were only the shell or outer coffin (槨), and what were

called the 明器 to be further provided; and it was with reference to them, I suppose, that the order in this par. was given. On those 明器, see the Le Ka, Bk. 檀弓, 下, Pt. i., p. 44, et al. It is not easy, however, to say definitely all that we are to understand here by 材. Ming-shing goes more at length into an examination of the point than any other of the critics whom I have seen.

Pp. 14-15. At four points, where the emperor had been wont to receive his guests, the arrangements are made as if he were still alive. 14.

狄設,—in the Le Ka, Bk. 祭統, p. 29, we find—翟者, 樂吏之賤者; and assuming that 翟 and 狄 are interchangeable, the 狄 here are commonly described as 'the

attendants on the musicians.' In the 喪大記 Pt. i, p. 3, again, we find 狄人設階, which is more to the point, showing that certain 狄 or 狄人 were employed in performing the more servile offices at the ceremonies of funerals and mourning. I suppose they were natives of some of the wild 獫狁 tribes; and we know that some of the 虎賁 or 'guards' were taken from those people. I have ventured to translate the character by our old term 'salvage,' which seems to convey a less intense meaning than savage. 黼屨

綴衣.—we have seen the meaning of 綴衣 on p. 10. What was called 黼屨 is represented as a screen, with axe-heads figured on it, which was placed under the canopy that overshadowed the emperor, and behind him. As to the meaning of the terms, the 爾雅 Bk. II, sect. 釋宮, says that 'the space, east and west, between the window and the door, was called 屨 (闕戶之間) 謂之屨 注云: 窓東戶西也.'

Here the screen in question was placed; and we may believe, with many of the critics, that from its place it took its name. [The only difficulty in the way of this is that in the 爾雅 the character is in the 1st tone; whereas in combination with 黼 it is pronounced in the 2d.] Anything painted or embroidered black and white alternately is said to be 黼. The 爾雅 sect. 釋器 says that 'an axe is called 黼, the wooden handle being black as compared with the glittering head and edge.' However this be, the screen about which we are concerned is called indifferently 斧屨 and 黼屨, the axe-heads on it being understood to be emblematic of the decision of the imperial determinations. We are to understand that four such screens and tents were arranged in the four positions immediately indicated. Gaubil is wrong in translating both 狄 and 黼屨 in the singular.—'L'officier appelle Tie, est soin de mettre en état l'ecran, sur lequel étoient représentées des haches.' We are to understand also that all these and other arrangements were made by the direction of the Grand-Guardian. The 命 of the preceding paragraph is to be conceived to be constantly repeated.

15. The first tent and screen were placed in front of the 'rear hall' belonging to the private apartments, of course directly fronting the south. There the king was in the habit of giving audience to his ministers and to the princes (此平時見羣臣觀諸侯之坐). 闕間 would seem to mean 'between the windows;' but from the account of 屨 given above from the 爾雅

we must take 闕 as an abbreviation for 闕戶之間;—as in the translation.

敷重簾席—敷—設 or 鋪 'to spread out.' On these mats the king sat; there were three of them, one over the other; and the text would lead us to suppose that all those mentioned here were made of bamboo splints woven together, having the edges bound with silk stripes of black and white alternating (鋪 is explained above; 純 [read chin, 2d

tone) = 緣 'a border.' Yung-ta, however, quotes a passage of the Chow Lc, Bk. XX, on the duties of the 司几筵, which, while it throws considerable light on the text, states that the three mats were each of a diff. material, and that each had its peculiar border.—凡大朝

覲大饗射凡封國命諸侯王位設黼依依前南鄉設莞筵紛純加繰席畫純加次席黼純左右玉几. This passage, as translated (not quite accurately, but sufficiently so for my purpose) by Riou, is:—'En général, dans les grandes réunions du printemps et de l'automne, dans les grands banquets, dans les cérémonies où l'on tire de l'arc, où un royaume est concédé ou révoqué, où un grand dignitaire est nommé, il dispose le paravent brodé en noir et blanc, à la place que doit occuper l'empereur. Le devant du paravent fait face au midi. Il place la natte en joncs fins à bordure variée. Il ajoute la natte à hautes qui a une bordure peinte. Il ajoute la natte à rangées qui a une bordure mélangée de noir et de blanc. A gauche et à droite sont les petits bancs en jade pour s'appuyer.' Gan-ko thinks that 筵 [this character is disputed] 席 is the 次

席 of the above passage, the topmost of the three mats, the historian not thinking it necessary to describe the others particularly. Possibly it may be so; but the point is really not of much importance.

華玉仍几.—華玉—彩色之玉 'gems of variegated colours.' The bench was adorned with such. 仍 is used as an adj.,—'usual,' 'ordinary;' intimating that the bench was the same which was used in such position by the living emperor (仍因也因生時所設).

Woo Ch'ing, however, explains the term differently, but by no means in so satisfactory a manner. He says:—仍几謂雖飾之漆之尚仍其質其文不皆減質也吉事尚文凶事尚質故爾. 'The benches are called 仍几, because, though they were ornamented and lacquered, their proper material could still be distinguished, its substance not all concealed by the ornamenting. The reason of this was

仍紛筍嚮西^{十八}仍純豐嚮東^{十七}
 几純席敷夾几雕席敷序
 ○漆玄重南○玉畫重西

- 16 bench and adorned with different-coloured gems. In the side space on the west, facing the east, they placed the different rush mats, with their variegated border; and the usual bench adorned with veined tortoise-shell. In the side space on the east, facing the west, they put the different mats of fine grass, with their border of painted silk; and the usual bench carved and adorned with gems. Before the western side-chamber, facing the south, they placed the different mats of fine bamboo, with their dark mixed border; and the usual lacquered bench.

that in festive matters the ornamental takes the prominence; but on occasions of mourning and sorrow, the simple and substantial. Perhaps we ought to translate 几 in the plural, acc. to the pass. of the Chow Le just referred to.

16. 西序東嚮.—it is difficult without a picture to get for one's self or to give the reader an idea of the 序. They were on the front hall (前堂) of the private apartments.

The wall which was the boundary of this portion of the 'hall' did not extend all the way across, and from the extremity of it short walls were built towards the south, coming forward to about a line with the pillars that supported the roof. These walls were originally called the 序 acc. to the 爾雅—東西牆謂之序. They were so called, as 'fencing off or differentiating between the inside and out' (所以序別內外). The screen and tent here spoken of were placed, I believe, in the side space between the 序 and outer wall of the hall. The 東嚮 is descriptive of the position of this space, and is not to be understood of the aspect of the screen and mats, which must always have been 'towards the south.' Grunthal translates 西序 by 'devant l'appartement occidental,' and Medhurst by 'in the western ante-chamber;' but both are wrong. The space was not an 'apartment,' but a portion of the hall with its own designation. Here the emperor, morning and evening, took his seat to listen to affairs of business (此旦夕聽事之坐也).

底席.—bottom mats. Ma Yung, Wang Suh, and Gan-kwo, all say that these mats (or at least the bottom one of them) were made of 青蒲, 'green rushes or reeds,' and I have so translated.

K'ang-shing thinks that bamboo mats, the splints very fine, were intended (底致也 箴織致席也). It is really all guess work.

綴 is supposed to have the sense of 雜彩 'variegated.'

17 東序西嚮—comp. on last par. At this point the emp. feasted his ministers and the elders of the kingdom (此養國老饗羣臣之坐).

豐席—'great or superior mats.' Mats made of a kind of grass called 莞 (huan) are probably meant;—why they were named 豐

席 I cannot tell. The 集傳 calls them 筍席, by mistake apparently for 莞席.

畫—彩色, i.e., silk painted in various colours. 18. 西夾南嚮—this appears to have been the 西夾室, 'western side apartment,' i.e., of the 'rear hall,' responding to that on the east, which was the 'wing apartment' (翼室), occupied for the time by prince Chuou as the place of mourning. Here the emperor had his private meals (此私燕

之坐). 筍席—筍 is commonly used for 'the young and edible shoots of bamboo; here it is read yea, and means a soft, flexible species of bamboo, of which mats were made.

玄紛純—'dark mixed border.' How it was mixed, I don't know. Perhaps the silk edging was all dark, but of different shades. The 'Daily Explanation' says:—其席之緣則以黑色之繪雜爲之.

The reason, it is said, for preparing all these places, as if king Ching had been still alive, was to afford so many resting places for his spirit, which it was presumed would be present.

越^十玉^大陳寶^大訓^大琬^大琰^大序^大玉^大圖^大盾^大在大^大貝^大在西^大房^大兌^大鼓^大衣^大舞^大在^大東^大序^大河^大夷^大璧^大在^大西^大壁^大刀^大重^大

- 19 They set forth also the five kinds of gems, and the precious things of display. There were the red knife, the great lessons, the large convex symbol of gem, and the rounded and pointed maces,—all in the side space on the west; the large gem, the gems from the wild tribes of the east, the heavenly sounding stone, and the river plan,—all in the side-chamber on the east; the dancing habits of Yin, the large tortoise-shell, and the large drum,—all

at the ceremony of communicating his dying charge to his son. They could not tell at what particular spot it would choose to be, and therefore would enable it to have a choice. As Tsao expresses it, 將傳先王顧命知神之在此乎在彼乎故兼設平生之坐.

P. 19. Display of various precious relics.

越玉五重陳寶.—this clause covers the rest of the par., which gives in detail the gems and precious relics, with the places in which they were set forth. Ying-ta has noticed this construction of the par.:—此經爲下總目下復分別言之. take 陳 passively, and understand a 列 before 玉, governing both it and 寶. 赤刀.—the red knife. This was, no doubt, a knife which had been distinguished at some time in the history of the empire. It would be of no use wearying ourselves, as the critics have done in vain, to discover what knife it was. Concerning 'the great lessons' Gaubil enquires:—'Was this the history of the empire, or some Book of religion or morals? or the one and the other?' We might put such questions indefinitely. Wang Suh thought we were to understand the Canons and Counsels of Parts I. and II. Tsao would go farther back, to the 'Books of the three 皇 and five 帝' mentioned by Gan-kwé in his Introduction to the Shoo; but he thinks the lessons of Wan and Woo may also be included! 弘.—大 璧.—see on Bk. VI. p. 4, where also the duke of Chow is represented as holding a mace (珪) in his hand. To the imperial 珪, 'maces,' or 'acceptres,' belonged the 琬琰. From the text we should naturally have concluded that one article was in-

tended by those terms; but from the Chow Le, Bk. XX., on the duties of the 典瑞, we learn that there was one 'gem-token' called 琬 and another called 琰. They were each 9 inches long:—the former rounded, expressive of good will; the other pointed, expressive of sharp severity against evil. All these articles were exhibited in 'the western side-space' behind the screen, &c., of p. 16. 大玉至東

序.—大玉, 'great gem-stone,' but said by K'ang-shih to be from mount Hwa. 夷玉, 'gem-stones contributed by the E. or wild tribes of the east.' Tsao would take 夷 as—常, 'common,' which does not seem at all so likely a meaning. 天球.—see for the meaning of 球 on the 'Yih and Tsoih,' p. 3. Gaubil thinks that 天球 means 'the heavenly sphere, a celestial globe, or something else, to represent the movement of the stars.' But the use of the character 球 for 'a globe' is quite modern. 河圖.—this was some scheme to represent the first suggestions of the eight diagrams of Fuh-he. The fable was, that a dragon-horse came forth from the waters of the Ho, having marks or signs on his back, from which that emperor got his idea. See what is said on the 'Book of LA,' p. 321. 盾之

至西房.—盾, see on the name of Pt. III., Bk. IV. 大貝.—'great tortoise-shell.' Among the gifts by which the friends of king Wan propitiated the tyrant Shoo, when he had confined the rising chief in prison, mention is made of a tortoise-shell curved as the pole of a carriage. There was a drum under the Chow dyn., called 鼗鼓, made 8 feet long. That in the text, however, would probably be a similar

之戈和之
弓垂之竹
矢在東房
○大輅在
賓階面綴
輅在阼階
面先輅在
左塾之前
次輅在右
塾之前○

- 20 in the western apartment; and the spear of Tuy, the bow of Ho, and the bamboo arrows of Suy,—all in the eastern apartment.
- The grand carriage was by the guests' steps, facing the south. The next carriage was by the eastern steps, facing the south. The foremost carriage was in the front of the left lobby; and the next carriage was in the front of the right lobby.

instrument transmitted from former times.

By the western and eastern apartments we are to understand two rooms, east and west of the 路寢, forming part therefore of the private apartments. They were behind the 夾室 of the 'rear hall,' and of larger dimensions.

兌之至東房.—Tuy, Ho, and Suy were, no doubt, famous artificers of antiquity, and distinguished respectively for the making of the several articles here mentioned. That is all we can be said to know of Tuy and Ho, but Suy is supposed to be the same with Shun's minister of Works.

Ts'ao suggests that the various articles here enumerated were set forth not merely as relics of the empire, but as having been favourites with king Ching;—to keep up the illusion of everything appearing as if he were there alive. He gives also a good remark from Yang Shu (楊時中庸傳):—宗器於祭陳之示能守也, 於顧命陳之示能傳也. 'The articles of honour were set forth at the sacrifices, to show that the emperor could preserve them; they were set forth at the ceremonies of announcing a testamentary charge, to show that he could transmit them.'

P. 20. Display of imperial carriages. In the Chow Li, Bk. XXVII, on the duties of the 車, we have a full account of the imperial carriages, which were of five kinds,—玉, 金, 象, 革, and 木.—(i.e. the grand carriage ornamented with gems; the second, ornamented with metal (gold, we may suppose); the third, ornamented with ivory; the fourth with leather and lacquered; the fifth, a wooden carriage, lacquered. Ts'ao supposes that all the five carriages are included in the text, the grand carriage being the 玉輅 (or 路, which is the more common designation); 綴輅 'the connected carriage,' being the 金輅; 先輅

'the front carriage' the 木輅; and 次輅 'the next carriage (or carriages) in order,' both the 象輅 and the 革路. In this view he differs from all the old commentators. Gan-k'wo, Ma Yung, and Wang Suh took the carriages in the par. to be those of the Chow Li in the order of their rank, the fourth, or leather carriage—the chariot of war—being omitted, as inappropriate to the occasion. Kang-shing had a view of his own. The 大輅 was with him, as the others, the 玉路 but the 綴輅 was also a 玉路 No. 2, while the 先輅 and the 次輅 were the 象路 and a 象路 No. 2 (玉路之貳, 象路之貳). I should prefer to adopt the view of Gan-k'wo and those who agree with him. There can be no satisfactory explanation given of the names 綴, 先, and 次, and our course is simply to translate them as we best can. The carriages were all arranged inside the Loo (路) gate; and this gives us some idea of the dimensions of the palace, or the ground which it enclosed, as two carriages could stand opposite to each other (and not close together, we may suppose) between the gate and the steps by which the hall was ascended. On the west of the hall were the guests' steps, those by which visitors ascended; on the east were those appropriate to the host, the 主階, called here 阼階. The front of those steps was of course towards the south. The 爾雅 says—門側之堂謂之塾. 'Halls by the side of the gate were called 塾.' We may translate 塾 by 'lobby.' Ts'ao observes that the carriages were thus displayed, as in the case of the screens, tents, and relics, that everything might be done as when the king was alive. The student will ask where they were brought from, and how they were brought inside the Loo gate. Of course

執殘立於東 西堂一人冕 冕執鉞立於 于東堂一人 人冕執劉立 夾兩階凡一 弁執戈上刃 之內四人綦 惠立于畢門 二人雀弁執

- 21 Two men in brownish leather caps, and holding three-cornered halberds, stood inside the gate leading to the private apartments: Four men in caps of spotted deer-skin, holding spears with up-turned blades, stood one on each side of the steps east and west, and near to the platform of the hall. One man in a great officer's cap, and holding an axe, stood in the hall near the front at the east end. One man in a great officer's cap, and holding a somewhat different axe, stood in the hall, near the front at the west end. One man in a great officer's cap, and holding a lance, stood at the

they were brought, by the officer called 典路 from their usual houses or repositories. How they were brought inside the Lo gate cannot be explained so clearly. Ming-shing says that from the Lo to the Kanu or outer gate there was a level way. This is not the case now in the structure of the large public buildings from which I have endeavoured to give a general idea of King Ching's palace.

P. 21. Arrangement of guards about the gate and hall.

二人至之內。弁 is sometimes used as a general designation for all coverings of the head used in ancient times. Here it denotes a leather cap worn by guards, and which is figured something like a 冕, having the surmounting cover, but no pendants attached. 雀弁, 'a sparrow cap,' i.e., acc. to K'ang-shing, with reference to the colour, which was like a male sparrow's head. The 惠 was a species of 矛, a kind of spear or lance, sharp-pointed, with hooks bending downwards (凡矛上銳而旁勾, 上銳所以象物之芒, 旁勾所以象物之生). Gao-kwé says the 惠 was 三隅矛, 'a three-cornered spear.' I suppose the point above the 'hooks' was fashioned in this way, which would make it more a halberd than a spear. We have seen that 畢門 is another name for 路門. These two men stood, each on one side, inside the fifth gate, within which everything yet described had been transacted.

四人至階凡。the 綦弁 was different in form from the 雀弁, in being without the surmounting cover. It was made of the skin of a spotted deer, probably the axis. The 戈 spear had a blade with upturned edge, projecting on one side from the base of the point.

堂廉曰凡. 'The side of the platform of the hall was called 凡.' 'The two stairs' are mentioned in the last par. We are to conceive of a guard accoutred as described, standing near the platform of the hall on each side of the steps by which it was ascended.

一人至西堂。the 冕 here was of the same form as that worn by the emperor, but distinguished from it by the number of the pendants and the nature of the gems strung upon them. The critics are probably right in determining that the 冕 here was that worn by a 大夫 or 'great officer,' having five pendants with black gems. 鉞 is the common name for 'a battle axe.' The 劉 was a weapon of the same kind, but with some peculiarity of form, which it is difficult to ascertain.

By 西堂 and 東堂 we are to understand the portion of the 'front hall' or platform east and west, in front of the two 序 described on par. 19. K'ang-shing says: 一序內半

以前曰堂, 此立於東西堂立者當在東西廂近階而一

垂一人冕執
瞿立于西垂
一人冕執銳
立于側階。
王麻冕黼裳。
由賓階躋卿
士邦君麻冕
蟻裳入即位。
○太保太史
太宗皆麻冕

front and eastern end of the hall. One man, in a great officer's cap, and holding a *somewhat different* lance, stood at the front and western end of the hall. One man in a great officer's cap, and holding a pointed weapon, stood by the steps on the north.

- 22 The king, in a hempen cap and a variously adorned skirt, ascended by the guests' steps, followed by the nobles and princes of States, in hempen caps and black ant-coloured skirts. Having
23 entered, they all took their places. The Grand-protector, the Grand-historiographer, and the minister of Religion were all in hempen

are described as being varieties of the 戟, 'a spear or lance with three points.' I do not think that their exact form can be determined.

See the figures in Ch'ing Yao-teen's (程瑤

田) 考工創物小言, in the 皇清

經解卷五百三十七. The dict.

defines 垂 by 堂之盡處近階者,

'the extremities of the hall, near the steps.'

These men stood east and west respectively

from the bearers of the 劉 and the 鉞. See

Yao-teen's 釋宮小記經解卷五

百三十五. 一人至側階

—Ts'ao says that 銳 ought to be 銳 after

Ying-ta, and on the authority of the 說

文, which, however, only defines the character

as 'a weapon grasped by the imperial attend-

ants' (侍臣所執兵). 側階, 'the

side steps,' but both Ts'ao and K'ang Shing

agree in saying that the steps on the north of

the hall, of which there was only one flight are

to be understood. Shing says:—側階, 北

下階也, 在北堂之下, 側之

言特北堂惟一階, 故曰側

階. So, also Ying-ta, who observes further,

that 'of the seven weapons mentioned in this

part, it is only the 戈 of which we have any

particular account. Of the rest we have no

description. The names and forms of ancient

and modern weapons being different, we cannot

arrive at any certain knowledge about the various arms here mentioned. Wang Shu contented himself with saying that the characters were names of ancient weapons.'

1p. 22-24. The announcement of the testamentary charge; and the manner of it. All was now ready for the grand ceremony and all the performers, in their appropriate array, take their places in the hall. 22. 麻冕—

see Ana, IX, tit. 黼裳—the skirt of the emperor's dress on sacrificial occasions was variously adorned. See the 'Yih and Twei,' p.

i. The 'axe' (鉞) was one of the figures upon it, and Ying-ta supposes it is mentioned here, by synecdoche, for all the others. It may be

so; but I take 黼, as in p. 15. Ch'ao is here for the first time called 'king,' but still he goes up by 'the guests' steps,' not presuming to ascend by the others, while his father's corpse

was in the hall. 躋—升. 蟻裳—'ant skirts,' meaning dark, like the colour of ants. 'They all entered and took their places,'

i.e., the places proper to them, according to their various ranks. 23. 太保至彤裳.

—we can easily see how the three dignitaries here mentioned should take the prominent part in the ceremony which they did. Their skirts

were of a pale red colour (彤=纁)—the proper colour of their sacrificial dress. 介

圭, 'the grand mace' (介=大), a cubit and 2 inches long, called also 鎮圭. See the

Chow Le, Bk. XIII, on the duties of the 王

彤裳太保承介圭，上宗奉同瑁，由阼階，隋太史秉書，由賓階，隋御王册命。○曰：王后憑玉几，道揚末命，命汝嗣訓，臨君周邦，率循大卞，變和天下，用答揚文武。

- caps and red skirts. The Grand-protector bore the great mace. The minister of Religion bore the cup, and the mace-cover. These two ascended by the eastern steps. The Grand-historiographer bore the testamentary charge. He ascended by the guests' steps, and advanced to the king with the record of the charge, saying, 24 "Our great lord, leaning on the gem-adorned bench, declared his last charge, and commanded you to continue the observance of the lessons, and to take the rule of the empire of Chow, complying with the great laws, and securing the harmony of the empire, so as to respond to and display the bright instructions of Wán and Woo."

人. It belonged to the emperor, and was one of the emblems of his sovereignty. 上宗

—this was, no doubt, the minister of Religion, the 宗伯 of Bk. XX, p. 9. In the *Chow Le*

he is called 大宗伯, and immediately subordinate in his department were the two 小宗伯.

'Thus,' says K'ang-shung, 'there were three 宗伯. By 上宗 here are intended the 大宗伯 and one of the 小宗伯, one of them carrying the 同, and the other the 瑁.' This view may be rejected without

hesitation. 上宗 is the 宗伯 *par excellence*, so denominated probably as superior to the two 小宗伯. 同 is defined—爵名, 'the name of a cup.' It must have been some particular cup which the emperor only had the right to employ in sacrificing. 瑁—see on the

'*Can. of Shun*, p. 7. This was what I have called there 'a sort of frame by which the genuineness of the gem-tokens conferred on the diff. princes was tested.' We see here that it was itself made of gem. We can easily understand how the other tokens or maces could be tested by it; but it is not explained how it was applied to the 璧圭. The Grand-guardian

and the minister of Religion ascended by the east or emperor's steps, because the authority of king Ching was, as it were, in their persons, to be conveyed in the present ceremony to his son.

書 is the testamentary charge which the historiographer had written or graved on tablets by the guardian's order;—see par. 12. He ascended by the guests' steps, being only an employé in the premier's department. Other reasons for his doing so have been assigned;—unsatisfactorily.

御 here is best defined by 進, and 御王册命—以册命進於王. 24.

曰, 'saying.' Some make 命 the permissive to this, as if what follows were what had been written. But this is not to be supposed. What was written was what the king had spoken, as recorded in par. 4-5. In presenting the record the historiographer made the brief speech which is here given.

道揚末命—宣揚臨終之命. 命汝嗣訓—命汝嗣守文武之大訓, 'charged you to continue to keep the great lessons of Wán and Woo.'

臨君周邦—'to descend and be sovereign over the country (= empire) of Chow.'

大卞—大法, 'the great laws.' This clause seems to declare that the emperor was not

祭王乃^{廿六節}忌四方其能予答王^{廿五節}之光訓。
 三三受天威以敬亂小子眇眇興○
 咤宿同瑁○敬亂小子眇眇興○

- 25 The king twice bowed low, and then arose, and said, "I am utterly insignificant and but a child; how can I be able to govern the four quarters of the empire with such a reverent awe of the dread majesty of Heaven?" He then received the cup and the mace-cover. Thrice he advanced with a cup of spirits; thrice he sacrificed; and thrice he put the cup down. The minister of Religion said, "It is accepted."

absolute, but subject to certain constitutional laws. See Ke-tuen, however, would make 'the great law' to be that delivered by Shun to Yu in Pt. II, Bk II, p. 15.

Pp. 25, 26. Ch'ou's acceptance of the sovereignty. 眇, derived from the eye and small, has the sense of 'little,' 'insignificant.' The repetition of it expresses that idea strongly. The whole expression—眇眇予末小子—is a very humble designation of himself by the new emperor.

而亂—亂 is in the sense of 治. The critics nearly all take 而—如, and complete the meaning—其能如父祖治四方. 'can I govern the four quarters of the empire as my ancestors did?' This does not seem to be necessary.

其能而亂四方—其何能而治四方, according to a common usage of 而.

敬忌天威—comp. 敬迓天威 in par. 6. 敬忌 occurred in Bk. IX, p. 19.

26. 乃受同瑁—the king received these things from the minister of Religion, who had taken them up to the hall. 'He received them,' says K'ang-shing, 'one with each hand,' but we do not know the manner of the action. Nothing is said of his receiving 'the great mace,' which the guardian had borne up. No doubt he had received it, and disposed of it somehow.

三宿三祭—T'ao after Gan-kwō defines 宿 by 進爵, 'advanced the cup.' K'ang-shing says:—

宿, 肅也. 徐行前曰肅. 宿, 肅, meaning to go gently forward. The two definitions, it will be seen, may admit of a similar interpretation. When the king received the record of the charge he was standing at

the top of the western steps a little eastwards, with his face to the north. The historiographer stood by king Ching's coffin, on the south west of it with his face to the east. There he read the charge, after which the king bowed twice, and the minister of Religion, on the south west of the king with his face to the north, presented the cup and mace-cover. The king took them, and having given the cover in charge to an attendant, advanced with the cup to the place between the pillars where the sacrificial spirits were placed. Having filled a cup, he advanced to the east of the coffin, and stood with his face to the west; then going to the spot where his father's spirit was supposed to be, he sacrificed, pouring out the spirits on the ground after which he put the cup on a bench appropriated for it. This he repeated three times. Such is the account of the ceremony given by Ying-ti, which must be nearly correct, if it be not so in every particular. He says three different cups were used, while we should rather suppose that the sacrifices were all made with one—the 同 which is mentioned. The account in this

point, however, agrees better with the 三咤

咤 being taken in the sense of 奠爵, 'to set down a cup.' There is a difference of opinion both as to the form and meaning of this character. On these points Ch'iu Leih has said:—

'There are two explanations of 咤. Gan-kwō defined it as meaning 奠爵, "to put down a cup;" and most scholars have concurred in his view. Soo Shih, however, considered that it meant "to raise to the teeth without drinking,"

like 嚙, in the par. below. At first I was inclined to agree with Soo, principally because of the 'mouth' (口) at the side of the character.

Subsequent examination altered this view. 咤

is a mistake for 訛 with which the 說文 quotes the passage. Gan-kwō's explanation ought not to be altered. If 咤 and 嚙 were the

出廟門俟。太保降收諸侯。同拜王答拜。○祭臚宅授宗人。拜。○太保受同。宗人同拜王答。同秉璋以酢授受同降盥以異。宗曰饗。○太保

- 27 The Grand-protector received the cup, descended the steps, and washed his hands. He then took another cup, and in his hand a half mace, in order to make the responsive sacrifice. Having given the cup to an attending officer, he did obeisance. The king
28 returned the obeisance. The Grand-protector then took back the cup, and sacrificed with it. He then just tasted the sacrificial spirits, returned to his place, gave the cup to the attendant, and did obeisance. The king returned the obeisance.
29 The Grand-protector descended from the hall, when the various articles were removed, and the princes all went out from the temple gate and waited.

same in meaning, why should we not find one or the other of them in the two contiguous paragraphs? See the 集說 上宗曰

饗—both Gan-kwō and Wang Sah explain this—The minister of Religion said to the king, "Drink now," referring to the custom for the offerer to drink some of the sacrificial wine, and so receive blessing from the spirit or spirits sacrificed to. I prefer to take the meaning as in the translation. The 'Daily Explanation' says: 宗伯乃傳神命而言曰, 先王已饗之矣.

Pp. 27—29. How the Grand-protector concluded the ceremony.

27. 太保受同—
the 同 here must be that which the king had used. If we are to suppose with Gan-kwō that a diff. cup was employed for each libation, I should think that the 同 may have been used to fill them. 降盥,—descended—i.e., went down the steps, putting the cup back into a basket (下堂反于篚)—and washed his hands. It was customary to wash the hands before offering sacrifice. The 璋 is described as a 'half mace carried by ministers' (半圭曰璋, 臣所奉). Its make is called 郕刻, in the Chou Le, Bk. XX, 典瑞.

With the new cup and this mace the guardian again ascended the steps—以酢—以報

祭, 'to return the sacrifice'; here, it seems to me—'to repeat the sacrifice,' 'to offer a second sacrifice.' The young king had in his sacrifice acknowledged to the spirit of his father that he had received his testamentary charge: it now belonged to the Grand-guardian to inform the same spirit that he had communicated that charge.

授宗人同拜—以授宗人而拜. By 宗人 we are to understand one of the employees in the dept. of the minister of Religion. The 'bowing' was to the spirit of the departed king, represented probably by a tablet, where it was supposed to rest. The guardian could not bow, and carry the cup and mace at the same time; he therefore handed them to the attendant.

王答拜,—the king returned the obeisance as for his father.

28. 臚—see on 宅 in the last par.

宅—居. The 'Daily Explanation' expands it into—退居其所立之位.

拜王答拜,—as in the last par. Many critics, however, say that the bows were made to the new king, and returned by him for himself. I do not think this is unlikely. The critics have not borne sufficiently in mind that the service described in this Book was one of an extraordinary character.

29. 收—有

司收撤器用, 'the proper officers removed the apparatus of the service.' 廟門, —this is the Loo gate. The private apartments had for the time, through the presence

of the coffin and by the sacrifices, been converted into a sort of ancestral temple. 侯—waited; i.e., they waited to have an audience of the new sovereign.

I append here the remarks of Wang Pi on this Book and the next. The difficult point on which he dwells will be found treated of on the last par. of the Announcement of king K'ang:—

當正多大之服足天聖制公擁鎮公不人
只一不之氏成誠公之事周宰宜周而聖
書始詞終蘇既言召下處盡家謂安下以
二其之始也喪此公天以未位下之天亦
詰正詰家可之也周以所之也天山待防
之一命國事年禮法也室髮崩臨泰心之
王篇開載敘三非世賢王毫之君如之疑
康一中紀之爲釋萬聖輔無王以下人嫌
命爲終是謂以暫爲之夾當武主天聖爲
顧合其全典論而以下賢義當幼定以肯

嫌正豈豈成非出公外議而之評宜而以後今已
起至也隙乎豈故召內可矣卒讓權變權免古而
肯公者門變有變乎使之密倉之變處之不乎人
不大忌侯大未之計施髮者於世處然謂猶用一
而以顧覩一所履之設一室儀後日論乃變易尹
肉之所孽此古身患其無王禮免雖法是處可伊
骨行無餘倡命日慮命臣定定不哉常經公權者
待念而究心顧前危末之綏考終畏以其召議權
心之然姦人之創防張大以暇而可易失公之用
之疑洞料惑王懲此恢小所不聞吁未不周世善

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XXIII: THE ANNOUNCEMENT OF KING K'ANG.

康王之誥

王出在應門之內，
太保率西方諸侯
入應門左，畢公率
東方諸侯入應門
右，皆布乘黃朱，賓
稱奉圭兼幣，曰：「一
二臣衛，敢執壤奠，
皆再拜稽首。」王義

1. The king came forth and stood in the space within the fourth gate of the palace, when the Grand-guardian led in all the princes of the western regions by the left half of the gate, and the duke of Peih those of the eastern regions by the right half. They then caused their teams of light bay horses, with red manes and tails, to be exhibited; and the princes, raising aloft their sceptres and other presents, said, "We, your servants, defenders of the throne, venture to bring here the productions of our territories and set them forth." With these words, they did obeisance twice, bowing their heads to the earth. The king, righteously continuing the virtue of his predecessors, returned their obeisance.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—康王之誥. 'The Announcement of king K'ang.' We have seen, on par. 7 of the last Book, that K'ang was the honorary posthumous title conferred on Ch'ao, the successor of Ching, and third sovereign of the dynasty of Chow. In the dict we find three explanations of the character, used with such an application. It may denote that the individual so denominated

was 'an abyss, a fountain, sending forth its waters' (淵源流通曰康); or that 'he was gentle and mild, fond of happiness' (溫柔好樂曰康); or that 'he caused the people to be tranquil and happy' (令民安樂曰康). Immediately on K'ang's accession, he made the Announcement

which is here recorded. The Book is found in both the texts; but something more must be said on this point.

THE CONNECTION BETWEEN THIS BOOK AND THE LAST. The Book is found in both the texts. In Fuh-shang's Shoo, however, this Book and the last formed only one Book. Yet the 'little preface' shows us that there were in Confucius' Shoo two Books, one called 'The Testamentary Charge,' and one, 'The Announcement of king K'ang.' We cannot but believe also that Fuh-shang's one Book contained the whole of them both. The only question is as to where the division of them should take place. Choo He says, 'Take away the prefatory notices, and we should not think of making any division. The one part runs naturally, by the connection of the style, into the other, (除却序文讀著則文勢自相接連). All the old inter-

preters, excepting Gen-kwō, — K'ang-shing, Ma Tung, and Wang Suh, — extended the Testamentary Charge to par. 3 of the Announcement, and made the latter very brief indeed. Much more natural is the division as it stands in the *textus receptus*, and which I here assume was made by Gen-kwō, whether he acted merely on his own sense of fitness, or had special authority for the arrangement in the recovered tablets which were submitted to him. As the Books now stand, the first is complete, and the second. The portion which precedes the Announcement is a proper introduction to it, while it is out of place as an appendix to the Testamentary charge.

Tse Tung-yuen, of the present dynasty, pronounces both divisions wrong, but his own view, if he can be said to have one on the point in hand, is very unsatisfactory. Accepting Fuh-shang's arrangement of the whole in one Book, he would divide it into three parts: — the first, par. 1—13, relating to the Testamentary Charge; the second, par. 14—29, describing the accession of king K'ang, *the year after his father's death*; and the third, being all comprehended in the Announcement, relating all that took place at the first public audience or levee by the new monarch, immediately after the accession. Granting all this, he still divides the two Books at the same point as Gen-kwō. Of his view, that from p. 14 of the Charge the things described all belonged to the year after Ching's death, I shall speak on par. 1. See 戴東原集卷一.

CONTENTS. The action of the Book follows immediately that of the last. A great assembly of princes do homage after their fashion to the new king, and caution and advise him on the discharge of the great duties to which he is called. He responds with the declaration which has given name to the Book, referring to his predecessors, and asking the assistance of all his hearers that his reign might be a not unworthy sequel of theirs. With this the proceedings terminate, and the king resumes his mourning dress which he had put off for the occasion. It will be seen that I have arranged the paragraphs in three chapters.

CH. I. Pp. 1—3. FIRST AUDIENCE OF THE PRINCES AND MINISTERS HELD BY KING K'ANG. THEIR OFFERINGS; AND ADVICE.

1. 王出在應門之內—王乃出路 (—廟) 門, 立于應門之內. 'The king went out from the Lo gate, and stood in the space between it and the Ying gate.' The 應 gate, we have seen, was the 4th of the palace gates. It took its name, according to Chia Sze-k'ue, from a drum near it which was called the 應鼓. Between it and the 5th gate was held the 治朝 or 'audience of govt.,' at which king K'ang on this occasion received the homage of all the princes, showing himself to them for the first time, as 'the son of Heaven.'

[Ts'ao, by mistake, calls this the 內朝. It would not be correct, however, to call it, with Sze-k'ue, the 外朝.]

On the Guardian and the duke of Peih's leading the princes of the west and the east respectively, see on the last Bk., p. 3. The princes of the west entered by the left or eastern side of the gate, and those of the east by the right or western side, and took their places accordingly. This appears to have been all according to rule. The Lu K'ue, Bk. 曲禮上. Pt. II, p. 29, says, 'The host enters on the right of the gate, and proceeds to the eastern steps; the guest enters on the left, and proceeds to the western steps.' From west to east and from east to west, therefore, was the rule. See Lin Chi-ke, &c. 皆布 (—陳) 乘黃

朱—a team of four horses (馬四匹) was called 乘. These horses were 黃朱 'yellow and red.' The former character expresses the general colour of the animals. But 'yellow' in Chinese is applied to many shades; that intended here being, I apprehend, a 'light bay.' 朱 is understood to denote that their tails and manes were dyed this colour. This is inferred from a passage in the 左傳 定十年, which describes such an operation:—米公子地有白馬四公嬖佞取而朱其尾鬣以與之. Ts'ao mentions that some interpret the 黃朱 of 'haskets of yellow and red silks,' such as are mentioned in 'The Tribute of Yu,' but such an interpretation is very unlikely in this passage.

賓稱奉圭兼幣—諸侯乃舉所奉之守圭及幣帛. 'The princes raised aloft the several maces which they kept, and their other presents.' 賓—諸侯:—see the Chow Lc. Bk. XXXVIII, p. 1.—大行人掌大賓之禮. where by 大賓 is meant all the princes from the

武、命、大、子、敢、拜、相、芮、○、嗣
 誕、惟、邦、皇、敬、稽、揖、伯、太、德、
 受、周、殷、天、告、首、皆、咸、保、答、
 羞、文、之、改、天、曰、再、進、暨、拜。

2 The Grand-guardian and the chief of Juy, with all the rest, then advanced and bowed to each other, after which they did obeisance twice, bowing their heads to the ground, and said, 'O Son of Heaven, we venture respectfully to declare our sentiments. Great Heaven altered its decree in favour of the great empire of Yin, and Wün and Woo of our Chow greatly received the same, and carried it out,

Yao domain inwards. 奉圭.—these are the maces or gem-tokens conferred on them by the emp., and which they brought with them when they appeared at court. Ying is thought that by 幣 we were to understand the horses already exhibited—or a portion of them at least—in the courtyard; but I cannot believe so. A passage in the Book of the Chow is just quoted, on the duties of the 小行人, beginning 合六幣, may be consulted. Other offerings, referred to in the address below, are no doubt intended. The princes, indeed, could not be relating them aloft themselves; but they had attendants with them who did so.

—二臣.—'we, one or two ministers.' Comp. the use of 二三 in the Ana., III. xxiv., et al.

執壤奠—執壤地所出之贊奠之. We are to suppose that one of the princes spoke in the name of all the others.

王義嗣德答拜—the words 義嗣德 seem introduced by the recorder of the Book to explain how it was that the young king returned the obeisance of the princes. Lin Che-k'e observes that, as a rule, the sovereign does not return the 拜 of his ministers, yet K'ang was

on this occasion the host and the princes all were his guests, and such an interchange of courtesies was according to etiquette. Tsan, Woo Ch'ing, and Kiang Shing, all find a deeper meaning in the language. K'ang, they say, was now the declared successor to the throne, but until the year of his father's death was elapsed, his reign could not chronologically commence. His returning the obeisance, therefore, was a recognition by himself and all the princes that he and no other was to be their sovereign (—) it was done 'in righteousness,' though not perhaps in rule. Tsan says:—答拜既正其

爲後且知其以喪見 Shing's comment is:—誼 (so he reads) 德者明

王當喪未嗣位特以繼先王之體誼當嗣先王之德以諸侯之朝故答拜此之謂禮以誼起. If this criticism of Tsan

be correct, as I believe it is, it disposes of the view of Tso Tung-yuen, that all the ceremonies from par. 14 of the last Book took place in the year after Ching's death. There remains, indeed, the difficulty, on which he insists.—How was it that the princes of the various domains happened to be at court with their offerings, &c., so if in readiness for the old king's death, and the accession of the new? The difficulty must be acknowledged; but perhaps it would disappear if we had fuller information about the time. To my mind it is not so great as that of supposing that the action is suddenly carried over many months, between par. 13 and 14 of the last Book, without the slightest note of time in the text:—to say nothing of the conclusion of Tsan and others from these words

—王義嗣德

Pp. 2, 3. The advice given by all the princes to the young king.

太保暨芮伯—the princes advanced in the last par. to present their offerings under the leading of the Guardian and the duke of Peh, as the Chiefs of the east and west respectively. Now the duke of Peh gives place to the baron of Juy, the minister of instruction, and ranking among the six K'ing next to the prime minister.

咸進相揖—it seems the simplest construction to take 咸

—the 皆, which immediately follows, meaning all the rest of the princes and ministers, who then 相揖, 'moved their left or right arms

to one other,' as they took their several places in the order required by the court etiquette. See the account of Confucius' movements in the court of Lo, Ana., X., lii. 2. Ying, it would confine 咸進 to the Guardian and the baron of Juy.—

These two made all the others advance, motion-

高師哉今遺厥賞陟土若
祖無張王後功罰王○克
寡壞皇敬人用戡戡畢惟恤
命我六之休敷定協新西

3 manifesting their kindly government in the western regions. His recently ascended Majesty, rewarding and punishing exactly in accordance with what was right, fully established their achievements, and transmitted this happy state to his successors. Do you, O king, now be reverent in your position. Maintain your armies in great order, and do not allow the rarely equalled appointment of our high ancestors to come to harm."

ing to them with their arms to take their proper places, to which motion the princes responded.' Woo Ch'ing has still a diff. view, taking 相 as 相—攢相之人; but this only complicates the construction. 曰.—the Guardian was

no doubt spokesman for all the others. 惟

周至美若.—the difficulty here is with 美若, which Ts'ao acknowledges that he does not understand. He mentions the view of Soo Shih, that somehow there is an allusion to the confinement of king Wan by the tyrant Shou in 美里; but I do not see how this is to be brought out of the text. He mentions also the conjecture of some that 美若 is the same as

厥若 in p. 6, 美 being an error of the text for 厥. Gan-k'wé took 美 as meaning 道. Ma Yung and Wang Suh did the same. Ying-t'ü observes that 美 and 猷 are allied in sound, and that therefore we may explain 美 by 道.

I have translated accordingly (文武大受天道而順之), though I rather suspect that the text is corrupted. K'ang Shing makes 美—進, and says:—天改殷之命. 惟文武大受而進順之. There is no authority for such an interpretation of the char. 克恤西土.—the patrimony of the chiefs of Chow was in the west. It was in that part of the empire that their virtue was first recognized, and the foundations of their influence laid. 惟新陟王.—the newly ascended king. Ch'ing was not yet buried, and had not received his honorary title. He could only be thus spoken of.

畢協至人休.—by the 'rewards and

punishments,' which king Ching is said to have 'finished harmonizing,' i.e. administering according to what was right, we are to understand probably the investitures of many princes, and the suppression of rebellions, with the punishment of the rebels, in which the duke of Chow played so conspicuous a part. These are all, allowably, attributed to the king himself; and by these he completed the work begun by Wan and Woo, and the dynasty might be considered established in the possession of the empire. 戡—克, 'he succeeded in.'

敷遺後人休—休 may be considered as in the objective gov. by 遺. 後人 is under the gov. of the preposition 於 understood.

Woo Ch'ing gives the meaning of the whole very clearly:—賞當功罰當罪盡文合其宜克勝其任安定文武之功用能延及于今後人有此休美 張皇六師.—'Keep your six armies like a bent bow, and magnify them.' The duke of Shao would seem to have in mind the counsel given to himself by the duke of Chow, Bk. XVI, p. 21, and also what was said by that duke to king Ching, Bk. XIX, p. 22. 無—(毋)

壞我高祖寡命—寡命 is defined by Ts'ao—艱難寡得之基命, 'the appointment difficult to be got, and such as is seldom to be got.'

K'ang Shing gives Wang Suh's account of 寡—美文王少有及之故曰寡命. The speaker, in 我高祖, 'our high ancestor (or ancestors),' identifies himself with the imperial House. This gives some support to what is said, on p. 420, of the duke of Shao's having been the son of king Wan by a concubine.

○王若曰庶
邦侯甸男衛
惟予一人釗
報誥○昔君
文武丕平富
不務咎底至
齊信用昭明
于天下則亦
有熊羆之士
不二心之臣

- 4 II. The king spoke thus:—"Ye princes of the various States, chiefs of the How, Teen, Nan, and Wei domains, I, Ch'au, the one
5 man, make an announcement in return for your advice. The former sovereigns, Wān and Woo, were greatly just, and enriched the people. They did not occupy themselves with people's crimes. Pushing to the utmost and maintaining an entire impartiality and sincerity, they became gloriously illustrious throughout the empire. Then they had officers brave as bears and grisly bears, and ministers of no

Ch. II. Pp. 4-5. REPLY OF THE KING TO THE PRECEDING ADDRESS; CALLED HIS ANNOUNCEMENT.

4. The princes do not appear as parties in the preceding address, nor are the ministers (羣臣) mentioned here. But we must suppose that the address emanated from the princes as well as the ministers, and that the reply was made to them equally. No mention is made of the domain which was between the Nan and the Wei; no doubt the chiefs from it were present, and they may have been present also from beyond the Wei, though the text says nothing about them.

子一人釗—the emperor called himself—"I, the one man," and did not add his name. It was the rule, however, for the successor to the throne to do so, while the period of mourning for the deceased sovereign lasted.—See the case of the young emperor 猛, mentioned in the 左傳.

昭二十二年 報誥—Lín Ch'ü-k'e expands this:—諸侯戒我故我以誥報之.

5. The merits of Wān and Woo; and how they were supported by their ministers and officers.

昔君—no in the last Hk., p. 5

不平富—"were greatly just and rich." The critics are probably correct in interpreting the language of the govt. of Wān and Woo,—that it was just, carefully guarding the rights of the people, and that it was liberal, making taxation light, so that the people had plenty for all their wants. The paraphrase of the 'Daily Explanation' is:—

文武之爲君也,有鴻博均平之德,輕徭役,薄賦斂,使天下家給人足,莫不富有

餘以豐民之財. Wang Sui's comment is brief and satisfactory:—

文武道大,天下以平,萬民以富是也. 不務咎,—they did not bend their

minds on—address their efforts to—the faults of the people. The meaning seems to be that they were not on the watch to find out crime and punish it. To quote again from the Daily Ex-

planation:—人或有罪不得已而用刑,則輕省而不務深

刻謹慎而不致錯誤,宰失之出毋失入,不專意求人罪惡而務置之於法. I can by

no means accept K'ang Shing's definitions of 務—趣, and 咎—災. He says:—文

武大平富天下之民使不趣于咎災,言爲民除害底至齊信—底至—推行而

底其至, 'they pushed the practice and carried it to the utmost.' The question arises of what it was that they carried to the utmost? Was it the virtues indicated in the two previous para-

so that 齊 and 信 are merely adjectives? or are we to take those two characters as nouns, denoting other virtues, having a substantial meaning of their own? Lín Ch'ü-k'e, T'ao, and the Sung critics generally take the former view.

T'ao says:—齊信者兼盡而極其誠也,文武務德不務其之心,推行而底其至兼盡

保父王家用端
命于上帝皇天
用訓厥道付畀
四方。○乃命建
侯樹屏在我後
之人今予一二
伯父尚胥暨顧
綏爾先公之臣
服于先王雖爾

double heart, who helped them to maintain and regulate the royal House. Thus did they receive the true favouring decree from God; and thus did great Heaven approve of their ways, and give them the four quarters of the empire. Then they appointed and set up principalities, and established bulwarks to the throne, with a view to us their successors. Now do ye, my uncles, I pray you, consider with one another, and carry out the service which the dukes, your predecessors, rendered to my predecessors. Though your persons be

而極其誠內外充實。Gao-kwo took the latter view, making 齊—中. He gives—致行至中信之道; and I have translated accordingly. Ma Yang likewise took 齊—中; but he put a stop there, and joined 信 as an adverb with the clause that follows, in which construction K'ang Shing has followed him. 熊戡之土—see Bk. II, p. 3. 用端命于上帝—用

—'thou,' 'thereby.' 端—正直, 'correct.' We seem to be obliged to understand a 受 after 用—'they thus received the right favouring decree from God.' K'ang Shing is the only one who construes differently, saying—用能端直其命于上帝言正命以待天也. What follows, 皇天云云, is an expansion of this clause, a more accurate description of the 'favouring decrees.' 訓

—順, 'to accord with,' —'to approve.' 6. He appeals to the great princes to assist him as their fathers had assisted Wen and Woo, and in accordance with the intention of their appointments.

命建侯樹屏—the subject of 命 is Wen and Woo, as founders of the dynasty, so that the force of the term merges in that of 建 and 樹. This is much better than, with K'ang Shing, to suppose the par. to begin at

皇天 above, and make 天 the nominative to 命—乃命之建侯云云. The 'planting of defences or accords' (樹屏) is nothing different from the 'setting up of princes' (建侯). 在我後之人—在 must be taken as —'with reference to,' for the sake of.

一二伯父—二, as in par. I. Ying-tu observes that when the emperor was addressing princes of large States who bore the same surname with himself, he called them 伯父; and if their principalities were small, he called them 叔父. The princes of a different surname were addressed by him as 伯舅 and 叔舅. Here Chia'ou speaks more particularly to the great princes of his own surname. 尚胥至先王—胥—相; 暨—與; 胥暨—'with one another.' 顧—顧念而不忘, 'to think of and not forget.' 綏—安. According as we take this to mean 'to soothe,' 'to tranquillize,' or 'to pursue quietly and steadily,' we get two views of the passage. Lin Che-k'w, after Soo Shih, adopts the latter view, and compares the sentiment with that in the 'Fwan-k'ang.' Pt. I, p. 14, and Pt. II, p. 14.—使諸

侯能盡忠於王室如其先公之於先王則爾先公在天之靈於是安矣. If you, princes,

服。釋。揖。皆。○。遺。恤。王。心。身。
冕。趨。聽。群。翰。厥。室。罔。在。外。
反。出。命。公。子。若。用。不。乃。
喪。王。相。既。羞。無。奉。在。乃。

distant, let your hearts be in the royal house. Thus enter into my anxieties and act in accordance with them, so that I, the little child, may not be put to shame."

- 7 III. All the dukes, having heard this charge, bowed to one another and hastily withdrew. The king put off his cap, and assumed again his mourning dress.

can discharge all loyal service to the royal House, as your predecessors did to mine, than their souls will have repose in heaven." I was at first inclined to this view, but a closer inspection of the text makes me prefer the former, which is that given by Ts'ao after Gao-kwō.

用奉恤厥若 may be taken as in the translation, after Ts'ao and Gao-kwō. The 'Daily Explanation' has:—用以此心仰奉在上之憂勤而順承毋違. Or we may translate—'Be thus reverently anxious to act in accordance with the requirements of your duty,' which is the view taken by Liu Che-k'e.—汝諸侯其職所當順者當奉恤之而不敢忽忘 鞠子稚子. 'a child, one who has not yet left his mother's arms.'

CH. III. P. 7. THE AUDIENCE CLOVES, AND THE KING RESUMES HIS MOURNING. The use of

相揖 here confirms the interpretation of the phrase which I have adopted in p. 2. The concluding statement, showing that the king and all the officers only assumed their mourning dress at the conclusion of this Announcement, has, since the time of Ssu Shih, given rise to a controversy, which will probably be among Chinese critics interminable. According to Shih, everything about the publication of the Testamentary Charge and the subsequent proceedings ought to have been transacted in mourning garb; and the neglect of this was a melancholy violation of propriety. If the duke of Chow had been alive, Shih thinks that he would not have allowed it, and he wonders why Confucius selected the documents recording it to form a portion of the Shoo. In point of fact, it cannot be proved positively that any violation of the proprieties established by the duke of Chow was committed, for the ceremonies to be observed on various occasions in the imperial court have not been transmitted. But to a student from the west the controversy appears trivial. We are glad to have the ceremonies actually observed at so distant a date brought before our eyes so graphically as is done in 'The Testamentary Charge,' and 'The Announcement of king Kang.'

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XXIV. THE CHARGE TO THE DUKE OF PEIH.

惟十有二年
六月庚午朏
越三日壬申
王朝步自宗
周至于豐以
成周之眾命
畢公保釐東
郊。○王若曰

畢命

- 1 I. In the sixth month of his twelfth year, the day of the new moon's appearance was K'ang-woo; and on Jin-shim, the third day after, the king walked in the morning from the honoured city of Chow to Fung, and there, with reference to the multitudes of Ching-chow, gave charge to the duke of Peih to protect and regulate the eastern frontier.

Историческыя замѣчанія. If that reign must have been happy which, extending over a considerable number of years, has yet left few or no memorials in history, that of king K'ang may be so characterized. It extended over twenty-six years, but no other event of it, after the Announcement of the last Book, is alluded to in the Shoo or by Sze-ma Ts'een, but that appointment of the duke of Peih, to which we have now arrived. Ts'een, indeed, tells us that 'during the time of kings Ching and K'ang, the empire was in a state of profound tranquillity, so that punishments were laid aside, and not used for more than forty years' (成康之際天下安寧刑錯四十餘年不用). Happy China!

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—畢命, 'The Charge to the duke of Peih.' The territory of

Peih was in the pre. dia. of Ch'ang-ngan (長安) dep. of So-ngan. It was not a large principality, whose ruler was entitled to be styled duke or K'ang. That title is employed here as a denomination of dignity or office, the chief of Peih having succeeded to the duke of Chow as Grand-Tutor;—see on Bk. XXII., p. 3. He was a scion of the House of Chow. This and his being Grand-Tutor may both be inferred from the manner in which king K'ang addresses him as 父師. Ch'in Sze-k'ue says that his name was Kao (高). He must have been well advanced in years, when the 'Charge' recorded here was addressed to him, for, acc. to p. 3, he had played his part in the fortunes of his House from the time of king Wan. The Book was not in the Shoo of Fuh-shang.

CONTEXTS. 'King K'ang,' says Ts'ee, 'considering the condition of the multitudes of Ching-

chow, appointed the duke of Peih to protect and regulate that district and its people. This Book contains the charge to him as it was recorded on tablets.

Keun-ch'in, who had succeeded to the duke of Chow in charge of Ching-chow, has followed him to the grave. By the labours of those two great ministers, a considerable change had been effected in the character of the people of Yin who had been transferred to that district. King K'ang appoints the duke of Peih to enter into and complete their work, adopting such measures as the altered character of the people, and altered circumstances of the time, called for. The charge occupies all the Book after an introductory paragraph, and may be divided into three chapters, each introduced by the words: "The king said."

The first, parr. 2-5, speaks of what had been accomplished in Ching-chow, and the admirable qualities of Kao which fitted him to accomplish what remained to be done. The second, parr. 6-11, speaks of the special measures which were called for by the original character and by the altered character of the people. The third, parr. 12-15, dwells on the importance of the charge, and stimulates the duke, by various motives, to address himself to fulfil it effectually.

CH. I. P. 1. THE TIME; PLACE; AND GENERAL NATURE OF THE CHARGE.

至壬申^一朏, see on Bk. XII, p. 2. As it denotes the third day of the moon, we are again enabled to bring the commonly received chronology to the test of calculation. Here I will give the note of Gaubil, as on par. 2 of "The Testamentary Charge":—"It is agreed that the day 庚午 here is the third day of the sixth moon of the calendar of Chow. Lew Hin and Pan Koo pretend that this was the year corresponding to a.c. 1,067, to which year they refer the twelfth year of king K'ang; and this chronology is followed in the 通鑑綱目. In the year a.c. 1,067, the 16th of May was,

indeed, the day 庚午, or the 7th of the cycle, but the 14th of May was not the first day of the moon which did not happen till several days after; and that year therefore was not the 12th of K'ang's reign. Laying down the principle avowed by Pan Koo and Lew Hin about the third day of the moon, the cycle names in the text agree with the year a.c. 1,056. The 16th of May was the day of new moon in China; the 18th, the third day of the moon, was 庚午; and this month was the sixth in the calendar of Chow, since during it the sun entered the sign of the Twins. From "The Announcement of Shaoan," "The Announcement about L.S.," and this Book, we see that the Chinese astronomers

of those times counted the day when the sun and moon were veritably in conjunction to be the first day of the moon. The time of a lunation was divided into the time of brightness and the time of obscurity; the passage from the obscure to the bright time was described as "the death of the obscure," and the passage from the bright to the obscure time as "the birth of the obscure;"—see "The Testamentary Charge." The standard History gives 26 as the years of K'ang's reign; if that be correct, his death took place a.c. 1,042, since we have found that a.c. 1,056 was his 12th year; and a.c. 1,067 was the first year of his reign.

This year, a.c. 1,067, should be marked by the cycle characters 庚戌, the 11th year of the cycle. Now, the "Bamboo Books" do mark his first year so; but the year which they denote is that a.c. 1,007, differing from the true year, which appears to have been demonstrated, exactly an entire cycle of 60 years.

[As the cycle names of the days here afford ground for such important conclusions, in which Gaubil, I may state, was anticipated by Chang Yih-hing (the Buddhist priest mentioned on page 10), under the Tang dynasty, it becomes desirable to establish the genuineness of the par., which may be hastily thrown aside with the remark that it only occurs in one of the controverted Books. Now this we are able to do, so far as the year, month, and days are concerned, from a passage in the 漢律歷志, 第一下, being that referred to by Gaubil, and which is to this effect:—康王十二年六月戊辰朔三日庚午,故畢命豐刑曰,惟十有二年六月庚午朏,王命作策豐刑. We do not know what to make of 豐刑 here; but it is plain that Lew Hin had seen a copy of the 'Charge to Peih,' in this par. substantially the same with what we have in the text before us.]

王朝至于豐—朝步, see on Bk. III, p. 1. 宗周—see on Bk. XX, p. 1.

We are to understand Haou. "The king went to Fung," says Ts'ao, "to give the charge in the temple of king Wan, because the duke of Peih had been minister to him."

成周—this was what was called 下都, "the lower capital," See on Bk. XXI, p. 1, where also 東郊, "the eastern frontier," is explained. 保—

安; 釐—理. The time had come to adopt a diff. method with the people of Yin from those pursued by their former overlords, the duke of Chow and Keun-ch'in;—as is explained below.

鳴呼、父師、惟文
王武王、敷大德
于天下、用克受
殷命。○惟周公
左右先王、綏定
厥家、毖殷頑民、
遷于洛邑、密邇
王室、式化厥訓、
既歷三紀、世變

- 2 II. The king spoke thus:—Oh! Grand-tutor, it was when king
Wan and king Woo had diffused their great virtue through the
3 empire that they were able to receive the appointment which Yin
had enjoyed. The duke of Chow acted as assistant to my royal
predecessors, and tranquillized and established their empire. Cau-
tiously did he deal with the refractory people of Yin, and removed
them to the city of Lō, that they might be quietly near the royal
house, and thus be transformed by its lessons. Six and thirty years
have elapsed, the generation has been changed, and manners

Ch. II. Pp. 2-5. FIRST PART OF THE CHARGE. HOW THE EMPIRE HAD BEEN GOT BY WAN AND WOO, ASSISTED BY THE DUKE OF CHOW; WHAT THE DUKE HAD DONE WITH THE PEOPLE OF YIN. NEW READERS WERE NOW CALLED FOR; AND THE CHARACTER OF THE DUKE OF PEIH, WHICH MARKED HIM OUT AS THE MAN FOR THE OCCASION.

2. 父師,—acc. to

what was said on 一二伯父 in par. 6 of the last Book, we might translate this by 'Uncle and Tutor.' Lin Che-k'e, moreover, says that the duke of Peih was 'a son of king Wan, a younger brother of king Woo and the duke of Chow, and an uncle of king Ching (文王之子, 武王周公之弟成王之叔父); but I do not know his authority for such a statement. Sze-nia Ts'een has given the names of Wan's ten sons by his queen Pao-sze, and this duke is not among them. I believe he was a scion of the House of Chow; but we may take 父師 here in the same way as in Pt.

IV., Bk. XI., p. 1, as—太師. If he had really been a brother of the duke of Chow, we might have expected some reference to the fact in the course of the Charge.

3. 惟周公左右先王,—the critics generally understand by 先王 all K'ang's predecessors,—Wan, Woo, and Ching. Lin Che-k'e contends with much force that the phrase should in this place be restricted to king Ching. It is hardly necessary to depart from the more common

view, Ching must certainly be included. Ganbil gives—'le roi, mon pere; Medhurst erroneously,—these former kings'

國家: 'their (or his) empire.' 厥家—厥國家: 'their (or his) empire.' 毖殷至厥訓,—comp. Bk. XIV., pp. 18-21. 密邇王室,—comp. 密邇先王, Pt. IV., Bk. V., Pt. I., p. 9. The 王城 or 'imperial city' of Lō was the place where the 'nine vases' of the empire were deposited, and where it was intended that the emperor should give audience to all the princes. The people of Yin in Ching-chow and the country about might very well be said to be near the 'royal house.' The 'Daily Explanation' expands 式化厥訓 into 日聞我周之仁聲善政, 日親我周之仁人君子, 由是潛消其悍暴之習, 而漸化于德義之訓. 既歷三紀,—

'there have elapsed—been gone through—three Ks, or periods of twelve years.' A period of twelve years was denominated a 紀, acc. to Ying-tā, because in that period the planet Jupiter completed a revolution in his orbit, and the cycle characters of the 地支, or 'earthly branches,' had also run their round. We do not know exactly from what year we are to reckon these 36 years. If, as is commonly believed, the reign of Ching lasted 57 years, and we add 12 years of K'ang's reign to them, we obtain four duodenary periods, and not three. Even

into 日聞我周之仁聲善政, 日親我周之仁人君子, 由是潛消其悍暴之習, 而漸化于德義之訓. 既歷三紀,—

'there have elapsed—been gone through—three Ks, or periods of twelve years.' A period of twelve years was denominated a 紀, acc. to Ying-tā, because in that period the planet Jupiter completed a revolution in his orbit, and the cycle characters of the 地支, or 'earthly branches,' had also run their round. We do not know exactly from what year we are to reckon these 36 years. If, as is commonly believed, the reign of Ching lasted 57 years, and we add 12 years of K'ang's reign to them, we obtain four duodenary periods, and not three. Even

風移四方無虞。予一人以寧。○道有升降，政由俗革，不臧厥臧，民罔攸勸。○惟五篇公懋德克勤，小物弼亮，四世正色率下，罔不祗師言。

have altered. Through the four quarters of the empire there is no occasion for anxiety, and I, the one man, enjoy repose.

- 4 The prevailing ways now tend to advancement and now to degeneracy, and measures of government must be varied according to the manners of the time. If you do not manifest your approval of what is good, the people will not be led to stimulate themselves in it. But your virtue, O duke, is strenuous, and you are cautiously attentive to small things. You have been helpful to and brightened four reigns, with deportment all-correct, leading on the inferior officers, so that there is not one who does not reverently take your words as a law. Your admirable merits were that of many in the

If we reckon from the date of the 'Announcement about LA,' we have more than 40 years. A supposition of Gaozil, that king K'ang intends the time which had elapsed from the death of the duke of Chow, seems to me very likely.

世變, —our word 'generation' answers to 世. Ts'ao says:—父子曰世. 'Father and son are called a 世:—'One generation passeth away, and another cometh.' 四方無虞—see the use of 無虞 in Pt. II., Bk. IV., p. 6.

P. 4. Govt. must be varied according to the character of the people; the time was come for discriminative measures.

道有升降.—It would be hard to say how Gau-kwé understood this clause. His comment on it is—天道有上下交接之義, which Ying-ti only makes more dark by his expansion of it. I have followed Ts'ao who observes that 有升—有隆, 'generous,' 'affluent,' 'good;' and 有降—有污, 'foul,' 'impure;' and then illustrates this clause and the next by saying that, when the duke of Chow took charge of Ching-chow, the character of the people, with their evil habits all-unchanged, rendered a firm and cautious dealing with them necessary. When Keun-ch'in took charge, the people were considerably improved, and hence he was enjoined to be forbearing with them, and promote harmonising measures.

臧云云.—the people, we are to suppose, were now in that state, that the good of many of them deserved to be acknowledged, and that acknowledgement would act as the best stimulus to others. The paraphrase of the 'Daily Explanation' is:—至于今日, 善者固多而不善者亦容或有其多, 而務必寬嚴並施, 興起其為善者, 且懲治其為不善者, 庶幾殷民有所畏慕, 益相勸而化耳. 臧—善. In the first case it is a verb; in the second, a noun in the concrete.

8. The great virtue of the duke of Peih. 克勤小物—小物, 'little things,'—'small matters' (細行).

By 四世, 'four generations,' we are to understand the reigns of Wan, Woo, Ching, and the existing reign of K'ang. Ying-ti refers to a passage in the 國語, 晉語四 (near the end), about king Wan, how he 詢於八虞, 而次於二虢, 而訪於辛尹, 重之以周召, 畢榮, which shows that in the 8th cent. B.C., it was the current belief that the duke of Peih had been a minister of king Wan.

正色率下.—'with correct countenance

嘉績多于先王予小子垂拱仰成。○王曰：嗚呼！父師，今予祇命公以周公之事，往哉。○旌別淑慝，表厥宅里，彰善癉惡，樹之風聲，弗

times of the former kings; I, the little child, have but to let my robes hang down, and fold my hands while I look up for the complete effect of your measures."

6 III. The king spoke, "Oh! Grand-tutor, I now reverently
7 charge you with the duties of the duke of Chow.—Go! Signalize the good, separating the bad from them; give tokens of your approbation to their neighbourhoods, distinguishing the good so as to make it ill for the evil, thus establishing the influence and reputation of their virtue. Where the people will not obey your lessons and statutes,

leading on those below you.' But by 色 we are to understand all the deportment. Liu Che-ko refers, aptly enough, to the words of Confucius about the man in authority, Ana. XX, 5, 2.—君子正其衣冠尊其瞻視儼然人望而畏之。不亦威而不猛乎。祇師言—祖敬而師法公言。The 師 is a verb, 'to imitate,' 'to take as a model.'

嘉績多于先王—this clause is in a measure opposed to the next.—'Even under my predecessors your admirable merits have been many; how much more must I be indebted to you!' 予小子云云—we must not understand 'the robes let down and the hands folded' as expressive of idleness and indifference. The king figures himself in the ancestral temple, in his robes and attitudes of reverent ceremony, happy in the thought that he had so able a minister on whom he might entirely depend. Compare the same language in the conclusion of Bk. III, p. 10.

The king certainly is not sparing in his laudations of the minister.

Ch. III, Pp. 6—11. SECOND PART OF THE CHARGE.—THE SPECIAL DUTIES WHICH THE DUKE WAS TO DISCHARGE; THE DIFFICULTIES WITH WHICH HE WOULD HAVE TO CONTEND; AND THE METHOD BY WHICH HE MIGHT BE SUCCESSFUL.

6. 祇命.—'reverently charge.' The charge being so great, being communicated in the temple of King Wan, having respect to the completion of the work of the duke of Chow,

king K'ang could not but have a feeling of reverence in delivering it. The work that Keun-ch'in had done is not mentioned, but he appears in p. 13.

7. Many of the people of Yin had profited so much by the labours of the duke of Chow and Keun-ch'in with them, that they might be pronounced reformed, and should receive marks of favour, while those who continued obstinately bad should be made to feel that they were marked.

旌別 (low. 4th tone) 至風聲—these clauses show how the good should be dealt with. 旌 is the name of a peculiar kind of flag, used among other purposes to mark out places or paths; as a verb here, it—our 'to signalize.'

旌別淑 (=善) 慝 (=惡)—旌善別惡, with the meaning in the translation.

表厥宅里—表異善人之居里. 表—'a signal,' 'to set up a signal,'—akin to 旌.

彰善癉惡—彰顯其善以病其爲惡者. The two parts of the clause are connected as in the first clause.

樹之風聲—with 樹之 comp. the expression 死之, Ana. XIV, xvi. The whole—'planting—setting up—for them, i.e. the good, their influence and reputation.'

The 'Daily Explanation' gives for 善者之風聲使之卓然樹立顯于當時傳于後世.

弗率至畏慕—these three clauses describe how the bad

率訓典殊厥
井疆俾克畏
慕申畫郊圻
慎固封守以
康四海○政
貴有恆辭尙
體要不惟好
異商俗靡靡
利口惟賢餘
風未殄公其

mark off the boundaries of their hamlets, making them fear to do evil and desire to do good. Define anew the borders and frontiers, and be careful to strengthen the guardposts through the territory, in order to secure the tranquillity of the whole empire.

- 8 "In measures of government to be consistent and constant, and in proclamations a combination of completeness and brevity, are valuable. There should not be the love of what is extraordinary. Among the customs of Shang was the flattery of superiors. Sharp-tonguedness was the sign of worth. The remains of these manners are not yet obliterated. Do you, O duke, bear this in mind.

should be dealt with. 殊厥井疆—

殊別其井居疆界。井—the wells, about which their farms were distributed. It may be translated here by 'hamlets.' We see how the people—the peasantry—of Yin were distributed over the country of which Ching-chow might be considered the centre. 申

畫郊圻.—Ts'ao says that 圻 and 畿 are the same; but the meaning of 界, given for 圻 in the dict., answers very well. Wang Ts'ao says:—The city of Lo and the honoured capital of Chow were the two centres of the imperial domain. The honoured capital of Hsiao might be considered to have a square of 800 里, or 64 squares of 100 里 each, attached to it; and Lo or Ching-chow to have a square of 600 里, or 36 squares of 100 里 each. The extent from east to west was greater than from north to south, but altogether there was as much as a square of 1,000 里. Thus the borders of Lo were also the borders of Hsiao. See the 集說.

固封守. 'strengthen the places of ward within the boundaries over which you are appointed.' 封域之內, 高深險阻已設守禦者, 益謹飭之. Wang Ch'ung-yun observes that, while the separation of the good from the bad was calculated to have a beneficial moral effect upon the people, these latter measures were a safeguard against any attempts at insurrection.

Pp. 8—11. The difficulties the duke would have to contend with; and how to contend with them.

8. 恆 is defined as the opposite of 暫 or 'what is brief.' 辭—辭令, 'proclamations,' 'govt. orders.' 體要—理完

言簡, 'complete in principle, and condense in expression.' We may take 貴 and 尙 as synonymous. 靡靡 is taken as having

the meaning of 隨順, 'ready acquiescence,' i.e., of inferiors with their superiors. Ying-ta shows that this was the meaning given to the phrase in the time of Confucius, by quoting the remarks of Han K'ue (韓起), a statesman of Tsin, contemporary with the sage—韓宣子稱紂使師延作靡靡之樂靡靡者相隨順之意. [I have tried without success to verify this reference. Han K'ue appears repeatedly in the 左

傳, 昭公, but I have not met with the remark attributed to him. Ying-ta has probably confounded 韓宣子 with the scholar 韓非子, in the 3d Bk. of whose Works (十過第十) mention is made of 師延, who 與紂爲靡靡之樂.] The sharp-tonguedness of the times of Yin is indicated in Pt. IV., Bk. V., Pt. iii., p. 2, and Bk. VII., Pt.

念哉。○我聞曰，
世祿之家，鮮克
由禮，以蕩陵德，
實悖天道，敝化
奢麗，萬世同流。
○茲殷庶土，席
寵惟舊，怙侈滅
義，服美于人，驕
淫矜侈，將由惡
終，雖收放心，閑

- 9 I have heard the saying—'Families which have for generations enjoyed places of emolument seldom observe the rules of propriety. They become dissolute and do violence to virtue, setting themselves in positive opposition to the way of Heaven. They ruin the formative principles of good; encourage extravagance and display; and tend to carry all future ages on the same stream with them.' Now the officers of Yin had long relied on the favour which they enjoyed. In the confidence of their prideful extravagance they extinguished their sense of righteousness. They displayed before men the beauty of their robes, proud, licentious, arrogant, and boastful;—the natural issue was that they should have ended in being thoroughly bad. Although their lost minds have been in a measure

l. p. 17. 9. On the general lesson of this par., comp. various passages of Bk. XV.

由禮—從禮, 'to pursue the course of propriety.'

陵—犯, 'to violate,' or 'invade,' 'encroach upon.'

敝化—'they injured transforming changes,' i.e., they corrupt the public manners, acc. to which the characters of individuals are moulded.

席—10. 席寵惟舊—席 is used in the sense of 因 or 藉, 'to depend on.' Their 'favour' had been to them the mat on which they rested. The dict. gives on the character a note of Yen Sze-koo:—席猶因也, 言若人之坐於席也. For 怙侈 the 'Daily Explanation' gives—怙恃其驕侈. 侈 is 'extravagance' taking its rise from pride.

服美于人—Lin Che-k'o understands this as meaning—'They tried to surpass other men in the beauty of their dress' (美于他人); but it is better to take the 于 after the adj., as in p. 5, 嘉績多于先王.

陸健

11. 資—貨財, 'goods,' 'pro-

tion.'

11. 資—貨財, 'goods,' 'pro-

tion.'

tion.'

Ming dyn.) defines 驕 as—心肆, 'the dissoluteness of the mind;'

淫=心佚, 'the voluptuousness of the mind;'

矜=心傲, 'the arrogance of the mind;'

侈=心浮, 'the froth of the mind.'

將 shows the natural issue of the various ways and attributes which have been described, and attributed to the officers of Yin. It would be wrong to translate it as an historical future. We find a portion of this par., without any note of quotation, in the 左傳, where 必 appears instead of 將—襄二十七年叔孫曰, 服美于人, 必以惡終.

雖收云云,—it is here that the phrase, 放心, 'the lost mind,' to which so much importance was subsequently attached by Mencius, occurs for the first time in the classics.

閑之—'to bar them.' 'The root of evil,' says Ch'in King, 'might still be present; and though the lost mind has been recovered, it may be carried off again on the occurrence of temptation.'

11. 資—貨財, 'goods,' 'pro-

tion.'

tion.'

tion.'

tion.'

之惟艱。○資^{十二}富能訓。惟以永年。惟德惟義。時乃大訓。不由古訓。于何其訓。○王^{十二}曰。嗚呼。父師。邦之安危。惟茲殷士。不剛不柔。厥德允修。○惟^{十三}周公克慎厥始。惟君陳克和厥中。惟公克成厥終。三后協心。同底于道。

- 11 recovered, it is difficult to keep them under proper restraint. If with their property and wealth they can be brought under the influence of instruction, they may enjoy lengthened years. Virtue and righteousness!—these are the great lessons. If you do not follow with them *these* lessons of antiquity, wherein will you instruct them?"
- 12 IV. The king said, "Oh! Grand-tutor, the security or the danger of the empire depends on these officers of Yin. If you are not *too* stern with them nor *too* mild, their virtue will be truly cultivated."
- 13 The duke of Chow was able to exercise the necessary caution at the beginning of the undertaking; Keun-ch'in displayed the harmony proper to the middle of it; and you, O duke, can bring it at last to a successful issue. You three princes will have been one in aim, and have equally arrived at the proper way. The penetrating power of your principles, and the good character of your

erty.) 富能訓惟以永年.—it is difficult to say whether we should understand 資富能訓 as meaning, 'Having property and wealth, if they can also be instructed,' or 'Notwithstanding their property and wealth, if they can be instructed.' I think the former view is preferable, as Ch'in King says:—既富以養其身,又訓以養其心,全正性所以順正命,此所以永年也。時乃大訓。—時—是。'The lessons of antiquity' can only mean those of 'virtue and righteousness.' The crowding of diff. subjects into one short paragraph is annoying and perplexing.

Ch. IV. Pp. 12—15. THE CONCLUSION OF THE CHARGE:—IMPORTANCE OF THE WORK ENTRUSTED TO THE DUKE; AND MOTIVES TO MARK

HIM EXERT HIMSELF.

12. 邦之安

危.—by 邦 here we must understand the whole empire. The king had said in par. 3 that he had no occasion for anxiety about anything in the empire. His language here is different. 'It shows,' says Te'ao, 'that he was one who could not rest easily in small achievements.' He would make assurance doubly sure.

不剛不柔.—this is the rule of conduct for the duke of Peih. He was to pursue the right medium in dealing with the officers of Yin.

13. 惟周公至厥終.—comp. Bk. XXI, p. 7.

三后協心同底于道.—Wang Ts'ao says:—

三后之政,前後以相濟爲心,是曰協心,適因革之宜,各行其所當然是曰同底

道洽政治，澤潤生民，
四夷左衽，罔不咸賴。
予小子永膺多福。
公其惟時成周，建無
窮之基，亦有無窮之
聞。子孫訓其成式，惟
父。○嗚呼！罔曰弗克，
惟既厥心，罔曰民寡，
惟慎厥事，欽若先王，
成烈以休于前政。

- measures of government, will exert an enriching influence on the people, so that the wild tribes, with their coats buttoning on the left, will all seek their dependence on them, and I, the little child, will long enjoy much happiness. Thus, O duke, here in Ching-chow will you establish for ever the imperial possession of Chow, and you will have an inexhaustible fame. Your descendants will follow your perfect pattern, governing accordingly.
- 14 "Oh! do not say, 'I am unequal to this;' but exert your mind to the utmost. Do not say, 'The people are few;' but attend carefully to your business. Reverently follow the accomplished achievements of the former kings, and complete the excellence of the government of your predecessors."

于道。The govt. of the three princes differing as this earlier and that later, yet each aiding the others, is what is called 協心; their measures, different as the change of manners and times required, yet always right in their own circumstances, is what is called 同底于道。道洽—comp. 洽於天下。Mencius, II., Pt. 1, i, 7. 道洽 and 政治 are one thing, or the course and the basis of the rule of Ching-chow.

生民。—see Bk. V., p. 12. 左衽—see Ana., XIV., xviii., 2. 予膺多福—see Bk. XXI., p. 14. 公其至其家訓。Gao-kwō expounds this—公其家訓。惟以是成周之治爲周家立無窮之基業。子孫訓(—順)其成式惟父。—the 'Daily Explanation' gives for this:—公之子孫有治民之責者亦遵守成

法以致治安，譽流奕世。謀詒後昆，皆于公今日基之矣。15. 惟既厥心。—既—竭盡。'to exert to the utmost.' The duke ought not to shrink from his duty, because it was arduous. 罔曰至厥事。—neither might he trifle with his work, thinking it easy. 欽若。—comp. in the 'Can. of Yaon,' p. 3. By 'the former kings' we are to understand Wan, Woo, and Ching. 以休于前政。—the 'former government' is that of the duke of Chow and Keun-chin. The clause will bear to be translated, 'that you may realize an excellence superior to the govt. of your predecessors;' but we have two instances of 于 after an adj. in this Book, and not indicating comparison. I prefer to consider 休 as an active verb, and the whole—以休美周公君陳之政。

THE BOOKS OF CHOW

BOOK XXV. KEUN-YA.

王若曰：呼祖乃父，服勞王家，世篤忠貞，厥有成績，紀于太常。○惟予小子

- 1 The king spoke thus:—"Oh! Keun-ya, your grandfather and your father, one after the other, with a true loyalty and honesty, laboured in the service of the royal House, accomplishing a merit

IN THE NOTE at the commencement of the last Book, I have said that the annals of king K'ang are peculiarly barren. No other event of his reign is commemorated but the appointment of the duke of Peih to the gov't of Ching-chow. During his time, however, several worthies of whom we have had occasion to speak passed off the stage. In Leo, Pih-k'in, the son of the duke of Chow, died a.c. 1,062 (or 1,063), and was succeeded by his son

Ta'ew (魯), or duke K'ao (考公), who gave place in the king's 20th year to duke Yang (煬公). Yang died in the last year of the reign, and was followed by his son Tsan (宰).

or duke Yew (幽公). To the same year is assigned the death of Shih, the duke of Shann, the co-worker with the duke of Chow in the establishment of the dynasty.

The viscount of Wei, the prince of Kuang, and Chung of Tsao have all likewise their deaths chronicled in this reign.

King K'ang was succeeded by his son Hia (玟), known as king Ch'ao (昭王), to whom the standard History assigns a very long reign of 31 years. The Shoo, however, is silent about him. The appointment of Keun-ya to be minister of Instruction, in the Book to which we have now arrived, was made by king Muh (穆). Ch'ao's son and successor, the first

year of whose reign is commonly placed in a.c. 1,000 (or 1,001). The brief notices of Ch'ao and his reign which we find in Ssu-ma Tse-n and other authors are unfavourable to him. The first symptoms of decay in the dynasty date, indeed, from his time. In a.c. 1,008 the duke of Leo was murdered by a younger brother, who established himself in his room, while the king could do nothing to avenge so great an outrage.

Ch'ao died in a hunting expedition to the south, according to most accounts, being drowned in the river Han, which he was crossing in a boat, whose planks were only glued together! This account is no doubt fabulous.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK—君牙, 'Keun-ya.' The name is taken from that of the person whose appointment to be minister of Instruction forms the subject of the Book. Keun-ya's surname is not known. His father and grandfather, it appears, had been in the same office before him; and hence it is conjectured that he may have been the grandson of the Chief of Jui, who was minister of Instruction at the commencement of king K'ang's reign. This is possible; but we cannot say more, for, acc. to the received chronology, the commencement of Muh's reign was separated from that of K'ang by nearly 80 years.

The Book was not in Fuh-shang's Shoo.

CONTENTS. The Book is short, containing only seven paragraphs. The 4th and 5th part.

冰。尾。危。方。左。王。緒。武。子。
 ○。涉。若。心。右。之。亦。成。嗣。
 今。于。蹈。之。亂。臣。惟。康。守。
 命。春。虎。憂。四。克。先。遺。文。

2 which was recorded on the grand banner. I, who am but a little child, have inherited the charge of the line of government transmitted from Wán and Woo, from Ching and from K'ang, and keep also thinking of their ministers who were able to aid them in the good government of the four quarters of the empire;—the trembling anxiety of my mind makes me feel as if I were treading

speak of the duties of the minister of Instruction. The other paragraphs stimulate Keun-ya to the discharge of them by motives drawn from the merits of his forefathers, and the services which he would render to the empire, making his sovereign no unworthy descendant of Wán and Woo.

Pp. 1—3. The king speaks of the merits of Keun-ya's grandfather and father; of his own anxiety to get ministers equal to those of his ancestors; and of his hope that Keun-ya would render him services which should prove that he was the worthy scion of a good stock.

1. 世篤至王家—Ma San (馬森, Ming dyn.)

gives the following definitions of 忠 and 貞:—盡心之謂忠, 無一念之不一也; 守道之謂貞, 無一事之不正也. 'The putting forth one's

whole mind is called 忠; there is not in it the insincerity of a single thought: holding firm the way of principle is called 貞; there is not in it the incorrectness of a single action.' We must understand a preposition, 於 or 爲, between 勞 and 王. 紀於太常.

—太常 is the name of the grand imperial banner. The Chow Le, Bk. XXVII, makes mention of the 司常, or 'superintendent of banners,' who had charge of all the 'nine flags or banners' (九旗). 常, therefore, is in that passage used apparently as synonymous with 旗. Commonly, however, we find it used with reference to the grand standard, on which were figures of the sun and moon, with figures of dragons, lying along its breadth, one over the other head above tail. The sun and moon,

however, were the distinctive figures of the grand banner. It was borne aloft when the emperor went to sacrifice;—see the same Bk. of the Chow Le, on the duties of the 巾車, p. 2. The names of meritorious ministers, moreover, were inscribed on it during their life time, preparatory to their sharing in the sacrifices of the ancestral temple after their death;—see the Chow Le, Bk. XXX, on the duties of the 司勳, p. 3.

2. 惟予至遺緒.—It is inferred, and with reason, from the language of this clause, that the king had lately succeeded to the throne, and that this Charge to Keun-ya was delivered in the early part of his reign. Chronologists generally refer it to his 3d year. But how is it that while speaking of the line or clue of govt., as being transmitted to him from Wán and Woo, Ching and K'ang, he makes no mention of K'ang's successor, his own father? The prefatory note expressly assigns the charge to king Muh.

亦惟至四方,—the meaning of this is, that while the King felt that he himself could not follow his predecessors *passibus equis*, he thought also how they, so superior to him, had yet been assisted by very able ministers. What cause was there then for anxiety to him? 惟—

思. In the edition of the 'Thirteen King,' for 先王之臣 we have 先正之臣. But Gan-kwó's comment—亦惟父祖之臣—shows that he must have read 先王. 先正 probably crept into the text from Bk. XXVIII., p. 1, q. x.

亂四方.—see 'The Testamentary Charge,' p. 25. 踏虎尾.—this representation of perilousness is also found in the Yih King, under the diagram

乃訓用奉若于
罔缺爾惟敬明
我後人咸以正
哉武王烈啟佑
哉文王謨丕承
寧。○^{六節}嗚呼丕顯
以圖其易民乃
惟艱哉思其艱
亦惟曰怨咨厥
咨冬祁寒小民

and sighing. And so it is with them in the great cold of winter. How great are their hardships! Think of their hardships in order to seek to promote their ease, and the people will be tranquil.
6 Oh! how great and splendid were the plans of king Wān! How greatly were they carried out by the energy of king Woo. They are for the help and guidance of us their descendants;—all in principle correct and deficient in nothing! Do you with reverence illustrate your instructions, and enable me to honour and follow

生理之艱哉 思其云云

—the advice here given to Keun-ya is substantially the same with that given to T'ae-k'ea by E Yin, —無輕民事惟難. The student will say, 'But Keun-ya was the minister of Instruction, whose province was the minds of the people, whose business was their moral training;—how is it that he is here directed to think of the difficulties of their lot, and to provide for their material well-being?' In answer to this, there may be quoted first the remarks of Chang Uih-k'ea (張爾嘉; Ming dyn.):—When the nourishment of the people is provided for, their moral training may be carried on with advantage. While they are groaning amid their sufferings from hunger and cold, it is vain to require from them to pursue the Mean, and discharge all the duties belonging to their various relations.' See the 集說.

Next we may refer to the exposition of the duties of the minister of Instruction in the 9th Bk. of the Chow Lē, from many parts of which we might suppose that he was the minister of Agriculture, and charged with the care of the material well-being of the people, rather than with what is commonly understood as the business of their education. That poverty tends to crime, and incompetency to virtue is a maxim recognised in China from its earliest history. These remarks seem to explain sufficiently anything that might seem incongruous in this part. There is no

necessity to suppose with Lin Che-k'ue that it is spoken to Keun-ya, not as minister of Instruction merely, but as uniting with that office the dignity of one of the K'ung, and so charged with 'the harmonising and regulating of the operations of Heaven and Earth' (Bk. XX, p. 5), able somehow therefore, and bound to moderate the heats of summer and the cold of winter.

[In the Lo Ke, Bk. 繡衣, p. 17, we have most of this part, with some trifling variations:—君雅曰. 夏日暑雨. 小民惟曰怨咨. 冬祈寒. 小民亦惟曰怨.]

P. 6. The King mentions the achievements of the dynasty in the past, and hopes not to come short of his predecessors by the help of Keun-ya, who likewise will thus be shown no unworthy son of his fathers.

丕顯至罔缺—see all this quoted by Moxian, III, Pt. VI, ix, 8.
用奉若于先王.—by 先王 we are probably to understand kings Ching and K'ang. 若—順. The whole—使子得奉順成康之舊. 對揚文武之光命.—compare 答揚文武之光訓. Bk. XXII, p. 4. 訓, however, indicates what issued from Wao and

先王對揚文
武之光命。追
配于前人。○
王若曰：君牙，
乃惟由先正，
舊典時式，民
之治亂在茲。
率乃祖考之
攸行，昭乃辟
之有父。

the example of my immediate predecessors, to respond to and display the bright decree conferred on Wān and Woo:—so shall you be the mate of your by-gone fathers."

- 7 The king spoke thus:—"Keun-ya, do you take for your rule the lessons afforded by the former courses of your excellent fathers. The good order or the bad of the people depends on this. You will thus follow the practice of your grandfather and father, and make the good government of your prince illustrious."

Woo; 命, what was conferred on them. 追
配于前人.—this clause must have refer-
ence to Keun-ya, and not, as Gan-kwō supposed,
both to the king and the ministers. 前人
are the grandfather and father of Keun-ya,
already referred to. Literally the clause is—
'Going back, you will match your former men.'

P. 7. The king finally urges Keun-ya to follow
the example of his father and grandfather in the
same office.

君牙至時(一是)式
(一法)先正, comp. the same phrase in
IV., Bk. VIII., Pt. III., p. 10. There, however,
it denotes 'the former premier,' or chief of the

administration of Shang, while here we can
only understand it of Keun-ya's father and
grandfather. 在茲, 'on this;' i.e., your
thus following your fathers. 率乃云

云,—the 'Daily Explanation' has for this:—
爾亦惟率由乃祖考之行
事以正民之德,厚民之生,
俾安養遂教化行以顯乃
辟政治之美不亦休哉

[The whole of this Charge appears forced and
exaggerated.]

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XXVI. THE CHARGE TO KEUNG.

愆。興。厲。后。先。克。罔。王。
○。思。中。怵。人。于。惟。若。
昔。免。夜。惕。宅。德。予。曰。
在。厥。以。惟。丕。嗣。弗。伯。

罔命

- 1 The king spoke thus:—"Pih-keung, I come short in virtue, and have now succeeded to the former kings, to occupy the great throne. I am fearful and conscious of the peril of my position. I rise at midnight, and think how I can avoid falling into faults.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK; AND DATE.—罔命. 'The Charge to Keung.' The prefatory note says that King Muh appointed Pih-keung to be the 太僕正, and thereupon was made the 'Charge to Keung.' From par. 1 we learn that Pih-keung (伯罔) was the name of the individual to whom the charge was given; the title therefore might have been 伯罔之命, or simply 伯罔, after the analogy of the title of the last Book. No reason can be given for the form of the name as we have it, but that it was the fancy of the compiler to call it so. As Lin Che-k' says, 此篇與君牙皆是命體, 君牙之命篇則但以其名, 此則去伯而加以命字, 是亦各其史官一時之意也.

As to the office which Pih-keung was appointed to fill, there are two opinions. In the preface it is called 太僕正; and in the Book, p. 4,

太正. He is no doubt included among the 僕 of p. 6, and we must admit, therefore, the designation in the preface as correct. Now 僕 is used first for 'servant,' without reference to the nature of the service. The dict. gives the definition of the 說文—給事者, 'one who renders services,' and illustrates this by a passage from the *Le Ke*, 禮運—仕于公曰臣, 仕于家曰僕, 'a public officer is called 臣; an officer in the family is called 僕.' But the character also means 'a charioteer' (御車曰僕). The diff. views depend on whether the general meaning or the special be supposed to predominate in the case before us.

When we refer to the *Chow Le*, we find many officers in the dept. of the minister of War denominated as 僕. In Bk. XXXI, we have the 太僕, 祭僕, 御僕, and 隸僕; and in Bk. XXXII, we have the 太馭 (馭 is taken here to = 僕), 戎僕, 齊僕, 道

文聰齊小之咸忠其御從 武聖明大,懷良侍僕罔

2. Formerly, Wán and Woo were endowed with all intelligence, august and sage, while their ministers, small and great, all cherished loyalty and goodness. Their servants, charioteers, attendants,

僕, and 田僕. The student naturally, and I think correctly, supposes that he has in the

太僕 of Bk. XXXI, the office of Pih-keung; but Gan-kwo and Ying-ta, whose views Lin Cho-k's approved of, were of opinion rather that he should be identified with the 太馭 of Bk.

XXXII. The duties of the 太僕 are described in many parts. He, or they—for there were two officers so denominated—regulated the dress of the emperor on different occasions, and the positions where he should stand or sit. He received the great commands of the emperor, and delivered them to those for whom they were intended; and conveyed on the other hand to the emperor memorials from without. He went before the emp. to and from audiences. These details are sufficient to show how close were his relations with the emperor, and how intimate were the services which he rendered.

The 太馭, under whom (though this point is not so clear) appear to have been the 戎僕, &c., mentioned above, had charge of the grand carriage of the emperor, and drove him in it to sacrifices. So far they were close enough together, but their relations were by no means so numerous and intimate as those of the emp. and the 太僕. Why should we suppose that Pih-keung was appointed 太馭 and not 太僕?

The only reason is that the 太馭 were great officers of the second degree (中大夫) while the 太僕 were only of the third (下大夫). There would be force in this, if the one office had been under the other. But there is no evidence to show that this was the case. The two K'ungs erroneously supposed it was, and hence they were led to a wrong conclusion about the office of Pih-keung.

There were two 太僕, under whom were 4 petty servants (小臣), 6 servants for sacrifices (祭僕), 12 special servants (御僕), 2 treasurers (府), 4 clerks (史), 2 helpers (胥), 20 waiters (徒) with perhaps others. Pih-keung must have been the senior or chief of the two. Biot translates the term by, 'Grand Do-

monique.' 'High Chamberlain' is the nearest I can come to it in English.

[This long investigation of the office of Pih-keung may be wearisome to some readers. I thought it worth while to enter on it, because many Chinese critics have professed themselves unable to determine the point. M. de Guignes, who had certainly read the Shoo with care, at least in Gaubil's version, strangely says, in his summary of the Book, that 'Keung was one of the great officers of King Muh. He is named Pih-keung (伯罔), because he was chief of several royal princes.' So difficult is it, without prolonged and close study, to interpret correctly documents in this language.]

The Book is only found in the 'old text.'

Comments. King Muh represents himself as conscious of his own incompetencies, and oppressed with a sense of the important duties devolving on him. His predecessors, much superior to himself, were yet greatly indebted to the aid of the officers about them;—how much more must this be the case with himself!

He proceeds to appoint Keung to be the High Chamberlain, that he may guide correctly all the other servants about the imperial person, and so promote his virtue; telling him the manner of men whom he should employ, and the care which he should exercise in the selection of them.

Pp. 1—3. Preliminary to the appointment. 1. The king's great anxiety in the thought of his own incompetency and his high position. 予弗

克于德.—I am not competent in the point of virtue. Compare Kaou-tsung's 台

恐德弗類 in 'The Charge to Yuo,' Pt. I, p. 2. 嗣先人宅丕后—宅

—居, 不—大. Ts'ao gives for the whole.

繼前人居大君之位 怵

惕—see Mencius, II, Pt. I, vi. 3. Ying-ta

says here, that the phrase denotes 'the commo-

tion of the heart (心動之名 厲—

危 'perilousness.' 中夜以興—

以 perhaps has an adverbial force, —'there-

upon.' 2. Wán and Woo, sage as they were,

were yet greatly aided by the servants about them. 齋—莊 or 肅, 'grave,' 'august.' 侍

御僕從—侍—給侍左右, 'those who were about them, on the right and left, min-

匪正人，以旦夕承弼
厥辟，出入起居罔有
不欽，發號施令罔有
不臧。下民祗若，萬邦
咸休。○惟予一人無
良，實賴左右前後有
位之士，匡其不及，繩
愆糾謬，格其非心，俾
克紹先烈。○今予命
汝作大正，正于群僕

and followers, were all men of correctness, morning and evening waiting on their sovereign's wishes or supplying his deficiencies. *Those kings, going out and coming in, rising up and sitting down, were thus made reverent.* Their every warning and command was good. The people yielded a reverent obedience, and the
3 myriad regions were all happy. But I, the one man, am destitute of goodness, and really depend on the officers who have places about me to help my deficiencies, applying the line to my faults, and exhibiting my errors, thus correcting my bad heart, and enabling me to be the successor of my meritorious predecessors.
4 "Now I appoint you to be High Chamberlain, to see that all belonging to your department and my personal attendants are correct,

latering and waiting; 御—御車者, 'chari-
otters'; 僕—太僕羣僕, 'the chamber-
lains and all their subordinates'; 從—凡
從王者, 'all in close attendance on the
sovereign's person.' Choo Ho remarks that an-
ciently and in the Han dyn., 'all who were even
in mean offices about the sovereign were officers
of some rank' (士大夫). 承—順
'to accord with,' 'to obey.' 弼—匡正
'to support and correct.' 出入至不
欽—this is to be understood of the sovereigns.

發號施令.—Wang Gan-shih
observes that 'intimations of the imperial will
to serve as warnings were called 號 while
such as were to have the force of laws were
令' (發之以爲警戒之謂號
施之以爲法守之謂令)

3. The king declares how much more he must be
dependent on the good services of those about him.

繩愆糾謬—繩 is the 'line' by
which things are made straight. We naturally
look for a corresponding figure in 糾, but we
do not have it. It is taken here by Gan-kwò,
as —舉, 'to raise up,' 'to exhibit.' Lin Che-
k's understands by 繩, the 'thread which is
used in mending rents,' and he takes 糾 in the
sense of 察, 'to examine.' 先烈, 'the
former ardent and meritorious ones' are Wan
and Woo.

Pp. 4—8. The appointment of Pih-keung.—
His duties, and rules for their discharge.

大正—太僕正.—see the note on the
name of the Book. 正于至之臣.

—the 于 need not be translated. It merely
carries on the action of 正 to 臣.

羣僕侍御 are all the officers of the High
Chamberlain's department mentioned in the said
note. True taking 大正 as —太僕

侍御之臣，懋乃后德，交修不逮。○慎簡乃僚，無以巧言令色，便辟側媚，其惟吉士。○僕臣正，厥后克正；僕臣諛，厥后自聖；后德惟臣，不德惟臣。○爾無昵于儉人，充耳目之官，迪上以非

- that you may strive to promote the virtue of your sovereign, and together supply my deficiencies. Be careful in choosing your officers. Do not employ men of artful speech and insinuating looks, men whose likes and dislikes are ruled by mine, one-sided men and flatterers; but employ good men. When these household officers are correct, their sovereign will be correct; when they are flatterers, the sovereign will consider himself a sage. The sovereign's virtue and his want of it depend equally on those officers. Cultivate no intimacy with flatterers, nor get them to fill the offices of my ears and eyes;—they will lead their sovereign to

would yet include among them the various officers of the carriages who were under the

太馭 which, I said, we saw to be wrong

The 御 here can have nothing to do with the carriages. I have my doubts, indeed, whether it should be translated 'charioteers' in p. 2.

交修, 'cultivate together.' 交 is used as in 上下交征利, Mencius, I., Pt. 1, 1.

3. Wang Ts'ao says on it:—言左右之

前後非一人交以修君之

所不逮爲事也. 5. How Kung

should be careful in selecting his officers. 慎

簡乃僚, '僚, friends, companions,

lions, 'brother officers.' But we must take the

term here as meaning the subordinate officers

of the Chamberlain's dept. It would appear

from this that, under the Chow dyn., it was the

business of every head of a dept. to select all

the members of it. There were, no doubt,

general principles for his guidance, but it was

his to choose the men. 巧言令色, 便

辟—see Ans. XVI, 14. Ts'ao defines them

here:—便者, 順人之所欲, 辟

者, 避人之所惡. 吉士, —

in Bk. XIX, p. 2, —善士 or 君子.

其惟吉士—所用者惟吉士

而已. 6. The importance of having correct

men about the sovereign. 僕臣, we may

translate this here by 'household officers.'

后德惟臣, 不德惟臣, —Gan-kwó

says for this:—君之有德, 惟臣成

之, 君之無德, 惟臣誤之, 言

君所行善惡, 專在左右.

自聖, —sages himself, —自以爲聖

7. The king warns Kung again against

having anything to do with flatterers. 昵, —

see Pt. IV, Bk. VIII, Pt. II, 5. 儉人,

—see Bk. XIX, p. 20. 充耳目之

官, —to get them to fill the offices of the ears

and eyes. The king must in a great measure

hear with the ears and see with the eyes of those

about him. See the phrase 耳目之官

先王之典。○
 非人其吉，惟
 貨其吉，若時，
 瘝厥官，惟爾
 大弗克祗厥
 辟，惟予汝辜。
 ○王曰：嗚呼，
 欽哉！永弼乃
 后于彝憲。

- 8 disregard the statutes of the former kings. If you choose your men not for the goodness of their personal qualities, but for the sake of their bribes, the offices will thus be all made of no effect. Your great want of reverence for your sovereign will be apparent, and to you I will impute the blame."
- 9 The king said, "Oh! be reverent! Ever help your sovereign to follow the regular laws of duty which he should exemplify."

in Men., VI., Pt. I., xv., 2.

8. *Let Keung choose his officers on the ground of what they are, and not for what they have or can give him.*

貨 is here — 賂, 'to bribe,' 'a bribe.' 非

人其吉，惟貨其吉，—this is addressed directly to Pih-keung.—If it be not the man in whom is the excellence, but it is the bribe in which you see the excellence. Gan-kwo missed the point and terseness of the language:

—若非其人，實吉良，惟以貨財配其吉良，以求入于僕侍之中。若時—如是，'thus.'

瘝—曠, 'to make void,' 'to leave as it were empty.' This is diff. from its use in Bk. IX.,

pp. 6, 17. Perhaps 瘝在. Bk. XII., p. 10,

should be explained in accordance with this text.

P. 9. *The conclusion.* 彝憲—常法, 'the regular or constant laws of conduct,' which the sovereign should observe.

CONCISE NOTE. The character of king Muh does not stand high with Chinese historians. Towards the end of his long reign, for 55 years are assigned to him, he took it into his head that he should travel, without any definite purpose of usefulness, all over the empire, wherever he could go. He did not prove the man that the critics say might have been expected from the language of his Charges to Keun-ya and Pih-keung. Lin Cho-ku thinks his fallings off have been exaggerated. To my mind these two addresses betray a tendency to exaggeration, and betoken a feebleness of mind.

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XXVII. THE PRINCE OF LEU UPON PUNISHMENTS.

詰刑度耄百享命惟 呂
四以作荒年國王呂 刑

- 1 I. In reference to the charge to *the prince of Leu*:—When the king had enjoyed the throne till he was the age of a hundred years, he gave great consideration to the appointment of punishments, in order to restrain *the people of all quarters*.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE. The two last Books, there was reason to believe, were to be referred to the commencement of king Muh's reign; this, we learn from the Book itself, was the work of its close, when the king was not less than a century old. During the half century that he occupied the throne, the House of Chow went on to decline. Acc. to Sze-ma Ts'een, the king would engage in hostilities with the wild tribes round about, contrary to the counsels of his advisers, losing consequently the former reverence with which they had regarded the sovereigns of Chow, and the good-will also of many of the princes. As to the character of his enactments about punishments, which were the work of his hundredth year, opinions are greatly divided, some critics condemning it so much that they cannot understand why Confucius gave the Book a place in the Shoo. I will reserve the expression of a judgment in the case till we have considered its different parts in detail.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—呂刑. 'The prince of Leu upon Punishments,' or 'The Punishments of the prince of Leu.' The Prefatory note says that 'Leu received the orders of king Muh to set forth the lessons of Hsia on the redemption of punishments, and there was made *LEE ON PUNISHMENTS*' (see page 13, n. 64). We can hardly say that any of this appears in the Book, for Leu, or the prince of Leu, is mentioned only once. The king is the speaker throughout. Nothing is said of Hsia. We may accept the tradition, however, that Leu was Muh's minister of Crime, and that the regula-

tions which the king announces had in the first place been digested by him.

呂 is to be taken as = 呂侯 'The prince of Leu,' being itself the name of a principality, the place of which cannot be clearly ascertained. The Book is quoted in the *Li Ke* several times, and in other works, by the name of 甫刑. 'The Punishments of the prince of Foo.' Indeed this was the prevailing name of it during the Han dynasty. The truth seems to be, that the descendants of the prince of Leu were appointed to the principality of Foo, and their territorial title was transferred to him and to this Book.

The Houses of Ts'ao (齊), Shih (申), Hsü (許), and Foo (甫), all traced their descent to Yao's president of the Four Emendances, surnamed K'ang (姜氏). He or his son was to the great Yu 'a minister who served the purpose of his heart and backbone' (心呂之臣). In this way the surname of 呂 arose among his descendants, and was retained by the princes of Ts'ao, the most distinguished family of them. Possibly the prince of Leu, with whom we have here to do, may have had the same title from his importance to king Muh. However this may be, 呂刑 was the older and the proper title of this Book. Mih Teih quotes it by that name. It was found in both the texts

CONTENTS: I confine myself for the present to the account of those given in the 'Complete Digest.'—Par. 1 is the historiographer's account of the circumstances in which these lessons on punishments were made. Parr. 2—12 relate the lessons of antiquity for the information of the judges and princes, being a historical résumé which it was important for them to be acquainted with. Par. 13 is addressed specially to the princes, admonishing them of the diligence and carefulness to be employed in the use of punishments. Parr. 14—20 tell them how they should proceed in that use so as to make punishments a blessing. Par. 21 insists again on the reverence with which punishments should be employed. The last par. is addressed to future generations, and directs them to the ancient models, that punishments may never be but a blessing to the empire. Throughout the Book, "virtue" and "exact adaptation" are the terms which carry the weight of the meaning. *Virtue* must underlie the use of punishments, and *exact adaptation* will be the manifestation of it (通

篇以德與中爲主德其本也中其用也)

It will be seen that I have divided the king's address into six chapters, each of which commences with the words—"The king said." This differs only in one trifling point from the arrangement of the 'Complete Digest.'

CH. I. P. I. INTRODUCTION:—THE TIME AND OBJECT FOR WHICH THE ANNOUNCEMENT ABOUT PUNISHMENTS WAS MADE.

惟呂命—this clause has no syntactical connection with the rest of the par. Ts'ao says that the characters are used in the same way as 惟說命 in 'The Charge to Yu,' Pt. II, p. 1; but the student will perceive that the cases are not at all analogous. 惟說命 is an integral

part of the par. where it stands, and supplies the nominative to the first verb in the par. which follows. We may suppose that the prince of Leu had received charge to digest the subject of punishments in acc. with his own views and those of king Muh; that he had done so; and that the king published the result as is subsequently narrated. In this way we may give 惟呂命 the meaning which appears in the translation.

It is not certain how the rest of the par. ought to be pointed. Should 耄 and 荒 be joined together and stand intermediately between what precedes and what follows, qualifying more especially what follows? or should we put a stop at 耄, joining it to 享國百年, and make 荒 an adv. qualifying 度? Gan-kwō took the former method, in which he is followed by Ts'ao, who says that 耄 is the designation of one who is old, with the weakness and mental disorders of age (老而亂之稱). 荒 he defines, after Gan-kwō, by 忽, 'sudden,' 'neglectful,' and

subjoins Mencius' account of it.—從獸無厭謂之荒. Pursuing the chase without satiety is what I call being wild;—see Men. I., Pt. II, iv. 7. On this construction, the two characters are strongly condemnatory of the king's character, and would go to show that the enactments about punishment which the Book relates were stigmatised by the historiographer as made by him in his dotage, and the licentiousness of his reign. Leu Tso-hien and Ch'in Leih, whose opinions are appended in Yung-ching's Shoo, construing 耄 and 荒 together like Ts'ao, yet endeavour to make them have a diff. bearing on the statement 度作刑 which follows;—but unsuccessfully.

Soo Shih adopted the second method of pointing which I have indicated. He put a stop at 耄, and joined 荒 to the verb 度 as an adv., signifying 'greatly';—referring, in support both of the construction and of that meaning of 荒, to the words of Yu in the 'Yih and Tsieh,' p. 8. 惟荒度土功. 'I kept planning with all my might my labour on the land.' I have followed this view in the translation. Ts'ao admits that it is ingenious and admissible (亦通), saying, however, that 'the character 耄 alone is one of condemnation' (耄亦貶之之辭). But in this latter criticism he is incorrect. We have the character used by Shun of himself in 'The Counsels of Yu,' p. 9, where it simply expresses the fact of his great age, and I do not think that we are to seek for any other meaning for it in the text.

The general rhythm of the par. also satisfies me that Shih's construction is to be preferred, unless indeed we should introduce a 詳 before 刑, as K'ang Shing does, but on insufficient authority. Thus taken, the historiographer in this par. indicates neither censure nor approbation of king Muh's labours on the subject of punishments; and this is a recommendation of the view.

It still remains to direct attention to the peculiarity of the language—享國百年 耄, which, on the analogy of Bk. XV., p. 4, et al., and most naturally too, would be understood as saying that king Muh occupied the throne for a hundred years. Such a view has its supporters. Wang Ch'ung, for instance, maintains it, in his 論衡卷一, 氣壽篇, adding that Muh lived altogether to the age of about 140. This cannot be admitted. Sze-ma Ts'oen says he was 50 when he succeeded to the throne, and that he reigned 55 years. 詰 has a meaning here intermediate between that in Bk. XX., p. 22, and that in XX., p. 11,—禁.

方。曰。有。尤。作。及。民。寇。義。奪。
○。若。訓。惟。亂。于。罔。賊。姦。攘。
王。古。蚩。始。延。平。不。鷗。允。矯。

- 2 II. The king said, "According to the teachings of ancient times, Ch'e-yew was the first to produce disorder, which spread among the common people, till all became robbers and murderers, owl-like in their conduct, traitors and villains, snatching and filching, dissemblers and oppressors.

Ch. II. Pp. 2-11. THE FIRST PART OF THE KING'S ADDRESS;—INTRODUCTORY. THE FIRST SIGN OF DISORDER IN THE EMPIRE; THE CASE OF THE PEOPLE OF MEAOU; HOW SUCH DEALT WITH THEM; AND HOW HE WENT ON TO LABOUR BY HIS MINISTERS FOR THE PEOPLE, BEGINNING WITH THE SUBJECT OF PUNISHMENTS. 2. Ch'e-yew, the first author of disorder in the empire.

若古有訓,—this clause is equivalent to the 曰若稽古, with which the Canons of Yao and Shun commence. 若 may be

taken with Woo Ch'ing, as 'an introductory particle.' Then 古有訓—From of old there are the lessons, Gauhil translates—'Selon les anciens documents.' But that is more than the text says. He adds in a note, 'These ancient documents are without doubt some books of history which subsisted in the time of king Muh.' Possibly so; but then we know nothing about them, their author, or their authority. There has been no allusion hitherto in the Shoo, if we except the words of Shun in the 'Yih and Teih,' p. 4, to anything anterior to the time of Yao; and here all at once king Muh carries us, as will be seen, three centuries farther back, even to before the year 1 of the calendared history of the empire. 始作

亂,—'first produced disorder.' 亂 indicates that the 'disorder' was 'rebellion,' resistance to the Powers that were of the time. 平

民,—'the quiet orderly people.' 寇賊

姦允,—see the 'Can. of Shun,' p. 20.

鷗義—the 鷗 (probably the owl) watches its opportunity, says Ch'ing, 'to dart on its prey.' So vividly are the ways of those robbers and murderers represented. 矯=詐

'dissemblers.' 虔 has several meanings in the dict., one or two of which would suit the connection here, while others are of an antagonistic meaning. Trias and Woo Ch'ing accept that of 劉=殺 'murderers,' which I have modified to distinguish it from 賊.

Ch'e-yew, to whom the bad eminence of being the first rebel is here assigned, can hardly be

considered a historical personage. The two characters of the name may be translated—'The Stupid and Extraordinary.' According to Sse-ma Tse-en, when the power of the descendants of Shin-nung, the second of the five Tsa, with whom he commences his history, was declining, great confusion prevailed, and the princes all turned their arms against one another. Then the star of Hwang-te began to rise, and the well inclined gathered around him as their leader. Of all the princes Ch'e-yew was the most violent and oppressive. He attempted to seize the imperial power, when Hwang-te took the field against him, and put him to death after three engagements, and himself superseded the House of Shin-nung. Many fables about dragons, mist, and the invention of the compass, have been mixed up by subsequent writers with the struggle between Hwang-te and Ch'e-yew.

One tradition, indeed, makes Ch'e-yew later than Hwang-te. Gan-kwō says he was 'the ruler of Kew-le' (九黎之君); and in the 國語, 楚語下, we read that 'Kew-le became disorderly and vicious during the decay of Shaou-haon' (及少皞氏之衰也, 九黎亂德). Now Shaou-haon was the son of Hwang-te. It is true that Gan-kwō says, on the next par., that 'Ch'e-yew was destroyed by Hwang-te;' but the impression which we get from the 國語 is that the speaker conceived of the first interruption of good order and virtue as having taken place in the time of Shaou-haon.

The authority of Confucius again is pleaded for making Ch'e-yew a common man, and the greediest of all men (蚩尤庶人之貪者). See Wang Ming-shing, *in loc.* See also the 16th chapter of Pienware's preliminary discourse, prefixed to Gauhil's Shoo-king, where he has given all the information that Lo Peih (羅泌) has collected about Ch'e-yew in his 路史.

I pass on from this par. to the next with two remarks.—First, It is not clear for what purpose king Muh commences his discourse of punishments with this mention of Ch'e-yew.

○民興胥漸
 泯泯焚焚罔
 中于信以覆
 詛盟虐威庶
 戮方告無辜
 于上帝監
 民罔有馨香
 德刑發聞惟
 腥○皇帝哀
 矜庶戮之不

- 4 those who could offer some excuse. The mass of the people were gradually affected by this state of things, and became dark and disorderly. Their hearts were no more set on good faith, but they violated their oaths and covenants. The multitudes who suffered from the oppressive terrors, and were in *danger of* being murdered, declared their innocence to Heaven. God surveyed the people, and there was no fragrance of virtue arising from them, but the rank odour of their *cruel* punishments.
- 5 "The great emperor compassionated the innocent multitudes who were in *danger of being* murdered, and made the oppressors feel the

極去陰之刑 'castration.'

The char. was originally written 黜. 越茲云云—this was the way in which they abused the four punishments just mentioned. K'ang-shing takes 麗 here—施—于此施刑并制; but I prefer to retain the meaning of 附, as in the translation.

民興胥漸—on the extent of 民 here, see on the next par. 漸 (read seen, 1st tone)—漸染 'were soaked and dyed.' The 胥—相, shows how the influence was communicated from one to another. 泯泯—昏 焚焚 (Shing edits 紛紛)—亂 罔中于信—中 is here—心 'the heart; the centre of the man.

Ch'in King says:—罔中于信 無中 心出於誠信者 信不由中 也 以覆詛盟—覆 'to turn upside down,' governs 詛 and 盟. I hardly

know how to construe Tsao's 相與反覆 詛盟而已. Shing quotes, in illustration of the sentiment, from the 左傳 隱三年 these words,—信不由中 實無益也 虐威庶戮—其

被虐威而陷于刑戮之衆 罔有云云—Comp. Bk. X, p.

11. On the meaning of 馨 see XXI, p. 3.

刑發聞惟腥—'what the punishments sent forth to be smelt was only a rank odour.' Tsao says:—而刑戮發聞 莫非腥穢

[For the first part of par. 3, we find in Mih's 尚同中—呂刑之道曰 苗民否用練折則刑惟作五殺之刑曰法 The critics say that 練 and 罰, 弗 and 否, 折 and 制 were all sounded like each other. Even if we should admit this, how do we have 則 for 以, and 殺 for 虐?

The same pass. appears in the Lo Ke, Bk. 繡衣 p. 3, in a form which is somewhat different still:—甫刑曰 苗民匪用命 制以刑 惟作五虐之刑 曰法.]

Pp. 5—13. How the Menmin were dealt with; the evils produced by them remedied; and the system of punishments in the empire put into a satisfactory state. 5. The important question in connection with this paragraph is as to the emperors whom we are to understand by 皇帝. K'ang-shing, followed of course by

威惟畏德明惟
寡有辭于苗德
帝清問下民鰥
鰥寡無蓋○皇
在下明明棐常
降格群后之逮
絕地天通罔有
下○乃命重黎
絕苗民無世在
享報虐以威遏

- terrors of his majesty. He restrained and finally extinguished the people of Meaou, so that they should not continue to future generations.
- 6 Then he commissioned Ch'ung and Le to make an end of the communications between earth and heaven, and the descents of spirits ceased. From the princes down to the inferior officers, all helped with clear intelligence the spread of the regular principles of duty,
- 7 and the solitary and widows were no more disregarded. The great emperor with an unprejudiced mind carried his inquiries low down among the people, and the solitary and widows laid before him their complaints against the Meaou. He sought to awe the people by his virtue, and all were filled with dread; he proceeded also to

K'ang Shing and Wang Ming-shing thought that in this par. and the next it was Chuen-hen who was the subject, after which the discourse turns to Yaou. Gan-k'ed, who is foll. by Woo Ch'ing, makes the emperor to be Yaou all through. Neither view is admissible. The things spoken of in par. 8, 9, can only be ascribed to Shun.

乃命 at the beginning of p. 8, connects it so closely with p. 7, that we can only understand Shun to be the 皇帝. And as there is no intimation of that 皇帝 being diff. from the person indicated by the same title in par. 5, we must believe that Shun who is the principal subject in all the rest of this chapter is there intended. This is the view of Ts'ao, after Lin Che-ke.

We get from what is said of the Meaou in these par. a higher idea of them and their prince than is commonly entertained. From king Muh's language I judge that Shun had in him a powerful rival, and that the struggle which lasted through the reigns of Yaou, Shun, and Yu was of a dynastic nature. The chief of San-meau was more than the head of a barbarous horde. He was a dangerous rival for the throne. The 'people' mentioned in p. 4, were probably the people of the empire generally.

皇帝至不辜.—we must take 庶幾 here as in the last par. 遏絕

云云.—the measures referred to in the 'Can. of Shun,' pp. 12 and 27, are thus described. The

'Daily Explanation' gives:—竄其君于三危分垓其黨以遏絕有苗之民而不使其繼世在下國以貽百姓之害焉.

6. 乃命至降格.—this par. seems to interpose a difficulty in the way of the view which I have adopted above, that it is Shun who is to be understood as 'the emperor' in all this chapter. We read nothing in the Shoo of his appointing any ministers to do the work here spoken of. No Ch'ung and Le were officers of his. Nor do they appear among the ministers of Yaou, though it is attempted to identify Ch'ung with He (羲) and Le with Ho (和).

The passage formed the subject of a conversation in the lifetime of Confucius, between king Ch'ou (昭王; B.C. 514—485) of Tsao and one of his ministers, called Kwan Yih-foo (觀射父). 'What is meant,' asked the king, 'by what is said in one of the Books of Chow about Ch'ung and Le, that they really brought it about that there was no intercourse between heaven and earth? If they had not done so, would people have been able to ascend to heaven?' (周書所謂重黎實使天地不通者何也若無然民將能登天乎) The minister replied

that that was not the meaning of the language at all, and he proceeded to give his own view of it at great length, and to the following effect:—Anciently, the people attended to the discharge of their duties to one another, and left the worship of spiritual beings—seeking intercourse with them, and invoking and effecting their descent on earth—to the officers who were appointed for that purpose. In this way things proceeded with great regularity. The people minded their own affairs, and the spirits minded theirs. Tranquillity and prosperity were the consequence. But in the time of Shaoon-haou, through the lawlessness of Kew-le, a change took place. The people intruded into the functions of the regulators of the spirits and their worship. They left their duties to their fellow-men, and tried to bring down spirits from above. The spirits themselves, no longer kept in check and subjected to rule, made their appearance all irregularly and disastrously. All was confusion and calamity, when Chuen-houh took the case in hand. He appointed Ch'ung, the minister of the South, to the superintendency of heavenly things, to prescribe the rules for the spirits, and Lo, the minister of Fire (or of the North), to the superintendency of earthly things, to prescribe the rules for the people.

(命南正重司天以屬神命火正(一北正)黎司地以屬民). In this way both spirits and people were brought back to their former regular courses, and there was no uninvolved interference of the one with the other. This was the work described in the text,—the bringing to an end the communication between earth and heaven. Subsequently, the chief of San-maou showed himself a Kew-le redoubt, till Yao called forth the descendants of Ch'ung and Lo who had not forgotten the virtue and function of their fathers, and made them take the case in hand again.

From the details of this strange passage of which I have given a summary, it would appear that the speaker considered that the Ch'ung and Lo of the text were ministers of Yao, descended from those of Chuen-houh; and this has given rise to the opinion which I have alluded to on p. 3, of 'The Canon of Yao,' that this was the ancestry of the minister Ho and Ho who are mentioned there.

That opinion is without a title of satisfactory evidence. Acc. to Yih-foo's statements, Ch'ung's function was that of the minister of Religion, and Lo's that of the minister of Instruction, while Ho and Ho were simply ministers of astronomy, and their descendants continue to appear as such in the reign of Ch'ung-k'ang, the grandson of Yu, long after we know that men of other families were appointed to the two important ministries in question. Gauthier's speculations about the employment of the astronomer in the time of Yao, not only to calculate and observe the motions of the heavenly bodies, but also to do away with conjurers, false worship, &c., fall to the ground;—see 'Le Chou-king,' p. 292, n. 1. He says also, that as Ch'ung and Lo are the same as Ho and Ho, if we suppose that Shun is the emperor spoken of here, we must assume that he gave those officers a new commission. But if we were to allow that it is Yao who is spoken of, which I have shown on the last par. to

be inadmissible, we should have the same difficulty with the statement of which I began this note. Ch'ung and Lo are nowhere in the previous parts of the Shoo, or in any other reliable documents of history, mentioned as officers of his, any more than of Shun. I do not see that any light can be thrown on the passage. The statements of Kwan Yih-foo in the 國語 are entitled to little or no consideration.

羣后之逮在下.—I have translated this and the rest of the par. after Teao. The 'Daily Explanation' gives for it:—當其時有土之諸侯及在下之百官皆精白其心輔助常道民之順是道者則匡正之慶道悖是刑威之典為輔助常道賞之具其時好惡明賞善則雖蒙福亦未有蔽而不伸者. The meaning is, that through the reforms introduced by Ch'ung and Lo, a general reformation among all the higher classes was produced. Princes and inferior officers co-operated with those ministers, and the way was opened for the poorest and most helpless of the people to make their complaints and distresses known to the emperor. A foundation is thus laid for the 皇帝清問下民, with which the next par. commences. It will be observed how all this agrees with the view of little less than a dynamic struggle between Shun and the Meou.

[K'ang Shing follows 罔有降格 with 皇帝清問, and edits to the end of p. 8 on a very unsatisfactory authority, that of Mih Teih, in whose 尚賢中, we read:—呂刑道之曰, 皇帝清問下民, 有辭有苗, 曰羣后之肆, 下明明不常, 鰥寡不蓋, 威維威德明維明乃名三, 后恤功於民伯夷降典哲, 民維刑禹平水土主名山, 川稷隆播種農殖嘉穀三, 后成功維假於民.]

P. 7. How Shun proceeded to remedy and remove the evils inflicted by the Meou. 清心— with a clear mind. Teao gives 虛心 for it,—with an unprejudiced mind. 辭 is here—訟辭, 'pleas,' 'accusations.' 德威云云.—this is understood to be a de-

成嘉播山惟降于三明。
功穀種川刑典民后○
惟三農稷土禹折伯恤乃
殷后殖降名平民夷功命

8 enlighten them by his virtue, and all were enlightened. And he charged the three chiefs to labour with compassionate anxiety in the people's behalf. The baron E delivered the statutes of ceremony, to prevent the people from rendering themselves obnoxious to punishment. Yu reduced to order the water and the land, distinguishing by name the hills and rivers. Tseih spread abroad a knowledge of husbandry, so that the people could largely cultivate the admirable grains. When the three chiefs had accomplished their

scription of Shun's method of governing the people, in opposition to the wicked ways of the Mesou. Ts'ao says:—苗以虐爲威。

以察爲明。帝反其道以德威。而天下無不畏以德明。而天下無不明。 These clauses

are quoted in the *Le Ke*, Bk. 表記, p. 34.

where it is added 非虞帝其孰能如此乎. Ch'in Sui-k'ao remarks that this is a clear testimony that Shun is the emperor spoken of. It certainly shows that that opinion has the 表記 on its side, whatever weight may be attached to it.

P. 8. *Hue Shun* proceeded in the work of government by means of his ministers. The 'three后' princes or chiefs, are those immediately mentioned.

惟功于民—致憂民之功. 'to carry out their merits in painful anxiety for the people.' This is Ts'ao's explanation of the phrase, and is better than Woo Ch'ing's, who says:—恤功以民事爲憂也. 伯夷至惟刑—伯夷, see 'The Can. of Shun,' p. 23. The 'statutes' which E delivered were of course those of what are there called 'the three ceremonies,'—all the canons of religious worship. I am not able to construe 折民惟刑. Kan-

kwé defines 折 by 斷, 'to decide,' and gives for the whole:—伯夷下典禮教民, 而斷以法, understanding 刑 to mean 'the laws' of propriety or ceremony. But such a meaning of 刑 may be at once rejected in

this place. Soo Shih, Wang Kang-chin (王綱振), and a host of critics, go about in vain to defend it by trying to show that rules of propriety and penal laws are essentially the same thing;—see the 集傳 and the 集說. Ma Yung

and Kang Shing seem to have read 哲 (一哲) 'wise,' 'knowing.' Taking that term here as a verb, we get the meaning—'and made the people wise on the subject of punishments;' in which interpretation few will acquiesce. Wang Ming-shing, defending this reading, says:—智民

者民愚無知, 今道之以禮, 是智其民. But he thus avoids saying anything on 惟刑. Ts'ao gives for the

clause—以折民之邪妄, 'to cut off the perversity of the people,' in the same way eschewing the most perplexing characters. The 'Daily Explanation,' however, after extending his words just quoted, adds—使不入于

刑辟. Woo Ch'ing comes nearest to an

admissible construction of the passage:—伯

夷教民以禮, 民入于禮, 而

不入于刑, 折絕斯民入刑

之路. 'The baron E taught the people the

rules of ceremony, so that they were observers of propriety, and did not pursue punishable ways, thus shutting up the path by which the people, entering on it, would have been led to punishment.' The translation follows this interpretation.

主名山川.—superintended the naming of the mountains and rivers. Kang Shing gives a more specific meaning to 主, making it—立山川之主, 'he appointed the spirits who should preside

于民。○^九士制
 百姓于刑之
 中，以教祗德。
 ○穆^上穆在上，
 明明在下，灼
 于四方，罔不
 惟德之勤，故
 乃明于刑之
 中，率乂于民

- 9 work, it was abundantly well with the people. The minister of Crime exercised among the people the restraint of punishments, in exact
 10 adaptation to each offence, to teach them to reverence virtue. The greatest gravity and harmony in the sovereign, and the greatest intelligence in those below him, thus shining forth to all quarters of the empire, all were rendered diligent in cultivating their virtue. Hence, if anything more were wanted, the clear adjudication of punishments effected the regulation of the people, and helped them to observe the

over the mountains and rivers, and arranged their sacrifices.' This is not necessary. Ying-ta observes that the hills and rivers being as old as heaven and earth themselves, they ought to have had names before this; but Yu's regulation of the waters constituted a new era. Old things were passed away, and the names of those objects were perhaps lost, so that Yu named them anew. Certainly, the oldest names of the mountains and streams of a country are those given by the first inhabitants; as the Chinese believe that their hills and rivers got their names from Yu, this is to us a strong evidence that the country was first peopled, or began to be occupied, in his time. On the work of Tsoih, see 'Can. of Shun,' p. 12. His appointment there has precedence of that of the baron E, and so has that of Kao-u-yaou as the minister of crime. This is a not unimportant point of difference between the more ancient document and these statements of King Muh. 降, — sent down; 'born' = 'taught the knowledge of.'

農 is taken as 厚, as in 'The Great Plan.' 殖—生 惟殷于民—殷—盛, 'affluent,' 'abundant,' or, as a noun, 'affluence,' 'prosperity.' The 'Daily Explanation' says: 一般富庶之意也.

P. 9. The appointment of the minister of Crime, and the object of it. The minister of Crime was Kao-u-yaou. In the 'Can. of Shun,' p. 20, as here, he is simply called 士. [Under the Han dynasty, however, the passage appears with 爰 instead of 士.] 制百姓于刑之中, — 'restrained—regulated—the people in the midst of punishments,' i.e., surrounded them with punishments. This was done, however, not with the design of punishing them,

but, as is subjoined, 'to teach them to reverence virtue,' so that punishments should be unnecessary. Keang Shing edits 衷; and he and others make the word emphatic, meaning 'punishments exactly adapted to the degree of the offence' (不輕不重之誼). This is refining; but it may be admitted.

From King Muh's thus separating Kao-u-yaou from the 'three princes' in the last par., both emperors and people have at diff. times been led to place the minister of Crime on a lower level than the other great ministers of State. Kao-u-yaou was certainly no inferior man with Shun. Nor was he so in the estimation of Muh. He is mentioned by him last, as it was his object to make all his previous statements converge to the subject of punishments.

P. 10. The happy results of this govt. of Shun.

穆穆在上 is descriptive of Shun; 明明在下, of his ministers. These two clauses are the subjects of the next—灼于四方; and the effects on all the people are told in 罔不惟德之勤. Notwithstanding all this happy influence on the people, there was yet room for the warning use of punishments, as intimated in 故乃明云云. This is the common interpretation of the paragraph. The 刑之中 here is more favourable to the pregnant meaning of the 中, on which I have spoken in the last par. The only critic of note who takes a diff. view of the several clauses is Woo Ching. He takes them all after 明明在下, as

元德惟言罔富惟訖典裴
命自克在有一敬訖于獄葬。
配作天身擇忌于威非○

- 11 regular duties of life. In examining criminal cases, the officers executed the law not only against the powerful, but also against the wealthy. They were all reverence and caution. They had no occasion to make choice of words in reference to their conduct. The virtue of Heaven was attained to by them; from them was the determination of so great a matter as the lives of men. In their low sphere they yet corresponded to *Heaven*, and enjoyed its favour."

descriptive of the ministers and princes.—
四方諸侯皆惟德之勤故
能明于臯陶刑之中導
民爲善禁民爲惡民之
葬者皆順法而刑不用 This
is ingenious; but the ordinary view is to be preferred.

P. 11. *The impartiality of the administration of justice under Shun.*

典獄—典獄之官, 'the officers presiding over criminal cases,' under Kanu-yaou.

非訖(一盡)于威惟訖于富—非惟得盡法於權勢之家亦惟得盡法於賄賂之人言不爲威屈不爲利誘. "they not only carried out

the law against the powerful, but also against those who offered bribes, i.e., they were neither bent by terrors nor seduced by gain." This seems to be the meaning, tho' the language has been variously interpreted. Lin Che-k'o, for instance, makes it an indignant expression of contempt against minions of justice, especially among the Meiou, who gratified their own spleen and pride by the terrors with which their office invested them, or sought to enrich themselves by taking bribes.—凡典獄之吏

非欲誅殺以立威則欲納
賄以致富若苗民之臣所謂
謂庶威者訖于貨也威者常
奪貨此皆獄吏之常態也

罔有擇言在身—在躬無
一不可以告人有不必擇
而後言者. 'in their persons—conduct

—there was nothing which they could not tell, nothing about which it was necessary first to

make choice of words, and then to speak.'

惟克云云.—It would seem necessary to explain these clauses of the officers in criminal cases. Gan-kwō did so, and expounds:—凡明於刑之中無擇言在身必是 (It will be seen he does not interpret the par. historically) 惟能天德自爲大命配享天意在於天下. This is not very perspicuous, but by the

help of Ying-tā's paraphrase and glosses we can see that the pass. was supposed to say 'that all judges, with the reverence and caution mentioned, being just and impartial like Heaven, made for themselves a great decree, securing long life and other prosperity, responding to (享—當) the mind of Heaven, throughout the empire.' This is very vague and unsatisfactory.

Ts'ao interprets of the 典獄之官, after Gan-kwō, but confines himself, as is too much his wont, to vague and general phrases, so that we cannot tell what he understood by 大命 and 配享在下. I

have translated after the 'Daily Explanation,' which may be supposed to give the more definite expression of Ts'ao's views. Its language is.—夫天德無私能制人死生之大命今典獄者亦無私則爲能克天德而死生人則大命乃不在天而在我矣德自我克命自我作雖在下而豈不可配享于天哉. Wang Ch'ang-yun has called this interpretation in question, and instead of referring the clauses to 典獄, would refer them to Shun as the emperor who appointed Kanu-yaou, and whose careful provision for the administration of justice, was to be rewarded by the

享在下。○王曰
嗟四方司政典
獄非爾惟作天
牧今爾何監非
時伯夷播刑之
迪其今爾何懲
惟時苗民匪察
于獄之麗罔擇
吉人觀于五刑
之中惟時庶威

- 12 III. The king said, "Ah! you who superintend the government and preside over criminal cases throughout the empire, are you not constituted the shepherds of Heaven? Whom ought you now to survey as your model? Is it not Pih-e, spreading among the people his lessons to avert punishments? And from whom ought you now to take warning? Is it not from the people of Meaou, who would not examine into the circumstances of criminal cases, and did not make choice of good officers who should see to the right apportioning of the five punishments, but chose the violent and bribe-snatch-

possession of the empire long continued, and the favour of Heaven. He supports his explanation of 元命 as 一國, by 厥惟廢

元命 in Bk. XIV., p. 5., and that of 配

享在下 by 克配上帝 in 'The

Tao-k'ia,' Pt. III., p. 3., and by 配天其澤

in Bk. XIV., p. 8. The editors of Yang-ching's

Shoo mention his view with approbation, but

do not positively decide in favour of it. His

interpretation of 元命 is better supported

than that in the translation; but I cannot bring

myself to admit that King Muh turns here to

speaking, either historically or by way of admonition,

of sovereigns generally.

Ch. III. P. 12. THE KING ADDRESSES THE

PRINCES AND OFFICERS OF JUSTICE ON THE

GROUND OF THE STATEMENTS WHICH HE HAS

MADE, AND URGES THEM TO TAKE THE SHEPHERDS

AS THEIR MODEL, AND TO LOOK TO THE MEADU AS

A WARNING. 四方司政典獄, —from

Gan-k'wé downwards, the critics all take this as

a designation of the 諸侯 or 'princes,' so

that the king is addressing not them and their

officers of justice, but them only. The view is

to my mind very questionable. It is grounded on

the appellation of 'shepherds of Heaven,' which

follows. That is often given, no doubt, to the

princes who rule, —to the sovereign per se, and

and to all who hold appointments under him;

but why may we not suppose that it is here

extended to judges also, whose decisions should

always be according to the truth, —according to

the mind of God? 監—監法 'to

consider and imitate.' This determines the meaning of 懲 which is in opposition to it, as—

懲戒 'to condemn and beware of,' 'to take

as a warning.' 非時 (—是) 伯夷

播刑之迪, —there is here the same difficulty

which we found in trying to explain the

折民惟刑 of par. 8. Perhaps the 迪,

in the sense of 'leading' (開導), is appropriate

to the functions of E, whose rules of ceremony

and propriety might be considered as designed

to avert men from punishments and punishments

from them. So, it will be seen, I

have translated 刑之迪. This is putting

some stress on the characters, but it gives a

more satisfactory explanation of the text than

any of the constructions proposed by the critics.

Gan-k'wé takes 迪—道, and gives for the

whole:—言當視是伯夷布刑

之道而法之. So, K'iang Shing:—

非是伯夷施刑之道乎. The

'Daily Explanation' seems to get, by a round-

about process, to the same conclusion with

myself:—惟時伯夷制爲典禮

折民之入于刑而開導之

者無不至是所謂播刑之所

迪者此克作天牧爾之苗民

當監也惟時 (—是)

奪貨斷制五刑以
亂無辜上帝不蠲
降咎于苗苗民無
辭于罰乃絕厥世。
○王曰嗚呼念之
哉伯父伯兄仲叔
季弟幼子童孫皆
聽朕言庶有格命
今爾罔不由慰日
勤爾罔或戒不勤

- ers, who determined and administered them so as to oppress the innocent, until God could not hold them guiltless, and sent down calamity on Meaou, when the people had no plea to urge in mitigation of punishment, and their name was cut off from the world?"
- 13 IV. The king said, "Oh! lay it to heart. My senior uncles, and all ye my brethren and cousins, my sons and my grandsons, listen all of you to my words, in which, it may be, you will receive a most important charge. You will tread the path of satisfaction only by being daily diligent;—do not have occasion to beware of the want of diligence. Heaven, in its wish to regulate the people, allows us for a day to make use of punish-

—I have translated interrogatively here, in response to the previous question.

匪察于獄之麗—this has reference to the 越茲麗刑并制 of p. 8. Literally the characters mean—they did not examine into the obviousness of criminal cases, i.e., they did not seek to find out either the real criminals or the degree of guilt. From this to the end of the par., we have a striking instance of the long sentences of the Shoo.

至無辜.—K'ang Shing's comment on this is brief and clear:—不選擇善人使觀于五刑之中正惟是衆特威奪貨之人任之使斷制五刑以亂罰無辜上帝不蠲—蠲—潔, 'clean;' as a verb, 'to consider clean,' 'to acquit.'

乃絕厥世—this has reference to the 苗民無世在下, of p. 5. What was there ascribed to Shun is here ascribed to God: 'showing,' says Sun Ke-yew, 'that Shun was only the minister of Heaven's justice.'

Ch. IV. P. 13. THE KING ADDRESSES HIMSELF TO THE PRINCES OF THE SAME SURNAME WITH HIMSELF, AND CALLS THEM TO CO-OPERATE WITH HIM IN THE DILIGENT AND CAREFUL ADMINISTRATION OF PUNISHMENTS.

伯父, —see on Br. XXIII., p. 8. 伯兄, 仲叔, 季弟 —these were all the king's cousins, his 兄弟. Brothers may also be included. On 伯, 仲, 叔, and 季, see Con. Ana., XVIII., xi. Both Grubil and Medhurst are wrong in taking 仲叔 together, as meaning 'junior uncles,' 'uncles oncles paternels cadets.' 幼子, 童孫—when we consider that king Muh was now a hundred years old, he may very well have had grand-children who were high in office or rulers of States. [K'ang Shing reads 儻 and not 童, arguing that 童 was properly the designation of 'a mental' or 'servant,' and 儻 that of 'a young person.' There is a note in the dict., under 儻, to the same effect, where it is added that in the lapse of time, through inadvertence and error, the characters have changed meaning.] 庶有格命

天齊于民，俾我一日，非終，惟終在人，爾尚敬逆天命，以奉我一人，雖畏勿畏，雖休勿休，惟敬五刑，以成三德，一人有慶，兆民賴之，其

ments. Whether crimes have been premeditated, or are unpremeditated, depends on the parties concerned;—do you deal with them so as reverently to accord with the mind of Heaven, and serve me, the one man. Though I would put them to death, do not you therefore put them to death; though I would spare them, do not you therefore spare them. Reverently apportion the five punishments, so as to complete the three virtues. Then shall I, the one man, enjoy felicity; the people will look to you as their sure dependence; the repose of such a state will be perpetual."

—T'ao, after Gan-kwō, defines 格 by 至，=

至善 or 至當; and I have translated accordingly. K'ang Shing, after K'ang-shing, defines 格 by 登, so that 格命=壽考, 'longevity.' This view may be rejected without hesitation. Nor does another advocated by See Shih and Sui Ke-seuen, to which the editors of Yung-ching's Shoo are not disinclined, seem worthy of much more attention. According to

it, the 命=天命, and 庶有格命=庶幾可以格于上帝, as in Rk. XVI, p. 7. T'ao explains 爾罔不由

慰日勤 by 爾所以自慰者無不以日勤. 'Let the method which

you employ to find satisfaction—ease of mind—to yourselves be only that of daily diligence.' The 'diligence' must be understood with reference to the investigation of criminal cases and the administration of punishments; and hence it

is added—爾罔或戒不勤. When punishment was once wrongly inflicted from a want of carefulness, the evil was done; regret and repentance would be of little avail. Lin

Chu-k'ā interpreted 由 and 慰 differently, but not, I think, so well. He says:—爾當

無不由朕之言相慰勉而日愈勤. 'you should stimulate one another

from my words, and be daily more diligent.' [Gan-kwō read 日勤, which K'ang Shing

still edits. See Yung-tā's explanation of this text.] 天齊至在人，—these clauses

have been variously pointed and interpreted.

天齊于民 is spoken of the design of Heaven in the use of punishments. It is to bring the people to a state of adjustment and good order. So far, all agree; but here agreement ends. I have put a comma with T'ao after 日, and 俾我一日—俾我為一日之用耳, as in the translation.

Then 非終 and 惟終 are interpreted after the analogy of the same expressions in Rk. IX, p. 8; and it is very natural to do so, because the discourse there is all on the subject of the administration of the penal laws; and the meaning thus obtained well suits the general tenor of the paragraph. Gan-kwō pointed—天齊于民俾我一日非

終, 惟終在人; but his explanation of this is hardly intelligible:—天整齊

於下民使我為之一日所行, 非為天所終, 惟為天所

終, 在人所行. Of all who have adopted this pointing, Ch'in King may be said

to have succeeded best; and the editors of Yung-ching's Shoo commend his interpretation,

which is given in the 附錄, and is to this effect:—'However would by punishments regulate the people, and not being able to do so itself,

entrusts the work to me. But Heaven's heart of love for the people is inexhaustible, and I also cannot in one day complete the thing. For associates to complete it, I must look to others, and depend on them.'

On other attempts to give a consistent meaning to the

敬非姓爾刑告邦吁○寧
非人何安在爾有來王^{十四}惟
刑何擇百今祥土有曰永。

- 14 V. The king said, "Ho! come, ye rulers of States and territories, I will tell you how to make punishments a blessing. Now it is yours to give repose to the people:—what should you be most concerned about the choosing of? Should it not be proper men? What should you deal with the most reverently? Should it not be punishments? What should you calculate the most? Should it not be to whom they should reach?"

passage on this construction, I need not dwell. True has here outstript all the other commentators.

敬逆天命.—'reverently anticipate—meet—what Heaven has appointed; i.e., do you seek simply to do justice. This will be to fulfil the mind of Heaven, and also the best service you can render to me.

雖畏勿畏雖休勿休.—the advice here is the same with that given by king Ching to Keun-ch'in, Bk. XIX., p. 8; 畏

taken as 威, and then as 辟, 'punishment,' being the putting forth of the terrors of rule. It is here again—'many men, many minds.'

Most critics do not admit any reference in the words to the king's own wishes; and take the meaning to be substantially as Chin King gives it:—'In using punishments, although people seem to give a dread submission, do not you think that realized; though they praise you, do not you think what you have done worthy of praise. Never be weary or satisfied, and so your way and mind will be in accord with the inexhaustible heart of love belonging to the sovereign and to Heaven.'

K'ang Shing adds 祇事不怠 after 勿宥, and would exclude 惟敬五刑:—on very poor authority.

以成三德.—the 'three virtues' are those of 'The Great Plan,' p. 17,—the virtues of 'correctness and straightforwardness,' of 'strong government,' and of 'mild government.'

As Wang Yen says in the 集說:—'Punishments being light when they ought to be light, this would be "mild govt.," and the mildness would not be weak indulgence. Being severe when they ought to be severe, this would be "strong govt.," and the strength would not be oppression. Being intermediate between light and heavy, this would be "correct and straightforward govt.," and the correctness and straightforwardness would not degenerate to one-sidedness.' (刑當輕而輕以成柔德而柔不至於縱弛)

當重而重以成剛德而剛不至於苛暴介輕重之間以成正直而正直不至於偏倚。

The three concluding clauses all show the happy result of the princes' listening to the king's advice. Gan-hwé is wrong in taking 一人有慶—天子有善, and then making the other two clauses dependent on this.

Ch. V. Pp. 14—20. THE KING SHOWS ALL HIS PRINCES AND CHIEFS HOW THEY SHOULD PROCEED IN THE ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE SO AS TO MAKE PUNISHMENTS A BLESSING. This chapter must be considered the most important of the Book. Its contents are what is intended by the 荒度作刑 of par. 1. I suppose that the various things here announced in a general way by the king were all drawn out, and had been published, with the necessary details and explanations, by the prince of Leu.

P. 14. Preliminary address to all the princes.

吁來有邦有土—吁 is called in the dict. 疑怪之辭 'a particle of doubt and surprise.' We have had it ten times already in the Shoo, where our 'alas!' was always suitable. But that expression of feeling is not what we should expect here. Lin Che-k'ü makes the term on the contrary here expressive of joyful alacrity (吁來者歡而呼之使前也). We have the different readings of 于 and 於 (see).

有邦 (another reading is 國) 有土 may be considered as descriptive of the princes of the empire generally,—of the imperial surname and of others. K'ang Shing says that 有國 (so he reads) indicates the princes outside the imperial domain, and 有土, those having appanages within it; but I do not think we can thus discriminate the phrases. 告爾

何及造師辭簡于五、何度非兩造具聽五辭、
 何及造師辭簡于五、何度非兩造具聽五辭、
 何及造師辭簡于五、何度非兩造具聽五辭、

- 15 "When both parties are present, *with their documents and witnesses* all complete, let all the judges listen to the five-fold statements which may be made. When they have examined and fully made up their minds on those, let them adjust the case to one of the five punishments. If the five punishments do not meet it, let them adjust it to one of the five redemption-fines; and if these

祥刑—祥—'felicitous'; here, as a verb, 'to make felicitous.' 'Punishments,' says Ch'in Ya-yen, 'used not to distress or oppress the people, but to give them repose, are called 祥刑.' K'ang-shing read 詳, and interpreted it by 審察之, 'discriminating examination.' The two characters, 祥 and 詳, might very easily be confounded. [Mih Teli quotes the passage with 訟刑, which is evidently an error.] 何擇云云—we have here three questions, with the answers to them, given also interrogatively, as in the translation. To quote again from Ya-yen, —三言何者設為問辭以致其疑三言非者設為答辭以致其決何度非及—當何所謀度乎豈非刑之所當逮及者乎, 'what ought you to deliberate about and calculate? Should it not be as to those to whom punishments should reach?'

[K'ang Shing, professing to follow the text of Mih Teli, reads—在今而安百姓何擇非人何敬非刑何度不及。But Mih has—女何擇言人何敬不刑何度不及。Ming-shing says that Mih's writings are too full of erroneous characters to allow his text to be relied on, and that 非刑非及 is no doubt the true reading. That Mih did read the last clause—何度不及, however, is plain from the comment which he subjoins, —能擇人而敬為刑堯舜禹湯文武之道可及也。何度不及 would mean—'what can you plan which you may not reach?' This shows clearly

one of the differences between the usages of 非 and 及.]

P. 16. The manner of proceeding in hearing cases, and adjusting upon them. 兩造

具備—造—至, 'to come,' 'to appear,' and 兩造—the two parties interested—the plaintiff and defendant—having both appeared.

具—俱—'all,' 'completely,' 具備—'being fully provided,' i.e., having set forth all the particulars of their several cases. T'ao says—具備—詞證皆在。具備 means that the representations and witnesses are all there.

師聽五辭—師 is defined in the 集傳 by 衆, 'all'

K'ang Shing defines it by 主師, 'judges,' of whom there were four, mentioned in the Chow Lc. Bk. XXXIV, and who rank immediately after the 'minister of Crime.' Gao-k'ao fur 師聽 gives 衆獄官共聽. 'let all the judges hear in common.' The proper construction seems to be to take 師 in the

meaning of 'judge,' but in the plural. Chang K'ang-shing says:—The parties concerned should not be one-sided in their representations, and the judges should not be one-sided in listening to the case. If only one listened to it, his intelligence might be unequal to it, and his deliberations might be inadequate, and therefore the rule was made that all the judges should hear the case in common.' See the 集說

五辭—the five pleadings, i.e., the statements, with the evidence, on both sides, whether incriminating or exculpating. They are called 'five,' as the penalty might be one or other of the 'five punishments.' It is important to bear in mind that it is of cases of a serious nature, and punishable with those penalties that the king is speaking. T'ao says:—五辭麗於五刑之辭也。

五辭簡乎—簡—核其實, 'being

審惟來,惟反,惟過,過。正罰
克均,其貨,惟官,之○于不
之。其罪惟內,惟疵,五^{十六}五服

again are not sufficient for it, let them reckon it among the five cases of error.

- 16 "In settling the five cases of error there are evils to be guarded against;—being warped by the influence of power, or by private grudge, or by female solicitation, or by bribes, or by applications. Where such things are, the offence becomes equal to the crime before the judges. Do you carefully examine, and prove yourselves equal to every difficulty.

searched out to the very truth of them; 孚—

無可疑 'with no room for doubt.' 正

于五刑—正, 'to lay down straight,' here

—'to determine or adjust correctly,' i.e., with reference to the penalty with which the particular

crime should be visited. Fan Sze-lin observes that this does not intimate the ordering of the

punishment to be inflicted forthwith, but the registering of the sentence in a book (非

使用五刑只以此情辭

質正于刑書當於何等刑

加之也) 五刑不簡—the

meaning is, no doubt, what appears in the trans-

lation; but the exact force of the 簡 does

not readily appear. K'ang Si-lang, defines it,

both here and above, by 誠 'sincere,' 'true,'

and explains here by 所犯非其誠

無惡意而所爲惡也, 'the

crime was not really intended. There was the

criminal act, but not the evil intention.' The

text, however, does not say anything so specific;

and such a case, we may judge, should at

once be referred to the 'five cases of error.'

Literally we may translate the clause—'If the

five punishments be not examined out,' mean-

ing—if the result of investigation do not show

that one of these punishments should be em-

ployed. 五罰—the five fines,—the

five redeemable cases. These are detailed be-

low. The king speaks evidently of a system

that had been established. We cannot infer

from the text that it had been established by

himself, though it may have been so. This point

will be considered by and by. 五罰

不服—if the five fines will not produce

submission; i.e., if such a sentence will not be

acquiesced in as just. 五過—the five

classes of error, i.e., the various cases of inad-

vertence. What should ensue on the adjudi-

cation of any charge to be so ranked, does not

appear. True, after Gan-kwò, says the result

would be pardon and dismissal (質于過

而宥免之). Such was the rule pre-

scribed to Kaou-yau by Shun. See 'The Coun-

acts of Yu,' p. 12.—宥過無大, 'you

pardon inadvertent faults however great.' The

rule of the Chow dynasty seems to have been

more stringent. Wang Gan-shih, as quoted in

the 集說, says that various penalties men-

tioned in the Chow Le, such as the stocks,

exposure on a public street, labouring on public

works, were the punishments for crimes of error,

which were not freely pardoned. Some degree

of criminality must have been supposed to attach

to the cases which were thus punished.

P. 16. Caution to the judges against being

swayed in their decisions. The text speaks only

of offences that might be committed in the last

of the proceedings described in the *pro. par.* ;

but the same influences might work their evil

effect in the other measures as well. The judges

might reduce crimes from any one grade to that

beneath, or raise them, making them out greater

than they really were, from the same improper

motives. The warning is given with reference

to the classing offences as cases of error merely;

but it was intended to be understood with a

general application. 五過之疵—

'the maladies of the five cases of error.' Evi-

dently what is intended are the evil influences by

which offences that were not cases of error were

yet determined and registered as such. Gan-shih

mis took the meaning entirely, and rendered—

'Ces cinq sortes de fautes sont occasionnées,

1° par ce qu'on craint un homme en place. &c.

惟官至惟來—the 'maladies' are

here stated so concisely that it does not seem

possible to give anything like a literal transla-

tion of the text. The nearest I can come to it

would be—The maladies that may affect the

determining of the five cases of error are the

influence of authority, revenge, oldest influence,

○五刑之疑有赦，五罰之疑有赦，其審克之，簡孚有衆，惟貌有稽，無簡不聽，具嚴天威。○墨辟

- 17 "When there are doubts as to the infliction of any of the five punishments, that infliction should be forborne. When there are doubts as to the infliction of any of the five fines, it should be forborne. Do you examine carefully, and overcome every difficulty. When you have examined, and many things are clear, yet form a judgment from studying the appearance of the parties. If you find nothing on examination, do not listen to the case any more. In everything stand in awe of the dread majesty of Heaven.

bribes, and solicitations.' The 'Daily Explanation' for 官 gives—畏他人之權勢，不敢爭執；for 反報復已內，開求惟而不怨，而不本公平；for 貨廣干其罪，聽受女謁之言，for 來凡有罪，請囑不能謝絕。其罪與犯人同。' the offence of this is to be classed with that of the criminal in connection with whom it is shown. 其

審克之一，do you distinguish and overcome it; 'i.e., judge carefully, and so that your judgments shall be correct, superior to all difficulties and temptations. Woo Ch'ing says:—審克謂審之而能得其審也。

P. 17. The care which should be exercised in coming to a conclusion in doubtful cases.

五刑之疑有赦。—If we give to 赦 here its full meaning, as Woo Ch'ing and some other critics do, and say that where it was doubtful whether a crime should be adjudicated to one of the five punishments, it was to be absolutely pardoned, and the charge dismissed, we go against the rule in p. 13, 五刑不簡，正于五罰, and the direction moreover would be against all reason. With Gan-k'wé, Lin Che-k'wé, Ts'ao, and the host of commentators, therefore, I adopt a lighter meaning of 赦, as in the translation. Lin says:—五刑之疑，尙不免於罰，而謂之赦者，

蓋雖以金自贖，而幸其不至殘潰其肌體，是亦赦也。

簡孚有衆，—the points on which certainly has been attained by investigation may be many. This construction seems preferable to that adopted by Gan-k'wé, —簡核誠信，有合衆心. 'the investigation, conducting to an assured faith, may agree with the views of the multitude.'

Notwithstanding this result, the king would still have the judges carefully study the countenance and demeanour of the accused. Those may convey an impression of innocence, which will outweigh contrary appearances and presumptions.

無簡不聽。—if there be no result from examination, there should be no more listening to the case. As Ts'ao puts it, 然聽獄以簡核爲本，苟無情實在所不聽. [K'ang

shing, on the authority of the 說文, instead of 貌 reads 緇, which he makes out to mean 'carefully,' 'minutely' (微細). This leads him to construe the clauses 其審克之, 簡孚有衆, and 惟緇有稽, 無簡不聽. But 其審克之 is more suitable as the termination of a par. or sentence, than at the commencement.] 具

嚴天威。—具—俱 'all,' 'in all.' 嚴—敬, 'to reverence.' Chung Kow-shing says: —具俱也，謂上所言皆敬天威。

疑赦其罰百鍰
 閱實其罪剕辟
 疑赦其罰惟倍
 閱實其罪剕辟
 疑赦其罰倍差
 閱實其罪宮辟
 疑赦其罰六百
 鍰閱實其罪大
 辟疑赦其罰千
 鍰閱實其罪墨

18. "When in a doubtful case the infliction of branding is forborne, the fine laid on instead must be 600 ounces *of copper*; but you must first have satisfied yourselves as to the crime. When the case has reference to the cutting off the nose, the fine must be double this, the same care having been taken to determine the crime. Where the penalty would be cutting off the feet, the fine must be 3,000 ounces;—with the same careful determination of the crime. Where the penalty would be castration, the fine must be 3,000 ounces;—with the same careful determination of the crime. Where the punishment would be death, the fine must be 6,000 ounces;—with the same careful determination of the crime. Of crimes that

P. 18. *The law of the redemption of punishments.*

其罰百鍰—the fine is a hundred *huan*. The *huan* was equal to six *liang*, i.e., six Chinese ounces. Some uncertainty attaches, however, to this estimate. K'ang Shing inclines to the view that 100 *huan* were equal only to 3 *ta*, or Chinese pounds. The coins or metal in which this and all the other fines were paid is called by Gan-kwō 黃鐵, 'yellow iron.' Ying-ta observes that 'anciently, gold, silver, copper, and iron, all went by the general name of *kin* (金). Gan-kwō calls the metal spoken of here 黃鐵, and that intended in 'The Can. of Shun,' p. II, 黃金; but in either case he means copper' (銅). It was that metal which was required anciently in all redemption payments. Medhurst makes the metal to be 'silver,' for which he has no authority. Gaubil says he knows nothing about whether the fine was paid in copper or in some other metal. There has never been but one opinion on the subject, so far as I am aware, among the Chinese themselves.

其法惟倍—倍—'double,'—1,200 ounces.

剕—則足, 'cutting off the feet.' This was the third of the five punishments, and not 則, or 'cutting off the ear,' as we might perhaps infer from p. 3, if there be no error of the text there. Cutting off the ear

would not be a greater penalty than cutting off the nose.

倍差—倍而又差. But the amount is not at all certain. Ts'ao says it is 500 *huan*,—double the previous fine, and a degree (次) more. Ma Yung makes it 333

huan and one third of a *huan* (倍者倍二百爲四百, 差又加四百之三分一, 凡五百三十三鍰, 三分鍰一也). K'ang Shing thinks this estimate excessive, and reduces it to 333 *huan* and a third (倍差者于倍百鍰爲二百之外, 又差出二百之三分二, 凡三百三十三鍰, 三分鍰之一). The truth is, we do not know certainly the proportion denoted by 差. I apprehend that 倍從 in Men., VI., Pt. I., xi. 7, is another form of the 倍差 here, and therefore agree with Ts'ao. 宮辟 is called the 淫刑, 'punishment of illicit intercourse.' It was inflicted on the male by castration, and on the female by close confinement (男子割勢, 婦人幽閉). 五刑之屬三千—'pertaining to the five punishments

罰之屬千，劓罰之屬千，剕罰之屬五百，宮罰之屬三百，大辟之罰其屬二百，五刑之屬三千，上下比罪，無僭亂辭，勿用不行，惟察惟法，其審克之。○
上刑適輕下服，下

may be redeemed by the fine in lieu of branding there are 1,000, and the same number of those that would otherwise incur cutting off the nose. The fine in lieu of cutting off the feet extends to 500 cases; that in lieu of castration to 300; and that in lieu of death to 200. Altogether, set against the five punishments there are 3,000 crimes. *In the case of others not exactly defined, you must class them with the next higher or next lower offences, not admitting assumptive and disorderly pleadings, and not using obsolete laws. Examine; act lawfully;—judging carefully; and proving yourselves equal to every difficulty.*

- 19 "Where the crime should incur one of the higher punishments, but there are mitigating circumstances, apply to it the next

there are 3,000 crimes.' Acc. to the Chow Le, Bk. XXXVI, on the duties of the 司刑, the crimes to be visited with the five punishments are stated to be 2,500, 500 being assigned to each penalty. By King Muh's enactments the total number of crimes was increased, but at the same time a larger number were classed as liable to the lighter penalties and fines, and a smaller number as liable to the heavier punishments. Thus the Chow Le makes 500 offences punishable with death; King Muh, only 200; against the 500 of the former, punishable with branding or cutting off the feet, he assigned in each case 1,000.

上下比罪—'above and below compare the offence.' This is understood to be spoken with reference to offences which did not come exactly under any statutory definition. Their proper place must be sought by comparison with other recognised offences of a heavier and a lighter character. The 'Daily Explanation' says:—法之所定有限，而人之所犯無窮，其有犯而無正律者，則以比之。罪疑于輕，則上刑比之；罪疑于重，則下刑比之。

以下刑比之。In such cases special caution was necessary, and therefore it is added—無僭亂辭，勿用不行。Tso says he does not understand these clauses, but they will admit the interpretation which appears in the translation.

不行—已革之法，'annulled laws' (舊有是法而今不行者) 惟察云云—Ervin Kiang Shing reads 其審克之 as the concluding clause of the paragraph, thereby admitting the force of the remark which I made on his mode of pointing par. 17.

P. 19. General principles affecting the determination of crimes and the adjudication of the punishment due to them

上刑至有權—上刑 denotes a crime, which, on a first and superficial view, would seem to require to be dealt with by one of 'the higher penalties'; but there are circumstances discovered on examination which 適輕, 'tend to a lighter consideration of it.' It must then 下服, 'be adjudicated to the penalty for offences of the next lower class.' The 'Daily Explanation

刑適重上服
輕重諸罰有
權刑罰世輕
世重惟齊非
齊有倫有要
○_{二十}罰懲非死
人極于病非
佞折獄惟良
折獄罔非在
中察辭于差

lower. Where it should incur one of the lower punishments, but there are aggravating circumstances, apply to it the next higher. The light and heavy fines are to be apportioned in the same way by the balance of circumstances. Punishments and fines should also be light in one age and heavy in another. To secure uniformity in this seeming irregularity, there are certain relations of things to be considered, and the essential principle to be observed.

20 "The chastisement of fines is short of death, yet it will produce extreme distress. They are not therefore persons of artful tongue who should determine criminal cases, but really good persons, whose awards will hit the right mean. Examine carefully where there are any discrepancies in the statements; the view which you were

defines 服 by 受刑 'to receive punishment.'

權 denotes properly 'the weight of a steelyard,' moved backwards and forwards along the arm as the thing weighed is light or heavy. This original meaning of the char. appears clearly in 輕重諸罰有權. K'ang Shing's exposition of the meaning is here terse and perspicuous—**本在上刑之科而情適輕則減一等治之** **本在下刑之科而情適重則加一等治之** **宜輕宜重有權焉不可執一也** **刑罰世輕世重**—the different circumstances of different times form the weights to be employed in determining the penalties to be adjudicated to crimes committed in them. The adjudicating minds, however, will be found to come to different conclusions. Thus Ying-ta quotes from the Chow Le, Bk. XXXV., near the beginning, that 'in a new country—i.e., immediately after a revolution—the punishments should be light; in a well-ordered country, moderate; and in a rebellious country, heavy' (刑新國用輕典平國用中典亂國用重典). K'ang Shing, again, quotes from Szeu King, 正論篇, that 'when a State is well governed, the punishments should be severe, and light when it is in

disorder' (治則刑重亂則刑輕).

This will always be; but an approximation to uniformity may be obtained by what is said in conclusion, **惟齊非齊有倫有要**. Wang Gan-shih, correctly and ingeniously, defines 倫 by 先後之序, 'the order of precedence and sequence,' and 要 by 衆體所會, 'that in which all the different numbers meet.'

P. 20. General observations on the character of the men who should act as judges, and on points to which they should specially direct their attention.

罰懲至在中, **良**, as opposed to **佞**, evidently denotes what we mean by 'good and honest.'

罔非在中 may be understood either of the awards of such men (輕重出入, 不失乎中), or of their character in judging (公正不偏, 無不在中). K'ang Shing takes the latter view, but the former is to be preferred. 察辭于差, 'examine pleas in difference; i.e., where a prisoner or a witness is making false statements, he will probably not be long or perfectly consistent with himself. Let the judge mark any discrepancy, and follow up from it his quest of the truth. 非從

中, 察辭于差, 'examine pleas in difference; i.e., where a prisoner or a witness is making false statements, he will probably not be long or perfectly consistent with himself. Let the judge mark any discrepancy, and follow up from it his quest of the truth. 非從

非從惟從 哀敬折獄 明啟刑書 胥占咸庶 中正其刑 其罰其審 克之獄成 而孚輪而 孚其刑上 備有并兩

determined not to follow you may see occasion to follow; with compassion and reverence settle the cases; examine clearly the penal code and deliberate with all your assessors, that your decisions may be all likely to hit the proper mean and be correct:—whether it be the infliction of a punishment or a fine, examining carefully, and mastering every difficulty. When the case is thus concluded, all parties will acknowledge the justice of the sentence; and when it is reported, the sovereign will do the same. In sending up reports of cases, they must be full and complete. *If a man have been tried on two counts, his two punishments must be recorded.*"

惟從—非從 may be considered as governed by 從. A judge should ever be open to the evidence, and not allow the impressions which he receives to be affected by foregone conclusions in his own mind. Gan-kwō connected this clause closely with the preceding, as does K'ang Shing:—"Follow up the inquiry from the point where discrepancy of statement has arrested your attention, and find out the truth. Having got the truth, do not follow the statement, but follow the truth" (既得其情, 非從其辭, 惟從其情).

This view has nothing to recommend it. 明

啟刑書胥占—'clearly open—(i.e., lay open, unfold. The literal signification is not that intended)—the book (or books) of punishment and mutually deliberate.' 占—

度, 'to deliberate,'—as if they were considering the oracles of divination.' 獄成而

孚—若是則獄成於下而民信之, 'in this way the case will be concluded below, and the people will believe—

have confidence in—the judgment.' 輪—

奏, 'to report, send up a statement of the case.' 而孚—獄輪於上而君信

之, 'when the case is reported, the sovereign will believe—have confidence in—the judgment.' K'ang Shing, after Gan-kwō, takes

the second 而 as—汝, and interprets the whole:—獄成而信矣乃輪汝

信于上, 'when the case is thus concluded,

and you have got to the truth of it, then present a memorial of your assured conclusion to the sovereign.' This is very harsh and unnatural.

其刑上備有并兩刑—the

'Daily Explanation' expounds this:—獄辭

又不可遺漏當其上奏須

備載其情辭或一人而犯

兩刑雖從重問擬亦必將

輕罪開列取自上裁方見

精詳謹慎之意

[In this chapter there are many good advices concerning the care and the methods with which justice should be administered. The principal thing, however, on which the king dwells is the redemption of punishments, and I fear he must

be left with the obloquy generally attaching with Chinese writers to his memory, as having been the first to introduce, at least on an extensive scale, the system of accepting money as a compensation for the most heinous offences.

He says, indeed, that the fine was to be exacted only where there was some doubt as to the justice of inflicting the punishment itself. China certainly, within the range of its history, was never the country where a government would, openly and without some glossing of the fact, take money as a satisfaction for transgressions of the law; but it is easy to see how grossly the regulations of King Meh were sure to be abused.

I cannot conceive the scheme here set forth to have emanated save from a weak and needy monarch. The prefatory note says that this Book develops and explains the laws of the Hsia dynasty for the redemption of punishment; but there is no intimation in the Book itself of such a thing, nor is the statement supported by any other authority. The student meets with

刑。呼敬之哉。官。伯族姓。朕言。多懼。朕敬于。刑。有德。惟刑。今天相民作。配在下。明清。于單辭。民之。亂罔不中聽。獄之兩辭。無。

- 21 VI. The king said, "Oh! let there be a feeling of reverence. Ye judges and chiefs, and all ye who my relatives are of the royal House, know all that I speak in much fear. I think with reverence of the subject of punishment, for the end of it is to promote virtue. Now Heaven, wishing to help the people, has made us its representatives here below. Be intelligent and pure in *hearing* one side of a case. The right ordering of the people depends on the impartial hearing of the pleas on both sides;—do not seek for private

the assertion continually; but there is really no evidence for it whatever;—it rests merely on the dictum of that note, for which moreover it would not be difficult to find another explanation.

The Book grounds itself in the history of Shun, and especially on his establishment of penal laws and the administration of them. Now, the redemption of punishments is mentioned by him. The notice is very brief. We are told that 'he gave delineations of the statutory punishments, and enacted banishment as a mitigation of the five great inflictions; with the whip to be employed for short-coming officers, and the stick for offending teachers, and money to be received for redeemable offences.' (See 'The Can. of Shun,' p. 11.) Whatever the offences were that might be redeemed with Shun, those deserving or seeming to deserve any of the five punishments were not among them. Nor does the Chow Le contain anything to indicate that prior to Muh the redemption of punishments was recognised by the emperors of the dynasty. To him belongs the bad distinction of this legislation.

Once introduced into China, however, the redemption of punishments has entered into the penal code of every subsequent dynasty. Two tables will be found in the preliminary matter to Sir George Staunton's translation of the Penal Code of the present Mwan-chow rulers of the empire, pp. 72, 73, giving the scale, first, of the pecuniary redemption of necessary redeemable offences, and second, of the redemption of others not necessarily redeemable, but made so on petition. According to the latter, the punishment of death may be compounded for on a graduated scale, according to the rank of the offender, rising from 1,500 ounces of silver for a private individual to 12,000 for an officer above the 4th rank. The scale for redemption from perpetual banishment is between 720 and 7,200 ounces. And that for temporary banish-

ment and blows with the bamboo is between 480 and 4,800 ounces. Great official corruption and depravation of the general morality must connect with such a code.]

Ch. VI. P. 21. THE KING AGAIN ADDRESSES THE PRINCES AND JUDGES GENERALLY, AND EXHORTS THEM TO REVERENCE, IMPARTIALITY, AND PURITY, IN THE ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE. 官伯族姓—by 官 and 伯 we may understand the 典獄 and 司政 of p. 12.

Ying-tz endeavours to show that 族姓 are to be taken, the former as meaning the princes who were cadets of the royal House, and the latter as those who were of other surnames. He says:—襄十二年左傳哭諸侯之例云異姓臨于外同族于禰廟是相對則族爲同姓姓爲異姓. But the whole of the passage will not support his inference. It is—

凡諸侯之喪異姓臨於外同姓於宗廟同宗於祖廟同族禰廟. There is thus no opposition in the passage between 姓 and 族. By 族姓 we are to understand the 伯父伯兄仲叔季弟幼子童孫 of p. 13. The passage in the 左傳 itself bears out this view. 有德惟刑—the 'Daily Explanation' paraphrases this by—刑爲不得已而用先王所以教民祇德者是有德惟刑而不當

或私家于獄
之兩辭獄貨
非寶惟府辜
功報以庶尤
永畏惟罰非
天不中惟人
在命天罰不
極庶民罔有
令政在于天

advantage to yourselves by means of those pleas. Gain got by the decision of cases is no precious acquisition; it is an accumulation of guilt, and will be recompensed with many evils:—you should ever stand in awe of the punishment of Heaven. It is not Heaven that does not deal impartially with men, but men ruin themselves. If the punishment of Heaven were not so extreme, the people would have no good government all under heaven."

以刑視刑也。I think this is probably the meaning; but the critics are far from being agreed in it. Gan-kwō, for instance, interprets from 朕言, 'My words are mostly those of warning. I feel reverently about punishments, and ought to employ mine but the virtuous to preside in their administration.'

今天至在下。—Ta'ao understands this as meaning that 'Heaven would by punishments aid the people, and you, who are in the office of judges, may be said to correspond to it below' (天以刑相治斯民汝責任責作配在下). The meaning which I have given requires less of supplement, and equally lays a foundation for the advice that follow. See Wang K'ang-wei, is he. 單辭 is supposed by Ta'ao to mean 'statements unsupported by witnesses' (無證之辭). The words are literally—'single pleas.' They seem clearly to be opposed to the 兩辭 which follows, and—'one side of a case, such as that which will first come before a magistrate. 亂 is to be taken in the sense of 治, 'to govern,' 'to order rightly.'

兩辭—兩造者之辭 'the cases of both the parties.' 無或至惟罰—this must all be construed as if it were one sentence. 獄貨 is the result of 私家于獄之兩辭. 府 is defined by 聚, 'to collect,' 'to accumulate,' and 功 by 事, 'quæda.' 惟府辜功, —'but it is turning a treasury of deeds

of guilt.' 尤—殃, 'judgments,' 'miseries.'

Literally 庶尤 is 'numerous extraordinary evils.' 惟人在命—from the relation

of this clause to that which precedes,—非天不中, we can easily determine its meaning; but it is not easy to see clearly the force of 在命. We may at once dismiss the view of

Gan-kwō and K'ang Shing, that 命=教命, 'instructions and commands.' The paraphrase of the latter is:—夫天之罰人,非天道不中也,惟人自取之,在其教命不中耳. 命 has very much the meaning of 'fate,' and 惟人在命—人自造命而有以致之, 'man makes his own fate, and brings the punishment of Heaven on him.' So says K'ang-wei, but he throws no light on 在. Woo

Ch'ing tries to do this, saying 人之為人于在有生之命, 'man is man in having the fate of his life;' i.e., men bring punishment on themselves, because it is their prerogative to be by their conduct the arbiters of their own fate. After all, the meaning must be taken a good deal on trust; the language cannot be satisfactorily explained.

天法至末—the simplest way is to take these two clauses as an admonition to the prince and judges, that if they do not do what they can to insure good govt. for the people, Heaven's punishments will surely overtake them. Gan-kwō, K'ang Shing and others, take 極 as—中, 'the perfect mean, and highest excellence,' referring to

of 私家于獄之兩辭. 府 is defined by 聚, 'to collect,' 'to accumulate,' and 功 by 事, 'quæda.' 惟府辜功, —'but it is turning a treasury of deeds

下。○王曰：嗚呼！嗣孫！今往，何監？非德于民之中，尚明聽之哉？哲人惟刑，無疆之辭，屬于五極，咸中有慶，受王嘉師，監于茲祥刑。

- 22 VII. The king said, "Oh! ye who shall hereafter inherit the dignities and offices of the present time, to whom are ye to go for your models? Must it not be to those who maintained and promoted the virtue belonging to the unbiassed nature of the people. I pray you give attention to my words. The wise men of antiquity by their use of punishments have obtained boundless fame. Everything relating to the five punishments exactly hit with them the due mean, and hence came their excellence. Receiving from your sovereigns the good multitudes, behold in the case of those men punishments made felicitous."

皇極 in 'The Great Plan,' but I cannot construe the last clause on that view.

Ch. VII. P. 22. CONCLUSION:—THE KING WISHES TO IMPRESS HIS LESSONS ON THE JUDGES AND PRINCES OF FUTURE AGES. It seems most natural to understand 嗣孫, of the descendants of those whom the king was addressing. Indeed I do not see how the 孫 or the 今往 can be taken in any other way. 非德于民之中,—it is difficult to tell exactly what Gan-kwé understood by this. He says:—非當立德於民，爲之中正乎。He then connects 尚明聽之哉 with this,—If you do so, you will perhaps listen to my words.' K'ang Shing connects the clauses similarly, but takes the 聽 in the sense of 聽獄, 'to listen to criminal cases.' The 哉 indicates to me that 尚明聽之 is spoken by the king without any syntactical relation to what precedes. Moreover, after 監 we expect that individuals will be spoken of as models to those who are addressed. I therefore take 非德于民之中, with Ts'ao, as—非用刑成德而能全民所受之中者乎。哲人至有慶—acc. to the translation, 哲人 are those referred to as

models,—the haron E and others mentioned in the first part of the king's address.

Ts'ao explains the whole:—明哲之人，用刑而有無窮之譽，蓋由五刑咸得其中，所以有慶也。

He takes 極 as simply—刑, 'punishments,' but it must denote more than that,—punishments rightly inflicted and duly apportioned' (五刑之施皆中正之極也)。

The editors of Yung Ching's Shoo, without condemning Ts'ao's view, direct attention to a construction proposed by Seu K'iao (徐僑) and some other critics, who understand 無疆之辭 of 'the numberless plans, false and true, that might be advanced on any question before the judges.' The wise men spoken of could carry the light of principle and a clear understanding into all this confusion, and referring every point to the laws, bring out an issue exactly accordant with right.—徐僑曰：情辭雖難窮，惟智哲則有見，以哲人而用刑，雖情辭之來紛然，無有疆界，而以理燭之，以辭係法，各協其極，自然有慶矣。嘉師，—the good multitudes. This is a designation for the people, as naturally possessing the 'unbiassed nature,' which is denominated 民之中 above.

Concerning Norn. The student after this careful examination of 'Lau on Punishments,' will not wonder that many of the Chinese critics themselves should have been puzzled to account for its finding a place among the documents of the Shoo. They ask, 'Did Confucius mean that it should meet with approval or disapproval?' T'ae thinks he admitted it into his compilation by way of warning, and because in the kindly feeling of compassion for the people that

breathes in it, it shows that the generous spirit of former times was not yet extinct. It is of no use speculating in this way. I suppose Confucius admitted the Book, because it was the best of the times that he could find. It is a pity that he did not accompany it with some exposition of his own views on the historical allusions in it, and on Muh's schemes for the redemption of punishments.

Wang Fih's 'Doubts' about this Book are

言治目亂句詳後刑又者而從宮所刑流者者直末之不可於者康又刑君辟之之
 舜至王哀一甚而五罪云第亦蓋刑宥而竄流不刑罪嘗不期贖命罰及命曰刑扑
 帝為穆為刑者例思之之次罪也荆以也義也決之於未之者必之慎語之又五鞭
 於以於以五制凡致麗宥宥之刑也所罰之竄刑舜本亦罪刑以王德之王宥聞贖
 始所終所宥所一嘗正法者辟之辟刑宥宥之矣者刑於必所武明殺成不末者
 刑此刑此流贖此未有之之大世大罰以有者辟之輕之失以之昔於不言細辟刑
 訓備訓輕只甚速而自宥寬以後宥也所自放大有而王者所王辟主可之三乃贖
 刑義也罰也者者之各從也爾者以宮刑亦也也而輕穆輕之穆起雖不赦曰辟也
 而世而世該事忽流有之之流所宥墨中殛放流不疑而舜刑其也有無既止贖
 約之繁之所敘世與自寬輕而者以也之宥宥以嘗可輕宥無辜叔自茲陳以俱

有不亂極殺報報戒人乃忍之是盡刑制言謂辭姦意惻人之典聽刑巡末切言與
 凡而不謂死者者者一下不殺者之五之斯愚之之本矜聖存於世贖王其一斯者
 贖往而可必死死生於天人好殺義為人哉吏獄之哀風變察後其穆至此財情
 可所得約者為為忍於聖臺不至以聖虐義法典刑四遺之精為以謂勞為民本
 如無鳥之人特也也忍也一可之首是之於也乎制凡之法能以非子民乃斂之
 刑者下章殺非戒立立不生有不仁書則苗害書察人語代變其可戒朱匱計以王
 之費天三而死者人下小好豈於為之苗有大律精聖之三之以向之也財為術穆
 辟之人世矣必生一天者為心至以刑有師不者能識克有世亦姦刑取度以之得
 大錢殺後簡而為為為忍以之刑所呂於反豈刑徒不審猶其書之用可無無宜以
 刑千可哉其人也法法而所人意乃也創刑也呂也而其怛以於獄訟之遊年權足

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XXVIII. THE CHARGE TO PRINCE WÂN.

文侯之命

王^一若曰、父義和、丕
顯文武、克慎明德、
昭升于上、敷聞在
下、惟時上帝、集厥
命于文王、亦惟先
正、克左右昭事厥
辟、越小大謀猷、罔
不率從、肆先祖懷

- 1 The king spoke to the following effect:—"Uncle E-ho, how illustrious were Wân and Woo! Carefully did they illustrate their virtue, till it rose brightly on high, and the fame of it was widely diffused here below. Therefore did God cause his favouring decree to light upon king Wân. Thereafter there were ministers who aided and illustriously served their sovereigns, following and carrying out their plans and counsels great and small, so that my fathers sat tranquilly upon the throne.

INTRODUCTORY HISTORICAL NOTE. The Book of the Shoo at which we have now arrived is separated from the last by an interval of two hundred years. Between king Ping who gave the Charge to the prince Wân and king Mu there had reigned seven sovereigns of the House of Chow; and it is remarkable that not a single document of the reign of any of them was incorporated by Confucius with this volume. Of such monuments there must have been many. No Books have here been lost. Those two hundred years in the dynasty to which he himself belonged were left by the sage a blank. This fact is sufficient to prove that Confucius did not compile the Shoo as a history of his

country, or even intend that it should afford materials for such a history. His design, we may rather judge, was to bring together such pieces as might show the wonderful virtue and intelligence of ancient sovereigns and statesmen, who should be models to those of future ages. But in all the space of time of which I am writing, there was neither sovereign nor statesman to whom it could give him pleasure to refer. Indeed, king Woo, the first of the sovereigns of Chow, had no successor equal to himself. But for his brother, the duke of Chow, the dynasty would have come to an early end. There was a constant degeneracy after king Kang. Its progress was now and then temporarily,

but feebly, arrested. Power and influence passed with a steady progress from the imperial court to one feodatory and another, till in the time of Confucius himself the successors of Wou were hardly more than 'shadows of an empty name.' According to my plan I introduce here the names of the sovereigns between Mu and Ping, and a few particulars of their reigns.

[i.] E-hou (紂), the son of Mu, and known as king Kung (共王), or 'The Reverent' (諡法既過能改曰共). succeeded to the throne a.c. 945, and reigned for 12 years, acc. to the common chronology. The only incident of his reign of which we find mention is given by Ssu-ma Tse-nan from the 國語周語上, and is to the effect that the king was on one occasion rambling near the river King, in the pres. dep. of Ping-hang (平涼), Kan-shu, attended by the duke

K'ang of Mu (密康公), a small principality in that part of the country, when three young ladies introduced themselves into their company. Duke K'ang's mother advised him to leave them to the emperor, but he appropriated them to himself. Within a year the king made an end of him and his principality, indignant, we are to suppose, at the duke's conduct in the matter of the three ladies. I do not know that this story, as I have given it, is entitled to much faith. None is due to the romantic account of it, which is found in the history of P. de Maille.

[ii.] King Kung was succeeded, a.c. 933, by his son K'ien (釐), known as king E (懿王), or 'The Mild' (諡法溫柔賢善曰懿), who reigned 25 years. All that T'een says of him is that in his time 'the royal House went on to decay, and poets made him an object of their satire.' He removed the capital to Hwan-lo (槐里), a place in the pres. dis. of Hing-p'ing (興平), dep. of Sze-gan. This seems, however, to have been merely a temporary measure. The 'Bamboo Books' speak of several irruptions of barbarous tribes in this reign.

[iii.] A brother of king E, by name Pei-hang (辟方), succeeded him, and is known as king Heou (孝王), or 'The Filial' (諡法慈惠愛親曰孝). T'een says nothing more of him than that he came to the throne and died. His reign, however, lasted from a.c. 909 to 884. During this period, the chiefs of the House destined to supersede that of Chow begin to make their appearance on the stage of affairs. They traced their lineage up to the baron Yih (益, often called 翳), the Forester of Shun. One of them, named

Fei-tze (非子), had made himself famous at this time by his skill in rearing horses, and was taken into the king's service to superintend

his studs in the plains near the rivers K'ien and Wei (汧渭之間), and was finally invested with a small territory, of which the chief city was Ts'ia, still the name of an inferior department of Kan-shu. The king appointed him there to continue the sacrifices to Yih, as the head of the Yih clan or family (號曰秦嬴), which thenceforth begins to make a great figure in the empire.

[iv.] On the death of king Heou, the princes raised a son of his brother and predecessor, of the name of Sze (燹), to the throne, which he occupied for 16 years, till a.c. 878. He is known as king E (夷王), or 'The Peaceable' (諡法安心好靜曰夷). He proved a weak sovereign, and was in bondage to the princes to whom he owed the empire. It is objected to him that, when he gave audience to them, he descended from the dais to meet them, as if he were their equal merely. The chief of the State of Tsao extended the possessions of his House during this reign, and assumed the right of investing his sons with his conquests without reference to the court. He arrogated to himself, moreover, the title of king. The imperial authority was evidently but little cared for.

[v.] King E was succeeded by his son Hoo (胡), known as king Lo (厲王), or 'The Cruel' (諡法殺戮無辜曰厲). A long reign of 51 years is assigned to him, but during the last thirteen years he was a fugitive, and the govt. was administered by two of the nobles. In a.c. 841, the people rose in rebellion, their patience exhausted by the various oppressions, engendered by the avarice, insouciance, and cruelty of the sovereign. The king made his escape, and fled to Che (虢), in the pres. sub.

dep. of Hih (霍州), dep. of Ping-yang, Shan-se, where he found a refuge. Disappointed by the escape of the tyrant, the people sought to wreak their fury on his eldest son, by name Tsing (靖), quite a youth, who had hidden himself in the house of the duke of Shao, a descendant of Shih as famous in the early reigns of the dynasty. The loyalty of the ancestor had descended to the present Head of the family. As a minister, he had remonstrated, though in vain, with king Lo, on his evil courses; he now sacrificed his own son to save the heir to the crown. The people surrounded the house, and insisted on Tsing being delivered to them that they might satiate their fury by tearing him in pieces. The duke gave his own son, of the same age as the prince, into their hands, and on him they worked their pleasures. Subsequently, the dukes of Shao and Chow carried on the govt. for the prince until Lo's death, which took place in Che in a.c. 827.

[vi.] Prince Tsing commenced a long reign of 46 years in a.c. 826. He is known as king Suen (宣王), or 'The Distinguished' (諡法聖善周聞曰宣). He had learned wisdom in the school of adversity, and from the

statesmen who had protected his youth. Most of the princes returned in a measure to their allegiance, but the empire was distracted by irruptions of the barbarous tribes on every side. In a.c. 821, there was a great drought, and the misery of the people was extreme. The virtue of the king seems to have experienced a decay. In a.c. 815, he neglected, notwithstanding the remonstrances of his ministers, the custom of putting his own hand to the plough, and turning up a furrow in a field enclosed for the purpose, as an acknowledgment of the dependence of the empire on agriculture, and an example to all its husbandmen. He was proceeding to reign himself to idle habits, when the queen divested herself of her ornaments, and accused herself of seducing the king to self-indulgence, and to lie long in bed. This roused him to resume his early ways. In his 39th year, a.c. 788, he took the field against one of the western tribes, known by the name of the *Kang* (羌), as if they were sprung from the same stock as the princes of *Ts'ü*, and sustained a great defeat at a place called *Ts'ien-mow* (千畝), or 'The Thousand Acres.' From the chagrin of this he never recovered. A few years after, he was proceeding 'to number the people,' like king David of Israel, with a view to collect an immense force, and wipe out the disgrace he had incurred. His ministers succeeded in averting his purpose, but he became melancholy and capricious, put to death some of his most faithful advisers, and died in a fit of moody insanity, as we may judge, in a.c. 778.

[vil.] *Senen* was succeeded by his son *Nai* (湣), known as king *Yew* (幽), or 'The Dark' (諡法動靜亂常曰幽), who was slain by a tribe of barbarian invaders called 'The Dog Jung' (犬戎) after an inglorious reign of 11 years. In the sixth year of his reign, on the 29th of August (new style), a.c. 775, occurred an eclipse of the sun. It is commemorated in the *Shu King*, Pt. II., Bk. IV., Ode III., as 'an announcement of evils by the sun and moon.' Other symptomatic aberrations, as they appeared to be, in the order of nature are mentioned by the poet along with it:—

'The thunder roars, the lightning flashes;—
There is a want of repose, a want of good.
All the streams are overflowing;
The tops and crags of the mountains fall.
High hills become valleys;
Deep valleys become hills.
Alas! that this man
Will not correct himself!

This eclipse gives us a point of chronological certainty for the history of this reign. It is the first of the long list of eclipses, by the mention of which Chinese history from the 8th century before Christ acquires more certainty than belongs to that of the earlier ages. The ruin and death of king *Yew* were brought about by the ascendancy which a female favourite, called *Paou-sze* (褒姒), gained over him. He had married and established as queen a daughter of the prince of *Shin* (申). This principality was

in the pre-s. sub. dep. of *Tang* (鄧州), dep. of *Nan-yang*, *Ho-nan*; and his son by her, called *E-k'ew* (宜臼), was recognised as heir-apparent of the throne. The rise of *Paou-sze* was followed by the degradation of the prince and his mother. *E-k'ew* was sent, as a preliminary measure, to the court of *Shin*, 'to learn good manners.' His mother was then reduced to a second place, and *Paou-sze* was declared queen in her room, and an infant son by her took the place and dignity of heir-apparent. Scenes were enacted like those of *K'uei* and *Me-he*, or of *Show* and *Ts'ü*. To please *Paou-sze* the king made game of all the nobles. The prince of *Shin* called in the assistance of the *Dog Jung*, and attacked the capital. He did not intend the death of the king, but only that of the intruding favourite and her son, and the restoration of his daughter and grandson to their rights. His barbarian auxiliaries, however, could not be controlled; the king flying from *Haoü* was pursued by them and put to death, while *Paou-sze* became the captive of their chief.

Thus ended the sway of what is called 'the Western Chow.' The victorious nobles having expelled the *Jung* from the capital with some difficulty, brought back *E-k'ew* from *Shin*, and hailed him as king. He is known as king *P'ing* (平王), or 'The Tranquillizer' (諡法執事有制曰平). His first measure was to transfer the capital eastwards to *Lü-yang*, fulfilling at length, but under disastrous circumstances, the wishes of the duke of *Chow*; and from this time, a.c. 769, dates the history of 'the Eastern Chow.'

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—文侯之命

'The Charge to prince Wan.' I have related in the above note how the *Jung* who had been called in by the prince of *Shin* to punish king *Yew* went far beyond his wishes, killing the king, and wishing to keep possession of the capital. To get rid of them he obtained the assistance of the prince of *Tsin* (晉), *Tsin* (秦), *Wei* (衛), and *Ching* (鄭), who in the first place drove out the barbarians, and then sent for *Yew's* son from *Shin* to take possession of the vacant throne. Among his earliest measures was the rewarding of the princes who had come in this way to the relief of the royal House; and this Book is said to contain the appointment of the prince of *Tsin* to be president or chief of several of the other princes (以文侯爲方伯).

The prince of *Tsin* were descended from king *Woo's* son, called *Ya*, and generally styled, from the name of his appanage, the prince of *Tang* (唐叔虞). His son removed from *Tang* to *Tsin*, and in course of time the principality came, though not without a struggle with a usurping uncle, to *Chow* (仇), in a.c. 780, and was held by him for 25 years. He received after death the title of *Wan*, or 'The Accomplished';—it was he to whom the Charge in this Book was given. See in the dictionary

下澤殄丕造子予呼○在
民于資愆天嗣小閔鳴位。

- 2 "Oh! an object of pity am I, who am but a little child. Just as I have succeeded to the throne, Heaven has severely chastised me, and cut off our resources of bounty to the inferior people;

no fewer than six different descriptions of character, any one of which might be considered to be expressed by the title Wan.

In this account of the time and occasion of this Charge, I have followed the authority of the prefatory note, supported by Gan-kwō, K'ang-shing, and Wang Suh. The Book itself, however, it will be perceived, does not mention the name of the king, and the name of E-ho, by which the receiver of the Charge is called, is only, as will be seen on par. 1, an occasion of perplexity. There was a tradition during the Han dynasty that the Book belonged to a later period, and in Ssu-ma Tse-n's history the Charge appears as given, *u.c.* 631, by king Ssang (襄王) to duke Wan of Tsin, who was then the leading prince of the empire. Ma Yung also, we may infer from his explanation of the characters 義和, held this view. There is nothing in this matter of the Charge itself absolutely decisive in favour of either hypothesis. It seems, perhaps, to suit better the relations between king Ping and the prince (= marquis) Wan than those between Ssang and duke Wan.

The Book is found in both the texts.

CONTEXTS. The Book is short, containing only four paragraphs, which are divided into three and one by the usual mark of change of subject in the 'Announcements' and 'Charges' of the Shoo,—the compiler's statement of 'The king said.'

The king begins by celebrating the virtue and happy condition of Wan and Woo, and the services rendered to the State by the worthy ministers of subsequent reigns. He contrasts with this the misery and distraction of his own times, deploring especially his want of wise counsellors and helpers, and praising prince Wan for the services which he had rendered. The Book then concludes with the special Charge by which the king would reward the prince's merit in the past, and stimulate him to greater exertions in the future.

P. 1. The king celebrates the virtue of Wan and Woo who founded their dynasty, and the happiness of their successors who were assisted by able ministers.

父義和—Uncle E-ho. The princes of Tsin, we have seen, were a branch of the Imperial House; and hence the king addresses Wan as his 'uncle';—see on Book XXIII, p. 6. But Wan's name, as has been mentioned, was Ch'ow (仇) so that we are brought to the conclusion that he is here called by his 'style' (字) or marriage-designation. Such is the view of Gan-kwō

Other explanations of the characters were attempted by K'ang-shing, and Ma Yung, which may be seen in the 後案. 惟時

(一是一是之故)上帝集厥命于文王.—this is the common way of

speaking about the origin of the Chow dynasty,—that the divine appointment lighted on king Wan. But as king Woo has just been mentioned along with him, as equally virtuous and distinguished, it seems strange that he should be dropped in this important declaration. The truth is that father and son in the persons of Wan and Woo were blended together as one founder of the dynasty of Chow. If the appointment of Heaven lighted on Wan, it would also have dropped from him to the ground but for the character of Woo. In interpreting the rest of the par. we may begin with the last clause, where

the king must intend by 先祖, 'my forefathers,' not Wan and Woo, but those who succeeded them. The 'Daily Explanation' would limit them to Ching and K'ang, with whom the line of powerful monarchs of Chow may be said to have ceased. But king Ping might not have been willing to acknowledge this, and we may suppose that he speaks of his predecessors generally, as having fallen on better times than himself. Explaining

先祖 thus of the sovereigns subsequent to Woo, the same individuals are probably intended by 厥辟; and the phrase 先正 denotes 'their ministers';—also generally, without any special application, Wan's own ancestor, 'the prince of T'ang,' being included among them. Comp. the 2d par. of the 'Kuan-ya'.

謀猷—see on 3k. XXI, p. 6. 懷安—'to be tranquil.' 先祖懷在位—我先祖得安在位。

P. 2. The king deploras the unhappiness of his own position, himself young and feeble, and the empire chastised by Heaven and torn by barbarian invaders, while he could expect little assistance from his ministers.

嗣造至下民—Gan-kwō, Wang Suh, and K'ang-shing, all take 造 as 遭, 'to meet with,' so that it governs 天丕愆. This is quite allowable; but when

we carry on the regimen of 造 to the next clause,—殄資云云, the contraction becomes too forced. I therefore adopt the view of Tseng, that 造—始 and 嗣造—

侵我國家純卽我御事罔或者壽俊
罔厥服予則惟父其伊恤朕躬嗚呼有
績予一人永綏在位。○父

and the invading barbarous tribes of the west have greatly injured our empire. Moreover, among the managers of my affairs, there are none of age and experience, and distinguished ability, in their offices. I am *thus* unequal to the difficulties of my position, and say to myself, 'My grand-uncles and uncles, you ought to compassionate my case. Oh! if there were those who could establish their merit in behalf of me, the one man, I might long enjoy repose upon the throne.'

方嗣位之初, 'just as I have succeeded to the throne.' 天 is then the nominative to 愆 and 殄. 愆, meaning 'a fault,' 'a crime,' is here used as a verb, = 'to deal with as a criminal,' 'to chastise.' The 'Daily Explanation' for 天不愆 gives 爲天所大譴.

資澤于下民, 'the necessities descending like moistening rain upon the lower people,' mean the favours and help which ought to flow from the throne to the people, but which were now cut off. The king is probably referring to his own troubles and the troubles of the people, occasioned by the removal of the capital from Hsiao to Lü-yang.

家純—the 戎 here naturally leads our thoughts to the western barbarians, and especially to the 'Dog Jung,' who had killed king Yew, and kept possession of Hsiao. Gan-kwō, however, takes the term in the sense of 兵 'weapons.' But whether we take it in that meaning, or as a name, we have to understand a verb like 傷, 'to injure,' carrying on the action of 侵戎 to 國家. 純—大, 'great,' or 'greatly.'

卽我至厥服—耆壽 go together, signifying 'aged,' 'men of years and experience.' I do not see how we can discriminate these terms, and hence the 俊, 'talented,' stands awkwardly by itself. 服—官 or 職, as in Rx. V, p. 3. Kiang Shing adopts here a reading current in the Han dynasty, and edits—卽我御事罔

或者壽咎在厥躬 (一躬), 'among the managers of my affairs, there are none of age and experience. The evils are on my person.' This is not liable to the difficulty which 俊 presents in the common reading; but the sentiment does not seem appropriate to the place.

予則罔克, — 'I then am not adequate,' i.e., feeble, unsupported; in the midst of calamities, the king felt unequal to the difficulties he had to cope with.

曰惟至末,—the 曰 indicates that the king thus spoke to himself. As Ying-ta says, 私爲

言. 惟祖惟父 is an appeal to the princes of the same surname with himself. As 父, we have seen, denotes 'uncles,' 祖 will be 'grand-uncles.' The 'Daily Explanation' gives for it—爾諸侯有在我祖父之列者.

Medhurst has missed the meaning, and renders—Of those who have stood before my grandfather and father. Gaubil has missed it in a different way:—Quel est donc celui qui pourra me tenir lieu de grand-père et de père? 伊 is here a particle,—

惟. We have to suppose a second 予一人 as the nominative to 綏. The end of this par. thus corresponds to that of the preceding. Chang Kew-shing observes that the weakness of King Ping's character is here apparent. He shows no self-reliance. He has no higher aim than to live quietly and have tranquillity in his time.

義和汝克昭乃
顯祖汝肇刑文
武用會紹乃辟
追孝于前文人
汝多修扞我于
艱若汝予嘉○
王曰父義和其
歸視爾師寧爾
邦用賚爾秬鬯
一卣彤弓一彤

- 3 "Uncle E-ho, you render still more glorious your illustrious ancestor. You were the first to imitate the example of Wān and Woo, collecting the scattered powers, and continuing the all-but-broken line of your sovereign. Your filial piety goes back to your accomplished ancestor, and is equal to his. You have done much to repair my losses, and defend me in my difficulties, and of you, being such, I am full of admiration."
- 4 The king said, "Uncle E-ho, return home, survey your multitudes, and tranquillize your State. I reward you with a jar of spirits, made from the black millet, mixed with odoriferous herbs; with

P. 3. The king acknowledges the services which prince Wān had rendered, and praises him. By 乃顯祖, 'your distinguished ancestor,' we are to understand the prince of T'ang. He also is intended by the 前文人 below. 汝肇刑

文武.—whether we define 肇 by 始, as in the translation, or by 敏, 'earnestly,' as K'ang Shing does, it seems very extravagant to be comparing prince Wān to the kings Wān and Woo. T'ao observes that the principles of Wān and Woo might be said to be extinct, when the ministers about the court were only such as are described in the last par., but now prince Wān (後罔或者壽俊在厥服, 則刑文武之道絕矣, 今刑文武自文侯始, 故曰肇刑文武) 用會紹乃辟.—'to unite; '紹—繼, 'to continue.' But 'to unite and continue your sovereign' is not very intelligible. The meaning is as I have given it. Ping was a fugitive, and his claim to the throne disallowed, when his father was killed. Then the Jung held possession of the capital. It was owing, he means to say, principally to prince Wān, that the forces of several princes—which the king might call his forces—were collected, the Jung driven out, and he himself brought back to the throne.

前文人, '—with your filial piety you pursue after the former accomplished man.' The meaning is much the same as that of the former clause, 汝克昭乃顯祖. 汝多修扞我于艱, 'you have done much to repair and to guard me in difficulties.' Wang T'ao says: 一修, 完於殘破之後, 扞禦於侵侮之時.

P. 4. The Charge. 其歸視爾師.—師—衆, 'multitudes,' 'people.' The sending the prince home might be considered a favour, as his attendance on the king in the removal from Heng to Lo must have been a service of no little difficulty and fatigue. 用賚爾秬鬯一卣.—'to explain the use.—'therefore,' the 'Daily Explanation' introduces in its paraphrase 予嘉汝功, 'I admire your merit.' We must suppose some thought in the king's mind, which is not expressed in the text. On 秬鬯一卣, comp. the explan. of 秬鬯二卣 in Bk. XIII., p. 21. The spirits thus presented to him would be employed by prince Wān in sacrificing to his ancestor, the prince of T'ang, and announcing to his spirit the favour conferred on him by the king. 彤—赤, 'red; '盧—黑, 'black.' The conferring on *

追孝于

矢百，盧弓一，盧矢百，馬四匹，父往哉，柔遠能邇，惠康小民，無荒寧，簡恤爾都，用成爾顯德。

one red bow and a hundred red arrows; with one black bow, and a hundred black arrows; and with four horses. Go, my uncle! Show kindness to those who are afar off, and help those who are near at hand; cherish and secure the repose of the inferior people; do not idly seek your ease; inspect and compassionate *all* in your capital, and other cities—thus completing your illustrious virtue."

prince of a bow and arrows was understood to invest him with the power of punishing all within his jurisdiction who were refractory to the imperial commands, but not of taking life without first reporting to the court. See in the *Le Ke*, Bk. 王制, Pt. II., p. 19.—賜弓矢然後征，賜鉄鉞然後殺。Whether anything special was denoted by sending to Wan two bows of different colours, and two sets of arrows, I do not know.

柔遠能邇.—see Bk. XXII., p. 8; *et al.*
簡恤爾都—都 here is most probably to be understood as used not for the chief city only, but for all the other cities of the State. Ts'ao, after Gan-k'uo, makes it = 國之都鄙, 'from the capital to the borders.' See Shih made the 簡 refer to 'the officers' (簡閱其士), over whom the prince should keep a watchful eye, and 恤 to the people, for whom he should exercise a compassionate care (惠恤其民). It is by no means clear to me that this Charge is the appointment of Wan to be a 方伯, 'chief of a region.' That opinion probably arose from the view to which I have referred, that it was duke Wan to whom the Charge was given.

CONCLUDING HISTORICAL NOTE. In the 51st or last year of Ping's reign, occurred an eclipse of the sun, Feb. 14, B.C. 715. He is the last of the emperors of the Chow dynasty, with whom the Shoo has anything to do; but the 'Spring and Autumn' commences in A.C. 721, with the first year of duke Yin (隱公) of Loo, and continues the history for about two centuries and a half longer.

It may be well here to give a list of the rest of the sovereigns of Chow. Ping was the 13th.

[xiv.] King Hwan (桓王), or 'The Laborious' (克敬勤民曰桓), grandson of Ping. B.C. 718—696.

[xv.] King Chwang (莊王), or 'The Unsuccessful' (武而不遂曰莊), son of Hwan. B.C. 695—681.

[xvi.] King He (僖王; also written 釐王), or 'The Essayer' (有伐而還曰釐), son of Chwang. B.C. 680—670.

[xvii.] King Hwuy (惠王), or 'The Kind' (柔質慈民曰惠), son of He. B.C. 675—651.

[xviii.] King Ssang (襄王), or 'The Virtuous Enlarger' (辟地有德曰襄), son of Hwuy. B.C. 650—618.

[xix.] King King (頃王), or 'The Trembling' (甄心動懼曰頃), son of Ssang. B.C. 617—612.

[xx.] King Kwang (匡王), or 'The Correcter' (貞心大度曰匡), son of King. B.C. 611—606.

[xxi.] King Ting (定王), or 'The Establisher' (安民法古曰定), son of Kwang. B.C. 606—565.

[xxii.] King K'ien (簡王), or 'The Easy-minded' (平易不訾曰簡), son of Ting. B.C. 564—571.

[xxiii.] King Ling (靈王), or 'The Uninjuring' (亂而不損曰靈), son of K'ien. B.C. 570—544.

[xxiv.] King King (景王), or 'The

Righteously-successful' (由義而濟曰景), son of Ling. B.C. 543-519.

[xxv.] King King (敬王), or 'The Respectful' (善合法典曰敬), son of King. B.C. 518-476. King King (景) died in the beginning of summer, when his son Meng (猛), known as king Taou (悼王), was declared his successor; but he died before the year was out, and does not enter into the list of emperors.

[xxvi.] King Yuen (元王), or 'The Popular' (行義悅民曰元), son of King (敬). B.C. 474-468.

[xxvii.] King Ching-ting (貞定王), or 'The Pure and Correct' (清白守節曰貞, 純行不爽曰定), son of Yuen. B.C. 465-440.

[xxviii.] King K'ao (考王), son of Ching-ting. B.C. 429-425. In the spring of a.c. 446, Ching-ting died, and was immediately succeeded by his eldest son,—king Gas (哀王),—who was shortly killed by a brother, who seized the throne, and is called king Sze (思

王). He again was killed before the end of the year by another brother, who held the throne, and became king K'ao.

[xxix.] King Wei-lee (威烈王), or 'The Majestic and Resolute' (彊毅執正曰威, 秉德尊義曰烈), son of K'ao. B.C. 424-401.

[xxx.] King Gan (安王), or 'The Tranquil' (好和不爭曰安), son of Wei-lee. B.C. 400-376.

[xxxi.] King Lss (烈王), or 'The Resolute' (秉德尊義曰烈), son of king Gan. B.C. 374-368.

[xxxii.] King Hsien (顯王), or 'The Illustrious (?)', younger brother of Lss. B.C. 367-330.

[xxxiii.] King Shin-ting (慎靚王), son of Hsien. B.C. 319-314.

[xxxiv.] King Nan (赧王), or 'The Ruined and Sad' (喪國心恤曰赧), son of Shin-ting. B.C. 313-255.

Nan surrendered the empire to the chief of Tein, but the supremacy of that State was not fully acknowledged till a.c. 221.

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XXIX. THE SPEECH AT PE.

並徐淮徂聽無嗟公費
興戎夷茲命譁人曰誓

- 1 The duke said, "Ah! ye men, make no noise, but listen to my commands. We are now going to punish those wild tribes of the Hwae and of Seu, who have risen up together.

THE NAME OF THE BOOK.—費誓, 'The speech at Pe.' This Book carries us back from the times of P'ing to those of Ching, the second of the emperors of Chow. The speech recorded in it is attributed in the Preface to the Shoo to Pih-k'in the son of the duke of Chow; and there is a general acquiescence of tradition and critics in this view. We may account for its position out of the chronological order from its being a record not of any imperial doings, but of the sentiments of the prince of a State. K'ang-shing and others placed it before 'Len on Punishments,' which arrangement, still leaving it out of the order of time, would deprive us of the explanation just given. The speech has reference to some military operations against the tribes on the Hwae and other wild hordes of the province of Seu or Ts'au; but we saw that they were in insurrection many times during the reign of Ching, and we cannot tell to what year the Book should be referred. I think in presided over his principality for the long period of 53 years, and died a.c. 1,062. The speech was made at Pe (費)—see Ming-ching on what he says was the older form of the name). On the situation of this place I give the note of Ch'ia Hse-k'ao:—Pih-k'in had his capital in the pres. dis. of K'ueh-fow (曲阜), dep. of Yen-chow, and Pe was in the dis. still so called, in the dep. of E-chow (沂州).

Now, acc. to the 寰宇記. It is east from Yen-chow 385 *li*; Pe is 95 *li* to the north-west of E; K'ueh-fow is east from Yen-chow 30 *li*; and thus from K'ueh-fow to Pe was 290 *li* or

thereabouts. At the commencement of the "Spring and Autumn," Pe was an independent principality, for in the first year of duke Yin (a.c. 721) we read in the 左傳 that 'the baron of Pe led a force to fortify Lang' (費伯帥師城郎). Afterwards, it became the chief city of the Ke family of Loo, as we read again, in the first year of duke He (a.c. 635), that 'he granted to Ke Yew the fields on the south of the Wan, and Pe' (公賜季友汶陽之田及費). In the Analects also Min Tse-k'uen appears as asked to be governor of Pe (Ana. VI, vii.). We may conclude, therefore, that, in the time of Pih-k'in, Pe did not belong to Loo. But it was in his jurisdiction as the chief or ruling prince of the regions of the east (東方伯). Gan-k'wō is wrong when he says that Pe was a place in the eastern border of Loo, and Ying-t'ia when he says that Pih-k'in did not go beyond the territory of Loo. Pih-k'in's speech was like that of K'w at Kan, or of T'ang at Ming-t'aeou, or of king Woo at Mu; i.e., it was made like those when the army approached the territory of the enemy.

The Book is in both the texts.

CONTEXTS. Pih-k'in appears at the head of his host proceeding against the tribes of the Hwae and the wild people of Ts'au. Having commanded silence, he issues his orders, first, that the soldiers all have their arms in good order; next, that the people of the country take

不刃礪乃弓弔無敵乃○
善無乃戈矢備敢乃甲善
○敢鋒矛鍛乃不干胄敕

- 2 "Have in good repair your coats of mail and helmets; have the laces of your shields well secured:—presume not to have any of these but in perfect order. Prepare your bows and arrows; temper your lances and spears; sharpen your pointed and edged weapons:—presume not to have any of these but in good condition.

care of the oxen and horses of the army; further, that the troops on no account leave their ranks or go astray, and finally, he appoints the day when he will commence operations against the enemy, and commands that all the requisite preparations be made.

P. 1. *Opening of the speech. Occasion of the expedition.* By 'men' we are to understand all in the host, his own subjects of Lo, and the troops of States whom he had called to aid in the expedition,—officers and common men.

但茲云云—there is a difficulty here with the interpretation of 但茲. Ts'ie, after Soo

Shih, takes the characters as = 往者, 'formerly,' so that the meaning of the clause is—'Formerly, the wild tribes of the Hsue and the Ts'ien rose in insurrection together.' But why refer to what they had done in former times? We must understand, on this construction, something like—'And now again, they take advantage of our present circumstances, and give fresh trouble, so that we have to take the field against them.' This is the way in which the 'Daily Explanation' brings out the meaning—往者淮夷叛亂, 爲王室之患. 今又乘我始就國封, 軍旅未習, 乃脅徐方之戎, 一時並起.

Gan-kwé's view was different. He took 但 indeed as = 往—not adverbially, however, but as a verb, meaning 'to go,'—'we are going,' or 'let us go.' The 茲

is = 此, 'this,' or 'these.'—'We are going to those tribes of the Hsue and of Sen, who have risen up together; i.e., we are going to chastise them.' This construction is followed by Lin Chie-k'e and Kiang Shing, the latter of whom expounds the clause:—言往征此淮徐戎, 竝起爲寇者. I have translated according to this view. 'The wild tribes about the Hsue' are mentioned so far back as the time of Yu;—see 'The Tribute of Yu,' Pt. I, p. 35. They belonged to the province of Ts'ien, and why there should be mentioned in addition to them another tribe, called the 'Jung

of Ts'ien' is a question which cannot be fully answered. 戎 was properly the name of the wild people in the west of the Middle Kingdom.

Possibly, a tribe of them had forced their way to the eastern coasts, and settled in one or more places of Ts'ien, continuing to retain their original designation. Wang Hsiang-yao (often mentioned likewise as Wang Chung-yun (王

充耘) has an instructive and suggestive

note on the passage:—'但 means "to go." The passage is best taken with K'ung Gan-kwé as meaning—'We are now going to unite those E and Jung.' K'ung says that the various tribes of wild people were simply labelled by the emperors of the early dynasties and allowed to dwell in different places within the different provinces; but I venture to think that the true state of the case concerning them was this:—Aboriginally, when the country was first peopled, it was not possible for the principles of propriety and righteousness to penetrate everywhere with a transforming power. All who were unaffected by those principles were classed as E or Jung, and all who recognised them and came under their influence were said to be Hwa and Hse (輒謂爲華夏).

We are not to suppose that it was necessary to be living outside the nine provinces, in what are called 'the four seas,' in order to be Jung and E. In the account of Yu's five domains, indeed, the Man and the E are said to have been in the domain of Restraint and the Wild domain; but when we examine the state of the empire of Chow, we find 'the white Teih' (白狄) in Ts'ien-yuen (in Shan-se), the E of the Hsue and the Jung of Ts'ien in the province of Ts'ien, the Lao E in Ts'ie (齊有萊夷), and the Jung of Luh-wun about the E river (伊川有

陸渾之戎). Even such great States as Woo and Tsoo had to drive out the E and Teih. It is plain that these tribes were not confined to the two domains to which we have referred. Shun told Kau-yao to restrain by punishments the Man and E who were disturbing the empire, which simply means that he was to punish those who denied the principles of propriety and righteousness, and violated them. The critics, not examining the case sufficiently,

越逋其刑。汝牯穿乃牯今
逐逃風○則牯穿無攬牛惟
祗無臣馬_四有之傷傷斂乃馬淫
復敢妾牛常傷傷乃杜舍

3 "We must now largely let the oxen and horses loose, and not keep them as usual in enclosures:—do you shut up your traps, and fill up your pitfalls, and do not presume to injure any of the animals let loose. If any of them be injured, you shall be dealt with according to the regular punishments.

4 "When the horses and cattle are seeking one another, or when your followers, male or female, abscond, presume not to leave the

have rashly said that Kao-yao took weapons of war to deal with those people. They have not considered that the Man and E were dwelling with the mass of the ordinary population of the Middle Kingdom. There was no occasion for military operations against them. It is absurd to think of such measures as those of after ages,—the despatch of a great general to punish and smite the various tribes of barbarians."

P. 2. *The soldiers must have their weapons all in good order.* 敕 is defined in the 說文

by 擇, 'to select,' and the 玉篇 similarly gives 簡 for it. Ts'ao explains it by 縫完, 'to stitch and make whole,' and K'ang-shih by 穿徹, which comes to the same thing. The meaning evidently is that in the translation, whatever may be the specific force of this term. The 'coats of mail and helmets' were made of leather, which may have been studded or fenced with more or less of metal. 敵 means properly 'the strings attached to a shield.' The soldiers are required to see that they were in good order. 無不甲 (shih),—'in perfect condition.' 甲—至. Ts'ao defines 鍛 by 淬, 'to put in the fire and then in water,'—'to temper.' The character denotes the 'forging' of metals generally. 鋒刃, 'sharp points and edges,'—i.e., weapons for thrust and cut.

P. 3. *The people must look after the ground in the line of march, so that the cattle of the army should not be injured.* The charge here must be taken as addressed to the people, though that is not mentioned in the text. 淫舍牯

牛馬, 牯 is defined in the 說文 as 牛馬牢, 'an enclosure or stable for oxen

and horses.' K'ang-shih endeavours to explain it from 桔, 'manacles,' i.e., hobbles attached to the feet; but this is to be rejected. As they marched through the country, the soldiers would have, especially at night, to let loose (舍—放) their cattle, to rest them and let them seek pasture, instead of keeping them in stables or enclosures. They would have to do this 淫, 'extensively and carelessly'

often. The critics all define 淫 here by 大, 'greatly;' but the other meaning which I have indicated must not be omitted. Below, in 傷牯 and 牯之傷 牯 is used simply to indicate the cattle. Ying-t'ai says:—既言牛馬在牯遂以牯爲牛馬之名下云傷牯牯之傷謂牛馬也. What is intimated about the character of the country shows how thinly it must have then been peopled. With 攬 and 穿 comp. 攬 and 阱 in 'The Doctrine of the Mean,' Ch. vi. 斂—塞, 'to fill up.' None of the commentators touch on 'the regular punishments' for the offences here indicated, nor do I know what they were.

P. 4. *The soldiers must on no account leave their encampments or ranks; and the people must carefully return strayed animals and absconded followers.* 馬牛其風—the dict. explains 風, with reference to this passage, by 佚, 'to stray;' but usage shows that such straying is like that 'when the wind is sufficient up the wind;—牝牡相誘謂之風.

臣妾逋逃,—the 臣妾 are camp-

之、我商賚汝、乃
越、逐不復、汝則
有、常刑、無敢寇
攘、踰垣牆、竊馬
牛、誘臣妾、汝則
有、常刑。○甲戌、
我、惟征徐戎、峙
乃、糗糧、無敢不
逮、汝則有大刑、
魯、人三郊三遂、

ranks to pursue them. But let them be carefully returned. I will reward you who return them according to their value. But if you leave your places, to pursue them, or if you who find them do not return them, you shall be dealt with according to the regular punishments. And let none of you *people* presume to rob or detain *vagrant animals or followers*, or to jump over enclosures and walls to steal away horses or oxen, or to decoy away servants and female attendants. If you do so, you shall be dealt with according to the regular punishments.

- 5 "On the day Keā-suh I will punish the tribes of Seu;—prepare roasted grain and other provisions, and presume not to have any deficiency. If you do, you shall suffer the severest punishment. Ye men of Loo, from the three environing territories, and the three tracts beyond, prepare your posts and planks. On Keā-suh I will commence

followers who had to gather fuel, cook, &c. Kin Le-t'ang tells us that 'to every chariot there were attached three men in mail, and 70 foot soldiers, with other 25 followers, who are those intended here by 臣妾. 越逐一起 means 'getting over' the entrenchments.

祗復之,—this must be understood as addressed to the country-people who should fall in with such animals and camp-followers. Both they, and soldiers who should themselves pursue after the vagrants, are addressed in 乃越逐

不復汝則有常刑; but the rest of the par. regards only the people who should thus offend. Gan-k'wā, indeed, supposes that 無

敢云云, is addressed to the soldiers, against stealing from the people, and Woo Ch'ing that it is forbidding them to steal one from another; but the view which I have proposed seems much more likely.

我商賚汝,—I will deliberate and reward you;—the meaning is as I have expressed it in the translation. The peculiar force of 攘 'to appropriate on temptation of occasion offered,' should be expressed in a translation.

P. 5. The time is fixed for direct operations, and everything required to be in readiness. We are to suppose that the marching would be over by the day Keā-suh, and that they would be then in front of the enemy. 峙—儲備

'to have collected and prepared.' 魯人

三郊三遂,—the country beyond the capital to a certain extent was called 郊, and beyond this again it was denominated 遂.

Guthrie observes that 'it is difficult at the present day to get correct ideas of what was really intended by these designations of the frontiers; and that it is difficult to account for the mention of three 郊 and three 遂.' Wang Shih thinks that the troops from the 郊 and 遂 on the east were left to guard the country, and hence, as only those from the other three went forth on the expedition only they are mentioned. This was the view also of Gan-k'wā. Yung-tz, however, puts forward another view, which is inconsistent with this, though he does not seem to be aware of the inconsistency.—In the imperial domain, to a distance of 100 里 was called 郊, and beyond that was the 遂. In the 郊 were the six 鄉 (六鄉), which

furnished the 'six hosts' (六軍) while the

則敢乃郊殺無供築甲峙
有不多芻焚遂魯餘汝則無敢戊乃
大刑。汝無峙三非有惟榦

my entrenchments;—dare not but be provided with a supply of these. *If you be not so provided*, you shall be subjected to various punishments, only short of death. Ye men of Loo, from the three environing territories, and the three tracts beyond, prepare the forage, and do not dare to let it be other than in abundance. *If you do*, you shall suffer the severest punishment."

say extending 200 *li* beyond, furnished if need were, six subsidiary hosts. In a large State of 100 *li* square, the *kwou* extended 20 *li* from the capital; and as it was supposed to furnish only 'three hosts,' and, if need were, three auxiliary hosts, it is inferred that these might all be called 三郊三遂之人. The language in the text, therefore, is simply equivalent to 'the army of Loo,' and we do not need to inquire further about a 3th *kwou* and a 3th *su*.

榦 are 'the posts and planks' for the framework in which walls are raised in China by pounding earth and lime together. (題曰榦旁曰杗). From the mention of the 'men of Loo,' it is inferred that there were men of other States also in the army, while they were required to provide the planks and posts, and forage, such labour being easier

to them, as they were nearer than the others to the seat of war.

無餘刑—'punishments without remainder.' It is difficult to say what punishments are meant. The addition of 非殺 shows that they were short of death. Gan-kwō simply says—'various punishments.' Kang-shing and Wang Suh agree in saying that the punishments were such as would involve the parents and children of the offender, so that none should be exempt from them.

We have in this par. and the last the 'regular punishments' (常刑), which were well defined and known; the 大刑, 'great punishment' or death; and these 無餘刑.

芻焚 are distinguished as 'new-mown grass and hay.'

THE BOOKS OF CHOW.

BOOK XXX. THE SPEECH OF THE DUKE OF TS'IN.

秦誓
公嗟曰，
士聽我言，
無予誓汝，
告群之
首。

- 1 The duke said, "Ah! my officers, listen to me without any noise. I solemnly announce to you the most important of all sayings. *It is this which the ancients have said, 'Thus it is with all people,*

NAME OF THE BOOK.—秦誓, 'The Speech of the duke of Ts'in.' At the time when this speech was made, the States of Tsin (晉) and Ts'in (秦) were among the most powerful of the empire. In a.c. 680, they were engaged together in the siege of the capital of Ch'ing (鄭), and would have extinguished that principality, but the duke of Ts'in was suddenly induced to withdraw his forces, leaving three of his officers in friendly relations with the court of Ch'ing, and under engagement to defend the country from aggression. These men, however, were entirely in the interest of their own prince, and one of them, called Ko-tze

(杞子), sent word, in a.c. 627, to Ts'in, that he was in charge of one of the gates of the capital, and if an army were sent to take the place by surprise, Ch'ing might be added to the territories of Ts'in. The duke—duke Muh (穆公)—laid the matter before his counsellors. The most experienced of them—the famous Pih-lo Ho (百里奚) and Koen-shuh (蹇叔)—were against taking advantage of the proposed treachery. The duke, however, listened rather to the promptings of his own ambition, and the next year sent a large force, under his three ablest commanders, hoping to fall upon Ch'ing all unexpected. The attempt failed. Ch'ing was warned of the approaching danger; and the commanders, vexed and disappointed, were leading the army back, when it was attacked by the troops of Ts'in

among the passes of the Hsiao mountain (穀山), in the pres. dep. of Ho-nan, and sustained a terrible defeat. The troops were nearly all cut to pieces, and the three commanders were taken prisoners.

The duke of Tsin was intending to put these captives to death, when he was persuaded by his mother to send them back to Ts'in, that duke Muh might himself sacrifice them to his anger for their want of success. Muh, however, did no such thing. He went out from the capital to meet his defeated officers, and comforted them, saying that the blame of the defeat was his own, who had refused to listen to the advice of his wise counsellors. Then it is said he made the speech here recorded, for the benefit of all his ministers.

That the speech was made on the occasion thus described rests on the authority of the preface to the Shoo, which has generally been followed by the critics. The 左傳, however, while it relates how Muh met his commanders and comforted them, says nothing of the speech. And Sze-mo Ts'een places it three years later, and on a different occasion. After some unsuccessful attempts to wipe out the disgrace at the Hsiao hills, Ts'in made a great raid on its neighbour in a.c. 624, when Ts'in did not dare to meet the enemy in the field. Then duke Muh crossed the Ho, and had the bones of his slaughtered host collected, and interred in one place, making great sacrifices and mourning on the occasion, and delivering this speech, to acknowledge and transmit the memory of the fault he had committed.

○^二古人有言曰，民訖自若是多盤，責人斯無難，惟受責俾如流，是惟艱哉。○我^三心之憂，日月逾邁，若弗云來。○惟古之謀人，則曰：未就予忌，惟今之謀人，姑將

- 2 —they mostly love their ease. In reproving others there is no difficulty, but to receive reproof, and allow it to have a free course, this is difficult! The sorrow of my heart is this, that the days and months pass away, as if they would not come again.
- 4 "There were my old counsellors,—I said, 'They will not accommodate themselves to me,' and I hated them. There were my new counsellors, and I would for a time give my confidence to them.

I do not know whether we should accept the testimony of the preface or that of T'ch'en on this point. But the thing is of little moment. They agree in making the speech refer to the defeat which had been incurred by the duke's refusal to listen to wise counsel.

The Book is found in both the texts.

CONTENTS. The general nature of these may be gathered from the preceding note; but what is really said is more vague and less to the point of the occasion than we might have expected. The 'Complete Digest' says that parr. 2, 3 declare the fact of the duke's repentance; parr. 4, 5, the grounds of it; and parr. 6-8, the sincerity or emphasis of it.

P. 1. The duke seeks to engage the attention of his officers.

我士—my officers. All his ministers are so denominated.

誓告—solemnly tell. 羣言之首—

'the head (=the most important, the chief) of all words.' The duke means the ancient saying which he proceeds to state, and which seemed to him, in the mood of mind in which he was, to be so important. Ying-tā gives for the clause—我告汝以言中之最要者

P. 2. The saying of the ancients, that it is easy to give and difficult to receive reproof.

民訖(=盡)自若是多盤—people all are naturally thus—they are most for pleasure. Choo Hs said he thought that 'this clause simply means that it is the disposition of most men to love ease' (想只是說人情要安逸之意). This is probably

all that is intended; but I do not see the appropriateness of the sentiment as an introduction to what follows.

受責俾如

流.—to receive reproof, and cause—allow—it to be like flowing water. The meaning is that the reproof is not resisted, but flows on freely. Gaubil mistook the sense, and has translated—recevoir les avis et les reprimandes des autres, sans les laisser couler comme l'eau, c'est là la difficulté.

P. 3. The duke deplures the swift passing away of time.

逾 and 邁 are to be taken as synonyms.

—過 or 往, 'to move on,' 'to proceed.' From Ying-tā's notes on Gan-kwō's commentary, we see that he read 員, and not 云. But those terms were anciently interchanged. Whichever we read here, it is to be taken in the sense of 旋 or 運, 'to return,' 'come round.' The duke is conscious that he has done wrong; what he deplures is that the wrong cannot be undone. The day is past, and it will not come again, that he might do differently on it.

P. 4. He acknowledges his error in rejecting the advice of his good counsellors and following that of new men, and declares he will not do so again.

By 古之謀人, 'ancient counsellors,' the duke intends Pih-le Hs and Kēm-shuh, who advised him against attempting to surprise Ch'ing; and by 今之謀人, 'modern or recent counsellors,' he means Ke-tze and the other officers who seduced him to the undertaking. 曰—I said to myself. 未就千

以爲親雖則云
然尙猷詢茲黃
髮則罔所愆○
番番良士旅力
旣愆我尙有之
佗佗勇夫射御
不違我尙不欲
惟截截善諷言
俾君子易辭我
皇多有之○昧

Although it may be so with old men and new, hereafter I will take advice from the men of yellow hair, and then I shall be free from error. That good old officer!—all his strength is exhausted, but may I still have him! That dashing brave officer!—his shooting and charioteering are faultless, but I had rather not wish him! As to men of quibbles, skilful at cunning words, and able to make the superior man change his purposes, what have I to do with making much use of them?

忌—其不就我意乃忌疾之

See other explanations of this in Woo Ch'ing and K'ang Shing, the latter of whom adopts a different reading,—as usual. Both their constructions are intolerably harsh.

姑將以爲親—姑且將以爲可親而與之謀 'for a time I thought they might have my confidence, and be counselled with.'

雖則云然 converts the cases of those counsellors into general characteristics of old and new men.

P. 5. Old counsellors; martial counsellors; and crafty counsellors.

番番良士—番番 (read po) 番 is best taken as—老貌 'the appearance of age.' The 佗佗—勇貌 'the appearance of boldness;' and 截截—辯給貌 'the appearance of disputatiousness.' Gao-kwó, indeed, makes 番番—勇武 'brave and martial.' The phrase has this meaning in the Shu King, but we cannot admit it here. It is inappropriate to the old counsellors. See Ming-shing, *fa. loc.* 番 is here equal to the later 皤 'old.' 旅力旣愆—

Gao-kwó makes 旅力—衆力, meaning 'the strength of all the members.' It is better to take 旅—呂 or 齊, 'the backbone,' and understand 旅力 as simply equivalent to

'strength.' 旣愆—'has failed.' But 愆 has always a moral sense,—'a failure,' 'an error,' 'a sin.' We can understand our moral meaning of 'failure' arising from the primary material meaning of the term, but we are called to suppose a reverse process in regard to the usage of the Chinese character. Of all the critics Ts'ao appears to be the only one who felt the pinch of this difficulty, and he supposes that the duke is referring to an incident which occurred on the setting forth of the ill-fated expedition. The three commanders were the sons of the two aged ministers who were opposed to it; and when the troops were leaving the capital, the old men wept bitterly. This led to some strong language about them from the duke, and Ts'ao would make the language—'There is that good old officer, whom I blamed for his want of strength!' But this is much forced, and after all the idea of the want or failure of strength must somehow be introduced into the version. Moreover, the duke is here speaking of different classes of counsellors, in consequence of what had occurred to himself indeed, but generally, and without particular reference to the men who had advised, or blamed, or sanctioned the expedition to surprise Ch'ing. 射御不違—善射善御不違於法者. This officer violates in nothing the rules of his art. 諷言—巧言, 'artificial speech,' 易辭—'to change his words,' such change of course growing out of a change of purpose. 皇—邊, 'leisure.' The duke says he had no leisure—he had something better to do than—to attend to such men.

味我思之，如有一介臣，斷斷猗，無他技，其心休休焉，其如有容，人之有技，若己有之，人之彥聖，其心好之，不啻如自其口出，是能容之，以保我子孫黎民，亦職有利哉。

- 6 "I have deeply thought and concluded;—Let me have but one resolute minister, plain and sincere, without other abilities, but having a simple complacent mind, and possessed of generosity, regarding the talents of others, as if he himself possessed them; and when he finds accomplished and sage-like men, loving them in his heart more than his mouth expresses, really showing himself able to bear them:—such a minister would be able to preserve my descendants and my people, and would indeed be a giver of benefits.

P. 6. *The duke's conception of a thoroughly good and valuable minister.*

昧昧我思之。——Gan-kwō joined this to the preceding par., and for 我皇多有之 昧昧我思之 gives = 我前多有之，以我昧昧思之而不明故也。'Formerly I had many such, because I thought darkly of it, and was not intelligent.' But the balancing of the sentences in par. 5 shows that we ought to stop at 有之, and that 昧昧我思之 must belong to another subject. 昧昧—深潛, 'deeply.'

From 如有 to the end of par. 7 is quoted in the 'Great Learning,' Conun. x. 14, with some trifling variations in particular characters. K'ang Shing edits the text here, now retaining the characters in the *textus receptus*, and now giving those of the 'Great Learning';—but on no critical principle that I can see. —

介臣, —in the 'Great Learning' we have — 介, 'a single minister.' 介 gives us the idea of 'resolute.' Ma Yung explains it by 耿介—心端怒者 斷斷—誠一之貌, 'the appearance of sincere simplicity.'

For 猗 the 'Great Learning' has 兮

Both the one and the other — 然, to be construed with 斷斷. 休休—易直好善, 'easy, straightforward, and loving good.' K'ang-shing defines it by 寬容貌, 'the appearance of generous forbearance.' 不啻謂心之所好甚于口之所言也, '不啻 means that the love in his heart is greater than the language in his mouth expresses' (Woo Ch'ing).

For 是 in 是能容之, the 'Great Learning' gives 實, which is an emphatic 是. 以保我子孫黎民—以故能保安我子孫衆民, —on these accounts (i.e., with these qualities, thus endowed) he is able to protect, &c. For 亦職有利哉 the 'Great Learning' gives 亦尙有利哉, which is easier to construe. Ts'ao defines 職 by 主, 'to preside over,' the idea being that from such a man benefits, and only benefits, would come. His 'office, that over which he presided, would be, as it were the making of the people prosperous and happy.'

○人之有技，冒
疾以惡之，人之
彥聖而違之，俾
不達，是不能容
以不能保我子
孫黎民，亦曰殆
哉。○邦之杌隉，
曰由一人，邦之
榮懷，亦尙一人
之慶。

7 "But if the minister, when he finds men of ability, be jealous and hates them; if, when he finds accomplished and sage-like men, he oppose them and do not allow their advancement, showing himself really not able to bear them:—such a man will not be able to protect my descendants and people; and will there not indeed be dangers from him?"

8 "The prosperity and unsettledness of a State may arise from one man. The glory and tranquillity of a State also may perhaps arise from the excellence of one man."

P. 7. A thoroughly bad and dangerous minister. For 冒, 'to cover over,' the 'Great Learning' has 媚, synonymous nearly with 疾. For 不達 it has 不通, but that variation does not affect the meaning at all.

P. 8. A summary statement of the consequences flowing from the good and bad minister respectively.

The general meaning of the terms 杌隉 is sufficiently determined by their opposition to 榮懷. The critics generally content them-

selves with saying that they—不安, 'unrest.' But that is the idea conveyed by 隉 alone, as its opposite 懷—安, or 'tranquillity.' Now in

the dict. the first definition of 杌 is 木無枝, 'a tree without branches,' which gives us the idea of 'sterility.' The opposite idea is conveyed by 榮, 'a plant in the glory of its leaves and flowers.' 隉 is formed from 阜 and 毀 abbreviated, and—'a mound falling to pieces.'

By the 'one man' to whom such consequences are attributed, either of good or evil, we are to understand the good minister of par. 6 or the bad one of par. 7. This is the opinion of Ts'ao, after Gan-kwâ, and of the commentators generally. The editors of Yun-ching's Shoo, however, call attention to the opinion of Lien Tsoo-hên and some others, that the duke intends himself as 'the one man' of the State. This does not seem at all likely.

INDEXES.

INDEX I.

OF SUBJECTS.

*Parts of the whole Book are indicated by I., II., &c.; separate Books by i., ii. &c.;
Parts of Books by Pt. i., Pt. ii., &c.; and Paragraphs by 1, 2, &c.*

A

- Ability, three grades of, V. xix. 4, 6.
Abstinence from spirits inculcated on the young, V. x. 4.
Acts of Shun as emperor, II. i. 15—27.
Address of king Woo to the princes, V. iii. 5—8.
— of the duke of Chow and others to king Ching, xix. 1.
Administration of Shun, II. i. 5—12.
— commencement of Yu's, ii. 9—19.
Admonition of Yu to the emperor, II. iv. 2.
— of E Yin to T'ao-k'ia, IV. iv. 8: vi. 1.
— to the prince of K'ang, V. ix. 18, 19, 22—24.
— of the duke of Chow to Ching, xv. 12—19: xix. 16—22.
— to Chang of T'ao, xvii. 2—8.
— of king P'ing to prince Wan, xxviii. 4.
Advice to the young, V. x. 4, 5.
— the duty of listening to good, xv. 18—19.
— given by all the princes to K'ang, xxiii. 2, 3.
Affection between Fung and the duke of Chow, V. ix. 14.
Affections, Heaven has no, &c., IV. v. Pt. iii. 1; V. xvii. 4.
Against Luxurious Ease, V. xv. title.
Aged, exhortation to respect the, V. xii. 12.
Agriculture, Yao's efforts to promote, I. 3, 10.
— Ts'ieh, the minister of, II. i. 17, 18: iv. 1: V. xxvii. 8.
Aim, necessity of a high, V. xx. 17.
Altars, the duke of Chow makes two, V. vi. 4.
Anarchy in Shao's reign, IV. xi. 3.
Ancestors send down calamities from heaven on their unworthy posterity, IV. vii. Pt. ii. 11—14.
— direction with regard to the worship of, ix. 5.
Ancestral temple, II. i. 8, 15, 23: ii. 19: IV. iv. 8: V. Pt. i. 2: vi. 10.
— worship, IV. iv. 1: V. i. Pt. i. 5; Pt. iii. 2: iii. 3.
Ancient times, the teachings of, V. xxvii. 2.
Ancients, emblematic figures of the, II. iv. 4.
— lessons of the, must be followed, IV. viii. Pt. iii. 3: V. ix. 5, 21, 22: xv. 14, 15: xx. 16: xxiv. 11.
— important saying of the, V. xxx. 1.
Announcement of Yu's completed work, III. i. Pt. ii. 22.
— of Chung-hwuy, IV. ii. title.
— of T'ang, iii. title.
— of the completion of the war by Woo, V. iii. 3.
— the Great, vii. title, 1.
— to the prince of K'ang, ix. title.
— about Drunkenness, x. title.
— of the duke of Shao, xii. title.
— concerning Lo, xiii. title.
— of the royal will to the officers of Shang, xiv. 1: xvii. 2.
— of king K'ang, xxiii. title.
Antiquity, Yao and Shun studied, V. xx. 3.
Anxiety, trembling, of king Mah, V. xxvi. 1.
Anxious thought, necessity of, IV. v. Pt. iii. 8: viii. Pt. ii. 6.
— connected with the dignity of the emperor, xii. 9, 23: xvi. 18.
Appearance of Foo Yu, IV. viii. Pt. i. 3.
Arbitrary, Heaven's bestowments on men not, IV. ix. 3.
Archer, P'wan-k'ang's will like an, IV. vii. Pt. i. 15.
Archery, II. iv. 6: IV. v. Pt. i. 7.
Archives of the Yin dynasty, V. xiv. 19.
Armies, the imperial, III. ii. 1: iv. 1: V. xlii. 3.
— of king Woo, V. i. Pt. ii. 1; Pt. iii. 1.
Arrangements, the five, V. iv. 4, 8.
Arranger of the Ancestral temple as officer under Shun, II. i. 23.
Artful-tongued men unfit for office, V. xix. 20.
Arts, men of, V. xix. 2.
Assembly at Mang-lai, V. i. Pt. i. 1.
Assessors to Heaven, the deceased emperors of Yin were, V. xvi. 8.
Assistant, God gave Woo-ting a good, IV. viii. Pt. i. 2.

- the Grand, V. xx. 3.
- the Junior, 6.
- Astronomy of Yaou, I. 3—8.
- of Shun, II. i. 5.
- of Hsa, III. iv. 4.
- of 'The Great Plain,' V. iv. 8.
- Attitudes of king Woo's troops when addressed, V. ii. 4.

B

- Bad heart, king Muh speaks of his, V. xxvi. 3.
- Bamboo-mats, V. xxii. 15, 18.—arrows of Say, 19.
- Banishment, II. i. 11, 12, 20; III. i. Pt. II. 21, 22.
- Barbarous tribes, invasion of, V. xxviii. 2. See *Wild*.
- Barter established by Yu, II. iv. 1.
- Battle, rules to be observed in, V. ii. 7—10.
- of Muh, V. iii. 9.
- Bears and grizzly bears, brave men compared to, V. ii. 9; xxii. 3. *Comp.* II. i. 22.
- Bull, a wooden-tongued, III. iv. 3.
- Bench, the gem-adorned, V. xxii. 2, 15, 17, 24.
- and others used at a funeral, 16, 18.
- Benevolence, of Tang, IV. ii. 5; iv. 3; v. Pt. II. 5.
- Benevolent, the people cherish the, IV. v. Pt. III. 1.
- Birth of a son, the commencement of a dynasty compared to the, V. xii. 19.
- Boasting destroys merit, IV. viii. Pt. II. 7.
- Boat, a good minister like a, IV. viii. Pt. I. 6.
- Body-guards of king Woo, V. ii. 2.
- Box of Ho, the, V. xii. 19.
- Bows and arrows, red and black, V. xxviii. 4.
- Branding used as a punishment, V. xxvii. 3, 18.
- Bribery, warning against, V. xxvi. 8; xxvii. 10.
- among the people of Meou, 12.
- Brilliant success of Wan and Woo, V. xxii. 5; xxvi. 2.
- Brotherly duties, evil of neglecting, V. ix. 16.
- Builder, Yue a, IV. viii. Pt. I. 3.
- Bull, a, used in sacrifice, V. xii. 5; xiii. 20.
- Businesses, the five, V. iv. 4, 6.

C

- Calamities sent from heaven by ancestors, IV. vii. Pt. II. 11—14.
- sent down on the house of Chow, V. vii. 1, 2, 12.
- on Yin, V. xiv. 17.
- sent by Heaven may be avoided, &c., IV. v. Pt. II. 3.
- Calendar of Yaou, I. 3—8.
- of Shun, II. i. 3.
- elements of the, V. iv. 8.
- Camp-followers, order respecting, V. xxix. 4.
- Canon of Yaou, *Pref.* 1; I. *title*.
- of Shun, *Pref.* 2; II. i. *title*.
- Canons of Yu, III. iii. 8.
- Capital, removal of the, IV. vii.
- the, should be in a high situation, Pt. III. 4.
- reasons for removal of the, Pt. I. 2; Pt. III. 6, 6, 7.
- at Lo, building of the, V. xii.
- Cups worn at a funeral, V. xxii. 21, 22, 23.
- Captains of thousands and of hundreds, V. ii. 2.
- Carefulness, constant, IV. ii. 9.
- Carriages imperial used at a funeral, V. xxii. 20.
- Castration used as a punishment, V. xxvii. 18.

- Cattle of the army, order respecting, V. xxi. 3, 4.
- Caution necessary from first to last, V. xxii. 4, 5; xx. 19; xxiv. 13.
- Cautions to the viscount of Wei, V. viii. 4, 5.
- Censorship, duty of, II. iv. 5; IV. iv. 7.
- Centre of the land, 1 & the, V. xii. 14.
- Ceremonies of Shun, II. i. 6—9; xxii. 12—29.
- on the death of a king, V. xxii. 12—29.
- Chamberlain, Pih-keung appointed High, V. xxvi. 4.
- Change of the people of Yin in the course of a generation, V. xxiv. 2, 4.
- Character of the people of Yin, bad, V. xxiv. 10.
- Charge, the, to Yue, IV. viii. *title*.
- to the viscount of Wei, V. viii. *title*.
- to Chung of Tsao, xvii. *title*.
- to Kou-ch'in, xxi. 1.
- the Testamentary, xxi. *title*.
- to the duke of Pei, xxiv. *title*.
- to Keung, xxi. *title*.
- to prince Wan, V. xxviii. *title*.
- Chief mourner, the king's son the, V. xiii. 11.
- Chronology, subjects of, V. iv. 8.
- Costs bestowed on the left, V. xxiv. 13.
- Coffer, the Metal-boom, V. vi. *title*, 11, 16.
- Communication, the minister of, II. i. 25.
- between heaven and earth stopped, V. xxvii. 6.
- Completion of the War, V. iii. *title*.
- Compliments between Shun and his ministers, II. ii. 2—8.
- between Tso-k'ao and E Yin, IV. v. Pt. II. 2—7.
- between Woo-ting and Yue, IV. viii. Pt. II. 12, 13; Pt. III. 11.
- to the duke of Chow, V. xiii. 14—21.
- Confession of Tso-k'ao, IV. v. Pt. II. 3.
- Confidence between Fung and the duke of Chow, V. ix. 14.
- Conquest of Lo, IV. x. *title*.
- Constitution of man conferred by Heaven, V. iv. 2.
- Contentment of parents often manifested by the sons of the industrious, V. xv. 2.
- Contrast between the present and past conduct of Ching's ministers, V. vii. 13.
- Conveyances, four, II. i. 1.
- by water, III. i. *passim*.
- by ox-carts, V. x. 6.
- Co-operation of king Ching, the duke of Chow seeks the, V. xiii. 23.
- of prince Shih, xvi. 18.
- of the princes of Yin, king Ching seeks the, xxii. 21.
- of all the princes, king K'ang seeks the, xxii. 6.
- Corruption of morals follows the long enjoyment of enolument in families, V. xxiv. 2.
- Counsellors, different kinds of, V. xxx. 4, 5.
- Counsels to the twelve masters of provinces, II. i. 16.
- of the great Yu, II. ii. *title*; III. iv. 2.
- Tang's, to his princes, IV. iii. 7, 9.
- E Yin's, to Tso-k'ao, IV. v. V. VI. 6—8.
- Covetousness discouraged, IV. vii. Pt. II. 14, Pt. III. 10, 12.
- Crafty counsellors, V. xxx. 5.
- Crime, the minister of, II. i. 20; II. ii. V. iv. 7; xix. 24; xx. 11; xxvii. 2.
- Crimes of K'ao, IV. i. 1—3; V. xix. 5; xxvii. 4.
- of Shou, IV. x. 3, 6, 7; V. i. Pt. II. 5; B. 5, 6; x. 11; xii. 10; xiv. 9.
- how to deal with great, V. ix. 8, 10, 15, 16.

- Wan and Woo did not occupy themselves with people's, V. xxiii. 5.
- Crowing hens, a bad omen, V. ii. 5.
- Crown, the imperial, IV. v. Pt. ii. 1: V. xxii. 2.
- Cruelty of Show, V. i. Pt. i. 5; Pt. ii. 5; Pt. iii. 3: iii. 6: xix. 5.
- of K'ei, V. xix. 5.
- 'Cut off Tin,' the charge of God to Chow, V. xiv. 14.

D

- Daily renewal of virtue, IV. ii. 3: vi. 6.
- Dancing habits of Yin, the, V. xxii. 19.
- Dark-coloured victim, Tang offers to God, a, IV. iii. 4.
- Days of the month, IV. Pt. ii. 1.
- and of the cycle of sixty, IV. iv. 1: V. i. Pt. ii. 1: Pt. iii. 1: iii. 1: iii. 1, 2, 9: xii. 1—5: xiii. 2, 29: xiv. 1: xviii. 1: xxi. 1, 2, 10, 12: xxiv. 1: xxix. 5.
- Death of Yao, II. i. 13.
- of Shun, II. i. 25.
- the duke of Chow prays for his own, instead of the king's, V. iv. 5, 6, 7.
- of king Woo, V. vi. 12.
- of king Ching, xxi. 10.
- punishment of, on whom, and by whom to be inflicted, V. ix. 4—10.
- punishment of, for drunkenness, V. x. 14, 16.
- redemption of the punishment of, V. xxvii. 18.
- Decision, the necessity of, V. xx. 17.
- Declaration, the great, V. i. title.
- Decree of Heaven, presumptuous confidence in the, IV. x. 5: V. i. Pt. i. 6: Pt. ii. 5: xxi. 3, 5, 14.
- not constant, V. ix. 23: xvi. 2—4.
- Defiant reply of Show, IV. x. 5.
- Degeneracy of P'uan-k'ang's ministers, IV. vii. Pt. i. 7.
- of the sons of hard-working people frequent, V. xv. 2.
- causes the loss of the favour of Heaven, V. xvi. 4.
- Deliberation to be exercised in criminal cases, V. ix. 12: xxvii. 12—22.
- Dolour of Yao, the, I. ii: II. ii. 14: iv. 1: V. iv. 3.
- Yu's labours on the, III. i.
- Demoralization of the people in Show's reign, IV. x. 3: xi. 2.
- Dependence of the emperor on his ministers, II. iv. 3, 4: IV. v. Pt. i. 3.
- on his people, IV. v. Pt. ii. 2: vi. 11.
- Devotion of the Grand-tutor to his dynasty, IV. xi. 3, 9.
- Diligence, the necessity of, V. xx. 17: xxi. 3: xxvii. 18.
- Disease, a laborious situation compared to a, V. ix. 6, 9.
- Disipation of the emperor T'ae-k'ang, III. iii. 1, 6.
- of the tyrant Show, IV. x. 2.
- of K'ei, V. xviii. 4.
- Divination, practised by Shun, II. ii. 13.
- by P'uan-k'ang, IV. vii. Pt. i. 2.
- by king Woo, V. i. Pt. ii. 5: iv. 20—31: vii. 9.
- by Woo's ministers, V. vi. 2, 3, 9, 13.
- by king Ching, V. vii. 3—9, 15.
- by the dukes of Chow, V. xii. 2: xiii. 5, 4.
- Domains, or Tenures, the five, II. iv. 3: III. i.

- Pt. ii. 13—22: V. ix. 1: x. 10, 13: xii. 6: xvi. 2: xx. 14: xxi. 4.
- the six, V. xx. 1.
- Doubt of Tang as to the righteousness of his course, IV. ii. 1.
- Double examination of, V. iv. 4, 20—31.
- Dream, Woo-ting's, IV. viii. Pt. i. 2.
- king Woo's, V. i. Pt. ii. 5.
- Dresses worn at a funeral, V. xxi. 22, 23.
- Drum, the large, V. xxi. 19.
- Drunkenness of T'ae-k'ang, III. iii. 4.
- of He and Ho, III. iv. 4.
- of Show, IV. xi. 1, 4: V. i. Pt. i. 5: Pt. ii. 3: x. 11: xv. 13.
- the Announcement about, V. x. title.
- Duke of Chow. See Chow in Index II.
- of Shaou, V. xii. title.
- of Ts'ui, V. xxx. title.
- Dukes, the two, V. vi. 2, 13, 17, 19. See K'ang.
- Duties of relatives, V. ix. 16.
- being done, indulgence may follow, V. x. 7.
- Dynasties, lessons to be learnt from previous, V. xii. 17, 18.
- rise and fall of, xiv. 2—19: xviii. 4—19.
- precedents of former, xx. 2—4.

E

- Early, Tang rose, IV. v. Pt. i. 5.
- Early life of Woo-ting, IV. viii. Pt. iii. 1.
- Ears, cutting off the, as a punishment, V. ix. 10: xxvii. 3.
- Earth, sacrifices to the great, V. i. Pt. i. 10. See Heaven.
- Ease, Against Luxurious, V. xiv. title.
- people generally love their, V. xxx. 2.
- Eastern frontier, the, V. xxi. 1: xxiv. 1.
- Eclipse of the sun, III. iv. 4.
- Education, king Woo's attention to, V. iii. 10.
- Effort, necessity of, IV. v. Pt. iii. 6: V. ix. 6: xii. 13.
- on behalf of the people encouraged, IV. vii. Pt. iii. 10, 12.
- Eight objects of government, V. iv. 4, 7.
- savage tribes, V. v. 1.
- Elders, the duty of respecting, IV. iv. 4: V. xii. 12.
- Eldest son of God, the emperor the, V. xii. 6, 13.
- Elements, the five, II. ii. 7: III. V. 3: 9. iv. 3, 4, 5.
- Embroidery, II. iv. 4.
- Emergencies, preparation for, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 3.
- Emolument, the long enjoyment of, in families corrupts their morals, V. xxiv. 9.
- Emperor, the, should endeavour to keep the affections of the people, III. iii. 4, 5.
- Tang, the fellow and equal of Heaven, IV. v. Pt. iii. 3: viii. Pt. iii. 10.
- inauguration of an, V. xxii. 23—29.
- the great, xxvii. 5, 7. See Example.
- Enemy, Show, the, of the people, V. i. Pt. iii. 4.
- Enigmatical reply of the tortoise, V. vii. 3, 15.
- Design of king Woo, V. ii. 1.
- Entreats, the duke of Chow, Shih to assist him in the government, V. xvi. 16, 17, 19—21.
- Entrenchments, soldiers forbidden to leave the, V. xxix. 4.
- Errors, Tang changed his, IV. ii. 5.
- king Shih acknowledges his, V. xxvi. 3.
- Establishment of Government, the, V. xix. title.
- Evil, all acts of, contribute to disorder, V. xvii. 4.
- Examination of doubts, V. iv. 20—31.

- Example, importance of emperor's, II. iii. 5: iv. 7, 11: IV. i. 3.
 — of freedom from luxurious ease, V. xv. 4—5, 8—11, 16, 17.
 — of the duke of Chow, V. xxi. 2.
 — Keou-ya urged to follow the, of his grandfather and father, V. xxv. 3, 4, 7.
 Exhortations to officers, various, V. xx: 15—20.
 Expedition, Yu's, against the Manouites, II. ii. 20, 21.
 — of Yin, III. iv. *title*.
 — of king Ching to the east, V. vii. 13.
 — against the wild tribes of the Hwas and of Sou, V. xxix. 1.
 Extravagance of the tyrant Show, V. i. Pt. i. 3.
 — comes with emolument unperceived, xx. 15.
 Extremities, the six, V. iv. 4.

F

- Face, virtue not to be judged by the, V. xix. 2.
 — the appearance of the, may help the judgment in criminal cases, V. xxvii. 17.
 Fame of Yu universal, III. i. Pt. ii. 23.
 — of the duke of Peih will be inexhaustible, V. xxi. 14.
 Familiarity, against improper, V. v. 4.
 Fashions, three condemned by Tang, IV. iv. 17.
 Father, duty of a, to love his children, V. ix. 16.
 — how a son may cover the faults of his, xvii. 2, 3.
 — Keou-ya urged to follow the example of his, xxv. 3, 4, 7.
 Faults, king Muh acknowledges his, V. xxvi. 3.
 Favouritism, against, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 5, 9.
 — of the tyrant Show, V. i. Pt. i. 5: ii. 8.
 Feet, cutting off the, as a punishment, V. xxvii. 18.
 Fellow, Tang was the, of God, IV. v. Pt. iii. 3: viii. Pt. iii. 10.
 Fidelity of ministers urged, II. iv. 5: IV. iv. 7.
 Figures, emblematic, of the ancients, II. iv. 4.
 Filial piety enforced, IV. v. Pt. iii. 7: V. x. 6: xvii. 2, 3.
 — duty, Ching's sense of, V. vii. 11.
 — neglect of, abhorred by all, ix. 13.
 — of prince Wan, xxviii. 3.
 Fines, the five redemption, instituted by king Muh, V. xxvii. 15, 17, 18.
 Fire, a minister of Heaven compared to, III. iv. 6.
 Five tokens of gema, II. i. 7.—kinds of gema, V. xxii. 19.
 — duties, ceremonies, habiliments, punishments, &c., II. iii. 6.
 — punishments, V. xxvii. 3, 12, 13, 17, 22.
 — colours, and notes, II. iv. 4.
 — coloured earths, III. i. Pt. i. 35.
 — presidents, II. iv. 8.
 — elements, III. ii. 3: V. iv. 3, 4, 5.
 — Soma, III. iii. *title*.
 — constant virtues, V. i. Pt. iii. 2.
 — orders of nobility, V. iii. 10.
 — relations, II. i. 19: IV. iv. 5: V. iii. 10: ix. 2, 3: xx. 8: xxv. 4.
 — statements, redemption fines, cases of error, V. xxvii. 13, 16.
 — happinesses, V. iv. 4, 9, 22.
 — businesses, V. iv. 4, 9.
 — arrangements, V. iv. 4, 8.
 — domains or tenures. See *Domains*.
 Five hundred &, division of the country by distances of, III. i. Pt. ii. 16—23.

- Flatterers, king Muh warns Keou against, V. xxi. 5, 6, 7.
 Flattery of superiors, a custom of the Shang dynasty, V. xxiv. 8.
 Flight, recommended to the viscount of Wei, IV. xi. 2.
 Flood. See *Deluge*.
 Foolish become wise by thinking, the, V. xviii. 17.
 Forbearance, to be exercised towards the besotted ministers of Yin, V. x. 13, 16.
 — of Heaven towards Show, xviii. 17.
 — in government, xxi. 7.
 Foreign things, against making too much of, V. v. 8.
 Forester, Shun's, II. i. 22.
 — example of the, IV. v. Pt. i. 7.
 Four Seas, II. i. 13: *et passim*.
 — eminences, the. See *Mountains*.
 — kingdoms, the imperial domain of Yin divided into, V. xiv. 21: xviii. 2.
 — classes of the people, V. xx. 12.
 Fragrance, the, of perfect government influences spirits, V. xxi. 3.
 — of virtue, xxvii. 4.
 Funeral ceremonies of king Ching, V. xxi. 13—29.
 Funerals, Woo taught attention to, V. iii. 10.

G

- Gem-stone, Yu presents a, to the emperor, III. i. Pt. ii. 23.
 Gems used at a funeral, V. xxii. 15, 16, 17, 19.
 General Regulator, appointment of Shun to be, II. i. 3.
 — do, of Yu, 17.
 Gentleness and strictness to be combined in government, V. xxi. 7.
 Goat, a, used in sacrifice, V. xii. 3.
 Goss, II. i. 6: iv. 2: IV. i. 2: ii. 3: iii. 2, 8: iv. 8: v. Pt. iii. 3: vii. Pt. iii. 6: viii. Pt. i. 2: V. i. Pt. i. 6, 7, 10: Pt. iii. 3: iii. 6: iv. 3, 15: vi. 7: vii. 9, 13: viii. 3: ix. 4: xii. 5, 14: xiv. 2, 4, 3, 8, 10, 13, 14: xxi. 3, 11, 14: xxviii. 4, 5: xix. 2, 4, 5, 6: xxiii. 6: xxvii. 4, 12: xxviii. 1.
 Good, defined, IV. vi. 8.
 — of the people, the object of government, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 2.
 — the people are born, V. xxi. 14.
 Goodness, all acts of, contribute to government, V. xvii. 4.
 Government, the object of, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 3.
 — good, depends on officers, 5.
 — the eight objects of, V. iv. 4, 7.
 — three virtues of, iv. 17.
 — the Establishment of, xix. *title*.
 — happy results of Shun's, xxvii. 10.
 — happy results of Wan and Woo's, xxii. 5: xxvi. 2.
 Grain beaten down by a storm, V. vi. 16, 19.
 Grand Tutor, IV. xi. 1: V. xx. 5: xxiv. 2, 6, 12.
 — Guardian, V. v. i. xii. 2: xiii. 2: xvi. 19: xx. 5: xxii. 3, 11, 23: xxiii. 1, 2.
 — Assistant, xx. 6.
 — Historiographer, vi. 5, 17: xix. 9, 24: xxii. 23.
 — banner, the merits of officers recorded on the, xxv. 1.
 Grass used in divination, II. ii. 18: V. ix. 20—31.
 — the common people compared to, V. xxi. 4.
 — mats of, used at a funeral, V. xxi. 17.

Great emperor, the, V. xxvii. 5, 7.
 Guardian, the Junior, V. xx. 6.—the Grand.
 See Grand.
 Guards, imperial, V. ii. 2: xix. 1, 2: xxii. 3, 11, 21.
 Gülti, T'ang's sentiments about, V. ix. 21.
 — king Ch'ing's do., ix. 21.

H

Habit becomes a second nature, IV. v. Pt. i. 9.
 Habits, the dancing, of Yin, V. xxii. 13.
 Happinesses, the five, V. iv. 4, 9, 39.
 Hardships, king Ch'ing complains of, V. vii. 8, 10.
 — of the common people, xxv. 5.
 Harmony, exhortation to, V. xxviii. 26, 31.
 — produced by T'ang's government, xix. 4.
 Haughtiness, of P'wan-k'ang's ministers, IV. vii. Pt. i. 6—9.
 Heart, keeping the, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 10.
 Heaven, — the supreme Being, II. i. 8, 56: ii. 14, 17, 20, 21: iii. 5, 6, 7: iv. 2, 11: iii. ii. 3: iv. 2, 5, 6: IV. i. 1, 4: ii. 2, 3, 9: iii. 3, 5, 7: iv. 2: v. Pt. i. 2: Pt. ii. 3: Pt. iii. 1: vi. 2, 3: vii. Pt. i. 3, 4: Pt. ii. 3, 9: viii. Pt. ii. 2, 3: ix. 3, 4: x. 2, 5: V. i. Pt. i. 7, 9, 10, 11: Pt. ii. 3, 4, 5, 7: Pt. iii. 2, 3: ii. 7: iii. 5, 6, 7, 9: iv. 2, 3: vi. 7, 18, 19: vii. 1—4, 8—10, 13, 14, 15: ix. 4, 7, 10, 21: x. 2, 3, 7, 9, 11: xii. 10—14, 17, 19, 20, 23, 24: xiii. 2, 4, 14, xiv. 3, 4, 5, 8, 9, 11, 17, 18, 20, 21, 24: xv. 4, 13: xvi. 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 9, 10, 14, 15, 19, 20, 22: xviii. 3, 5, 6, 7, 12—19, 21, 22, 28, 29: xxii. 6, 7, 25: xxiv. 9: xxvii. 11, 12, 13, 17, 21: xxviii. 2.
 — the son of, — the emperor, III. iv. 5: IV. x. 2: V. iv. 16: xxiii. 2.
 — high, IV. ii. 3: iii. 4, 5: V. i. Pt. i. 4.
 — great, II. ii. 4: IV. iv. 2: v. Pt. ii. 3: vi. 3: viii. Pt. ii. 10: V. i. Pt. i. 5: iii. 6: viii. 2: xi. 6: xii. 14: xvi. 7: xvii. 4: xxiii. 2, 5.
 — conferred seat (the throne), IV. v. Pt. iii. 1.
 — compassionate, V. xiv. 2.
 — and earth, V. i. Pt. i. 5: Pt. iii. 3: iii. 6: xx. 5, 6: xxvii. 6.
 Heavenly, man's nature, IV. x. 3.
 — city of Shang, V. xiv. 20.
 — sounding stones, V. xxii. 19.
 Hairs, Shun's punishments did not extend to the criminal's, II. ii. 12.
 Hemp, an article of tribute, V. ii. 3.
 Hens, crowing, V. ii. 3.
 Herald with his wooden-tongued bell, the, III. iv. 3.
 High Chamberlain, Pih-keung appointed, V. xxvi. 4.
 Historiographer. *See Grand.*
 Hopeless wickedness of Show, V. i. Pt. i. 6.
 Horses, bay, with red manes and tails, V. xxiii. 1.
 — four, presented to prince Wan, xxvii. 4.
 Hounds of Lou, The, V. v. *vide* 1.
 Human nature. *See Nature.*
 Humility, advantages of, II. ii. 21: IV. vi. 11: viii. 4.
 — of T'ao and Ke, V. xv. 3.
 — of Wan, 10, 12.
 — of king Mah, xxvi. 1, 3, 4.
 Hundred officers, Yao and Shun established a, V. xx. 3: *compare* II. i. 2.
 — Hsu and Shang had double the number, V. xx. 3.

Hunting, king Wan's moderation in, V. xv. 11.
 Husbandman, the, must labour for a harvest, IV. vii. Pt. i. 9, 11.
 Hypocrisy, against, V. xx. 18.

I

Ice, walking upon spring, V. xxv. 2.
 Idleness, warning against, IV. v. Pt. ii. 6: Pt. iii. 5: vii. Pt. iii. 2: V. ix. 6: xvii. 3: xx. 16: xxi. 3.
 — the throne not a place for, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 2: V. xiii. 21: xv. 13.
 — the duke of Chow abjures, xvi. 21.
 — of the tyrant Show, V. i. Pt. iii. 2: xiv. 9: xix. 5.
 — of K'ee, V. xiv. 5: xviii. 4.
 Imitation of Heaven, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 3—10.
 Impartiality of Shun's administration, V. xxviii. 11.
 — incited, 21.
 Imperial domain, the, III. i. Pt. ii. 18.
 Indulgence in eating and drinking allowed when duty is done, V. x. 7.
 Inauguration of an emperor, V. xxii. 28—29.
 Iniquity of Shang, full, V. i. Pt. i. 2.
 Insanity, Show's government manifested, IV. xi. 3.
 Inspection, tours of, II. i. 2: V. xx. 1, 14.
 — Heaven's, of men, IV. ix. 3.
 Instruction, the minister of, *Pref.* 69: II. i. 19: V. ii. 2: iv. 7: xi. 2: xix. 10: xx. 8: xxv. *vide* 3.
 Instructions of E, The, IV. iv. *vide* 1.
 — benefit of Yue's, IV. viii. Pt. iii. 2.
 Instructors raised up by Heaven, V. i. Pt. i. 7.
 — of youth, responsibility of, V. ix. 17.
 Intelligences, spiritual, V. xxi. 3.
 Intelligent man, a model, IV. viii. Pt. i. 1.
 — kings, Pt. ii. 2.
 — Heaven is all, 3.
 Invasion of barbarians, V. xxviii. 2.
 Islands, the wild people of the, III. i. Pt. i. 10, 44.
 Issues of Show's drunkenness, V. x. 11.
 — great, depending on king Ch'ing's making a good commencement, V. xii. 19—23.

J

Judges, directions to, and qualifications of, V. xxvii. 19, 20.
 Judgment, things that may warp, V. xxvii. 16.
 Junior Tutor, IV. xi. 1, 2: V. xx. 6.
 — Assistant, xx. 6.
 — Guardian, *Id.*
 Justice should be tempered with forbearance, III. iv. 6.
 — strict, of P'wan-k'ang, IV. vii. Pt. i. 18.
 — of king Wan's exactions, V. xv. 11, 12.

K

Kindness of T'ang, IV. ii. 5: iv. 5: v. Pt. ii. 5: V. viii. 2.
 — of T'ao-k'ia, V. xv. 6.
 — of Wan, xv. 10.
 King, a, should overtop all others in virtue, V. xii. 22.

Kingdom, how T'ao-king lost his, III. III. 1.
 Kings, the former, III. iv. 2; *et supra*.
 Knife, the red, V. xxii. 19.
 Kuo, the three, V. xi. 8.
 Kuang, the three, V. xi. 8.

L

Labours of Yu described, II. iv. 1: III. 1.
 Lacquered bench, a, V. xxii. 18.
 Laudation of the duke of Peih, V. xxiv. 5, 13.
 — of the prince Wan, xxviii. 3.
 Law officers, V. xix. 1, 2, 7, 18, 19.
 Lawlessness of the people of Yin, V. xiv. 16.
 Learning, Yu's remarks on, IV. viii. Pt. iii. 2, 4, 5.
 Leisure, king Wan had no, V. xv. 10.
 Leniency, in dealing with criminals, V. xi. 2: xii. 21.
 — of Chow towards the people of Yin, V. xiv. 21—23: xviii. 2, 20.
 Lessons of the ancients, IV. viii. Pt. iii. 3: V. xxiv. 11. See *Ancients*.
 — to be learnt from previous dynasties, V. xii. 17, 18.
 — of the duke of Chow, V. xxi. 2—7.
 — the great, xxi. 19: xxi. 11.
 Life of man, short or long according to their righteousness, IV. ix. 3: V. xv. 4—7.
 — Show thinks his, secured by the decree of Heaven, IV. x. 5.
 Liking and disliking, not the measure of right and wrong, IV. v. Pt. iii. 7.
 Litigations, Wan would not himself appear in, V. xix. 13, 14, 16, 18, 21: xxiii. 5.
 Line which straightens wood, reproof like a, IV. viii. Pt. i. 11.
 Longevity of several virtuous kings of Yin, V. xv. 4—6.
 — given to the just and intelligent, xvi. 10.
 — of king Muh, V. xxvii. 1.
 Lord of all the spirits, the emperor, IV. vi. 3.
 Love to relatives recommended, IV. ix. 4.
 Loyal prayer, a, V. xi. 8, 12, 24: xix. 23.
 — offerings of the hereditary princes, V. xii. 8, 24.
 Luxurious Ease, Against, V. xv. *vide*.
 Luxury, extreme, of Show, V. xviii. 16.

M

Maces rounded and pointed, V. xxii. 19.
 — the great mace and mace-cover, 23, 28.
 — half-mace, 27.
 Man, the most highly endowed of all creatures, V. i. Pt. i. 2.
 Map of the new capital sent to king Ching, V. xiii. 3.
 Marriage, of Shun, I. 12.
 — of Yu, II. iv. 8.
 Martial law of the emperor K'uei, III. II. 3.
 — of Tang, IV. i. 4.
 — the severity of, III. iv. 7: V. xxix. 5.
 Mats, different kinds of, employed at a funeral, V. xxii. 18—19.
 Mate of great Heaven, the king the, V. xli. 14. See *Follow*.
 Mean, a sovereign should set up the pattern of the, IV. ii. 8.
 — exhortation to follow the, V. xviii. 7.

— the minds of the people cannot attain to the, xxv. 9.
 — the, in punishments, xxvii. 20, 22.
 Measures, discriminative, required in dealing with the people of Yin, V. xxiv. 4, 7.
 Medicine, a minister's remonstrances like, IV. viii. Pt. i. 8.
 Men, Yao's anxiety to find right, I. 9—12.
 — Shun's do, II. i. 15—27.
 — importance of knowing, II. iii. 2, 3.
 — right, IV. vi. 7.
 Meritorious work, Ching charges the duke of Chow to complete his, V. xlii. 19—21.
 Metal-bound Coffer, The, V. vi. *vide*; II. 16.
 Middle kingdom, — China, V. xi. 6; — *Comp.* III. i. Pt. II. 15.
 Midnight, king Muh rose at to meditate, V. xxvi. 1.
 Miff, divination by, V. iv. 20—31: xvi. 9.
 Military preparations recommended, V. xix. 22: xxiii. 3.
 — department, xx. 10.
 — orders, xxix. 3, 4.
 Mind of Heaven, the, IV. vi. 3.
 Minister's, the emperor's dependence on his, II. iv. 3, 4: IV. viii. Pt. iii. 9: V. xxv. 2, 3.
 — duties of, II. iv. 5, 6, 11: III. iv. 2, 3.
 — respect due to, IV. v. Pt. ii. 7.
 — how to choose, IV. vi. 7.
 — Yu made prime, IV. viii. Pt. i. 4. See *Prime*.
 — Yag promises to get good, IV. viii. Pt. iii. 7.
 — Show's and Woo's, V. i. Pt. i. 7: Pt. ii. 8: II. 2.
 — must not usurp the sovereign's prerogative, IV. 18, 19.
 — king Ching appeals to the old, vii. 10.
 — Wan's, xvi. 12, 13.
 — character of Wan's and Woo's, xvi. 2.
 — Shun's three, xxvii. 3.
 — king Ping deprecates the want of able, xxviii. 2.
 — a thoroughly good and a thoroughly bad, xxx. 6, 7, 8.
 Mirror, other people's, in which we may see ourselves, V. x. 12.
 Mistakes, one should not be ashamed to confess, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 8.
 Model, the duke of Chow commends himself as a, V. xlii. 10, 13.
 Months. See *Days*.
 Moral sense, God has given all men a, IV. iii. 2.
 Mountain, Shun sacrificed to the T'ao, II. i. 8.
 Mountains, Chief of the four, I. 11, 12: II. i. 7, 13: V. xx. 3.
 — the four, II. i. 8: V. xx. 14.
 Mourning for Yao, II. i. 13.
 — for Tang, IV. v. Pt. i. 10.
 — Woo-ting's silent, IV. viii. Pt. i. 1.
 — King K'ang assumes, V. xxiii. 7.
 Murmurs of the people against Tang, IV. i. 1—3.
 Music of Shun, II. i. 8, 13, 24: iv. 4, 6.
 — the power of, 9, 10.
 Mute, blind, III. iv. 4.
 Mystic connection between character and natural phenomena, V. iv. 24—27.

N

Nature, human, prone to err, II. ii. 15.
 — the moral, IV. iii. 2.
 — a second, IV. v. Pt. i. 9.
 — heavenly, IV. x. 3.
 — human, radically good, V. xxi. 14.

Necessity for a change of the capita, IV. vii. Pt. I. 2.

Neglect of the warnings of Heaven, IV. ix. 4.

Nine virtues, the, II. iii. 3; V. xix. 2.
— provinces, II. iv. 8; III. i. Pt. I. *passim*; Pt. II. 14; IV. vi. 2, 3; V. xx. 13.

— divisions of the 'Great Plain,' V. iv. 3, 4.

— wild tribes, V. x. 1.

Nobility, five orders of, V. iii. 10.

Nobles, the domain of the, III. i. Pt. II. 19.

Noose, cutting off, as a punishment, II. i. 11, note; IV. vii. Pt. II. 16; V. ix. 10; xviii. 5, xviii. 3, 5.

Numerous Officers, The, V. xiv. *note*.

— Regions, V. xviii. *note*.

O

Obedience to Heaven, of Yu and T'ang, V. xii. 11.

Observing, Heaven is, IV. viii. Pt. II. 3.

Office, when one should retire from, IV. v. Pt. III. 2.

Officers, on choosing, IV. viii. Pt. II. 3.

— Woo's appointment of, V. iii. 4.

— of divination, iv. 20—24.

— crimes of, to be punished with unusual severity, ix. 17.

— of Yin did not indulge in spirits, x. 9, 10.

— the Numerous, xiv. *note*.

— of Shang, virtue of the, xvi. 3.

— of state of king Ching, xix. 1.

— of the founder of the Hsia dynasty, xix. 2.

— of Chow, 6—24, xx. *note*.

— number of, in different dynasties, xx. 3, 4.

Offerings, importance of sincerity in, V. xiii. 12.

Old families (aristocracy), IV. vii. Pt. I. 7, 13.

— Show did despise in the, IV. xi. 3; V. i. Pt. II. 3.

— king Ching appeals to the, V. xii. 10.

— men of yellow hair, V. xxx. 4.

Omnipotent appearances, *Pref.* 22, 42; IV. ix. 1; V. II. 5.

Openness of P'wan-k'ang with his people, IV. vii. Pt. III. 3, 11.

Opposition of Ching's ministers to his measures, V. xii. 7.

Oyster-pearls, an article of tribute, III. i. Pt. I. 25.

Owl, the poem of the, V. vi. 15.

Ox-carts, V. x. 6.

P

Palace in T'ang, the, IV. v. Pt. I. 9.

— description of the emperor's, V. xiii. 10, note; xxiii. 1.

Parent of all creatures, Heaven and Earth the, V. i. Pt. I. 3.

— of the people, the sovereign, the, i. Pt. I. 3; iv. 16.

Partiality, Heaven has no, IV. v. Pt. II. 1; vi. 2, 4.

— in the king compared to a fire, V. xiii. 9.

Pastors, a name given to high officers, II. i. 7, 16; V. xix. *passim*; xx. 3, 13; xviii. 12.

Patience and forbearance recommended, V. xxi. 11, 13.

Pattern for a sage king, Heaven the, IV. viii. Pt. II. 3.

— of king T'ang, perfect, Pt. III. 6.

Peace, Woo's measures of, V. iii. 2, 9, 10.

— with all men, to be sought, xvii. 6.

Peace-securing domain, the, III. i. Pt. II. 20.

Penal laws of Yin to be adopted by prince K'ang, V. ix. 11, 13.

Penance of T'ao-k'ang, IV. v. Pt. II. 3.

People, the root of a country, III. iii. 4.

— must have a ruler, IV. ii. 2; v. Pt. II. 2; vi. 11.

— the, called T'ang to the empire, IV. ii. 4, 5; V. xviii. 6.

— always cherish the benevolent man, IV. v. Pt. III. 1; V. xvii. 4.

— a sovereign should sympathise with the, IV. v. Pt. III. 5.

— turn to the man of pure virtue, IV. vi. 4.

— ministers should seek the good of the, IV. vi. 7; vii. Pt. I. 5; viii. Pt. II. 2; V. xi. 2, 3.

— P'wan-k'ang addresses his, IV. vii. Pt. II. 1.

— P'wan-k'ang's concern for the good of the, Pt. III. 6, 9—13.

— longed for the downfall of Yin, IV. x. 4.

— the will of Heaven seen from that of the, V. i. Pt. II. 7.

— relation of sovereign and, V. ix. 9—13; xviii. 8, 10.

— king Ching had the sympathy of the, vii. 10.

— the awfulness of the, xiv. 4, 9.

— the duke of Chow's anxiety about the, xvi. 22, 23.

— are born good, xxi. 14.

— king P'ing's concern for the inferior, xviii. 2, 4.

Perfection Royal, V. iv. 4. 9—16.

Perfidy of the people of Manou, V. xvii. 4.

Perils of a sovereign's position, IV. v. Pt. III. 5.

Person, cultivation of the, IV. v. Pt. II. 4.

Pheasant, a crowing, IV. ix. 1.

Phoenix, the, II. iv. 2.

Pig, a, used in sacrifice, V. xii. 5.

Plan, The Great, V. iv. *note*, 3.

— the river, xxi. 19.

Pleasure-hunting shortens life, V. xv. 7.

Poetry, II. iv. 4, 11; III. iii. V. iv. 14; vi. 15.

Political divisions of the empire, III. i. Pt. II. 18—22.

Posterity, T'ang fears the reproach of, IV. ii. 1.

— T'ang's concern for, v. Pt. I. 5.

— king Mah addresses his lessons to, V. xvii. 22.

Praise. See *Laudation*.

Prayer of the duke of Chow, V. vi. 5; xiii. 27. See *Legend*.

Precautionary measures, king Wan would not himself appear in, V. xix. 13, 14, 16, 18.

Precedents for removing the capital, IV. vii. Pt. I. 3.

— in receiving tribute, V. v. 2.

— of former dynasties, xx. 2—4.

Premonitions of the fall of Yin, IV. x. 2—4, 7; xi. 1, 2, 8.

Preparation for all emergencies, IV. viii. Pt. II. 8.

— for a battle, V. xxix. 5.

Privileges of the ruler, V. iv. 18, 19.

Pride comes with rank unperceived, V. xx. 18.

Prudent thoughts should be repressed, IV. viii. Pt. II. 7.

Prime minister, E Yin, IV. iv. 1.

— Yue, IV. viii. Pt. I. 4.

— the duke of Chow, V. xvii. 1; xx. 7.

— the duke of Shao, xxi. 13.

Prince of K'ang, Announcement to the, V. ix. *note*.

— of a state, the duty of the, xi. 1, 2.

— Shih, *Pref.* 49; V. xvi. *note*, 1, 7.

- of Len upon Punishments, xxvii. *title*, 1.
- Wán, xxviii. *title*.
- Princes, how the emperor should deal with the, IV. ii. 7.
- Woo's appointment of, V. iii. 4.
- king Ching makes an announcement to the, vii. 1.
- Proclamation, rules for drawing up, V. xxiv. 8.
- Progress in virtue inculcated, IV. v. Pt. ii. 4.
- Promises of the duke of Chow to king Ching, V. xiii. 22—24.
- Propriety, importance of, to a sovereign, IV. ii. 8, 9.
- Prosperity, of sovereign and minister, IV. v. Pt. i. 3.
- and ruin, IV. v. Pt. iii. 2.
- would come with a change of capital, IV. vii. Pt. i. 4.
- depends on men, V. xvi. 3.
- Provinces, the empire divided into twelve by Shun, II. i. 10.
- and into nine by Yu, II. iv. 8; III. i. 1; IV. vi. 2, 3; V. xz. 13.
- Punishment, instituted by Shun, II. i. 11, 12, 20; II. 11, 12; iv. 6.
- by K'uei, III. ii. 3.
- of astronomers, III. iv. 4.
- of K'uei by Tang, IV. i. iv. 7.
- are inflicted by ancestors, IV. vii. Pt. ii. 11—14.
- by Pwan-kang, 18.
- of criminal's relatives, V. i. Pt. i. 3.
- of king Woo's brothers, vi. 14.
- when to be inflicted, ix. 8, 15, 16.
- the end of, II. ii. 11; V. xxi. 9; xxvii. 21.
- the Prince of Len upon, xxvii. *title*, 1.
- excessive use of, among the people of Measou, 3, 4.
- a blessing, how to make, 14, 22.
- Pure virtue, Yin and Tang both possessed, IV. vi. *title*, 3.
- Heaven gives its favour to, 4, 5.
- Purpose, Pwan-kang's settled, IV. vii. Pt. i. 15; Pt. ii. 15.
- Heaven had no set, to destroy K'uei and Chow, V. xviii. 12.

R

- Rain, a good minister like a copious, IV. viii. Pt. i. 6.
- Ranks, soldiers forbidden to leave the, V. xxix. 4.
- Rebellion quelled by king Ching, V. xi. 1.
- the first, in China, xxvii. 2.
- Recorder the great, and the, of the interior, V. x. 13.
- Redemption of punishments, the law of, V. xxvii. 18.
- Reformation, of morals, II. iv. 4.
- of T'ao-k'uei, IV. v. Pt. i. 10.
- the people always capable of, V. xxi. 14.
- Regulations of Tang, IV. iv. 6, 7.
- Relations, the five, II. i. 19; IV. iv. 5; V. iii. 10; iv. 2, 3; xz. 8; xxv. 4.
- Relatives, duty of loving, IV. iv. 4.
- Shou's neglect of his, V. ii. 6.
- Relics, various precious, V. xxii. 10.
- Religion, the minister of, II. i. 29; V. xz. 3; xxii. 23, 26; xxvii. 8.
- Religious worship, acts of, II. i. 6, 8; III. i. Pt. i. 63, 74; IV. iii. 4; iv. 1; v. Pt. iii. 1; vii. Pt. ii. 11; ix. 1; V. i. Pt. i. 10; iii. 3.

- Remonstrance of Woo-ting's ministers, IV. viii. Pt. i. 1.
- Remonstrances of the lower people, IV. vii. Pt. i. 5, 12.
- Removal of the people of Yin to the west, V. xiv. 18, 25. See *Capital*.
- Removal of virtue, IV. ii. 8; vi. 6.
- of the people, V. ix. 7.
- Report on the building of Lo delivered to the king, V. xiii. 1—3.
- Reproof, P'wan-kang's, of his officers, IV. vii. Pt. i. 6, 7, 8, 11, 12.
- value of, to a sovereign, IV. viii. Pt. i. 11.
- of the officers of Yin, V. xiv. 21—23.
- easy to give but difficult to receive, V. xxx. 2.
- Resignation of Yuen in favour of Shun, II. i. 3, 4.
- Responsibility, Tang's sense of, IV. iii. 6.
- Pwan-kang's sense of, vii. Pt. i. 16.
- king Ching's sense of, V. vii. 1, 2, 8, 11.
- enforced by the duke of Shao, xii. 13—16.
- enforced by the duke of Chow, xvi. 18—23.
- Restraint, the domain of, III. i. Pt. ii. 21.
- Retirement of E Yin, IV. vi. 1.
- of the duke of Chow, V. xii. 12.
- Reverence, Shou's want of, IV. xi. 5.
- necessity of, to a king, V. xii. 9, *et seq.* xiii. 12; xxiii. 2; xxvii. 21.
- Reverent, Heaven shows affection to the, IV. v. Pt. iii. 1.
- Review of Woo's hosts, V. i. Pt. ii. 1.
- Reward(s) and punishment of troops, III. ii. 5; IV. i. 4; V. i. Pt. iii. 1.
- of the princes, IV. ii. 7.
- divine, IV. iv. 8.
- promised to the officers of Yu, V. xviii. 28.
- given to prince Wán, V. xxviii. 4.
- robes used as, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 4.
- Righteousness recommended, IV. ii. 8.
- of Tang's dethronement of K'uei, IV. iii. 5.
- Heaven's first consideration, ix. 3.
- success follows, V. i. Pt. i. 7.
- River plan, the, V. xxii. 19.
- Robes, the keeper of the, V. xix. 1, 8.
- Rousing address of Woo to his troops, V. i. Pt. ii. 6, 8; ii. 7—10.
- Royal perfection, V. ix. 4, 9—16.
- Ruin caused by ardent spirits, V. x. 3.
- dissipation and extravagance the prelude to, III. iii. 6, 7.
- Rulers raised up and called by Heaven, IV. ii. 2; V. i. Pt. i. 3, 7.
- the representatives of Heaven, V. xxvii. 21.
- Rush-mats, used at a funeral, V. xxii. 16.

S

- Sacrifice offered by Shun, II. i. 6, 8.
- by Yu, III. i. Pt. i. 65—76; Pt. ii. 14.
- by Tang, IV. iii. 4.
- by E Yin, iv. 1.
- by Pwan-kang, vii. Pt. i. 14.
- efficacious in, viii. Pt. ii. 11.
- of K'uei-tung, ix. *title*.
- Shou's neglect of, V. i. Pt. i. 6; Pt. ii. 5; Pt. iii. 2; ii. 6.
- offered by Woo, V. i. Pt. i. 10; iii. 5.
- Woo taught the people to care for, III. 10.
- ardent spirits used only 16, x. 2, 4.
- offered by the duke of Chow, xii. 5; xiii. 28.
- by Ching, 5, 16, 29.
- the successors of Tang attended to, xiv. 7.
- the people of Yin's disregard of, xvii. 3.

- offered by King K'ang, xxi. 25.
- Sacred Canon, officers rewarded with a place in, according to merit, V. xiii. 7, 13.
- Sacrilege committed with impunity in Shou's reign, IV. xi. 6.
- Sage, Yu, a, III. iv. 2.
- T'ang sought a great, IV. iii. 4.
- how a sovereign may become a, IV. viii. Pt. I. 11; Pt. III. 8.
- ordinary people are curious to see a, V. xxi. 4.
- Wan and Woo were august and, xxi. 2.
- Salvage men, employed to do menial offices at a funeral, V. xxi. 14.
- Savage tribes, the eight, V. v. 1.
- Sayings, the most important of all, V. xxx. 1.
- Scaptres of the princes, V. xxi. 1. *Comp.* I. ii. 7.
- Screens employed at a funeral, V. xxi. 14.
- Search, the, for Foo-yun, IV. viii. Pt. I. 3.
- Seditious conduct of P'wan-k'ang's officers, IV. vii. Pt. I. 12.
- Seeing and hearing, watchfulness in, V. xvii. 7.
- Self-examination should precede the use of arms, IV. viii. Pt. II. 4.
- Self-government, importance of, V. xxi. 9.
- Selfishness, Yao's freedom from, I. 9—12.
- banished by royal perfection, V. iv. 10.
- officers must put away, xi. 13.
- Self-will, ruinous to a sovereign, IV. ii. 8.
- Senseless movements of the house of Yin, V. vii. 3, 5, 8.
- Seven chariots allowed to a state-prisoner, V. xxi. 1.
- Seven-aisined temple of ancestors, IV. vi. 10.
- Shells anciently used as money, IV. vii. 11.
- Short reigns of the later emperors of Yin, V. xv. 7.
- Short-sightedness of the people reproved, IV. vii. Pt. II. 7, 8.
- Sickness of King Woo, V. vi. 1, 5.
- of King Ching, xxi. 1, 1, 4, 7.
- Silk, cultivation and manufacture of, III. i. Pt. I. 16, 26, 35, 52, 60.
- Sincere, the spirits accept sacrifice only from the, IV. v. Pt. III. 1.
- Heaven helps the, V. ix. 6.
- how the king may know the, xii. 12.
- Sincerity moves spiritual beings, II. ii. 21.
- Six magazines of material wealth, II. ii. 8: III. i. Pt. II. 13.
- leaders of the emperor's hosts, III. ii. 1: V. i. Pt. III. 1: xx. 10: xxi. 3.
- extremities, V. iv. 4.
- Boards, V. xx. 7—13.
- years, the chiefs must appear at court once every, V. xx. 14.
- Small matters, importance of attending to, V. v. 3.
- Soliloquy of Tao E on leaving the tyrant, IV. x. 6, 7.
- Son, a, should carry out the designs of his father, V. vii. 11.
- Song(s), the importance of, II. iv. 4.
- Shun's and Kao-yau's, 11.
- of the Five Sons, III. iii. *title*.
- an ancient, V. iv. 14.
- Sounding-stones, an article of tribute, III. i. Pt. I. 35, 60, 69.
- the heavenly, V. xxi. 10.
- Sovereign, the duty of a, III. iii. 4, 5: IV. ii. 7—9: III. 2: V. iv. 2—16: xi. 3—8.
- and ministers, IV. v. Pt. I. 3: V. xxv. 2, 3.
- and people, IV. v. Pt. II. 2: vi. 11.
- the intelligent, IV. v. Pt. I. 1: Pt. III. 5.
- should sympathise with the people, IV. v. Pt. III. 5.
- should not change the old rules of govt., 9.
- the great, V. i. Pt. I. 3.
- and minister, prerogatives of, iv. 18, 19.
- Sowing and reaping, the tolls of, V. xv. 2, 7.
- Spear of T'ay, the, V. xxi. 19.
- Speech, Yu's, to his troops, II. ii. 20.
- at Kan, III. ii. *title*.
- of the prince of Yin, III. iv. 2—7.
- of T'ang, IV. i. *title*.
- at Mu, V. ii. *title*.
- Woo's, to his princes, III. 5—8.
- of the Grand-historiographer at the funeral of Ching, xxi. 24. — the reply of the new king, 25.
- at Pe, xxi. *title*.
- of the duke of Tein, xxx. *title*.
- Spirits, II. i. 6, 24: II. 18, 21: IV. v. Pt. III. 1: vi. 3: V. i. Pt. I. 5.
- of heaven and earth, IV. iii. 3, 6: v. 2: xi. 6.
- of the hills and rivers, IV. iv. 2.
- of the land and grain, IV. v. Pt. I. 2.
- service of, IV. viii. 4, Pt. II. 11: V. vi. 6: viii. 8: xxi. 19.
- the land, V. xii. 5.
- upper and lower, 14.
- and manes, xx. 9.
- Spirits, ardent, V. x. 2, 3, 4: xxi. 20, 28: xxviii. 4.
- herb-flavoured, xxi. 25. See *Wine*.
- Spiritual sovereign of the high heavens, IV. iii. 1.
- former kings are now, sovereigns, IV. vii. Pt. II. 10.
- Intelligence, V. xxi. 3.
- Standard tubes, II. i. 8, 24: iv. 4.
- weights, III. iii. 8.
- States, how to deal with the princes of the, IV. ii. 7.
- Starvation, caused by misrule, IV. xi. 7.
- Storm, a great, V. vi. 16, 19.
- Study, the necessity of, V. xx. 16.
- Substitute, the duke of Chow offers to die as a, for Woo, V. vi. 5, 8, 16.
- Success follows virtue and righteousness, V. i. Pt. I. 8.
- or failure of Woo, on whom dependent, Pt. III. 6.
- Successful Completion of the War, the, V. iii. *title*.
- Sun, moon, and stars, II. iv. 4: III. iv. 4: V. iv. 33—38.
- and moon, Wan compared to, V. i. Pt. III. 5.
- Superior man, the, will have no luxurious ease, V. xv. 1.
- Surnames, conferred by Yu, III. i. Pt. II. 16.
- Suspicion, the duke of Chow falls under, V. vi. 12: xvi. 1.
- Sympathy, mutual between sovereign and people, IV. vii. Pt. II. 3.
- want of, on the part of the people, 6.
- P'wan-k'ang sighs for, Pt. III. 8.
- want of, in Ching's ministers, V. vii. 10, 12.
- with the hardships of the common people, xxv. 3.

T

- Teaching, one half of learning, IV. viii. Pt. III. 5.
- Temperance of the people of the West, V. x. 8.
- of the ancient people of Yin, 9, 10.
- Ten able ministers, Woo had, V. i. Pt. II. 5.
- men of worth helped Ching, vii. 5, 13.

- Tents employed at a funeral, V. xii. 14. *Comp.* p. 10.
 Tenures or domains, the five, II. iv. 3: III. i. Pt. II. 12-22. See *Domains*.
 Testamentary Charge, the, V. xxi. *title*.
 Three high officers under the Hsia, Shang, and Chow dynasties, V. xix. 2, 4, 6, 7: xx. 21.
 — Kwag, XX. 5, 6—Kao, 6.
 — Pao, the, V. xix. 11.
 — commencements of the year, III. ii. 3: IV. vi. 3.
 — year's mourning, IV. viii. Pt. i. 1: V. xv. 3.
 — presentations of sacrificial spirits, V. xxi. 26.
 — virtues, the, IV. 4, 17-19: xxvii. 12.
 — kings, T'ao, K'ao, and Wan, VI. 4, 6.
 — classes of offenders who are not to be spared, xxi. 10.
 — surrounding territories, xxix. 3.
 — chiefs, ministers of Shun, xxvii. 3.
 Tiger's tail, treading on a, V. xxv. 2.
 Tigers and panthers, brave men compared to, V. ii. 9.
 Timber of the Taze tree, The, V. xi. *title*.
 Tiao, the duke of Tsin deprecates the shortness of, V. xxx. 3.
 Timely action, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 6.
 Tokens of gem, the five, II. i. 7.
 Tongue, abuse of the, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 4.
 Tortoise, the great, an article of tribute, III. i. Pt. i. 33.
 — used in divination, II. ii. 18: IV. viii. Pt. iii. 7: x. 2: V. iv. 20-31: vi. 2, 8, 9: vii. 3: xii. 2: xvi. 2, 11.
 Tortoise-shell ornaments, V. xxi. 16, 19.
 Tours. See *Inspection*.
 Trade encouraged, II. iv. 3: V. x. 6.
 Tranquillity, of the empire under Ching and K'ang, V. xxiv. *Introductory note*, 3.
 Tranquillizing king, the, an epithet of Woo, V. vii. 3, 11, 14, 15: xvi. 6.
 Traps and pit-falls for beasts, V. xxi. 3.
 Treasurers, imperial, V. xix. 3.
 Tree, the Tze, V. xi. *title*.
 Trial, Yao's, of Shun, I. 12: II. i. 2, 3.
 Tribute of Yu, The, III. i. *title*.
 — articles of, how to be disposed of, V. v. 3.
 Troops, rules to be observed by, III. ii. 4: V. xxi. 3-5.
 Tutors, Grand and Junior, IV. xi. 1, 3, 4: V. xx. 5, 6.
 Tyrant, a, the enemy of the people, V. i. Pt. iii. 4.
 Tyranny of K'ao, IV. iii. 2.
 — of Shao, xi. 5: V. i. Pt. i. 3: iii. 6.

U

- Unanimity, exhortation to, IV. viii. Pt. i. 9: V. xviii. 26.
 Uncles, the king's, spread an evil report of the duke of Chow, V. xvii. 1.
 Uniform decision of the mind, the standard of goodness and virtue, IV. vi. 3.
 Union is strength, V. i. 8: Pt. ii. 6, 9.
 Unstable virtue brings misfortune, IV. vi. 4.

V

- Vanity and weakness of king Ching, V. xxi. 6.
 Varnish, an article of tribute, III. i. Pt. i. 19, 60.
 Verifications, the various, V. iv. 4, 32-33.

- Vicegerent, Shun, the, of Yao, II. i. 5-12.
 — Yu, the, of Shun, II. ii. 2.
 — the king the, of God, V. xii. 14.
 Vices, ten, condemned by T'ang, IV. iv. 7.
 Virtue of Yao, I. i. 1, 2.
 — of Shun, II. i. 1, *et seq.*: II. 4, 12.
 — of Yu, II. ii. 1, 10, 14.
 — moves Heaven, II. ii. 21: V. xvi. 7.
 — essential to a sovereign, II. iii. 1, 2: V. ix. 20, 21.
 — of T'ang, IV. ii. 4: ix. 1, 3, 4, 5: V. viii. 2: x. 9.
 — makes a sovereign to be universally cherished, IV. ii. 8: V. xi. 5.
 — of the early sovereigns of Hsia, IV. iv. 2.
 — of the early sovereigns of Yin, V. x-9: xvi. 7-9.
 — Both possessed Pare, IV. vi. *title*.
 — has no invariable model, 8.
 — happy and great results of, 8.
 — Woo-ting's diffidence regarding his, IV. viii. Pt. i. 2.
 — all looked up to Woo-ting's, Pt. iii. 3.
 — success follows, V. i. Pt. i. 7: xiv. 7, 8: xvi. 4, 9.
 — a competency necessary to, iv. 13.
 — and vice, connected with natural phenomena, 34-37.
 — of Wan, ix. 3, 4.
 — the king in his, should overtop all, xii. 22.
 — of the duke of Chow, xii. 14, 16, 17, 20, 21.
 — the fragrance of, xxi. 9.
 — great of P'oh, xxi. 5.
 — of Wen and Woo, xxvi. 3.
 Virtues, the three, V. iv. 4, 17-19: xxvii. 12.
 Virtuous, Heaven helps only the, V. xvii. 4.
 Viscount K'ao, the, of Wei, IV. xi. *title*: V. viii. *title*.

W

- Wall of the brother of T'ao-k'ang, III. iii. 9.
 War, with the Mesquites, II. ii. 20, 31.
 — implement of, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 4: V. xxi. 21: xxix. 2.
 — the minister of, V. ii. 2: x. 13: xi. 2: xix. 10: xx. 10.
 — the Successful Completion of the, iii. *title*.
 Wardens of wild tribes, V. xix. 11.
 Warning to the people of Yin, V. xiv. 24.
 Way of Heaven, the, to be revered, IV. ii. 9.
 — to bless the good and punish the bad, III. 3.
 Weakness, P'eng-k'ang acknowledges his own, IV. vii. Pt. i. 3.
 Weapons. See *War*.
 Weeping, king Ching, V. xi. 13.
 West, the Chief of the, IV. x. *title*: V. xxi. 13.
 — trouble in the, V. vii. 3.
 Whetstone, a good minister like a, IV. viii. Pt. i. 6.
 Wickedness of Shao, V. i. Pt. i. 4-6: Pt. ii. 3: Pt. iii. 3, 3.
 — of the people of Mesou, xxvii. 3, 4.
 Widows and widowers, rare for, V. vii. 3: ix. 4: xv. 6, 10: xxvii. 5.
 Wild people of the islands, III. i. Pt. i. 10, 44.
 — of Loo, 26.
 — about the Hwas, 25.
 — about the Ho, 68.
 — of the West, 32.
 — of the West and North, IV. ii. 3.
 — of the South and North, V. iii. 6.

- of the Wei, the Loo, and the Ching, xix. 11.
- of the East, xxii. 19.
- of the Hwas and Seu, xxix. 1.
- nine, and eight savage tribes, v. 1.
- civilization of the, xxiv. 18.
- Wild domain, the, III. i. Pt. ii. 22.
- Wine, spirits, III. iii. 8: iv. 4.
- Wise, men predict the fall of Yin, IV. x. 2.
- the, becomes foolish by not thinking, V. xviii. 17.
- Woman Tā-ke, the, V. i. Pt. iii. 8: ii. 6.
- Works, the minister of, I. 10: II. i. 12, 21: V. ii. 2: iv. 7: x. 18: xi. 2: xix. 10: xx. 12.
- Worthiness of the viscount of Wei, V. viii. 3.
- Woven ornamental fabrics, an article of tribute, III. i. Pt. i. 19, 44.
- grass cloth, 28, 44.
- hempen cloth, 80.
- hair cloth, 69, 82.

- Writing first mentioned in the Shoo (s.c. 1,752), IV. v. Pt. i. 2: Pt. ii. 2.
- of Woo-ting, IV. viii. Pt. i. 2.
- of the duke of Chow, V. vi. 3, 16, 18: xii. 6.
- the testamentary charge, xxii. 23.

Y

- Year, commencements of the, III. ii. 3: IV. vi. 3.
- thirteenth of king Woo, V. i. Pt. i. 1: iv. 1.
- fourteenth do., vi. 1.
- twelfth of king K'ang, xxiv. 1.
- Years, mourning for three, IV. viii. Pt. i. 1.
- Young, king Wan gave good advice to the, V. x. 4, 5.
- Youth, king Ching speaks humbly of his, V. vii. 1, 2, 8.
- king P'ing do., xxviii. 2.

INDEX II

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

A

A-hang, or O-hung, the name of *L' Yia*, IV. v. Pt. I. 1; xiii. Pt. III. 10.

B

Black-water, a river, III. I. Pt. I. 62, 71; Pt. II. 6.

C

Chang, a river in K'e-chow, III. I. Pt. I. 6.
 Ch'ao, the chief of, *Pref.* 28.
 Ch'ao, the name of king K'ang, V. xxii. 7, 8, 11; xxiii. 4.
 Ch'ao, a river in Yu-chow, III. I. Pt. I. 35; Pt. II. 13; V. xiii. 3.
 Ch'ao Jin, an ancient historiographer, IV. vii. Pt. I. 13.
 Ch'ao-yew, the first rebel, V. xxvii. 2.
 Chin, a marsh in Yang-chow, III. I. Pt. I. 41.
 Chin-hoo, a minister of Shang, *Pref.* 13; V. xvi. 7.
 Ching, a wild tribe, V. xix. 11.
 Ch'ing, the State of, *Pref.* 67.
 Ching, the king, *Pref.* 40, 41, 44, 45, 49, 51, 52, 53, 55, 56, 57, 59; V. vi. 12, note; xxv. 2.
 Ching-chow, the capital built by the duke of Chou, *Pref.* 40, 47, 57, 61; V. xxiv. 1, 14.
 Choo, son of the emperor Yaou, I. 9; II. iv. 8.
 Choo-yay, a marsh in Yung-chow, III. I. Pt. I. 77.
 Choo-yu, a mountain, III. I. Pt. II. 2.
 Chow, the State and dynasty, *Pref.* 30, 62; V. I. Pt. III. 5; III. 1, 3, 6, 7; vii. 4, 6; ix. 1; xii. 1, 15; xiii. 4, 8, 10, 12, 23; xiv. 2, 13; xv. 8, 16; xvi. 2; xviii. 1, 10, 21, 23, 26; xix. 19; xx. 1; xxi. 24; xxiii. 2; xxiv. 1.
 — The Officers of, *see title*.
 Chow, the dukes of, *Pref.* 30, 40, 42, 43, 45, 47, 48, 49, 52, 54, 57, 58; V. vi. 3, 10, 18; ix. 1; xii. 2, 4, 6; xiii. 1, 5, 29, 30, 31; xiv. 1; xv. 1, 4, 8, 12, 14, 15, 19; xvi. 1; xviii. 1; xviii. 2; xix. 1, 24; xxi. 3; xxiv. 3, 8, 13.
 Chung, prince of Tsao, *Pref.* 50; V. xvii. *title*.
 Chung, an officer of the great emperor, V. xxvii. 8.
 Chung-hwa, the name of Shun, II. i. 1.
 Chung Hwa, an officer in king Ching's court, V. ii. *title* 2.
 Chung-kang, the emperor, III. iv. 1.

Chun-nan, a mountain in Tung-chow, III. I. Pt. I. 76.
 Chung-ting, the emperor, *Pref.* 24.
 Chung-tsung, the emperor, V. xv. 4, 16.

E

E, the name of a place, *Pref.* 12.
 E, a river in Sen-chow, III. I. Pt. I. 29; Pt. II. 11.
 E, a river in Yu-chow, III. I. Pt. I. 35; Pt. II. 13.
 E, the prince of K'ang, III. III. 2.
 E, the baron, II. I. 23; V. xxvii. 8.
 E Ch'iu, prime minister of the emperor T'ao-mow, *Pref.* 22, 23; V. xvi. 7.
 E-hu, the drag of the duke of Tsin, called prince W'au, V. xxviii. 1, 2, 4.
 E Yin, minister of T'ang, *Pref.* 11, 13, 18, 19, 20, 21; IV. III. 4; iv. 1; v. Pt. I. 2, 5; Pt. II. 1; Pt. III. 1; vi. 1; V. xvi. 7.

F

Fa, name of king H'ow, V. I. Pt. I. 5; II. 7; III. 6.
 Fang, the constellation, III. ix. 4.
 Fang-heng, name of the emperor Yaou, I. 1.
 Fang-t'ao, a minister of Yaou, I. 5.
 Foo-tsen, a plain, III. I. Pt. II. 4.
 Foo-yen, name of a place, *Pref.* 28; IV. viii. Pt. I. 3.
 Fung, the capital of king Wan, *Pref.* 45, 55, 57; V. III. 2; xii. 1; xxiv. 1.
 Fung, a tributary of the river Wei, III. I. Pt. I. 75; Pt. II. 12.
 Fung, the name of the prince of K'ang, V. ix. 2. *et seq.*; x. 8, 9, 12, 17; xi. 1.

H

Han, the river, III. I. Pt. I. 47, 53; Pt. II. 8.
 Hang, the northern mountain, II. I. 3; III. I. Pt. II. 1.
 Hang, *see Hwang* mountain.
 Hwang, a river in K'e-chow, III. I. Pt. I. 9.
 He and Ho, astronomers, *Pref.* 3; I. 3—5; III. iv. 1, 4.
 Hsia, the dynasty of, *Pref.* 11, 13, 14—16, 64; III. *title*; IV. I. 3; II. 2—5; III. 1, 3, 4; iv. 2, 3; Pt. I. 3; vi. 3—5; V. I. Pt. II. 4; xii. 11, 17, 23; xiv. 3, 6, 10, 20; xviii. 4—5, 13, 15; xx. 3.

Hsao, name of a place, *Pref.* 24.
 Hsao, name of a place, *Pref.* 67.
 Hseng-urh, a hill, III. i. Pt. ii. 2, 13.
 Ho, the Yellow river, *Pref.* 32; III. i. Pt. i. 11—13, 20, 36, 38—55, 61, 70, 71, 82; Pt. ii. 1, 7, 10, 12, 13; III. iii. 2; IV. vii. Pt. ii. 1; viii. Pt. iii. 1; V. i. Pt. ii. 1.
 Ho, a tributary of the Kiang river, III. i. Pt. i. 66.
 Ho, the bow of, V. xxii. 19.
 Ho, the prince of, V. xvii. 1.
 Ho-le, a hill, III. i. Pt. ii. 2.
 Hoo, the prince of, *Pref.* 6; III. ii. 3.
 Hoo, the cousin of King Ching, appointed prince of Tsai, V. xvii. 2, 8.
 Hoo-k'ow, a hill in K'e-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 3; Pt. ii. 1.
 Ho-tan-kai, the emperor, *Pref.* 25.
 Hwa, *Tao-hua* the Western mountain, II. i. 8; III. i. Pt. i. 62; Pt. ii. 2, 7; V. iii. 2.
 Hwa, the river, *Pref.* 40, 51, 55; III. i. Pt. i. 28, 29, 35—37, 45; Pt. ii. 11; V. xxix.
 Hwan, tributary of the Han river, III. i. Pt. i. 70.
 Hwang, a mountain in the South, III. i. Pt. i. 46; Pt. ii. 4.
 Hwang Yaou, a minister of King Wan, V. xvi. 12.
 Hwan-tow, a minister of Yaou, i. 10; II. i. 42; III. 2.

J

Juy, the chief or baron of, *Pref.* 38; V. xxii. 3; xxiii. 2.

K

Kan, the wilderness of, *Pref.* 6; III. ii. 1.
 Kau Pwan, prime minister of Woo-ting, IV. viii. Pt. iii. 1; V. xvi. 7.
 Kang, the name of a place, *Pref.* 28.
 K'ang, the prince of, uncle of King Ching, *Pref.* 44; V. ix. *title*.
 K'ang, the king, *Pref.* 59, 60, 61; V. xxiii. *title*; xxv. 2.
 Kau Shen, a minister of T'ang, *Pref.* 17, 21.
 Kau-tung, the emperor Woo-ting, *Pref.* 28, 29; IV. ix. *title*; V. xv. 5, 16.
 Kao-yeou, Shun's minister of Crime, *Pref.* 4; II. i. 17, 29; II. 10; III. *title*. 1—3, 8; iv. 1, 8.
 Ke, the viscount of, *Pref.* 33; V. iii. 9; iv. 1—3.
 Ke, the son of the great Yu, II. iv. 8.
 Ke, Ke-leih, the father of King Wan, V. iii. 5; vi. 4; xv. 8.
 Ke, a hill in K'e-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 4, 76; Pt. ii. 1.
 Ke, the emperor, *Pref.* 6; III. ii. *note*.
 Ke, Tsai, Shun's minister of Agriculture, and the ancestor of the emperors of Chao, II. i. 18; iv. 1.
 Ke, the viscount of Wei, *Pref.* 41.
 Kiang, a kingdom of western barbarians, V. ii. 3.
 Kiang river, the, III. i. Pt. i. 45, 47, 53; Pt. ii. 8, 9.
 Kiang, water, a tributary of the Ho river, III. i. Pt. ii. 7.
 Kiang, the three rivers, III. i. Pt. i. 46.
 Kiang, the nine rivers in King-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 48, 52, Pt. ii. 2.
 K'e-chow, a province, III. i. Pt. i. 2; III. iii. 7.
 K'ei, rocks in the gulf of Pih-chih-le, III. i. Pt. i. 11.

K'ei, the emperor, *Pref.* 12; IV. ii. 1; V. i. Pt. ii. 4; xiv. 5; xix. 3.
 K'ien, a mountain in Yung-chow, III. i. Pt. ii. 1.
 K'ien, a river in Yu-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 35; Pt. ii. 13; V. xiii. 3.
 K'ei-shih, rocks near the mouth of the Ho, III. i. Pt. ii. 1.
 K'eh-fow, name of a place, *Pref.* 66.
 K'eu-k'eanu, granary of the tyrant Show, V. iii. 2.
 K'eu-ch'in, the successor of the duke of Chow, *Pref.* 58; V. xxi. *title*. 1; xxiv. 13.
 Keung, a district in Shan-tung, III. iii. 2.
 Keung, Pih-keung, The charge to, V. xxvi. *title*.
 Keun-ya, the minister of Instruction of King Mu, *Pref.* 52; V. xxv. *title*. 1, 7.
 K'eu-sow, a mountain in the West, III. i. Pt. i. 83.
 Kew-keang, a lake, III. i. Pt. ii. 4.
 Kih, King Wan's brother, V. xvi. 12.
 King, a mountain in King-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 46, 54; Pt. ii. 3.
 — a mountain in Yung-chow, Pt. i. 76; Pt. ii. 1.
 King, a river in Yung-chow, a tributary of the Wei, III. i. Pt. i. 78; Pt. ii. 12.
 King-chow, a province, III. i. Pt. i. 46.
 Ko, a marsh in Yu-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 37; Pt. ii. 10.
 Ko, the chief of, *Pref.* 10; IV. ii. 6.
 Koh-lin, name of a place, V. xvii. 1.
 Koo-sow, the father of Shun, I. 12; II. ii. 21.
 Kung-kung, the minister of Works, I. 10; II. i. 12, 21.
 Kwan, the prince of, elder brother of the duke of Chow, *Pref.* 44; V. vi. 12; xvii. 1.
 K'wan, the father of the great Yu, I. 11; II. i. 12; V. iv. 3.
 Kwan, a burning mountain, III. iv. 6.
 Kwan-tun, a mountain in the West, III. i. Pt. i. 83.
 Kwei, a small stream in Shan-se, i. 12.
 Kwei, Director of music to Shun, II. i. 23, 24; iv. 9, 10.

L

Lao, wild tribes in T'ing-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 26.
 Lo, the name of a place in Shan-se, *Pref.* 30; IV. x. *title*.
 Lo, a hill or a stream, III. i. Pt. ii. 9.
 Lo, a tributary of the Ho river, V. xiii. 3.
 Lo, an officer of the great emperor, V. xxvii. 6.
 Loang, a hill in K'e-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 4.
 Loang-chow, a province, III. i. Pt. i. 62.
 Loih, a hill in Shan-se, II. ii. 21.
 Len, the western people of, *Pref.* 37.
 — The Hounds of, V. v. *title*. 1.
 Len, the prince of, *Pref.* 64; V. xxvii. *title*. 1.
 Len-keli, the prince of Tsai, V. xxii. 11.
 Lew, the ancestor of Wan and Woo, V. iii. 5.
 Lo, the river, *Pref.* 7; III. i. Pt. i. 53, 61; Pt. ii. 7, 13; Pt. iii. 1, 3; V. xii. 3.
 — the city, *Pref.* 45, 46; V. ix. 1; xii. 2; xiii. *title*. 5; xiv. 1, 22, 23; xviii. 28; xix. 3.
 Loo, the State of, *Pref.* 66; V. xxix. 5.
 Loo, a kingdom of western barbarians, V. ii. 3; xix. 11.
 Luh-tai, the "stag tower" of the tyrant Show, IV. xi. 3, *note*; V. iii. 9.
 Lung, Shun's minister of Communication, II. i. 23, 25.
 Lung-mun, a mountain on the western Ho, III. i. Pt. i. 82; Pt. ii. 7.

Luy-hes, a marsh in Yen-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 14.
Luy-show, a mountain, III. i. Pt. ii. 1.

M

Mang-choo, a marsh in Yu-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 57.
Mang-tsin, a ford of the Yellow river, *Pref.* 32:
III. i. Pt. ii. 7; V. i. Pt. i. 1, III. 9.
Maou, the duke of, V. xxii. 3.
Maou, a kingdom of western barbarians, V. ii. 3.
Miaou, San Meou, II. ii. 20, 21; III. 2: iv. 8:
V. xxvii. 3-5, 7, 12.
Mien, a tributary of the Han river, III. i. Pt. i.
70.
Mei, the district in which Chow's capital was,
V. x. 1, 6.
Min, a hill in Liang-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 63; Pt.
ii. 4, 9.
Ming-t'ao, the wilderness of, *Pref.* 12; IV.
iv. 2.
Moving sands, the Western desert, III. i. Pt. ii.
5, 23.
Muh, the wilderness of, *Pref.* 33; V. ii. title:
iii. 9.
Muh, the king, *Pref.* 62, 63, 64.
Muh, the duke of Ts'in, *Pref.* 67.
Mung, a hill in Sen-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 30.
— do, in Liang Chow, 65.
Mung, a marsh in King-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 50.

N

Nan-ch'ao, a district in Gan-hway, IV. ii. 1.
Nan-keon, the borders of Cochinchina, I. 5.
Nan-keung Kwé, a minister of Wan, V. xvi. 12.
Nan-keung Maou, an officer in king Ching's
court, V. xxii. 11.
Neou-shoo-t'ung-head, the same as *Neou-shoo*,
III. i. Pt. ii. 12.
Nuy-fang, a mountain in King-chow, III. i. Pt.
ii. 3.

P

Pang, a kingdom of western barbarians, V. ii. 3.
Pang-lé, a lake in Yang-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 38:
Pt. ii. 8.
Paou-hang, name of E Yin, IV. viii. Pt. iii. 10:
V. xvi. 7.
Pe, name of a place, *Pref.* 66; V. xxix. title.
Peih, the State of, *Pref.* 37, 39, 61.
— the duke of, V. xlii. 3; xxiii. 1: xxiv. title, 1.
Pei-wei, a mountain, III. i. Pt. ii. 9.
Pe-kan, a relation of the tyrant Show, V. iii. 9.
Pih-a, the baron E, V. xxvii. 12.
Pih-keung, master of king Muh's household,
Pref. 63; V. xxvi. 1.
Pih-k'in, prince of Loo, *Pref.* 68.
Ping, the king, *Pref.* 63.
Pé, the first residence of Tang the Successful,
Pref. 9, 11, 13, 21, 22, 27: IV. iii. 1: iv. 2:
v. Pt. ii. 1: viii. Pt. iii. 1. — the three, V.
xix. 11.
Po, Po-ch'ing, a hill in Liang-chow, III. i. Pt.
i. 62; Pt. ii. 8.
Po, a kingdom of western barbarians, V. ii. 3.
Poo-koo, name of a place, *Pref.* 62.
Pwan-hang, the emperor, *Pref.* 27: IV. vii. title.

S

San E-sang, a minister of king Wan, V. xvi. 12.
San-moou, the name of a country, II. i. 12-17:
ii. 20, 21; III. i. 1, 1, 1, 78.
San-wei, a district in the west, II. i. 12; III. i.
Pt. i. 78; Pt. ii. 6.
Seang, residence of the emperor Ho-tan-keá,
Pref. 25.
Seang, duke of Ts'in, *Pref.* 67.
Seang, the half brother of Shun, V. i. 12.
Sé, ancestor of the emperors of Shang, I. i. 17,
19.
Seih-chu, a mountain in the West, III. i. Pt. i.
83.
Seih-shing, a mountain, III. i. Pt. ii. 1.
Se-king, a mountain in Yang-chow, III. i. Pt.
i. 70; Pt. ii. 2.
Sen-chow, a province, III. i. Pt. i. 28.
— the wild tribes of, *Pref.* 65; V. xxix. 1, 5.
Shang, the dynasty of, IV. ii. 3, 6; iv. 3: v. Pt. ii. 2:
vi. 4: viii. Pt. iii. 10; xl. 8: V. i. Pt. i. 4, 6,
9; Pt. ii. 8, 3; Pt. iii. 2: ii. 1, 6, 9; iii. 1, 3,
5, 9: v. i. vi. 1; ix. 3, 11; xii. 11: xiv. 1, 20:
xvi. 9: xvii. 1: xviii. 16: xix. 4, 5, 19: xx.
3: xxiv. 5.
Shang Yang, a worthy officer of the tyrant
Show, V. iii. 9.
Shaou, the duke of, *Pref.* 45, 46, 49, 53, 59: V.
xii. title.
Shih, the prince, the duke of Shao, *Pref.* 49:
V. xvi. title, 1, 7, 10, 11, 16, 19; xlii. 3.
Show, the name of the tyrant, the last emperor
of Yin, he was also called Chow, *Pref.* 30,
33, 35: V. i. Pt. i. 4; Pt. ii. 2, 5; Pt. iii. 2,
4, 6; ii. 5: iii. 8, 9: xv. 12: xix. 5.
Shuh, a kingdom of western barbarians, V. ii. 3.
Shun of Yu, the emperor, *Pref.* 1, 2, 4: i. 12: ii.
1, 1-6, 14, 28: IV. viii. Pt. iii. 10: V. xx. 3.
Shun-wah, a mountain in Yang-chow, III. i. Pt.
i. 76.
Soo, the duke of, minister of Crime to king Woo,
V. xix. 24.
Southern sea, III. i. Pt. ii. 6.
Suh-shin, chief of a wild tribe, *Pref.* 56.
Suy, Shun's minister of Works, II. i. 21.
— the bamboo arrows of, V. xxii. 13.
See, a river in Sen-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 35, 45:
Pt. ii. 11.

T

Ta, a river, III. i. Pt. i. 20.
Tao-mountain, II. i. 8: III. i. Pt. i. 21, 26, 28.
Tao, Tao-tou, ancestor of king Woo, V. iii. 5:
vi. 4: xv. 8.
Tao-k'ang, the emperor, *Pref.* 7: III. iii. 1.
Tao-k'ang, the emperor, *Pref.* 18, 19: IV. v. title:
V. xvi. 7.
Tao-mow, the emperor, *Pref.* 23, 23: V. xvi. 7.
Tao Teen, a minister of king Wan, V. xvi. 13.
Tao-yé, the Yé mountain in K'e-chow, III. i.
Pt. ii. 1.
Tao-yuen, a district in K'e-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 5.
Ta-hang, a mountain, III. i. Pt. ii. 1.
Ta-keung, name of a place, *Pref.* 15.
Ta-juh, a tract of country in K'e-chow, III. i.
Pt. i. 9; Pt. ii. 7.
Tao, Choo of, II. iv. 8.
Tan, name of the duke of Chow, V. vi. 3; xlii.
14; xlii. 24; xvi. 5, 15: xix. 15.

T'ang, the prince of, *Pref.* 42.
 T'ang the Successful, the emperor, *Pref.* 9—18,
 29: V. i. Pt. II. 4: viii. 2; x. 9: xiv. 6, 7;
 xvi. 7, 8: xviii. 6, 8: xix. 4.
 — The Speech of, IV. i. *title*.
 — The Announcement of, iii. *title*.
 T'ang, the dynastic designation of Yaou, i. *title*:
 III. iii. 7: V. xx. 3.
 Tan-hsue, a district in K'e-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 6.
 T'ao, the original domain of the emperor Yaou,
 III. iii. 7.
 Taou-k'ew, a hill, III. i. Pt. II. 10.
 T'ao-lin, the wild of, V. iii. 2.
 Ta-pai, a hill, III. i. Pt. II. 7.
 Ta-yay, a lake in Sen-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 31.
 Te-choo, a mountain, III. i. Pt. II. 1, 7.
 To, a river in King-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 49, 53.
 — do. in Leang-chow, 64; Pt. II. 9.
 T'oo-shen, a principality, II. iv. 8.
 Tsao, a hill in Leang-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 65.
 Tsao the prince of, *Pref.* 44, 50: V. xvii. *title*, 1.
 Tsang-lang, the lower part of the Han river, III.
 i. Pt. II. 9.
 Tse, a river bounding Yen-chow on the S. and
 E., III. i. Pt. I. 12, 20, 27.
 Tse, the prince of, V. xxii. 11.
 Tse, a tributary of the Ho river, III. i. Pt. II. 10.
 Tse-fen, a river in King-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 49, 53.
 — do. in Leang-chow, 64, 70.
 Tseih, a tributary of the river Wei, III. i. Pt. I.
 74: Pt. II. 12.
 Tseih, named K'e, Shun's minister of Agricul-
 ture, II. i. 17, 18; iv. *title*, 1: V. xxvii. 8.
 Tseih-shih, a mountain in Yung-chow, III. i. Pt.
 I. 82: Pt. II. 7.
 Tseu, a river in Yen-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 15.
 Ts'eu, a tributary of the river Wei, III. i. Pt. I.
 74: Pt. II. 12.
 Ts'in, the State of, *Pref.* 87: V. xxx. *title*.
 Tsia, the State of, *Pref.* 67.
 — the prince of, *Pref.* 65.
 Tsing-chow, a province, III. i. Pt. I. 31.
 Tsao K, minister of Shou, *Pref.* 30: IV. x. 1, 6.
 Tsao Ke, a worthy minister of Woo-ting, *Pref.*
 29: IV. ix. 2.
 Tsao-ke, the emperor, V. xv. 4, 16.
 Tsao-yih, the emperor, *Pref.* 28: V. xvi. 7.
 Tsang, mount, II. i. 12.
 Tse, a river in Tsing-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 33.
 Tang, the place of Tang's tomb, *Pref.* 19: IV.
 v. Pt. I. 9, 10.
 Tung, the baron of, V. xxii. 3.
 Tung-pih, a mountain, III. i. Pt. II. 2, 11.
 Tung-yuen, a district in Sen-chow, III. i. Pt. I.
 82.
 Tuy, the spear of, V. xxii. 19.

W

Wao-fung, the central mountain, III. i. Pt. II. 2.
 Wan, a river in Tsing-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 27;
 Pt. II. 10.
 Wan, the king of Chow, V. i. Pt. I. 5, 10; Pt. III.
 5, 8: III. 5: vi. 4: ix. 3—5, 16, 19: x. 2, 4, 6:
 xii. 14, 16, 20, 22, 24, 28, 31: xv. 9, 11, 16:
 xvi. 6, 12—14, 18, 31: xvii. 3: xix. 4, 12, 19,
 22: xxii. 5, 6, 24: xxiii. 2, 5: xxiv. 2: xxv.
 2, 6: xvi. 2: xviii. 1.
 Wan, the prince of Tsia, *Pref.* 65: V. xxviii.
title.

Wang-sh, a mountain, III. i. Pt. II. 1.
 Wan-ming, name of the great Yu, II. II. 1.
 Weak-water, the, a river in Yung-chow, III. i.
 Pt. I. 2: Pt. II. 5.
 Wei, K'o, the viscount of, *Pref.* 31, 41: IV. xi.
title: V. viii. *title*.
 Wei, a river in Tsing-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 23.
 Wei, a tributary of the Ho river, III. i. Pt. I. 70,
 78, 82: Pt. II. 12.
 Wei, a kingdom of western barbarians, V. II. 3:
 xia. 11.
 Wei, a river in K'e-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 5.
 Wei, the prince of, V. xxii. 3.
 Woo, the king, named Fz, *Pref.* 32—36, 39, 40:
 V. vi. 12, 16: xiii. 14, 16, 20, 22, 26, 31: xvi.
 15: xix. 6, 13, 22: xxii. 5, 6, 24: xxiii. 2:
 xxv. 2, 6: xxvi. 2: xxviii. 1.
 Woo Hsen, a minister of T'ao-mow, *Pref.* 22: V.
 xvi. 7.
 Woo Hsen, a minister of Tsao-yih, V. xvi. 7.
 Woo-kang, son of the tyrant Shou, *Pref.* 35, 41.
 Woo-ting, the emperor, IV. viii: V. xvi. 7.

Y

Yang, upper part of the Han river, III. i. Pt. II.
 8.
 Yang-chow, a province, III. i. Pt. I. 37.
 Yaou, the emperor, *Pref.* 1: I. 1: II. i. 4, 13: IV.
 viii. Pt. III. 10: V. xx. 3.
 Yen, the State of, *Pref.* 51—53: V. xiv. 21: xviii.
 1.
 Yen, the upper part of the river Tse, III. i. Pt.
 II. 10.
 Yen-chow, a province, III. i. Pt. I. 12.
 Yew Island, II. i. 12.
 Yih, a mountain in Sen-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 35.
 Yih, Shun's forester, *Pref.* 4: II. i. 22: II. 4: iv.
 1.
 Yih Ts, the emperor, V. xiv. 7: xvii. 10.
 Yih, king Ching's Recorder, V. xiii. 29, 30.
 Yin, the dynasty, *Pref.* 27, 30—32, 34—36, 40,
 41, 44, 47: IV. vii. Pt. I. 1: Pt. II. 4: x. 2:
 xi. 1, 2, 4, 6, 7: V. vii. 4, 6, 14: viii. 1: ix.
 5, 7, 11, 20, 24: x. 8, 9, 11, 13, 15: xii. 3,
 6—11, 15, 17, 23: xiii. 5, 23, 25, 27, 28: xiv.
 2, 3, 8, 13, 14, 17, 19, 21, 22: xv. 4: xvi. 2,
 8, 10, 11, 14, 19: xvii. 2, 23, 19, 24: xxi. 8:
 xxii. 5: xxiii. 2: xxiv. 2, 3, 10, 12.
 Yin, the prince of, *Pref.* 8: III. iv. 1: V. xxii. 9.
 Y6, a mount in K'e-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 5: Pt. II.
 1.
 Yu, the dynastic designation of Shao, *Pref.* 1, 2:
 I. 12: II. iv. 9: V. xx. 3.
 Yu, mount, II. i. 12: III. i. Pt. I. 20, 35.
 Yu, the emperor, *Pref.* 4: II. i. 17: II. II. *title*:
 III. 1—3, 8: iv. 1, 7: III. i. *title*: III. 3, 6: IV.
 II. 2: V. iv. 3: xix. 22: xxvii. 8.
 Yu-chow, a province, III. i. Pt. I. 1: I. 54.
 Yuh, a minister of Woo-ting, *Pref.* 28: IV. viii.
title.
 Yuh-ting, the emperor, *Pref.* 21.
 Yun, a marsh in King-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 50.
 Yung, the chief of, *Pref.* 66.
 Yung, a river in Yen-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 15.
 Yung, a kingdom of western barbarians, V. II. 3.
 Yung-chow, a province, III. i. Pt. I. 71.
 Yung-po, a marsh in Yu-chow, III. i. Pt. I. 56:
 Pt. II. 10.

INDEX III.

OF CHINESE CHARACTERS AND PHRASES;

INTENDED ALSO TO HELP TOWARDS THE FORMATION OF A DICTIONARY AND CONCORDANCE
FOR THE CLASSICS.

THE 1st RADICAL. —

— (1) One. II. i. 8; V. xxx. 6; *et al.* *supra*.
yeh = anyone; but never used simply
yl as our article a. III. iii. 5, 6; *et al.* —
the first. III. iii. 4; V. iv. 4, 5, 6, 7; *et al.*
(2) One and undivided, all-one,
pure. II. ii. 15; IV. vi. 3, 4, 5; *et al.*
— one and the same, unchanging. IV.
vi. 8. — agreeing. V. vi. 9. (3) ?
The uniform decision of the mind. IV. vi.
8. (4) To make one, to unite. II. ii. 20.
— to consider as one and the same. V.
x. 5. — to be of one mind. IV. vii.
Pt. II. 8. (5) Once. II. i. 9; V. xi. 14.
(6) — 二, one or two. — a few. V.
ix. 4. — vs. V. xxiii. 1. — you.
V. xxiii. 4. (7) 一, the one man.
— the emperor. *Sepossima*. V. xxx.
8, is doubtful.
丁 The fourth of the calendaric stem-
ting characters. IV. xii. 12; *et al.* 武丁, the
one of the kings of the Shang dynasty.
V. xvi. 7.
七 Seven. I. i. 12; *et supra*. — the se-
ven. V. iv. 4, 7, 20. 七政, the
seven Directors, i.e., the sun, moon, and
five planets. II. i. 5.
七 (1) Three. I. i. 8; *et supra*. — the
third. III. iii. 7; *et al.* — three classes.
chi V. xxi. 10. (2) Thrice. V. xviii. 23; *et al.*
— repeatedly. III. iii. 5. (3) 三
苗, the country of the Meao. II. i. 7; *et al.*
三危, the name of a country. II.
i. 12; *et al.* (4) 三帛, II. i. 8. 三
就 and 三居, II. i. 20. 三禮,
II. i. 23. 三考, II. i. 27. 三事.

the three businesses. II. i. 5. The same
phrase is used differently in V. xix. 7,
and xx. 21. 三德, II. iii. 4. The
phrase has a different and more specific
meaning in V. iv. 17, and xxvii. 18. 金
三品, III. i. Pt. i. 44, 82. 三錯,
III. i. Pt. i. 68. 三壤, III. i. Pt.
R. 13. 三正, the three months on
which the year might be made to com-
mence; but the meaning is doubtful. III.
ii. 3. 三風, IV. iv. 7. 三王,
king Wan, his father, and grandfather.
V. vi. 5. 三宅 and 三俊, V. xix.
4, 5. 三毫, V. xix. 11. 三公
and 三孤, the highest ministers under
the Chow dynasty. V. xx. 5, 6. 三
紀, V. xxix. 2. 三后, the duke of
Chow, Keun-ch'ia, and the duke of Peih.
V. xxix. 13. Other persons are intended
by the phrase in xxvii. 8. 三郊三
遂, V. xxix. 5. 三江, III. i. Pt.
i. 40. 三澨, the three great dykes.
III. i. Pt. ii. 8. (4) 二三, now two,
now three, unstable. IV. xl. 5.
上 Above that which is above, — used of
place, time, and rank. Used for Heaven,
the supreme Power. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 7,
12; *et al.* In the 12th par., however, and
not a few other places, the idea is not so
much of Heaven as the Power, but as
the place whence the power comes forth.
Used for the sovereign, and superiors
generally. IX. vi. 7; V. xxi. 14; *et al.*
Used for early ages. IV. xi. 1. The

上
above
chang

highest in quality or class. III. i. Pt. i. 2, 23, 24; *et al. sup.* 上公, *shang kung* of the highest class. V. viii. 5. 上宗. V. xii. 23, 26. 上天, the supreme Heaven, IV. ii. 8; but compare IV. iii. 4. 上帝, God;—see 帝. 上日, the first day. II. i. 4. 上下 constantly appear as correlates, = high and low; heaven and earth; Heaven and the people; the sovereign and the people; the sovereign and his ministers; mountains and marshes. Observe 在上, IV. x. 6; also V. xii. 31.

The usage of 上 as a preposition, with 在 or 於 preceding, is unknown in the Shoo.

主 *shoo*
chang. Up. 2d tone. To ascend; upwards. V. iv. 5. To send up. V. xvi. 20.

下 *shoo*
hsia. (1) Beneath, that which is below—used of place, time, and rank. It stands often for the people, or inferiors generally; but the phrase 下民, the inferior people, is very common, as in I. i. 11; II. iv. 2; V. xvi. 2; &c. The lowest in quality or class. III. i. Pt. i. 18, 24; *et al.* Spoken of after times, or later ages. IV. xi. 1; V. xvii. 3. Used often for ministers. II. ii. 12; V. xiv. 3; *et al.* 天

之下, all under heaven. II. iv. 7. 天下, as a designation of the empire, is common. 下土, the low grounds.

III. i. Pt. i. 58. 下地, this lower world, in app. to 帝庭, the court of God. V. vi. 7. 下國, the States of the empire. V. i. Pt. ii. 4. (2) As a verb. To keep under, to down-tread. III. iii. 4. (3) 上下, as correlates. See on 上.

To descend, = downwards. V. iv. 5.

下 *shoo*
hsia

不 *shoo*
pu. Not. *Passin.* With other negatives, 一罔莫無, conveying a strong affirmation. Observe also 不無, IV. x. 7. It is itself repeated with the same effect, having another character between, 不可不不敢不不啻不. Observe how, like other negatives, it attracts the object of the verb to itself in V. ix. 23; xiv. 22.

丑 *shoo*
ch'ou. The second of the calendric branch-characters. IV. iv. 1; V. xii. 10.

丕 *shoo*
pi

Great; greatly. The adverbial use is the more frequent. II. ii. 14; iv. 2; III. i. Pt. i. 78; *et al. sup.* It is repeated, 丕丕, = vast. V. vii. 9; xiv. 15. 丕子, the great son of Heaven, = the emperor. V. vi. 5. 丕時, a time of great prosperity. V. xvi. 20.

世 *shoo*
shih

(1) An age, a generation; ages. II. ii. 8, 12; IV. ii. 1; *et al.* Adverbially, = for ages, from age to age. IV. vii. Pt. i. 14; V. i. Pt. iii. 4; *et al.* So, 世世. V. viii. 4. 世輕世重, in one generation and in another, &c. V. xxvii. 18. 厥世, his age, all his life. IV. v. Pt. ii. 9. Obs. 七世之廟. IV. vi. 4. (2) = hereditary possession, a hold on successive ages; the hereditary principle. II. iv. 8; V. i. Pt. i. 5; xxvii. 5, 12.

The third of the calendric stem-characters. V. xi. 2.

丙 *shoo*
ping

丘 *shoo*
ch'iu. A hillock; a height. III. i. Pt. i. 16. 陶丘, the hill of T'ao, III. i. Pt. ii. 10.

並 *shoo*
ping

一. 並 together. See 一.

THE 2d RADICAL. |

中 *shoo*
chung

The middle, that which is in the middle—used of place, time, quality, and rank. III. i. Pt. i. 8, 18, 23; &c. The Mean; to hold the course of the Mean. II. ii. 15; IV. ii. 8; V. xvii. 7; xxv. 4; xxi. 8; xxvii. 4. = impartially. V. xvii. 23.

Used absolutely, = in the middle, with ref. to time IV. ix. 3; with ref. to place, V. xiii. 23. 于...中, 于...之

中, used both of place and metaphorically. V. vi. 11; xiii. 14; xxvii. 9, 10, 12. 在中. xxvii. 20. 日中, 宵中. I. i. 4, 6, where 中 = of the medium length. But 日中, V. xv. 10, = mid-day, and 中夜, V. xxvi. 1, = midnight. 中身, V. xv. 11, = the middle of life. 中邦, the middle region or regions. III. i. Pt. ii. 15. 中國.

V. xi. 1. 中江, a part of the Kiang. III. Pt. ii. 9. 中宗, one of the kings of the Shang dynasty, V. xv. 4, 16. That which fits, appropriate. V. xiv. 24. It is very doubtful whether we should acknowledge two tones of 上, 下, and 中, in the Shoo.

中 *shoo*
chung

THE 3d RADICAL 丩.

丹
tan

(1) Cinnabar. III. i. Pt. i. 52. (2) To paint with vermillion. V. xi. 4. (3) The name of the spang of Yao's son, Choo. II. iv. 8.

主
chu

(1) A lord or ruler. III. ii. 2. The emperor is 民主. III. vi. 1: V. xliii. 6, 8, 18; and 神主. IV. vi. 2. (2) To regard—be regarded—as the chief thing. II. vi. 8. To preside over. V. xvii. 3.

THE 4th RADICAL 丩.

父
fu(1) To regulate, to correct; to be regulated, brought to order. I. i. 11, 12; II. ii. 2; IV. ii. 2; *et al. super.* Sometimes the meaning simply = to aid. V. xiv. 9; xviii. 2; *et al.* It is often found with 保. V. xvi. 8, 10; *et al.* Used adverbially. V. iv. 4. —orderliness. V. iv. 6, 24. (2) Men of eminence, of a hundred. II. iii. 4; IV. viii. Pt. iii. 7.乃
nai*Passim.* Two usages are met with everywhere. (1) As a particle, at the beginning of paragraphs, and after the subject of a clause. The idea of connection which it expresses is very various, —thereupon, so, however, &c. I. i. 3, 11; II. i. 1, 7, 8, 13, 28; *et al.* (2) As a possessive pronoun, —your. Once, in II. 13, it is used for you in the objective; but it is seldom if ever, used in the nominative. II. i. 3; II. 8, 11, 14, 17, 20; *et al.* It is also used (3) as the copula; but this is less common. II. ii. 21; IV. vi. 6; V. xvii. 10. Sometimes, however, we are in doubt whether to take it as a particle or as the copula. Often likewise we might resolve cases of the second usage into its verbal force. This appears especially where we have to translate it in the third person, as in V. xvi. 18; xxi. 2. Obs. also 由乃在位. IV. vii. Pt. i. 5.之
chi(1) Of. The sign of the possessive case. The regent follows the 之, and the regimine precedes it. They may be respectively a noun, a phrase, or a larger clause. (2) Him, her, it, them. The antecedent, however, has often to be gathered from the context; as in II. ii. 7; iii. 2; iv. 5; *et al.* (3) We have 之 and another objective, as in 邦之蔡. V. xvii. 1; and other places. Some of these instances are peculiar. *E. G.* III. iii. 9; *et al.* (4) The idiom 之謂 occurs only once. V. iv. 6. 有之, has it, — says, also occurs only once. III. iii. 6. So also 若之何. IV. xi. 3. Such cases as 惟刑之恤 may be re-

duced to (1). V. xvii. 4. 惟德是輔 惟惠之懷, shows clearly how they are to be understood. Observe 侵于之疆. V. i. Pt. ii. 8, where the text is probably imperfect. 之 occurs everywhere, but not so frequently as in the Four Books. (5) In V. xix. 13, 21 之—及, and.

乎
hu乘
sheng乘
sheng

This only occurs four times in the Shoo. (1) A part of interrogation. I. i. 9. (2) A preposition. II. iii. 2. (3) An exclamation. III. iii. 5, 9. To mount on, to sail in. II. iv. 1; IV. vii. Pt. ii. 6. To support, maintain. V. xvi. 18.

3d tone. (1) The numeral for carriages. V. xvii. 1. (2) A team of four horses. V. xliii. 1.

THE 5th RADICAL 乙.

乙
yi九
chiu九
chiuThe second calendaric stem-character IV. iv. 1; V. xii. 1; *et al.* 祖乙 and 帝乙, two kings of the Shang dynasty. V. xvi. 7, and V. x. 8; xiv. 7; xviii. 10, Nine. *Sape.* The ninth. V. iv. 4, 20. 九州, the nine provinces into which Yu divided the empire. III. i. Pt. ii. 14. 九有, the empire, as consisting of these provinces. IV. vi. 2, 3. 九山, 九川, 九澤, the hills, &c., in these provinces. III. i. Pt. ii. 14. We have also 九族, the nine classes of kindred. I. 2; *et al.* 九功, 九歌. II. ii. 7. 九德. II. iii. 4; *et al.* 九成. II. iv. 9. 九河. III. i. Pt. i. 13; *et al.* 九江. III. i. Pt. i. 48; *et al.* 九疇. V. iv. 8. 九夷. V. v. 1. 九牧. V. xx. 13.亂
luan(1) To govern, to bring into good order; a state of good order. II. iii. 3; IV. vii. Pt. ii. 14; Pt. iii. 6; *et al.* (2) To throw into disorder, disorderly; rebellion. III. iii. 7; iv. 4; IV. i. 1; ii. 2, 7; *et al.* (3) To ferry across. III. i. Pt. i. 70.

THE 6th RADICAL 丩.

子

I, me; my. *Passim.* The phrases 子一人 and 子小子, are constantly used by the emperors in speaking of themselves. 子冲人, and some others, are also found. In V. xi. 19, 子

一人 — our emperor. It is also plural. *Wo, az; our.* III. iii. 9; IV. i. 3; II. 8; *et al.*

事 *shih*
(1) An affair; business; the course and conduct of business. II. i. 8; III. iv. 8; IV. i. 2; V. xxix. 4, 15; *et sept.*
事事, all affairs. IV. viii. Pt. II. 8.
三事, see **三**. **五事**, V. iv. 4, 9.
六事, III. ii. 2. **御事** and **執事** are common. See **御** and **執**.
The use of **事**, **宅事**, and **立事**, in V. xiz. is peculiar. (2) As a verb. To be engaged, have business to do. II. iii. 4. To serve. — God, man, spirits. IV. vi. 11; viii. Pt. II. 11; V. i. Pt. 1. 6; xxviii. 1; *et al.*

THE 7th RADICAL. 二.

二 *erh*
Two. *Sept.* The second. II. i. 8; III. iii. 6; V. iv. 4, 5, 7, 8; *et al.* — **二**, see —. **二三**, see **三**. **二生**, two living animals. II. i. 8.

于 *yu*
(1) A preposition, following both transitive and intransitive verbs. Its proper meaning is *in, at*; but it may be translated very variously, — *in, at*, in the case of, from, against, &c. *Passive.* (2) Than. Forming the comparative degree. IV. vii. Pt. III. 4; V. i. Pt. II. 8, 8; *et al.* (3) To proceed, to go forward. V. iii. 1; vii. 5, 6; and perhaps elsewhere.

(1) To speak. IV. xl. 8; V. xxx. 4.
(2) To come round, return. V. xxx. 5.

五 *wo*
Five. The fifth. III. 9; V. iv. 4, 5, 23, 40; *et al.* We have **五品**, II. i. 19;

五典, II. i. 1, 9; V. xv. 14; *et al.*; **五教**, II. i. 19; *et al.*; and **五常**, V. i. Pt. III. 2; — all connected in signification, **五瑞**, II. i. 7; and **五玉**, II. i. 8; — also connected. **五禮**, II. i. 8; *et al.* **五刑**, II. i. 11; *et al.*

五服, II. i. 20; with a diff. meaning, II. iii. 6; with a third meaning, II. iv. 8. **五流** and **五宅**, II. i. 20.

五辰, II. iii. 4. **五章**; **五色**;

五采; **五聲**; **五言**; II. iv. 4.

五行, III. ii. 3; V. iv. 3, 4. **五事**, see **事**.

A well, — hamlets. V. xxiv. 7.

Secondary. — officers of inferior rank. V. ii. 2; x. 19; xix. 19.

井 *ching*
亞 *ya*

THE 8th RADICAL. 亡.

亡 *wang*

交 *chiao*

亦 *yih*

亥 *hai*

享 *hiang*

亮 *liang*

亮 *liang*

亭 *po*

亭 *po*

宣 *tsun*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

(1) To perish, come to ruin. II. iii. 6, 7; *et al.* To be going on to ruin. IV. ii. 7.

(2) To flee away, to escape. V. xii. 10. Together, one with another. III. i. 17.

II. 16; V. xxix. 4. Obs. IV. viii. Pt. III. 2.

Also, and moreover: even. *Passive.*

It is often followed by other particles. —

亦惟亦越亦則 — in a way which we do not find in the Four Books;

but it always indicates the addition of some circumstance or consideration. II.

iii. 1. is peculiar, and there perhaps it — altogether.

The last of the calendaric branch characters. V. iii. 8; xviii. 1.

(1) To present offerings. V. xi. 5; xiii. 12; xviii. 29. To offer sacrifice. IV. vii.

Pt. I. 14; V. i. Pt. III. 3; xiii. 25. (3) To confer dignities. V. x. 16. The dignity conferred. V. ix. 23, 24. (3) To enjoy.

V. viii. 4; xiii. 21. With the object expressed, as **國命**. V. xv. 4, 5, 6, 11;

xxviii. 1, 11; *et al.* — to accept a sacrifice. IV. v. Pt. III. 1. — to satisfy. IV.

vi. 3. (4) **南交**, the name of a place. I. i. 5.

(1) To add. II. i. 17, 26. (2) Brilliant; to display brilliantly. II. iii. 4; V. xx.

6; xxiv. 5.

Low, 1st tone. In the phrase **亮陰**, the emperor's mourning shed. IV. viii.

Pt. I. 1; V. xv. 5.

The name of Tang's capital. IV. iii. 1; iv. 2; v. Pt. II. 1; viii. Pt. III. 1. There were three places of this name, —

亭. V. xix. 11.

Sincerity. V. i. Pt. I. 3. Sincerity. V. xvi. 18. To make sincere. IV. vii. Pt. II. 1.

THE 9th RADICAL. 人.

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

人 *jin*

A man, men; man — humanity; — inhabitants. *Passive* — others, opp. to one's self. II. ii. 3; *et al.* — every man. IV. xi. 9. **罪人**, criminals.

IV. iii. 5; V. vi. 14. Similarly, with characters and phrases, it everywhere forms concrete nouns. We may notice **一人**,

see **一**; **遁人**, III. iv. 3; **沖人**, V. vii. 10; *et al.*; **格人**, IV. x. 2; **庶人**, all the people, V. iv. 25. **小人**, the inferior people, V. xv. 18, *et al.*; and sometimes — mean men, II. ii. 20; **王人**, members of the imperial House, V. xvi. 9; **準人**,

V. xix. 1, 12, 16, 19; 藝人, V. xix. 9;

宗人, V. xxi. 27, 28; 臣人, —
great officers, III. iv. 2; V. xxi. 4, 6.

Benevolence: benivolent, IV. ii. 5; v.
Pt. III. 1. 仁人, benevolent or virtuous
men, V. i. Pt. II. 6; III. 6. — lovingly.
V. vi. 4. This character only occurs
these five times.

To be hostile to, III. iii. 9; IV. ii. 6.

作仇, to contract mutual animosities.
V. i. Pt. II. 6.

Now, *Praesens*, 今日, to-day, the
present time, V. xv. 13; xvi. 21. Observe

今, 今翼日, V. vii. 5; 繼自

今, V. xviii. 18; *et al.*; 今其有

今罔後, IV. vii. Pt. II. 7.

(1) To aid, co-operate with, V. x. 7;
xii. 15; xviii. 21, 27, 28. (2) Great, V.
xxii. 23. (3) Resolute, V. xxx. 6.

— usual, ordinary, V. xxii. 13, 16, 17,
18.

Other, V. xxx. 6.

To give, V. xi. 6; xiii. 5.

A measure of eight cubits. We may
call it a fathom, V. v. 9.

仡仡, Bold, martial-like, V. xxx. 5.

(1) Instead of; to supersede, II. iii. 5;
IV. iv. 3; viii. Pt. I. 2; V. vi. 5, 16; xviii.
8. (2) A dynasty, V. xx. 4.

(1) An order, exhortation, IV. viii. Pt.
I. 1; V. xx. 15; xxvi. 2. (2) Good, ex-
cellent, IV. v. Pt. II. 3; V. viii. 3; xxi. 1;
xxvii. 21. — insinuating, II. iii. 2; V.
xxvi. 3.

Praesens. Several usages are marked
distinctly enough. (1) At the begin-
ning of sentences or clauses, being follow-
ed by a noun or substantive clause, after
which comes the predicate of the sentence,
it = to take, to use, *E. g.* I. 12; II. 1. 20;
iv. 4; IV. iii. 1; *et saepe*. Sometimes the
predicate and object are expressed by a
single verb, and we have cases, such as
are mentioned in Index III. to Menzius'
Works, where it has been supposed that

以 is merely a sign of the accusative.
E. g. IV. vii. Pt. II. 1, 6. (2) Following
the principal verb of the sentence, and
followed by a noun, it = a preposition,
and may be variously translated, — by,
with, on the ground of, &c. I. 12; II. 1.
1, 9, 11; *et saepe*. In sentences of four
characters, such as 以宜制事.

we see how this usage and the last may

run into each other. (3) Where it stands
singly between the subject and predicate
of the sentence, it = thereby, *E. g.* II.
1. 24; IV. v. Pt. I. 7; Pt. III. 8; *et saepe*.

(4) Its most common usage, perhaps,
is as our *do*, the sign of the infinitive mood,
when we might often translate it by —
and thereby, *E. g.* I. 1. 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8;
et saepe. (5) To use, employ, V.
xv. 20; *et al.* Most instances of its oc-
currence can be reduced to the above
usages; but there are not a few passages,
in which we hardly know how to construe
the character, even though the general
meaning may be plain enough, *E. g.* III.
iii. 8; IV. viii. Pt. II. 2; xi. 6; V. iv. 28;
vi. 16; ix. 12; xi. 3; xiii. 3; xv. 12; xvi.
1; *et al.*

To look up to, IV. viii. Pt. III. 8; V.
xx. 4; xxi. 5.

(1) — 中, mid; the middle of, I.
1. 4, 5, 6, 7. (2) The second of brothers,
V. xxvii. 13. Such is its meaning in
義仲和仲, I. 1. 4, 6; and in 蔡
仲, V. xvii. 1; 仲康, III. iv. 1; and
仲虺, IV. ii. 2. In 仲桓, V. xiii.
11, 仲 is probably the surname.

(1) To employ, put in office, II. ii. 6;
IV. vi. 2; vii. Pt. I. 7; V. xix. 3. (2)
常任 and 任人, V. xix. 1, 7, denote
certain high officers. (3) To be equal
to one's office, V. xx. 20.

Artful, II. i. 16. 遲任, IV. vii. Pt.
I. 13, a man's name.

(1) The name of a river, III. i. Pt. I.
35; Pt. II. 13. (2) A particle, — 惟,
V. xxviii. 2. (3) A surname, 伊
尹, IV. iv. 1; *et al.*, *saepe*. 伊陟, V.
xvi. 7. (4) 祖伊, the name of a
minister of the tyrant Shou, IV. x. 1, 6.

To lie hidden, II. ii. 2. To suppress,
make to lie hidden, IV. vii. Pt. I. 5. To
be made to lie hidden, to be subjected,
IV. iii. 3.

(1) To smite, to punish, II. ii. 20; V.
iii. 1. Obs. 伐厥死, IV. vii. Pt. I.
16. Punishing, V. i. Pt. II. 8. (2) To
strike, to attack, V. vii. 12, 13. —
shows, V. ii. 8. (3) To boast, II. ii. 14.

A name. 呂伋, V. xxi. 11.

(1) Excellent; excellence, II. ii. 13;
IV. v. Pt. II. 7; viii. Pt. I. 11; Pt. II. 4;
Pt. III. 11; V. xix. 1; *et al.* (2) Blessing,
prosperity; favourable, prosperous; to
bless, II. iv. 1; IV. iii. 7; V. iii. 7, 9; iv.
24; vii. 5, 9; *et saepe*. (3) To be gentle,
to spare; gentleness, V. xxvii. 13; II. ii.
7. (4) 休休, simple and upright,

仁
jūn
jūn

仇
k'ou
ch'ou

今
hīn
chīn

介
k'uei
chieh

仍
jīng
jung

他
t'he
te

付
fū
fu

仞
fū
jūn

仡
jūn
jūn

代
t'ai
tai

令
hīng
ling

以
i
i

仰
yung
chung

仲
chung
chung

任
jīn
jén

任
jīn
jén

伊
i
i

伏
fū
fu

伐
fā
fa

伋
ch'ui
ch'ui

休
hū
hū

loving good. V. xxx. 6. 服休. V. x. 13, is peculiar.

(1) A father's elder brother, an uncle. 伯叔. IV. vii. Pt. III. 8. 伯父. V. xxii. 8; xxvii. 13. (2) The eldest of brothers. 伯兄, elder brothers or cousins. V. xxvii. 13. (3) The third title of nobility, which is often translated *Loona*. 茂伯 and 彤伯. V. xxii. 3. 葛伯. IV. ii. 6. But the term was used for the chief or superintendent of many princes of all ranks, as in 西伯. IV. x. 1. So also in V. xxii. 13; and perhaps elsewhere. It sometimes, however, denotes the princes or chiefs generally, and officers likewise not so high in rank. IV. vii. Pt. III. 8; V. x. 72; xii. 6; *et al.* 常伯. V. xix. 1, must denote princes of highest rank about court. Yu is styled 伯禹. II. i. 17; E. 伯夷. II. i. 23; V. xxvii. 8. We have also 伯與. II. i. 21, 伯冏. V. xxvi. 1, where the two characters are probably the designation. The minister of Religion is styled 宗伯. V. xx. 9.

To make to, to send, to send to. V. xiii. 3, 4, 10, 25, 28; xxix. 5.

A position, place. Applied (1) to sites of buildings. V. xii. 3. (2) Places or seats of ceremony. II. iv. 9; IV. vii. Pt. III. 1; V. xxii. 22. (3) Places of office or rank. II. ii. xx.; *et al.* (4) The throne or imperial seat. I. i. 12; *et al.*

To aid, to favour. IV. ii. 7; iii. 5; *et al.* 眷佑. IV. v. Pt. II. 2. V. viii. 2.

What; whom; how. II. i. 17; iii. 2, 3; iv. 1; *et al.* 如何, as how. I. i. 12; II. iii. 1. 若之何. IV. xi. 3. 奈何. III. iii. 5; V. xii. 2.

To err, to fall. IV. vii. Pt. I. 16; V. x. 14. In V. xii. 3. 遏佚前人光. It seems to — to end, to overthrow. Glib-tongued. V. xxvii. 20.

Passive. (1) Its prevailing use is in the sense of to make, to do; with the same extensive application which those terms have in English. Actively, to do, to make, to build, to constitute. Neither, to be, to become; to act. 東作. the labours of the spring. I. i. 4. — active operations. V. ix. 31. It forms what we call the emphatic present tense. V. ix. 14; *et al.* (2) To arise. II. vii. Pt. II. 1; where the idea of active operation is probably present. (3) In. III. i. Pt. I. 9,

18, 26, 50; and. IV. vii. Pt. II. 11, it is used with reference to the cultivation of the ground. It is often difficult to construe it. E. g. V. ix. 20; xv. 5, 6; xix. 3.

大倖. The name of a hill. III. i. Pt. II. 7.

(1) To cause, to make to. II. i. 17; V. ix. 13. (2) To employ, to command. IV. vi. 11; V. ii. 6.

To come. II. ii. 9, 14; *et al.* *sepe*. Coming, — future. IV. ii. 1. — solicitations, people coming to ask favours. V. xxvii. 16.

越若來. V. xii. 2, is a conjunction. Obs. 往來. V. xvi. 13.

Extravagance. V. xx. 19; xxiv. 10. Obs. 侈服. V. i. Pt. I. 3.

Ostentations, boastful. V. xxiv. 10.

To be in attendance on; attendants. V. xxvi. 2, 4.

Stupid. King Ching denominates himself — 在後之侗. V. xiii. 6.

To present to; to contribute. V. xii. 24; xv. 11, 12; xxix. 5.

(1) To depend, rely on. II. ii. 10; III. iii. 9; V. vi. 7; xv. 3, 5; xxi. 7. (2) To be in accordance with. II. ii. 18; Obs. II. i. 24.

To condemn, treat with contempt; contemptuousness. II. ii. 20; V. i. Pt. I. 6; Pt. III. 2; *et al.* — to pay no regard to, deal summarily with. IV. ii. 7. Obs.

威侮. III. ii. 3.

(1) The second of the five orders of nobility. V. xvii. 2; xx. 3. It often follows the name of the principality. E. g. 殷侯. V. xviii. 2; 衛侯. xxi. 3.

(2) A noble or prince generally. So, in the phrase 諸侯. V. xxii. 29; xxiii. 1; *et al.* 侯服, the domain of the nobles. III. i. Pt. II. 19. This, indicating often the princes of the domain, is the most common usage of 侯. V. iii. 3; ix. 1; *et al.* — principalities. V. xxiii. 6. Observe

孟侯. V. ix. 2. (3) A target. II. iv. 6.

To invade; invading. V. xxviii. 2; i. Pt. II. 8.

Adulatory, cringing. V. xxvi. 5.

Men of distinguished ability, men among a thousand; their superior ability. V. x. 38, 37; *et al.* We have 俊乂. II. iii. 4; 俊彥. V. i. Pt. I. 3. Obs.

伯
p'ok
pi

倖
p'ing
ping
wei

佑
yu
yu
he

佚
yih
yi
yung
yung
tsao

倖
p'ok
pi
shih
shih
lai

侈
ch'ih
ch'ih

倖
kuei
kuei

侍
shih
shih

侗
tung
tung

供
kung
kung

依
i
i

侮
wei
wei

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

侯
hou
hou

俗
suk
su
保
pao
pao

三有俊. V. xix. 4. To give distinction to L. i. 2.

Manners, the prevailing customs of a time or state. III. iv. 6; V. xxi. 10; xxiv. 4, 5.

(1) To protect, maintain, secure. II. ii. 20; IV. ii. 5; *et seqs.* We have 定

保 IV. iv. 2; 保义. V. xvi. 3, 10;

et al. 保惠. V. xv. 5, 10; 保釐. V. xiv. 1. — to secure, to reckon on.

V. ix. 6. (3) 太保 and 少保, the

names of the highest officers under the

Chow dyn. V. xx. 5, 6. 太保, occurs

often. 保 alone is used in the same way,

as in V. xvi. 19; xiii. 2. Oba. the cases of

師保. IV. v. Pt. II. 2; V. i. Pt. III. 3;

xii. 2. 保衡, the name, or title of office,

of E Yin. V. xvi. 7.

To wait for. V. iii. 8; vi. 8, 10; xii. 29.

To believe, put confidence in. IV. i. 4;

V. i. Pt. III. 3; *et al.* To be believed in;

sincerity. IV. vii. Pt. I. 7; V. iii. 9; xiii. 5.

Good faith. V. xxvii. 4. True. V. vi. 17.

To cultivate; to regulate, put in order;

to be cultivated. II. i. 8; ii. 7, 17; *et al.*

身修, self-cultivation. II. iii. 1. Com-

pare with this, IV. v. Pt. II. 4; vii. Pt. III. 5; V. ix. 4. To repair. III. i. Pt. I. 4; *et**al.* It is variously applied according to

the things spoken of. Oba. III. iv. 2; IV.

vii. Pt. I. 7; V. i. Pt. III. 3; xvi. 12.

Together. III. iv. 6.

To begin, to be the first to. III. iv. 4.

To double; to be doubled. V. xx. 3;

xxvii. 15.

To give, grant to, to allow, to make or

cause. II. ii. 7, 8; *et seqs.* Followed

directly by a pronoun, — 俾汝, — to

act to. IV. vii. Pt. II. 4. Observe 俾

义 and 俾亂. I. i. 11; V. xix. 16,

19. — to submit, preceded by 率. V.

iii. 6; xvi. 21. We find it preceding 率

with its ordinary signification.

To invert, turn upside down. V. iii. 8.

To bend on one side. IV. vii. Pt. II. 8;

V. xxi. 1.

俟
xai
and
信
shin
shin修
xau
hau俱
kai
chu
俾
shu
shu
信
shin
俾
pei
pei倒
tau
tau
倚
i
i倡
ch'ang倦
kuei倫
ch'uan倫
ch'uan假
kai假
kai偏
ch'ien偏
ch'ien側
ts'eh側
ts'eh偶
ou偶
ou傳
ch'uan傳
ch'uan傾
king傾
king備
pei備
pei傲
au傲
au傷
shang傷
shang僉
k'ien僉
k'ien僕
p'ui僕
p'ui僚
liao僚
liao僚
liao僚
liao

To lead on, be an example to. V. xx. 13.

To be wearied. II. ii. 9.

The determined order or degree be-

tween things. II. i. 24; V. ix. (1); xxvii.

19. In the phrase 彝倫. V. iv. 2, 3,

it means the orders or relations of human

society.

To make to lie down, to hush. V. iii. 2.

To be prostrated. V. vi. 16, 19.

(1) To borrow. IV. iv. 2. (2) Great.

自假 — self-related. II. ii. 14.

Defected. V. iv. 14.

(1) On the side. V. xxii. 21. (2) Que-

stioned. V. iv. 14, 19; xvii. 7; xxvi. 5. (3)

Low and undistinguished. I. i. 12.

To assist, be a helpmate to. V. xvi. 18.

太傅, the Grand-helper, and 少

傅, the Assistant-helper, were great

officers under the Chow dyn. V. xx. 5, 6.

傅殿, the place where Foo-yue was

found. IV. viii. Pt. I. 5.

西傾, the name of a mountain. III.

I. Pt. I. 10; Pt. II. 2.

(1) To prepare; preparations. V. xxix.

2; IV. viii. Pt. II. 8. (2) Complete. V.

iv. 32, 33; xxvii. 15, 20. — all talents.

IV. iv. 5. — all filled up. V. xx. 5.

Arrogant. I. i. 12; II. i. 24; iv. 8; IV.

vii. Pt. I. 8.

To wound; to be wounded. IV. viii. Pt.

i. 8; V. ix. 16; x. 11; xxix. 2. 無傷,

does no injury, — does not matter. V. i.

Pt. II. 5.

All. I. i. 11; II. i. 17, 21, 22, 23; II. 18.

A servant. We have 臣僕, a subject.

IV. xi. 8. 攜僕, personal attendants.

V. xix. 8. In V. xxvi. 2, 4, 6, it denotes

the subordinate officers of the dept. of

太僕, or high-chamberlain.

Associate officers or ministers. II. iii.

4; IV. viii. Pt. I. 9; V. 10; xiv. 20; xviii.

38; xxvi. 5. 百僚, occurs often, —

百官, the various officers, the body or

mass of them.

To see displayed. I. i. 10.

偽 *wei*
Deceitful, deceitfully. V. xx. 18.
僭 *chien*
To be in error. IV. iii. 5; vi. 5; V. vii. 15. — to assume; presumptuous. V. iv. 19, 34; xxvii. 18.
僻 *pih*
Perverse. V. iv. 19.
儀 *yi*
Usages, observances. V. xiii. 12. Demeanour, manners. **威儀**, dignity, majestic manners. V. x. 11; xxii. 9. — measured gambolings. II. iv. 8.
億 *yi*
A hundred thousand. V. i. Pt. 1. 8; Pt. II. 6; xiii. 4.
儆 *ching*
To warn, to be warned. II. ii. 6, 14; IV. iv. 7.
儉 *chien*
To be economical; economy. II. ii. 14; V. xx. 16. **儉德**, self-restraint. IV. v. Pt. 1. 6.

THE 10th RADICAL 儿

允 *yun*
Sincerely, truly; really; in accordance with the truth of a case. I. i. 7, 8; II. ii. 3, 8, 10, 15, 21; *et seq.* Sincere, to be believed. V. xvi. 20. Observe **允塞** II. i. 1. To believe, put confidence in. II. i. 16; IV. viii. Pt. II. 4. Sincerity. V. xvi. 19. Oha. **威允** II. ii. 14. Observe also **克允** II. i. 20; and **惟允** II. i. 25.
(1) The first. II. i. 14; IV. iv. 1. (2) — the eldest. V. viii. 1; xii. 9, 13; xxii. 7. (3) Great. V. ix. 16; x. 2, 7; *et al.* We have **元后** for the sovereign. II. ii. 14, 17; *et al.* **元龜** II. ii. 18; *et al.* **元孫** great-grandson. V. v. 5, 6; **元祀** V. xiii. 7, 15, means the first place at sacrifices. **元命** V. xxvii. 11, is peculiar. (4) The head. But **元首** II. iv. 11, probably — the great head, — the sovereign. **在德元**, in the head-place of virtue, — surpassing others. V. xii. 22. (5) Good. II. i. 16. **元良**, the greatly good. IV. v. Pt. III. 2.

兄 *hsing*
An elder brother. V. ix. 4, 16; xxi. 1. It is singularly joined with **考** in V. vii. 12. **兄弟**, brothers; cousins of the same surname. V. xvii. 6; xxvii. 13. — as brothers, in a brotherly way. V. xi. 8.
充 *chung*
To fill. V. xxvi. 7.

兆 *chiao*
A million, millions. V. i. Pt. II. 6.
兆民, the millions of the people, — the people. III. iii. 5; IV. ii. 5; iii. 5; *et seq.*
先 *hsien*
First; formerly. II. ii. 18; IV. ix. 1; V. xi. 2; *et al.* As an adj., former, we find everywhere the combination **先王**; also **先后**; **先民**; **先人**; **先正**; **先祖**; **先輅**; **先公**; **先烈** — ancestors, forefathers. IV. v. Pt. II. 7; V. i. Pt. I. 6.
先 *hsien*
3rd tone. To go before, setting an example. III. i. Pt. II. 17; IV. vii. Pt. I. 12; V. xi. 7. So also we should tone, perhaps, in V. xiii. 23, 24; and in xii. 2.
光 *kuang*
To shine, to enlighten. II. iv. 7; V. i. Pt. III. 5; *et al.* — glory. I. i. 1; V. i. Pt. II. 8; *et seq.* — bright, glorious. V. xiii. 22; xxii. 24; xxv. 6.
克 *k'eh*
Pessim. (1) Its most common use is before a verb, when it is equal to our auxiliary *can*, to be able to; often, however, giving emphasis simply to the verb which follows. E. g. I. i. 1, 2, 12. Not unfrequently it stands alone, at the end of brief sentences, giving the idea of competency with reference to what has been spoken of, or is in the mind. E. g. II. ii. 8, 4; V. xxviii. 2. It is followed also by a noun or pronoun, and — to be able for, to attain to. E. g. IV. iii. 9; vi. 3, 8; V. xxvii. 11, 16, 17, 18, 30. Once, we have a preposition between it and the noun. V. xxvi. 1. (2) As an active verb, to be able for, and more, to subdue, prevail against. IV. iv. 7; V. v. i. vi. 1; *et al.* — subduing. V. iv. 17. (3) Crossing. V. iv. 21.
A man's name. V. xxii. 19.

免 *mien*
To avoid. V. xxvi. 1. To dispense or have done with. IV. viii. Pt. I. 1.
充州 one of Yu's nine provinces. III. i. Pt. I. 12.
驩兜, a minister of Yao, dealt with as a criminal by Shun. I. i. 10; II. i. 12; iii. 2.
兢兢 to be wary. II. iii. 8.

兌 *tai*
免 *mien*
充 *chen*
堯 *yao*
兢 *king*

THE 11th RADICAL 入

入 *ju*
To enter. *Sepe*. It is almost always followed by **于**, as in. II. i. **入官**, to enter on office. V. xx. 16. **入畏**, V. xx. 19. **出入**, going out and coming in, — always and everywhere. V. xxi. 2.

內
nei

The inside, that which is within. Its prepositional use hardly appears in the Shoo; but obs. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 8: xvii. 21: xviii. 1. We have 于內, V. xxi. 6. — in the palace; in the court. III. iii. 6: V. xi. 3. Internal. V. xviii. 5. Interior. V. x. 10. 作內, internal operations. V. iv. 30. — female solicitation. V. xvi. 16. It is generally found in correlation with 外. 內方, the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. ii. 3. 內史, the Recorder of the interior. V. x. 18.

兩
liang
俞
yu

Two, — always with definite reference, — the two, the pair. II. ii. 21: V. xxi. 21: xxvii. 15, 20, 21.

Yes. I. i. 12: II. i. 17, 21, 22, 23; et al. It is not found, excepting in the first two Parts.

THE 12th RADICAL. 八

八
pa

Eight. — the eighth. II. i. 8: et al. We have 八音, the different kinds of musical instruments, formed of eight diff. materials. II. i. 13, 24; et al. 八政, the eight objects of government. V. iv. 4, 7; 八蠻, the eight man or savage tribes. V. v. 1.

公
kung

(1) Public feeling. V. xx. 15. (2) The highest title or dignity under the Chow dynasty. V. xx. 8, 6; et al. (3) The title of the highest princely rank. Found *passim* in the fifth Part; but only once in the Parts preceding, viz. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 2. The name of the principality often precedes, as in 周公, 毛公, 畢公. Observe 上公, V. viii. 3; and 公劉, V. iii. 5.

六
liu

Six. — the sixth. V. iv. 4; et al. We have 六宗, whose meaning is not well ascertained. II. i. 6; 六府, the six magazines. II. ii. 8: III. i. Pt. ii. 15; 六德, six of the nine virtues; II. iii. 4; 六律, the six pitch-tubes; II. iv. 4; et al. 六卿, the leaders of the imperial hosts. III. iv. 1; but in V. xx. 13, 六卿 — the six ministers of the executive under Chow; 六事. III. ii. 2; 六師, the imperial armies. V. i. Pt. iii. 1; et al. 六極, V. iv. 40; 六服, V. xx. 1.

共
kung

Together with, in common, all together. II. iv. 7; IV. vii. Pt. ii. 13; Pt. iii. 3; V. iv. 31: xiii. 4. To share in common. IV. vii. Pt. i. 7; Pt. ii. 4.

共
kung

1st tone. 共工, the title of an ancient officer, minister of Works. I. i. 10; II. i. 12, 21.

兵
ping

Weapons of war. 戎兵, V. xiii. 22.

其
chi

The third personal pronoun, singular and plural. The possessive pronoun of the third person. As a demonstrative, *the, that, this, these, those*. It is found everywhere, and with peculiar usage. Very often it comes between the nominative and the verb, making the nominative emphatic, as in I. i. 11. But the nominative preceding may be a pronoun of any person, or a noun in any person, and the person of the 其 varies accordingly. E. g. IV. i. 3, 4. Often, again, 其 gives to the sentence or clause where it occurs a hortatory or imperative force. The clause is often terminated by a 哉, as in I. i. 12, but often not; E. g. V. xxvii. 16, 17, 20. 惟 often follows the 其 with this force. E. g. V. xix. 23. Sometimes the demonstrative force — then, in such a case; in the case of, E. g. II. ii. 30: IV. iii. 8. In many instances, such as 其訓, IV. v. Pt. ii. 9; 非人其吉, V. xxvi. 8, where the meaning may be plain enough, it is difficult to bring the usage under any general rule.

其
chi

A concluding particle. IV. xi. 3.

具
chi

All, in every thing. IV. iv. 7: V. xxvii. 16, 17. — to annex. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 14.

典
chien

(1) Written books. V. xiv. 19. (2) Canons, statutes, regular rules and ways. III. iii. 8: iv. 4: IV. ii. 2; et *sepe*.

典
chien

五典, the five relations of society and the virtues belonging to them. II. i. 8; et al. 典常 are found together. V. viii. 4: x. 16.

不
bu

不典, unlawful ways. V. ix. 8: xviii. 22. — statutory. II. i. 11. — constantly. V. x. 7, 17. (8) To direct, superintend. II. i. 23, 24: V. xxvii. 11, 12. To be directed to, bent on. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 5. To consider, care for. V. ix. 3, 5.

兼
chien

Together with, and. V. xxiii. 1. To comprehend. — to absorb. IV. ii. 7. To enhance along with other duties. V. xix. 13.

兼
chien

冀州, one of Yu's nine provinces. III. i. Pt. i. 1. 63. 冀方. III. iii. 7.

冀
chi

THE 15th RADICAL. 冂

册
ts'eh

A tablet, or tablets with writing on them. V. vi. 11: xiii. 29, 30: xvi. 12. — records. V. xi. 19. To prepare such a tablet. V. vi. 5: xiii. 29.

再
tsai
tsai
冒
mau
mau

Twice. V. xviii. 28; xxii. 25; xxiii. 1, 2. To do twice, to repeat. II. ii. 17.

(1) To pursue blindly or heedlessly. V. I. Pt. I. 5; xxii. 9. (2) To overspread. V. xvi. 14, 15, 21. To be overspread by. V. ix. 4. (3) Used for 媚, to be jealous of. V. xxx. 7.

冕
mien
mien

A cap of ceremony;—of various form and materials, acc. to the rank and circumstances of the wearer. IV. v. Pt. II. 1; V. xxii. 2, 21, 22, 23; xxiii. 7.

THE 14th RADICAL.

冢
ch'ang

(1) Great, highest. 冢君—hereditary prince. V. i. Pt. I. 2, 6; *et al.*

冢土, the great earth, or the altar to the spirit of the earth. V. i. Pt. I. 10.

冢宰, prime minister. The title was used in both the dynasties of Shang and Chow. IV. iv. 1; V. xxii. 1; xx. 17. (2)

冢, the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. II. 3.

THE 15th RADICAL.

冬
tung
冰
ping
凝
ying

Winter, in the winter. I. i. 7; V. iv. 38; xxv. 5.

Ice. V. xxv. 2.

To be accomplished. II. iii. 4.

THE 16th RADICAL.

几
chi
凡
fan
鳳
fung

A bench or long stool. V. xxii. 2, 15, 16, 17, 18, 24.

All. IV. iii. 7; vii. Pt. I. 17; xi. 2; V. iv. 10, 11, 13, 18, 23; *et al.*

The male of the phoenix. II. iv. 9.

THE 17th RADICAL.

凶
hung
凶

(1) Bad fortune; unfortunate. II. ii. 5; IV. vi. 5; V. iv. 30, 31, 33, 40; *et al.*

凶德, evil, suffering, condition. IV. vii. Pt. III. 4. (2) Cruel, injurious; wicked. IV. iii. 3; V. i. Pt. I. 6; Pt. II. 3, 8; *et al.*

出
ch'ut
ch'ut

(1) To go or come forth. II. ii. 10; III. i. Pt. II. 10; V. xxx. 5; *et al.*

出于, to issue in. V. xxi. 2. 出入, see 入

出日, the rising sun. I. i. 4; V. xvi. 21. Oba. V. xii. 10. (2) To put or send forth. II. i. 25; II. 17; IV. vii. Pt. I. 1, 15; *et al.* Oba. V. xi. 2.

THE 18th RADICAL.

刀
tau
tau

A knife. V. xxiii. 19.

刃
pa
pa

A sharp blade, attached to a spear. V. xxii. 31. Edged weapons. V. xxi. 2.

分
fen
fen

To divide; to separate; to share; to distribute. V. iii. 9; II. i. 27; IV. vii. Pt. II. 15; V. v. 3. Separate. V. xx. 13. Separately. I. i. 4, 6.

刊
kan
kan

To hew down. II. iv. 1; III. i. Pt. I. 1; Pt. II. 14.

列
liet
liet

To arrange; to be arranged. IV. viii. Pt. III. 7; V. iii. 10; xix. 24.

刑
hing
hing

(1) Punishments. 五刑, the five punishments. II. i. 11, 20; II. 11; V. xxvii. 13; *et al.* To punish. II. iii. 6; V. ix. 16; *et al.* As an adjective. V. xxvii. 20; *et al.* (2) Laws generally. V. xv. 15. A pattern; behaviour. V. xiii. 21, 24; I. i. 12. To imitate. V. xxviii. 8; *et al.*

初
ch'oo
ch'oo

The beginning or commencement; in the beginning, at first. II. i. 8; II. 10, 21; *et al.* 初一, the first. V. iv. 4.

初生
ch'oo
ch'oo

early days. V. xii. 18. To commence. V. ix. 1; xiv. 1.

别
pie
pie

(1) To separate. III. i. Pt. II. 9. To distinguish. V. xxiv. 7. — besides. V. ix. 3, 17. (2) 大别, the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. II. 3, 8.

利
le
li

(1) Gain; money. IV. ii. 5; v. Pt. iii. 9. Advantage. IV. vii. Pt. II. 4; V. xxx. 6. 地利, V. ix. 12. Advantageous.

V. vi. 12. 利用, convenience. II. ii.

7. (2) 利口, sharpness of tongue. V. xx. 16; xxiv. 8.

剝
k'oo
k'oo

To cut open. V. i. Pt. I. 5.

刦
k'oo
k'oo

To cut off the ears. V. ix. 10; xxvii. 3.

制
che
chih

To order, regulate, define. IV. ii. 5; vii. Pt. I. 12; *et al.* — strictness of regulation. V. xxi. 2. Regulations. II. x. 14.

制于
che
che

to restrain one's self from. V. x. 13.

刻
k'ut
k'ut

To injure. IV. xi. 8.

則 (1) Then; denoting either a logical sequence or a sequence of time. We must often leave it untranslated in English. *Perim.* (2) Rules. III. III. 8; V. xiv.

4, (used in connection with 典). A model. IV. viii. Pt. i. 1. (3) To take as a law or pattern, to imitate. III. i. Pt. II. 15; V. vi. 22; *et al.*

前 (1) The front. 在...之前 — before. V. xxi. 29. In front. V. III. 8; xxvi. 3. (2) Former, as an adj. *Sepe* 前

人, father, predecessor, forefathers, is very common. *E. g.* V. vi. 2, 10, 14.

To pare. — to practise extortion. V. xxi. 7.

創

To cut open, rip up. V. I. Pt. I. 3.

剔

To cut off the feet. V. xxvii. 18.

荆

To cut out. V. i. Pt. III. 3.

剖

Strong; stern. II. i. 24; V. iv. 17; xxiv. 12. Vigour. II. III. 3. Sternly. V. x. 13.

剛

To tear off, — to degrade. V. i. Pt. II. 5.

剥

To cut off; to injure, to afflict. I. i. 11; IV. i. 2, 3; V. xiv. 13; xvi. 11; xviii. 5. Sometimes the object is not expressed. — afflictions, calamities. V. vii. 1.

害

To take warning. II. iv. 3.

創

To cut off. 剿絕. III. II. 3.

剿

(1) To slay. V. xvi. 15. — to wish others to die. V. vii. Pt. I. 3. (2) A kind of battle axe. V. xxii. 21. (3) 公劉 One of the ancestors of the Chow family. V. III. 5.

劉

To cut off the nose. IV. viii. Pt. II. 18; V. ix. 10; xxvii. 3, 18. 劓害. V. xviii. 5, must be translated generally, — to injure.

劓

THE 19TH RADICAL. 力

力

Strength. II. II. 30; V. i. Pt. I. 3; *et al.* — influence. II. iv. 4. Strongly. IV. i. 3; V. i. Pt. II. 3; xviii. 28.

功

Work done, or to be done; achievement, services, merits. I. i. 10; II. i. 9, 26; *et sepe.* Meritorious. II. II. 16.

九

the nine services. II. II. 7. 辜功. II. II. 7. 辜功. II. II. 7. 辜功. II. II. 7.

自

deeds of guilt. V. xxvii. 21.

爲功, made it his own work. V. vi. 4, 16. 恤功于民. to labour compassionately for the people. V. xxvii. 8. To add, or be added, to; — to affect. V. vii. 2.

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

加

Suremnously. V. x. 13.

To help, assist. V. ix. 7; x. 10.

Written also, 勅 and 飭. To receive warning, admonish one's self. V. ix. 9. To have it in charge; to give in charge. II. III. 6; IV. 11. With the idea superadded, that the charge is a work of correction. V. xiv. 2. — the execution of such a charge. V. xiv. 14.

Valour; brave. IV. II. 2; V. xxx. 5.

To urge, exert one's self. IV. vii. Pt. I. 13.

To move, to put in action; to take action. IV. vi. 14; viii. Pt. II. 5; V. x. 14; 16; xviii. 18. — movements. II. iv. 2; IV. vi. 5. To move, to excite, to affect. II. II. 13, 31; vii. Pt. I. 12; Pt. II. 1; Pt. III. 5; V. III. 7. — to remove. V. vi. 18.

To exert one's self. To act earnestly for. V. i. Pt. II. 9; II. 7, 8, 9; ix. 4; xvi. 16, 18.

To bend the mind to, to strive after. IV. viii. Pt. III. 4; V. i. Pt. III. 4; xviii. 5.

To surpass. III. III. 3.

To toil, to be toiled; to toil for; toil. IV. vii. Pt. I. 11, 14; Pt. II. 10, 13; V. vi. 18; xv. 3, 5, 7; xx. 18; xxv. 1.

3d tone. To encourage, to reward. V. xi. 2.

Power, influence. V. xxi. 7. — the powerful. IV. II. 4.

To be laborious or diligent; to toil for, be laborious about. It is sometimes followed by 子. II. II. 9, 14; IV. vii. Pt. I. 14; V. III. 5; *et sepe.* — laboriously. V. xi. 4, 5; *et al.* — to encourage to diligence. V. ix. 1.

(1) Merit; important service to the empire. II. II. 20; V. i. Pt. I. 5; III. 5. (2) 放勳, the name of the emperor Yao. I. i. 1.

To exert one's strength. V. xix. 20.

勵 To exert one's-self. II. iii. 1.

勸 To advise, to encourage, to stimulate. II. ii. 7; IV. vii. Pl. ii. 7; V. vii. 12; xvi. 11; xxvi. 8. To be stimulated, to come under the influence of. V. xviii. 4, 8, 10, 14. To encourage, advise, one another. V. xviii. 29; xxiv. 4.

THE 30th RADICAL. 勹

勿 Do not;—prohibitive. *Sepc.* Sometimes the prohibition is indirect. E. g. II. ii. 6; V. vi. 17.

包 (1) Bundles; things wrapped up. III. i. Pt. i. 44, 52 (s.a.) (2) Bushy, III. i. Pt. i. 33.

THE 21st RADICAL. 匕

化 To change, to exercise a transforming influence. V. xx. 8. Transforming influences. V. xxiv. 9. —to exchange. II. iv. 1. —to dissolve doubts. V. vii. 4. —to be influenced, transformed, by. V. i. Pt. ii. 3; xxi. 5; xxiv. 3.

北 (1) The north: on the north; northwards; northern. III. i. Pt. ii. 7, 8, 9, 10, 13; IV. ii. 6, 8; V. vi. 4. **北岳** a mountain. II. i. 8. (2) To be defeated and flee. V. iii. 8.

北 3d tone. To be separated, II. i. 27.

THE 22d RADICAL. 匚

匡 To correct. To assist. IV. iv. 7; v. Pt. ii. 2, 3; vii. Pt. i. 2; viii. Pt. i. 9; V. xxvi. 20; xxvi. 2; xxvii. 12.

匡 Not. IV. iii. 7; viii. Pt. iii. 3; V. xx. 20; xxvi. 2; xxvii. 12.

匱 A box or case. III. i. Pt. i. 32.

匯 The whirling turbulent waters of the Han and Keang near their junction. III. i. Pt. ii. 8, 9.

匱 A coffer or chest. V. vi. 11.

THE 23d RADICAL. 匚

匹 (1) 匹夫匹婦, any ordinary man or woman. IV. vi. (1). (2) Response. V. xiii. 4. (3) A denominator of horses. V. xxviii. 4.

匿 To conceal. IV. vi. Pt. i. 7.

區 區夏, a small portion of the empire. V. ix. 4.

THE 24th RADICAL. 十

十 Ten. *Sepc.* 十惡, the ten evil ways. IV. iv. 7. It is generally found in the Shoo in combination with other numerals, both cardinal and ordinal.

A thousand. II. iv. 8; V. i. Pt. i. 8; ii. 2; xxvii. 18.

午 The seventh of the calendaric branch characters. V. i. Pt. ii. 1; iii. 8; xii. 2, 5; xxiv. 1.

升 To ascend, to rise. II. i. 1; IV. v. Pt. iii. 4; V. xxi. 14; xxviii. 1. **升降**—

advancement and degeneracy. V. xxiv. 4. **卉** Grass,—all kinds of grasses. III. i. Pt. i. 44.

半 The half. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 5.

卑 Mean. V. xv. 9.

協 To agree, be united, in. II. i. 1; IV. vi. 8; *et al.* —both together. II. ii. 18.

協比 To agree with. V. i. Pt. ii. 5. **協比** to form parties. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 2. To harmonize with what is right. V. xxiii. 3. To be brought to harmony with the right. II. ii. 1; V. iv. 11; viii. 3; xix. 4. To bring to harmony. I. i. 2; II. i. 8; IV. v. Pt. ii. 4; V. iv. 2. —harmoniously. V. iv. 4. —to help. IV. i. 3.

(1) To die. V. xvii. 1. (2) To complete. V. vii. 16. (3) Then; when all was over. II. i. 8.

卒 The south. III. i. Pt. ii. 23; V. xxii. 15.

南訛 —the transformations of the summer. I. i. 5. Southwards; on the south. II. i. 8; III. i. Pt. ii. 7, 8; IV. ii. 6.

南河 the southern part of the Ho. III. i. Pt. i. 53.

終南 the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. i. 76.

南交 a place on the borders of Cochinchina. I. i. 5.

南巢 the place where Kéé was confined. IV. ii. 1.

南岳 the name of a mountain. II. i. 8.

南宮 a double surname. V. xvi. 12; xxii. 11.

THE 25th RADICAL. 卜

卜 To divine by means of the tortoise-shell; divination. II. ii. 18; IV. vii. Pt. i. 2; Pt. ii. 7; V. iv. 20, 23, 24, 25; *et al.*

卜龜 to divine with the tortoise.

shell, V. xi. 2. 卜宅 is to divine about the locality. V. xii. 2.

A law, a rule. V. xxii. 24.

卜
pen
plen
占
chen
chan

(1) To determine the answers on divination, to examine the prognostics. V. iv. 24. 官占, the officer charged with this work. II. ii. 18. Used for 筮. V. iv. 23. (2) To deliberate. V. xxvii. 20.

A wine-jar or bottle, of medium size. V. xlii. 25; xxviii. 4.

甬
yow
yu

THE 26TH RADICAL. 卩

I, the speaker's own person. V. vii. 8, 11.

卩
guy
ang
卯
moon
moo
危
wei

The 4th of the calendaric branch-characters. V. xii. 4; xiii. 3; xxi. 12.

(1) Unstable and insecure. II. ii. 13. Perilousness. IV. v. Pt. iii. 5; V. xx. 2, 19; xxiv. 12. To have a feeling of danger. 危懼. IV. iii. 5. 憂危. V. xxv. 2. (2) 三危, the name of a place. II. i. 12; III. i. Pt. i. 78; Pt. ii. 6.

(1) To go, approach, to. II. iv. 8; III. i. Pt. i. 88; et seq. Foll. by 于. V. xlv. 17. Observe 卽命. V. vi. 8; vii. 3; 克卽宅卽俊. xiv. 17; and 殷之卽喪. IV. x. 7. — to apply one's self to. V. xv. 9. (2) As a particle. — as to, even. V. xxviii. 2; instantly. V. xlii. 7.

卽
tsch
chi

A high noble and officer. 六卿 the six leaders of the imperial armies. III. ii. 1. But in V. xx. 13, the same phrase indicates the six chief ministers under the Chow dynasty. 卿 is found everywhere else with 士 following:— IV. iv. 7; xi. 2; et seq. In V. xvii. 1, 卿士 is merely a compound designation of one individual; and in all the other places they should probably go together, as indicating one class of officers.

卿
king
ching

A high noble and officer. 六卿 the six leaders of the imperial armies. III. ii. 1. But in V. xx. 13, the same phrase indicates the six chief ministers under the Chow dynasty. 卿 is found everywhere else with 士 following:— IV. iv. 7; xi. 2; et seq. In V. xvii. 1, 卿士 is merely a compound designation of one individual; and in all the other places they should probably go together, as indicating one class of officers.

everywhere else with 士 following:— IV. iv. 7; xi. 2; et seq. In V. xvii. 1, 卿士 is merely a compound designation of one individual; and in all the other places they should probably go together, as indicating one class of officers.

卿士 is merely a compound designation of one individual; and in all the other places they should probably go together, as indicating one class of officers.

THE 27TH RADICAL. 厂

底
che
chih

(1) To come to, to cause to come to; to be able to be brought to. II. i. 3; III. i. Pt. i. 6, 32, 41, 66, 77; et seq. It is used with other verbs—底貢. III. i. Pt. i. 32; Pt. ii. 15; 底綏. IV. vii. Pt. i. 4. — to execute. V. i. Pt. i.

10. Oha. 自底. IV. Pt. ii. 5; 底遂. IV. xi. 1; 底商之罪. V. iii. 6. (2)

To settle. V. vii. 11. (3) 底桂 the name of a hill. III. i. Pt. ii. 1, 7. In many copies of the Shoo 底 is printed 底. and few Chinese scholars are aware of the error. In reality the character 底 occurs only once,— in V. xlii. 15.

V. xx. 20. Should probably be 底. confused.

Thick. III. iii. 9. — great, rich. V. i. Pt. iii. 4. In 民生厚. V. xxi. 14,

厚—good; but 厚生. II. ii. 7,— making the means of living abundant.

A plain. III. i. Pt. i. 77; IV. vii. Pt. i. 12. 太原, 東原, and 敷淺原 are all the names of plains. III. i. Pt. i. 3, 39; Pt. ii. 4.

A personal and possessive pronoun, used everywhere; and much in the same way as 其. It is properly of the third person, and, as a personal pronoun, it is only so found. As a possessive, however, it is often = my, our, your. E.g. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 10; V. i. Pt. i. 7, 8; iv. 2; xxvi. 3, 8. It is frequently used also as a demonstrative, = the, that, those. E.g. i. i. 4, 5, 6, 7. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 1; V. iii. 2. Still more common than in the case of 其, however, there are instances, where it is difficult to construe the character with reference to its more common usages. E.g. V. i. Pt. iii. 1; II. iii. 3; V. xv. 3, 13, 17, 18.

A personal and possessive pronoun, used everywhere; and much in the same way as 其. It is properly of the third person, and, as a personal pronoun, it is only so found. As a possessive, however, it is often = my, our, your. E.g. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 10; V. i. Pt. i. 7, 8; iv. 2; xxvi. 3, 8. It is frequently used also as a demonstrative, = the, that, those. E.g. i. i. 4, 5, 6, 7. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 1; V. iii. 2. Still more common than in the case of 其, however, there are instances, where it is difficult to construe the character with reference to its more common usages. E.g. V. i. Pt. iii. 1; II. iii. 3; V. xv. 3, 13, 17, 18.

To be satisfied. V. xlii. 27.

(1) Severe, dangerous. V. vi. 3. (2) Oppressively. V. xi. 2. (3) To be conscious of peril. V. xxvi. 1.

THE 28TH RADICAL. 厶

2d tone. To put away. II. ii. 6.

To be arranged in order. IV. x. 4.

THE 29TH RADICAL. 又

Further, also, again,—continuing a narrative by the addition of further particulars. II. iv. 11; III. i. Pt. ii. 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13; et seq.

To come to, to reach, to attain to. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12, 14, 17, et seq. 不及 is frequent, meaning deficiencies, to be unequal to, not to be up to, etc. — to come to the knowledge of, to determine.

To come to the knowledge of, to determine.

To come to the knowledge of, to determine.

友
you
yu反
fan叔
shu
shu取
ts'ou
ch'iu
受
shou
shou叢
ts'ung
ts'ung口
k'ou
k'ou古
ko
ko

V. xiii. 2. It very often simply = and. E. g. III. i. Pt. i. 4, 28, 46; Pt. ii. 1.

= with. V. iv. 23. = to. V. xxvii. 2.

A friend, friends. IV. vii. Pt. i. 10; V. vii. 19; x. 13. Friendly. V. i. Pt. i. 2, 6; et *sepe*. To be friendly. V. ix. 18. Full.

by 于. xii. 24. 弗友, not friendly, = disobedient. V. iv. 17.

(1) To return. III. iii. 9; IV. x. 6. (2)

To take back, = to resume. V. xxiii. 7.

To retract, xx. 15. To retreat. vii. 7.

復反, to recover. vii. 4. 反風, to

bring a contrary wind. vi. 15. (3) To

go contrary to. II. ii. 20. = perversity.

V. iv. 14. To overthrow. III. 8. = in

revenge, for private grudge. V. xxvii. 16.

(1) The third of brothers. I. i. 5, 7.

So also in V. xxvii. 13, where it includes

consins. (2) A father's younger brother.

= uncle. V. xvii. 1. 叔, 伯叔. V. v. 3.

霍叔, 蔡叔, 管叔, were brothers

of king Woo, and uncles of Ching. V. xvii.

1; vi. 12. 懿叔, a brother of king

Wao, and uncle of the duke of Chow. V.

xvi. 12.

To take. V. xii. 8. = to capture. V.

i. Pt. ii. 6. = to take in hand, to make

an end of. IV. ii. 7.

(1) To receive. *Passive*. Especially

in the phrases, 受命, 受天命.

Obs. 受終. II. i. 4; 受其敗. IV.

xi. 6. To receive to employment. II. iii.

4. 受上帝, to receive gifts from

God. II. iv. 2. (2) The name of the

tyrant, the last emperor of the Shang

dynasty. V. i. Pt. i. 4, 6, 8; et *sepe*. He

is in other books commonly mentioned by

his epithet of 紂.

Crowded together. V. xv. 18. 叢

脞, II. (v. 11, = variations. See 脞.

THE 30th RADICAL. 口.

(1) The mouth. II. ii. 17; IV. vii. Pt. i. 18; viii. Pt. ii. 4; V. xv. 18; xx. 6.

利口, see 利. 逸口, an exceed-

ing mouth, = extravagant talk. IV. vii.

Pt. i. 12. 口實, that which fills the

mouth, = matter for remark. IV. ii. 1.

(2) 壺口, the name of a hill. III. i.

Pt. i. 3; Pt. ii. 1.

Antiquity; the ancients; ancient. I. i.

1; IV. viii. Pt. iii. 3; V. ix. 5; et *sepe*.

We have 古人, 古之人, 古

先民, generally referring to the an-

cient sovereigns. Anciently, of old. IV.

iv. 2; vii. Pt. i. 7, 14; et *al*. Observe

自古商人. V. xix. 19; and 若

古. V. xxvii. 2.

叨

ts'ou

t'ao

召

chao

召

chao

召

shao

可

ko

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

可

To be covetous, greedy. V. xviii. 5.

To call for, to summon. III. ii. 1; V. xvii. 3. To call forth, to provoke. IV. xi. 7.

In the *title* of V. xii.; the name of the appanage of Shih, the Grand-protector in king Ching's reign.

May, might; can, could. Like *may* in English, 可 may represent possibility, liberty, duty. It occurs frequently, but not so often as in the Four Books. 可

以 occurs only once. V. xvi. 10. 可 standing alone, = to do, to be competent. I. i. 9, 11.

The first personal pronoun. Used also as a possessive. III. i. Pt. ii. 17; IV. i. 1, 3; et *sepe*. It does not occur in the 5th Part.

A recorder, historiographer. V. vi. 5, 17. 內史, see 內. 太史, the Grand-recorder. V. x. 13; xix. 3, 24; xxii. 23.

The right side; on the right side. II. ii. 4, V. ii. 1; et *al*. As an adj., the right.

V. xxii. 20. 左右 go frequently to-

gether, with reference to the officers immediately about the sovereign. IV. vi. 7; viii. Pt. i. 4; V. xix. 1, 8; et *al*. The same characters, used as a verb, but with changed tones (左右), = to assist.

II. iv. 4; et *al*. Observe 夾右. III. i. Pt. i. 11.

To preside over, to superintend; that which one presides over, his proper business. We are puzzled sometimes, whether to construe the character as a noun or a verb. III. iv. 4; IV. ix. 5; V. xx. 15; xxi. 2; xxvii. 12. Officers. V. ix. 11; x. 17.

80. 百司, V. xix. 8, 9; and 有司,

II. ii. 12; V. xix. 18, 21. Obs. 司牧

人. V. xix. 12; 司馬, the minister

of War, V. ii. 2; xi. 3; xix. 10; xx. 10;

司空, the minister of Works, II. i. 17;

V. ii. 3; iv. 7; xi. 2; xix. 10; xx. 12; 司

寇, the minister of Crime, V. iv. 7; xix.

24; xx. 11; 司徒, the minister of In-

struction, II. i. 19; V. ii. 2; iv. 7; xi. 3;

xix. 10; xx. 8.

Alas. I. i. 9, 10, 11; II. ii. 6; III. 2; iv.

1, 2. We should perhaps translate in the same way in V. xxvii. 14.

Each, every one. II. iv. 8; IV. iii. 7;

V. iv. 32; et *al*. Obs. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 7.

To agree. IV. xi. 7; V. xvi. 20. To

unite, make to blend. II. iv. 9. To pre-

serve in harmony. V. xi. 3. 合黎

the name of a hill. III. i. Pt. ii. 3.

吉
kai
chi同
chung名
ming
后
hou吏
li
客
ka
君
kung
chün否
fou否
p'i
吾
wu

(1) Good. IV. vii. Pt. 1, 12; Pt. II. 16; V. xix. 5, 6; xxvii. 12; *et al.* (2) Fortunate, lucky. II. ii. 5; IV. vi. 3; *et al.* Often used with reference to the favourable indications obtained by divination. II. iii. 3; V. iv. 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31; *et al.*

(1) To unite; to bring—to be brought—to the same order or rule; together; the same. II. i. 8; II. 18; iii. 6; iv. 7; III. i. Pt. 1, 15, 18, 75; Pt. II. 7, 14; ix. 3; *et al.* — to share in. IV. vii. Pt. II. 14;

V. xix. 5. 大同, a great agreement, V. iv. 26. — the same as. V. xvi. 16.

(2) The name of a esp. V. xxii. 23, 26, 27, 28. (3) Forms part of the name of a hill. III. i. Pt. II. 12.

(1) To name. II. ii. 10; V. vi. 16; xxvii. 8. (2) Famous, the best. V. iii. 6; III. i. Pt. 1, 53.

(1) A sovereign, the sovereign. II. ii. 2; III. iv. 2; V. iii. 5; *et al.* 元后, the great sovereign. II. ii. 14, 17; *et al.* 80, 丕后. V. xxvi. 1. We have 后

王. IV. vii. Pt. II. 2; and 王后. V. xxi. 24. God is called 上天神后.

IV. iii. 4. But P'ün-k'ang calls his ancestors—我先神后. IV. vii. Pt. II. 10. 后土. V. iii. 8. (2) A prince,

one of the feudal chiefs of the empire. II. i. 8. The phrase 羣后, in this sense, is frequent. We have 三后—see

三; 后羿. III. iii. 2; 后稷. II. i. 17, 18; vi. V. xxvii. 8.

An officer. 天吏. III. iv. 6.

Spring, slow. IV. ii. 5.

(1) To rule over. IV. vii. 1; V. xxi. 24. As a noun, a sovereign, a ruler. Applied to the emperor. II. ii. 4, 17; V. xxii. 5; xxiii. 5; *et al.* Applied to princes, rulers of States. V. i. Pt. 1, 2, 6; *et al.* See especially in Bk. xvi, addressed to 君夷. The phrase 君子,

—princely, superior man, occurs, but not so frequently as in the Four Books. It has hardly assumed as yet its technical meaning. II. ii. 20; V. i. Pt. III. 2; v. 4; x. 7; xii. 24; xv. 1; xx. 15; xxx. 5. (2) In 君陳. V. xxi. and 君牙. xxy. 君

appears to be a part of the name.

(1) Not, not to have. I. i. 12. If not, with reference to something going before. II. iv. 6; IV. v. Pt. II. 2; V. xv. 3. (2) To disapprove, disallow. IV. vii. Pt. III. 11; V. xv. 15.

Distresses. Disorders. V. xv. 17.

L. V. i. Pt. 1, 3. — our. IV. xi. 2.

舍
she呂
lu告
ko周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow周
chow

To hold in the mouth. — to conceal (?) IV. vii. Pt. 1, 2. To cherish. V. xv. 17.

(1) — 呂侯, the prince of Len. V. xxvii. 1. (2) The surname of the princes of Ts'ao. V. xxii. 11.

To tell to, announce, declare to. *Passive.* It is sometimes followed by 于, but not often. To announce or appeal to Heaven. IV. iii. 3; V. xxvii. 4. 無

告, the helpless, those who have none to appeal to. II. ii. 3.

In. IV. v. Pt. 1, 3. It should probably be 君. Throughout the *Six Part*, the character occurs everywhere, as the name of the ancient seat of the princes of the Chow dynasty, which is its meaning always in the name— the duke of Chow; and as the name of the dynasty itself. Frequently it denotes the capital, Haou, as in xii. 1; xiii. 6, 10, 18, which is also called 宗周. See xviii. 1; *et al.* We

have also 成周 for the name of the new capital at 1.6. xxi. 1, 4.

嗚嗚, the wail of an infant. II. iv. 8.

In the exclamation 嗚呼. Oh! *Passive.*

Passive. (1) As a verb. To charge, command, appoint. The subject may be the emperor, any leader or chief, Heaven or God. As a noun. Commands, order, requirements, charge. Those may be from man, as in the titles of several of the Books, or from Heaven or God. In this latter sense its common reference is to the favour or decree of God in dealing with the appointment to the sovereignty of the empire. We have 元命,—the great appointment, i.e., to the throne. V. xiv. 5; but the same phrase in V. xxvii. 11, means the power of life and death. As a verb, also in the passive. II. i. 1; V. vi. 7. To request authority. V. xvii. 1. To consult, ask the will of. II. ii. 18. In V. viii. 4, it means the symbols of divination. (2) Life. The idea sometimes approaches that of fate, destiny. IV. vii. Pt. 1, 4, 12; Pt. II. 9; Pt. III. 2, 6; V. xxiii. 2; *et al.* Obs. 惟人在命. V. xxi. 21; 自敗哲命. V. xii. 19; 惟命. V. xxvii. 1. (3) 文命. Perhaps the name of Yu. II. ii. 1.

To oppose, to do despite to. II. ii. 6; IV. iv. 5; xi. 5. Perhaps it should have the same meaning in I. i. 11, though I have translated there after Ts'ao.

(1) To harmonize; to cultivate harmony with; to be harmonious; I. i. 2; II. i. 24; ii. 7; *et al.* — to unite. V. xvi. 12. — to be obedient. V. ix. 9. Harmonious, harmony. IV. vii. Pt. 1, 12; V. xviii. 24; ix. 1; *et al.* Spoken of emp.

IV. viii. Pt. iii. 2. (2) A surname. I. i. 3, 6, 7, 8; II. iv. 1, 9. So also probably in V. xxii. 19. (3) The name of a river. III. i. Pt. i. 66. (4) Part of a designation, — 義和, V. xxviii. 1, 3, 4.

咎
kue
chiu

(1) Calamity. II. ii. 20; V. xxvii. 12. (2) Crime, the fault. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12; Pt. ii. 4; V. iv. 11; *et al.* As an adj., = evil, criminal. V. iv. 13. (3) Unfavourable. V. iv. 24.

咤
tse
to

To set down a cup. V. xxii. 26.

咨
tse
tsu

(1) To consult with; to inquire and find. I. i. 9, 10; II. i. 16. (2) An exclamation, = Ah! I. i. 6, 11, 12; II. i. 17, 21, 22, 23, 26; II. 20.

咨
tse
tsu

3d tone. 怨咨 to murmur and sigh. V. xxv. 5.

戚
tsai
tsai

(1) All. It stands very often at the beginning of clauses of sentences, and collects in one all the subjects of the verb which follows. Those subjects sometimes are only two. V. xix. 1; xxiii. 2. are peculiar, 戚 being equivalent to—they and all the rest. In Part V., however, standing in the same way at the beginning of clauses, it is often used adverbially, and = entirely, in every thing. E. g. viii. 1; ix. 1; x. 9; xii. 5, 15.

哀
yue
ai

(2) A name. 巫戚. V. xvi. 7. To compassionate. V. xxvii. 5. Compassionately, with sorrow. V. xxii. 10; xxvii. 20. Sorrow, painful labour. V. ix. 16. 哀哉, an exclamation, = Alas. Placed at the end of the sentence. V. vii. 8.

品
pin

A rank, a sort. 五品 the five relationships of society. II. i. 18. 金三品 gold, silver, and copper. III. i. Pt. i. 44, 53.

哉
tsai
tsai

(1) A particle of exclamation. It occurs everywhere, but is not complicated with other particles as in the Four Books. Our point of exclamation—!—is generally sufficient for it. (2) To begin. IV. iv. 2; V. iii. 2; ix. 1; xii. 1. Wise; wisdom. II. i. 1; III. 2; IV. iv. 8; viii. Pt. i. 1; V. iv. 6, 84; vii. 1, 13; ix. 3, 20; x. 9; xii. 10, 19; xv. 16; xxvii. 22.

哲
che
che

The name of a principality where Yao once ruled. The word is used to indicate him. V. xx. 3. With the addition of 陶. III. iii. 7.

唐
tang

To ask, to inquire. IV. ii. 8; V. vi. 17; xxvii. 7.

問
wen
wen

(1) To deliberate. V. xxix. 4. (2) Everywhere as the name of the dynasty so called. Sometimes the character denotes its original seat; sometimes, in Pt. V., what had formed its imperial domain; and sometimes its capital. Oha. 天邑

商
shang

商, V. xiv. 26, which is different from 商邑, x. 11. On the phrase 有商, see 有. (3) A surname. V. iii. 9.

啟
che
chi

(1) To open. IV. viii. Pt. i. 7; V. vi. 9, 16. = to open up, commence. V. iii. 5. 啟龍, to open the way to favourites. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 9. To insultate. V. xi. 3. 啟明, to develop intelligence.

I. i. 9. (2) To instruct. We have 啟迪, IV. v. Pt. i. 8; vi. 2; and 啟佑, V. xxv. 6. (3) The name of Yu's son. II. iv. 8.

啻
che
chi

Only. 不啻, V. xiv. 24; xv. 17; xxx. 6.

善
shen

(1) What is good; the good; good. II. ii. 7; IV. iii. 3, 8; iv. 8; *et al.* To have in good condition. V. xxix. 2. (2) Skilful, to be skilful. V. xxx. 5.

喜
hsi

To rejoice, joyful. II. iv. 11; IV. vii. Pt. ii. 4.

喪
sang

To mourn; mourning; the observances of funeral ceremonies. II. i. 13; IV. viii. Pt. i. 1; V. iii. 9; xxiii. 7.

喪
sang

3d tone. Active and neuter. To die, perish, go to ruin. To ruin; to lose. As a noun, ruin. IV. i. 3; iv. 7; viii. Pt. ii. 7; x. 4, 7; xi. 2, 8; V. i. Pt. ii. 5, (= to degrade); Pt. iii. 3; v. 6; vi. 12; viii. 14; x. 3, 11; xiv. 2, 10, 12; xvi. 2, 19; xxviii. 15, 16.

喬
chiao

High; tall. III. i. Pt. i. 42.

單
shan

(1) To complete. V. xiii. 24. (2) Greatly. V. xvi. 16. (3) Single. 單辭, one side of a case. V. xxvii. 31.

齋
tsai

齋夫, certain inferior officers. III. iv. 4.

嗚
wu

Phasia. In combination with 呼, as an exclamation, = Oh!

嗜
shih

To delight in, lust after. III. iii. 9.

嗟
tsai

An exclamation. Ah! III. ii. 2; iv. 2; IV. iii. 3; V. i. Pt. i. 2; *et al.*

嗣
tsu

(1) To inherit; inheriting; to succeed to. Phasia. The expression 嗣王, inheriting (= new) king, is frequent. One. 嗣造, V. xxviii. 2. Heirs, successors. II. ii. 12; IV. iv. 6; V. xvi. 10. The successor, or heir. V. xxii. 4. (2) To employ or labour with. V. 6.

嘉
chia

As an adj., good, admirable. II. ii. 3; IV. iv. 9; V. xxi. 4; *et al.* As a verb, to deem or pronounce admirable, to admire. II. ii. 14; V. viii. 2. Oha. IV. vii. Pt. iii.

4, and V. xv. 5, where it = to display admirable —.

Vessels, utensils. IV. vii. Pt. I. 13; V. c. 2. **玉器** the five tokens of gen. II. I. 8.

An exclamation of dissatisfaction. V. vi. 17.

To taste, or merely raise to the lips. V. xxii. 28.

Insincere. I. I. 2, 12.

Over against, towards. V. xii. 15, 16, 17, 18. **橋迎** to be approached. IV. vii. Pt. I. 12. = to approach, to draw near to. V. xii. 10. = to show one's mind to. xiv. 5. = encouragingly, attractively. V. iv. 4.

To reverse, stand in awe of. V. xxvii. 17. Severe, disguised. V. xv. 4. Severely. II. iii. 4; V. xix. 4.

THE 31st RADICAL. 囗.

囚 (1) To confine, imprison. V. xvii. 1; and perhaps xviii. 23. Imprisonment. V. iii. 8. (2) The place in criminal cases. **要囚** = to examine the evidence in criminal cases. V. ix. 12.

四 *Four*. The fourth. **四方** the four quarters, occurs everywhere, mostly as a designation of the empire. **四征** to proceed against on every side. V. xx. 1. **四夷** the wild tribes all around. II. ii. 5; *et al.* **四海** as a designation of the empire, is very common. **四海之內** occurs only once. IV. viii. Pt. II. 8. **四民** the four classes of the people. V. xx. 12. We have many other phrases. — **四國**. V. xviii. 2, 30; *et al.* **四隣**. xvii. 6. (II. iv. 5 is different); **四輔**. xii. 30; **四隩**. III. I. Pt. II. 14; **四載**. II. iv. 1; **四岳**. I. i. 12, *et al.* **四門** **四目**. **四聰**. II. I. 1, 15; **四時**. I. I. 8; **四表**. I. I. 1.

The crooked; bad. V. i. Pt. III. 3.

As a noun, the cause. V. xviii. 5. As a preposition, by means of, on account of. III. iii. 2; V. xvi. 14. Along. III. I. Pt. I. 70. As a verb, to go on to more of what has been spoken of. I. I. 5.

困 Distress, to be in distress. V. xvii. 8. **困窮** the distressed and poor. II. ii. 17; *et al.* with a different shade of meaning. To distress (act). V. xiii. 21. To be distressed about. IV. vii. Pt. II. 8.

岡 The proper form of the name **岡**, in *Shing*. V. xvi. 1.

固 Sure, from; to be sure. III. iii. 4; V. xvi. 10. Firmly. II. ii. 18. To strengthen, make sure. IV. ii. 7; V. xiv. 2; xiv. 7.

A kingdom, a State. Spoken of the States of the empire. IV. iv. 7; V. I. Pt. II. 4; iv. 19; *et al.* **萬國** = the empire. V. xx. 8. So, **國家**. V. xxviii. 2; *et al.* Also, **邦國**. V. xi. 10. Spoken of the empire. V. xv. 5, 6, 7; *et al.*

May sometimes be translated by—dynasty. V. xii. 8, 16; *et al.* **中國**. V. xi. 6. **國人** the people. V. xvi. 13.

朱圉 the name of a mountain, III. I. Pt. II. 2.

圖 (1) To plan, to aim at. III. iii. 5; IV. v. Pt. II. 3; vii. Pt. I. 7; V. vi. 10; *et al.* Plans, objects. IV. v. Pt. I. 6. To reckon on. V. xviii. 3, 5, 14. (2) A plan or map. V. xiii. 3; xiii. 19.

THE 32d RADICAL. 土.

土 (1) Earth. One of the five elements. II. ii. 7; V. iv. 5. The land, as opposed to water. II. I. 17; V. xviii. 8. The ground or soil. III. I. Pt. I. 7, 16, 17, 24; *et al.* *supra*. (2) Territory, regions; grounds. III. I. Pt. II. 16; V. xvii. 14; xiii. 2; xx. 12; xiv. 23, 24; *et al.* *supra*. (3) The earth, personified and deified, is called **后土**. V. iii. 6. Comp. **冢土**. I. I. Pt. I. 10.

在 *Preposition*. (1) As a preposition, and neuter verb. Its radical meaning is—in, to be in. But we must render it variously in translating.—in, on, in the case of, with reference to; to depend on, rest on, lie in, &c. Once standing alone, it = to be present. IV. iv. 1. It often precedes what we should call adverbs of place or time.—**昔** **今** **上** **下** **後** **中**, &c. Obs. such usages as **在** **寬**. II. I. 19.

(2) To examine. I. I. 7; II. I. 5. A gem-stone. III. I. Pt. II. 23. Tokens of gen. given by the emperor to the nobles. V. xii. 28; xiii. 1.

To injure, subvert. I. I. 11.

地 *de*
ti The earth, in correlation with Heaven. II. ii. 8 (a. b.); V. xx. 8 (a. b.); xxvii. 8. (a. b.). The ground. IV. viii. Pt. i. 8; V. xx. 12. **天地**, Heaven and Earth; — the supreme Power. V. i. Pt. i. 3. **永**

地, a lasting settlement. IV. vii. Pt. i. 6.

圻 *qí*
chí (1) Frontiers. **郊圻**, V. xxiv. 7.
(2) **圻父**, a designation of the minister of War. V. x. 13.

均 *jūn*
chūn To equalize. V. xi. 17. To be equal. V. xxvii. 16.

坐 *zuò*
tā To sit. IV. v. Pt. i. 5.

垂 *chuí*
ch'ui (1) To hand down, transmit; to be transmitted. IV. ii. 8; V. viii. 2; xvii. 3.
(2) To let hang down. In the phrase

垂拱, V. iii. 9; xxiv. 3. (3) The edge of a raised hall or platform. V. xxii. 21.

垂 *shuāi*
shuāi The name of Shun's minister of Works, and of a famous mechanician (probably the same). II. i. 21; V. xxii. 19.

垣 *yuán*
yüan A wall or enclosure. Specifically, a low wall. **垣墉**, V. xi. 4. **垣牆**, V. xxix. 4.

城 *chéng*
ch'eng **析城**, the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. ii. 1.

墉 *chōng*
chōng Clayey. III. i. Pt. i. 33.

執 *zhí*
chí To hold, grasp; to seize. V. iii. 3; vi. 17; xii. 21; et al. — to bring and show. V. xxiii. 1. To be laid hold of. V. xii. 10. To look upon, to hold as—. V. i. Pt. ii. 9. **執事** and **執事之人**—officers. V. vi. 17; IV. vii. Pt. iii. 8. **執藝事**, to be engaged in mechanical affairs. III. iv. 3. **執中**, to hold fast the Mean. II. ii. 15.

基 *jī*
chí A foundation. V. iii. 5. **初基**, to lay the foundations. V. ix. 1. **基命**, the founding decree. V. xiii. 2. The character, however, is generally used for the superstructure raised on the foundation, and = patrimony, possession, inheritance. IV. v. Pt. i. 2; V. vii. 9, 11; xvi. 2; xix. 15; xx. 14.

堂 *tāng*
tāng The hall, or outer apartment, — a raised platform. V. xxvii. 21. To build the hall, i.e., to complete the building. V. vii. 11.

堪 *kān*
kān To sustain; to be fit or worthy. V. xviii. 18, 19.

堯 *yáo*
yáo The emperor Yao. I. 1; IV. + III. Pt. iii. 10.

報 *pào*
pào To recompense, reward. V. iii. 19; xxvii. 5. To be recompensed. V. xxvii. 21. — in reply to. V. xxiii. 4.

慼 *qī*
chí To detest. II. i. 25.

塗 *tú*
tú (1) Mire; mire. III. 4. Pt. i. 42. 51; IV. ii. 2. To plaster. V. xi. 4 (a. b.).
(2) **塗山**, the name of a principality. II. iv. 5.

塞 *sāi*
sāi Sincere. II. i. 1; III. 3.

塾 *shù*
shù An apartment by the side of a gate. V. xxii. 20.

墉 *yōng*
yōng A wall. Specifically, a high wall. V. xi. 4.

墊 *diàn*
diàn To be flooded, merged in the water. II. iv. 1.

堅 *jiān*
chí To overlay with fine plaster. V. xi. 4.

墓 *mù*
mù A grave. V. iii. 3.

墜 *zhuì*
chui To fall down among. IV. ii. 2. To let fall, to drop, to lose. III. iii. 8; IV. iv. 8; V. vi. 7; x. 12; xii. 11, 17; xvi. 2, 4.

墀 *chí*
chí A levelled space, a small terrace. V. vi. 4.

墨 *mò*
mò To brand, branding. IV. iv. 7; V. xxvii. 18.

墮 *duò*
duò To fall to ruin. II. iv. 11.

墳 *fén*
fén ? rich. Spoken of soil. III. i. Pt. i. 17, 24, 33, 58.

壇 *tán*
tán An altar. V. vi. 4.

墟 *xū*
xū Dark and thin. Spoken of soil. III. i. Pt. i. 58.

壤 *rǎng*
rǎng To be spoiled, or ruined. II. ii. 7; V. xxiii. 3.

壤 *rǎng*
jāng (1) **三壤**, three qualities of the soil. III. i. Pt. ii. 13. (2) Mellow. Spoken of the soil. III. i. Pt. i. 7, 38, 59. (3) The productions of different States. V. xxiii. 1.

THE 33d RADICAL. 士.

士
see
shih

Possessive. (1) It is the general designation for officers. The idea of *scholar* does not appear in the Shoo. The combinations of 卿士 (see 卿) 庶士, 多士 are frequent. (2) Specially, the minister of Crime, II. i. 20; II. ii. 11; V. xxvii. 9. (3) In II. ii. 20; III. iv. 5, 7, and some part. of V. i, 士 probably = warriors, gallant men. (4) In V. iii. 7, 士女 = men and women.

(1) The 9th of the calendaric stem-characters. II. iv. 8; V. iii. 1; xxix. 1. (2) Artful. II. iii. 2.

See 口.

Long life. V. iv. 38. 耆壽 V. xxviii. 2, and 壽考, xii. 12, = men of age and experience. = a long reign. V. xv. 7. As a verb, to grant long life to. V. xvi. 10.

THE 35th RADICAL. 夊.

夏
see
hai

(1) Summer. I. i. 5; V. iv. 28; xxv. 5. (2) The dynasty so called. *Possessive*. On 有夏, see 有. (3) A name for the empire. II. i. 20; V. iii. 5; viii. 3; ix. 4; xix. 3. So, 華夏, V. iii. 6. (4) Variegated. III. i. Pt. i. 25. (5) 雷夏, the name of a marsh. III. i. Pt. i. 14. (1) Grave, reverential-looking. II. ii. 21. (2) The name of Shun's director of music. II. i. 24.

夊
see
kuei

THE 36th RADICAL. 夕.

夕
see
hai

The evening. 朝夕, IV. viii. Pt. i. 5. V. x. 2. 旦夕, V. xxvi. 2.

外
see
wai

(1) The outside; outside, external. Generally, as correlative with 內. III. iii. 6; 6; V. iv. 30; xx. 3. xxi. 8, away from court. V. x. 11; xx. 5; xxi. 8. 外諸子 and 小臣外正, certain officers so named. V. ix. 17, 18. In the regions beyond. II. iv. 8. 於...之外, V. xxii. 11. (2) 外方, the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. ii. 2.

夙
see
su

Early in the morning. 夙夜, early and late. II. i. 23, 25; iii. 4; V. i. Pt. i. 10; v. 9; xiii. 15; xx. 8.

多

夜

see
yeh

夢

see
mengMany, numerous; much; mostly. *Possessive*.

The night. Generally combined with 夙. See 夙 晝夜, II. iv. 8. 中夜, midnight. V. xxvi. 1.

(1) To dream; a dream. IV. viii. Pt. i. 2; V. i. Pt. i. 5. (2) The name of a marsh. III. i. Pt. i. 50.

THE 37th RADICAL. 大.

大

see

(1) To be great; great; greatly. *Possessive*. We have 大龜, the great tortoise. III. i. Pt. i. 52; *et al.* 大家, the great families. V. xi. 1; 大輅, the grand chariot of the emperor. V. xxii. 20; 大正, the high chamberlain, xxvi. 3; 大辟, the punishment of death. V. xxvii. 18; *Ac. &c.* (2) Applied to Yu, = Yu the Great. II. ii. 1, 5; III. iii. 3. (3) 大夫, See 夫. (4) 大川, perhaps the Yellow River. V. iii. 8. (5) 大陸, the name of a tract of flat ground. III. i. Pt. i. 9; and of a place in it, Pt. ii. 7. 大野, the name of a lake. III. i. Pt. i. 31. 大別, see 別. 大伾, see 伾.

太

see
tai

Great. 太康, the third emperor of the Hsia dyn. III. iii. 1. 太甲 and 太戊, emperors of the Shang dyn. V. xvi. 7; *et al.* 太王, king T'ao, the grandfather of king Wan. V. iii. 5; vi. 4; xv. 8. 太保, 太傅, 太師; see 保, 傅, 師. 太史; see 史. 太宗, the minister of Religion. V. xxi. 20. 太室, the grand apartment of a temple. V. xiii. 28. 太常, name of the grand banner. xix. 1. 太原, see 原. 太岳, 太行, 太華, names of mountains. III. i. Pt. ii. 1, 2.

天

see
tien

(1) The visible heavens, the sky. I. i. 10, 11; II. iv. 1. 昊天, the firmament in which the heavenly bodies move. I. 3. 天下, II. i. 12; II. 4, 14; *et seq.*; used for 天之下, *belonging to this meaning*. To this also should be reduced, probably. II. ii. 8; V. xx. 8. (2) It is once used for the place where God and happy spirits dwell. V. vi. 3. (3) Its most common use is for the supreme governing Power, understood to be omni-

arise, omnipotent, and righteous. In this sense it is constantly interchanged with the same God, and supreme God. It is employed in this way more than 150 times. It has sometimes the adjunct of 上, supreme, IV. II. 3; III. 5, and more often that of 皇, great, II. II. 4; III. IV. 2; et al. (4) 天地 occurs once, where we might expect 天 alone, for the governing Power, V. I. Pt. I. 3. (5) 天子, a designation of the emperor, V. III. IV. 5; IV. VIII. Pt. I. 1; V. IV. 16; et al. (6) Heavenly, V. xix. 20, xxii. 19; et al. Obs. V. ix. 5; xxviii. 6.

An individual, a man, IV. VIII. Pt. III. 10; V. II. 2; VII. 5; xxi. 11.

匹夫匹婦, V. vi. 11, and 愚夫愚婦, III. III. 5, = any ordinary man or woman.

獨夫, a solitary man, with some degree of contempt, V. I. Pt. III. 4.

夫 alone in V. xii. 10. = the ordinary people. We find it added to other words, making them = concrete nouns—勇夫, V. xxx. 5; 牧夫, xix. 13, 16, 18, 21; 準夫, xix. 7; 穡夫, xii. 14; 齋夫, III. IV. 4. The usage in 萬夫之長, IV. vi. 10, is peculiar.

大夫, a designation of officers generally, below those of the highest rank, IV. VIII. Pt. II. 2; V. II. 8; vi. 16; xx. 21.

夫子—heroes, a complimentary designation, V. I. Pt. I. 3; II. 7, 8, 9.

Low, 1st tone. It is found with this tone only once, as a demonstrative, 夫人—this man, any man, V. xxii. 9.

Up, 1st tone. (1) Long and thin. Spoken of grass, III. I. Pt. I. 42. (2) 閔, a man's name, V. xvi. 12.

To cut life short, IV. ix. 3.

To lose, V. I. Pt. I. 11. To lose the favour of, V. xiv. 2. To err, III. III. 3; IV. vii. Pt. II. 11. To fail in paying attention, to disregard, II. II. 8; III. III. 7; IV. vii. Pt. II. 2.

(1) To squat on the heels, V. I. Pt. I. 6. (2) Ordinary, V. I. Pt. II. 6. (3) To feel comfortable, at ease, I. 6. (4) A name given to the barbarous tribes in and around the middle kingdom. It is specially appropriate to those on the east, but we find those on the west expressly so designated in IV. II. 6; and the term is often used for such tribes generally, as in III. I. Pt. II. 21; V. xix. 11; xxii. 19. Such is the force of 四夷, II. II. 6;

et al. 蠻夷 is also so used, II. I. 16, 20; and 九夷八蠻, V. v. 1. We have of specific tribes—the 淮夷, III. I. Pt. I. 35, et al.; the 萊夷, 20; the 和夷, 66; and the 島夷, 10, 44.

See also V. xix. 11, (3) 嵎夷, the place in the extreme east to which Yao sent his astronomers, I. 4; III. I. Pt. I. 22. (6) 伯夷, Shun's minister of Religion, II. I. 23.

(1) To keep—be—near to, III. I. Pt. I. 11; V. xxii. 21. (2) To aid, V. xviii. 21. To this meaning we should probably refer V. xi. 6. (3) Applied to a side apartment of the palace, V. xxi. 18.

(1) Suddenly, II. II. 4. (2) Entirely, V. xix. 2. (3) The name of a country, V. xviii. 1; et al.

Wonderful, strange, V. I. Pt. III. 3; v. 8.

Also written with 木 instead of 大.

In combination with 何, = how, III. III. 5; V. xii. 9 (a. b.)

To bear or carry with both hands, V. xii. 24; xxii. 23.

奉圭, the sceptres which they bore, xxii. 1. = to escort, IV. II. 1; v. Pt. II. 1. = to receive.

奉辭, to carry orders, II. II. 30. To serve, = the sovereign, ancestors, Heaven, IV. v. Pt. II. 7; V. I. Pt. II. 4; I. III. 1; xxvii. 13. Before other verbs, = reverently. We have 奉恤, 奉答, 奉若, 奉音, 奉將, V. xxiii. 1; xiii. 14; IV. viii. Pt. II. 2; vii. Pt. II. 3; II. 2; III. IV. 2. 奉德, V. xiv. 18; and 奉其桐, IV. xi. Pt. I. 12, are peculiar.

(1) To report to the emperor, II. I. 2. To advance, go forward to, II. IV. 7. (2) To bring forward, introduce, II. IV. 1. (3) Spoken of music. = to best, III. IV. 4.

Shun's minister of instruction, II. I. 17, 19.

To hurry away, to run, IV. x. 1. To flee to, in submission, V. II. 9. 奔走, to hurry about, V. III. 3; x. 6; xiv. 22; xvi. 3; xviii. 24.

Why, IV. II. 6.

(1) To fix or settle, to determine, III. I. Pt. I. 1; IV. vii. Pt. II. 1; V. xxii. 3. (2) To set down, and to display, V. xxiii. 1.

Extravagant, V. xxiv. 9.

夫
fu

夫
fu

天
yao

天
yao

失
shih

夷
i

夾
chia

奄
yeh

奇
chi

奈
nai

奉
fong

奏
tsau

契
chieh

奔
pan

奚
hai

奠
mien

奢
shih

treat as a son. II. iv. 8, (a. 6): IV. v. Pt. ii. 5. (3) An officer, officers. V. xiii. 24. Applied to certain specified officers.—

庶子訓人, V. ix. 17. *Oliver* IV. xi. 8, where we translate it by—*gou*.

夫子 and 君子, see 夫 and 君.

(4) The first of the calendaric branch-characters. V. ii. i. iii. 8: xii. 6: xiii. 2. (5) A title of nobility, viscount. We have 微子, II. xi. 1: and 箕子, V. iii. 8: iv. 1, 2, 3.

Great. II. iii. 2. Greatly. III. i. Pt. i. 48: Pt. ii. 15: IV. iv. 8.

Pregnant. V. i. Pt. i. 5.

To love, to cherish. V. ix. 16.

To be in a state of preservation or flourishing. IV. ii. 7.

To believe, repose confidence in. V. xvi. 9: xxvii. 20. Sincerity, faithfulness. V. xiii. 24. What is certain or fully proved. xxvii. 15, 17. To be fully established in. IV. v. Pt. iii. 9: V. xvi. 2. Sincerely, truly. IV. iii. 5: ix. 6.

孜孜, to be diligent, untiring. II. iv. 1: V. i. Pt. iii. 3: xxi. 3.

To be filial; filial piety. I. 12: IV. v. Pt. ii. 7: V. viii. 3: ix. 16: x. 6: xvii. 3: xxi. 1: xxvii. 8.

(1) Chief or head. 孟侯 V. ix. 2.

(2) First, the beginning. 孟春 the first month of spring. III. iv. 3. (3) 孟豬, the name of a marsh. III. i. Pt. i. 57. 孟津 the name of a ford, and a place. III. i. Pt. ii. 7: V. i. Pt. i. 1: iii. 8.

(1) The youngest of brothers or cousins. V. xxvii. 13. (2) The last month of a season. III. iv. 4. (3) 王季, the father of king Wan. V. iii. 5: vi. 4: xv. 6.

(1) Solitary, standing alone. III. i. Pt. i. 35. — helpless. IV. vii. Pt. i. 15.

(2) 三孤, the three ministers, second in dignity at the court of Chow. V. xx. 8. Children. Used adverbially, — along with your children. III. ii. 5: IV. i. 4.

A grandson. V. xix. 13, 21. 子孫 is very common for descendants. In V. xviii. 17, it is singular. 孫 alone is used for descendants, and descendant.

IV. vii. Pt. ii. 14: v. xxvii. 22. We have 幼孫 IV. vii. Pt. ii. 12: 元孫 V. vi. 6: and 曾孫 V. iii. 6.

孽

lice

126

學

his

his

ye

yü

孽

nieh

To breed. I. 4.

To learn; learning. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 1, 3, 4, 5: V. xx. 10.

A suckling; but 孺子—a young son. Used in reference to king Ching, in speaking of him or to him. V. vi. 12: xiii. 9, 13, 23: xix. 16, 18, 21.

Calamities. IV. v. Pt. ii. 3. It appears in the text as 孽, which is not so correct as the form in the margin.

THE 40th RADICAL. 宀.

宀

kwei

kwei

宅

tsh

chai

Traitorous, to play the part of a traitor. Found always in connection with 姦.—

see 姦

(1) To reside in. Spoken of place. I. 4, 5, 6, 7; et *sepe*. Obs. V. xxii. 28. To be made habitable. III. i. Pt. i. 78: Pt. ii. 14. A site or locality; dwellings; neighbourhood. V. xii. 2: xiii. 4, 23. 五宅

II. i. 20. 宅里 V. xxiv. 7. (2) Spoken of office,—to occupy. II. i. 17: II. 9; et *al*. Of a special service. IV. viii. Pt. i. 1: V. xxii. 1. To put into office. V. xix. 2, 12, 13. 有宅, office-able.

xix. 2, 4. 宅, the office occupied. xix. 4. (3) To settle, consolidate. IV. v. Pt. i. 2: V. ix. 5, 7: xviii. 23.

Sides of a roof, — roofs. IV. iii. 6.

宇

ye

yü

守

shou

守

shou

安

an

安

an

To keep, guard, have the charge of. II. ii. 17: IV. iii. 7: V. xxii. 6: xxv. 2. — guard-posts. V. xxiv. 7. 有守, men who keep themselves in the right way. V. iv. 11.

Low. 3d tone. In the phrase 巡守, to make a tour of inspection. II. i. 8, 9.

A condition of tranquil security. V. xxiv. 12. To rest, repose in. II. iv. 2: IV. v. Pt. iii. 5: vii. Pt. i. 11 (a. 6): V. v. 8. To tranquillize, give repose to. II. iii. 2: IV. vii. Pt. ii. 6: V. xxii. 8: xxvii. 14. 安安—naturally, without effort. I. 1.

(1) To enlarge. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 7. (2) 宏父—the minister of Works. V. x.

宏

huang

宗

zong

宗

zong

(1) Belonging to one's ancestors. 宗廟 and 宗 alone, the temple of ancestors. III. iii. 8: IV. iv. 8: v. Pt. i. 2: V. i. Pt. i. 6: Pt. iii. 3. Connected with this is the name of the minister of Religion, as 秩宗, II. i. 23. 宗伯

孔

kung

孕

ying

字

tzu

存

tsun

孚

fu

孜

tsi

孝

hsiao

孟

meng

孟

meng

季

chi

孤

ku

孺

nu

孫

sun

V. xx 3. **太宗** and **上宗** xxi. 23, 26. Officers in his department are called **宗人** xxi. 27, 28. **宅宗** to occupy the place of chief mourner, V. xxi. 4. A cup used in sacrifices is called **宗彝** II. iv. 4. **神宗** Shun's ancestral temple II. ii. 19. (2) To honour; honourable. **六宗** II. i. 2. The capital of the Chow dynasty is called **宗周** and **宗** alone V. xiv. 21; xviii. 1; xx. 1; xxi. 1. **高宗** and **中宗** are the temple titles of two of the emperors of the Shang dynasty. IV. ix. 1; V. xv. 4, 5, 16. **工宗** the most meritorious xxi. 7. So **宗** alone, p. 15. **宗禮**, honourable ceremonies, — ceremonies which all should observe, p. 15. **宗工** V. x. 11, 18. (3) To appear at court, — applied to the waters of the Kéng flowing to the sea, III. i. Pt. I. 47. (4) **代宗**, a mountain, II. i. 8.

官
kuan
kuan

An officer of government; an office. Either of these meanings will suit most of the passages where the character occurs. **百官**, all the officers, II. ii. 19; III. iv. 2; V. iv. 1; *et al.* We have **官**, when we should expect a to re definite term, the officer intended being understood. V. xxvii. 21. To put into office, II. iii. 2; V. i. 5. To preside over, — in the phrase **官占** II. ii. 18. — the influence of power. V. xxvii. 16.

定
ting

(1) To establish, to settle; to be settled. I. 8; II. i. 18; III. i. Pt. I. 41; iv. 2; *et seq.* (2) — to remain, to stop. V. xiii. 21.

宜

(1) To approve of or require as right. V. vi. 5. (2) The name of a section to the earth. V. i. Pt. I. 10. (3) In a name, **宜生** V. xvi. 12.

宣

To spread, extend. II. iv. 4. To manifest, to display. II. iii. 4; IV. vii. Pt. II. 6; V. xxi. 5.

室

A house. V. vii. 11, 13. **室家**, a house and its chambers. V. xi. 4; IV. ii. 6. An apartment. V. xxi. 11. So **太室**, xiii. 29. A mansion, as opposed to **宮**, V. vii. 11. So in xxi. 26. But we have **宮室** together as belonging to the emperor, V. Pt. I. 5, while they are together as belonging to the nobles. IV. iv. 12. The most common use of **室**, however, is for the Royal House, **王室**, III. iv. 5; V. vii. 4; xvi. 5; xxi. 6; xxi. 3. So **有室**, ix. 2.

宥
yu
yong

To forgive; to show leniency to. II. i. 11; III. 12; V. xi. 2; xxi. 8, 10.

宰

(1) A palace. V. vii. 7. Joined with **室**, a palace or mansion. IV. iv. 7; V. i. Pt. I. 5. (2) **官辟**, the punishment of castration. IV. xxvii. 18. (3) In the double surname **南宮**, V. xvi. 12; xxi. 11.

害

In the phrase **冢宰**, prime minister. IV. iv. 1; V. xvii. 1; xx. 7.

害

To injure, be injurious. V. i. i. 1, 5; III. 6; ix. 19; x. 2. To receive injury. V. vi. 10. **凶害**, cruel injuries. IV. iii. 3.

害

Why. IV. vii. 7.

宵

The night. I. 8.

宵

家

(1) A house, a family, — generally. II. ii. 14; iv. 8; IV. vii. 17; V. ii. 5; iv. 36, 37; **家人**, a household. V. ix. 12.

室家

室家, see **室**. (2) A family, a clan. II. iii. 4; IV. iii. 5; iv. 4, 7; V. iv. 12, 19; *et seq.* Connected with this is the use of **國家** for the empire. V. vi. 18; xxviii. 2; *et seq.* **家** alone has also this meaning. IV. vii. Pt. III. 5; V. xiv. 9; *et al.* (3) **土家**, and sometimes **家** alone, — the Royal House. V. vii. 1; viii. 1; x. 7; *et al.* (4) Obs. **私家**, to seek one's own advantage. V. xxvii. 21; and **朋家**, V. Pt. II. 3, to form parties.

容

(1) To bear with, show forbearance. IV. xi. 4; V. xxx. 6, 7. The forbearing. xix. 18, — to nourish. V. xi. 3. **從容**, an easy forbearing manner. (2) A name. V. iii. 8.

容

(1) To keep, to allow to remain. V. xiii. 24. (2) To advance with the cup, — in sacrifice. V. xxi. 26.

宿

(1) To reverse, show reverence. II. i. 12; iii. 5. Before other verbs, — reverently, respectfully. I. 4, 6; V. xv. 4; xxi. 22, 6. (2) The third of the calendaric branch characters. V. xvi. 3.

密

(1) To hush, **退密**, I. i. 13. (3) — secretly, quietly. **密邇**, IV. v. Pt. I. 9; V. xiv. 3.

寇

To rob, play the robber. **寇賊**, II. i. 20, V. xxvii. 2. **寇攘**, V. ix. 15; xxiv. 4. **司寇**, the minister of Crime. V. av. 7; xix. 24; xx. 11.

寇

寇

富 *foo fu*
Riches. V. iv. 39. To be rich. iv. 13; xiv. 11; xxvii. 11. To enrich. V. xxiii. 5.

實 *shai*
Cold; to be cold. V. iv. 32, 34; xxy. 5.

察 *ch'a ch'a*
To examine. V. xxvii. 12, 18, 20.

寡 *four*
(1) To be few. V. xxiv. 15. (2) A widow. In the phrase **鰥寡** V. vii. 8; ix. 14; xv. 6, 10; *et al.* — the weak. V. xi. 2. (3) **寡命**, the rarely equalled decree. V. xxiii. 3. **寡兄**, your unworthy brother. vii. 5.

實 *shai*
(1) To be filled. V. xvi. 9. **口實**, that which fills the mouth, matter for remark. IV. ii. 1. (2) To be real; real. IV. viii. Pt. i. 1; xii. Pt. 1. 10. Really; positively, exactly. IV. ii. 4; v. Pt. ii. 2; V. xxiv. 9; xxvi. 5; xxvii. 14.

寧 *ning*
To be in a state of repose, and tranquillity. III. iii. 4; IV. iv. 2; V. v. 7; xxiv. 3; *et seqs.* To give repose or tranquillity to; to soothe. IV. iii. 6; V. xiii. 25; xiv. 18; *et seqs.* **寧王寧人** and **寧考** are all designations of King Woo. V. vii. 2, 8, 9, 10, 11, 14, 15; *et al.* A state of tranquillity; serenity of mind. V. iv. 36; xxvi. 13. (3) It is better to. V. i. Pt. ii. 3. The conspiracy is completed in II. ii. 12.

審 *shien*
To examine carefully, to judge. V. xxvii. 16, 17, 18, 20. To describe minutely. IV. viii. Pt. i. 3. Discriminatingly. V. xxii. 4.

寬 *huan*
To be gentle. II. i. 24; III. 3 (a. 5); V. ii. 5; xi. 7. **在寬**, be gentle, or the course to pursue is gentleness. II. i. 19. To make gentle. V. xv. 18. Gentleness. II. ii. 12; IV. iv. 3; V. viii. 2.

寶 *puo*
Precious. V. vi. 7; vii. 3; xxvii. 21. Precious things. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 12; V. v. 3; xxii. 19. To consider precious. V. v. 8.

寵 *ch'ang*
Favour. IV. v. Pt. iii. 9; V. xi. 19; xxiv. 10. To confer favours (**寵綏**). V. 7. Pt. i. 7. **啟寵**, to open the way to favourites. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 9.

THE 41st RADICAL. 寸

封 *fung*
(1) Boundaries. V. xxiv. 7. (2) A territory over which a prince is appointed. V. xvii. 2. (3) To raise a tumulus; — over a grave. V. iii. 9; for an altar. II. i. 10. (4) The name of Wan's ninth son, the prince of Kang. V. ix. x. xi. *seqs.* To shoot with bow and arrows. IV. vii. Pt. i. 15 (a. 5); V. xix. 5.

射 *shay*
(1) Shall, will, about to. It expresses a purpose, or a likely result. III. iii. 9; IV. iii. 6; vi. 1; vii. Pt. ii. 6, 17; Pt. iii. 4 (a. 5); 8; xi. 8 (?); V. iii. 8; vi. 12;

xxiv. 10; xxx. 4 (a. 5). (2) To take, — to be charged with. III. iv. 5; IV. iii. 4; V. i. Pt. i. 5; xiv. 2; xvi. 15. (3) To regulate. V. x. 4. (4) Great. V. xiii. 15. (5) To acknowledge. V. viii. 21.

迪 *di*
將其後 in p. 20 is about inexplicable.

To engross, to do alone. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 10.

專 *chuan*

尊 *tsun*

對 *tui*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

導 *tao*

To honour. V. xix. 2.

To respond to. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 11; V. xxy. 6. To reply. V. vi. 17.

To lead; — actually. III. i. Pt. i. 57. mentally — to survey and lay down the course of. Pt. ii. 1, 3—13.

THE 42nd RADICAL. 小

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

小 *hsiao*

Small. *Pinyin*. Often used along with **大**. To become small. IV. ii. 8. Of phrases we have **小子**, used by the emperor, and to him and others, but only by the ministers E Yin and the duke of Chow; **小尹**, V. xix. 8; **小伯**, p. 9; **小臣**, V. ix. 17, 18, *et al.*; **小民**, the inferior people. V. xii. 13, 21, 22, 23; *et seqs.* **小人** is also used of the lower people. V. xv. 2, 3, 5, 8, 7, 17, 18. Only once, II. ii. 20, does it denote the mean in opposition to the superior man.

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

少 *shao*

A little. V. vii. 1.

3d tone. Junior assistant. V. x. 2.

The **少保** **少傅** **少師**, were the three ministers second in dignity at the court of Chow. V. xx. 6. The **少**

師 appears before under the dyn. of Shang. IV. xi. 1, 3.

(1) Pray, may it be that. II. ii. 20; III. iv. 5; *et passim*. This is the prevailing usage of the character in the Shoo. The exhortation and entreaty are not so evident indeed in all cases, and the meaning approaches to a reflective perhaps, as in V. xxx. 3. (2) To succeed. V. ix. 21. (3) Still, in both the meanings of—in addition to, and notwithstanding. V. x. 7, 8; xiv. 23; xvi. 12, 15; *et al.* (4) To esteem, be reckoned valuable. V. xxiv. 8.

THE 43rd RADICAL. 尢

尢 *yu*

尢 *yu*

尢 *yu*

尢 *yu*

(1) Evils, — judgments, calamities. V. xxvii. 21. (2) To murmur, to grudge. V. xxi. 2. (3) **蚩尤**, the name of the first rebel. V. xxvii. 2.

就 *tsau*
chie **三就** three places to be repaired to.
II. i. 20. To accommodate one's self to.
V. xxx. 4.

THE 47TH RADICAL. 尸

尸 *shih*
shih To occupy in a sham way, like a per-
sonator of the dead. III. iii. 1; iv. 4.

尹 *yin*
yin (1) To direct, to rule. V. viii. 3; xviii.
19; xxi. 1. (2) Directors,—the heads
of other officers, or official departments.
V. xi. 2; xviii. 2. They are called **尹**
氏 vii. 6; **庶尹**, II. iv. 10; V. x. 10.
師尹, V. iv. 35; **尹伯**, xix. 5; **百**
尹, xxii. 3. The **小尹** are different.
V. xix. 8; and perhaps **尹** in p. 11.
(3) The designation of Tang's prime
minister E Yin. IV. iv. 1; *et seq.* He
speaks of himself in the style **尹躬**.
IV. v. Pt. i. 2, 3; vi. 3.

尾 *wei*
wei (1) The tail, V. xxv. 2. (2) **孳尾**
to pair and copulate, I. 4. (3) **部尾**
a mountain, III. i. Pt. ii. 2.

居 *ku*
chu (1) To abide, reside in;—properly
spoken with reference to place, but used
also with ref. to office and condition, III.
i. Pt. i. 29; IV. iv. 3; v. Pt. i. 9; viii. Pt.
ii. 10; V. vi. 14; *et al.* Dwellings, houses,
families, II. i. 20; IV. vii. Pt. iii. 5, 10.
V. xiv. 16, 25; *et al.* (2) To settle, to
locate, V. xiii. 14; xx. 12. (3) To abide
sitting: V. i. Pt. i. ii: xxvi. 2. (4) The
virtues appropriate to the several cir-
cumstances of life and condition, V. iv. 2.
(5) Accumulated stores of grain, II.
ix. 1.

To reach to, II. ii. 21.

王屋 a mountain, III. i. Pt. ii. 1.

屑 Lightly, triflingly, V. xviii. 14, 22.

展 To develop, V. v. 3.

屏 A screen or defence, V. xxiii. 4. To
set as defences in, or to make defences
of, V. xvi. 9.

屏 80 tons. To put aside, V. i. Pt. iii. 3;
xi. 3.

屢 Frequently, II. iv. 11; V. ix. 21; xviii.
22.

屬 To pertain or belong to, V. xx. 13;
xxvii. 18, 22.

屬

屬 *shuk*
chu To be connected with, III. i. Pt. i. 73;
IV. vii. Pt. ii. 6. **屬婦**, to find con-
nections for destitute women, V. x. i. 3.

THE 46TH RADICAL. 山

山 *shan*
shan A mountain, a hill. *Sepe*. A mound.
V. v. 9. A hill-site, IV. vii. Pt. iii. 4.
The emblematic mountain on the emper-
or's robe, II. iv. 4. **九山**, the hills
of the nine provinces, III. i. Pt. ii. 14.
名山, mount Hwa, V. iii. 6. **山**
often follows the names of mountains.
Those into whose names the character
itself does not enter, and which will be
found in their proper places, are **衡**,
恆, **歷**, **塗**, **羽**, **刑**, and perhaps
some others.

岐 *chi*
chi The name of a mountain, III. i. Pt. i.
4, 76; Pt. ii. 1.

岡 *gang*
gang The ridge of a mountain, III. iv. 6.

岱 *tai*
tai A mountain, forming one of the bound-
aries of T'ing-chow, and Sen-chow, III.
i. Pt. i. 24, 26, 28. In II. i. 8, it is also
called **岱宗**.

太岳 *tao*
tao (1) A mountain so called, and also
the four mountains, called **四岳**, V. xx. 14.—the northern, the
southern, the eastern, and the western,
all referred to in II. i. 8. (2) The
second (if not the first) minister, about the
courts of Yao and Shao, was styled
四岳, I. 11, 12; II. i. 7, 13, 17, 23; V.
xx. 2.

岷 *min*
min A mountain in Loang-chow, III. i. Pt.
i. 63.

嶺 *ling*
ling A mountain in Yung-chow, III. i. Pt. ii. 1.

峙 *chi*
chi To provide, have collected and prepar-
ed, V. xxix. 5.

島 *iao*
iao An island. **島夷**, III. i. Pt. i. 10, 44.

峻 *tsun*
tsun Lefty, III. iii. 2.

崇 *chung*
chung (1) To honour, IV. ii. 9; V. i. Pt. iii.
3; ii. 6; iii. 10; *et al.* -- to indulge
in, V. x. 9. (2) To be exalted, made
great, V. xx. 17. (3) Greatly, IV. vii.
Pt. ii. 11, 14; V. xviii. 3. (4) The name
of a mountain in the present Hoo-nan.
II. i. 12.

崑 *k'uen kuén*
The name of a mountain in the west of the Ko-ko-nor. III. iv. 8. It probably is the same with the **崑崙** in III. i. Pt. i. 88.

崑崙 *kuén*
See **崑** above.

崑崙 *kuén*
(1) To die,—spoken of an emperor. V. xli. 10. (2) To let fall, or drop off. V. i. Pt. ii. 9.

崑崙 *kuén*
崑崙 *kuén*
The most eastern point of Yau's empire. I. 4: III. i. Pt. i. 23.

崑崙 *kuén*
Called also **崑崙**, a mountain in Léung-chow. III. i. Pt. i. 88; Pt. ii. 3, 8. A mountain in T'eu-chow. III. i. Pt. i. 35.

崑崙 *kuén*
崑崙 *kuén*
The name of a place in the present Shan-se. IV. viii. Pt. i. 3.

THE 47th RADICAL. 卩.

川 *ch'uen ch'uan*
A river, a stream. **九川**, the rivers and streams in the nine provinces. II. iv. 1: III. i. Pt. ii. 14. **大川**, V. ii. 5, probably, denotes the Ho.

州 *ch'ou*
The name of a great division of the empire,—a province. Yu divided the empire into nine. See III. i. passage. II. iv. 8. Shun divided these into twelve. II. i. 10.

巡 *ch'ou*
To go round and survey. V. i. Pt. iii. 1. Used of an imperial tour of inspection. V. xx. 1, 14. See **守**.

巢 *ch'ao*
南巢, the place where Kōt was kept in confinement. IV. ii. 1.

THE 48th RADICAL. 工.

工 *kung*
(1) Work. II. iii. 3. (2) Workmen. II. i. 21. (3) Service, duty. II. iv. 8. (4) Officers. III. iv. 3: V. iii. 4; et al. **百**

工, all the officers. I. 8: III. iv. 3: V. xiii. 8; et al. **宗工**, honoured officers, heads of clans. V. x. 10, 12. — **master of music**, II. iv. 6. Obs. **士師工**, V. xiii. 20. (5) **共工**, the ancient name for the minister of Works. I. 10: II. i. 12, 21.

左 *tsai*
The left (adj. and noun); on and in the left hand. IV. ii. 4: V. ii. 1: xxii. 20: xxiv. 13. On **左右** and **左右**, see **右**.

巧 *ch'iao*
Artful, artfulness. II. iii. 2: V. i. Pt. iii. 5: xxvi. 5.

巨 *ku*
Great. IV. viii. Pt. i. 5.

巫 *wu*
(1) **巫風**, sorcerers' fashion. IV. iv. 7. (2) A surname. V. xvi. 7.

差 *ts'ue*
To make a distinction in. V. xxvii. 3. Discrepancies. p. 20. **倍差**, two and a half times. p. 18.

THE 49th RADICAL. 己.

己 *chi*
One's-self. In the Shou of the 2d and 3d persons. II. ii. 3, 6: IV. ii. 5, 6: V. i. Pt. ii. 5: xxx. 5. Observe. **總己**, IV. iv. 1.

己 *chi*
(1) Have, indicating the present complete tense. V. xvi. 3: xix. 18. (2) To stop, rest, have done with. I. i. 11: V. ix. 17: xiii. 21 (a. 5). (3) — yes. The speaker assents to or approves of what has been said, and goes on to add something more. V. vii. 2, 9: ix. 7, 14: xi. 8: xiii. 11.

The sixth of the calendaric branch-characters. V. iii. 1: xii. 5.

異 *yi*
To resign. I. 12.

THE 50th RADICAL. 巾.

市 *shih*
A market-place. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 10.

布 *poo*
(1) To display. IV. iv. 3: V. xiii. 1. (2) To spread abroad. IV. ii. 3.

To become thin. Spoken of the feathers of birds and hair of animals. I. 5.

Pieces of silk. **三帛**, I. 8.

帝 *ti*
(1) God. The name is continually interchanged with **上帝**, supreme God. II. i. 6: v. 2: IV. i. 2: ii. 3: iii. 2 (**皇天上帝**), & iv. 3: v. Pt. iii. 3: vii. Pt. iii. 6: viii. Pt. i. 2: V. i. Pt. i. 6, 7, 10: Pt. iii. 3: iii. 6: iv. 3, 15: vi. 7: vii. 9, 13: viii. 3: ix. 4: xi. 2: xii. 9, (**上帝**) 14: xiv. 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 13, 14: xvi. 3, 7, 11, 14: xviii. 4, 5: xix. 2, 4, 5, 6: xxiii. 3: xxvii. 5, 12: xxviii. 1. (2) The title of the ancient emperors Yau and Shun. **Passia** in the first two Parts. Also in. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 10: V. xxvii. 5, 7 (**上帝**) (3) **帝乙**, one of the emperors

of the Shang dynasty. V. x. 9; xiv. 7; xviii. 10. The 帝 is wrongly translated—should not be translated—in these passages.

師
see
222

(1) The multitudes, the people; all. I. 12; II. i. 25; II. 9. IV. ii. 3; V. xiii. 14, 24; et al. (2) A capital city. V. xiii. 3.

(3) An army, a host. II. ii. 20, 21; V. i. Pt. ii. 1; et al. 大師, the imperial army. III. ix. 1; V. i. Pt. iii. 1; et al. (4) Instructors. IV. ii. 8; V. i. Pt. i. 7; et al.

師師, the instructors whom I am to follow. V. xi. 2. (5) Applied to various officers:—to the high dignitaries. 太師

and 少師. V. xx. 5, 6; et al. 父師

—太師. IV. xi. 1, 3, 4; V. xiii. 2, 3.

12; 師保 together, applied to E Yin. IV. v. Pt. ii. 3. and to the Duke of Chow. V. xxi. 7; the same characters appear to be plural. V. i. Pt. iii. 3; 師氏, the

captain of the warders. V. ii. 2; xiii. 3; officers generally. V. xiii. 20; 師尹. V.

iv. 25; 師長. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 8; viii. Pt. ii. 2; tutors. a high office appointed by Yu. II. iv. 8; judges. V. xxi. 13.

(6) A model; to take as a model. IV. vi. 2; II. iii. 4; viii. Pt. iii. 3; V. xx. 16; et al. 師師, to imitate one another.

II. iii. 4; IV. xi. 2.

(1) A mat. V. xxi. 13, 16, 17, 18. (2) — to rely on. V. xxi. 10.

席
see
224
常
chang

(1) Regular, constant, unchanging; constancy; constantly. II. iii. 3; III. iv. 2, 3; IV. iv. 8; v. i. iii. 1; V. xxix. 3, 4; et al.

Oh. 常伯常任常事. V. xix. 1, 12. Constant in virtue. V. xix. 3, 23. The regular principles of duty. V. xxi. 10; xxi. vii. 6. Regular ways. V. xxi. 2.

五常, the five regular virtues of society. V. i. Pt. iii. 2. 典常. V. xiii. 4; xx. 16. (2) 太常, name of the

Grand-banner. V. xxi. 1.

Offerings.—presents to the emperor,—of various kinds. V. xii. 3, 24; xiii. 1.

幣
see
225

THE 51st RADICAL. 干.

干
see

(1) A shield, shields. IV. xiii. Pt. ii. 4; V. H. 14; xiii. 1. 二千戈, two

shield-and-spearsmen. V. xxi. 11. (2) To seek for; to expose one's self to. II. ii. 6, 11; III. iv. 4. (3) 比干, a relative

of the tyrant Shou, who cut out his heart. V. iii. 3.

(1) To reduce to order, to adjust, to tranquillize; to be reduced to order. I. 2, 4, 5, 6, 7; III. i. Pt. i. 32, 65; et al. The

平
see

work of Yu is spoken of as 平水土.

II. i. 17; V. xxvii. 2. 平康, a condition of peace and tranquillity. V. iv. 17, 26. (2) Just. V. xiii. 3. (3) Common, ordinary. V. xxvii. 2.

平, level and easy. V. iv. 16.

平
p'ien
year
and
year
并
ping
幹
kan

A year, years. IV. ix. 3; V. i. Pt. i. 1; et al.

All together, in common. V. vi. 9; vii. 5, 13; xxvii. 3, 20.

Business, occupations, duties. V. xlv. 23, 25.

THE 52nd RADICAL. 幻.

幻
huan
幼
yu

Deceiving, deceit. 爲幻, the practice of deception, deceiving tricks. V. xv. 14, 15.

Young. IV. vii. Pt. i. 13; Pt. ii. 12; V. vii. 1; xxvii. 13.

(1) Dark, — ignorant, i.e., the title and underserving. II. i. 27. (2) 幽都, the extreme north of Yau's empire. I. 7.

幽洲, an island where Shun confined the minister of Works. II. i. 12.

Up. 1st tone. The small beginnings or springs of things. II. iii. 3. — motives. V. xxvii. 2. 惟幾 — to attend to the slightest particulars. II. iv. 2, 11. Rud in V. xxvii. 4. the same phrase — there is but a little between me and death.

幾
see
226

THE 53rd RADICAL. 广.

序
see
227
底
di

Short walls, running north and south, in the hall in front of the private apartments of the imperial palace. V. xiii. 16, 17, 19.

Bottom, that which is underneath. V. xxi. 16. See 底.

庚
see
228
府
fu

(1) The 7th of the calendaric stem-characters. V. iii. 3; xii. 3; xxi. 1. (2) 盤庚, one of the emperors of the

Shang dynasty. IV. vii.

A treasury. III. iii. 15. Treasures. V. xix. 2. 六府, the six magazines or treasuries of nature. II. ii. 3; III. i. Pt. ii. 13. To form a treasury, to accumulate. V. xxvii. 21.

(1) Measures of length. II. i. 8; V. xx. 4. (2) Measures generally, — rules, regulations, laws. Often joined with 法.

II. ii. 4; III. iii. 1; IV. v. Pt. i. 7; Pt. ii. 3; et al. 無度, lawless. V. i. Pt. ii. 3; xiv. 16. Compare 非度. IV. xi. 2.

度
see
229

法

無度, lawless. V. i. Pt. ii. 3; xiv. 16. Compare 非度. IV. xi. 2.

百度, all measures, all the conduct. V. v. 5. As a verb, to being under rule. IV. vii. Pt. I. 17.

To measure or calculate; to deliberate. II. iv. 8; V. i. Pt. I. 8; sv. 4; xxvii. 1, 14.

See **度**.

The court of a palace. V. xii. 10. It is found generally as — the court or place of audience of the sovereign. IV. vii. Pt. I. 5; Pt. II. 1; V. xiv. 20; xviii. 28. To appear at court. V. ix. 1. **帝庭**, the court of God. V. vi. 7.

庶民. It is one of the words, whose frequency is characteristic of the Shoo. As an adjective, numerous, all; the various, all comprehended in a class. II. iv. 11 will show how it is employed like the indefinite **百**. **庶民** V. iv. 9, 10, 11, 16, 25—30; *et al.* = the common people, the masses. **庶人**, III. iv. 5; V. xvii. 1, = the common people, or one of the common people, in distinction from men of rank. It is used also as a noun — the multitudes. II. ii. 11; iv. 1; IV. i. 1. = the several classes. II. iv. 7. See **庶殷殷庶**. V. xii. 7, where the usage as substant. and adj. come together.

庶羣, the herd of creatures. V. x. 11. (2) It may be, the result will probably be. V. xiii. 6; xxvii. 13.

(1) To tranquillize, to secure the repose of. IV. viii. Pt. I. 9; V. xvii. 6; *et svps.* We find it along with other verbs, — **惠康**, **康寧**, **康乂**, **康保**. Oba. **惟康**, study stability. II. iv. 2. To be brought to repose; a condition of ease and tranquillity. II. iv. 11; IV. vii. Pt. I. 6; Pt. II. 4; V. vii. 1, 4. We have **康強**. V. iv. 26; **平康**, p. 17; *et al.* We may take it adverbially in IV. x. 2, and V. ix. 6. Oba. **而康而色**. V. iv. 11. (2) **太康**, and **仲康**, two of the emperors of the Shang dynasty. III. iii. 1, and iv. 1. **康** was also the posthumous title of the son of king Ching, and he appears among the emperors of the Chow dyn. as king K'ang. V. xxv. 2.

(1) To use, — either to display, or to employ. I. 2, 12; II. ii. 16; IV. vi. 3; *et al.* = to have occasion to, on purpose, therefore, thereon. II. iv. 11; IV. v. Pt. I. 4; viii. Pt. I. 2; V. x. 3; viii. 3; x. 16; xvi. 6; xviii. 13. **庸庸**, to employ the employ-able. V. ix. 4. **徵庸**, to be called to be employed. II. i. 27. Opp. to **庸**, and — when employed. I. 10. Oba. **庸**.

帝命, V. xiv. 5. (2) Merit, services.

II. i. 9, 17. **自庸**, to seek one's merit in. (3) The name of a wild tribe. V. ii. 3.

To be discriminating; discrimination. II. iii. 2.

An ancestral temple. Either alone, or with **宗**. IV. v. Pt. I. 2; vi. 10; V. I. Pt. I. 8; Pt. III. 3; III. 8. An apartment of the palace is so called on occasion. V. xxi. 29.

Luxuriant. V. ix. 32.

To abolish or set aside; to disregard; to render nugatory. II. ii. 2; III. iv. 1; IV. vii. Pt. III. 7; V. ix. 5; xiii. 15; xiv. 5; xxi. 5.

To be enlarged; vast, wide. II. ii. 4; III. i. Pt. I. 24; IV. vi. 11; V. viii. 2; xx. 17.

THE 54th RADICAL. 尢.

(1) To conduct. V. xxi. 11. (2) To extend to. V. xxvii. 2. To be prolonged. II. ii. 15; V. xii. 17; xvi. 6. = to delay. V. vii. 1.

To establish or set up, to appoint. II. iv. 8; IV. ii. 8; *et svps.* Without any object, = to exert an establishing influence. V. xiv. 3. Used adverbially. V. iv. 4.

THE 56th RADICAL. 升.

A skin or fur cap. There were different kinds of it. V. vi. 16; xxii. 21.

昇哉, well but. I. 11. The meaning is uncertain.

THE 56th RADICAL. 弋.

To aim at. V. xiv. 3.

(1) A model, a law. V. viii. 4; xx. 14. To take as a model, to imitate. V. xix. 4; xxi. 3; xxv. 7. To give an example of. V. xix. 24. (2) To reverence; reverently. IV. viii. Pt. I. 2; vii. Pt. III. 15; V. xxv. 4. To bow in the cross-bar of a carriage, in token of reverence. V. iii. 9. (3) Explained by **用**, and — to employ, to use; to cause; thereby, thereon. IV. ii. 2; viii. Pt. III. 7; V. xi. 5; xvi. 21; xviii. 19; xix. 5, 24; xxiv. 3. **式爾**, purposely. V. ix. 8. = and, V. xii. 23.

後 *hou*
That which is after. (1) As a noun. A future; afterwards. IV. v. Pt. I. 3: vii. Pt. II. 7: V. vi. 15; *et al.* An heir, successor. V. vii. 11: xvii. 3: xix. 3. Those behind. V. iii. 2. Obs. V. xxi. 6. (2) As an adj. Future, after. We have **後人**, **後王**, **後嗣**, **後昆**, **後裔**, **後日**, **後言**, and perhaps other phrases. IV. II. 8: iv. 6: v. Pt. I. 5: x. 11: V. vii. 2; *et al.* **前後之人**, xxi. 3. (3) As a verb. To put last, postpone. IV. ii. 6. To be remiss in. To remiss in. V. xii. 13, xiii. 13, 20, 29, 30. **先後**. V. xi. 7, need not be toned.

徐州, one of Yu's provinces. III. i. Pt. I. 28. **徐戎**, certain wild tribes. V. xix. 1, 5.

(1) Followers. IV. ii. 14. Soldiers. V. III. 9. (2) **司徒**, the minister of instruction. II. I. 10: V. II. 2: iv. 7: xi. 2: xix. 10: xx. 8.

To get, to be got. IV. II. 8: V. vi. 14: vii. 8: xii. 2 (= to get successfully.) **得罪**, to commit crime, offend. V. ix. 15, 16.

To follow; to act in accordance or compliance with. II. II. 3, 5, 8, 13, 18; *et passim*. — to employ as before. V. xix. 15. **從子保**, to allow the son to succeed, and to protect him. V. xii. 11.

月之從星, the moon's following (= course among) the stars. V. iv. 38; = accordance with reason. V. iv. 6. To be made to follow, — to a certain place. III. i. Pt. I. 74; — their natural channels, p. 9. To be observed. II. I. 2. From; — as a sequence of. Adverbially, — consequently. V. xiv. 27: IV. viii. Pt. II. 3: vii. Pt. I. 14.

從容, to show an easy forbearance. V. xxi. 7.

Low, 3d tone. Followers, immediate attendants. V. xxvi. 2.

(1) To drive a carriage. III. II. 4: V. xxx. 5. (2) To wait on, be in attendance on. III. III. 2. **侍御**. V. xxvi. 4. (3) To advance — present — to. xxii. 23. (4) To manage, superintend. In the phrase **御事**, managers of affairs, which was a favourite description of managers and officers under the Chow dyn. V. I. Pt. I. 2: II. II.; *et supra*. (5) To condescend to. Spoken of the emperor's demeanour to his ministers. II. II. 12.

All round. To extend one's proceedings all round. II. I. 6.

To return, give back. II. I. 8: IV. vi. 1: vii. Pt. III. 6: V. xxix. 4. To report the execution of a commission. V. xiii. 1. To recover. V. xii. 4. To reply to. IV.

viii. Pt. I. 11. **紹復**, to continue. IV. vii. Pt. I. 4.

Again. V. xii. 8.

To comply with. **率循**. V. xxii. 24.

(1) Small. II. II. 15. To be reduced to obscurity. V. iv. 37. (2) The seat of a wild tribe. V. II. 9: xix. 11. (3) A principally so called. IV. xi. 1. To wait for. II. iv. 2: III. iii. 3: IV. II. 6: v. Pt. II. 3.

(1) To be called. II. I. 28. (2) To be verified. III. iv. 2. Verifications. V. iv. 4, 32, 34.

Virtue, virtuous deeds; virtuous; virtuously. **九德**. II. III. 3. **一德**. IV. vi. 3, 4. **三德**. V. iv. 4, 13. **奉德**. V. xiv. 18, and **秉德**, xviii. 23, — to hold as a virtue. The term is also used of conduct, or a course, which is not virtuous, but indifferent or positively evil; as in IV. I. 3: vii. Pt. III. 4 (a. &); viii. Pt. II. 5: V. i. Pt. II. 3: iv. 10: xv. 18: x. 23: xviii. 27; *et al.*

Excellent; excellently. V. xv. 10: xix. 18. To set forth the excellence of. II. I. 2.

THE 61st RADICAL. 心.

The heart; the heart, the mind, denoting the mental constitution generally. Observe **心腹腎腸**. IV. vii. Pt. III. 5; and **股肱心膂**. V. xxy. 3.

天心, the mind of Heaven, and **上帝之心**, the mind of God. IV. III. 8, and vi. 8. **宅心**. V. ix. 5, to settle, establish, the heart; but the same phrase is different in xix. 6, 12.

Must, as an auxiliary. IV. I. 5: iv. 8: v. Pt. III. 4, 7: V. I. Pt. I. 11: Pt. II. 5, 7: xx. 5: xxi. 12.

(1) To fear. V. xviii. 27. To be apprehensive, cautious. **敬忌**. V. ix. 19: xxi. 35: xxvii. 11. (2) To hate. V. xxx. 4.

To bear, to endure. **弗忍**, to be unable to endure. III. iii. 2: IV. iii. 3. Patience. V. xxi. 12.

Errors. V. iv. 15, 23.

To forget, to be forgotten. V. vii. 2: viii. 3: x. 7.

復
fou

循
sun

微
wei

候
hou

微
wei

德
de

微
wei

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

德
de

志 *ch' chih* The will, the alma. *Sepa.* 百志, all one's purposes. II. ii. 6. = earnest thought. II. i. 34. **役志**, to make the will to serve, service of the will. V. xiii. 12.

忝 *ts'ien* To disgrace. I. 12; IV. v. Pt. i. 3; V. xxi. 3.

忠 *ch'ung* To be loyal: loyalty. To give one's whole heart to. IV. ii. 7; iv. 3; V. i. Pt. i. 5; xvii. 3; xxv. 1; xxvi. 2.

忱 *ch'ên* To be sincere; sincerity. IV. iii. 2; vii. Pt. ii. 6; V. vii. 10, 12; ix. 6, 22; xvi. 2; xix. 2. To regard sincerely. xviii. 20.

忱 *ch'ên* To be believed. xviii. 21. Observe. **忱** *ch'ên* 裕之, xviii. 21. To believe sincerely. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 12.

念 *niên* To think; to think of, to regard, thoughts. II. ii. 7, 10; *et sepa.* 服念, to reflect on. V. ix. 12. Thoughtfully. V. iv. 4.

忸 *ni* 忸怩 to blush, to be ashamed. III. iii. 9.

忽 *hu* To slight, to show indifference. V. xv. 15. Defects of govt. II. iv. 4; but this passage is uncertain.

忿 *fen* To be angry. V. xxi. 11.

怒 *nu* To be angry; anger. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 3; V. i. Pt. i. 5; iv. 3; xv. 17. **自怒** to anger one's self. V. vii. Pt. ii. 6.

枯 *ku* To rely on. It occurs in three combinations, each of which requires study.

枯終, II. i. 11; **枯冒**, V. ix. 4; **枯侈**, V. xlv. 10.

思 *ss' ch'ên* To think, to think of. II. iii. 1; iv. 1; IV. v. Pt. ii. 7; *et sepa.* Thinking. V. iv. 8. To wish. II. iii. 8. The character is marked in the third tone in I. i, to be thoughtful.

怠 *tai* To be idle. II. ii. 6, 9; *et sepa.* = to cease. IV. xi. 7. To grow weary. IV. i. 3. Idly. III. ii. 8.

怠 *ch'ên* Haste. V. iv. 24.

性 *sh'ing* The nature. Used with ref. to man. IV. v. Pt. i. 9; V. xii. 15. **天性**, the heavenly nature. IV. x. 3. **恆性**, the nature invariably right. IV. iii. 2.

怨 *yuan* Used with ref. to animals. V. v. 3 (a. b.). To murmur, to murmur against. III. iii. 3; IV. ii. 8; V. ix. 21; *et sepa.* What provokes resentment. V. ix. 23; x. 11.

怨 *yuan* = dissatisfaction. III. iii. 6; V. ix. 6. = enmity. V. i. Pt. iii. 2.

忸 *ni* 忸怩 to blush, to be ashamed. III. iii. 9.

悔 *hui* To repent. III. iii. 9; IV. vii. Pt. i. 12; 17. Repentance. V. iv. 22.

悔 *hui* To repent. III. iii. 9; IV. vii. Pt. i. 12; 17. Repentance. V. iv. 22.

怪 *kuai* Strange. III. i. Pt. i. 26.

怵 *ch'ü* 怵惕 to be alarmed. V. xvi. 1.

恂 *hsün* To be sincere. 忱恂, V. xix. 2.

恆 *hêng* (1) Constant; constancy; constantly. IV. iii. 2 (see 性); iv. 7; xi. 3; V. iv. 34; xi. 2; xiii. 4; xiv. 8. To make constant, to preserve long. V. xiii. 14. (2)

恆山, the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. ii. 1. The name of a river. III. i. Pt. i. 2.

恐 *kung* To fear, be afraid. IV. ii. 1; vii. Pt. ii. 8; viii. Pt. i. 3; x. 1; V. vi. 16; xiii. 4. = to frighten. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12.

恤 *h'ui* To pity, compassionate. II. i. 11; IV. i. 2; V. vii. 8; *et sepa.* 恤宅, the house of mourning. V. xii. 11. To be anxious about. V. xii. 23; xiv. 7; xvi. 9; xix. 1.

恤 *h'ui* Anxieties. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 15; V. xii. 9; xvi. 18. 奉恤, to enter into anxieties.

恤 *h'ui* 恤功, to labour anxiously. xviii. 8.

耻 *ch'ên* To be ashamed, to be ashamed of. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 9; Pt. iii. 10.

恪 *ko* To respect. Reverently. 恪謹, IV. viii. Pt. i. 3. 恪慎, V. viii. 3.

恻 *ts'ang* To be pained. 奉其恻, to feel the smart. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 12. 恻瘻, sickness and pain. V. ix. 8.

恬 *ch'ien* To be peaceful, at ease. 引恬, to lead to the enjoyment of ease. V. xi. 3.

恭 *kung* To respect or revere; to obey reverently, attend reverently to; respectfulness, reverence. I. 10; II. i. 1; II. 20; III. 3, 6; IV. vii. Pt. i. 17; V. iii. 7; *et sepa.* = courteous, humble. I. 1; V. xv. 4, 10.

Before other verbs, its force is adverbial and = reverently. III. ii. 3; IV. vii. Pt. ii. 5, 10; V. i. Pt. iii. 3; *et sepa.* Oba. V. xviii. 5, 17, where the meaning = respected (past participle).

息 *ss' ch'ên* To stop, cease. V. x. 12.

悅 *yueh* To be pleased. IV. v. Pt. ii. 5; V. iii. 3. To please, give pleasure to. V. i. Pt. iii. 3.

悉 *ss' ch'ên* All; altogether, fully. IV. i. 1; vii. Pt. i. 13; V. xvi. 12. In everything. V. xiii. 9.

悔 *hui* To repent. III. iii. 9; IV. vii. Pt. i. 12; 17. Repentance. V. iv. 22.

悖 To oppose, not contrary to. V. xiv. 9.

悛 To repent and alter, i. **悛心** a penitent heart. V. i. Pt. i. 7.

悟 To awake. — to recover. V. xiii. 7.

患 Calamity, disaster. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 8.

悲 To be sad. III. iii. 9.

情 The feelings. V. ix. 6.

惇 (1) To give honour to. II. i. 16; V. xiii. 13, 23. — in a large and generous way. II. iii. 1; V. xiii. 10. To prove the solidity of. V. iii. 3. Observe **五惇**

哉 II. iii. 3. (2) **惇物** the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. i. 76.

To stand in awe of. IV. vii. Pt. i. 6.

怵惕 **惕** **怵**

No other character occurs so frequently in the Shoo as this. I have counted more than 350 instances of its use. We find it constantly at the beginning of Books and paragraphs, where it is hardly susceptible of translation, and we may content ourselves with saying that it is an initial particle. Here we may call it **恧**; there it is simply as the note which a man gives when he clears his throat preparatory to speaking. We find it again as frequently in the middle of sentences, coming after the subject, and acting as the copula to connect it and the predicate. For this usage of it the student may refer especially to III. i, where it occurs nearly 80 times. Again, it is sometimes treated as a verb, and defined by **思** to think of, to care for. E. g. II. iv. 3; IV. v. Pt. iii. 5; V. i. Pt. i. 5; Pt. iii. 4. Lastly, it is used constantly as a conjunction, connecting sentences and clauses together, and must be variously translated—*and*, *but*, *and so*, *namely*, &c. It often — *only*, half adverbial, half conjunctive. E. g. II. ii. 3, 20; IV. vii. Pt. ii. 4, 6; V. iv. 18. Its use along with **哉**, as in II. i. 11, 16, 17, 20, 23, 25, 26; and after **亦** **其** and **洪**, as in IV. vii. Pt. i. 7; Pt. ii. 5; V. i. Pt. i. 4, is to be observed.

(1) To be kind to; to love. V. i. Pt. ii. 4; xv. 10. We have **惠康** xv. 14; **保**

惠 xv. 6, 14; **子惠** IV. v. Pt. ii. 3. To be kind; the kind. II. iii. 3; V. xvii. 4. (2) To accord with, to obey. II. i. 17; ii. 5; IV. i. Pt. i. 1; V. xiii. 27; xviii.

21. To be accordant, accordantly, with reason. II. iv. 8; V. ix. 6; xvi. 22. (3) A kind of three-cornered halberd. V. xlii. 21.

Xvii, wickedness; the evil. V. i. Pt. iii. 4; iv. 40; xxiv. 7; at al. **爲惡** deeds of evil. V. xvii. 4. **元惡** chief criminals. V. ix. 10. **惡德** men of wicked practices. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 5. **先惡** to set an example of wickedness. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12.

To hate. V. xxx. 7. **作惡** manifestations of selfish dialiking. V. iv. 14.

To be idle; to be idle at. II. iv. 11; IV. vii. Pt. i. 11.

To go beyond. V. ii. 7, 8. To be in error; faults. II. ii. 12; IV. viii. Pt. iii. 5; V. xv. 13, 17; at scope. **十愆** the ten evil ways. IV. iv. 7. — to chastise. V. xxviii. 2. — to be exhausted. V. xxx. v.

Simple. **愚夫愚婦** III. iii. 5.

To love, to be loved. V. x. 3, 11. (full by **子**); II. ii. 17. Love. IV. iv. 4. Compassion. III. iv. 7. To love one's-self. V. xviii. 22.

To influence. II. ii. 31; V. xxxi. 3 (full by **子**).

To be ashamed. **愧恥** IV. viii. Pt. iii. 10.

To be careful to—, to attend carefully to; carefully. II. i. 3; II. 17; III. i. 1; iv. 2, 11; III. i. Pt. ii. 15; at *supposition*. To be cautious in. V. ix. 8; xviii. 10. — careful anxiety. xix. 24. **庶慎** precautionary measures. xix. 13, 14, 16, 18.

格慎 V. viii. 3.

To be honest and blunt; bluntness. II. iii. 3.

慄慄 to be apprehensive. IV. iii. 6.

Excessive, insolent. IV. iii. 7.

To desire to do good. V. xxiv. 7.

To be ashamed of, a feeling of shame for. IV. ii. 1.

The wicked, secretly wicked. V. xx. 11; xxiv. 7. **引慝** to take the wickedness or guilt to one's-self. II. ii. 21.

惡 **惡**

惡 **惡**

情 **情**

愆 **愆**

愚 **愚**

愛 **愛**

感 **感**

愧 **愧**

慎 **慎**

愿 **愿**

慄 **慄**

慄 **慄**

慕 **慕**

慝 **慝**

慝 **慝**

慢

man

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

慢

To content, be insolent. II. II. 20; V.

vi. 3. 慢遊, idle dissipation, II. iv. 8.

To think anxiously; to think anxiously

about. IV. v. Pt. II. 8; VIII. Pt. II. 8.

To soothe, 由慰, to tread the path

of satisfaction, the way to soothe one's-

self. V. xxvii. 13.

(1) Excellence. V. xxvii. 23; xxx. 8.

(2) To be happy, happiness. V. x. 9;

xxvii. 13. (2) To congratulate; cause

for congratulation. IV. ii. 8; iv. 8.

To be sorrowful, IV. vii. Pt. I. 1. To

sympathize with; sympathizingly. IV.

vii. Pt. II. 3; V. xviii. 1.

To be sorrowful; sorrow. II. iii. 2;

V. iv. 40; xii. 3. 憂危, V. xiv. 2.

居憂 and 宅憂, to occupy the

place of sorrow and mourning. IV. v. Pt.

I. 10; viii. Pt. I. 1. To sympathize with.

IV. vii. Pt. II. 6. Obs. 勸憂. IV.

vii. Pt. II. 7.

To lean upon. V. xxii. 2, 24.

To be abhorred. V. ix. 15, 16, 17.

Laws, rules; a pattern. II. iv. 11; III.

iv. 2; IV. viii. Pt. II. 8; V. xvii. 3; xvi.

9. To take as a pattern. IV. viii. Pt. I.

ii. 3.

儉人, scatterers. V. xix. 20; xxi.

7. 儉民, the poor people. IV. vii.

Pt. I. 12.

(1) To respond, be responded, to. II.

iv. 2, 7. — harmoniously. V. ix. 7.

(2) The name of the fourth gate of the

palace. V. xxiii. 1.

(1) To exert one's self, to be energetic;

to labour strenuously for. II. i. 17;

ii. 11; III. 6; iv. 1; IV. iv. 2; V. Pt. II.

8; Pt. III. 3; et seq. (2) To be great.

IV. ii. 3. To make great. IV. ii. 3. To

acknowledge the greatness of. II. ii. 14.

To please. V. xi. 7. To be pleased.

IV. v. Pt. I. 7; V. ix. 19. 不擇, to

be indisposed, sick. V. xii. 1.

懷懷 and 懷乎, to be full of

trembling awe. V. i. Pt. II. 9; III. iii. 3.

To be resentful. — Cruel. V. xviii.

3.

To correct. V. i. Pt. I. 6. To correct

one's self, to take warning. V. xxvii. 12.

To punish; punishment. V. xxvii. 20.

Admirably. V. xv. 10.

(1) To embrace, surround. I. ii. 11;

iv. 1. (2) To cherish, — either to love and

be grateful to, or to love and protect. II.

ii. 10; iii. 2; III. iii. 9; et seq. 懷

保. V. xv. 10. Foll. by 于. IV. v. Pt.

II. 1; viii. Pt. III. 4. To cling to, — as a

place. IV. vii. Pt. II. 4. — to obey

gladly. IV. iv. 2; V. xx. 13. (3) To be

tranquil; tranquillity. V. xxviii. 1; xxx.

8. (4) 覃懷, the name of a tract

of country. II. i. Pt. I. 6.

To fear. IV. ii. 4; V. xxvii. 21. 祇

懼, to be reverently afraid. V. i. Pt. I.

10; xv. 4. 危懼, to be tremblingly

afraid. IV. iii. 2.

THE 62nd RADICAL. 戈

A spear or lance. V. ii. 4; iii. 4; xxi.

19, 21. — a spearman. xxi. 11. 干

戈. IV. vii. Pt. II. 4. 戈矛. V. xxix.

2.

The 8th of the calendaric stem-char-

acters. V. i. Pt. II. 1; iii. 8; xii. 2, 3; xiii.

29. 太戊, one of the emperors of the

Shang dynasty. V. xvi. 7.

The eleventh of the calendaric branch-

characters. V. iii. 2; xii. 3; xxi. 5.

(1) A weapon of war. 戎兵. V.

xix. 23. 典戎 and 起戎 — to raise

war. II. ii. 17; IV. vii. Pt. II. 4. 戎

衣, to don arms. V. iii. 8. — to attack.

V. i. Pt. II. 5. (2) Great. IV. vii. Pt. I.

11; V. ix. 4. (3) The name of the wild

tribes of the west. III. i. Pt. I. 83; V.

xxviii. 2. Boi we Bud jung in the east.

V. xxi. 1, 3.

(1) To complete, to perfect, to estab-

lish. I. 8; II. ii. 4; IV. 5, 11; et passim.

成民, to perfect the condition of the

people. V. xx. 13. Obs. 成裕. xii.

16; 成允. II. ii. 14. To be completed.

I. 11; V. xxvii. 20; et al. Observe 天

成. II. ii. 5; 性成. IV. v. Pt. I. 9.

九成 is spoken of music. II. iv. 3.

Completed; complete, perfect. III. i. Pt.

ii. 23; IV. vii. Pt. II. 13; Pt. III. 3; V.

iii. 3; v. 8; et seq. 成人, complete

men, thoroughly accomplished. V. ix. 5; et

al. 成命 — the determinate counsel.

V. iii. 7. 成功 — an office whose work

is done. IV. v. Pt. II. 9. But the same

phrase often occurs, — to complete one's

work, completed work. 西成, the

realizations of the autumn. I. 8. 成

成

成

成

成

成

成

成

成

成

成

alone = completion. V. xxiv. 5. (2) The posthumous title of the 2d emp. of the Chow dyn. V. x. 9, 10; xxv. 2. 成湯. Tang the Successful. IV. II. 1; vi. 3; et *sepe*. 成周, the capital at Lo, to which the people of Yin were removed. V. xxiv. 1, 14.

The first personal pronoun; also possessive. I, me, my, we, us, our. *Amien*.

我
go
wo
戒
tee
chih

To caution; cautions, warnings. II. II. 7; III. III. 8; iv. 2; IV. vi. 1; V. xix. 1; xx. 17. To beware of. IV. viii. Pt. II. 4; V. xxvii. 13. 戒哉, be cautious, take care. II. II. 8; III. iv. 7; IV. v. Pt. I. 3; V. xvii. 4; xxi. 4.

To do violence, to assault. V. xi. 2, 3. To be injurious. IV. vii. Pt. II. 13.

戒
to-ang
ch'iang

或
Auo
huu

Perhaps. V. xiv. 26; xv. 18; xxi. 13. It most frequently occurs after negative adverbs, as 罔, II. II. 11, et *sepe*; 無, IV. vii. Pt. I. 5, et *sepe*; 莫, V. xxi. 5;

不, IV. vii. Pt. II. 6; 弗, IV. xi. 1; and 未, III. III. 6; when its force is to put the assertion with some reservation, or to make the command with some modification. Sometimes it makes the sentence hypothetical, —if, should it be that. V. x. 14; xv. 17; III. iv. 3. Observe V. xv. 2.

To distress. V. vi. 3.

戚
to-ick
ch'i

To tap, to strike gently. II. iv. 9. Read *tee*, = to subject to the laws. V. ix. 17.

要
tee
chia

(1) To subdue. IV. x. 1. (2) To sustain, be equal to. V. xvi. 20. = fully, xxiii. 3.

戡
k'au

A kind of lance. V. xxi. 21.

戮
k'au

截截 = quibbling. V. xxx. 5.

戮
k'au

(1) To put—to be put—to death. V. II. 10. 殄戮. V. xli. 21; xxviii. 11. Obs.

戮
k'au

孥戮, III. II. 5; IV. I. 4. To murder, to slaughter. V. I. Pt. III. 1; xxvii. 8. —in danger of being murdered. xxvii. 4, 5. To rain. IV. x. 7 (fall, by 于).

戮
k'au

(2) To disgrace. V. I. Pt. III. 4. (3) Used for 戮, to exert. IV. III. 4.

戮
k'au

(1) To fight. 大戰, they fought a great battle. III. II. 1. (2) To fear, be full of awe. V. xxviii. 25. 戰戰, IV. II. 4.

戮
k'au

戮
k'au

戮
k'au

戰
chen

戰
chan

戲
he
hai
戴
tai

To sport, to play. IV. vii. Pt. III. 2; x. 2.

To carry on the head. — = to support, to honour. II. II. 17; IV. II. 6.

THE 65th RADICAL. 戶.

The projecting edge of a raised hall or platform. V. xxii. 21.

紀
see
xiii
戾
le
li

(1) Tribulations, calamity. IV. v. Pt. II. 3; V. vii. 13; xiv. 17. (2) 獲戾 to commit transgression, to offend. IV. III. 6. (3) To come to. V. xlii. 18. (4) To stop or still. V. ix. 21.

A place. V. vii. 10. (2) To rest in; a resting place. V. xv. 1; xiv. 16. (3) That which; which. IV. vii. Pt. I. 7; V. Pt. I. 11; II. 10 (= wherein); III. 6; v. 8; vi. 16, 19; xxi. 14; xxx. 4 (罔所).

所
so

(4) At the end of a sentence, —an expletive. V. xvi. 8.

所
so

(1) An apartment. V. xxii. 19. (2) The name of a constellation, —a part of Scorpio. III. iv. 4.

房
fang

(1) The name of a principality. III. II. 3. (2) The name of a minister of T'ao-ang. V. xvi. 7.

扈
hu

黼黻, a screen ornamented with figures of axes. V. xxii. 14.

扈
hu

扈
hu

THE 64th RADICAL. 手.

The hands. It is used—but with one exception—always in the phrase

拜手稽首, to do obeisance with the hands to the face and the head to the ground. II. iv. 11; IV. v. Pt. II. 3, 4; V. xli. 8, 24; et *al*. The other instance is 假

手于, to borrow a hand from, to make use of. IV. iv. 2.

To beat with a stick, or with twigs. II. I. 11.

手
shou
shou

To defend. V. xxviii. 3.

扌
p'u

To receive. II. iv. 6; III. iv. 1; IV. III. 7; et *al*. To take and carry. V. xli. 23. To receive, —to wait on one's wishes. IV. viii. Pt. I. 1; Pt. III. 7; V. xxvi. 2; et *al*. To receive, —to carry out one's plans or work; to receive and undertake the charge of. III. iv. 5; IV. v. Pt. II. 7; vii. Pt. II. 3, 4; Pt. III. 5; V. III. 5; et *sepe*. —to acknowledge. V. xx. 1. —to anticipate. IV. viii. Pt. I. 11. 祇承上帝, reverently to obey the will of God. V. III. 6. So, 承上下神祇. IV.

扌
p'u

扌
p'u

扌
p'u

扌
p'u

扌
p'u

扌
p'u

扌
p'u

v. Pt. I. 2. 承于 = to treat, to deal with. V. xviii. 5; but IV. vii. Pt. I. 3, is different. 承以 following up with. IV. viii. Pt. II. 2. 統承 V. viii. 1.

Abilities. V. xxx. 8, 7. 奇技 wonderful contrivances. V. I. Pt. III. 3.

To repress. 自抑 to attain humility. V. xv. 8.

To throw, to lay. 投于 to lay on. V. vii. 8.

(1) To break off. 短折 = shortening of life. V. iv. 46. (2) To determine, to settle. V. xvii. 30. The meaning of 折民惟刑 in p. 8, is hardly determined.

To carry in the arms. V. xxii. 10.

To tap, or touch gently. Spoken of the handling of musical instruments. II. I. 24: iv. 9, 10.

To be pulled or torn up. V. vi. 16.

To hold fast. 執拘 to apprehend. V. x. 14.

To be stupid; stupid. IV. vii. Pt. I. 8: V. xx. 18.

To call out. IV. viii. Pt. III. 7. — to bring on. II. II. 21.

To do obeisance. The ministers bow to the emperor, and he returns the obeisance. V. xxii. 26, 27, 28; et al. The fullest expression of homage is 拜手.

稽首: — see 手. The form — 拜稽首 is also frequent. II. I. 17, 21, 22, 23: II. 18; et al. We have 拜昌言 to do reverence for the excellent words. II. II. 21: III. 1.

(1) The end of an arrow applied to the string. IV. v. Pt. I. 7. (2) A name. V. xvi. 12.

To fold the hands, i.e. to bring them together in the style of ceremony. In the phrase, 垂拱 V. III. 9: xxiv. 5.

To hold. In the phrase 樞持 V. xii. 10.

To point to, to indicate. IV. vii. Pt. I. 7: — referring to, as to. IV. x. 8. 有指 what he sturd at. V. vii. 15.

振 In the phrase 振旅, II. II. 21. ? to withdraw.

To deliver, give to. I. 3: V. xxii. 27, 28.

To take charge of, to handle, to direct. III. iv. 1: V. xx. 7-12.

To bring on. V. xviii. 29.

To receive; to be received. IV. v. Pt. II. 7: V. v. 7.

To push and overthrow. IV. II. 7. To push forward, advance. V. xi. 30.

To cover, conceal. IV. vii. Pt. I. 14.

To calculate. — to study. III. I. Pt. II. 30. 百揆, the name of the highest minister under Yao and Shun. II. I. 2, 17: V. xx. 2.

To bow, — in salutation. V. xxiii. 2, 7.

(1) To be displayed. IV. viii. Pt. III. 11: V. I. Pt. II. 8: xiii. 14: xiv. 22: xxv. 6. — to point out, bring to the light. I. 12.

道揚 to declare. V. xxii. 24. (5) 揚州, one of Yu's nine provinces. III. I. Pt. I. 37.

渠搜 Appears in the text in the form 渠搜 the name of a mountain and wild people, in the west. III. I. Pt. I. 63. Loss, damage. II. II. 21.

To strike forcibly, — as the strings in playing a lute. II. iv. 9.

To come, to arrive. IV. x. 4.

(1) To soothe; to bring to tranquillity. V. I. Pt. III. 4: III. 8: viii. 2: xiii. 19 (sub. by 子): xx. 1. 撫綏 IV. v. Pt. I. 2. (2) To accord with, be observant of. 撫于.....II. III. 4.

(1) To spread abroad; to propagate, diffuse. IV. vii. Pt. I. 7: V. ix. 17: xxvii. 8, 15. Applied to the sowing of seed, in which application since seed is in the 2d tone. II. I. 18: iv. 1: V. vii. 11. — to encourage. V. ix. 1. (3) To be separated. III. I. Pt. II. 7. — transported. V. vii. 6. (5) To reject. V. I. Pt. II. 3: xviii. 22. (4) 播 and 播蒙 the name of a mountain. III. I. Pt. I. 4: Pt. II. 8.

技
chl
抑
yí
投
tōu
折
chē

抱
pao

拊
fu

援
yuan

拘
kou

拙
chuo

招
chao

拜
pai

稽
chi

首
shou

言
yan

括
kue

拱
kung

持
chi

指
chi

指
chi

振
chen

投
tōu

掌
chang

探
tan

接
jie

推
tui

掩
yan

揆
kuei

揖
yi

揚
yang

道
dao

揚
yang

渠
chue

損
sun

搏
po

擊
chi

撫
fu

撫
fu

播
po

播
po

撲 To strike. **撲滅** to extinguish. IV. vii. Pt. I. 12.

撻 To flog. — the scourge. II. iv. 6. To be beaten. IV. viii. Pt. III. 10.

擇 To choose, to select. V. iv. 20; xvii. II. 12, 14.

擊 To tap, — as in playing the sounding-stone. II. I. 24; iv. 3, 10.

擣 2d tone. A trap. V. xxix. 3.

(1) Docility. II. III. 2. To train to obedience. V. xx. 8. (2) To throw into confusion. III. iv. 4.

To steal upon occasion offered. **寇** **擄** V. ix. 15; xxix. 4. **奪擄** V. xxix. 2. **擄竊** IV. xi. 6.

(1) To lead by the hand. **攜持** V. xix. 5. (2) To carry. **左右攜僕**, personal attendants. xii. 10.

THE 63rd RADICAL 攴

攴 析攴, the name of a mountain in the west and of the wild tribes about it. III. I. Pt. I. 83.

THE 66th RADICAL 攴

(1) To recover. V. xxiv. 10. — to take and remove. xiii. 28. (2) — to keep back, to draw one's self up from effort. V. xvi. 16.

It is for the most part identical in meaning and use with **攴**. (1) A place. III. I. Pt. I. 75. The place where. V. xiv. 22, 28; et al. (2) That which, that whereby. IV. II. 6; Pt. I. 7; vii. Pt. I. 5; Pt. II. 4, 6; et al. **攴攴** is frequent. II. II. 3; IV. viii. Pt. I. 1; V. xi. 2; et al. In one place we have **攴攴** IV. I. 4. Obs. V. xiii. 19. (3) Serves the purpose of the copula. III. I. Pt. II. 14.

To change, to alter. IV. II. 3; V. xii. 9; xvii. 2, 7; xxi. 2.

To attack. III. II. 4; V. III. 6. — to punish. IV. II. 7. — to work upon. V. xii. 3.

To let go, to send away. V. III. 2. — to banish. II. I. 12; IV. III. 1. To dismiss. V. I. Pt. III. 2. (1) To neglect, to disobey. V. II. 18. **放心**, the lost heart.

政
ching
ching

xxiv. 10. (3) **放動** the name of Yaou. I. 1. Many copies read **放** here, and explain differently. So with the character in **放齊**, the name of one of Yaou's ministers. I. 9.

Government; the measures and rules of government. **八政**, the eight objects of govt. V. iv. 4, 7. **七政**, the sun, moon, and five planets; but the meaning is doubtful. II. I. 5. **庶政**, the various departments of govt. V. xx. 3. **政人**, parties charged with the administration of govt. V. ix. 16. **立政** is the name of the 19th Book, Pt. V., where the phrase often occurs. **同于厥政**, to share in the offices of govt. xix. 5.

故
go
ku

(1) Therefore. IV. x. 3; V. x. 8, 11; xvi. 8, 9; xxvii. 10. (2) As a preposition, coming after its regimen, on account of. IV. vii. Pt. II. 5; viii. Pt. I. 2. (3) What is purposed. II. II. 12.

效
Aiao
hiao

To require, as a charge. V. xi. 3.

救
mai

To settle, to establish. V. xix. 15. **救寧** V. vii. 5, 11. **救** to consider as completed. xiii. 19.

敍
shu
hu

To arrange orderly. II. III. 1; V. ix. 9; et al. To be arranged. II. I. 2; II. 7; iv. 8; III. I. Pt. I. 7, 8; V. iv. 2, 3; et al. Arrangements. II. II. 7 (**九敍**); III. 8; III. I. Pt. I. 83; et al. Observe. **篤敍** V. viii. 13, 27. An order, a series, — a line. V. vii. x. 4. By degrees. V. xiii. 9.

敎
Aiao
chiao

— to employ according to qualifications. IV. vii. Pt. III. 10.

教
Aiao
chiao

To teach. II. I. 29; III. 5; et al. We have **告教** V. xix. 2; **教告** xviii. 33; **教誨** xv. 14; and **誥教** x. 4. Teaching, instructions, lessons. V. xiii. 15, 16. — education. xx. 8. **教辭** x. 16. **文教** III. I. Pt. II. 20. **五教**, the duties belonging to the five relations of society. II. I. 19; II. II. V. III. 9. **教刑**, the punishment in schools. II. I. 11. — influence. III. I. Pt. II. 23.

救
Aiao
chiao

To be active or earnest; to be active in; active. II. II. 3; IV. viii. Pt. III. 4; V. ix. 23.

救
Aiao
chiao

To save, to rescue. IV. v. Pt. II. 3; vii. Pt. II. 13; V. vii. 12.

救
Aiao
chiao

An instrument, to give the signal of stopping the other instruments of music. II. iv. 9.

救
Aiao
chiao

An instrument, to give the signal of stopping the other instruments of music. II. iv. 9.

救
Aiao
chiao

An instrument, to give the signal of stopping the other instruments of music. II. iv. 9.

敗
pai
pai斂
sieh
sieh斂
pi
pi斂
lou
lou斂
lou
lou斂
lou
lou

To ruin; to violate. II. ii. 20; IV. v. Pt. II. 3; XI. 1; V. xx. 16; xxi. 10. Obs. 戕斂人. V. xi. 2. —destroyers. IV. vii. Pt. I. 12. Ruin. IV. xi. 8.

To fill up. V. xxix. 3.

To ruin. V. xxiv. 9.

To venture, presume, dare. *Pu-ssan*. In one passage, —daringly, vigorously. IV. vii. Pt. III. 10.

(1) To disperse. V. iii. 9. (2) A surname. V. xvi. 12.

Pu-ssan. To respect, to revere. It is used as an active verb, to respect, to attend respectfully to, the action so described being determined by the object which follows, as in 敬致. I. 3; 敬德. V. xii. 10, 20; et seqs. (comp. 敬厥德. IV. v. Pt. III. 3); et al.; 敬刑. V. xxviii. 18; 敬罰. V. ix. 8. Very often no object follows, or only a 之, especially in the phrases 敬哉 and 敬之哉, when the verb —to be reverent. Reverence, respectfulness. II. iii. 2. Observe especially 敬作所. V. xii. 18. It occurs frequently before other verbs, when its force of course is adverbial, —reverently, respectfully. E. g. 1. 3; II. i. 19; ix. 7; V. xvi. 23.

Ku-ssan, opponents. V. xvi. 15. 敵
sieh
si

警. IV. xi. 2, 7. To oppose, resist. V. iii. 9 (followed by 于). To be resisted. V. i. Pt. II. 9.

(1) To spread, lay out, —as mats. V. xxi. 15, 16, 17, 18. (2) To divide and arrange. Spoken of Yu's work. III. i. Pt. I. 1. So, followed by 于, and without an object. II. ii. 1. (3) To spread abroad, to set forth, to publish. II. i. 15; ii. 21; IV. iii. 3; V. iv. 9; et seqs. To lay bare the heart. IV. vii. Pt. III. 3; V. xvi. 18. Obs. 敷遺. V. xxiii. 3; 敷佑. V. ix. 8; 敷蓄. V. xvi. 20, and 敷施. II. iii. 4. Observe also 敷納(奏)以言. II. iv. 7; i. 9. —extensively. V. vi. 3; IV. iv. 6. 敷言 —amplification. V. iv. 15, 16. To be spread abroad. V. xxviii. 1. (4) 敷淺 the name of a plain. III. i. Pt. I. 4.

Numbers, calculations. In the phrase 曆數. II. ii. 14; V. iv. 8.

敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu敷
fu
fu

To have in repair. V. xxix. 2.

To secure the faces of a shield. V. xxix. 2.

To be satiated with, to dislike. IV. v. Pt. II. 5; V. viii. 4; xx. 21. —to be tired of and intermit. V. xiii. 21.

To go to ruin. V. iv. 3.

To concentrate, collect. V. ix. 9. Es- actions. IV. xi. 7. It is read both in the 2nd and 3rd tones.

To teach. IV. vii. Pt. I. 5 (followed by 于); vii. Pt. III. 5.

THE 67th RADICAL 文

(1) Veined, ornamented. V. xxii. 16. —ornamented fabrics. III. i. Pt. I. 16. —display. V. xiii. 5, 15. (2) Learning, accomplishments. 文教. III. i.

Pt. II. 15. 文德. II. ii. 21. —the occupations of peace. V. iii. 2. Accomplished. I. i; II. i. 1; V. xix. 18, 21; xxviii. 3. (3) 文命, perhaps the name of Ya. II. ii. 1. The honorary title of king Wen. It is found *paries* in the phrases 文王, 文祖, 文考, 文

武. In II. i. 4, 14, however, 文祖 denotes the ancestor of Yao. In the title of V. xxviii, 文 is likewise an honorary name.

THE 69th RADICAL 斤

Salt land. III. i. Pt. I. 24.

The name of an officer about Shun's court. II. i. 21.

To cut through. V. i. Pt. III. 3.

This, these. V. x. 16; xxi. 5. Making, with the preceding subject, an emphatic nominative. V. vi. 16; xxi. 2. (3) As a conjunction, forthwith, thereon. V. iv. II. 13; vi. 14.

New. IV. vii. Pt. I. 4, 13; Pt. II. 5, 16; Pt. III. 6; et seqs. To be new or renewed. IV. ii. 12. To renovate one's self. III. iv. 6. Newly, recently. IV. vi. 6; V. xi. 10; et al. 作新. to make new. V. ix. 7. Obs. V. vi. 18.

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斤
ch'ien
ch'ien

斲 To carve; to do fine work on wood. V. xi. 4.

斷 (1) To determine. V. xxvii. 12. **果斷**, a bold decision. V. xx. 17. (2) **斷**, plain and sincere. V. xxx. 6.

斲 2d tone. To cut off; to make an end of. IV. vii. Pl. i. 3; Pl. ii. 13.

THE 30TH RADICAL 方

方 (1) A region, a quarter. Used of the cardinal points. V. vi. 4. Of the regions of the empire. III. iii. 7; V. xviii. 2, 7, 8; *et seq.* The phrase **四方**, the four quarters, is everywhere used for the empire. **萬方**, the myriad regions, is also used in the same way. IV. iii. 1, 2, 3, 8; v. Pl. i. 2. As an adverb, **方**—on all sides, from all quarters, everywhere. IV. xi. 2; V. xi. 5; xix. 22; *et al.* Oba.

方夏, V. iii. 5. (2) As a conjunction, then, now. II. iv. 8. IV. ix. 3; xi. 4; V. iv. 13. In II. i. 28, **方** is inexplicable.

(3) To disobey. I. 11. (4) **外方** and **內方** are the names of mountains. III. i. Pl. 11. 2, 3.

In. V. vi. 12; x. 12; xviii. 7; xxii. 11.

An exclamation. (Oh) I. 22 (n. 4), 11; II. i. 24; iii. 7; iv. 10.

To give; to display, to be displayed. II. iv. 4, 8; IV. vii. Pl. i. 10; V. xlii. 16; xvi. 5; xxi. 1. To give out (act.) V. xxvi. 2. —to use, to employ in office. II. iii. 4.

(1) On every side. IV. v. Pl. i. 5; viii. Pl. i. 5; Pl. iii. 7; V. xlii. 16. (2) To be by the side of. —near to, immediately following. V. iii. 1.

A kind of ensign, formed of ox-tails. V. ii. 1.

(1) Properly a body of 500 men. —host. II. ii. 21; V. iii. 9. (2) The multitude. —spoken of the people. V. xviii. 5-19. (3) Numerous officers. We have **亞旅**. V. ii. 2; xix. 10; and **尹旅**. xi. 2. (4) **旅力**, strength. V. xxx.

(5) To set forth, display, to. V. xli. 8. (6) The term used for sacrificing to mountains. III. i. Pl. i. 95, 76; Pl. ii. 14. (7) The name of a western tribe. V. v. 1.

To signalize. V. xxiv. 7.

族 Relatives,—the different branches of a family or clan. V. i. Pl. i. 5. So, **族姓**. V. xxvii. 21. **九族**, the nine classes of kindred. I. 2; II. iii. 1; IV. ii. 8. **圯族**. I. ii.

THE 71st RADICAL 无

(1) A particle of past time, denoting what is spoken of as done, completed. *Possess.* Observe **既月**. II. i. 7; **既往**. IV. v. Pl. ii. 2; **既** alone. IV. viii. Pl. iii. 1. (2) It very often serves as a conjunction, — when; or leads us to construe the clause where it occurs in the nominative absolute. (3) To be consumed. V. i. Pl. i. 6. (4) To exert to the utmost. V. xxiv. 15.

THE 72d RADICAL 日

(1) The sun. I. 3; II. iv. 4; *et al.* **出日**, the rising sun. I. 4. **納日**, the setting sun. I. 6. (2) A day, days. *Possess.* We have **上日** and **元日** for the first day of the month. II. i. 4, 14; **今日**, to-day. V. xvi. 21, *et al.*; **翼日**, the day following. V. xxii. 10, *et al.* (observe **今翼日**. V. vii. 3).

日中, midday. V. xv. 10; but the meaning is diff. in I. 4. The character is also used often adverbially, — daily. E. 9, II. ii. 11; IV. ii. 8; vi. 6; V. xxi. 3.

(1) The morning. II. ii. 19; IV. v. Pl. i. 5. **旦夕**, morning and evening. V. xxi. 2. (2) The name of the duke of Chou. V. vi. 5, 6; xii. 14; *et al.*

Good, excellent. IV. viii. Pl. ii. 12.

Early, prematurely. V. xii. 17.

A decade of days. I. 8; II. ii. 21; III. iii. 1; V. ix. 12.

Drought. IV. viii. Pl. i. 6.

Vast, wide. **昊天** is the appearance of the firmament in summer. I. 9.

旻天 is the appearance of the firmament in autumn. The phrase is generally taken as — the pitying heavens. II. ii. 29; V. xiv. 2.

The sun declining to the west, the afternoon. V. xv. 10.

昃

於

於

施

旁

旄

旅

旌

旌

旌

旌

旌

旌

旌

旌

旌

旌

昆

kūn
kuàn

Afterwards. II. ii. 18. Finally. IV. ii. 8.

昌

chāng

Good, admirable. 昌言, admirable words. II. ii. 21; III. i. 1; iv. 1. To be prosperous or flourishing. IV. ii. 3; V. iv. 15.

明

míng

Pinyin. (1) To be clear, bright; and metaphorically, to be intelligent. Clear, brilliant; intelligent. I. i. 9; II. i. 1; II. ii. 5; V. xvii. 2; *et seq.* Clearness, — spoken of seeing. IV. v. Pt. ii. 7; V. iv. 6; *et al.* Intelligence. V. vii. 2, 2. 神

明, spiritual intelligences. V. xxi. 3.

= pure. V. xiii. 25. In the sense of intelligent it is often associated with 聰. It is doubted to brighten the idea. V.

xxii. 6, 10; III. iii. 8; but 明明 in I. 12 is different. (2) To illustrate; to make illustrious; to enlighten; to be enlightened; to be illustrious. V. xx. 14; xiii. 5; xxvii. 7; xxviii. 2; xvi. 20; *et seq.* To understand clearly. V. xii. 7; *et al.* To study. V. xiii. 12. To adjust clearly. II. iv. 4. To distinguish. II. iv. 7; *et al.* Obs. II. i. 15, 27; III. iii. 5.

昏

hūn
huénTo be dark; dark, used metaphorically, morally dark, blinded. V. iv. 37; xviii. 1; *et al.* To be bewildered. II. iv. 1.昏德, dark as to virtue, = blindly vicious. IV. ii. 2. Blindly. V. xxi. 6; *et al.*

易

yì
yí

To change, (both act. and neuter). IV. vii. Pt. ii. 16; V. iv. 36, 37; xii. 13; a. II; xxx. 2. 易種, to perpetuate seed.

IV. vii. Pt. ii. 16. 朔易, changes of the winter. I. 7.

易

yì
é

2d tone. What is easy; agreeable. V. xxv. 5. To be easy. = easily preserved. V. xvi. 4. To take easily, make little account of. V. v. 3.

昔

xī
haiFormerly. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 10; V. vi. 18; *et seq.* 在昔. V. iv. 3; x. 9; xvi. 7.

II. 若昔. V. vii. 11; xi. 2. As a noun, 昔之人. V. xv. 8.

星

xīng
huīng

A star, the stars. I. 2, 4, 5, 6, 7; II. iv. 4; V. iv. 8, 38.

春

chūn

Spring. I. 4; V. xxv. 2. In the spring. III. ix. 3; V. i. Pt. i. 1.

昧

mèi

(1) Dark, sombre. 昧谷, the sombre valley. I. 8. 昧爽, the early dawn, between the dark and light. IV. v. Pt. i. 5; V. ii. 1; III. 8. The willfully dark or blind. IV. ii. 7. (2) 昧昧 = deeply. V. xxx. 8.

昏

hūn

(1) Used for 昏, blindly. V. vi. 2. (2) Used for 昏, to be strong, energetic. IV. vii. Pt. i. 11.

昭

zhāo
ch'aoTo display; to make illustrious or glorious. IV. ii. 8; iv. 3; V. iii. 7; x. 3; *et al.* To be illustrious. V. xiii. 5. To enlighten. V. xiii. 24; xvi. 14. Brightly. I. 2; II. iv. 2; IV. iii. 4.

是

shì
shih(1) This, these. V. iv. 28; xix. 3. = on this. III. i. Pt. i. 16. 若是, thus. V. xxx. 2. = really. V. xxx. 6, 7. (2) To be. II. iv. 3; III. i. Pt. i. 70; iii. 5; V. ii. 6; *et al.* This is the most common use of the term, and it is generally followed by a verb, which may be construed as in the participial mood.

The name of a star. I. 7.

昵

nī
nuan

To be near to, familiar with. V. i. Pt.

ii. 3. 昵比, xxxi. 7 (coll. by 于). = familiar, favourites. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 5. Low, 2d tone. The shrine appropriate to the spirit-tablet of a father. IV. ix. 5.

昵

nī
niPinyin. (1) A time, the time; the seasons, a season or period of three months. I. 3, 8, 9; II. i. 8, 16; IV. v. Pt. ii. 6; xii. Pt. ii. 3; viii. Pt. ii. 6; V. i. Pt. i. 11; Pt. iii. 1; ix. 12; *et seq.* Always. IV. v. Pt. iii. 3; viii. Pt. iii. 4; *et al.* Then. II. iv. 7; V. ix. 9; *et al.* Seasonable; seasonableness; seasonably. II. i. 2; V. iv. 32, 34, 37; *et al.* 自時, henceforth. V. xii. 14; xiii. 23; xv. 7; *et al.*To time, to regulate the seasons with a view to—, V. xx. 12. (2) Used as a synonym of 是, this, these; to be. The frequency of this usage is characteristic of the Shao. I. 12; II. i. 17, 18; III. iv. 4; IV. iii. 9; iv. 7; V. xxi. 7; xxiv. 11, 14; ix. 4, 11, 13; xiv. 22, 25; *et seq.* 時 alone, and 若時, thus. I. 2; II. iii. 3; IV. vi. 6; V. xii. 17; *et seq.* What is right. II. iv. 6. Obs. 惟時, II. iii. 4; iv. 11; V. xiv. 10, 18; *et al.*

晝

zhòu
chou

Day, by day. 晝夜. II. iv. 8.

晨

chén
chen

The morning. — to announce the morning, to crow. V. ii. 8.

智

zhì
chih

Wisdom; the wise. IV. ii. 2; V. xii. 19.

暇

xiá
hia

Leisure. V. x. 10; xii. 15. 遑暇.

xx. 10. 自暇, to give one's self leisure. V. x. 9. 須暇, to wait and forbear. V. xviii. 17.

暑

shǔ
shu

To be hot, summer heat. V. xxv. 4.

陽
yang
Sunshine. V. iv. 32, 34. **陽谷** the valley of sunshine, — a place in the extreme east of Yao's empire, probably in Corea. I. 4.

瞽
gu
To be violent. V. ix. 13; xix. 3.

暫
zan
A brief time, for a brief time. IV. vii. Pt. II. 16.

暴
pao
Violence, oppression. V. i. Pt. I. 5; Pt. II. 3; II. 4. Oppressors. V. xx. 11. 30.

暴德 and **暴德之人**. V. xix. 3, 5. Oppressive to one's self, wantonly indifferent to virtue. IV. ii. 9. To oppress, be injurious to. V. iii. 4.

暨
chi
(1) A conjunction. *And*. I. 8; II. 1; 17, 21; III. I. Pt. I. 33; IV. iv. 2; vi. 3; V. iii. 4; *et seq.* With, along with. II. iv. 1; IV. vii. Pt. II. 12; V. xv. 5; *et al.*

Observe. **胥暨**. V. xxiii. 8. (2) To be come to, — the uttermost ends of. III. I. Pt. II. 23. **暨** does not occur in the Four Books.

曆
li
To calculate. I. 4. **曆數**, the calendar calculations. V. iv. 8. **天之曆數** — the determinate appointment of Heaven. II. II. 14.

曠
kuang
To make vacant. II. III. 5.

THE 73d RADICAL. 曰

曰
yueh
To speak, to say, saying. *Passive*. Commonly the nominative is expressed. It is used in colloquy, and — to say to one self. *E.g.* V. xx. viii. 2. It is sometimes passive, and — to be called, to be; may be said to be, may be pronounced. *E.g.* V. iv. *Passive*; xxx. 7; 8. Next to **惟**.

曰 is probably the character of most frequent occurrence in the Shuo.

To be bent or crooked. V. ix. 5.

曲
ch'ueh
Why; how. IV. vii. Pt. I. 12; Pt. II. 4, 8, 11, 12; Pt. III. 5; V. i. Pt. I. 7; *et seq.* = when. IV. i. 3. = whither. III. iii. 8.

曷
he
A writing, written document. IV. v. Pt. I. 2; Pt. II. 2; viii. Pt. I. 2; V. vi. 15, 18; xiii. 23. Written specifications. V. xii. 6. A record, a book of record. II. iv. 8; V. xxvii. 30. Written circular responses. V. vi. 9.

書
shu
A writing, written document. IV. v. Pt. I. 2; Pt. II. 2; viii. Pt. I. 2; V. vi. 15, 18; xiii. 23. Written specifications. V. xii. 6. A record, a book of record. II. iv. 8; V. xxvii. 30. Written circular responses. V. vi. 9.

曾
tsung
曾孫, a great grandson, but used — descendant. V. iii. 5.

替
tsai
(1) To disregard. V. v. 3; vii. 9; viii. 3; ix. 24. (2) To intermit. V. xiii. 21. — to fall off. xii. 23. (3) To supersede. V. xix. 15.

會
hui
(1) To assemble (both act and nomen). II. ii. 20; V. i. Pt. I. 1; Pt. II. 1; III. 8; ix. 1. To meet with. V. ix. 14. To meet. Spoken of waters. III. I. Pt. II. 9, 10, 13, 12, 13. Observe **會同**. III. I. Pt. I. 13; Pt. II. 14. To unite. V. xxviii. 3. (2) Used for **繪**, to depict. II. iv. 4.

THE 74th RADICAL. 月

The moon. I. 3; II. iv. 4. V. i. Pt. III. 5. A month, months. *Passive*.

Lower, 3d tone. *And*. I. 6; II. i. 3, 10, 13, 18, 25; *et seq.* It is always used in enumeration of numbers, and follows 十.

(1) The impersonal substantive verb, — there is, there was, there will be. I. 11, 12; *et passiv.* (2) To have, to possess. Also *passiv.* It is often auxiliary merely to the verb that follows. The student must observe that **有** before the names of principalities, dynasties, — the holder or holders, the sovereign or sovereigns, of such. *E.g.* II. ii. 20, 21; III. 2, 5, 7; IV. viii. Pt. III. 10; V. i. Pt. II. 4. The name of the principality may be followed by **氏**, as in III. ii. 8. **有** must be construed in the same way before many other nouns. *E.g.* IV. ii. 9; V. Pt. III. 1; The term must often be construed as if it were preceded by a **所**, *E.g.* II. II. 17; iv. 4; IV. ii. 4; V. i. Pt. III. 5. Observe particularly the phrase **有衆**, which may generally be thus resolved. III. iv. 2, 5; IV. i. 2, 8; V. i. Pt. I. 10; *et al.* So, **有司**. II. II. 12. It is difficult, however, sometimes to account for the **有**. *E.g.* III. iii. 1; V. iii. 8; xii. 13. To be conscious of having, to have haastingly. IV. viii. Pt. II. 7; *et al.* **九有**, the nine provinces. IV. vi. 2.

To form selfish friendships or associations. II. iv. 5; V. i. Pt. II. 8; ix. 10; xiii. 9.

(1) To wear; dress, — robes, garments. II. iv. 4, 7; III. I. Pt. I. 10, 11; IV. v. Pt. II. 1; V. xxii. 2; xxiv. 10; *et al.* (2) A great variety of meanings may here be classed together. To undergo. V. xxv. 1. To serve; service; business; to perform duties. IV. vii. Pt. I. 8; V. i. Pt. I. 5; ix. 16; xii. 14, 18, 19; xiv. 23; xxv. 3; *et al.* — to enjoy, especially with **命**.

IV. vi. 6; V. ix. 28; xii. 10, 17; *et al.* but **服命** in V. viii. 4, and perhaps some other places, is different. — offices. V. xxiii. 28; xxviii. 2; x. 13 (s. 4).

To work on the fields. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9. 11. **服言**, to carry out one's words.

To work on the fields. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9. 11. **服言**, to carry out one's words.

To work on the fields. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9. 11. **服言**, to carry out one's words.

To work on the fields. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9. 11. **服言**, to carry out one's words.

To work on the fields. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9. 11. **服言**, to carry out one's words.

To work on the fields. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9. 11. **服言**, to carry out one's words.

To work on the fields. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9. 11. **服言**, to carry out one's words.

To work on the fields. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9. 11. **服言**, to carry out one's words.

To work on the fields. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9. 11. **服言**, to carry out one's words.

IV. viii. Pt. II. 12. (3) To submit. II. i. 12, 16; IV. v. Pt. II. 5; V. III. 8; *et al.*
To produce submission. V. xxvii. 15;
To subject animals to the yoke. V. III. 2.

To be subjected to. V. xxvii. 19. (4) 服

念 to cherish and think of. V. ix. 12.

(5) A tenure or domain, domains. II. iv. 8 (五服): III. i. Pt. II. 16-22; V. xx. i. (六服): *et al.*

(六服) *et al.*

The moon re-appearing. The 3d day of the month. V. xii. 3; xxix. 1.

(1) The first day of the moon. II. ii. 19; III. iv. 4; IV. v. Pt. II. 1. (2) The north; northern; northwards. I. 7-11. 1. 8; III. i. Pt. II. 23; V. i. Pt. II. 1; xiii. 3. 朔易 the changes of the winter. I. 7.

I, you, thy, we, our. *Phiaim*. The character is used most frequently by the emperors in speaking of themselves, but with no special emphasis, being constantly interchanged with 我子, and other terms. It is used also by ministers in speaking of themselves. *E.g.* II. II. 10, 20; iii. 8; III. i. Pt. II. 17; V. xiii. 1, 13, 22, 24, 28; *et al.* It had not yet become the imperial *Wé*.

(1) To be full moon, the 15th day of the month. V. xii. 1. (2) The name of a sacrifice offered by the emperor to the mountains and rivers. II. i. 8, 8; V. III. 2.

Morning, in the morning. V. i. Pt. I. 3; II. i. III. 1; xii. 1, 2, 4, 6; xiii. 3; xx. 10; xxiv. 1. 朝夕 morning and evening. IV. viii. Pt. I. 3; V. x. 2.

To appear at court or before the emperor. II. i. 9; V. xx. 14. Spoken of the waters of the Han and Kiang hurrying to the Sea. III. i. Pt. I. 47.

A round year of 365 days. I. 8.

(1) To expect, to anticipate. 不期 unexpected, unperceived. V. xx. 18. With a view to. II. ii. 11. (2) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(3) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(4) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(5) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(6) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(7) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(8) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(9) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(10) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(11) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(12) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(13) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

(14) A hundred years old. 耄期 between ninety and a hundred. II. II. 11.

末

—

un

本

—

本

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

朱

—

(1) Final, last. V. xxii. 24. Finally. xu. 24. (2) Ever, always. V. xix. 12. (3) Trivial, insignificant. V. xxii. 28.

The root. III. III. 4; V. i. Pt. II. 4.

(1) Red. Spoken of the manes and tails of horses. V. xxi. 1. (2) The name of an officer about the court of Shun. II. i. 22. The name of Yao's son. I. 8; II. iv. 8. 朱圉 the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. II. 2.

Hatten. III. iii. 5.

A wooden pestle, pestles. V. iii. 8.

A tree without branches, — a want of prosperity. V. xxi. 2.

(1) Materials of wood. V. xxi. 12. Timber. V. xi. 4. (2) *才*, abilities. V. vi. 2. — men of ability. IV. vi. 7.

To hold or grasp. V. II. 1.

To shut or fill up. V. xxix. 3.

(1) The east. V. xxi. 8. In the east. V. xi. 14. Eastwards, on the east. II. i. 8; III. i. Pt. II. 7-13, 23; IV. ii. 8; V. III. 7; vii. 15. Eastern. V. viii. 3; ix. 1, 4; *et seqs.* 東作 the labour of the spring. I. 4. (2) 東陵 the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. II. 8. 東原, a tract of country. III. i. Pt. I. 52.

The name of a tree. III. i. Pt. I. 52.

The pine tree. III. i. Pt. I. 26.

(1) To disperse, to be separated. I. 4; IV. vii. Pt. III. 5. (2) 析支 and 析城 are names of mountains. III. i. Pt. I. 53; Pt. II. 1.

(1) A forest. V. III. 8. (2) 桃林 the name of a tract of country. V. III. 2.

One by one. II. ii. 18.

Bold, determined. 果毅 V. i. Pt. III. 4. 果斷 V. xx. 17.

Hemp. III. i. Pt. I. 26, 69.

(1) The cypress tree. III. i. Pt. I. 52.

(2) 桐柏 the name of a hill. III. i. Pt. II. 2, 11.

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

朏

—

THE 75th RADICAL. 木

(1) A tree, trees. II. i. 22; III. i. Pt. I. 17, 33, 42; IV. iii. 5; *et al.* — timber. III. i. Pt. I. 44. — woods. II. iv. 1; III. i. Pt. I. 1. (3) Wood, one of the elements. V. iv. 5. One of the six magazines of nature. II. ii. 7. Wood, generally. IV. viii. Pt. I. 11. Wooden-tongued. III. iv. 5.

(1) Not yet; not, but the force of the *yet* can generally be detected. II. iii. 8; IV. iii. 5; *et seqs.* Has sometimes to be translated by—there never was.....III. iii. 8; V. ix. 13, 14. (2) The eighth of the calendaric stem-characters. V. iii. 3; xii. 1.

木

—

木

—

木

—

木

—

木

—

木

—

林

—

林

—

林

—

林

—

林

—

林

—

林

某 Such an one, V. vi, 3.
染 To be dyed or stained with, III. iv, 6.
柔 To be gentle with, to show kindness to; mild; mildness, II. i, 16; III. 3; V. iv, 17; xv, 10; xiii, 8; xiv, 12; xxvii, 4.
柱 底柱 the name of a hill, III. i, Pt. ii, 1, 16.
柚 The pummelo fruit, III. i, Pt. i, 44.
柴 To offer a burnt-offering to Heaven, II. i, 8; V. iii, 3.
祝 A musical instrument, a kind of rattle, giving notes to the instruments of a band to strike up, II. iv, 9.
栗 To be majestic and dignified, II. i, 24; III. 3. In many editions of the Shuo, 栗 appears in II. ii, 21, instead of 慄 to be fearful.
栢 ? the cedar tree, III. i, Pt. i, 52.
格 (1) To come or go to, —used both of place and conduct, I. 2; II. i, 2, 3, 14; ii, 9, 21; iv, 2; IV. i, 1; vii, Pt. i, 6; V. v, 8; xxvi, 6. To reach to, I. i, IV. viii, Pt. iii, 10; V. vii, 1; xvi, 16. To make to reach to, V. xvi, 7. (2) To correct; correction, IV. ix, 2; V. xii, 11; xiv, 5; xviii, 4; xxi, 3. To be corrected, become reformed, II. iv, 6. (3) Most excellent; intelligent, IV. x, 2; V. xxvii, 13.
桃 See 林.
桀 The name of the tyrant, the last emperor of the Hsia dynasty, IV. ii, 1; V. i, Pt. ii, 4, 5; xix, 3.
桐 (1) The dryandra, III. i, Pt. i, 33.
桐柏 see 柏. The name of the place where Tang's grave was, IV. v, Pt. i, 9, 10.
桑 The mulberry tree. Used as an adj., III. i, Pt. i, 16.
桓 (1) The name of a river, III. i, Pt. i, 20. (2) 桓桓 a martial bearing, V. ii, 9. (3) A name, V. xiii, 11.
梁 (1) The name of a hill, III. i, Pt. i, 4.
梁州 one of Yu's nine provinces, III. i, Pt. i, 62.
梅 Plums or prunes, IV. viii, Pt. iii, 2.
梓 The name of a tree, the wood of which was much used by the cabinet-maker and the carver, V. xi, 4.

條 (1) Orderly divisions, IV. vii, Pt. i, 9. (2) High, tall, III. i, Pt. i, 17. (3) 鳴條, the name of a palace of K'uei, IV. iv, 2.
棄 (1) To throw away, to abandon, II. ii, 20; III. ii, 3; iv, 4; IV. vii, Pt. ii, 13; viii, Pt. iii, 2; x, 2; V. i, Pt. ii, 3; Pt. iii, 3; ii, 6; vii, 11; xvii, 18. To put away, —spoken of one's faults, V. ix, 9. (2) The name of Shun's minister of Agriculture, the ancestor of the House of Chow, II. i, 18.
斐 To assist, help, V. vii, 10, 18; ix, 6; x, 8, 9; xiii, 13, 17; xvi, 2, 21; xxvii, 8, 10.
棼棼 to be in confusion, disorderly, V. xxvii, 4.
榑 To castrate, castration, V. xxvii, 3.
榘 To place, to set up, V. vi, 4.
榘 The name of a tree, the wood of which was used for making arrows, III. i, Pt. i, 32.
榘 The posts of the framework used in rearing walls of earth and lime pounded together. 榘榘 V. xix, 5.
榘 Oaks, IV. viii, Pt. i, 6.
業 (1) A patrimony, possessions, IV. vii, Pt. i, 4; V. xx, 17. (2) 業業, to be fearful, II. iii, 3.
極 (1) A support and pattern, V. xvi, 18. (2) That which is extreme. Applied to the idea of perfection or the highest excellence, V. iv, 4, 9, 10, 11, 14, 15, 16. Applied to the extremity of misery, 六極 V. iv, 4, 40. Applied to punishments, 五極 V. xxvii, 22. Extreme, xxvii, 21. To be extremely affected by; to be extremely for, V. xxvii, 20; vii, 15. Fully; to the utmost, V. iv, 33; ix, 8. A place of rest, IV. vii, Pt. iii, 5.
榦 (1) The name of a tree whose wood was used for bows, III. i, Pt. i, 52. (2) The planks used for the sides of building frames, See 榦.
榮 Glory, flourishing condition, V. xxx, 6.
榦 A high terrace with buildings on it, V. i, Pt. i, 3.
構 To cover over, to construct the roof, V. vii, 11.
樂 Music, II. i, 24.

樂

Pleasure, II. ii. 6: V. xv. 7, 13.

模

To fashion rudely in wood, V. xi. 4.

樹

To plant, to set up, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 2: V. i. Pt. iii. 4: xxiii. 6: xxiv. 7.

橋

鉅橋 a place where the tyrant Show had collected great stores of grain, ch'iao V. iii. 9.

橘

Small oranges, III. i. Pt. i. 44.

機

A spring, the centre of motion in any contrivance or judgment, IV. v. Pt. i. 7.

檢

To regulate. 檢身, IV. iv. 5.

壓

A sort of wild mountain mulberry tree, III. i. Pt. i. 36.

櫟

Shoots from a felled tree, IV. vii. Pt. i. 4.

權

(1) The weight of a steelyard, — the balance of circumstances, V. xxvii. 16. (2) Power, V. i. Pt. ii. 3.

THE 76th RADICAL. 欠

次

(1) Next in order, V. iv. 4: xxii. 20. (2) A position, a post, III. ix. 4. To halt, to take up a position, V. i. Pt. ii. 1. (3) To suit, to accord with, V. ix. 13.

欲

To wish, to desire, II. iv. 4, 6: x. 4: V. i. Pt. i. 11: xi. 3: xii. 23: xxx. 5. Desires, — in a good or bad sense, II. ii. 6, 13: IV. ii. 2: v. Pt. ii. 3. — dissoluteness, II. iii. 3.

欽

To respect, to be revered, I. i. 11, 12: II. i. 11, 23, 28: V. viii. 1: xviii. 5; *et seq.* Reverently, III. iv. 5: IV. viii. Pt. iii. 7. Obs. 欽若, to accord reverently with, I. 3: IV. viii. Pt. ii. 3: V. xxiv. 12. 欽厥止, reverently determine your end, IV. v. Pt. i. 7. Sovereignty, V. xix. 3.

飲

To accept or enjoy a sacrificial offering, V. viii. 3.

歌

To sing, singing, II. i. 24: IV. iv. 7. A song, songs, II. ii. 7: iv. 11: III. iii. 3.

歡

To rejoice, V. xiii. 21.

THE 77th RADICAL. 止

止

(1) To stop, to halt, II. iv. 3: V. ii. 7, 8. To make to stop, make an end of, V. xxi. 9. (2) = dwellings, V. xiv. 23. One's resting place, the end or aim, II. ii. 2: IV. v. Pt. i. 7.

正

(1) To correct, adjust, regulate; to be correct, exact; correctness, I. 3, 7: II. ii. 7: III. i. Pt. ii. 13: IV. ii. 2: vii. Pt. iii. 1: V. i. Pt. iii. 3: iv. 13, 14, 17: xiii. 3: xv. 11, 12, 13: xxvi. 6: xxvii. 20; *et al.* = to punish; punishments; a righting, II. ii. 1: IV. i. 2: ix. 4. = correct men, V. xviii. 22. (2) It is used of ministers generally, V. xix. 18: xxviii. 1. And of particular ministers; we have 外正, V. ix. 18. 正人, ix. 17: 少正, x. 2: 大正, xxvi. 4; *et al.*, as in x. 4, 7: xviii. 23. 先正, IV. viii. Pt. iii. 8, = the former premier, but in V. xxv. 7, the same phrase = your correct father. (3) The month or months with which the year commenced in diff. dynasties, III. ii. 3: IV. vi. 3. The first month of the year, II. i. 4, 14: II. 19.

This, these, III. iii. 6, 7: V. xv. 15, 18: xix. 15.

此

A pace, a step, V. ii. 7. To travel, V. iii. 1: xii. 1: xxiv. 1.

步

(1) To be martial; prowess, IV. iv. 3: V. i. Pt. ii. 8: Pt. iii. 6. = *inspiring*, II. ii. 4. Warlike measures or ways, III. i. Pt. ii. 20: V. iii. 3, 3. (2) The posthumous title of the first king of the Chow dynasty, V. vii. 5. 武王, V. vi. 12, 16; *et seq.* The combination of this title and that of his father — 文 — is very frequent. (3) 武丁, one of the emperors of the Shang dynasty, V. xvi. 7.

歲

A year, a round year, I. i. 8: II. i. 8: III. iv. 3: IV. viii. Pt. i. 6: V. iv. 8, 35—37: vi. 19. 烝祭歲, to offer the annual winter sacrifice, V. xiii. 29; but the meaning is doubtful.

歷

(1) To pass through, V. xvi. 3: xxiv. 3. Obs. 有夏歷年, *etc.*, V. xii. 17, 19, 22. 經歷, to pass through and carry out, V. xvi. 4. 歷人, harbourers of criminals, V. xi. 2. — destinies, as if it were 曆數, V. vii. 1. (2) Fully, repeatedly, IV. vii. Pt. iii. 3. (3) 歷山, the name of a mountain near which Shun once lived, II. ii. 21.

歸

(1) To return, II. i. 8: IV. iii. 1: v. Pt. ii. 1: V. vi. 8, 11: xi. 1. = to send, V. vii. 2: x. 14. To retire; retirement, IV. vi. 1. (2) To turn to, III. iii.

毗 *pi*
To assist, help. V. viii. 4.

THE 82nd RADICAL. 毛

毛 *mao*
mao
(1) The hair.—of animals. III. i. Pt. I. 44, 52. Applied also to the down and feathers of birds. I. 8, 7. (2) The name of a principality. The duke of Mao was a high minister in the time of King Ching of the Chow dynasty. V. xxi. 2. (3) A name. V. xxi. 11.

毳 *tsai*
To be sleek or glossy. 毛毳 I. 6.

毵 *tsan*
To be downy. To be full of feathers. 毵毛 I. 7.

THE 83rd RADICAL. 氏

氏 *shih*
It follows the names of principalities and dynasties, denoting the rulers or sovereigns of them, and is used as we sometimes use *the* in English.—*The O'Donnoghues*, &c. 師氏 an officer of the Chow dynasty, the master of the imperial wardens. V. ii. 2: xxi. 8. 尹氏 seems to = all the 尹, the heads of departments. V. vii. 6.

民 *min*
The people. *Peimin*. It is used also as we use *people*, without reference to rank, = men generally; E. g. V. xxx. 2. Of phrases we have 黎民, all the people, or the black-haired people, I. 2: II. i. 18: ii. 2: V. xxx. 6, 7; *et al.* 小民, the inferior people. V. xi. 2: xxv. 4; *et al.* 下民, also meaning the inferior people. V. xxi. 4: xxx. 5: xxvi. 2; *et al.* though sometimes 下 seems to be opposed simply to Heaven above, and the phrase = mankind, as in V. (iv. 2: and in I. 11; and II. iv. 2, we may perhaps say that 下民 means the people living in low places; 生民, simply = the people, V. v. 10: xxiv. 13; 庶民, the masses or multitudes of the people. V. iv. 9: 16, 26—28; *et al.* 庶民, V. iii. 6; 萬民, the myriads of the people, and 兆民, the millions. III. iii. 5: IV. iv. 3: vii. Pt. II. 12: V. xv. 12; *et al.* 四民, the four classes of the people, scholars or officers, farmers, mechanics, and merchants. V. xi. 12; 俊民, men of eminent ability, heroic men, V. xiv. 6: xvi. 30; *et al.* 獻民, wise men, V. xiii. 23. 先民 spoken with reference

to the emperors of former dynasties. V. xii. 11, and in p. 16. 後民 is used with ref. to the last emperor of the Shang dynasty.

THE 85th RADICAL. 水

水 *shui*
Water, waters. II. iv. 8: III. i. Pt. II. 8: IV. xi. 2; *et al.* One of the elements. V. iv. 5. One of the six magazines of nature, II. ii. 7. 洪水, the inundation. I. 11: II. iv. 1: V. iv. 3. 澤水, II. ii. 4. —with water. V. xxi. 2. Yu's work is described as 平水土. II. i. 17: V. xvii. 3. 水 is added constantly to the names of streams, or forms part of those names, like water in our *Black-water*.

永 *yang*
Long, long-continued, perpetual. IV. v. Pt. I. 6: V. vi. 10: xii. 20, 23, 24; *et al.* Far-reaching. II. iii. 1; *et al.* 永念, think of what is long distant. V. xvi. 10. 永世, long ages. IV. xii.

Pt. iii. 2; *et al.* 永世無疆, for ever and ever without end. V. viii. 1. To continue long. V. xvii. 7. To prolong, to perpetuate, prolongation. II. i. 24, (some read in 3d tone). IV. vii. Pt. I. 4: V. xviii. 28; *et al.* 日永, the day is at its longest. I. 5. —length of years. IV. ix. 3. Ever, for ever, perpetually. II. ii. 8, 17: IV. ii. 9; *et al.* 永, to seek, to seek for. IV. iii. 4: iv. 5, 6; *et al.* in the 4th and 5th Parts. To seek allegiance. IV. vi. 1. 作求, V. ix. 20.

求 *chow*
Fifty. III. iv. 4.

汗 *han*
You (noun and obj.), your. *Peimin*.

汝 *ju*
江 *kiang*
(1) The Kiang, one of the two great rivers of China, now called the Yang-tze. III. i. Pt. I. 45, 47, 53: Pt. II. 8, 9. A part of its course is called 北江. Pt. II. 8; and a part 中江. Pt. II. 9. (2) 三

江, three rivers in Yang-chow, which do not seem to have been identified with certainty. III. i. Pt. I. 40. (3) 九江, the nine streams, generally supposed to be a name for the Tung-ting lake. III. i. Pt. I. 43, 52: Pt. II. 4, 9.

池 *chi*
A pond, ponds. V. i. Pt. I. 8.

汨 *ku*
To throw into disorder. V. iv. 3.

洩 *jué*
The north of a stream. Or perhaps, the place of junction between two streams. I. 12: III. 1. Pt. I. 73, 82; Pt. II. 7: III. 3: V. xii. 3.

汶 *wén*
The name of a stream, now lost in the great Canal. III. 1. Pt. I. 27; Pt. II. 10.

決 *jué*
To open a passage for a stream. II. iv. 1.

沂 *yí*
The name of a river in Shen-tung and Keang-soo. III. 1. Pt. I. 29; Pt. II. 17.

沃 *wò*
To irrigate, to enrich. IV. viii. Pt. I. 7.

沈 *shěn*
The name of a stream, subsequently known as the **濟** (濟), and flowing into the Ho. III. 1. Pt. II. 10.

沈 *shěn*
To be sunk; to sink (act. and center). III. iv. 4: IV. vii. Pt. I. 12: xi. 1, 4.

沈酒 *shěn jiǔ*
to be sunk in drunkenness. V. I. Pt. I. 5. **沈潛** *shěn qián*
the reserved and retiring. V. iv. 17.

沔 *miǎn*
The name of a stream. III. 1. Pt. i. 70.

沖 *chōng*
Young, small. The phrases **沖子** *chōng zǐ*
沖人 *chōng rén*, a youth, the youth, are used to the emperors, and by them of themselves. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 7: V. c. 18: vii. 1, 8: xii. 12: xiii. 11, 14, 16: xxi. 5.

沙 *shā*
流沙 *liú shā*
the moving sands, the pres. desert of Gobi. III. 1. Pt. II. 3, 23.

沮 *jǔ*
(1) The name of a stream in Yen-chow, whose waters flowed into the marsh of Lay-hen. III. 1. Pt. I. 13. (2) The name of another stream in Yang-chow, an affluent of the Wei. III. 1. Pt. i. 74; Pt. II. 12.

沱 *tuó*
A branch of the Keang. There were one or more streams of this name in King-chow. III. 1. Pt. I. 49; and also in Láng-chow. III. Pt. i. 33, 54; Pt. II. 9.

河 *hé*
The Yellow River, though its channel in the latter part of its course was different from what it is now. III. 1. Pt. i. 11, 20, 36, &c.; Pt. II. 1. 7, 10, 12, 13; III. 2: IV. vii. Pt. II. 1: viii. Pt. III. 1: V. 1. Pt. II. 1: xiii. 3.

九河 *jiǔ hé*
nine channels, forming a delta in the northern part of Yen-chow, by which a portion of the waters of the Ho were through Yu's skill discharged into the sea. III. 1. Pt. i. 18.

西河 *xī hé*
the western Ho, that portion of it which runs from north to south between Shan-tu and Shan-se. III. 1. Pt. I. 71, 82. **南河** *nán hé*
the most southern part of the Ho. III. 1. Pt. i. 53.

河圖 *hé tú*
the river plan,—the scheme on a dragon's back, which is fabled to have emerged from the Ho, and supplied Fuh-he with the idea of his diagrams. V. xxii. 19.

治 *zhì*
To manage, to regulate. III. 1. Pt. I. 4: V. xii. 14: xv. 4: xvi. 23: xx. 1, 7, 9. — to punish. III. iv. 6. — the performance of works. V. ix. 1.

治 *zhì*
3d tone. To be well regulated; where management and regulation take effect, — good government. II. ii. 3, 11, 18: iv. 4: IV. v. Pt. III. 2: viii. Pt. II. 5: V. III. 9: xvii. 4: xx. 2: xxi. 3: xxiv. 13: xxv. 7. — There is some uncertainty in determining, in several instances to what tone we shall assign this character.

沿 *yán*
To follow the course of a stream or shore. III. 1. Pt. I. 45.

洩 *xié*
To be dissipated; dissipation. V. x. 11: xiv. 4, 9.

法 *fǎ*
(1) Laws. V. xxi. 7: xxvii. 3. **法度** *fǎ dù*
II. ii. 6: IV. vii. Pt. I. 3. — imperial appointments, or way of procedure. V. vii. 13. To act according to the laws. V. xxvii. 18. (2) A plan, — as of a house. V. vii. 11.

酒 *jiǔ*
The name of a stream, which is now one of the feeders of the great Canal, but which anciently flowed into the Hwas. III. 1. Pt. I. 35, 36, 43; Pt. II. 11.

波 *bō*
(1) **蒙波** *mēng bō*
the name of a marsh in Yu-chow. III. 1. Pt. I. 55. (2) — waters. III. 1. Pt. II. 5.

泣 *qì*
To weep, to shed tears. II. ii. 21: iv. 5: V. vi. 18.

泥 *ní*
Mud. **塗泥** *tú ní*
III. 1. Pt. I. 42, 51.

泰 *tài*
A surname. **泰顛** *tài diān*
a minister of king Wan. V. xvi. 12.

泯 *mǐn*
To be exhausted or destroyed. V. ix. 16. **泯泯** *mǐn mǐn*
to become dark or blinded. V. xxvii. 4.

洋 *yáng*
洋洋 *yáng yáng*
vast, — of vast significance. IV. iv. 8.

洗 *xǐ*
To clarify spirits. V. x. 8.

澤 *zé*
(1) Waters overflowing. **澤水** *zé shuǐ*
the flood of Yaou's time. II. ii. 14. (2) The name of a stream, an affluent of the main stream of the Ho. III. 1. Pt. II. 7.

洛 *luò*
(1) The name of a river in Ho-nan, one of the principal tributaries of the Ho. III. 1. Pt. I. 53, 55, 60; Pt. II. 7, 13; & al.

(2) **洛** alone, and **洛邑** *luò yì*
occur often as the name of the 'capital of the completed Chow,' to which the people and officers of a part of the imperial domain of Yin were removed. V. ix. 1: xii. 2, 3, 4: xiv. 1, 22, 23; & al.

湯 *tang* Commonly spoken of as **成湯**, Tang the Successful, the founder of the Shang dynasty. IV. ii. 1: vi. 3: V. i. Pt. ii. 4, 8: viii. 2: x. 3; et al.

源 *yuen* The source of a river. III. i. Pt. ii. 14.

準 *chun* **準準人**, and **準夫**, in V. xix. 1, 2, 7, 10, 19, are names for the officers or guardians of the laws.

溢 *yik* To overflow, to flow out. III. i. Pt. ii. 10.

滄 *tsung* **滄浪**, see **浪**.

滅 *mieh* To extinguish, extinguishing: to be extinguished. III. iii. 1: IV. iii. 3: V. i. Pt. ii. 3: x. ii. xvi. 10: xxiv. 10. **殲**

滅 IV. vii. Pt. ii. 16. **撲滅** IV. vii. Pt. i. 12. **滅亡**, extinction and ruin. III. iii. 7.

滋 *tsi* To be abundant. V. i. Pt. iii. 4. Abundantly. V. xvi. 20.

滌 *lei* To clear. III. i. Pt. ii. 14.

榮 *jung* **榮波** and **榮**, the name of a marsh. III. i. Pt. i. 55; Pt. ii. 10.

涸 *ch'ao* To insult, — to small. Always in the phrase **涸天** I. 10, 11: II. iv. 1.

滿 *man* — pride, the fulness of one's-self. II. ii. 21. **自滿**, to be full of one's-self. II. ii. 15; IV. ii. 8.

漂 *piao* To float. **流漂**, to float away. IV. iii. 8.

(1) Varnish. III. i. Pt. i. 19, 60. Varnished. V. xxii. 18. (2) The name of a stream, a tributary of the Wei. III. i. Pt. i. 74; Pt. ii. 12.

漢 *han* A large stream, flowing into the Kiang. III. i. Pt. i. 47, 53; Pt. ii. 8.

漳 *chang* A stream, flowing from east to west, and in Yao's time joining the Ho in the gulf, dia. of Fow-shing. **衡漳** III. i. Pt. i. 6.

To advance by degrees; more and more. III. i. Pt. i. 33; V. xxii. 4.

漸 *chien* 1st tone. To permeate; to be affected. III. i. Pt. ii. 23; V. xxiv. 4.

深 *shen* The name of the Han in the early part of its course. III. i. Pt. ii. 8.

潛 *chien* (1) To dive, — to be hid. **沈潛**, the reserved and retiring. V. iv. 17. (2) The name of streams flowing from the Han

and rejoining it again. III. i. Pt. i. 53, 64, 70.

An affluent of the Ho. III. i. Pt. i. 55; Pt. ii. 13; V. xiii. 3.

潤 *jun* To soak. V. iv. 5. **澤潤** to exert an enriching influence on. V. xxiv. 13.

(1) A marsh. We have **震澤** III. i. Pt. i. 41; and **荷澤** p. 52. To become a marsh. III. i. Pt. ii. 3. To be formed into a marsh. Pt. i. 14. **九澤**, the marshes of the nine provinces. Pt. ii. 14. (2) — favours, bounties. V. xiv. 3.

資澤 xxviii. 13. **潤澤**, see above.

The name probably of a stream, flowing into the Kiang. III. i. Pt. ii. 9.

三 *shih* **三**, probably three dykes on the Han. III. i. Pt. ii. 8.

澮 *kuai* A field ditch or channel. II. iv. 1.

2d tone. (1) **濟濟**, numerous. II. ii. 20. (2) The name of a stream. ? flows now into the sea as the **小清**. III. i. Pt. i. 20, 27; Pt. ii. 10.

3d tone. (1) To cross over a stream. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 6: viii. Pt. i. 6: V. vii. 2: xvi. 16. (2) To help. V. iii. 8: xvii. 6: xxii. 7. (3) To be successful. III. iv. 7: V. xxi. 12.

(1) Deep, profound, — spoken of Shun. II. i. 1. (2) To deepen the channel of a river. II. i. 10: iv. 1.

Name of the country of a wild tribe, in the present Hoo-pih, one of those which assisted king Woo against the tyrant Shou. V. ii. 3.

A river of T'ing-chow. III. i. Pt. i. 23.

The shore of the sea, or bank of a river. III. i. Pt. i. 24, 35.

The name of a stream, an affluent of the Lo. III. i. Pt. i. 65; Pt. ii. 13: V. xiii. 3.

The name of a river, an affluent of the Wei. III. i. Pt. i. 75; Pt. ii. 12.

The name of a river in Yen-chow. III. i. Pt. i. 13.

THE 86th RADICAL. **火**.

(1) Fire. II. iv. 4: III. iv. 4: IV. vii. Pt. i. 3, 12: V. xiii. 9. One of the five elements. V. iv. 5. One of the six magazines of nature. II. ii. 7. (2) The name of a star. I. 5.

火 *ho*

灼
chiao
cho
災
tsai

(1) To burn or blaze. V. xiii. 3. To shine forth. V. xvii. 10. Clearly. V. xix. 8, 18.

(2) Calamities, judgments. IV. iii. 2; iv. 3; vi. 3; vii. Pt. ii. 7; xi. 4, 8. V. i. Pt. i. 4. — punishment. IV. xi. 6. 作

災, to inflict suffering. IV. vii. Pt. i. 14. 自災, to cause suffering one's self. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12. (2) Offences by mishap. If. i. ii. V. ix. 8.

To blame; to blame over. V. ix. 8. III iv. 6.

To roast. 焚炙. V. i. Pt. i. 5.

Charcoal. 塗炭. IV. ii. 2.

(1) Violent, fierce, — spoken of natural phenomena. II. i. 2; III. iv. 6 (烈于, fiercer than). — energy. V. xxv. 6. (2) Merit, achievement, merit-achieving, meritorious. IV. iv. i. v. Pt. ii. 6; vii. Pt. i. 3; viii. Pt. iii. 10. V. viii. 4; xiii. 14, 22, 24; xix. 22; xxi. 5. Observe 前烈. V. iii. 3. and 先烈. xxi. 3.

(1) All the multitudes of. 蒸民. II. iv. 1; IV. vi. 9; V. iii. 6. (2) To advance, make progress. V. xviii. 16. Under this meaning comes. 蒸蒸, denoting probably *gradually*. I. 12. (3) Name of the winter sacrifice in the temple of ancestors. V. xiii. 29. (4) Name of a wild tribe subject to the House of Chow. V. xix. 11. But the meaning is doubtful.

A final particle, used at the end of sentences to round them. It only occurs four times in the Shoo. V. ii. 7, 8; vi. 4; xxx. 6.

To burn; to be burned. V. i. Pt. i. 5; III. iv. 6.

Not, do not, to be without. *Possessive*. 無 is the opposite of 有, both in its personal and impersonal forms, — not to have, to be without; and there is — was — not, there will not be, there not being. Obs. 有無. II. iv. 1, and 有罪無罪. V. i. Pt. i. 7. Its imperative usage, in the sense of 毋, is very frequent.

Observe also 無大無小, however great, however small. II. ii. 11.

So. It only occurs twice. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 10; V. xxx. 4.

(1) To be bright, — intelligent. II. ii. 6. (2) To be fully discharged. I. 8; II. i. 17, 27; iv. 11. (3) To enlarge, to consolidate. V. xviii. 21.

贊
tsang
ch'ing

The friendless. V. ix. 12.

照
chiao
chiao

To shine. V. i. Pt. i. 5.

煩
fan

To be burdensome, full of trouble. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 21; V. xi. 18.

熊
hsung

(1) A bear, bears. III. i. Pt. i. 29; V. ii. 9. 熊羆之士, soldiers brave

as bears and grisly bears. V. xxi. 3.

(2) The name of an officer about the court of Shun. II. i. 22. (3) 熊耳, the name of a mountain at which Yu began his survey of the LÖ. III. i. Pt. ii. 2, 15.

To be ripe. V. vi. 16. To be fruitful. V. vi. 19.

熟
shu

燄
yen

燄燄, fire slowly and gradually spreading (the first beginnings of a fire). V. xiii. 9.

燎
liao

To burn, to blaze. IV. vii. Pt. i. 13.

燕
yen

Easy, unoccupied. 用燕, for pleasure and idleness' sake. V. x. 11.

To build. IV. v. Pt. i. 3. Plans for building. V. xii. 2. (經營). 4.

營
ying

To be warm. V. iv. 32, 34.

燮
yeh

To harmonize. 燮和. V. xxi. 24.

燮理. V. xx. 5. — in a state of harmony. V. iv. 17.

THE 87th RADICAL. 爪

爭
tsang

To contest. II. ii. 14.

爰
yuan

(1) A particle at the beginning of sentences and clauses, — on this, and so. IV. vi. 3; vii. Pt. i. 4; V. xv. 5; vi. xxi. 8. (2) It follows the verb, like 于,

carrying it on to its object. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 1; V. xxi. 11. After the noun, as a verb itself, — to be seen in, to assist in. V. iv. 5. Obs. 既爰, and thereupon, IV. vii. Pt. i. 2.

Possive. (1) To be, to be in the place of; sometimes, to make to be. III. iii. 5; IV. iv. 5; V. iii. 6; xi. 5; et seq. 以爲, to consider to be. IV. ii. 1; but more frequently 以爲 — to take to be, to undertake, to employ. V. ii. 6; vi. 4, 16; xvii. 1. In. V. iv. 16. 以爲 — and so becomes. (2) To become. III. i. Pt.

爲
wei

炎
yen
炙
chik
炭
tsai
烈
let
烈
lieh

蒸
ching
cheng

焉
yen

焚
fan
無
wu

然
jan
熙
hi

II. 7-10. (3) To do, to act, to make.
II. iv. 4 (a. 6); IV. v. Pt. iii. 8; V. i. Pt.
II. 8; v. 2; vi. 13; xi. 4; et al. **有爲**,
to have conduct, administrative power.
V. iv. 11, 13. **秉爲**, to hold fast and
do, — practice. V. xiv. 4. **百爲**, all the
ways of good action in govt. V. xviii. 7.
爲幻, the practice of deceiving tricks.
V. xv. 14. **爲善**, the practice of good.
V. xvii. 4.

3d tone. To act on behalf of; in rela-
tion to. IV. vi. 7; V. vi. 2; xi. 3.

Dignities, degrees of nobility. IV. v.
Pt. II. 5; V. iii. 10.

爲
wei
爵
fuo
chio

THE 88th RADICAL. 父

A father, fathers. I. 12; IV. vii. Pt. i.
11; Pt. ii. 13, 14; V. vii. 11; ix. 16; xxv.
1. **父母**, parents, parent. II. ii. 21;
V. x. 6; xiii. 13; xv. 8. Spoken of the
emperor. V. iv. 16. Spoken of Heaven
and Earth. V. i. Pt. i. 2. **父母弟**,
paternal and maternal relatives. V. ii. 6.
伯父, senior uncle, uncles. V. xxiii.
6; xxvii. 13. So, **父** alone, xxviii. 1, 2,
3, 4. **師父** — Grand-tutor. IV. xi. 1,
3, 4; V. xxiv. 2, 3, 12. 7 ought **父** here
to be in the 2d tone.

2d tone. An honourable designation,
— minister or officer. We have **圻父**,
宏父, and **農父**, the three great
ministers at the court of a prince of the
empire. V. x. 13.

父
fuo
fu

THE 89th RADICAL. 爽

(1) To enlighten. IV. ii. 3; V. vii. 13.
爽惟, to think clearly. V. ix. 20, 21.
(2) Light. **昧爽**, between the dark
and light, in the early dawn. IV. v. Pt.
i. 5; V. ii. 4; iii. 9. (3) — to lose, to
forfeit. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 12. Errors. V.
xiii. 12.

(1) You, your. Possess. (2) An
silver, — our ly. **式爾**, purposely;
適爾, accidentally. V. ix. 8; et al.

爽
shuang

爾
er

THE 90th RADICAL. 牆

A wall, walls. III. iii. 6; V. xx. 16;
xxix. 4 (**垣牆**).

牆
ch'iang

THE 91st RADICAL. 牖

A window. **牖間** — between the
window and the door. V. xxii. 13.

牖
yau
yu

THE 92d RADICAL. 牙

君牙, the minister of Instruction
under king Muh. V. xrv. 1, 7.

牙
ya

THE 93d RADICAL. 牛

A bull, oxen. V. iii. 2; x. 6; xii. 5; xiii.
29; xxix. 3, 4.

牛
niu

Female. **牝雞**, a hen. V. ii. 5.

牝
pin

The male of animals. — a victim.
IV. iii. 4.

牡
mu

(1) A pastor or shepherd. Applied
to the governors of provinces. II. i. 7, 16;
V. xx. 3, 12. They are called **天牧**,
the shepherds of Heaven. V. xxvii. 12.
The same is the application probably of
牧牧夫 and **牧人**, in V. xix. 2,
7, 12, 13, 16; 19, 21. (2) To learn to
live by pasturage. III. i. Pt. i. 26. (3)
牧野, the wilderness of Muh, the
place, in the pres. Ho-nan, not far from
the capital of Show, where the struggle
between him and king Woo was deter-
mined. V. ii. 1; iii. 9.

牧
mu

(1) Things, articles. III. i. Pt. 26; V.
v. 3, 6, 8; et al. **土物**, productions
of the ground. V. x. 5. **方物**, pro-
ductions of diff. regions. V. v. 2. **天**
物, creatures of Heaven. V. iii. 6. **萬**
物, all things. V. i. Pt. i. 3. — relics.
V. xiii. 1. — matters. V. xxiv. 5. (2)
敦物, the name of a mountain. III. i.
Pt. i. 76.

物
wu

An animal used for sacrifice, — a victim,
victims. IV. xi. 6 (**犧牲**); V. i.
Pt. i. 6 (**犧牲**); xii. 3.

牲
shing

A complete victim, without blemish.
IV. xi. 6.

牲
shing

A single ox or victim. II. i. 8.

特
te

To lead forward. V. x. 6.

牽
chien

估 *ku*
An enclosure for oxen and horses. Used also for the cattle enclosed. V. xxix. 3.

犂 *li*
犂老 *liu*
old men, time-worn ones. V. i. Pt. II. 3.

犧 *hai*
A victim, uniform in colour. IV. xi. 6. V. i. Pt. I. 8. See **牲**.

THE 94th RADICAL. 犬

犬 *ku*
The dog, dogs. V. v. 3.

犯 *fan*
To offend against, expose one's self to be punished. II. ii. 12.

狂 *kuang*
Wildness. V. iv. 34. **發出狂** to *kuang* manifest insanity. IV. xi. 3. Foolish. V. xxi. xviii. 17.

狃 *niu*
To be practised, accustomed. V. xxi. 16.

狄 *ti*
(1) The common name for the wild tribes on the North. IV. ii. 6. (2) Barbarians employed in menial offices about the Imperial court. V. xxi. 14.

狎 *hsia*
To be near to. IV. v. Pt. I. 9. To be familiar with,—used adverbially in the phrase **狎侮** to treat with contemptuous ease or familiarity. V. i. Pt. III. 7; v. 4.

狐 *hu*
The fox. III. i. Pt. I. 50.

狹 *hsia*
To consider and treat as narrow and mean. IV. vi. 11.

猗 *i*
I. 7. 兮, a particle, following adjectives, and = our *ly*. **斷斷猗**. V. xxx. 6.

猛 *ming*
Fierce, raging,—spoken of fire. III. iv. 6.

猶 *yu*
Still, notwithstanding. IV. v. Pt. II. 3; vii. Pt. I. 12; V. xx. 14. Still more, especially. IV. vii. Pt. I. 2.

猷 *yu*
(1) To plan, deliberate. IV. vii. Pt. I. 6. **猷謀** to consult with. V. xxx. 4. Plans, counsels. IV. vii. Pt. I. 15; Pt. II. 12, 18; V. viii. 3; et al. **謀猷**. V. xxi. 6; xxviii. 1. **猷訓**, lessons. V. xxi. 3. **有猷** to have counsel, to be wise in counsel. V. iv. 11. (2) The course, the way,—as indicated by wise counsel. IV. iii. 2; V. xvii. 2; xx. 2; xxi. 14. (3) An exclamation,—Ho! V. vii. 1; viii. 1. xiv. 18; xviii. 2, 24.

猪 *yu*
To disturb. II. i. 20.

獄 *yu*
A case or cases of litigation,—either civil or criminal. V. ix. 13, 14, 16, 18, 21, 24; xxvii. 11, 12, 20, 21.

獒 *tau*
A species of large dog. V. v. 1.

獨 *tu*
Solitary, single. V. i. Pt. III. 4. — the children. V. iv. 12. Only. IV. ii. 2.

獲 *hue*
To get, to find. What is got is to be ascertained from the context. To get success. IV. v. Pt. III. 8; viii. Pt. III. 2. To obtain the help of. V. iii. 8. To find opportunity. V. xxi. 4. **獲戾** to offend. IV. iii. 6. To apprehend,—spoken of criminals. IV. xi. 2. To get,—generally. IV. vi. 11; viii. Pt. III. 10 (et. 6).

獸 *shou*
Animals, beasts. V. v. 8. **鳥獸** birds and beasts. I. 4—7; II. i. 22; et al.

百獸 all animals. II. i. 24; iv. 10.
(1) To present to offer. IV. xi. 9; V. v. 2; xii. 3. (2) — **賢** the wise, worthy. II. iv. 7; V. vii. 3; x. 13; xiii. 23.

THE 95th RADICAL. 立

立 *li*
(1) Dark-coloured, III. i. Pt. II. 28; IV. iii. 4; V. xxi. 18. — dark-coloured, deep azure silks. III. i. Pt. I. 55, 52; V. iii. 7. (2) Myriads, deep. II. i. 1.

率 *shau*
(1) To lead, lead on; to have the presidency of. II. ii. 19; V. iii. 1; xx. 3; xxi. 1; xxiv. 1. **率作** — to take the initiative. II. iv. 11. Follow by another verb, **率** often — to lead one another. II. i. 18, 21; iv. 10; et al. (2) To follow, to obey, act in accordance with. IV. ii. 2; iv. 2; v. i. i. 7; V. vii. 13; et al.

弗率, the disobedient. II. ii. 20; IV. vii. Pt. II. 1. In IV. x. 3, **率典** probably means the statutes which should be followed, the regular statutes. We have the phrases **率由**. V. viii. 4; **率俾**. V. iii. 6; xxi. 2; **率從**. V. xxviii. 1; **率循**. xxi. 24. (3) As an adverb,—in everything, universally. IV. i. 2 (et. 7); V. xxvi. 10. 7 on this, therefore. IV. vii. Pt. I. 1.

THE 96th RADICAL. 玉

玉 *yu*
A gem, gems. III. iv. 6; IV. vii. Pt. II. 14; V. 2. **大玉**, the great gem,—some particular gem. V. xxi. 19. **五玉**, the five sceptres of investiture, given

dured the people, 生魄 means the 18th day of the moon, V. iii. 4; ix. 1; and 生明 the third day, iii. 2. 生生 — to foster life, IV. vii. Pt. iii. 10, 12; and — to increase and multiply, Pt. ii. 12, 17. 蒼生 — gray shores, II. iv. 7. (2) In a name. 宜生 V. xvi. 12.

THE 104th RADICAL. 用

用
yong

Passive. The frequency of this character is a peculiarity of the Shoo. The same also may be said of the way in which it is employed, — corresponding very much to the usage of 以. (1) To use, to employ, II. i. 8; iii. 5; IV. ii. 5, 8; V. xix. 1, 4, 20, 23, 24; et *supra*. — to obey, III. ii. 5. 用罪, 用德, the criminal and the well-doer, IV. vi. 17, i. 16. 用 alone is explained as meaning the use of virtue in V. xii. 23. Useful, V. r. 8. 利用, painful for use, — convenience of life, II. ii. 7. 器用, vessels for use, V. r. 2. 續用 — work that should have been done, I. ii. (2) Like 以, it is very often used like the sign of the infinitive, — to, so as to; or may be resolved by thereby, and thereby, IV. vii. Pt. ii. 4, 9; Pt. iii. 4, 5, 6; viii. Pt. i. 4; x. 2; V. i. Pt. ii. 8; iii. 7; xxiii. 3, 5, 6; et *supra*. Connected with this is a usage, where 用 seems to merge in the verb that follows it. E. g. III. iv. 2; IV. xi. 1, 7; V. iv. 9, 22, 23. (3) — therefore, II. iv. 8; et *al.* Oha, 茲用 = 所以, II. ii. 12. Therefore, V. xix. 1. — There are not a few passages, however, where it is hardly possible to construe the character. E. g. IV. xi. 8; V. xii. 2; xiii. 13; xix. 13.

THE 102d RADICAL. 田

田
tien

(1) Cultivable fields, II. ii. 21; III. i. Pt. i. 8, 12, 23; et *supra*. 田畝, fields and acres, IV. vii. Pt. i. 11. 田功, the work of agriculture, V. xi. 4. (2) To hunt, — used for 畋, V. xv. 11, 13. (1) From, — to proceed from; to use, to follow, IV. vii. Pt. i. 5; Pt. iii. 7; V. iii. 8; vii. 13; viii. 4 (率由); ix. 5, 16, 17, 19. — by; with, V. xxii. 23, 23; xxiv. 10. It is sometimes difficult to construe 由. E. g. V. ix. 19 (see 經); 24; xxvii. 13. (2) Sprouts from a felled tree, IV. vii. Pt. i. 4.

由
yu甲
chia

(1) A coat of mail. 甲冑 — armor of defence, IV. viii. Pt. ii. 4; V. xxx. 2. (5) The first of the calendaric stem-characters. 甲子, V. ii. 1; iii. 8; xii. 2; xiii. 2; 甲寅, xii. 3; 甲戌, xix. 5. — to begin, V. xiii. 6. (8) 太甲, the grandson of Tang, V. xxi. 7. The name also of the 5th Book, Pt. IV. 祖甲, a later emperor of the dynasty of Shang, V. xvi. 8, 14.

申
shen

(1) To repeat, again, further, I. 8, 7; II. iv. 2; V. xiv. 22; xxi. 11; xxiv. 7. (2) The 9th of the calendaric branch-characters, V. xii. 2; xxi. 1.

男
nu

A part of the 2d domain of Yu, and the fourth of the domains of the Chow dynasty, III. i. 17; ii. 10; V. ix. 1; x. 10; xii. 6; xxiii. 4.

甸
tien

(1) To rule, to govern, V. xiv. 6; xix. 5. (2) The imperial domain of Yu, and the third of the domains of the Chow dynasty, III. i. Pt. ii. 12; IV. iv. 1; V. iii. 3; ix. 4; x. 10, 13; et *al.*

畀
pei

To give, V. iv. 8; xviii. 7, 10; xxiii. 5. (付畀). — to be for, to favour, V. xiv. 3, 4, 24; xxiii. 28.

畝
tsu

(1) To hunt, III. iii. 1; IV. iv. 7. (2) To cultivate, V. xxiii. 21, 28.

畎
tsu

(1) Small channels in a field, for the purpose of irrigation, II. iv. 1. (2) A valley, where a stream runs, III. i. Pt. i. 26, 25.

畏
wei

(1) To fear; to stand in awe, be apprehensive; to be feared, what should be feared, dreadfulness, awfulness, II. ii. 17; iii. 2; IV. i. 2; vii. Pt. i. 11; V. i. Pt. ii. 9; iii. 5; vii. 9; ix. 6; xiv. 4; et *al.* Both the active and passive meanings appear in 畏畏, IV. xi. 5, and 弗畏, 入畏, V. xx. 19. In V. xxvi. 13, 畏 alone — to fear to do evil. (2) To awe, II. iii. 7. — to put to death, V. xxvii. 18.

畔
pan

To violate, III. iv. 4.

留
liu

To continue, to remain, V. xxii. 4. The more correct form of the character is 畱.

畜
ch'u

To keep, to feed. Applied to animals, V. r. 8. To nourish. Applied to the people, IV. vii. Pt. ii. 9, 13.

畝
tsu

The Chinese acre, — acres, — fields, IV. vii. Pt. i. 11 (田畝); V. vii. 11.

畢
pi

(1) All, V. i. Pt. ii. 1; v. 2. Entirely, V. ix. 9; xxiii. 3. (2) To be finished, to be completed, V. vii. 10. (3) A name for the 5th gate of the imperial palace, V. xxii. 21. (4) The name of a princely, V. xii. 3; xxiii. 1; xxiv. 1.

略 (1) To be defined, marked out. III. 1. Pt. I. 22. (2) A course, ways of proceeding. V. iii. 6.

番番 the appearance of being old. V. xix. 3.

To define, as in the line out. V. xiv. 6. Figured. V. xii. 17. Thus *figured* is better here than *pointed* as in the translation.

Different. V. v. 5; xii. 27. Strange. V. v. 8. What is strange or extraordinary. V. xiv. 8.

Ought. V. x. 12. Ought to be considered as belonging to,—to be in, to rest on. IV. iii. 8.

A limit, boundaries. V. 1. Pt. iii. 8; xi. 4; xiv. 7. 疆土 territory. V. vii. 15; xi. 6. In the phrase 無疆, unlimited, boundless. IV. v. Pt. ii. 2; V. vii. 11; xii. 9; xiv. 17, 18; xvii. 22.

(1) Who? whom? I. 9, 10; II. 1, 21, 22; III. iii. 9; IV. viii. Pt. i. 11. (2) A class, divisions. II. 1, 17; V. iv. 3. (3) A mate, mater. V. x. 12.

THE 103d RADICAL. 疋

疑 To doubt, hesitate; doubtful; doubts. II. 9, 12; V. ix. 4, 20, 25; xx. 16. — as being doubtful. V. xvii. 17, 18.

THE 104th RADICAL. 疒

病 A malady, an evil.—Used of moral and social evils. V. vii. 4; xvii. 16.

(1) Sickness, affliction. IV. viii. Pt. i. 8; V. ix. 40; vi. 1, 5; vii. 10; et *supra*.

罪疾 affliction—punishment—for crime. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 11, 12. 疾狼—to be frenzied. V. x. 11. (2) To dislike, to hate. V. xxi. 1; xxx. 7 (冒疾). (3) Sedulously. V. xii. 10, 20.

Severe sickness. V. xiii. 4. Distress. xvii. 20.

病痛 To make ill or sick. V. 1. Pt. iii. 3.

病瘵 (1) To distress. V. ix. 6 (桐瘵乃身—the pain distresses you). 17: 瘵在 the distresses (=oppressors) are in affliction. V. xii. 10. (2) To make void, render useless. V. xxv. 8.

To be thin, = to be starving. IV. xi. 7.

瘵 To cure, to be cured. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 8; viii. Pt. i. 8; V. vi. 11.

瘵 3d tone. To afflict, to distress,—make it evil with. V. xiv. 7.

THE 105th RADICAL. 癸

The last of the calendaric stem-characters. II. iv. 8. 癸巳. V. iii. 1. 癸亥. V. iii. 8. 癸酉. V. xii. 13.

To ascend. V. iii. 8. To raise, to make to ascend. I. 3. = to call up. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 1. — to complete, to sustain. V. 1. Pt. iii. 4.

(1) To send forth. V. xxvi. 4; xxvi. 7 (發施) — to distribute. V. iii. 8. 發出, to manifest. IV. xi. 3. — to begin. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12. (2) The name of king Woo. V. 1. Pt. i. 6; ii. 7.

THE 106th RADICAL. 白

White. V. ii. 1. Whitish,—applied to the colour of soil. III. 1. Pt. i. 7, 24.

A hundred. I. 1, 8; V. xxvii. 1, 18; et *al*.

百夫長, captains of hundreds. V. ii. 3. It is used as a round number, denoting all of the class who are spoken of or spoken to. We have 百官, II. 3, 12;

et *al*; 百工, V. ix. 1; et *al*; 百宗工, V. x. 12; 百獸, II. 1, 24; et *al*;

百僚, V. xiv. 20; et *al*; 百志, II. ii. 6; 百穀, V. iv. 36, 37; et *al*;

百揆, II. i. 2; et *al*; 百執事, IV. vii. Pt. iii. 8; et *al*; 百祥百殃, IV. iv. 8; 百辟, V. xiii. 12; 百君子,

V. xii. 24; 百度, V. v. 5; 百爲, V. xviii. 7; 百司, V. xix. 8, 9; 百尹, V. xxii. 3. 百姓, see 姓.

All. At the commencement of clauses, summing up what has preceded. IV. i. 3; vii. 8; V. xxii. 23; xxiii. 1, 2, 7; xxvii. 13.

(1) Great. We have 皇祖, the great ancestor. III. iii. 4; 皇帝, the great ruler, the emperor, xvii. 5, 9;

皇上帝, the great supreme ruler, or God. IV. iii. 2; and 皇天, great Heaven, II. ii. 4; IV. iv. 2; v. Pt. ii. 2; viii. Pt. iii. 10; V. 1. Pt. i. 2; iii. 6

(皇天后土); viii. 7; xi. 6; xii. 9 (皇天上帝); 14; xvi. 7; xvii. 4; xxiii. 2, 5. Greatly. V. xv. 17. So, in 張皇, xxiii. 3; or we may take 皇

皆 All. At the commencement of clauses, summing up what has preceded. IV. i. 3; vii. 8; V. xxii. 23; xxiii. 1, 2, 7; xxvii. 13.

皇 (1) Great. We have 皇祖, the great ancestor. III. iii. 4; 皇帝, the great ruler, the emperor, xvii. 5, 9;

皇上帝, the great supreme ruler, or God. IV. iii. 2; and 皇天, great Heaven, II. ii. 4; IV. iv. 2; v. Pt. ii. 2; viii. Pt. iii. 10; V. 1. Pt. i. 2; iii. 6

(皇天后土); viii. 7; xi. 6; xii. 9 (皇天上帝); 14; xvi. 7; xvii. 4; xxiii. 2, 5. Greatly. V. xv. 17. So, in 張皇, xxiii. 3; or we may take 皇

皆 All. At the commencement of clauses, summing up what has preceded. IV. i. 3; vii. 8; V. xxii. 23; xxiii. 1, 2, 7; xxvii. 13.

皇 (1) Great. We have 皇祖, the great ancestor. III. iii. 4; 皇帝, the great ruler, the emperor, xvii. 5, 9;

皇上帝, the great supreme ruler, or God. IV. iii. 2; and 皇天, great Heaven, II. ii. 4; IV. iv. 2; v. Pt. ii. 2; viii. Pt. iii. 10; V. 1. Pt. i. 2; iii. 6

(皇天后土); viii. 7; xi. 6; xii. 9 (皇天上帝); 14; xvi. 7; xvii. 4; xxiii. 2, 5. Greatly. V. xv. 17. So, in 張皇, xxiii. 3; or we may take 皇

皆 All. At the commencement of clauses, summing up what has preceded. IV. i. 3; vii. 8; V. xxii. 23; xxiii. 1, 2, 7; xxvii. 13.

there as a *hiphil* verb. (2) The sovereign; royal. V. iv. 4, 9, 10, 11, 15. (3) 遑, leisure, to be at leisure. V. xv. 13: xxx. 3.

THE 107th RADICAL. 皮

皮
pí
yí

The skins of animals—with the hair on. III. i. Pt. i. 5, 69, 83.

THE 108th RADICAL. 皿

盈
yíng
yí

To be full. 貫盈, V. i. Pt. i. 9.

(1) To advantage; that which is advantageous, advantage. II. ii. 21: V. i. Pt. ii. 5: v. 8. (2) The baron Yih was forester to Shun, and assistant to Yu in his labours caused by the inundation. II. i. 22: ii. 4, 6, 21: V. iv. 1.

To be complete, v. 4.

盛
shèng
shíng

—vaseful. V. i. Pt. i. 6.

盛
shèng
shíng盜
dào
tao

Robbers. V. i. Pt. i. 6.

盟
méng
míng

A covenant. 詛盟, V. xxvii. 4.

盡
jìn
chín

To exert to the utmost. V. ix. 6. To call forth all—. V. v. 4. 自盡, to develop one's self fully. IV. vi. 11. Entirely, all. IV. vii. Pt. i. 2: V. xi. 16, 19: ix. 13: x. 14.

監
jiān
chén

To survey, to inspect. Spoken of Heaven or God. IV. v. Pt. iii. 2: ix. 3: V. xxvii. 4. To survey, inspect; to look to, —look to and study, either as a pattern or a warning. IV. v. Pt. iii. 3: vi. 3: viii. Pt. iii. 6: xi. 7: V. ix. 21: x. 12 (n. 8); xii. 17: xv. 19: xvi. 17, 19: xxvii. 12, 22. 7 to afford an example to. V. xiii. 20. Overseers. V. xii. 3: xviii. 24. 監, in V. xii. 3, is marked in the 1st tone, but wrongly. In the same there, the character is said to be in the 3d tone, and also in x. 12, and the meaning to be to take warning generally. The other applications of the character may be read either in the 1st tone or the third. See the 經韻集字析解.

盤
pán
pan

(1) To pursue pleasure. III. iii. 1: V. xxx. 2. (2) To go to excess. V. xv. 11 (coll. 于). (3) A name. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 1: V. xvi. 7. 盤庚, one of the emperors of the Shang dynasty. IV. vii.

盥
guàn
kuan
lǎu

To wash the hands. V. xiii. 27.

瞿
qú
lu

(1) Black. V. xxviii. 4. (2) The name of one of the wild tribes confederate with Chow against Shang. V. ii. 3: xix. 11.

THE 109th RADICAL. 目

目
mù
mu

The eyes. V. v. 5: xxvi. 7 (n. 3). 四目, the eyes of the four quarters,—the eyes of all. II. i. 15. Ministers are called

股肱耳目. IV. iv. 4. To be straight. V. iv. 3, 14. Upright, straightforward; the upright; straight-forwardness. II. i. 23, 24: iii. 3: iv. 3: IV. iv. 7: V. iv. 17.

眇
miǎo
miao

眇眇, insignificant. V. xxi. 25.

相
xiāng
miào

Mutually, one another, II. i. 24: IV. ii. 6: xi. 2: V. i. Pt. ii. 3: xiii. 2, 7. Sometimes the action of the verb following

相
xiāng
huāng

相 passes not on parties indicated in the text, but on the speaker, or the person or parties in his mind. III. iv. 3: IV. vii. Pt. ii. 15.

相
xiāng
huāng

3d tone. (1) To aid, assist. IV. x. 2: V. i. Pt. i. 7: iii. 3: iv. 3: et supra. (2) To lead. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 9. (3) Used for premier. IV. viii. Pt. i. 4: V. xxi. 13; for ministers generally. IV. v. Pt. i. 3: V. x. 9; for attendants. V. xxi. 2. (4) To look at; to inspect, examine. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12: V. xii. 2, 11: xiii. 2, 4, 23; et al. To examine. II. iv. 11: IV. v. Pt. i. 7: viii. Pt. ii. 4: V. ix. 35: vii. 10: x. 7 (觀

省
xiǎng
hǎng

省, see and examine yourselves).

省
xiǎng
hǎng

Inadvertent offences. II. i. 11: V. ix. 3.

瞋
chēn
hǎng

To be made confused or dizzy. 瞋

睦
mù
mu

To be harmonious. I. 2: V. xxviii. 26. To cultivate harmony with. V. xii. 6.

衆
zhòng
chóng

All. It is found often,—before nouns, after pronouns, and alone; in the same way as our all. III. iv. 2, 7; et supra. It often —multitudes, the people. II. ii. 3, 12, 17; et al.

眷
juàn
chūan

To regard, look on,—favourably. We can in the Shoo always construe it as an adverb,—fondly, graciously. II. ii. 4: IV. v. Pt. ii. 2: vi. 3: V. viii. 2: xii. 10.

睿
ruì
jul

To be perspicacious,—penetrating to what is minute; perspicaciousness. V. ix. 2.

瞽
gǔ
sou

瞽瞍, the name of Shun's father. II. ii. 21.

瞑 瞑眩, need of medicine distressing the patient, but salutary. IV. viii. Pt. I. 2.

瞿 A kind of lance. V. xxi. 21.

瞽 (1) Blind. A blind man. II. i. 12. Blind musicians. III. iv. 4. (2) **瞽**

瞽, see **瞽**

THE 110TH RADICAL. 矛

矛 A spear, spears. V. ii. 4; xxi. 2.

矜 (1) To pity, compassionate. V. i. Pt. I. 11 (coll. by 子): xiv. 30, 34; xviii. 28 (界矜): xxvii. 5 (哀矜). (2) To attend earnestly or jealously to. V. v. 2. (3) To be elated with one's self, boastful. II. ii. 14; IV. viii. Pt. I. 7; V. xxiv. 10.

THE 111TH RADICAL. 矢

矢 (1) Arrows. V. xxi. 19; xxviii. 4; xxi. 2, 2. (2) **誓**, solemn, of the nature of protestation. IV. vii. Pt. I. 1.

矣 A final particle. It does not occur often in the Shoo, and only after an adjective or a short clause, where its force is both decisive and exclamatory. V. ii. 1; xix. i, 3, 10, 18, 21. See Index III. to Mencius on the character.

知 To know, *Passin*. **夫知**. V. xii. 10, which can hardly be construed.

矧 Still more; how much more! The nature of the sentence sometimes makes the meaning—still less; how much less. I. ii. 21; IV. ii. 14; vii. Pt. I. 12; V. vii. 9, 18, 15; et seq. The **矧** is often followed by **日**. IV. vii. Pt. I. 3; V. vii. 1; ix. 21 (a. d.); xii. 12; xiv. 9.

矧 Short. IV. vii. Pt. I. 12; V. iv. 49. The shortest. I. 7.

矯 To pretend, to falsify. **矯誣**. IV. ii. 3. —dissemblers. V. xxvii. 2.

THE 112TH RADICAL. 石

石 (1) Stones. III. i. Pt. I. 26 (怪石): IV. iv. 6. The stone, —a measure of weight. III. iii. 8. Used for the sounding or musical stone. II. i. 24; iv. 4. (2) **碣石**, the rocks of K'ia, a famous landmark in the

time of Yu, somewhere on the north of the present gulf of Pih-chih-la. II. i. Pt. I. 11; Pt. II. 1. (3) **積石**, the name of a mountain in the west, where Yu began his survey of the Ho. III. i. Pt. I. 52; Pt. II. 7.

Whiststones. III. i. Pt. I. 52.

磬 Stones for arrowheads. III. i. Pt. I. 52, 69.

To be precipitous. **民暑**, the perilsomeness (= changeableness) of the people. V. xii. 13.

碣石, see **石**.

磬 Sounding stones, or stones for their manufacture. III. i. Pt. I. 60, 69.

礪 Grindstones. III. i. Pt. I. 52; IV. viii. Pt. I. 6. To grind, to sharpen. V. xxix. 2.

THE 113TH RADICAL. 示

To show, to intimate to. V. iii. 2.

Great, greatly. V. xv. 6.

The spirit-tablets or altars of the spirits of the land. III. ii. 5. **社稷**—the spirits of the land and of the grain. IV. v. Pt. I. 2. **郊社**—the sacrifices to Heaven and Earth. V. i. Pt. III. 3 (?). To sacrifice to the spirits of the land. V. xii. 5.

(1) To sacrifice. V. iii. 3; xiii. 5. A sacrifice, sacrifices. III. iii. 8; IV. viii. Pt. II. 11 (祭祀): ix. 1; V. i. Pt. I. 6; et seq. **元祀**, see **元**. (2) A year. **祀** was the term specially used in this meaning in the Shang dynasty. IV. iv. 1; v. Pt. II. 1; viii. Pt. I. 1; V. iv. 1; xviii. 24.

To pray, —to and for. V. xii. 20, 24.

A grandfather. III. iii. 4, 8; IV. v. Pt. I. 3, 7; Pt. II. 6; V. xiii. 22, 24, et al. But in other passages, we must adopt the general meaning of ancestor. E. g. IV. vii. Pt. II. 13, 14; viii. Pt. III. 10; xi. 1. This appears especially where we find **高祖**, as in IV. vii. Pt. III. 6, and sometimes **先祖**, as in V. xiv. 6. Sometimes by **祖** we must understand

砥
chih
chih
磬
ao
nu
暑
gan
an
碣
A
磬
chih
磬
ching
礪
le
li

示
shih
示
社
shih
社
shih

祀
shih
祀
shih

祈
shih
祈
shih
祖
tau

矜
ching
矜
ching

矢
shih
矢
shih
矣
i

知
shih
知
shih
矧
shih
矧
shih

短
shih
短
shih
矯
shih
矯
shih

石
shih
石
shih

—the spirit-tablets of ancestors, as in III. ii. 5: IV. iv. 1 (sing. and 祖 = grandfather.). So 文祖, the temple or spirit-tablet of Yao's ancestor; and 藝祖, II. i. 4, 8, 14. 祖考 = the spirits of ancestors, II. iv. 3: but = grandfather and father, in V. x. 5: xxv. 1, 8, 9. — grand-male, V. xxi. 2.

(2) 祖甲 and 祖乙 were co-eponyms of the Shang dynasty. V. xv. 8, 18. xvi. 7. (3) 祖己 and 祖伊 were ministers of the Shang dynasty, IV. ix. 2: x. 1, 2.

祇
chi

The spirit or spirits of the earth. Always found in connection with 神. IV. iii. 3: v. Pt. i. 2 (上下神祇); xi. 6: V. i. Pt. i. 6 (上帝神祇社稷, &c.).

祇
chi

To reverence, to respect; to attend reverently, or respectfully to. II. ix. 3: III. i. Pt. ii. 17: V. iv. 5 &c. &c.; v. Pt. i. 2: V. x. 10: xxi. 2: xxi. 8. Reverent. V. xvii. 1. 祇祇, to revere the reverend, V. ix. 4. 民祇, the awfulness of the people, V. xiv. 9. Used adverbially before other verbs, — reverently, respectfully, II. ii. 1, 2: IV. iv. 1: V. i. Pt. i. 10: III. 8: vi. 7: viii. 3; at &c.

祝
chu

A prayer. 册祝, V. vi. 5. To write a prayer, 祝册, V. xiii. 29. — with a curse, V. i. Pt. iii. 3.

祝
chou

詛祝, to curse, to utter maledictions, V. xv. 15.

神
shen

Spirits, spiritual beings. They may be the spirits of the departed, and spirits generally, real or imaginary, II. ii. 19, 21: IV. viii. Pt. ii. 11: V. iii. 8. So, 鬼神, II. ii. 18: III. iv. 2: IV. v. Pt. iii. 1: V. vi. 8. In this last instance we have also 神鬼, but with no difference of meaning. 神人, spirits and men, II. i. 24: V. viii. 3: xx. 9. 神主, lord of the spirits, is a designation of the emperor, IV. vi. 3. Specifically, 神 denotes the spirits or spirits of heaven, — in the phrase 神祇, IV. iii. 3: V. Pt. i. 2: xi. 6: V. i. Pt. i. 6. See the note on this last passage, where it appears that 上帝 is to be discriminated from 神. He is so discriminated in II. i. 6, from 羣神, the host or herd of the spirits. 神 also is to be discriminated from 天, ie V. xviii. 19. Spiritual,

神明, spiritual intelligences. Spiritual, — mysterious, or active and invisible, II. i. 4. 神宗 — the temple or shrine of Shun, II. ii. 19. 神后, ancestors now in the spirit world, IV. vii. Pt. ii. 10: but 神后 is a denomination of 上帝, in IV. iii. 4.

祠
ci

To sacrifice, IV. iv. 1.

祭
chi

To sacrifice, V. xxi. 28, 29. Sacrifice, a sacrifice, V. i. Pt. ii. 5: iii. 9. 祭祀, IV. vii. Pt. ii. 11. 烝祭, V. xiii. 29.

祥
xiang

To be felicitous, happiness, IV. iv. 3: vi. Pt. ii. 14. 休祥, V. i. Pt. ii. 5. To make felicitous; made a blessing, V. xxvii. 14, 22.

裸
luo

To pour out a libation, V. xiii. 28.

祿
lu

Revenues, emolument, IV. vi. 3 (4 A.); V. xxi. 5: xx. 18: xxi. 9. 天祿, Heaven-conferred revenues, — the possession of the empire, II. ii. 17.

禁
jin

Prohibitions, V. xx. 11.

禮
li

The name of a sacrifice, offered with purity and reverence, II. i. 2: V. xiii. 29, 30.

禍
huo

Calamity. — causes of calamity, IV. iii. 3. To send down calamities on, — to punish, IV. vii. Pt. i. 12.

福
fu

Happiness; happinesses, IV. vii. Pt. i. 14: V. xxi. 14: xxi. 13. 五福, the five happinesses, V. ix. 1, 29. — favours. 作福, to confer — be the source of — favours, V. iv. 11, 13, 18, 19. To bless, IV. iii. 3.

禮
li

Ceremonies; rules of propriety; propriety, II. i. 8: IV. iii. 6, 9: v. Pt. ii. 3: vii. Pt. ii. 11: V. vi. 18: viii. 1: xiii. 8, 15, 19: xvi. 8: xx. 9: xxi. 5. 五禮, religious, mourning, festive, military, and State ceremonies. So perhaps 五禮, in II. iii. 6. 三禮, three religious ceremonies, the worship of the spirits of Heaven, of Earth, and of men, II. 3, 23.

THE 114TH RADICAL. 肉.

禹
yu

Baron Yu, afterwards the great Yu, the remover of the deluge, and founder of the Hsia dynasty, II. i. 17: II. i. 6, 7, 9, 10, 14, 18, 23, 21; at &c.

禽
qin

Birds, V. x. 8. Includes hawks, and — hunting, III. iii. 6.

THE 115TH RADICAL 天

禾 Grain growing. V, 41, 16, 9.

Private, selfish. 私昵, favourite.
IV. v. Pl. II. 5. 私家, to be selfish,
follow one's own prejudices. V. xxvi. 21.
Selfish aims. V. xx. 15. To favour par-
tially. IV. vi. 4.

秉 *ping*
To grasp, to hold. V. III. 1. vi. 1. xiii.
23. 27. 秉德, to maintain virtue. V.
xvi. 9, 14; the same phrase, in xviii. 29.
— to consider it a virtue. 秉爲 — the
desired conduct. V. xiv. 4. 秉哲, to
maintain wisdom. V. x. 9.

秋 The autumn; in the autumn. 秋 (仲秋), III. IV. 4; V. 31, 16. — the harvest. IV. 20, 11. 1, 2.
Empty or blasted grain. IV. II. 4.

To arrange in order. 秩. 秩宗, arranger of the ancestral temple, — minister of Religion. II. i. 25. In order, in an orderly manner. II. i. 8. V. 255 f. 15. — serial distinctions. II. ii. 6.

秬 Black millet. Spirit distilled from
black millet. V. mill. 20; xxviii. 4.

The stalk of grain without the ear.
III. 1. Pl. 18.

移 To remove. V. xiv. 21. To be altered.
V. xxiv. 3.

□ To receive orders, IV, 211. Pl. 1. 1

種 To now, it is 10.

種 *M. long.* *Socid.* V. xxvii. 3. — de-
scendants. IV. vii. Pl. II. 16.

稱 (1) To lift up. V. 抬; xxviii. 1. To undertake. IV. 1. 1. To employ. V. xiii. 2. 15; xvi. 9; xx. 20. To display. V. xiii. ch'ang 14. (2) To proclaim. V. xvi. 15.

稷 (1) A kind of millet, said to be the best of all grains. IV, vii, Pt 1-11. 黍 V, x, 8; xxi, 8. (2) The tablets

稼 To sow. **稼穡** to sow and reap, sowing and reaping. V. iv, 3; xv, 2, 3, 7.

2d tone. To bow the head to the ground. Always in the formulas 拜稽首 and 拜手稽首. II. i. 17, 21, 22, 23; ii. 18; iv. 11; IV. v. Pt. ii. 3, 4; viii. Pt. ii. 13; Pt. iii. 41; V. xii. 8, 20; xiii. 1, 4, 22, 25; xix. 1, 2; xxiii. 1, 2.

稽 1st tone. (1) To examine, to study.
 3. 1: II. 1. 1: II. 1. 8 (foll. by 于), 16;
 III. 1: IV. VII. Pr. II. 6: V. IV. 4, 26: VII.
 1: XII. 11, 12: XX. 3: XXVII. 17.

稽 to examine by divination. IV. vii.
 Pt. 1. 2. (2) To manage, to cultivate.
 稽田 V. xi. 4. (3) To agree with.
 V. x. 11.

(1) Grain. V. xxvii. 8. One of the
six magazines of nature. II. ii. 7. 百
穀, all kinds of grain. II. i. 16; V. iv.
36, 37. (2) To be good. V. iv. 18.

Reverent, profound and grave V. x. 2.
2. 穆穆 to be profoundly reverent (穆穆) to be subalusive II. i. 2. V. xlii. 16; xlii. 27; xlii. 10. Reverently V. vi. 2. 12.

THE 116TH RADICAL 穴

空 司空, the minister of Works, II. 1.
 空 17: V. II. 2: IV. 7: XI. 2: XII. 10: XI. 12.
 空 空 阱. Pitfalls. V. xxix. 2.

窮 (1) To exhaust. 無窮 *inexhaustible*, *unending*. *V. viii. 1: xiv. 14.* To
exhaust, brought to distress. *In*

竄 To drive to and confine in ill death. II. i. 12.

ts'uan
ts'uan

竊 To steal. V. xlix. 4. **擄** IV. xi.

ts'ieh
ch'ieh

草竊 to commit highway robbery. IV. xi. 2.

THE 117th RADICAL. 立

立

lái
li

To stand erect; to be set up. V. vi. 4; xv. 7; xlii. 21. = firmness. II. iii. 3. = firmly. V. i. Pt. ii. 8. To establish, to set up, to appoint. IV. iv. 4; viii. Pt. i. 4; V. ii. 4; iv. 20, 24; xix. 6, 7, 12, 16, 19, 20, 23; xx. 3, 4.

並

ping

I. q. **並**. Together, unitedly. II. iv. 1; IV. iii. 3; V. xix. 13; xlix. 1. = even. IV. v. Pt. ii. 5.

章

chang

(1) To polish, to decorate. I. 2 (**平章**). To be decorated. V. iv. 34. **五章** the five decorations, emblematic figures on robes. III. iii. 6. (2) = institutes, institutes. V. xvii. 7.

童

tung

Boys, youths. IV. iv. 7. **童孫** young grandsons. V. xvii. 13.

端

tsuan

Correct, = favourable. V. xlii. 5.

競

king

To be strong. V. xix. 2.

THE 118th RADICAL. 竹

竹

ch'ui

The bamboo. **竹矢** bamboo arrows. V. xlii. 19.

筥

ts'ui

A sort of chest for containing rice or clothes. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 4.

笙

sheng

A kind of organ; the calabash-organ. II. iv. 5.

筍

sun

A kind of soft, flexible bamboo, that can be made into mats. V. xlii. 18.

答

ta

To respond to, — in conduct. V. xlii. 4, 24; xlii. 24. To respond in acknowledgment of favours. V. ii. 6. In response. V. xlii. 27, 28; xlii. 1. In reply. V. xlii. 25.

筴

shih

To drive by means of the stalks of the willow. II. ii. 13; V. iv. 20, 24; xli. xvi. 9.

籥

kuo

A kind of bamboo, good for making arrows. III. i. Pt. i. 52.

箕

chi

The name of a principality, held by the relative of the tyrant Shun, known as **箕子**, the viscount of Ke. V. iii. 9; iv. 1, 2, 3.

管

kuo

(1) A musical instrument, — a kind of flute. II. iv. 9. (2) The name of the appanage of the third son of king Wan, known as **管叔**. V. vi. 12; xvii. 1.

箴

ch'ien

To remonstrate, — a kind of moral puncturing. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12. **箴言**, in p. 5, words of remonstrance.

節

ch'ieh

(1) Tallies, tokens of authority. In the phrase **小臣諸節**. V. ix. 17. (2) To regulate. V. xli. 15.

範

fan

A plan, a pattern. **洪範**. V. iv. 3.

築

chu

(1) To pound, — as in raising mud walls, — to build. = who was a builder. IV. viii. Pt. i. 3. To raise entrenchments. V. xlix. 5. (2) To raise and set up. V. xvi. 19.

篋

chie

Baskets, — round, of bamboo, in which articles of tribute were brought to court. III. i. Pt. i. 19, 20, 23, 44, 52, 60. To basket, — to bring in baskets. V. iii. 7.

籊

ts'ui

A species of slender bamboo. III. i. Pt. i. 43, 44.

篤

du

(1) Sincere, earnest. V. xvi. 1. = the sincere. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 4. To follow sincerely. IV. xlii. 13, 27. Sincerely, earnestly. V. xlii. 7; xvi. 21. (2) To consolidate. V. iii. 5; V. xlii. 24. To be great. V. iii. 5; xlii. 17.

箴

ch'ien

Bamboo splints, fit for basket-work, made into mats. V. xlii. 15.

簍

luo

A basket, — **一簍** — one basketful. V. v. 9.

簍

luo

A species of large bamboo. III. i. Pt. i. 43, 44.

簡

chien

(1) To be hasty, impetuous. II. i. 24. (2) To be easy, indifferent to many things. II. iii. 8. A generous ease. II. ii. 12. (3) To choose, select. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 9; V. xiv. 20; xviii. 8, 10, 28. (4) To examine, to mark. IV. iii. 8; V. xli. 13; xvii. 15 (**簡孚**). 17; xviii. 4.

簡

chien

In xxvii. 13, we have also **五刑不簡**, where **不簡** = do not meet the case.

簫

ts'ui

An instrument of music. But **簫韶** is used for the music of Shun. II. iv. 9.

籥

kuo

A species of bamboo, good for making arrows. III. i. Pt. i. 52.

籥

kuo

I. q. **籥**. A kind of key for opening the case where oracular responses were kept. V. vi. 9. The meaning is doubtful.

☿ ☽ ♀, sacrificial vessels. V. iii, 8.

To cry to, to appeal to. IV. vii. Pt. I.
1; Pt. II. 8. Foll. by Heaven or God. V.
i. Pt. II. 8; xii. 10; xix. 2. The character
should be without the 竹.

THE 119TH RADICAL. *

米 Rice killed. III. 1, Pt. II. 18. **粉米**
the emblematic flour of rice represented
on the lower robe of the emperor. II.
ix. 4.

粉 To grind, or reduce to powder or flour. 粉米.—see above.

粒 Grains of rice. = to have rice (or grain generally) to eat. II. 17. 1.

粟 Rice in the husk. III. l. Pt. II. 18: IV. II. 4. In V. III. 8, we may understand perhaps grain generally.

粳 A kind of millet. 粳盛, V. 1. Pt. 1. d.

精 To be discriminating. 11, 11, 15, 5, 0.

糲 Patched grain. V. xlix. 5.

Provisions of grain, V. xxix. 5.

Mat. IV. vol. PL III. 3.

THE 120TH RADICAL 系

𐤔𐤌 To raise up, to exhibit. V. xxi. 3.

紀 (1) To arrange different threads of silk. Hence to arrange, to regulate generally; and what is arranged, or arranged.

✱ To be confused, confusion IV. vii. Pt.
1. 9

To receive,—to take in. IV. viii. Pt. II.
9: II. iv. 4, 6, 7. 納言—the minister of
Communication. II. 1. 25. To present,—
to send in, as in payment of tribute. III. 1.
Pt. 1. 52: Pt. II. 16: IV. viii. Pt. 1. 5. To
place or put. V. vi. 11. To be appointed.
II. 1. 2. 納日—the sitting sun. 1. 5.

純 (1) To be decided; determinate; determinately. V. xvi. 2, 14; xviii. 7. (2) To enlarge; great. V. x. 8; xviii. 2.

2d tone. A border,—as of a mat. V.
rxii. 15—18.

44 Mixed. V. xlii. 18.

(1) A rope. — *ruina*. III, III. 5. (2)
— *ruin*, dissolution. V. li. 5.

To involve,—to go on to affect, V. v.

Small V. w. 9: xxl. 10.

A coarse kind of hemp, or the cloth made from it. III, 4. Ps. i. 60.

初 To connect, continue. IV, vii. Pt. I. 4: 初
初 viii. Pt. iii. 11: V, ix, 5: xxi. 3. 初

上帝—to be the vicegerent of God. V. xii. 14. 紹天明, to bring in connection with the intelligence of Heaven. V. vii. 3. 會紹乃辟—connecting the all but broken line of your sovereign. V. xxviii. 8. 組璣, strings of pearls. III. 1. Pl. 1.

續 *shu*
To connect, — to prolong. IV. vii. Pt. II. 2.

縑 *shu*
Fine chequered silk. III. i. Pt. I. 33, 60.

續 *shu*
To continue. IV. ii. 2; V. xxv. 3.

THE 151st RADICAL. 缶

缺 *ch'ueh*
To be deficient, wanting. V. xxv. 6.

THE 122nd RADICAL. 罔

罔 *wang*
A negative adverb. It occurs nearly as often as 無 or 不 and its frequent use is characteristic of the Shoo. It is, as nearly as possible, synonymous with 無 in all its ranges, — no, not; do not; to be without; and there is not, there was not, &c. Especially it is found before other negatives, — 罔不 罔非 &c., and before 所 彼 and 或. We have, in IV. ir. 6, a 罔大 罔小, corresponding to the 無大 無小, which I have called attention to under 無.

罪 *tsui*
A crime, an offence. II. ii. 12, 20, 21; V. xxvii. 16, 18; *et seq.* 罪 alone, II. i. 12; 罪人. V. vi. 14; *et al.* 有罪. II. iii. 6; *et al.* and 用罪. IV. vii. Pt. I. 16; all — the criminal or criminals. 罪疾, the pain—punishment—of crime. To treat—deal with—as criminal. IV. iii. 4; vii. Pt. III. 2; V. i. Pt. I. 3; ix. 16.

To place, to set. IV. vii. Pt. I. 4.

罰 *ch'ih*
Punishment, generally. II. ii. 12; III. ii. 3; 16; 3; IV. i. 4; V. ix. 3, 8, 11, 13, 10, 21; *et seq.* Specifically, the punishment of fine. Thus it is used in V. xxvii. 18, 19, 20; and in p. 17, we have the phrase 五罰 the five fines. We meet often with 天罰 and 天之罰, the punishment appointed by Heaven. E.g. V. i. Pt. I. 10; Pt. III. 3; ii. 6. 王罰, the punishment inflicted by kings. V. xiv. 2. To punish. IV. vii. Pt. II. 12; V. xv. 18; *et al.*

(1) To be sorrowful; to suffer distress from. V. x. 11; IV. iii. 2. (2) To be involved. V. ix. 11.

羆 *pi*
(1) A large species of bear. III. i. Pt. I. 69. Used to describe and stimulate soldiers. V. ii. 9; xxiii. 5. (2) Name of an officer at the court of Shun. II. i. 22.

THE 123rd RADICAL. 羊

羊 *yang*
The sheep or goat. V. xii. 5.

羌 *kiang*
The name of a pastoral tribe in the north-west, confederate with Chow against Shang. V. ii. 2.

美 *mei*
Admirable, beautiful. To beautify, — to do good service to. IV. viii. Pt. II. 10. 服美 to wear fine robes. V. xxiii. 10.

美若 *mei*
To pursue the same course. V. xxiii. 2. But the meaning is uncertain.

(1) To feel ashamed; shame. IV. viii. Pt. II. 4; V. iii. 8; xxiii. 6. (2) To nourish. IV. vii. Pt. II. 10; V. x. 7. (3) To bring forward, to advance. This signification assumes various modifications, being here — to cultivate, and there — to employ. IV. vii. Pt. III. 11; V. ix. 12; x. 7; xix. 3.

羣 *chün*
A flock or herd; a company. It is used to denote all of a class. Alone it — companies. V. x. 14. 羣庶 — herds of creatures. V. x. 11. We have 羣

后. II. i. 9; *et seq.* 羣牧. II. i. 7; 羣神. II. i. 6; 羣臣. IV. viii. Pt. I. 1; 羣弟. V. vi. 12; 羣叔. xvii. 1; 羣辟. xx. 1; 羣公. xxiii. 7; 羣僕. xvi. 4; 羣言. xix. 1.

義 *i*
(1) To be righteous; righteous; righteousness, what is right. II. iii. 8; IV. ii. 8; V. Pt. I. 9; ix. 3; V. i. Pt. I. 8; iii. 9; ix. 14; ix. 13, 17; *et al.* 不義惟

王, deemed it not righteous to be king. V. xv. 6. Righteous men. V. ix. 13. 鵲

義和 *wei*
unlike ways. V. xxvii. 2. (2) The name of one of the families, which had the care of astronomy, &c., in Yao's time, and subsequently. I. 3, 4, 5, 5; III. iv. 1, 4.

羹 *keng*
Soup. IV. viii. Pt. III. 2.

THE 124th RADICAL. 羽

羽 *yü*
(1) Feathers. II. ii. 21; III. i. Pt. I. 44, 52. (2) The name of a mountain in the east, where Shun confined K'ang. II. i. 12. It is queried whether this was the

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

羿

same mountain mentioned in III. Pt. 1. 30, 35.

A famous archer of antiquity, the prince of K'ung, and opponent of T'ao-kang. III. iii. 2.

(1) To practise; practice. IV. v. Pt. 1. 3. (2) To repeat; repeatedly. II. ii. 18; V. vi. 9. Observe 庶習逸德之人. V. xix. 5.

Altogether, 翕受, to receive all. II. iii. 4.

A long-tailed pheasant. Probably—the feathers of this bird. III. i. Pt. 1. 35.

(1) Wings. 翼室, a wing apartment. V. xxii. 11. To act as wings to,—to assist. II. ii. 1; iv. 4; V. xxii. 10; xxv. 3. (2) 翼日, next day. V. iii. 1; vi. 11; vii. 5; xii. 4, 5. (3) To be reverent,—in the phrase 考翼. V. vii. 7, 11.

THE 125th RADICAL. 老

Old, the old. IV. vii. Pt. 1. 13; V. I. Pt. ii. 3 (犁老).

(1) A deceased father. II. i. 13; V. I. Pt. i. 5, 10; III. 5; et al. But we find it also, where the father or fathers must be living. V. ix. 16; x. 8; and perhaps in other passages. 祖考, grandfather and father; progenitors generally. II. iv. 9; V. x. 5; xxv. 3, 7. (2) Longevity. V. ix. 39; xiii. 27 (考引). (3) To examine. II. i. 3; V. vii. 7, 8, 10, 12. (4) To complete. V. xiii. 24.

90 years old. 耄期, between 90 and 100. II. ii. 9. But it is used in connection with 百年 or 100 years. V. xxvii. 1. Old venerable men. IV. xi. 3.

Old; the aged. IV. iv. 7; V. xxviii. 2 (耆壽).

(1) He or they who,—at the end of a phrase or clause, which contains a predicate to the who. III. iii. 5; iv. 4; IV. ii. 8. (2) After a numeral. 五者, these five. V. iv. 32.

Old. IV. xi. 3; V. ix. 5; x. 7; xii. 12 (耆壽). 耆造德, benefits from age and experience. V. xvi. 16.

THE 126th RADICAL. 而

(1) And, and then; and yet, sometimes—but. II. i. 12, 16, 24; iii. 2, 3; iv. 8; IV. i. 2; vii. Pt. i. 9, 12; V. i. Pt. ii. 1; iii. 5, 9; iv. 12; vi. 10; xxi. 7; xxii.

25; xxx. 7. (2) —they; their. V. ix. 11, 13, 19. The meaning here, however, is uncertain. It will be seen that 而 is comparatively infrequent in the Shoo.

THE 128th RADICAL. 耳

(1) The ears. V. x. 3. 耳目, eyes and ears, is spoken of ministers as being such to their sovereign. II. iv. 4; and perhaps V. xxvi. 7. (2) 熊耳, the name of a mountain. See 熊.

耽樂, excessive pleasure. V. xv. 7. To be addicted to pleasure, xv. 13. Bright. V. xix. 4, 22.

聒聒, to keep clamouring. IV. vii. Pt. i. 7.

To be sage; sage, sagely. IV. iv. 3, 7, 8; viii. Pt. i. 11; V. viii. 2; xxi. 2; xxx. 6, 7. The sage, a sage,—with particular reference. II. ii. 4; IV. iv. 2; IV. viii. Pt. ii. 3; Pt. iii. 9; V. xxi. 4. Sageliness. V. ix. 6, 24. 自聖, to think himself sage.

V. xvii. 7. —聖 has not yet in the Shoo assumed its technical meaning of a sage, sage, as the highest type of humanity and a particular order of men. In V. xviii. 17, it can mean nothing more than the wise.

To hear; to hear of. II. i. 12; II. iv. 4; III. iv. 3 (聞知, also in xv. 3); IV. i. 2; II. 3; vii. Pt. ii. 4 (x. 4); viii. Pt. ii. 12 (toll, by 于); V. i. Pt. ii. 3; iv. 3; ix. 3 (念聞); et al. To be heard. II. i. 1; IV. ii. 4 (聽聞); V. ix. 21; xxviii. 1. To be smelt. V. x. 11; xxvii. 4.

3d tone. Reputation, fame. V. viii. 3; xxiv. 4. Some other passages, V. ix. 4; xvi. 14, are also marked, in many editions of the Shoo, in this tone, but they are simply passive. If they should be marked, the passages indicated above as having the passive meaning should also be so.

To be acute of hearing. IV. v. Pt. ii. 7. —distinctness. V. iv. 6. —acutely. V. x. 5. 達四聰—to hear with the ears of all. II. i. 15. It is generally found in combination with 明, which phrase—to hear and see, in II. iii. 7;—to be intelligent, in V. xvii. 7; xxvi. 2;—the intelligent, in IV. ii. 2; V. i. Pt. ii. 3.

(1) The notes in music. II. i. 24. 五聲, the five notes. II. iv. 4. (2) Music,—meaning dissonant music, in the phrase 聲色. IV. ii. 5. (3) Fame. III. i. Pt. ii. 25; V. xxiv. 7.

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

耳

曉
曉
曉

(1) Office, the duties of office. III. iv. 1; V. xx. 18. (2) To provide over, to secure a certain effect. V. xxx. 6. To bear, to listen to. II. ii. 16, 20; IV. 1; V. I. Pt. I. 2; Pt. II. 2, 7; IV. 6 (= hearing); at *sepa*. Often the idea of obedience enters into the term. E. g. IV. iv. 1; V. ix. 24; xv. 15, 18. 聽罪, to acknowledge one's offences. IV. ix. 4. To be listened to. IV. ii. 4; et al. 高乃聽, think highly of what you have heard. V. ix. 22.

THE 129th RADICAL. 聿

聿
聿
聿

Then, thereon. IV. iii. 4.

To practise. 肄肄 — with earnest practice or submission. V. xlii. 3.

肅
肅
肅

To be grave; to venerate. 祇肅. IV. v. Pt. I. 2. Gravity. V. iv. 6, 34. Gravely. V. viii. 3. So, probably, in the difficult phrase 肅將. V. i. Pt. I. 3: xiii. 21.

肆
肆
肆

(1) An introductory particle or conjunction. It most commonly — therefore. E. g. II. ii. 20; IV. iii. 4; v. Pt. I. 3; V. I. Pt. I. 4; Pt. III. 4; et *sepa*. Other meanings suit better, however, in many cases, as thereafter, thereon, in II. i. 6, 8; but, in IV. vii. Pt. iii. 4, 7; et al.; now, in V. xi. 7; xli. 20; xlii. 3; et al. It occurs twice in V. xi. 2, one of the instances being hardly explicable. In xiv. 20, 子惟率肆矜爾, 肆 is always read along with 率, but a new meaning must then be coined to suit the case. We should put a comma at 率, and read 肆 with 矜; but I believe the text to be corrupt. (2) To let go. 肆赦. II. i. 11. (3) To be at ease, to take heart. V. vii. 12. (4) To be reckless. V. I. Pt. III. 2. (5) To set forth, to offer. 肆祀. V. ii. 6. (6) Greatly. V. xvi. 17, 19.

肇
肇
肇

(1) To institute. II. i. 10. To lay the foundations of. V. iii. 5; x. 2. 肇位, to come to the throne, to begin a reign. III. iv. 1. Before other verbs, it — to begin. IV. iv. 5; V. ix. 4; x. xviii. 2. — from the first. IV. ii. 4; at first. V. xlii. 5. (2) To be earnest or diligent. V. x. 8; x. xviii. 2.

THE 130th RADICAL. 肉

肖
肖
肖

To be like, to resemble. IV. viii. Pt. III. 3.

彤
彤
彤

The name of a supplementary sacrifice, offered the day after the regular sacrifice. IV. ix. 1. — This meaning is erroneously introduced in p. 674, under the character 彤.

股
股
股

The thigh, the upper part of the leg. We find it always in connection with 肱. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 9; V. x. 6. The phrase is used metaphorically of ministers. II. iv. 4, 11; V. xxv. 3.

肩
肩
肩

The shoulder. — to employ, to sustain. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 10. — to maintain, in p. 12.

肱
肱
肱

The upper arm. See 股.

肯
肯
肯

To be willing. V. vii. II: xviii. 4.

育
育
育

To nourish, to keep. V. v. 8. 遺育, to leave those who may be brought up. IV. vii. Pt. II. 12. Here it = children.

冑
冑
冑

冑子, son. II. I. 24. — Of the same sound as this character, and hardly distinguishable from it in form, is 冑, a helmet, which is found in the phrase 冑甲. In IV. viii. Pt. II. 4; V. xix. 2. It belongs to the 15th Radical 冑, and the character should have been entered on p. 655.

背
背
背

To turn the back on, to disregard or disobey. IV. v. Pt. II. 3.

胡
胡
胡

(1) What. IV. v. Pt. III. 3. (2) The name of a nephew of the duke of Chow, prince Chung of Tsao. V. xvii. 2, 8.

胤
胤
胤

(1) To inherit. — heirs. IV. ix. 5. 胤子, heir-son. I. 9. To follow after. V. xlii. 5. (2) The name of a state. III. iv. 1; V. xlii. 12.

胥
胥
胥

(1) Mutually, together. IV. vii. Pt. I. 2, 12, 14; Pt. II. 3, 5, 15; V. vii. 13; xviii. 7; xlii. 6; xxvii. 4, 20. 胥 is thus

synonymous with 相, though its construction is in most cases more difficult. We find it used in the same way as 相, when one of the parties whose action is intended is not directly expressed, — as in IV. v. Pt. II. 2; V. xi. 3; xv. 14. (2) Employed, — certain officers who are thus denominated. V. xviii. 25.

能
能
能

To be able, can. It is used everywhere before verbs like our auxiliary. In one case we find the idiomatic use of 而 between it and the verb, — V. xlii. 25.

As an active verb, — to cultivate the ability of, to help. V. xvi. 3; xxi. 8; xxviii. 4. To be able to manage, to run. V. ix. 18; xvi. 23. Ability. II. ii. 14; IV. viii. Pt. II. 7; V. iv. 13 (old 有能). — noun of ability. IV. viii. Pt. II. 3; V. iii. 8; xx. 20.

To be pressed, forced. III. ix. 4. To force with. V. i. Pt. III. 3.

脊

hai

腰

hai

胜

胜

膜

膜

腎

腎

腥

腥

腸

腸

腹

腹

脊

脊

膚

膚

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

膺

To cut up most small. 叢勝 seems to mean a collection of things small and trifling, — vexations. II. iv. 11.

(1) To be prosperous. V. vii. 4. (2) To make strong, — spoken of spirits. V. x. 6. (3) To go to excess, — full, by 于. x. 8. 11.

The kidneys. IV. vii. Pt. III. 3 (x. 8).

Rank odour. V. x. 11; xxvii. 4.

The bowels. IV. vii. Pt. III. 3.

The belly. IV. vii. Pt. III. 3.

The back-bone. V. xxi. 3.

The skin. — shallow—skin-deep—speeches. IV. vii. Pt. I. 7. But the meaning here may be different, and = puncturing, irritating, speeches. Compare Ana. XII. vi.

— to receive. V. III. 5; xxi. 14; xxi. 13.

THE 131st RADICAL. 臣

臣

ch'in

ch'in

A minister, the correlate of 君. Pinyin. We have 臣人. III. iv. 2; V. xxi. 6; and 臣下. V. i. Pt. II. 3, both denoting ministers. But 臣庶. II. ii. 11, = ministers and multitudes. Ministry, the duty of being minister. II. ii. 2. To act the part of ministers to, — to serve. V. iv. 2) (x. 8), 22; xviii. 24. — 臣 is generally to be taken of the great ministers of a government; when it is otherwise, this is indicated. 臣僕 is spoken of himself by a great minister. IV. xi. 8; but 僕臣. V. xxvi. 6 (comp. pp. 2, 4) is different. 小臣. V. ix. 17, 18,

means petty officers, but in 子小臣. V. xii. 24, the phrase is merely used in the self-deprecating style of conversation.

臣妾. V. xxi. 4, — camp-followers, male and female. 虎臣, the

master of the guards. V. xxi. 2. 表臣, ministers away from court. V. xix. 9.

To be good, admirable. V. x. 5; xxvi. 2. Good emulation, — prosperity. IV. vii. Pt. I. 13. To approve, declare to be good.

IV. ii. 3. 臧厥臧, to show approval of what is good. V. xix. 4.

To present one's self to, and deal with, in the character of the sovereign. II. ii. 12; III. iii. 3; V. xxi. 24. It is spoken of the sun, as seeing and visiting all with his light. 日之照臨. V. i. Pt. III. 3.

THE 132nd RADICAL. 自

自

zì

zì

(1) As a preposition, from, — used with reference to time, place, and person. Pinyin. — according as. II. iii. 7; V. i. Pt. II. 7; et al. (2) Self, of all persons, — myself, yourself, himself. Of one's self. V. ix. 8; et al. The meaning sometimes approaches to — then, as a matter of course. E. g. V. x. 6, 7; xx. 2. Its most frequent use in this signification is as joined to verbs in a reflex sense. We have 自賢, to count one's self possessed of talents and worth; 自滿, 自靖, 自絕, 自肅, 自假, 自臭, 自濁, 自鞠, 自苦, 自安, 自廣, 自底, 自覆, 自抑, 自畏, 自度, 自疾, 自恤, 自聖, 自亂, (— 治).

Law. V. ix. 11, 13. 克臬, to be able to observe the laws. V. xviii. 25.

A fetid odour. Used as a verb, — to make one's self abominable, to ruin. IV. vii. Pt. II. 6, 8.

臬陶. Shun's minister of Crime. II. i. 17, 20; II. 10, 11, 12; III. 1, 2, 3, 8; iv. 1, 8, 11. The dict. gives 臬 from 白, as the more correct form of the character.

THE 133rd RADICAL. 至

至

zhì

zhì

(1) To come, to arrive. V. xvi. 30. It is everywhere followed by 于, and 至 于 — to come to, to reach to. See everywhere in the 'Tribute of Yu,' et al. Generally the point of departure is indicated, but sometimes it is not, and has

to be gathered from the context. *E.g.* V. x. 8; xi. 3, 6; xv. 3; xviii. 7, 12, 23. (2) The most, perfect, mature,—that which has reached the utmost degree. II. ii. 21; V. xxi. 3. 底至, to push to the utmost extent. V. xxiii. 5.

To carry *one* fully. IV. i. 4; V. xiv. 2, 21, 24; xviii. 23. It is thus used for the most part with reference to the infliction of punishment. Before verbs it indicates the doing to the utmost what the verb intimates. IV. vii. Pt. i. 17; V. x. 6. 致

辟—to put to death. V. xvii. 1; but

致罰. V. xiv. 5, = extreme punishment. 德之致, the things produced by virtue. V. 7. 3. In I. 5. 致 is understood to mean the extreme limit of the sun's shadow.

Tower. V. i. Pt. i. 3. 鹿臺 the Stag tower, a structure of the tyrant Shou. V. iii. 9.

To arrive, to come on. V. xxi. 1.

THE 134th RADICAL. 白.

(1) With, along with. II. ii. 15; IV. v. Pt. iii. 2; V. viii. 1. And sometimes shewers better in translation than *with*. V. vi. 8, 16, 17. The *with* is sometimes nearly = *for*. II. ii. 17; IV. vi. 1. *For*, on behalf of. IV. iii. 4. (2) To give to. V. ix. 18. So, in IV. vii. Pt. ii. 12, which is peculiar. To grant or concede to. III. iv. 6; IV. iv. 5 (a. b.). (3) Than, forming a comparative with 寧. II. ii. 12. (4) 7—而. IV. v. Pt. i. 9.

3d tone. To be present at, to share in. IV. vii. Pt. i. 14.

1st tone. 伯與, an officer at the court of Shun. II. i. 21.

To arise, rise or get up,—with varied application. —to get better, to rise from bed, &c. IV. xi. 2, 8; V. iv. 3; xxi. 7, 28; xxvi. 1; xxix. 1. In xxvii. 4, the meaning of 興 is no more than *arise*. To rise, —to flourish. IV. v. Pt. iii. 2; V. xiv. 25. To make to rise or prosper. V. xii. 3. Obs. 有廢有興. V. xxi. 5. To give rise to, to originate. II. ii. 17; ix. 11; V. xi. 4.

To lift up, —to advance to office. II. iv. 7; V. xx. 20.

What is old; old. IV. ii. 2, 6; V. Pt. iii. 9; vii. Pt. i. 3, 13; V. xviii. 8; xxv. 3. 7. 舊人—men of old families, in

IV. vii. Pt. i. 7; but = the old ministers, in V. viii. 10. 舊 alone = the old course, in V. iii. 8. It is often adverbial, —of old, at first. III. iv. 6; IV. vii. Pt. ii. 1; xi. 5, 8; V. viii. 3; xv. 5, 6. —for long. V. xxi. 10.

THE 135th RADICAL. 舌

(1) To neglect, to abandon. II. ii. 3 (舍已), to give up one's own views and wishes; IV. i. 2. (2) To let loose, —spoken of cattle. V. xxi. 3.

To deal gently or kindly with. V. xviii. 5 (toll, by 子).

THE 136th RADICAL. 舛

The ancient emperor, so denominated. 虞舜. I. 15. 帝舜. II. i. 1, 2, 14, 17, 18; IV. vii. Pt. iii. 10.

To make postures. Spoken of birds and beasts —to gambol in a regular way. II. i. 24; iv. 10. —to dance. II. ii. 21; IV. iv. 7. 舞衣, dancing habits. V. xxi. 19.

THE 137th RADICAL. 舟

A boat. II. iv. 8; IV. vii. Pt. ii. 6; viii. Pt. i. 6.

THE 138th RADICAL. 良

To be good; good; the good. II. iv. 11; IV. ii. 7; viii. Pt. i. 3; Pt. iii. 2; V. i. Pt. i. 3; Pt. iii. 8; xxi. 13; xxvi. 3. Excellent, skilful. IV. Pt. ii. 12; V. xxi. 6.

元良, greatly good. IV. v. Pt. iii. 8; V. i. Pt. ii. 5. —goodness. V. xxv. 2.

To be difficult or toilsome; difficulty, hardships. IV. iv. 3; v. Pt. iii. 1; Pt. ii. 13; V. vii. 3, 7, 8, 11; xvi. 17; xxiv. 10; xxv. 5; xxviii. 5; xxx. 3. 艱難, painful toil. V. xv. 2, 3, 7; xxi. 7. 艱

食, food of toil,—that procured by agriculture. II. iv. 1. To realize the difficulty or pain of. II. ii. 3; V. xxi. 3.

THE 139th RADICAL. 色

(1) The countenance, the looks; the deportment. II. iii. 2; V. xxiv. 5; xxvi. 5. Observe 而康而色. V. iv.

11. (2) Colours. III. i. Pt. i. 35. 五色, the five colours. II. iv. 4. (3)

致
chih

臺
tai
臻
chin

與
yu

興
yu
與
yu
興
yang

舉
chu
舊
chü

舍
she

舒
shu

舜
shun

舞
wu

舟
chow

良
liang

艱
chien

色
shih

Licentious pleasure. III. III. 6; IV. II. 5
(聲色) IV. 7; V. I. Pt. I. 2.

THE 140th RADICAL 艸

芮
ju
jul
芻
ch'ou
苗
miao
miao

The name of a principality, the chief of which was minister of instruction to king Ching. V. xii. 3; xiii. 2.

Grass. 芻芻 — forage. V. xxi. 5.

(1) Growing grain. IV. II. 4. (2) 三

苗, the name of the original seat of the Miao, a tribe which occasioned much trouble in the time of Yao, Shun, and Yu. They are called 三苗. 苗 and

苗民. II. I. 19, 27; II. 20, 21; III. 2; IV. 8; III. I. Pt. I. 73; V. xxvii. 2, 3, 7, 12.

(1) To be as; as, as if; M. L. I. 9, 10; II. I. 1, 21, 22; II. 1, 19, 21; III. I. 1; IV. 6, 8; et passim. From to be as comes the signification of—to conform to, to follow, to act in accordance with. We have other verbs associated with 若 in this usage:

—欽若, I. 3; w. al. 奉若, IV. II. 2; et al. 祗若, IV. viii. Pt. I. 11;

嗣若, V. xii. 18. To cause to conform to. IV. III. 2. To be as should be, in accordance with the natural condition. IV. iv. 2; et al. To be regulated gently. V. xii. 21. When, in the case that. IV.

vii. Pt. I. 5; Pt. II. 5; et al. 若 occurs before phrases, and adverbs of time, when we cannot translate it. V. vii. 4; xii. 4; xx. 2; xxvii. 2. To approve. V. x. 7; xv. 13; et al. Observe especially 若否.

in IV. vii. Pt. III. 11. Such as,—in enumerations of famous men, but not always. V. xvi. 7, 12; xxviii. 3 (若汝). In the frequently recurring phrases

若時, 若茲, 若是, the 若 simply = as. Comp. 若之何, IV. xi. 3; and 若勤哉, V. vii. 10. Thus,

王公若曰, IV. vii. Pt. I. 6; xi. 1, 4; V. III. 5; et seqs. After adjectives—our like or ly. V. iv. 34.—Observe

旅王若公, V. xii. 8; 越若來, V. xii. 2; 厥若, V. xix. 16; xxiii. 8; 時若, xx. 4; 美若, xxi. 2.

Bitter. V. iv. 2. To embitter. 自若, IV. vii. Pt. II. 8.

菁茅 a kind of three-ribbed rush, used in straining the spirits for the imperial sacrifices. III. I. 32.

苦
k'oo
茅
miao

莢
tsao
chiao

Dried grass. 莢芻 forage. V. xxi. 5.

茨
tsao
tsao

To thatch. V. xi. 4.

茲
tsao
tsao

This, these. *Possessive*. It stands sometimes, especially at the beginning of clauses, with adverbial force, and = here; now; thus; therefore. *Ex. p.* IV. II. 7; vii. Pt. I. 3, 14; Pt. II. 14; V. vii. 2; x. 7; xvi. 2, 13; xix. 18; xxi. 4.

荆
ching
ching

(1) 荆州, one of Yu's nine provinces. (2) There are two mountains called King, mentioned in the Shoo;—the southern King, one of the boundaries of King-chow, III. I. Pt. I. 48, 54; Pt. II. 3; and the northern, in Yung-chow, Pt. I. 78; Pt. II. 1.

草
ts'ao
ts'ao

Grass,—vegetation generally, distinct from trees. II. I. 22; III. I. Pt. I. 17, 23, 42; IV. III. 5; V. iv. 32 (庶草); xxi.

4. 草竊 to steal among the grass, probably = to commit highway robbery. IV. xi. 3.

荒
huang
huang

(1) Uncultivated, overgrown with grass and weeds. 荒野 IV. viii.

I. Pt. III. 1. 8. 荒 alone, in xi. 3, = the wilds. (2) The name of the last of Yu's domains. III. I. Pt. II. 22. (3) After nouns, it = to be wildly addicted to.

We have 酒荒, III. iv. 1; 色荒, 禽荒, III. 6. Perhaps it may be construed in these cases as a noun. (4) As a verb,—to neglect, IV. vii. Pt. I. 8; to waste, to ruin. IV. xi. 4; V. xx. 16. (5) Used adverbially,—wildly; neglectfully. III. III. 8; IV. vii. Pt. II. 2; V. I. Pt. III. 2; x. 11; xv. 4, 5; xviii. 4. Greatly. II. iv. 8; V. xxvii. 1.

A bitter herb. Used metaphorically, as we use wormwood. IV. III. 2.

Nearly synonymous with 臨 = to manage, the management of. V. xx. 16.

A useless plant, resembling growing corn in the stalk and leaf. IV. II. 4.

Not; not to be; do not. II. II. 24; IV. iv. 2 (莫不); II. 8 (莫已若者); V. xxi. 5.

Probably the name of a mountain in the present Tang-chow, Shan-tung. 萊夷, III. I. Pt. I. 26.

菁茅 see 茅

萊
lai
lai

菁
ching
ching

翻 *tsai*
To turn up the ground.—take the first steps in cultivating a field. V. vii. 11; xi. 4.

荷 *hwa*
The name of a marsh. III. i. Pt. i. 57; Pt. ii. 19.

華 *hwa*
1st tone. Variegated, of different colours. V. xxi. 16. **華蟲**, the variegated bird,—the emblematic pheasant embroidered on the upper robe of the emperor. II. iv. 4. **華夏**, flowery and great, a name of the empire. V. iii. 8. **重**

華, perhaps the name of Shun. II. i. 1. 3d tone. The name of a mountain;—the western mountain of Shun's progress. III. i. Pt. i. 62; Pt. iv. ii. 3 (called **太華**). V. iii. 2.

萃 *tsui*
To collect, to be assembled. V. iii. 6 (observe the construction, which is intricate).

萬 *wan*
Ten thousand, a myriad, myriads. It is used generally in a vague manner, and—all of what is spoken of. We have **萬姓**, the myriad surnames,—the people. III. iii. 9; IV. vi. 9; V. i. Pt. i. 5; III. 8; xix. 5; **萬邦**, the myriad countries,—the empire. I. 3; II. ii. 5; V. xxi. 2; et seq.; **萬事**, all matters, II. iv. 11; **萬幾**, II. iii. 5; **萬世**, myriad ages, for ever, and **萬年**, II. ii. 8; IV. v. Pt. i. 7; Pt. ii. 2; V. xiii. 4, 27, 28; et al.; **萬民**, IV. vii. Pt. ii. 12; Pt. iii. 8; et al.; **萬夫** seems to = the myriad heads of families, another name for the people, in IV. vi. 10; **萬方**, the myriad regions, IV. ii. 2, 8; III. 1, 2, 3, 8; et seq.; **萬物**, all things, V. i. Pt. i. 3; **萬國** occurs only once,—in V. xx. 3.

落 *lo*
In the phrase **殂落** to decess. II. i. 13.

葛 *ko*
The name of a State, not far from the original seat of Tang, who punished its chief. V. ii. 6.

董 *tung*
To correct. II. ii. 7. Before another verb, = strictly. V. xi. 1.

蒙 *mong*
(1) Young, youthful. **蒙士**, IV. iv. 7. (2) Stupidity. IV. iv. 24. Cloudiness. IV. iv. 29. (3) Two mountains were thus named,—one in Ts'ui-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 30; the other in Liang-chow, p. 63.

蒼 *ts'ang*
Green-green. **蒼生**, II. iv. 7.

蓄 *ch'ud*
To accumulate. V. xx. 18.

蓋 *ch'u*
To cover. V. xvii. 3. To be covered, = to be disregarded. V. xvii. 6.

茂 *kai*
Not, to be without. V. xvi. 12.

蔡 *ts'ai*
(1) Criminals undergoing a lesser banishment. III. i. Pt. ii. 21. It is queried whether we should not read the character **采** in this meaning. (2) The name of a mountain, which is not well ascertained. III. i. Pt. i. 65. (3) The name of the appanage, in the present Hu-nan, of Tso, known as **蔡叔**, a younger brother of the duke of Chow. V. xvii. 1. His son is **蔡仲**,—in the same part.

蔽 *pi*
(1) To determine, decide firmly; to be determined. II. ii. 18; V. ix. 12 (obs.). **丕蔽**, 13, 22. (2) To conceal. IV. iii. 8.

蓄 *ts'ao*
(1) To be luxuriant. **蓄蕪**, V. iv. 32. (2) **蓄**, to be a fence or bulwark to. V. viii. 4; xvii. 8.

蕩 *tang*
(1) **蕩蕩**, vast. I. 11. = broad and long. V. iv. 14. (2) To be scattered. **蕩析**, IV. vii. Pt. iii. 5. (3) To be dissolute. V. xxiv. 9.

薄 *po*
(1) To reach to, extend over. II. iv. 8. (2) To press on, = to deal sternly with. V. x. 13.—Ought we not to read the character in the first of these meanings—**普**?
To be hidden, kept in obscurity. V. xii. 10.

藝 *ts'ing*
(1) An art, arts. V. vi. 8. **藝事**, III. iv. 3. **藝人**, in V. xix. 9, are certain officers so designated. (2) **藝**, to cultivate, to bring under cultivation. III. i. Pt. i. 30, 63; V. x. 1. Medicine. IV. viii. Pt. i. 8.

藪 *yo*
A large jungly marsh, to which beasts will resort. V. iii. 5.

藻 *ts'au*
A kind of water-plant,—duckweed, one of the emblematic figures on the lower sacrificial robe of the emperor. II. iv. 4.

蘇 *soo*
(1) To revive. IV. ii. 8. (2) Apparently the name of a principality or State. V. xix. 24.

儻 *ts'ang*
To exert one's self. V. xiii. 12.

THE 141st RADICAL 虍

虎
hu

A tiger, tigers. V. ii. 2 (comp. for soldiers): xiv. ii. (2) 虎賁, life-guard. V. xii. 11. The officer commanding them is called 虎臣, in p. 3. He and other officers under him are called 虎賁, in xix. 1, 8. (3) The name of an officer in the court of Shun. II. i. 22.

虐
nüe
yao

To oppress, tyrannize over. II. i. 24; II. 3; IV. vi. 8; et sup. Foli. by 于, in V. ii. 8; xviii. 8. Oppressive, dangerous, — used of sickness. V. vi. 3. Oppression; sometimes — oppressors. II. ix. 8; IV. iii. 2; ix. 3. V. i. Pt. i. 3; et sup. — calamities. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 4. Observe 五

虐之刑. V. xviii. 3.

To kill, — oppressors. V. xviii. 2.

虍
ch'ien

The name of a star. I. 6.

虞
hu
yü

(1) To consider, think about. V. x. 3; xxi. 5. 無虞, nothing to think about, a time of freedom from all anxiety. II. ii. 8; V. xxi. 3. (2) A forester, the designation of the warden of woods and forests under Shun. II. i. 22. — a forester, generally. IV. v. Pt. i. 7. (3) The name of the principality which had belonged to the family of Shun, who is thence called 虞舜. I. 12; and 虞 alone. V. xx. 3. Obv. 虞賓. II. iv. 2.

號
hao

1st tone. To cry out. 號泣. II. ii. 21.

號
hao

A warning order or command. V. xvi. 2.

虍
ku

Name of the appanage of a younger brother of king Wan, called 虍叔. V. xvi. 12.

虍
ku

To be wanting. V. v. 8. — The dictionary gives this character under 虍, — but incorrectly. In the 說文 we find it under 亏, the appearance of the breath slowly ascending and stopped.

虍 is the phonetic element in the character, and 亏 the ideographic; and it ought to have its place in the dict. under the latter. But 亏 is no longer used for lexical purposes, being thrown out to reduce the number of radicals (as they are formed) as much as possible. This practice has given rise to not a few anomalies in the arrangement of characters.

THE 142d RADICAL 虫

虍
hu

仲虍, one of the principal ministers of Tang. IV. ii. 2.

蚩
ch'i

蚩尤, appears in V. xviii. 2, as the first troubler of the empire, a wicked and seditious prince of the most ancient times.

蜀
shu

A tribe, whose seat was in the pres. dep. of Shing-tso, Sze-ch'uen, confederate with Chow against Shang. V. ii. 3.

蠱
gu

An insect, — but used for animals generally. 華蟲, the emblematic pheasant depicted on the emperor's robe. II. iv. 6.

蟻
i

An ant. — ant coloured. V. xxi. 22.

蟻
pi

蟻珠, pearls. III. i. Pt. i. 35. — The dict. says that this character is 'the name of a kind of pearl.' This is a mistake, I apprehend. It should rather be taken as the system, in which pearls are found.

彭
li

彭蠡, the name of a lake, the modern Po-yang. III. i. Pt. i. 38.

蠢
ch'un

Insects moving about. — Used for to be stupid. II. ii. 20; and for stupid, senseless, agitation. V. vii. 5, 8.

蠲
kuan

To be clean or pure. V. xviii. 16. To make clean, to cleanse. x. 16. To hold to be clean or guiltless. xxvii. 12.

蠻
man

The wild tribes of the south. But we find it used, where it must mean such wild tribes generally. III. i. Pt. ii. 23. As distinct from the tribes of other quarters, they are spoken of as the 八蠻.

V. v. 1. We have 蠻夷. in II. i. 16, 20; and 蠻貊, in V. iii. 6.

蠶
tsun

The silk worm. — to be made sil for silkworms. III. i. Pt. i. 16.

THE 143d RADICAL 血

血
huet

Blood. V. iii. 9.

痛
t'ung

To be pained, to feel the pain of. V. x. 11.

THE 144th RADICAL 行

行
hang

(1) To go, to travel over. V. xix. 22. To make to go. II. iv. 8. Used of the course of the sun and moon. V. ix. 24. 行遁, to go away and escape. IV. xi.

9. (2) To do; to carry—be carried—into practice; to execute; practice, execution. II. iii. 8; IV. i. 1; v. Pt. i. 7; xii. Pt. ii. 12, 13; Pt. ii. 3, 5; V. i. Pt. i. 5; Pt. iii. 8; II. 7; IV. 16; ix. 21; xvi. 8. **不行**—

obsolete laws. V. xvii. 18. (3) **五行**, the five elements. III. ii. 3; V. iv. 3, 4, 5.

行 *háng*
3d tone. Actions, conduct. II. i. 25; III. 5; III. i. Pt. ii. 17; V. iv. 15; v. 9 (**細行**); x. 3 (**酒惟行**); xiii. 2; xix. 2.

太行, the name of a mountain. III. i. Pt. ii. 1.

衍 *yǎn*
—to push out, to infer. V. iv. 23.

(1) The beam of a balance, or steel-yard. II. i. 8. **玉衡**, the gem-adorned transverse, a part, apparently, of an astronomical instrument used by Shunt. II. i. 5. To weigh, to adjust. V. xiii. 16. (2)

阿衡, the name, or a title, of Tang's minister, E Yin. IV. v. Pt. i. 1; Pt. iii. 10. He is also called **保衡**. V. xvi. 7. (3) The name of a mountain, the southern boundary of King-chow. III. i. Pt. i. 46; Pt. ii. 4. It is the southern mountain of Shun's progress. II. i. 8. (4)

衡漳, the name of a river, an affluent of the Ho. III. i. Pt. i. 2. (1) To defend. —defence. III. i. Pt. ii. 20. **臣衛**, *chên wei*, defenders of the throne. V. xiii. 1. (2) Name of the 6th of the dukes of Chow. V. iii. 5; ix. i. x. 10, 13; xiii. 4. (3) Name of a principality which occupied part of the provinces of Chih-be and Ho-nan. V. xiii. 3. (4) The name of a river. III. i. Pt. i. 46.

衛 *wei*

THE 142nd RADICAL. 衣

衣 *yī*
Clothes, robes. Specifically, the upper garments. **衣裳**. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 4.

戎衣, a martial garb. V. iii. 8. **舞衣**, dancing-habits. V. xiii. 19. The phrase **綴衣** is used in two senses:—

as the name of an officer or officers, keepers of the robes, xix. i. 8; as the name of a sort of tent used in audiences, xxii. 10, 14.

3d tone. To put on, —to carry into practice. V. ix. 5.

(1) That which is outside, the outside; beyond. III. iii. 1 (**在洛之表**). **表臣**, outside ministers, —officers be-

yond the court. V. xix. 9. **海表**.

beyond the seat. V. xix. 22. **四表**.

the four outside, the utmost limits, north, south, east, and west. I. i. (2) To serve as a mark to. IV. ii. 2. To set up a mark for, —to signalise. V. xxiv. 3.

Man's good moral nature. II. iii. 6; IV. iii. 2.

The lapel in front of a coat or jacket, buttoning, according to Chinese usage, on the right side. **左衽**. V. xxiv. 13. —It is also written **衽**.

3d tone. To reach to. I. i. Pt. iii. i. Pt. i. 52; Pt. ii. 22.

1st tone. To put on one, to dress one with. V. xxii. 2.

The lower edge of a garment. **後裔**, descendants. V. viii. 2.

To be generous, enlarged in mind and act; what is generous. V. ix. 22; xii. 10; xxi. 17. Obs. in IV. ii. 8. **垂裕**, to transmit a generous example, and

裕 alone, —to become enlarged. To make generous. V. ix. 5. Obs. **忱裕之**, xvi. 21. To rule generously. V. ix. 19; xiii. 15.

The lower robe or garment. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 4; V. xiii. 22, 23.

Undress, —to take liberties, to allow one's self. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 5.

(1) To overtop. I. i. Pt. iv. i. (2) To complete, to perfect; perfection. II. xvi. 20; II. iii. 8.

A double garment, —to be repeated. V. i. Pt. ii. 5.

襲 *xi*

THE 146th RADICAL. 西

The west. V. xxi. 17. On the west, (adv. and prep.); westwards; at the west. II. i. 8; III. i. Pt. ii. 23; i. 6; V. xiii. 3. Western. V. xiii. 16, 18, 19, 21; xxi. 1; et al. Chung and Fa, afterwards

king Wan and king Woo, were **西伯**, chiefs of the west, IV. x. 2; and **西土** appears often as a denomination of the western portion of the empire, subject to, or acknowledging the supremacy of, the House of Chow. V. i. Pt. ii. 2; Pt. ii. 2, 5; ii. 1, 2; vii. 3; et al. We have **西戎** in III. i. Pt. i. 83, which is acc. to

rule; but **西夷**, in IV. ii. 8, shows how promiscuously the term **夷** may be

used.

used. 西岳, the western mountain.

II. 1. 8, is mount Hwa (華). 西

傾 III. 1. Pt. 1. 70; Pt. 2. 1. is a moun-

tain far to the west, commonly thought

to be in the Koko-nur. 西河, III. 1. Pt.

1. 70, 72, 83, is the Ho, in its course from

north to south. As a verb, 西爾 —

wested you, settled you in the west. V.

xiv. 8.

要
yao

1st tone. (1) To restrain. V. xviii.

25—(?) 要服, the domain of re-

straint,—the 4th of Ya's tzu-mu. III. 1.

Pt. 2. 31. (2) In the phrase 要囚,

to examine the evidence in criminal cases.

V. ix. 12; xviii. 11.—This is a perplexing

phrase, especially as we have to interpret

it differently in xviii. 23.

要
yao

That which is important, the essential

principle. V. xviii. 12. 體要, in V

xiv. 3, is probably the completeness of

a govt. measure.

要
yao

要領, a tract in the prov. dist. of

Hwa-k'ing, Ho-nan, operated on by Yu.

III. 1. Pt. 1. 6.

要
yao

To subvert, overthrow. III. 3. 8; iv. 4.

(顛覆): IV. 3. 9; v. Pt. 1. 8; V.

xviii. 4.

要
yao

規 To admonish, III. iv. 2 (a, b).

見
chien

To see, to observe; to be seen. IV. v.

Pt. 1. 2; V. vi. 9; ix. 6; xi. 2; xix. 4, 6

(灼見): xxi. 4.

見
chien

(1) To appear before. II. 3. 21; IV.

iv. 1. (2) To appear, to present one's-

self, be seen. III. 3. 6; V. xvi. 14.—It

is hardly possible to make anything of

見士于周 V. ix. 1.

規
k'uei

To see, V. 1. Pt. 2. 7; iv. 4 (= seeing).

To look at, to consider. III. 3. 5; IV. v.

Pt. 2. 7; viii. Pt. 1. 8; xviii. 7; xxviii. 4.

To have a regard to. IV. v. Pt. 2. 8; viii.

Pt. 2. 8. E.g. 示, to display. V. xiii.

視
shih

(1) To love; to show affection to. I.

2; IV. v. Pt. 3. 1 (天無親). V.

xviii. 4 (i. d.). (2) To love mutually. II.

親
chia

1. 19. To love relations. IV. iv. 4. (2)

親
chia

Relatives. V. 1. Pt. 2. 6. (3) To approach,

place one's-self near to. 以爲親 V.

xxx. 4.

(1) To give audience to. II. 1. 7, 8.—

In the index to Mencius, I have said that

this char. means—'to wait upon a su-

perior,' 'to appear at court.' Such is its

usage in his Works, and so the dict. defines

it, making special reference to the first

instance of its occurrence in the Shoo,

where it is not the appearance of the in-

ferior, but the action of the superior,

which we are led to think of. The com-

mon idea is that of—a case of audience.

It is only used in one other instance in

the Shoo,—V. xix. 22, where I have ren-

dered it to display, bringing that mean-

ing out of 見, by which interpreters

explain it.

To apprehend, to perceive. 無覺,

unperceived. IV. viii. Pt. 3. 1.

To see, to contemplate. I. 12; II. iv. 4;

IV. vii. Pt. 1. 8; V. 1. Pt. 1. 6; x. 11 (觀

省); xii. 4; xiii. 28; xviii. 12 (all by

省). — to prove, to evidence. IV. vi

16. This idea may be traced also in I.

12; et al. — seeing, sights. V. xv. 12.

THE 148th RADICAL. 角

A horn, horns. V. 1. Pt. 2. 9.

THE 149th RADICAL. 言

To say, to speak; to speak about. II.

1. 24; II. 10; III. 3; IV. iv. 1; viii. Pt. 1.

1, 2; Pt. 2. 12; V. xix. 28; xv. 5; et al.

諛言, to flatter. IV. viii. Pt. 3. 2.

To talk, used contemptuously. I. 10. We

have often 言曰, to speak, saying,

and the formula 有言曰, E. 5.

IV. v. Pt. 1. 5; vii. Pt. 1. 13; V. 1. Pt. 3.

4; iv. 2, 3; x. 12. Words. II. 3. 16,

17, 21. — reports. II. 1. 8; iv. 7. —

compositions. II. iv. 3. 納言, the

designation of Shun's minister of com-

munication. II. 1. 25. 五言 seems

to — 五聲, the five notes of music, in

II. iv. 4. 庶言 — notifications, in V.

xix. 13. 言 alone, in V. iv. 8, — speech;

and in xix. 17, — 一言 — a speech,

or a single remark. Of phrases with

言, we have 昌言, II. iv. 1; et al.;

食言, to eat one's words, be false to

them, IV. 1. 4; 聖言, IV. iv. 7; 辯

言, v. Pt. 3. 9; 失言, vii. Pt. 1. 1;

逸言, vii. Pt. 1. 7, and 箴言 and

浮言, both in p. 10; 數言, V.

iv. 15, 16; 流言, to set words flowing.

to raise a rumour, V. 7: xviii. 1; 德言, ix. 5; 誨言, xiii. 4; 側言, xvii. 7; 微言, xix. 17; 誦言, xxx. 5.

To punish, II. iii. 6.

(1) To instruct, to admonish, to lesson. It is generally foll. by 子. E. g. IV. iv. 1, 7: viii. Pt. iii. 2: V. v. 1. But not always,—asin V. ix. 5: xv. 14 (訓告). 15. To be instructed in. V. iv. 16: xix. 20. Obs. 諸子訓人, V. ix. 17: 非民攸訓, xv. 13: 審訓, xxi. 4. A lesson, instructions. III. iii. 4, 6: iv. 2: IV. v. Pt. I. 2 (a. 4); Pt. II. 3: vii. Pt. I. 6: V. iv. 15 (a. 6): viii. 4; cf. supra. 大訓, the great lesson, was some relic of antiquity. V. xiii. 19. (2)

To follow, V. xxiv. 14. So, in 嗣訓, xxi. 24. This meaning may be derived from the passive use of the character above. (3) To approve. V. xxi. 5. (1) All, entirely. V. xiii. 2. To reach to entirely. xxviii. II (a. 4); III: Pt. II. 23 (foll. by 子). (2) To extinguish. IV. x. 2.

(1) To record. V. xiii. 7. (2) To make remember. II. iv. 6.

To transform, 南訛, transformations of the summer. I. 6.

To be wrangling or quarrelsome. I. 6. To wrangle about. IV. vii. Pt. I. 7.

To consult, to inquire of. V. iv. 1 (foll. by 子).

To set up; to establish. IV. vii. Pt. II. 2 (設中); viii. Pt. II. 22: V. xxi. 14.

To grant, to concede to. V. vi. 6.

To rail at, to revile. V. xv. 17, 18.

To announce to, to tell,—to advise. IV. xi. 7. 無詔, p. 3,—with none to appeal to.

To curse. 詛祝, V. xv. 13. 詛盟, oaths and covenants. V. xvi. 4.

To make music,—as an accompaniment to the voice. II. iv. 9.

To consult with; to consult on. II. i. 3, 15 (foll. by 子); II. 16, 18 (弗詢之謀); V. xxx. 4 (猷詢).

試

shih

詩

shih

詰

shih

詰

kw

ch'ieh

話

hua

詳

ti'yang

誅

chao

誅

chu

誓

shih

誨

shih

誨

yan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

誨

tan

To try; to test; to make the experiment. I. i. 1; II. i. 2: IV. vii. Pt. II. 6, 17.

Poetry. II. i. 24. A piece of poetry, a poem. V. vi. 13.

(1) To punish. V. xx. 11. (2) To keep in good condition or order. xix. 29. (3) To restrain. xxvii. 1.

To address,—with a kindly feeling. IV. vii. Pt. II. 1. 一話, one word,—every word. V. xix. 17.

To pay attention to, watch over. V. xvii. 7.

To cut off, to destroy. V. i. Pt. I. 9. Used as a noun in III. iv. 4.—先王之誅, the death appointed by the former kings.

To make a speech or solemn declaration to, to address. II. ii. 20: V. i. Pt. I. 2; Pt. II. 1; Pt. III. 4. A speech. V. xxx. 1. 誓言, IV. i. 4. —solemnly. III. ii. 2: xxi. 4.

To lead on. V. vii. 10. In a bad sense, —to decoy. V. xxx. 4.

(1) To make great, to increase. V. xviii. 4. The term is often used adverbially, —greatly. E. g. II. ii. 21: IV. iii. 1: vii. Pt. II. 1, 7: V. i. Pt. III. 4, 5: III. 5: vii. 4, 13, 15. Obs. 誨惟, V. x. 11, which some would make to be merely an initial phrase. (2) To be disorderly or dissolute. V. xv. 2.

To blame. V. vi. 15.

To be sincere. 克誠—the sincere. IV. v. Pt. III. 1.

To make false pretensions to. 矯誣, IV. ii. 3.

To err. V. xix. 18, 21.

To announce to, to make an announcement. IV. v. Pt. III. 1 (foll. by 子): vii. Pt. I. 2: V. vii. 1: ix. 1: x. 2 (誨訛); 4 (誨教); 12, 14: xii. 8 (誨告); xiii. 30; xvi. 20, 22: xvii. 13 (誨告); 20, 30: xxi. 4. An announcement. IV. ii. 2: iii. 2: and in the titles of several Books.

To teach. 教誨, V. xv. 14. Instructions. IV. viii. Pt. I. 5. 誨言, instructive words. V. xiii. 4.

說 To speak. 讒說, slanderous talkers. II. i. 25; iv. 6. — words. V. xi. 16. 德之說, words or discourse about virtue. V. ix. 21.

說 The prime minister of Woo-tung, of the Shang dynasty. Everywhere in IV. xlii.

誰 Who? II. iv. 7.

請 To request, beg leave. IV. iii. 4.

論 (1) To discourse of. V. xx. 5. (2) Orderly relation, the order of antecedence and sequence. V. xxvii. 18.

諛 To flatter, be a flatterer. V. xxvi. 6.

諛言, artful sayings. V. xxx. 5.

諛 To judge, consider. 顧諛, IV. v. Pt. i. 2.

To be harmonious. I. 12; II. i. 24; iii. 1; iv. 10 (perhaps — to be made harmonious). To make harmonious, to manage harmoniously, or suitably to the requirements of the case. II. i. 21, 23; ii. 18.

To remonstrate. IV. iv. 3; IV. vii. Pt. I. (foll. by 子 — with). Remonstrance, reproof. IV. iv. 3; vii. Pt. i. 11. 諫

輔 — the reprover and helper. V. i. Pt. ii. 3.

(1) Sincerity. II. ii. 21. (2) To make harmonious (foll. by 子). V. xii. 13.

To trust, to rely on. IV. vi. 2; V. xvi. 4.

(1) A preposition. — by, in, of, from. IV. v. Pt. iii. 7; vii. Pt. i. 4; V. vi. 17; xvii. 1. (2) All, various. — little more than a sign of the plural. V. ix. 17; x. 15; xxii. 10. (3) In the phrase 諸侯, the various feudal princes of the empire. IV. i. Pt. ii. 19; V. xx. 14; xxii. 29; xxiii. 1.

Village slang. To become addicted to such. V. xv. 3.

To consult; to consult with. II. i. 18 (詢謀): V. iv. 23 (foll. by 及).

謀面, to judge by the face. V. xix. 3. To plan, to consult for. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 7; Pt. iii. 10; V. xviii. 17. — deliberation. V. ix. 6, 34. 謀人, counsellors. V. xxx. 6. Plans. II. ii. 6, 16; IV. vii. Pt. i. 8; Pt. iii. 7; V. ix. 22 (非謀, bad plans).

謀谷, THE 150TH RADICAL. 谷

A valley. 陽谷, the Bright valley, somewhere in the remotest east. I. 4. 昧谷, the Dark valley, somewhere in the remotest north. I. 6.

xii. 12; xix. 15; xx. 10; xxi. 6; xxviii. 1 (猷謀).

To say. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 5; V. i. Pt. ii. 4. To be called. IV. ii. 9; iv. 7; vii. Pt. ii. 11. The idiomatic use of 之謂, — to be called, occurs only once — in V. ix. 20, and it may there be easily resolved, so as to give 之 its proper signification of *of*.

Humility. II. ii. 21.

謙 Concede. II. iii. 7; IV. iv. 3; V. xxv. 8; and in the titles of some books. 謨

訓, well-counselled instructions. IV. iv. 2.

謬 Errors. 糾謬. V. xxvi. 3.

To give careful attention to. III. ix. 3; IV. vii. Pt. i. 3.

To make a noise. V. xxviii. i; xxx. 1.

To know, understand. V. xiii. 12.

To remember, to keep a remembrance of. II. iv. 8.

To deliberate on. V. xv. 8.

To deceive, impose on. 謠張. V. xv. 14, 16.

Praise. II. ii. 6; V. ix. 17.

To change (act. and neut.); to be changed. I. 2; IV. v. Pt. i. 8; vii. Pt. i. 7; V. xv. 15; xxi. 14; xxix. 3.

To be an enemy. V. i. Pt. iii. 4; IV. xi. 2 (敵讐). Hostile. V. xii. 24. — hateful. IV. xi. 7.

To calumniate. 讒說, slanderous talkers. II. i. 25; iv. 6. 讒言, to defame. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 2.

To yield; to yield to, or in behalf of. I. 1 (a. 6); II. i. 3, 17, 21, 22, 23 (foll. by 于); iv. 2 (= to be humble). 9; V. xvi. 20; xx. 20.

THE 150TH RADICAL. 谷

A valley. 陽谷, the Bright valley, somewhere in the remotest east. I. 4. 昧谷, the Dark valley, somewhere in the remotest north. I. 6.

THE 151st RADICAL 豆

豆 A vessel for containing flesh. 豆

豆 sacrificial vessels. V. iii. 3.

How? III. iii. 3; IV. vii. Pt. II. 2.

- (1) To be abundant, excessive. IV. ix. 5. Superior,—in quality. V. xiv. 1.
 (2) The name of king Wan's capital. V. iii. 2; xii. 17.

THE 152nd RADICAL 豕

豕 A pig. V. xii. 5.

- (1) To resemble, have the appearance of. I. 10; V. xiii. 1. To delineate, represent. I. 3 (曆象); II. i. 41; iv. 8. A likeness delineated. IV. viii. Pt. I. 3. The emblematic figures on the emperor's robes. II. iv. 4. 天象, heavenly figures. III. iv. 4. (2) Shun's half brother. II. i. 12.

猪, a lake, a receptacle of waters.
 (1) To mingle,—to form into a lake. III. i. Pt. I. 50, 55, 56. (2) 孟猪, Pt. I. 57, and 猪野, p. 77, are the names of lakes.

- (1) To allow one's self in pleasure or idle dissipation. IV. v. Pt. II. 5; V. xxi. 2. Pleasure, dissipation. III. iii. 1; IV. viii. Pt. II. 2; V. ix. 6. Indolence. V. iv. 34.
 (2) To be comfortable,—used in reference to a state of sickness. V. vi. 1. (3) 豫州, one of Yu's provinces. III. i. Pt. I. 54.

THE 153rd RADICAL 豸

豸 The rude tribes of the north.
 豸貌 V. iii. 6.

The appearance, demeanour. V. iv. 6; xxvii. 17.

Probably the jackal. III. i. Pt. I. 69.

A kind of leopard or panther. Soldiers are exhorted to be much. V. ii. 3.

THE 154th RADICAL 貝

- (1) Creatures of the sea, with beautiful shells. Used for those shells. — tortoise-shell. V. xii. 16 (文具). 19.

—cowries. IV. vii. Pt. II. 14. (2)

Variagated silks. III. i. Pt. I. 44. But the meaning is uncertain. I should almost be inclined to interpret the character of cowries.

(1) To be—to become—correct and firm. IV. v. Pt. III. 8; V. v. 5; xxi. 1. To be of the correct amount. III. i. Pt. I. 18. Solidity. V. iv. 22. (2) To sustain duties or responsibility. V. xii. 4.

To bear on the back. 負罪, to bear—assume to one's self—the burden of guilt. II. ii. 21.

Treasures, wealth. V. iii. 2. In 財賦, III. i. Pt. II. 15, 財 seems to mean the material wealth or resources.

(1) To present as tribute,—the contribution of an inferior to a superior. V. v. 1. Articles of tribute. III. i. Pt. I. i. 19, et passim. (2) To advance, to go forward. V. xii. 9 (coll. by 于).

Poverty. V. iv. 40.

Goods, property; wealth. IV. ii. 5 (貨利); iv. 7; vii. Pt. III. 10, 12 (貨寶); V. iv. 7; ix. 15. — bribes. V. xvi. 8; xxvii. 12; 16, 21 (獄貨).

To be strung together. 貫盈, to be full. V. i. Pt. I. 9.

(1) To reprove. V. xxi. 2. (2) To give in charge; to lay a charge on. IV. x. 5; V. xvi. 16. A charge. V. vi. 5.

(1) To be double-minded. III. iii. 1. 貳適. V. xiv. 15. (2) To assist,—act as seconds to. V. xi. 6.

To value, count valuable. V. v. 8; xxiv. 6.

To transmit. — to hand down. III. iii. 5; V. xii. 19. — to send to. V. vi. 15.

虎賁, life-guard. V. xxi. 11. The officer or officers commanding are also thus denominated. xix. 1, 8.

Great. 茲賁—this great inheritance. IV. vii. Pt. II. 7.

To be ornamented. — elegant institutions. V. vii. 2. — brilliantly. IV. iii. 5.

To have property. V. xxiv. 1. 資澤 — resources of bounty. V. xxviii. 2.

To traffic. 服賈, in phrase the business of traffic.—In Index III. to Mencius, this character is defined—a stationary trafficker or merchant. Such is the account given of it in the dict. in distinction from 商, but this instance

in the Shoo' rather points to the idea of travelling about and trafficking.

賊 To injure,—probably to death. 寇
賊, II. 1. 20; V. xvii. 2. 賊虐, V.

1. Pt. II. 15. 賊刑, to punish capital-
tally. II. 6. 11.

賓
pin (1) To receive guests. II. I. 2 (n. 8); V. xiv. 22. = the entertainment of guests. V. iv. 1. To receive as a guest, —respectfully. I. 6. A guest, guests. II. iv. 9; V. xiii. 1; xiii. 29. **賓階**, the guests' steps, —the steps on the western side of a hall or platform. V. xiii. 29, 22, 23. The term is used for the princes all appearing at court. V. xiii. 1. This idea is likewise in II. I. 2. (2) To come and acknowledge subjection. V. v. 2.

賚 To confer to; to bestow gifts,—sometimes nearly — to reward. IV. i. 4: viii. Pt. i. 2: V. iii. 3: xvii. 23: xxviii. 4: xlix. 4.

賞 To reward; rewards. II. II. 10; III. II. 3; IV. II. 5; V. I. Pt. III. 4; xxiII. 3.

磨 To continue. 磨歌, II, iv, 11.

(1) To be possessed of superior virtue and talents. Used generally for man of worth, II. ii. 3, 6; IV. ii. 8, 7; V. iii. 8; of ample. In V. I. P. iii. 3, we have the phrase 賢人. Obs. 惟賢, in V. xxiv. 8. (2) To be superior to—surpass—others, II. ii. 14. So, 自賢, p. 20.

(3) In a name,—巫賢, a minister of the Shang dynasty. V. xvi. 7.

To condemn, consider vile, V. v. 8.

賦 *for* Revenue, contribution of revenue. III.
i. Pt. i. 8; *et passim*. Obs. 財賦. Pt.
ii. 18.

To depend on. II. ii. 8; IV. v. Pt. II. 3;
V. xlv. 13; xxvi. 3; xxvii. 13.

Articles of introduction,—gifts to prepare the way for an audience. II. 1. 2.

贊 To assist. II. ii. 21. 贊贊, to be
ambitiously assisting. II. iii. 8.

贖 To redeem. 贖刑 H. L. H.

THE 185TH RADICAL, 赤

赤 (1) To be red; red. III.1. Pt.1. 53; V.
 cxii. 19. (2) 赤子, an infant. V.
 ix. 2.

赦 *shay shō* To forgive. II, 1. 11; IV, 1. 4; 10. 16.
 3. 無赦, without mercy. III, iv. 3;
 V, ix. 16. To remit a certain amount of
 penalty or punishment. V, xxvii. 17, 18.

THE 186TH RADICAL 走

走 To run. III. iv. 4. 奔走, to hurry
 奔走, to hurry about, —generally on service. V. iii. 3; x.
 6; xiv. 22; xvi. 9; xviii. 24.

起 To rise. V. vi. 19. **起居**, rising up
and sitting down. V. xxvi. 2. To rise
flourishingly. II. iv. 1. As an active
verb, —to raise up; to produce; to give
occasion to. IV. vii. Pt. 1. 7; Pt. II. 8; viii.
Pt. II. 1.

越 (1) To pass over. This — to trans-
gress. IV. vii. Pt. II. 16 (顯越): V.
Pt. I. 7 (a. b. 越殿志) — to

frustrate. IV. 9. Pt. 1. 5. — to leave
one's place. V. xix. 4. (2) The idea of
passing over takes various forms, in which
the character is used as a conjunction,
such as—*moreover, further*. V. x. 3, 10;
xviii. 25; xxi. 19; and with these should
be classed the instances of 亦 *also*. V.
xix. 4, 6, 15;—*reaching up to, — and*. V. 1.
Pt. 1. 2; vii. 1. 6, 7, 8, 13; ix. 17, 18; *at
supremacy, — thereas, as that*. IV. vii. Pt. 1.
11; *et al.*—*after, in phrases of time*. V.
lii. 1, 3; xli. 1, 3, 4, 6;—*in the case of*. V.
x. 5, 11; xxviii. 3; xxviii. 1; *et al.*—
*after active verbs, carrying them on to
their object*. IV. vii. Pt. lii. 6. (3) To throw
down, to assault violently. V. ix. 15.—
There are not a few instances, in which
we hardly know how to translate this
character, which is of very frequent occur-
rence. E. g. IV. ix. 1; xli. 2; V. vii.
11 (藏印); xli. 2 (越若來). 5.

趨馬, equestris, V. xia. 8.

趙 To go quickly. 趙出, hastily
withdraw. V. xxiii. 7.

THE 187TH RADICAL. 星.

足 (1) The foot. IV, viii. Pt. 1, 2. (2) To be sufficient. IV, ii. 4; V, 1. Pt. ii. 3, 5. To be sufficient for one's requirements. V, v. 2.

距 (1) To reach to. II. (v. 1. (1) To oppose, withstand. III. 1. Pt. II. 1. III. 2.

跣 To walk barefoot, [V, viii. Pt. 1. 8.]

路 A path, a way III. iv. 5; V. iv. 14.

踐
tzu
chien
踰
yu
蹈
t'ao
踰
t'ao
踰
ch'ang

To tread in, to pursue. V. viii. 3.

To pass—jump—over. V. xlix. 4.

To tread on. V. xxv. 2.

踰踰, to fall moving. II. iv. 9.

THE 150TH RADICAL. 身

身
shen

(1) The body. V. xxiii. 8. But the material body is seldom what is expressed by the character. It rather—*one's person, one's self*. II. iii. 1; IV. iv. 7, 8; v. Pt. II. 4; vii. Pt. I. 12, 17; V. iv. 26; vi. 5; *et al.* 修身, self-cultivation, occurs more than once. We also have 檢身, to govern one's person. V. iv. 5. Obs. 耐身. V. x. 11; and 在身. V. xxvii. 11.

This is synonymous with the last, and used commonly for *one's person*. E.g. II. ii. 14; IV. vi. 3; xiii. Pt. II. 4; Pt. III. 4; V. ii. 10. 尹躬, I, Yin. IV. v. Pt. I. 2, 3. 朕躬—*me, my case*. V. xiviii. 2.

THE 150TH RADICAL. 車

車
che
輅
lu
載
tsai

A carriage, a cart. II. i. 9; iv. 7; V. x. 6; xvii. 1.

An imperial carriage. V. xxii. 20.

(1) To do; to complete. II. iii. 3; iv. 2 (nearly unintelligible). To do service to. II. ii. 21. To perform service on. III. i. Pt. I. 3. Undertakings. II. i. 17. (2) To convey, transport; to contain. V. xx. 6 (載爾僦). That which is conveyed or contained;—*a cargo*. IV. vii. Pt. II. 6;—*a record*. V. xiii. 8.

2d tone. A year, years. I. ii. 12; II. i. 2, 3, 13, 27, 28; II. 9; iv. 1; III. i. Pt. I. 18.

To assist. III. iv. 2; IV. i. 4; V. i. Pt. II. 5; *et al.* 四輔. V. xiii. 20, means to help the empire,—the four quarters, on every side.

(1) Light.—that which is lighter. V. xxvii. 19. (3) To slight. IV. v. Pt. II. 3. To deal lightly with. II. ii. 12.

輯
tsai
ch'i
輯
hu

(1) To collect. II. i. 7. (2) To harmonize. IV. iii. 6 (輯寧).

To report,—to a higher authority. V. xxvii. 20.

THE 160TH RADICAL. 辛

辛
sin
hain
辜
too
辜
ku

(1) Acrid. V. iv. 5. (2) The 8th of the calendaric stem-characters. Used alone in II. iv. 8.

A transgression, guilt; guilty. V. x. 3 (酒惟辜). 11. The character generally occurs with negative adverbs, —不, 非, 無, the phrase meaning *guiltless and guiltlessness*. II. ii. 12; IV. ii. 4; iii. 3; xiii. Pt. III. 10; xi. 12; V. ix. 8; *et al.* To proceed to guilt. V. iv. 2. To hold to be guilty. V. xxvi. 8.

(1) A sovereign, a prince. It is generally used in application to the emperor, as in IV. v. Pt. I. 2; vi. 1; V. iv. 18, &c.; but it is used of all the princes of the empire in 百辟. V. xii. 12, and 羣辟. xx. 1. To play the sovereign, to rule over; sovereignty. IV. v. Pt. I. 3 (辟不辟); Pt. II. 2; V. xiii. 18; xv. 18. (2) Rules, laws,—used in the phrase 定辟, *settling of the rules or boundaries*. V. x. 13. To this use the character in V. vi. 13 may also be reduced, making it —'to take the law in.'

(1) To punish; punishments. V. xi. 3. 致辟, to carry punishment to the extreme,—to put to death. xvii. 1. 官辟, castration, and 大辟, death; xxvii. 18. Obs. 在辟 in xii. 8, and 辟以止辟乃辟. p. 9. (2) 便辟 mean persons who are guided in the advice they give by the likes and dislikes of those they advise. V. xxvi. 4.

(1) Words. —instructions, orders. II. ii. 20; V. vii. 10 (沈辭, hardly intelligible); x. 16 (教辭); xxiv. 8. —purposes. V. xxx. 5. (2) Pleas, statements and arguments in a case at law. V. xxvii. 15 (obs. 五辭). 18, 20, 21. Akin to this is its signification when foll. by 于, of complaints, xxvii. 7, 12; and that of excuses, apologies. V. xiii. 10; xiv. 3, 12; xxvii. 3. (3) Fame. V. xxi. 14; xxvii. 22; and perhaps IV. v. Pt. I. 7. (4) 辭, to decline. II. ii. 18.

辟
pi
辟
pi

辭
tsai
tsai

載
tsai
輔
fu

輕
ching

辯
pien
pien

(1) To dispute. 辯言, IV. v. Pt. III. 9. (2) To rule, to manage right. V. x. 17.

THE 161st RADICAL. 辰

辰
shin
ch'en

(1) The heavenly bodies. The three 辰 are the sun, moon, and stars; and though we have not the phrase 二辰 in the Shoo, it seems the simplest way to take 辰 thus in the important passage, III. iv. 4, of the sun and moon. (2) The zodiacal spaces, within which occur the conjunctions of the sun and moon;—in the phrase 星辰, I. 3: V. iv. 8. In II. iv. 2, the phrase is perhaps simply—the stars. (3) 五辰—the seasons, as associated with the five elements, II. iii. 4. (4) The fifth of the calendar branch-characters. V. iii. 1: xiii. 29.

農
nung
nung

(1) Husbandry. IV. vii. Pt. I. 9, 11: V. xiii. 13. 農父, the minister of agriculture. V. x. 13. (2) —largely; earnestly. V. iv. 4: xvii. 8.

THE 162nd RADICAL. 迂

迂
yu
yu

To make crooked, to pervert. IV. vii. Pt. II. 8.

近
chin
chin

To approach to. V. iv. 18. —to cherish. III. iii. 1.

迂
yu
yu

To meet. —to receive. V. xii. 6. To go to meet: —to anticipate. IV. vii. Pt. II. 9: —to rush on. V. ii. 9: —to hasten to accomplish. V. xiii. 14.

通
tung
tung

To proceed in a winding way. III. i. Pt. II. 9.

迪
ti
ti

(1) The right path. II. ii. 5. To pursue the right path. II. iv. 8. To pursue the path of, tread in the steps of. II. iii. 1: IV. viii. Pt. I. 9: x. 3: V. i. Pt. III. 4: x. 10: et al. It is used adverbially, with this meaning, before 知. V. vii. 13: xvi. 19: before 哲, xv. 16: before 畏, x. 2. Observe 不迪 —unprincipled men, —men who do not pursue the right path. IV. vii. Pt. II. 18. 汝罔能迪, p. 12; and 出迪, IV. xi. 5. (2) To direct, to lead forward; to develop. IV. v. Pt. I. 3. (啟迪): vi. 3 (id.): V. vii. 1: ix. 20, 21: x. 4; et cetera. —to intimate to. IV. vii. Pt. II. 14. Obs. 殷之迪諸臣, the officers of Yin who have been

述
shu
shu迷
mi
mi迹
tsi
chi追
chui
chui退
tui
tui逃
tsao
tsao逆
ni
yi逋
pu
pu逐
chuk
chu逃
tsao
tsao通
tung
tung逝
shih
shih速
shuk
su

led to it. V. x. 15. (3) To advance, to bring forward. We have 迪簡, in V. xiv. 29: xviii. 25. Perhaps the simplest way of taking 不迪 in V. II. 6, is with this meaning.—迪 is one of the characteristic words of the Shoo, and there is no other perhaps with which a translator has so little satisfaction.

To narrate, relate. III. iii. 3.

To be erring; to go astray. II. I. 2: II. 20: III. iv. 4: IV. v. Pt. I. 9: V. xv. 13 (迷亂): xvi. 17: x. 16. 迷民, the deluded people. V. xi. 7. To err in the matter of, to come short of. 迷于, V. xiii. 16.

Footsteps, traces. V. III. 5 (王迹, the traces of imperial sway): xix. 32. Obs. 邁迹自身—to pursue vigorously one's own path.

To pursue.—to take in the past. III. iii. 9. Used adverbially, and with the same reference to the past. V. xxv. 6: xxviii. 2.

To retire, withdraw. II. iv. 3: V. xiii. 18.

Always in combination with 通. To run away, to abscond. V. xix. 4. —runaways, vagabonds. V. ii. 6: iii. 6.

(1) To rebel against, to oppose. II. ii. 21: IV. 7. To be contrary to. IV. v. Pt. III. 7 (full, by 干). —rebelliousness, evil. II. ii. 8. To oppose,—in deliberation, or divination. V. iv. 27—30. (2) To meet. V. vi. 18: xiii. 11. —to accord with. xxvii. 13. (3) 逆河, the meeting Ho.—a name given to the Ho, where it entered the sea. III. i. Pt. II. 7.

To abscond. See 逃. 逋臣, vagabond ministers. V. vii. 6.

To pursue. V. xix. 4.

Far. V. ii. I: xiv. I (遐逝): xviii. 29 (離逝).

To carry through. 通道, to open roads. V. v. i. Intercommunication. 地天通, the communication between earth and Heaven. V. xxvii. 6.

To go, to put in motion. V. vii. 11 (去, &c.).

To accelerate, to hasten. IV. v. Pt. II. 3: V. x. 11: xviii. 23. Speedily. V. ix. 16, 17.

造 (1) To begin. IV. iv. 9. This is the meaning, probably, in **凡我造邦** IV. iii. 7; **新造邦** in V. xvi. 10; and **嗣造** V. xxviii. 2. Obs. **肇造** V. ix. 4. (2) To do; doings. V. vii. 1, 8. Perhaps we may bring under this **焉造德** in V. xvi. 16. (3) To seek for, with reference to. V. ix. 17. To arrive, to come. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 1. The plaintiff and defendant in a suit are called **兩造**, the two comparing parties. V. xxvii. 15.

逢 To meet with. V. iv. 26.

遁 To escape. IV. v. Pt. ii. 3.

逮 To come to. V. xxvii. 5. **不逮** to be deficient; deficiencies. V. ix. 4; xxvi. 4; xxx. 5.

進 To advance, to enter. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 1 (coll. by **于**); V. xxiii. 2. Actively, to advance, to bring forward. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 2 (**登進**); V. xxiii. 5; xxi. 13.

逸 (1) To exceed, to go to excess; to go to excess in,—generally with a bad meaning so that the term often = idleness, dissipation. II. ii. 6; iv. 16; V. x. 7, 9, 11; xi. 1, 3, 12; xviii. 4, 16, 20; *et al.* We have **逸言** and **逸口**—extravagant talk. IV. vii. Pt. i. 7, 12. The combination **逸豫**, idleness and pleasure, is frequent. III. iii. 1; IV. viii. Pt. ii. 2; V. ix. 1; *et al.* **逸欲**, idleness and lusts. II. iii. 5. = errors. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 3. Sometimes **逸** is used as—to enjoy ease,—in a good sense. IV. vii. Pt. i. 14; V. xiv. 5; xv. 2; xx. 18. The sense is indifferent in V. xv. 7. Obs. V. xix. 5, and **逸厥逸**, carried his luxurious ease to the utmost, in xviii. 18. (2) The name of a Recorder. V. xiii. 29, 30.

逾 (1) To cross. V. iii. 10; in III. i. Pt. i. 33, 70; Pt. ii. 1, where it is coll. by **于**, in two of the instances at least, it must mean to cross the country to. (2) To transgress. V. xxii. 6. (3) **逾邁**, to pass away,—spoken of time. V. xxx. 2.

遂 (1) To accomplish. **底遂**—great deeds. IV. xi. 1. (2) To give free course to. IV. ii. 7. (3) Thereon, and so. IV. xi. 2; V. v. 1. (4) Name of the country to a certain extent beyond the **郊** of a state. **三郊三遂**, V. xxix. 5.

遇 To meet with. It occurs only once, —in IV. vii. Pt. ii. 16, in a passage which is hardly intelligible.

遊 To wander about,—generally in a bad sense, thus wasting the time and neglecting duties. We have **慢遊** II. iv. 8; **盤遊** III. iii. 1; and **遊畋** IV. iv. 7. To make excursions. V. xv. 11, 12. Obs. **遊于逸**, II. ii. 6.

運 To go round,—to act incessantly. II. ii. 4.

過 1st tone. To pass by. III. i. Pt. ii. 4, 7, 8, 9, 12; V. iii. 6.

3d tone. To go beyond. An error, a fault,—the idea of inadvertence is generally in the term. II. ii. 12; IV. ii. 5; viii. Pt. ii. 9; V. i. Pt. ii. 7. **五過**, the five cases of error. V. xxvii. 15, 16.

To stop. IV. iii. 6. We have **遏密**, II. i. 13; **遏佚**, V. xvi. 3; **遏絕**, xxvii. 5, **牽遏**—to exhaust. IV. i. 2.

退 1st tone. To reject and put far off. III. iv. 4. **退終**, to put far away and make an end of. V. xii. 10. **遐遯**, V. xiv. 21.

To have leisure. V. xv. 30.

道 人—a herald. III. iv. 3.

(1) A road, a path. V. v. 1. In V. iv. 14, it also means a path or way, and is synonymous with **路**. It is there, however, used metaphorically, and we may pass from it to the use of it in the sense of ways or courses of life and conduct. III. iii. 7; V. xvi. 6; xxiii. 5; xxiv. 9. It is used often with reference to Heaven,—the way it follows and the way it approves. II. ii. 21; IV. ii. 9; III. 3; viii. Pt. ii. 2; V. i. Pt. ii. 2; xxiv. 9. Then **道** means the way which is right, in acc. with Heaven's will, and the path of duty for man. II. ii. 6, 20; IV. v. Pt. ii. 2, 7; viii. Pt. i. 2; V. v. 7; xxix. 3. Obs. **道心**, the affinity of the mind for the right, II. ii. 15. **有道**, the right-acting, or the principled. V. iii. 6. I have translated **道** by *principles* in xx. 5, but the idea is rather—courses of govt., the right underlying them. (2) To conduct by their proper courses. III. i. Pt. i. 13, 23, 49, 64. (3) To speak. **道極**—

to confess unreservedly. V. ix. 6. 道

揚 xxi. 24.

達
ta

(1) To reach to. Gen. foll. by 于. II. iii. 7 (a. 3); III. i. Pt. i. 20, 27, 35, 43, 61; V. xi. 1 (a. 3); xxi. 3. 達四聰—

to hear with the ears of all. II. i. 15. — everywhere. V. xii. 4; (2) To get forward. V. xxx. 7.

達
tai

(1) To oppose, to go contrary to. II. ii. 6; IV. vii. Pt. iii. 7; V. iv. 31 (foll. by 于); vii. 7; xvii. 3; xxi. 14; xxx. 7.

— to be disobedient to, the object being understood from the context. I. 10; II. iv. 5; V. xiv. 18; xv. 13; xvi. 3; xix. 18; xxi. 5; xxx. 3. — rebellion, or the rebellious. V. x. 13. (2) To avoid. IV. v. Pt. ii. 3.

To meet with. In reference to sick. nem.—V. vi. 3; xiii. 27.

達
kai

達
kai

達
shun

(1) To accord with. IV. v. Pt. iii. 7 (foll. by 于). Obedience. V. xiv. 21, 22. To observe—to be observed—docilely. II. i. 19. — humble. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 4. (2) To be withdrawn, to be lying hid. IV. xi. 3.

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

To be distant; what is distant; the distant. V. i. Pt. ii. 3; v. 8 (遠物—foreign things); xxi. 8; xxviii. 4; II. i. 16; at al. 無遠, without respect to distance. II. ii. 21; IV. vii. Pt. i. 16; V. v. 2; xiii. 13. 遠省, to examine what is long past. V. vii. 10. 晉遠, to become distant—alienated—from one another. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 15. 遠猷, to send one's plans far forward. V. ix. 22. — to put far away. V. xviii. 29. — to a distance. V. x. 4. — at a distance. V. ix. 5.

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

遠
yuan

3d tone. To keep one's self at a distance from. IV. iv. 7.

(1) To proceed to. IV. vii. Pt. iii. 4 (foll. by 于); V. ix. 20; xiv. 5. Obs.

適輕 and 適重, in V. xxvii. 19.

適爾 — two aims. V. xiv. 15. (2)

適爾, accidentally. V. ix. 8.

To be concealed. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 1.

行遜 to make one's escape. IV. xi. 9.

To follow, to walk in. IV. iv. 14.

(1) To remove,—both act. and neut.

II. iii. 7; IV. vii. Pt. i. 1 (foll. by 于);

Pt. ii. 1, 4, 6, 17; Pt. iii. 1, 5; V. xiv.

13, 25; xxiv. 3. (2) To exchange. II.

iv. 2. (3) To be changed. V. xxi. 14.

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

選

To select, to approve of. IV. vii. Pt. i. 14.

To transmit the ways of, to follow the example of. V. ix. 3.

(1) To be left to be remaining. V. ii. 6; xiv. 2; xxv. 2. (2) To leave neglect-

ad. II. ii. 3; V. i. Pt. i. 5; xii. 12. Obs.

遺育, to leave seed or posterity to one. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 16.

3d tone. To leave to, to assign to. V.

vii. 3. 8. To this tone and meaning. V. xiii. 3, 6, should probably be referred.

(1) Vigorously. II. ii. 10; V. xvii. 3.

(2) To move forward,—to attain, to practise. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 2; V. xii. 15. To be passing on,—spoken of the movement of time. V. xxx. 3.

— to retire. V. xxi. 19.

To be near to. IV. v. Pt. i. 9; V. xxiv. 3. To approach to. IV. ii. 5. 轉

通, to be approached. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12. What is near, the near. II. i. 16; III. i. 1; IV. v. Pt. iii. 4; at al. 通人, people at hand. V. v. 8.

THE 163d RADICAL. 邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

邑

A city or town, cities. Used of the capital.—IV. v. Pt. i. 3; vii. Pt. i. 3, 4; Pt. ii. 5, 16; at sepa. Used of other cities.—III. iv. 1; IV. i. 3; at sepa. — villages. V. xiv. 25. — a State (?). V. iii. 7.

A State, a country. 有邦

the possessors or princes of States. II. iii. 6; IV. v. Pt. ii. 5; V. xxvii. 14; at al.

萬邦. I. 2; II. iv. 1; at al. sepa. is used as a designation for the empire.

中邦, the middle region, III. i. Pt. ii. 15, probably denotes the empire proper, the three interior domains of Yu. 邦

alone is sometimes—empire or dynasty, as in V. xvi. 10; xx. 3—12; at al. In V.

iii. 3, 邦 must denote specially the imperial domain. In V. ix. 1, we cannot account for the character. 五邦 in

IV. vii. Pt. i. 3, is better understood as five different regions, than five States. 家

and 邦, the Clan or Family and the State, are often in contrast, as in IV. iii. 6, 7; at al. It is used as a verb,—to invest with a country. V. xvii. 1.

Wicked, depraved. V. viii. 2. That which is evil. II. ii. 6.

邪

邪

郊
kiao
chiao

A certain extent of country, outside and around the capital city; borders, frontiers. V. II. 1, 9; III. 8; VI. 18; X. 1; XXIV. 1, 7. Observe 三郊 V. XXIX. 5. Used for the place of the sacrifices to Heaven and Earth in the suburb. V. XII. 5. Used for those sacrifices. V. I. Pt. III. 2.

郭都
kuo
du

郭都 the name of a place. V. XVII. 1.

(1) Used in Part II. as an exclamation. Oh! II. II. 4; III. 1, 2, 3; IV. 1, 2. (2) A capital. IV. VIII. Pt. II. 2; V. XXVIII. 4. In V. XIX. 9, it denotes the cities of the high nobles in the imperial domain. Ohs. 幽都 1, 7.

To reduce to the condition of a border territory. V. VII. 4.

郭鄰
kuo
lin

(1) A neighbour, neighbours. IV. V. Pt. II. 5; V. VII. 13. 四鄰 the neighbouring States, all round. V. XVII. 5. The same phrase is applied to the emperor's ministers. II. IV. 5; and 鄰 alone, in p. 3. (2) 郭鄰 see 郭

THE 164th RADICAL. 酉.

酉配
yu
pei

The tenth of the calendaric branch-characters. V. XXII. 13.

(1) To be the mate of; to correspond to. IV. V. Pt. III. 3; V. XII. 14; XIV. 3; XXV. 8; XXVII. 11, 21. (2) To be associated with,—in sacrifice. V. XVI. 8.

Distilled spirits. III. III. 5; IV. 1, 4; IV. VIII. Pt. III. 2 (酒醴); XI. 1, 4; V. X. 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 10, 13, 15, 17; XV. 13. 自酒, to abandon one's self to drink. V. X. 11.

醴酢
li
tsu

To be furiously intoxicated. Foll. by 于. IV. XI. 1, 4; V. I. Pt. II. 3; XV. 13.

To offer a responsive (?) repeated) sacrifice. V. XXII. 27.

耐
nai

To be drunken. IV. IV. 7. Ohs. 酣身, V. X. 11.

Sour. V. IV. 5.

酸醇
suan
chun

Uncollected spirits. —pure and clear. IV. VIII. Pt. II. 10.

To drink to excess. V. X. 4. In p. 7, it—to drink freely.

醴
li

Sweet spirits,—the liquor in the state of fermentation. IV. VIII. Pt. III. 2.

采
cai

THE 165th RADICAL. 采.

(1) Affairs; to conduct affairs. I. 10; II. I. 17; III. 4. Observe 載采采 II. III. 3; and 服采 V. X. 13. (2)

Colours. 五采 II. IV. 4. (3) The cities and lands assigned to the ministers of the emperor in the domain of the nobles. III. I. Pt. II. 19. (4) The 5th of the domains of the Chow dynasty. V. IX. 1.

To let go,—send from one's thoughts. II. II. 10. To let go,—in shooting with a bow. IV. V. Pt. I. 7. —to liberate. V. III. 8; XVIII. 1. To put off,—spoken with ref. to a cap. V. XXIII. 7. To remove, do away with. V. XVI. 6 (foll. by 于); XVIII. 12.

釋
shi

THE 166th RADICAL. 里.

里
li

(1) A place of residence. 宅里, a neighbourhood. V. XXIX. 7. 里居, to be living in villages (= in retirement. V. X. 10). (2) A measure of length. At present it is a little more than one third of an English mile. III. I. Pt. II. 15—22.

Heavy,—what is aggravated. V. XXVII. 19. As a verb,—to attach importance to. IV. VII. Pt. I. 2; V. III. 9; —to deal severely with. II. II. 12.

重
chung重
chung

Aspirated, and 1st tone. (1) Repeated, more than one of the same kind. V. XXII. 5, 15—19. (2) 重華 in II. I. 1, is probably the name of Shun. (3) An ancient minister, apparently of the time of Shun. V. XXVII. 8.

野
yeh

Wild country, wilds. IV. VIII. Pt. I. 3; Pt. III. 1; V. III. 2. The country,—away from court. II. II. 5. 在野—to be in obscurity. II. II. 20. (2) 牧野, the scene of the battle between king Woo and Shou. V. III. 2. 大野, a lake. III. I. Pt. I. 51; see 猪野, p. 77.

量
liang釐
lin釐
lin

Measures of capacity. II. I. 3.

To regulate. I. 3; V. XIX. 4; XXIX. 1. Ohs. 釐降 in I. 12.

THE 167th RADICAL. 金.

金
kin

Metal. The 4th of the five elements. V. IX. 5. One of the six magazines of nature. II. II. 7. —money. II. I. 11. —a weapon of steel. IV. VIII. Pt. I. 2.

金三品 gold, silver, and copper. III. i. Pt. i. 44, 52. — with metal, — adverbial. V. vi. 11, 16.

The name of king K'ang of the Chou dynasty. V. xxii. 7, 9, 11; xxiii. 4.

鈞
chou
chou

鈞
chou
chou

鉛
yuan
yuan

鉞
yu
yu

鉅
ju
ju

銀
yin
yin

銚
chiao
chiao

銳
rui
rui

鋒
feng
feng

錫
xi
xi

錯
cuo
cuo

鍛
duan
duan

鑊
huo
huo

鑪
lu
lu

鐵
tie
tie

鐸
duo
duo

鑒
jian
jian

鑑
jian
jian

(1) A weight of 30 catties, the quarter of a stone. III. iii. 8. (2) 均 equal, as great. V. i. Pt. i. 2.

Lead. III. i. Pt. i. 20.

A kind of battle-axe. V. ii. 1; xxii. 21.

鉅橋 a place where the tyrant Shou had collected great stores of grain. V. iii. 3.

Silver. III. i. Pt. i. 69.

The ears of grain with a small portion of the stalk. III. i. Pt. ii. 12.

Some kind of sharp-pointed weapon. V. xxii. 21.

The point of a weapon. V. xxix. 2.

To give, to confer. III. i. Pt. ii. 16. It generally — to give to, being followed by two objectives, the thing given, and the party to whom it is so. IV. ii. 2; V. iv. 3, 9, 11, 15; xxii. 8. To present, — as tribute or offering. III. i. Pt. ii. 33. **賜**

貢 and **納錫** III. i. Pt. i. 44, 52, 60.

(1) Stones for polishing counting stones. III. i. Pt. i. 60. (2) To be mixed, — as revenue made up of various proportions, and kinds of impost. III. i. Pt. i. 8, 28, 43, 59 (7: 6), 58.

To temper. V. xxix. 2.

A weight, commonly said to be of six *liang* or ounces; but the exact amount is rather uncertain. V. xxvii. 18.

A large bell. II. iv. 9.

Steel. III. i. Pt. i. 69.

Iron. III. i. Pt. i. 69.

A bell with a wooden clapper. III. iv. 3.

A mirror, — whatever reflects objects. — a case for inspection or warning. V. i. Pt. ii. 3.

THE 168th RADICAL. 長

長
chang
chang

Long. **短長**, short or long. IV. vii. Pt. i. 12. What is long off, far-distant.

Pt. ii. 7. As a verb, — to prolong. V. xix. 24; to seek to be long continuing. IV. vii. Pt. i. 15.

長
chang
chang

2d tone. (1) An elder, elders. IV. iv. 4; xi. 3 (**耆長**): V. x. 6. As a verb, — to treat as an elder, to exalt. V. ii. 8. (2) A president, presidents. II. iv. 8; IV. vi. 10 (**萬夫之長**, chief of the myriad families): vii. Pt. iii. 8, and viii. Pt. ii. 2 (**師長**, heads of departments): V. ii. 2 (**千夫長**, **百夫長**, captains of thousands, and captains of hundreds): xix. 4 (**長伯**).

THE 169th RADICAL. 門

門
men
men

(1) A door, a gate. V. xxii. 11, 31, 29; xxiii. 1. **四門**, all the roads or channels of communication between the court and the empire. II. i. 2, 15. (2) **龍門**, an important pass of the Ho, near which Ya began his labours. III. i. Pt. i. 83; Pt. ii. 1.

To shut. — to restrain. V. vii. 2.

To open. — to initiate, to bring forward. V. xviii. 5, 7; — to stir up. p. 18. **開釋**, to liberate. p. 11.

Intercalary. I. 2.

To bar. — to keep under restraint. V. xxix. 10.

A surname. V. xvi. 12.

A space between. — to separate, to come between. V. xxiii. 15; sta. 16. — to fill up the intervals. II. iv. 9. **隔間**, between the window and the door. V. xxii. 15. Some read the character in this passage *隔*, and in the 1st tone.

To think with anxiety about. V. xvi. 22. To be an object of pity. xxviii. 2.

To shut up. **閤**, to shut up and distress. V. vii. 10.

The gate of a village. V. iii. 3.

閤
ge
ge

閤
ge
ge

閤
ge
ge

閤
ge
ge

閱 (1) To examine. V. xxvii. 18. (2) To select on examination. xviii. 27.

關 What is current or standard. III. iii. 8.

闢 To throw open. II. i. 15.

THE 170th RADICAL 阜

阜 Greatly. 阜成 V. xx. 13.

阪 Precipitous, dangerous situations. V. xix. 11. The meaning is not well ascertained.

阻 To be in difficulties; to suffer from. 阻飢. II. i. 18.

阼 The steps leading up to the hall on the east, appropriate to the host. V. xxii. 30, 32.

陂 Embanked ponds. V. i. Pt. i. 5. To be banked up. III. i. Pt. ii. 14.

陂 To be uneven. V. iv. 14. It will be seen, however, that this was not the original reading here; and the character is commonly read *pie*.

阿衡 the name, or the title, of E Yin. IV. v. Pt. i. i. viii. Pt. iii. 10.

附 To be attached—join one's-self to. IV. ii. 4; V. iii. 7.

陋 To be in a mean condition. 側陋. I. 12.

降 (1) To send down. I. 12; II. ii. 20; IV. iii. 2, 3; iv. 2, 8; V. i. Pt. 4; Pt. iii. 3; vi. 7; *et sepe*. It may be variously translated,—to confer, to inflict, to deliver, &c. 降黜—to make an end of.

V. i. Pt. ii. 4. In IV. vii. Pt. iii. 4, it = to remove. (2) To descend. II. ii. 10; III. i. Pt. i. 16; *et sepe*. 降格 to descend and approach. V. xxvii. 5. — to degenerate. V. xxix. 4. (3) To spare, to deal leniently with in respect of. V. xviii. 2, 20, 23.

(1) To ascend:—with ref. to the throne. II. i. 3; ii. 14; V. xix. 4; with ref. to death. II. i. 28; V. xvi. 18; xxiii. 3. (2) To travel to. IV. v. Pt. iii. 4; xix. 22. (3) To promote. II. i. 27; xx. 14. (4) 伊陟, son probably of E Yin, a minister of the Shang dynasty. V. xvi. 7.

除 To remove, to take away. V. i. Pt. iii. 4; viii. 2.

陰 Dark, obscure. 陰陽, the operations of Heaven and Earth. V. xx. 3. — secretly, by an unseen influence. V. iv. 2. — the north side of a mountain. III. i. Pt. iii. 7.

亮陰 probably the shed where the emperor spends his time of mourning. IV. viii. Pt. i. i; V. xx. 5.

陪尾 the name of a mountain in the pres. Shan-tung. III. i. Pt. ii. 2.

(1) To set forth; to display. IV. vi. 1; V. ix. 11, 13; xxii. 5, 10. Obs. 卜

陳. V. vii. 15; 陳修, xi. 4; 有陳

xvi. 8. To be displayed. IV. xi. 1. To be marshalled, drawn up. V. iii. 3. (2)

To continue long. IV. vii. Pt. ii. 11. (3)

君陳, the name of a minister, the successor of the duke of Chow in Lo. V. xxi. 1; *et al.*

大陸 a tract of marshy ground in K'w-chow. III. i. Pt. i. 7; Pt. ii. 7.

(1) A high mound, a height. I. 11; II. iv. 1. (2) To do violence to. V. xiv. 9. (3) 東陵 the name of a place,

corresponding to the pres. Pa-ling, chief city of the dep. of Yü-chow. III. i. Pt. ii. 9.

陶 (1) In the phrase 鬱陶, anxieties, to be thinking anxiously. III. iii. 9. (2)

The name of the principality over which Yaou first ruled, so that he is sometimes named from it. III. iii. 7. (3) The name

of a small hill in the pres. dia. of Ting-t'au, dep. of Yen-chow, Shan-tung. III. i. Pt. ii. 10.

皇陶 the name of Shun's minister of Crime. II. i. 17, 20; ii. 10, 13, 12; iii. 1, 2, 3, 5; iv. 1, 8, 11.

To dam up. V. iv. 3.

(1) The sun. 陽鳥, sun birds, — wild geese. III. i. Pt. i. 39. (2) — the south side of a mountain. III. i. Pt. i. 5,

35, 46, 52; Pt. ii. 4. (3) 陰陽, see

陰

隅 A corner. 海隅, the corners of the seas. II. iv. 7; V. xvi. 21.

A mound falling to pieces. — unwellness. V. xx. 8.

Steps or stairs, leading up to a hall. II. ii. 21; V. xxii. 20—23.

To fall down into. IV. iii. 6.

陰

陰

陰

陰

陰

陰

陰

隨

sui
sui
sui
yü

To follow, to accord with. 隨山
following the line of—all along—the
hills. II. iv. 1: III. i. Pt. I. 1.

(1) The inside, inner apartments.
—to keep within the house. I. v. (2.)
Habitable ground by the water's edge)
四隅 III. i. Pt. II. 14.

Precipitous. —alarming. IV. vii.
Pt. I. 7.

險

k'ien

k'ien

險

chi

險

險

險

險

(1) To fall into a ditch. 顛隄, to
be going to ruin. IV. xi. 2, 5. (2) To
ascend, to go up. V. xii. 22, 23.

Low, damp ground. Swamps. III. i.
Pt. I. 77.

To feel sympathy. IV. vii. Pt. III. 5.

THE 172^d RADICAL 隹

雀

ts'ao

ch'iao

ch'iao

集

ts'ao

chi

A sparrow. As an adj., describing
the colour of a cap, = brown. V. xii. 21.

To collect. Spoken of the sun and
moon in an eclipse, = to meet harmo-
niously. III. iv. 4. Spoken with reference
to the decree of Heaven conferring the
empire, = to cause to light on. IV. v. Pt.
I. 2: V. xvi. 11: xii. 5: xviii. 1. —
to attach, to being together to one's self.
V. xi. 5. Fall, by 于, = to go to, to
tend to. V. xviii. 15. To be collected.
V. iii. 5. —to be completed. V. i. Pt.
I. 5.

A pheasant. IV. ix. 1.

To crow, —as a pheasant. IV. ix. 1.

(1) To be harmonious. I. 2: V. xv. 5.

(2) 雍州, one of Yu's nine provinces.
III. i. Pt. I. 10.

To carve. Carved. V. xii. 17.

Though. III. iii. 2: V. i. Pt. II. 6: iv.
12: xii. 13; et al.

To paint with vermilion and other
colours. V. xi. 4.—This character is given
in the diet, under 隹, but such arrange-
ment is evidently wrong. 隹 is merely

part of the phonetic element 隹. The
true radical or element of meaning is
丹. This is another instance of the
perplexity introduced into Chinese lex-

雞

chi

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

雞

ography by the attempt to simplify the
subject through reducing the number of
the radicals.

A fowl. V. ii. 5.

To go away from, to leave. III. iv. 4:
IV. ii. 8: vii. Pt. III. 5. To be divided.
V. i. Pt. II. 6. 離迷. V. xviii. 29.

To be difficult. IV. vi. 2, 7: viii. Pt. II.
11: V. ix. 6: xvi. 4: xxi. ii. To feel the
difficulty of. II. iii. 2. Difficulties. IV. v.
Pt. III. 5: vii. Pt. I. 15. 艱難 hard-
ships and difficulties. V. xv. 2, 3, 7:
xii. 7.

54 tone. To make it difficult for. —
to discourage. II. i. 16.

THE 173^d RADICAL 雨

雨

yü

yü

雨

yü

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

雨

Rain. II. i. 2: IV. viii. Pt. I. 6 (霖
雨): V. iv. 21, 32, 33, 36: xiv. 5.

54 tone. To rain. V. vi. 19. Perhaps
the examples in V. iv., might be thus
toned.

The name of a marsh. III. i. Pt. I. 60.

(1) Thunder. II. i. 2: V. vi. 16. (2)
雷夏, the name of a marsh in Yen-
chow. III. i. Pt. I. 14. (3) 雷首, the
name of a mountain in K'v-chow. III. i.
Pt. II. 1.

Lightning. V. vi. 16.

(1) To move, to agitate. 震驚
II. i. 25. 震動. IV. vii. Pt. III. 5: V.
iii. 7. 震怒, to be roused to anger.

V. i. Pt. I. 5: ix. 2. (2) 震澤, the
name of a marsh. III. i. Pt. I. 41.

The name of the appanage of Ch'oo,
one of King Woo's brothers, who is known
as 霍叔. V. xvii. 1.

Rain continuing more than three days.
霖雨, copious rain. IV. viii. Pt. I. 6.

Rain stopping, fair weather. V. iv. 21.

What is good. IV. vii. Pt. III. 7: V.
xxii. 2. Intelligent. V. i. Pt. I. 2. The
phrase 靈承 in V. xiv. 12, —to be
charged with, on account of one's good-
ness; in xviii. 5, 19, it appears to —to
treat or manage well.

雉

chi

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

雉

THE 174TH RADICAL. 青.

青 Green. III. i. Pt. i. 67.

qing

靖 Tranquillity. 不靖, dispeace. IV.

自靖, to make one's-

self tranquil. IV. xi. 9. To tranquillize.

V. xv. 5.

靜 Quiescence,—the opposite of action. V.

iv. 21. — to stillness, when unemployed.

ed. I. 10. To be quiet, tranquil. V. vii.

ching 3, 7; ix. 21; xviii. 22.

THE 175TH RADICAL. 非.

非 Peccata. Not. It vary often — it is not, it is not that, standing commonly, but not always, at the commencement of the clause, and the clause which follows frequently beginning with

惟 or 乃惟. E.g. IV. i. 1; iv.

Pt. i. 7, 12; Pt. ii. 4; V. xii. 24; xiv.

2, 15, 20. It has sometimes a hypothetical force, — if not, without. II. ii. 17;

IV. v. Pt. ii. 2; vi. 11; et al. Its signifi-

cation is sometimes nearly that of an

adjective, — that which is not, improper.

IV. ii. 4; v. Pt. iii. 7; V. xii. 21; et al. —

that which is really wrong, a crime. IV.

viii. Pt. ii. 9. As a verb, — to do what is

contrary to, to transgress. III. ii. 4; IV.

xi. 2; V. xvi. 7. Makes with 罔 an

affirmative. V. x. 3; et al.

(1) Not. IV. vi. 2. (2) 靡靡 ready acquiescence, to be flatteringly obsequious. V. xxiv. 3.

THE 176TH RADICAL. 面.

面 The face. 面從 to follow to one's

face. II. iv. 5. 謀面, to judge by

the face. V. xix. 2. 北面, facing the

north. V. vi. 4. 80 牆面, xx. 16. 面

alone, xxii. 30, means facing the south-

面稽天, looking up to Heaven, to

ascertain its will. xii. 11.

THE 177TH RADICAL. 革.

(1) Hides. III. i. Pt. i. 44, 52. (2)

To change, to remove or supersede. IV.

vi. 3; V. iv. 5; xiv. 4, 19. Spoken of

animals changing their feathers and hair.

I. 3. To be changed. V. xxiv. 4.

(1) To exhaust. 自鞠 IV. vii.

Pt. ii. 6. (2) To nourish. IV. vii. Pt.

iii. 10; V. ix. 15.—The meaning in these

passages is doubtful. (3) 鞠子, a

little child. V. xxiii. 6.

鞭

A whip. II. i. 11.

音

THE 180TH RADICAL. 音.

Musical sounds. 八音, the eight

kinds of musical instruments,—all music.

II. i. 13, 24; iv. 4. 音 alone = music,

III. iii. 6.

韶 The music of Shan. 簫韶 II.

iv. 9.

響 An echo. II. ii. 4.

THE 181ST RADICAL. 頁.

To follow, to act in accordance with.

V. i. Pt. i. 9; xxi. 6. To be obedient.

IV. v. Pt. i. 9. — to allow, to indulge.

V. i. Pt. iii. 2.

(1) To wait. 暇須 V. xviii. 17.

(2) Necessary, requisite. V. xxii. 13.—

The meaning here may also be brought

under (1).

To be refractory, obstinately unprinci-

pled. I. 12; II. iv. 6, 8; V. xxiv. 3. 頑

童, IV. iv. 7. The refractory. V. xxi. 1.

To manifest, distribute everywhere.

V. xiii. 13.

One-sided, perverse. V. iv. 19; xviii.

29.

頤頤 the appearance of uncer-

tainty. II. iv. 8.

To wash the face. IV. xxii. 2.

The face, the countenance. III. iii. 9.

To desire. 可願, what is desir-

able. II. ii. 17.

(1) To overthrow. 顛覆 III. iv.

4. 顛越 IV. vii. Pt. ii. 16. To

be overthrown, — felled. IV. vii. Pt. i.

4. 顛隤 to be going to ruin. V. xi.

3, 8. (2) 泰顛 one of king Wan's

ministers. V. xvi. 12.

(1) A class, sort. — the different

characters or classes. V. i. Pt. iii. 3. Of

a class. 不類, not equal to, not so

good as. IV. viii. Pt. i. 2. 自底不

類, to make one's-self unworthy. IV.

顧 *ku* v. Pt. II. 3. (2) To offer a special sacrifice to God. II. 1. 6; V. I. Pt. I. 10.

To regard, to think of IV. v. P. 1. 2; xl. 9; V. xii. 12; xiv. 9. — to consult. IV. vii. Pt. I. 12; V. xxiii. 6. — to examine. V. ix. 22. Observe

顯 *ku* 顯天. V. xviii. 18.

(1) To be or become illustrious. V. 1. Pt. III. 2. 4, 5; ix. 2, 4; xii. 14; xiv. 6; xviii. 1, 2, 4. 天顯, high principles of Heaven. V. ix. 16; x. 2; et al.

顯民, to be illustrious with the people. V. ix. 1. — manifestly. V. ix. 21. (2) To be enlightened. IV. v. Pt. I. 3 (x. 6); viii. Pt. III. 1; V. xiv. 9. (3) To distinguish, make illustrious. IV. ii. 7; V. xviii. 6.

THE 182nd RADICAL. 風

風 *feng* (1) The wind. II. 1. 2; V. ix. 22, 24, 28; xi. 16, 19. 風動, to be moved as by the wind. II. ii. 15. (2) Influence.

IV. viii. Pt. III. 8; V. xxiv. 7. (風聲; but this may mean—the fame of their manners). (3) Manners, fashion. IV. iv. 7; V. xxi. 4; xxiv. 8. (4) To feel the sexual appetite,—used of animals. V. xix. 4.

颺 *yang* (1) To speak loudly and rapidly. II. iv. 7. (3) To rewrite and publish. p. 6.

THE 184th RADICAL. 食

食 *shih* To eat. IV. xi. 6; V. xv. 10. Spoken of the fire licking up the ink on the tortoise-shell in divination. V. xiii. 3.

食言, to eat one's words, to be false to what he has said. IV. i. 4. To accept support. IV. viii. Pt. III. 11. Food. II. 1. 18; iv. 1; IV. x. 3; V. iii. 9; iv. 8; x. 2.

玉食—the revenues of the empire. V. iv. 18, 19.

飢 *chi* To be hungry. 阻飢, to suffer from want. II. i. 18.

飲 *yin* To drink. V. x. 4, 7, 9 (景飲). 14.

飽 *pao* To be full. — to satisfy. V. x. 7.

餉 *hung* To carry provisions to the labourers in the fields;—provision-carriers. IV. ii. 6.

養 *yang* To nourish. II. ii. 7. 民養. V. vii. 12, is hardly intelligible. Obs. 引養. V. xi. 3.

養 *yang* 3d tone. To support,—spoken with ref. to the support of one's parents. V. x. 6.

餘 *yu* That which is over, remaining. III. i. Pt. II. 5; V. xxiv. 8. 無餘刑—all kinds of—no end of—punishments. V. xix. 3.

餞 *chien* To convey. I. 6.

饋 *kuai* To present offerings,—specially of food. 饋祀, offerings of sacrifice. V. x. 7.

餽 *kuang* To accept,—as the wine of sacrifice. (?) V. xxi. 28.

首 *shou* (1) The head. II. iv. 1. In the phrase 稽首, II. i. 17, 21, 22, 23; et sept.

(2) The chief, the most important. V. xix. 1. (3) 雷首, the name of a mountain. III. 1. Pt. II. 1.

THE 185th RADICAL. 首

首 *shou* (1) The head. II. iv. 1. In the phrase 稽首, II. i. 17, 21, 22, 23; et sept.

(2) The chief, the most important. V. xix. 1. (3) 雷首, the name of a mountain. III. 1. Pt. II. 1.

THE 186th RADICAL. 香

香 *xiang* That which is fragrant. Always in connection with 馨 and spoken of virtually. V. x. 11; xxi. 8; xxvii. 4.

馨 *ching* Odours smelt at a distance. 馨香 see above.

THE 187th RADICAL. 馬

馬 *ma* (1) A horse, horses. III. ii. 4; iii. 5. V. iii. 2; et sept. 趣馬, equarius.

V. xix. 8. (2) 司馬, the minister of War. V. ii. 2; xi. 2; xix. 10; xx. 10.

To drive,—in a carriage. III. iii. 5.

馳 *chi* To bustle and hurry about. III. iv. 4.

駁 *tsa* — rapidly, hurriedly. V. iii. 3.

駢 *ping* Red. V. xiii. 29.

隲 *chih* To make, to constitute. V. iv. 2.

驕 *chiao* To be proud. V. xxiv. 10.

驚
ching
驚
驚
驚
驚

To alarm. II. I. 25.

The appearance of a want of connection. Used of one of the indications in divination. V. ix. 21.

驩堯, a bad minister of Yao, punished by Shun. I. 10; II. I. 17; III. 2.

THE 138th RADICAL. 骨

體
to
vi

Form, appearance. Used of the form of a prognostic in divination. V. vi. 10. Completeness. Used of the character of a proclamation. V. xxiv. 8.

THE 139th RADICAL. 高

高
kiao

(1) High. III. I. Pt. I. 1; IV. x. Pt. III. 4. The high and lofty. V. iv. 12, 17. The founder of a House, or one's remote ancestor, is described by 高. 高后. IV. vii. Pt. II. 12, 14; viii. Pt. I. 3. 高祖. IV. vii. Pt. III. 6; V. xxiii. 3. To think highly of. V. ix. 29. (2) 高宗 the sacrificial title of Woo-ting, one of the sovereigns of the Shang dynasty. IV. ix. 1; V. xv. 3.

THE 140th RADICAL. 髮

髮
髮
髮
髮
髮

The hair. V. xxx. 4.

The name of one of the wild tribes, confederate with king Woo against Shang. V. II. 3.

THE 142nd RADICAL. 麴

麴
ch'ung

A kind of fragrant grass, used to flavour spirits. 麴麴. Flavoured spirits distilled from the black millet. V. xiii. 25; xxviii. 4.

鬱
yü

In the phrase 鬱陶. III. iii. 2, the thoughts working anxiously and confusedly.

THE 143rd RADICAL. 鬼

鬼
kuei
魁
魁

In the phrase 鬼神. Spirits, spiritual beings. II. II. 18; IV. iv. 2; Pt. III. 1; V. vi. 6.

Chief, the principal. 渠魁 = the chief criminals. III. ix. 4.

魄
p'ei

The disc of the moon, from the time it begins to wane to new moon. 哉

生魄 is the 15th day of the moon. V.

ix. I; xxii. 1. 既生魄. V. iii. 4, is

—after the moon began to wane; 死

魄. p. I, is the last day of the old moon.

THE 145th RADICAL. 魚

魚
yü

Fish. III. I. Pt. I. 25; IV. iv. 2.

The State so called. V. xxix. 5.

鮮
hsien

Fresh fish or meat. 鮮食, flesh to eat. II. iv. 1.

2d tone. (1) Few; rarely, seldom. IV. vii. Pt. II. 3; V. xix. 1; xxiv. 9. (2)

惠鮮 to show a fostering kindness to. V. xv. 10.

The father of Yu, punished by Shun. I. II; II. I. 12; V. iv. 3.

鯨
kuan

An unmarried man. I. 12. In all other cases, it appears along with 寡, and probably means widowers. V. vii. 8; ix. 4; xv. 6; 10; xxvii. 6, 7.

THE 146th RADICAL. 鳥

鳥
niao

(1) Birds. Generally in combination with 獸. I. 4, 5, 8, 7; II. I. 22; iv. 9; III. I. Pt. I. 29; IV. iv. 2; V. xvi. 16. (2)

鳥鼠 and 鳥鼠同穴 the name of a mountain. III. I. Pt. I. 76; Pt. II. 2, 12.

To collect, accumulate. I. 10.—The passage is hardly intelligible.

鳩
chow

(1) The sound of a bird; anything that emits sound is so called. 鳴鳥. V. xvi. 16, denotes the male and female phoenix. 鳴球 is the sounding-stone.

II. iv. 9. (2) 鳴條 was a place near the capital of K'uei. IV. iv. 2.

The male phoenix. II. iv. 9.

鵩
feng

An owl. 鵩鵩 is the name of an ode. V. vi. 13. 鵩義 of owl-like conduct. V. xxviii. 2.

鸱 **鸱鴞** a species of owl. See above.
 Anon
 hiao

THE 197th RADICAL. 鹵

鹵 Salt (adj.). V. iv. 3.
 hiao
 hiao
 yu
 Salt (subst.) III. i. Pt. i. 26; IV. vii. Pt. iii. 2.

THE 198th RADICAL. 鹿

鹿 The deer. **鹿臺** the name of a tower where Shou had accumulated his treasures. V. iii. 9.
 lu
 lu
 lu
 (1) To be fond of display. V. xxiv. 9.
 (2) To depend on; to be connected with.
民之麗, what the people depend on for support. V. xviii. 5. **厥麗**, p. 9, should, probably, be taken in the same way. **刑之麗**. V. xxvii. 12, — the circumstances of penal cases; but **麗刑**, p. 8, — to be exposed to punishment.
 The foot of a mountain, II. i. 2.

THE 199th RADICAL. 麥

麴 Leaven, yeast. IV. viii. Pt. iii. 2.
 e'ch
 ch'u

THE 200th RADICAL. 麻

麻 Hempen. V. xli. 22, 23.
 ma
 hu
 To brandish. V. ii. 1.

THE 201st RADICAL. 黃

黃 Yellow. The colour of soil. III. i. Pt. i. 79. Yellow with gold. V. ii. 1. Light bay, — used of horses. V. xlii. 1. The colour of hair in old men. V. xxx. 4. — yellow silks. V. iii. 7.
 huang

THE 202nd RADICAL. 黍

黍 Millet; — a kind of glutinous grain. We always find **黍稷** together. IV. vii. Pt. i. 11; V. x. 6; xxi. 3.
 shu

黎 (1) Black. It occurs in the phrase **黎民**, meaning the black-haired people. I. 2; II. i. 18; II. 2. 10; III. 2; III. iii. 1; IV. x. 1; V. xxx. 6, 7. Some critics explain it in all these passages by 衆, all, the multitudinous. (2) All. II. iv. 7. (3) Light, spoken of soil. III. i. Pt. i. 67. (4) The name of an ancient minister. V. xxvii. 6. (5) The name of a river. V. xlii. 3. (6) **合黎** the name of a hill. III. i. Pt. iii. 5.
 li

THE 203rd RADICAL. 黑

黑 (1) Black, — spoken of the colour of soil. III. i. Pt. i. 17. (2) **黑水**, the Blackwater. Two rivers are mentioned of this name; one, the southern boundary of Lêng-chow, III. i. Pt. i. 62; one, the western boundary of Yang-chow, p. 71; and Pt. ii. 6.
 In silence. IV. xiii. Pt. i. 2.
 hsi

黠 (1) To degrade; to be degraded. II. i. 27; IV. iii. 5; V. xi. 14. **放黠**, to drive away degraded. V. i. Pt. iii. 2. **降黠** — to make an end of. V. i. Pt. ii. 4. (2) To put away. IV. vii. Pt. i. 6, 10.
 ch'ia
 ch'ia

黨 Partiality, partisanship. V. ix. 14.

黷 To brand. V. xxvii. 3.

黷 To blacken, to dirty. — irreverence. IV. viii. Pt. ii. 11.
 ch'ing
 zu

THE 204th RADICAL. 黠

黠 One of the symbols, — called that of distinguishing, from its form of two 已 placed in opposition to each other, — embroidered on the lower of the emperor's sacrificial robes. II. iv. 4.
 The figure of a hatchet, — also one of the symbols on the emperor's lower robe. II. iv. 4. **黠展**, a screen used at audienca, adorned with figures of axes. V. xlii. 14, 15, 22.
 fu

THE 205th RADICAL. 龜

龜 Tortoise. II. iv. 2.
 fu

THE 207TH RADICAL. 鼓

鼓
ku
鼗
fao
鼗
fau

A drum. II. iv. 9: III. iv. 4: V. xxi.

A small hand-drawn or rattle, II. iv. 9.

鼗鼓, a large drum, V. xali, 19.

THE 208TH RADICAL. 鼠

鼠

鳥鼠, the name of a mountain.
See 鳥.

THE 210TH RADICAL 齊

齊

(1) To regulate, to adjust uniformly. II. 1. 5; IV. vii. Pt. 1. 17; V. II. 7, 8 (— to adjust the ranks of a fighting host); xiii. 8 (— to marshal); xxvii. 13 (fol. by 子), 19 (齊非齊). (2) Reverent, grave. V. viii. 2; xxvi. 2. (3) Impartiality, — where all is perfectly adjusted. V. xiii. 5. (4) The State so named. V. xiii. 11. (5) 方齊 one of Yao's ministers. I. 2.

齊
chi
chi

齊栗, the appearance of reverent
dread. II. II. 21.

THE 21st RADICAL 齒

齒

(1) Teeth. — elephant's teeth, ivory.
III. I. Pl. I. 44. 52. (2) To be arranged
according to age, to have one's place in
the family roll, V. xvii. I.

THE 312TH RADICAL. 龍

附

(1) A dragon. One of the symbols on the upper sacrificial robe of the emperor. II. iv. 4. (2) An officer in the court of Shun, his minister of Communication. II. i. 23, 25. (3) 龍門, the name of a mountain on the western bank of the Ho, near where Yu began his labours. III. i. Pt. 1. 32; Pt. II. 7.

THE 215TH RADICAL.

▲

The tortoise, whose shell was so much used in divination. V. iv. 28—31. 元龜, the great tortoise, specially good for divination, and proper for imperial use. II. II. 18; III. I. Pt. I. 52; IV. x. 2; V. vi. 3. 80. 大寶龜. V. vii. 3. 三龜. V. vi. 9.

OMISSIONS.

Page 649. Under 交 add—(2) 南交, a place far south, supposed to be in the borders of Cochin-China. I. 5.

Page 654. Beneath insert—pin.

Page 671. Under 已 add—(2) 祖已, a
minister of Woo-ting. IV. ix. 2.

Page 685. Beneath 曆 insert 曆. 11

Page 703. Above 空 insert—穴 *hōk*
A hole. 鳥鼠同穴 the name of a moun- *hōk*
tain. III. I. Pt. II. 12.

Page 710. Under 臣 add—(2) 臣扈, a
minister of T'ao-mow, V, xvi, 7.

Page 724. After 遞 insert 運, ^{ch'ü} chih. A
surname, 運任 IV, vii, Pt. I, 18.

ERROES.

Page 646. Under —, for *yd* read *yd*.

怪 $\approx p^{41} \approx p^{42}$

652. Ask 傳 for 嚴 and where read

~~and~~ and where.

Page 653. Under ~~the~~, for *with* read *with*.

克

For 充 read 竟 (big).

Page 615. Art. 鳳, for male read female.

For red red.

658. Under 腹, "head" "back."

659. 叨, to-on to-on.

661. Transfer—(2), &c., from 咨 to 咨.

661. Under III, for as read see.

602. For 四, read 四.

- Page 662. Under 垂, for *chui* read *chui*.
 " " " 堪, " *k'an* " *k'an*.
 " " " 墨, " *mo* " *mo*.
 " 666. " 好, " *hao* " *hao*.
 " 668. Art. 宗, 代宗 read 岱宗.
 Page 669. For the first 實, read 寒.
 " " Under 寡, for *lue* read *lue* and *kua*.
 Page 670. Art. 僻, for 3d read 2d.
 " " Under 俗, " *tsu* " *tsu*.
 " 671. " 惡, " *gü* " *gü*.
 " " 愧, " *kuai* " *kuai*.
 " 679. " 惑, " *huo* " *huo*.
 " 681. " 改, " *gai* " *gai*.
 " 684. " 昭, " *chao* read *sh'ao*.
 " 685. " 書, " *shu* " *shu*.
 " 686. Art. 未, " *tsu* " *branch*.
 " 687. Under 幹, " *gan* " *gan*.

- Page 687. Under 榮, for *yang* read *yang*.
 " 689. For the radical 母, and the one immediately following, read 毋.
 Page 690. For 汗, read 汗.
 " 695. Art. 父, for 師父 read 父師.
 Page 695. For 父 read 父.
 " 696. Under 猾, for *guai* read *haid*.
 " 697. Art. 王, 秀, 季.
 " " Under 球, " *tsu* " *k'ou*.
 " 700. " 盛, " *shing* " *shing*.
 " 705. " the 2d 純, for *shun* read *chun*.
 " 717. " 誤, for *wo* read *go*.
 " 719. " 象, " *soyay* read *soyay*.
 " 720. " 趙, " *tsao* " *tsao*.
 " 721. " 蹈, " *tsao* " *tsao*.
 " " 輪, " *loo* and *hu* read *sho* and *shu*.
 Page 726. Under 鐸, " *to* read *to*.

NOTE. Since the publication of my second volume, I have met with three Works, which supply, to a considerable extent, the place of dictionaries to the Classics. The Sinologue, who shall undertake such a dictionary, will find in them a fund of most extensive and precious materials.

[1]. The first and handiest of the three is called 經韻集字析解, 'All the Characters in the Classics and Thesaurus Discriminated and Explained.' It was published at T'uen-tsin, in 1822, by an officer, called Hseng Show-k'ien (熊守謙), who was assisted by a son, a nephew, and a friend, in the compilation. Altogether it contains about 10,000 characters, arranged under the Radicals by the number of strokes, as in K'ang-ho's Dictionary, and in the order in which they occur in that Work. It gives, moreover, simply the meanings there assigned to them; but wherever a passage of the three oldest classics is quoted with a various reading in any of the more recent ones, that is pointed out. The author estimates the number of characters in 'the thirteen Classics' at rather more than 6,500; but he does not count a character more than once, though differences of name and of tone would seem to require him to do so. The Book is in two volumes, making together only 247 Chinese pages, so that the student finds it very convenient for use. [The 'Thesaurus' mentioned in the title is, of course, the 佩文韻府, or 'Treasury of Tones and Rhymes, compiled in the apartment P'ei-wan,'—one of the great literary Works undertaken by the order of K'ang-ho, and which contains nearly 9,000 characters, with their names and tones defined, and their meaning and usage fully exhibited.]

[2]. The second Work is more voluminous, and consists of two Parts—the 四書字詁, or 'The Explanation of the Characters in the Four Books,' in 79 chapters; and 羣經字詁, 'The Explanation of the Characters in the various King,' in 72 chapters. It was originally left in manuscript by a scholar named T'wan Gs-t'ing (段誥廷) of the district of K'een-yang (鴨綠) in Hoo-nan, and was afterwards revised, re-arranged, and published, under the auspices of a Hwang Pan-k'w (黃本駿), in 1857.

The arrangement of the characters is perplexing for the student. Taking the 'Great Learning' first, the book gives a table of the different characters in 14 chapters by chapter; in the same

way it follows with the 'Doctrine of the Mean,' the 'Analects,' and the 'Works of Mencius.' In the second Part, we have the Yih, the Shoo, the She, the Ch'un T'w, the Le Ke, the Chow Le, the three Chuen of T'ao-k'ow, of Kung-yang, and of Kuh-leang, the Hsiao King, and the Uih Ya, similarly dissected, no account being taken of the characters that have already occurred in the Four Books. The lexical portion follows the dissection in each Part, and the characters are taken in the order in which they have occurred in the Books. There is no arrangement of them with reference to the Radicals or to their sounds. This is troublesome to the learner; and though there is a preliminary chapter exhibiting the characters in each Book under their Radicals, much time and labour are still required to find the place of any term under examination. For the lexical portion itself, it is ample and satisfactory. The oldest definitions of the characters are given, and numerous examples of their use are adduced.

It is said, in a summary, that in the Great Learning there are 304 diff. characters; in the Doctrine of the Mean, 308 additional; in the Analects, other 616; and in the Works of Mencius, 776;—making in the Four Books not quite 2,200 characters. It is to be observed, however, that the same character is not counted twice, though it may be variously toned and enunciated.

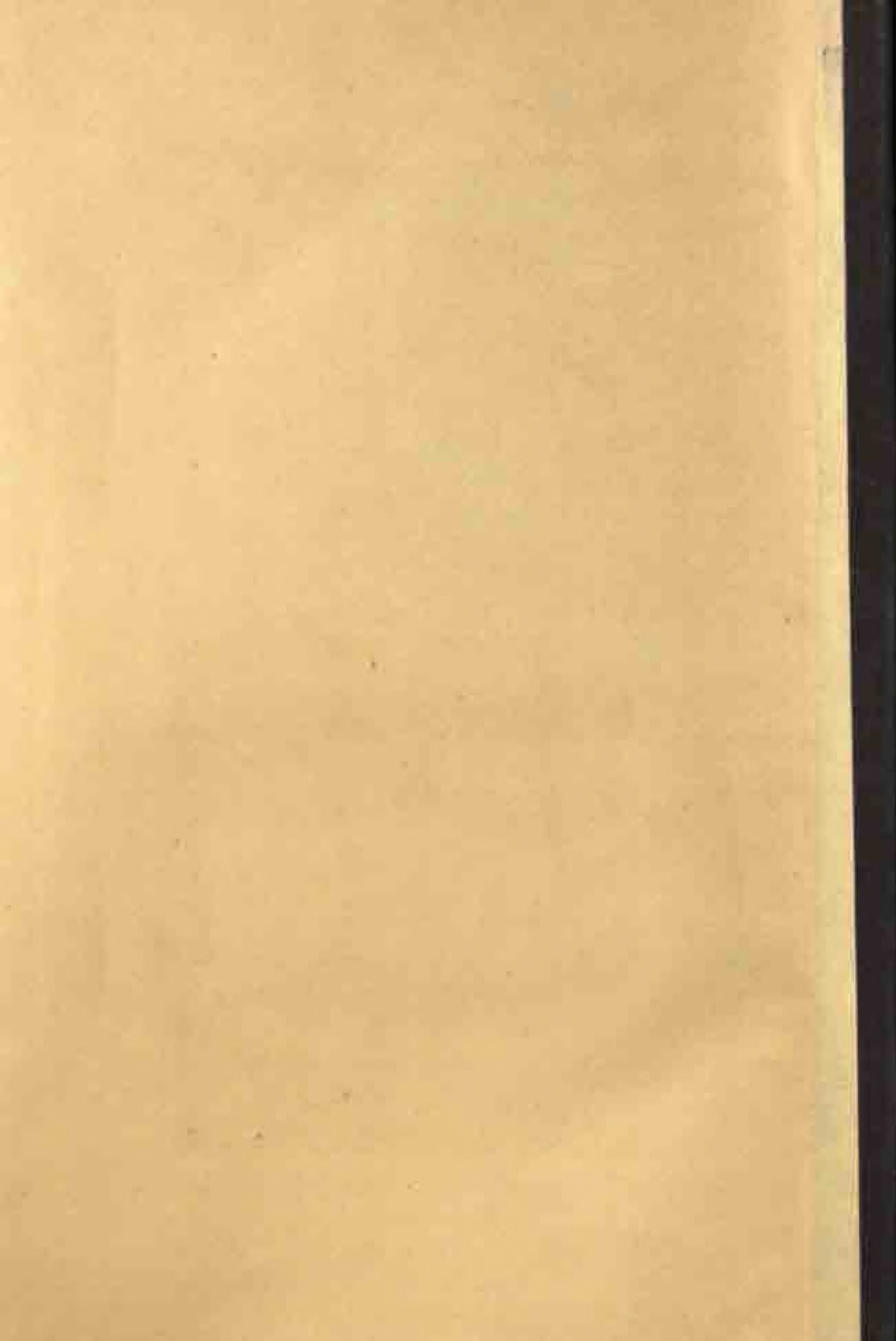
In the Yih, again, there are 296 new characters; and in the Shoo, 456. The Index which I have compiled shows in the Shoo King altogether 1,998 different characters, counting a character for each variation of name and tone.

[3]. The third Work is of a different character and of higher pretensions than either of the above. It is called 經籍纂詁, 'A Digest of the Meanings in the Classical Books,' in 106 chapters. It was prepared, by the labours of many eminent scholars, under the superintendence of Yuen Yuen (阮元), to whom I have said, in vol. I., proleg., p. 133, we owe the grand collection of the 'Explanations of the Classics under the T'ing dynasty.' In an introductory chapter we have a memorial in which Yuen Yuen, then superintendent of the Transport Service on the grand canal, presents, in obedience to an order, his Work to the Emperor. It is dated in the 17th year of Ken-king, or our 1812. In this digest the arrangement of characters adopted in the Thesaurus is followed.

END OF VOL. III.







"A book that is shut is but a block"

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY
GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI

Please help us to keep the book
clean and moving.
